

Flexibook

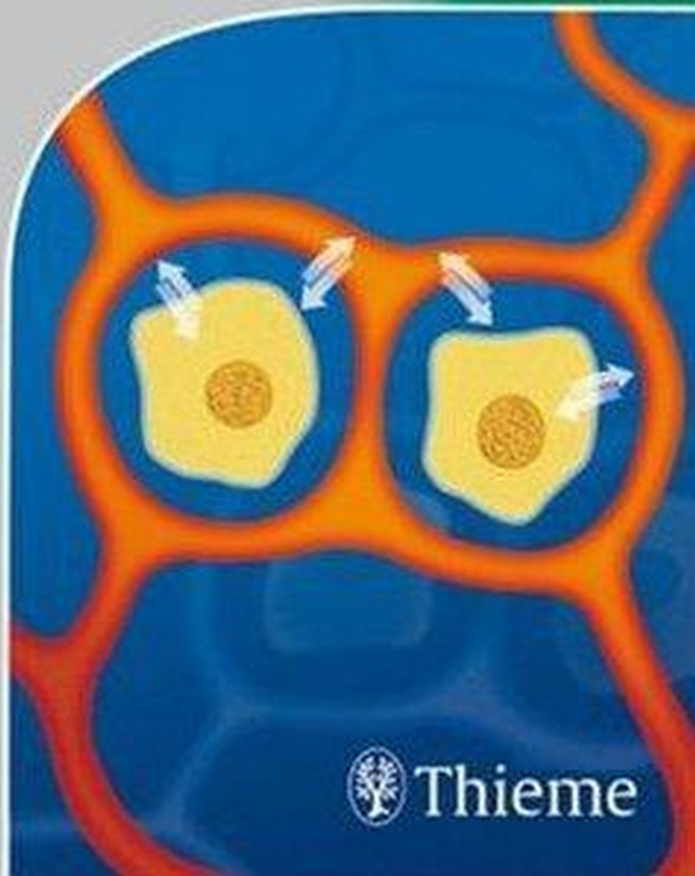


# Color Atlas of Physiology

Stefan Silbernagl  
Agamemnon Despopoulos

6th edition

basic sciences



Thieme

## At a Glance

1	<b>Fundamentals and Cell Physiology</b>	2
2	<b>Nerve and Muscle, Physical Work</b>	42
3	<b>Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)</b>	78
4	<b>Blood</b>	88
5	<b>Respiration</b>	106
6	<b>Acid–Base Homeostasis</b>	138
7	<b>Kidneys, Salt, and Water Balance</b>	148
8	<b>Cardiovascular System</b>	188
9	<b>Thermal Balance and Thermoregulation</b>	224
10	<b>Nutrition and Digestion</b>	228
11	<b>Hormones and Reproduction</b>	268
12	<b>Central Nervous System and Senses</b>	312
13	<b>Appendix</b>	378
	<b>Further Reading</b>	397
	<b>Index</b>	399

# Color Atlas of Physiology

6th edition

Stefan Silbernagl, MD

Professor  
Institute of Physiology  
University of Würzburg  
Würzburg, Germany

Agamemnon Despopoulos, MD

Professor  
Formerly: Ciba Geigy  
Basel

189 color plates by  
Ruediger Gay and  
Astrid Rothenburger

Thieme  
Stuttgart · New York



## Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Despopoulos, Agamemnon.

[Taschenatlas der Physiologie. English]

Color atlas of physiology / Agamemnon Despopoulos, Stefan Silbernagl; color plates by Ruediger Gay and Astrid Rothenburger; [translator, Suzyon O'Neal Wandrey].

— 6th ed., completely rev. and expanded.

p. : cm

Includes bibliographical references and index.

Translation of: Taschenatlas der Physiologie. 5th German ed. c2001.

ISBN 978-3-13-545006-3 (alk. paper)

1. Human physiology—Atlases. I. Silbernagl, Stefan. II. Title.

[DNLN: 1. Physiology—Atlases. QT 17 D471c 2009a]

QP34.S55313 2009

612—dc22

2008042538

1st German edition 1979  
 2nd German edition 1983  
 3rd German edition 1988  
 4th German edition 1991  
 5th German edition 2001  
 6th German edition 2003  
 7th German edition 2007

1st English edition 1981  
 2nd English edition 1984  
 3rd English edition 1986  
 4th English edition 1991  
 5th English edition 2003

1st Dutch edition 1981  
 2nd Dutch edition 2001  
 3rd Dutch edition 2008

1st Italian edition 1981  
 2nd Italian edition 2002

1st Japanese edition 1982  
 2nd Japanese edition 1992  
 3rd Japanese edition 2005

1st Serbian edition 2006

1st Spanish edition 1982  
 2nd Spanish edition 1985  
 3rd Spanish edition 1994  
 4th Spanish edition 2001

1st Czech edition 1984  
 2nd Czech edition 1994  
 3rd Czech edition 2004

1st French edition 1985  
 2nd French edition 1992  
 3rd French edition 2001

1st Turkish edition 1986  
 2nd Turkish edition 1997

1st Greek edition 1989

1st Chinese edition 1991

1st Polish edition 1994

1st Portuguese edition 2003

1st Hungarian edition 1994  
 2nd Hungarian edition 1996

1st Indonesian edition 2000

Translated by Suzyon O'Neal Wandrey and Rachel Swift

Illustrated by Atelier Gay + Rothenburger, Sternenfels, Germany

© 1981, 2009 Georg Thieme Verlag KG  
 Rüdigerstraße 14, 70469 Stuttgart, Germany  
<http://www.thieme.de>  
 Thieme New York, 333 Seventh Avenue,  
 New York, NY 10001, USA  
<http://www.thieme.com>

Cover design: Thieme Publishing Group  
 Typesetting by: Druckhaus Götz GmbH,  
 Ludwigsburg, Germany  
 Printed in Germany by: Offizin Anderson Nexö, Zwenkau

ISBN 978-3-13-545006-3

1 2 3 4 5

**Important Note:** Medicine is an ever-changing science undergoing continual development. Research and clinical experience are continually expanding our knowledge, in particular our knowledge of proper treatment and drug therapy. Insofar as this book mentions any dosage or application, readers may rest assured that the authors, editors, and publishers have made every effort to ensure that such references are in accordance with **the state of knowledge at the time of production of the book.**

Nevertheless, this does not involve, imply, or express any guarantee or responsibility on the part of the publishers in respect to any dosage instructions and forms of applications stated in the book. **Every user is requested to examine carefully** the manufacturers' leaflets accompanying each drug and to check, if necessary in consultation with a physician or specialist, whether the dosage schedules mentioned therein or the contraindications stated by the manufacturers differ from the statements made in the present book. Such examination is particularly important with drugs that are either rarely used or have been newly released on the market. Every dosage schedule or every form of application used is entirely at the user's own risk and responsibility. The authors and publishers request every user to report to the publishers any discrepancies or inaccuracies noticed. If errors in this work are found after publication, errata will be posted at [www.thieme.com](http://www.thieme.com) on the product description page.

Some of the product names, patents, and registered designs referred to in this book are in fact registered trademarks or proprietary names even though specific reference to this fact is not always made in the text. Therefore, the appearance of a name without designation as proprietary is not to be construed as a representation by the publisher that it is in the public domain.

This book, including all parts thereof, is legally protected by copyright. Any use, exploitation, or commercialization outside the narrow limits set by copyright legislation, without the publisher's consent, is illegal and liable to prosecution. This applies in particular to photostat reproduction, copying, mimeographing or duplication of any kind, translating, preparation of microfilms, and electronic data processing and storage.

## Preface to the Sixth Edition

The base of knowledge in many sectors of physiology has again grown considerably in magnitude and depth since the last edition of this book was published. Many advances, especially the successful application of the methods of molecular biology and gene technology brought completely new insight into cell signalling and communication as well as into many integrative functions of the body. This made it necessary to edit and, in some cases, enlarge some parts of the book, especially the chapters on blood clotting, water homeostasis, regulation of body weight, iron metabolism, sleep-wake cycle, memory and sound reception.

In recent years, more pathophysiological aspects and clinical examples have been added to the curricula of medical physiology. To make allowance for this development also in this color atlas, the numerous references to clinical medicine are marked by **blue margin bars**, and **pathophysiological and clinical key-words** are attached at the bottom of each text page. They should make it easier to recognize the relevance of the physiological facts for clinical medicine at a glance, and to find quickly more information on these topics in textbooks of pathophysiology (e.g. in our *Color Atlas of Pathophysiology*) and clinical medicine.

I am very grateful for the many helpful comments from attentive readers and for the welcome feedback from my peers, this time especially from Prof. R. *Renate Lüllmann-Rauch*, Kiel, Prof. *Gerhardt Burckhardt*, Göttingen, Prof. *Detlev Drenckhahn*, Würzburg, and Dr. *Michael Fischer*, Mainz as well as from my colleagues and staff at the Department of Physiology in Würzburg. It was again a great pleasure to work with *Rüdiger Gay* and *Astried Rothenburger*, to whom I am deeply indebted for revising many illustrations in the book and for designing a number of new color plates. To them I extend my sincere thanks. I am also indebted to the publishing staff, *Rachel Swift*, a very competent editor, and *Elisabeth Kurz*, for invaluable production assistance. I would also like to thank *Katharina Völker* for her ever observant and conscientious assistance in preparing the index.

I hope that also the 6<sup>th</sup> Edition of the *Color Atlas of Physiology* will prove to be a valuable tool for helping students better understand physiological correlates, and that it will be a valuable reference for practicing physicians and scientists, to help them recall previously learned information and gain new insights in physiology.

Würzburg, September 2008  
*Stefan Silbernagl\**

---

\* e-mail: stefan.silbernagl@mail.uni-wuerzburg.de

## Preface to the First Edition

In the modern world, visual pathways have outdistanced other avenues for informational input. This book takes advantage of the economy of visual representation to indicate the simultaneity and multiplicity of physiological phenomena. Although some subjects lend themselves more readily than others to this treatment, inclusive rather than selective coverage of the key elements of physiology has been attempted.

Clearly, this book of little more than 300 pages, only half of which are textual, cannot be considered as a primary source for the serious student of physiology. Nevertheless, it does contain most of the basic principles and facts taught in a medical school introductory course. Each unit of text and illustration can serve initially as an overview for introduction to the subject and subsequently as a concise review of the material. The contents are as current as the publishing art permits and include both classical information for the beginning students as well as recent details and trends for the advanced student.

A book of this nature is inevitably derivative, but many of the representations are new and, we hope, innovative. A number of people have contributed directly and indirectly to the completion of this volume, but none more than *Sarah Jones*, who gave much more than editorial assistance. Acknowledgement of helpful criticism and advice is due also to Drs. *R. Greger*, *A. Ratner*, *J. Weiss*, and *S. Wood*, and Prof. *H. Seller*. We are grateful to *Joy Wieser* for her help in checking the proofs. *Wolf-Rüdiger* and *Barbara Gay* are especially recognized, not only for their art work, but for their conceptual contributions as well. The publishers, Georg Thieme Verlag and Deutscher Taschenbuch Verlag, contributed valuable assistance based on extensive experience; an author could wish for no better relationship. Finally, special recognition to Dr. *Walter Kumpmann* for inspiring the project and for his unquestioning confidence in the authors.

Basel and Innsbruck, Summer 1979  
*Agamemnon Despopoulos*  
*Stefan Silbernagl*

## From the Preface to the Third Edition

The first German edition of this book was already in press when, on November 2nd, 1979, *Agamemnon Despopoulos* and his wife, *Sarah Jones-Despopoulos* put to sea from Bizerta, Tunisia. Their intention was to cross the Atlantic in their sailing boat. This was the last that was ever heard of them and we have had to abandon all hope of seeing them again.

Without the creative enthusiasm of Agamemnon Despopoulos, it is doubtful whether this book would have been possible; without his personal support it has not been easy to continue with the project. Whilst keeping in mind our original aims, I have completely revised the book, incorporating the latest advances in the field of physiology as well as the welcome suggestions provided by readers of the earlier edition, to whom I extend my thanks for their active interest.

Würzburg, Fall 1985  
*Stefan Silbermagl*



Dr. Agamemnon Despopoulos

Born 1924 in New York; Professor of Physiology at the University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, USA, until 1971; thereafter scientific adviser to CIBA-GEIGY, Basel.

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Fundamentals and Cell Physiology</b>	<b>2</b>
	The Body: an Open System with an Internal Environment ...	2
	Control and Regulation ...	4
	The Cell ...	8
	Transport In, Through and Between Cells ...	16
	Passive Transport by Means of Diffusion ...	20
	Osmosis, Filtration and Convection ...	24
	Active Transport ...	26
	Cell Migration ...	30
	Electrical Membrane Potentials and Ion Channels ...	32
	Role of $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ in Cell Regulation ...	36
	Energy Production and Metabolism ...	38
<b>2</b>	<b>Nerve and Muscle, Physical Work</b>	<b>42</b>
	Neuron Structure and Function ...	42
	Resting Membrane Potential ...	44
	Action Potential ...	46
	Propagation of Action Potentials in Nerve Fiber ...	48
	Artificial Stimulation of Nerve Cells ...	50
	Synaptic Transmission ...	50
	Motor End-plate ...	56
	Motility and Muscle Types ...	58
	Motor Unit of Skeletal Muscle ...	58
	Contractile Apparatus of Striated Muscle ...	60
	Contraction of Striated Muscle ...	62
	Mechanical Features of Skeletal Muscle ...	66
	Smooth Muscle ...	70
	Energy Supply for Muscle Contraction ...	72
	Physical Work ...	74
	Physical Fitness and Training ...	76
<b>3</b>	<b>Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)</b>	<b>78</b>
	Organization of the Autonomic Nervous System (ANS) ...	78
	Acetylcholines and Cholinergic Transmission ...	82
	Catecholamines, Adrenergic Transmission and Adrenoceptors ...	84
	Adrenal Medulla ...	86
	Non-cholinergic, Non-adrenergic Transmitters ...	86
<b>4</b>	<b>Blood</b>	<b>88</b>
	Composition and Function of Blood ...	88
	Iron Metabolism and Erythropoiesis ...	90
	Flow Properties of Blood ...	92
	Plasma, Ion Distribution ...	92

Immune System ...	94
Hypersensitivity Reactions (Allergies) ...	100
Blood Groups ...	100
Hemostasis ...	102
Fibrinolysis and Thromboprotection ...	104

## 5 Respiration

106

Lung Function, Respiration ...	106
Mechanics of Breathing ...	108
Purification of Respiratory Air ...	110
Artificial Respiration ...	110
Pneumothorax ...	110
Lung Volumes and their Measurement ...	112
Dead Space, Residual Volume, Airway Resistance ...	114
Pressure–Volume Curve, Respiratory Work ...	116
Surface Tension, Surfactant ...	118
Dynamic Lung Function Tests ...	118
Pulmonary Gas Exchange ...	120
Pulmonary Blood Flow, Ventilation–Perfusion Ratio ...	122
CO <sub>2</sub> Transport in Blood ...	124
CO <sub>2</sub> Binding in Blood, CO <sub>2</sub> in CSF ...	126
CO <sub>2</sub> in Cerebrospinal Fluid ...	126
Binding and Transport of O <sub>2</sub> in Blood ...	128
Internal (Tissue) Respiration, Hypoxia ...	130
Respiratory Control and Stimulation ...	132
Effects of Diving on Respiration ...	134
Effects of High Altitude on Respiration ...	136
Oxygen Toxicity ...	136

## 6 Acid–Base Homeostasis

138

pH, pH Buffers, Acid–Base Balance ...	138
Bicarbonate/Carbon Dioxide Buffer ...	140
Acidosis and Alkalosis ...	142
Assessment of Acid–Base Status ...	146

## 7 Kidneys, Salt, and Water Balance

148

Kidney Structure and Function ...	148
Renal Circulation ...	150
Glomerular Filtration and Clearance ...	152
Transport Processes at the Nephron ...	154
Reabsorption of Organic Substances ...	158
Excretion of Organic Substances ...	160
Reabsorption of Na <sup>+</sup> and Cl <sup>-</sup> ...	162
Reabsorption of Water, Formation of Concentrated Urine ...	164
Body Fluid Homeostasis ...	168
Salt and Water Regulation ...	170
Diuresis and Diuretics ...	174
The Kidney and Acid–Base Balance ...	176

Reabsorption and Excretion of Phosphate, $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ and $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ...	180
Potassium Balance ...	182
Tubuloglomerular Feedback, Renin–Angiotensin System ...	186

## 8 Cardiovascular System

188

Overview ...	188
Blood Vessels and Blood Flow ...	190
Cardiac Cycle ...	192
Cardiac Impulse Generation and Conduction ...	194
Electrocardiogram (ECG) ...	198
Excitation in Electrolyte Disturbances ...	200
Cardiac Arrhythmias ...	202
Ventricular Pressure–Volume Relationships ...	204
Cardiac Work and Cardiac Power ...	204
Regulation of Stroke Volume ...	206
Venous Return ...	206
Arterial Blood Pressure ...	208
Endothelial Exchange Processes ...	210
Myocardial Oxygen Supply ...	212
Regulation of the Circulation ...	214
Circulatory Shock ...	220
Fetal and Neonatal Circulation ...	222

## 9 Thermal Balance and Thermoregulation

224

Thermal Balance ...	224
Thermoregulation ...	226

## 10 Nutrition and Digestion

228

Nutrition ...	228
Energy Metabolism and Calorimetry ...	230
Energy Homeostasis and Body Weight ...	232
Gastrointestinal (GI) Tract: Overview, Immune Defense, Blood Flow ...	234
Neural and Hormonal Integration ...	236
Saliva ...	238
Deglutition ...	240
Vomiting ...	240
Stomach Structure and Motility ...	242
Gastric Juice ...	244
Small Intestinal Function ...	246
Pancreas ...	248
Bile ...	250
Excretory Liver Function, Bilirubin ...	252
Lipid Digestion ...	254
Lipid Distribution and Storage ...	256
Digestion and Absorption of Carbohydrates and Protein ...	260
Vitamin Absorption ...	262
Water and Mineral Absorption ...	264
Large Intestine, Defecation, Feces ...	266

**11 Hormones and Reproduction**

268

- Integrative Systems of the Body ... 268
- Hormones ... 270
- Humoral Signals: Control and Effects ... 274
- Cellular Transmission of Signals from Extracellular Messengers ... 276
- Hypothalamic–Pituitary System ... 282
- Carbohydrate Metabolism and Pancreatic Hormones ... 284
- Thyroid Hormones ... 288
- Calcium and Phosphate Metabolism ... 292
- Biosynthesis of Steroid Hormones ... 296
- Adrenal Cortex and Glucocorticoid Synthesis ... 298
- Oogenesis and the Menstrual Cycle ... 300
- Hormonal Control of the Menstrual Cycle ... 302
- Estrogens, Progesterone ... 304
- Progesterone, Prolactin, Oxytocin ... 305
- Hormonal Control of Pregnancy and Birth ... 306
- Androgens and Testicular Function ... 308
- Sexual Response, Intercourse and Fertilization ... 310

**12 Central Nervous System and Senses**

312

- Central Nervous System ... 312
- Cerebrospinal Fluid ... 312
- Stimulus Reception and Processing ... 314
- Sensory Functions of the Skin ... 316
- Proprioception, Stretch Reflex ... 318
- Nociception and Pain ... 320
- Polysynaptic Reflexes ... 322
- Synaptic Inhibition ... 322
- Central Conduction of Sensory Input ... 324
- Movement ... 326
- Hypothalamus, Limbic System ... 332
- Cerebral Cortex, Electroencephalogram (EEG) ... 334
- Circadian Rhythms, Sleep–Wake Cycle ... 336
- Consciousness, Sleep ... 338
- Learning, Memory, Language ... 340
- Glia ... 344
- Sense of Taste ... 344
- Sense of Smell ... 346
- Sense of Balance ... 348
- Eye Structure, Tear Fluid, Aqueous Humor ... 350
- Optical Apparatus of the Eye ... 352
- Visual Acuity, Photosensors ... 354
- Adaptation of the Eye to Different Light Intensities ... 358
- Retinal Processing of Visual Stimuli ... 360
- Color Vision ... 362
- Visual Field, Visual Pathway, Central Processing of Visual Stimuli ... 364
- Eye Movements, Stereoscopic Vision, Depth Perception ... 366
- Physical Principles of Sound—Sound Stimulus and Perception ... 368
- Conduction of Sound, Sound Sensors ... 370

Central Processing of Acoustic Information ... 374

Voice and Speech ... 376

### 13 Appendix

378

Dimensions and Units ... 378

Powers and Logarithms ... 386

Logarithms, Graphic Representation of Data ... 387

Reference Values in Physiology ... 390

Important Equations in Physiology ... 394

### Further Reading

397

### Index

399

# **Color Atlas of Physiology**

6th edition

“... If we break up a living organism by isolating its different parts, it is only for the sake of ease in analysis and by no means in order to conceive them separately. Indeed, when we wish to ascribe to a physiological quality its value and true significance, we must always refer it to the whole and draw our final conclusions only in relation to its effects on the whole.”

Claude Bernard (1865)

The existence of unicellular organisms is the epitome of life in its simplest form. Even simple protists must meet two basic but essentially conflicting demands in order to survive. A unicellular organism must, on the one hand, isolate itself from the seeming disorder of its inanimate surroundings, yet, as an “open system” (→ p. 40), it is dependent on its environment for the exchange of heat, oxygen, nutrients, waste materials, and information.

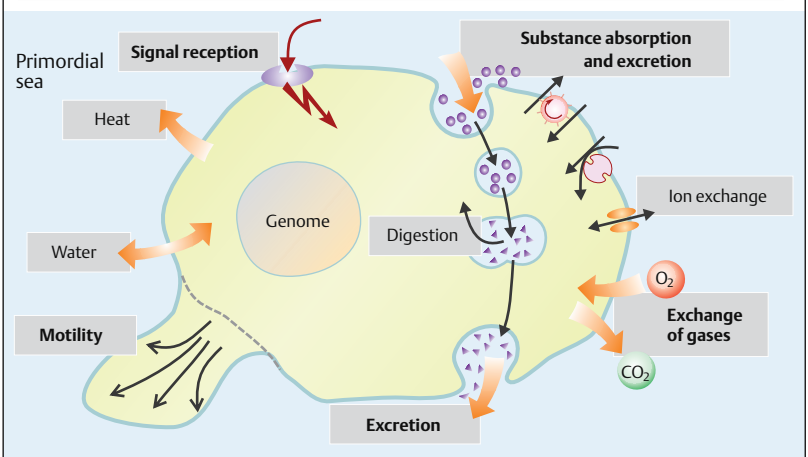
“Isolation” is mainly ensured by the cell membrane, the hydrophobic properties of which prevent the potentially fatal mixing of hydrophilic components in watery solutions inside and outside the cell. Protein molecules within the cell membrane ensure the permeability of the membrane barrier. They may exist in the form of *pores (channels)* or as more complex transport proteins known as *carriers* (→ p. 26 ff.). Both types are selective for certain substances, and their activity is usually regulated. The cell membrane is relatively well permeable to hydrophobic molecules such as gases. This is useful for the exchange of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> and for the uptake of lipophilic signal substances, yet exposes the cell to poisonous gases such as carbon monoxide (CO) and lipophilic noxae such as organic solvents. The cell membrane also contains other proteins—namely, receptors and enzymes. *Receptors* receive signals from the external environment and convey the information to the interior of the cell (signal transduction), and *enzymes* enable the cell to metabolize extracellular substrates.

Let us imagine the primordial sea as the external environment of the unicellular organism (→ A). This milieu remains more or less constant, although the organism absorbs nutrients from it and excretes waste into it. In spite of its simple structure, the unicellular organism is capable of eliciting motor responses to signals from the environment. This is achieved by moving its pseudopodia or

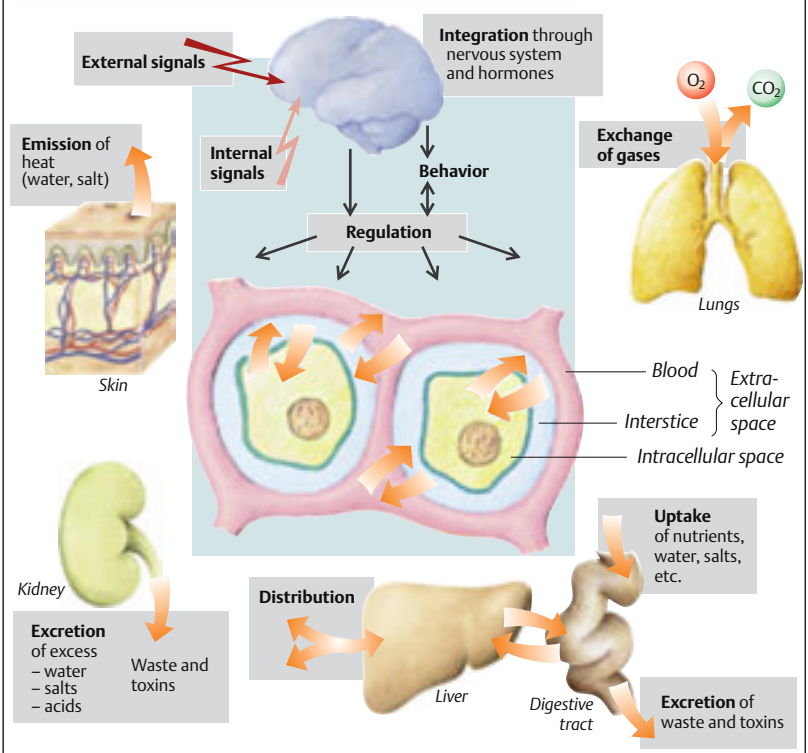
flagella, for example, in response to changes in the food concentration.

The evolution from unicellular organisms to multicellular organisms, the transition from specialized cell groups to organs, the emergence of the two sexes, the coexistence of individuals in social groups, and the transition from water to land have tremendously increased the efficiency, survival, radius of action, and independence of living organisms. This process required the simultaneous development of a complex infrastructure within the organism. Nonetheless, the individual cells of the body still need a milieu like that of the primordial sea for life and survival. Today, the **extracellular fluid** is responsible for providing constant environmental conditions (→ B), but the volume of the fluid is no longer infinite. In fact, it is even smaller than the intracellular volume (→ p. 168). Because of their metabolic activity, the cells would quickly deplete the oxygen and nutrient stores within the fluids and flood their surroundings with waste products if organs capable of maintaining a **stable internal environment** had not developed. This is achieved through **homeostasis**, a process by which physiologic self-regulatory mechanisms (see below) maintain steady states in the body through coordinated physiological activity. Specialized organs ensure the continuous absorption of nutrients, electrolytes and water and the excretion of waste products via the urine and feces. The *circulating blood* connects the organs to every inch of the body, and the exchange of materials between the blood and the intercellular spaces (*interstices*) creates a stable environment for the cells. Organs such as the digestive tract and liver absorb nutrients and make them available by processing, metabolizing and distributing them throughout the body. The lung is responsible for the exchange of gases (O<sub>2</sub> intake, CO<sub>2</sub> elimination), the liver and kidney for the ►

**A. Unicellular organism in the constant external environment of the primordial sea**



**B. Maintenance of a stable internal environment in humans**



► excretion of waste and foreign substances, and the skin for the release of heat. The kidney and lungs also play an important role in regulating the internal environment, e.g., water content, osmolality, ion concentrations, pH (kidney, lungs) and O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> pressure (lungs) (→ B).

The specialization of cells and organs for specific tasks naturally requires **integration**, which is achieved by convective transport over long distances (circulation, respiratory tract), humoral transfer of information (hormones), and transmission of electrical signals in the nervous system, to name a few examples. These mechanisms are responsible for supply and disposal and thereby maintain a stable internal environment, even under conditions of extremely high demand and stress. Moreover, they control and regulate functions that ensure survival in the sense of **preservation of the species**. Important factors in this process include not only the timely development of reproductive organs and the availability of fertilizable gametes at sexual maturity, but also the control of erection, ejaculation, fertilization, and nidation. Others include the coordination of functions in the mother and fetus during pregnancy and regulation of the birth process and the lactation period.

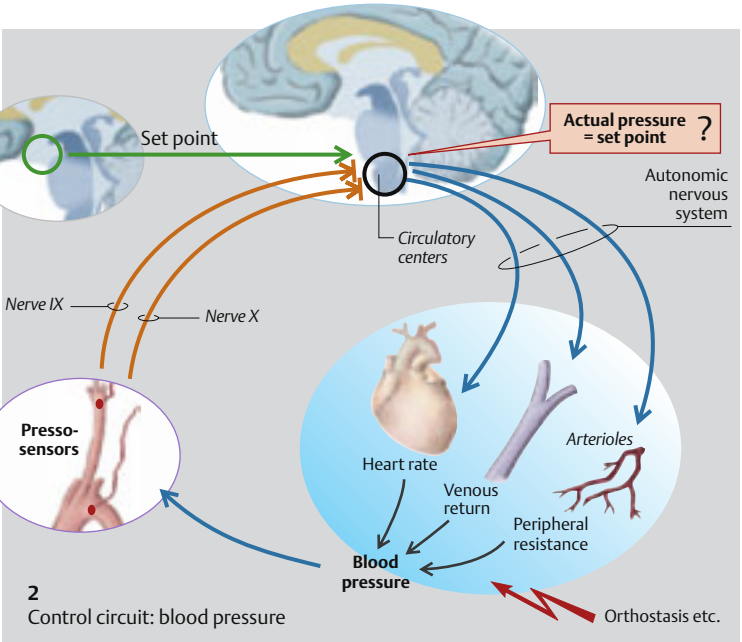
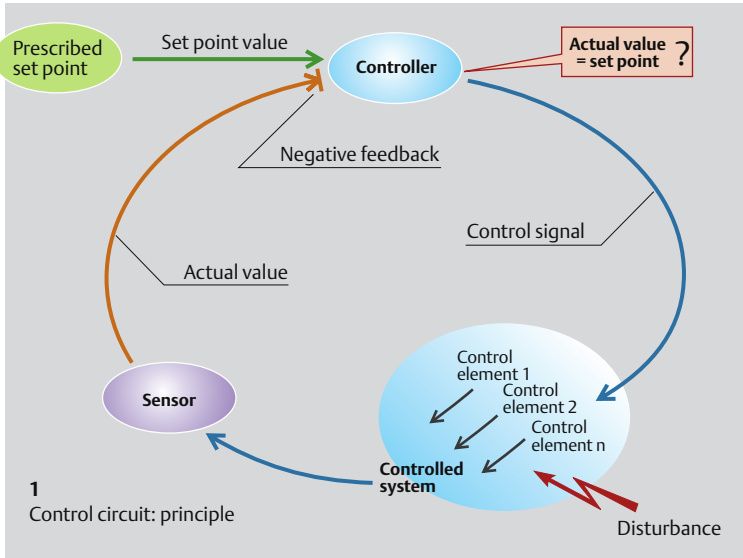
The **central nervous system** (CNS) processes signals from peripheral sensors (single sensory cells or sensory organs), activates outwardly directed effectors (e.g., **skeletal muscles**), and influences the endocrine **glands**. The CNS is the focus of attention when studying human or animal **behavior**. It helps us to locate food and water and protects us from heat or cold. The central nervous system also plays a role in partner selection, concern for offspring even long after their birth, and integration into social systems. The CNS is also involved in the development, expression, and processing of emotions such as desire, listlessness, curiosity, wishfulness, happiness, anger, wrath, and envy and of traits such as creativeness, inquisitiveness, self-awareness, and responsibility. This goes far beyond the scope of physiology—which in the narrower sense is the study of the functions of the body—and, hence, of this book. Although behavioral science, sociology, and psychology are disciplines that border on physiology, true bridges between them and

physiology have been established only in exceptional cases.

## Control and Regulation

In order to have useful cooperation between the specialized organs of the body, their functions must be adjusted to meet specific needs. In other words, the organs must be subject to control and regulation. **Control** implies that a *controlled variable* such as the blood pressure is subject to selective external modification, for example, through alteration of the heart rate (→ p.218). Because many other factors also affect the blood pressure and heart rate, the controlled variable can only be kept constant by continuously measuring the current blood pressure, comparing it with the reference signal (*set point*), and continuously correcting any deviations. If the blood pressure drops—due, for example, to rapidly standing up from a recumbent position—the heart rate will increase until the blood pressure has been reasonably adjusted. Once the blood pressure has risen above a certain limit, the heart rate will decrease again and the blood pressure will normalize. This type of *closed-loop control* is called a **negative feedback control system** or a **control circuit** (→ C1). It consists of a *controller* with a programmed *set-point* value (target value) and *control elements* (*effectors*) that can adjust the *controlled variable* to the set point. The system also includes *sensors* that continuously measure the actual value of the controlled variable of interest and report it (feedback) to the controller, which compares the actual value of the controlled variable with the set-point value and makes the necessary adjustments if disturbance-related discrepancies have occurred. The control system operates either from within the organ itself (*autoregulation*) or via a *superordinate organ* such as the central nervous system or hormone glands. Unlike simple control, the elements of a control circuit can work rather imprecisely without causing a deviation from the set point (at least on average). Moreover, control circuits are capable of responding to unexpected disturbances. In the case of blood pressure regulation (→ C2), for example, the system can respond to events such as orthostasis (→ p.204) or sudden blood loss. ►

C. Control circuit



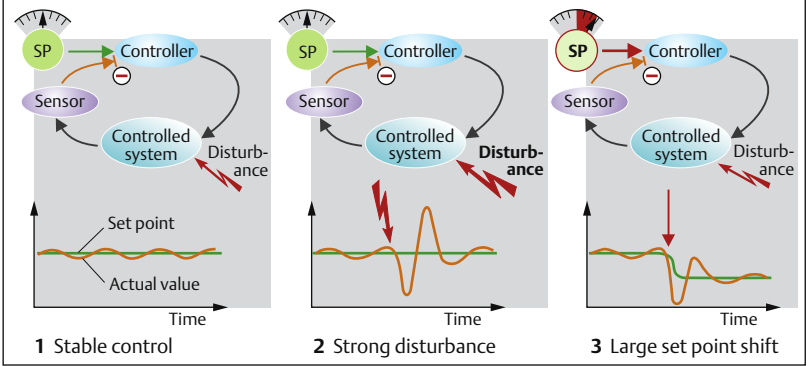
► The type of control circuits described above keep the controlled variables constant when **disturbance variables** cause the controlled variable to deviate from the set point (→ D2). Within the body, the set point is rarely invariable, but can be “shifted” when requirements of higher priority make such a change necessary. In this case, it is the **variation of the set point** that creates the discrepancy between the nominal and actual values, thus leading to the activation of regulatory elements (→ D3). Since the regulatory process is then triggered by variation of the set point (and not by disturbance variables), this is called **servocontrol** or **servomechanism**. Fever (→ p. 226) and the adjustment of muscle length by muscle spindles and  $\gamma$ -motor neurons (→ p. 318) are examples of servocontrol.

In addition to relatively simple variables such as blood pressure, cellular pH, muscle length, body weight and the plasma glucose concentration, the body also regulates complex sequences of events such as fertilization, pregnancy, growth and organ differentiation, as well as sensory stimulus processing and the motor activity of skeletal muscles, e.g., to maintain equilibrium while running. The regulatory process may take parts of a second (e.g., purposeful movement) to several years (e.g., the growth process).

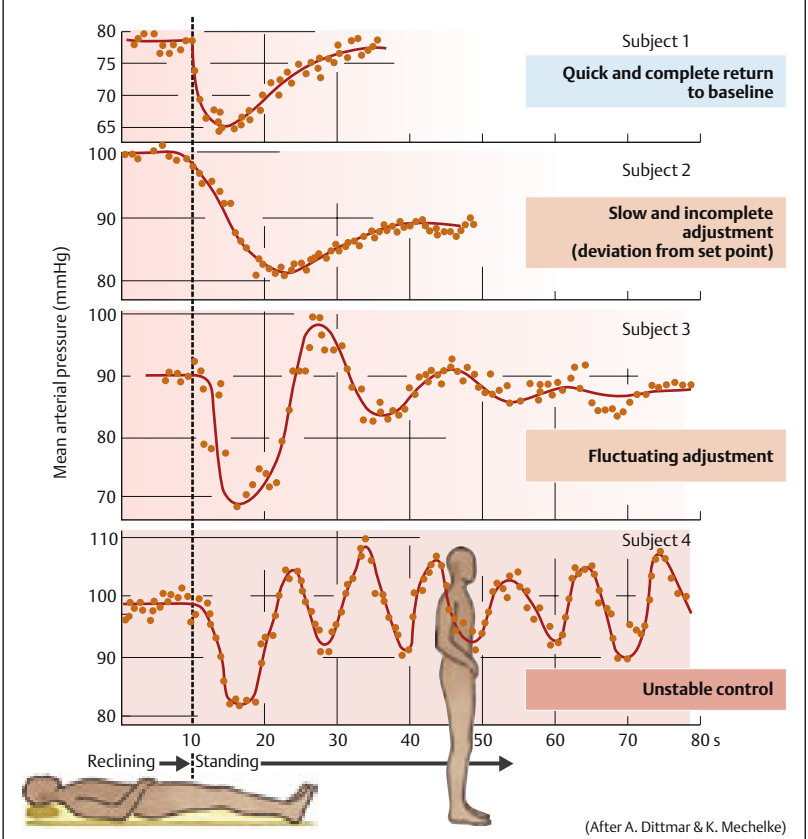
In the control circuits described above, the controlled variables are kept constant on average, with variably large, wave-like deviations. The sudden emergence of a disturbance variable causes larger deviations that quickly normalize in a stable control circuit (→ E, test subject no. 1). The **degree of deviation** may be slight in some cases but substantial in others. The latter is true, for example, for the blood glucose concentration, which nearly doubles after meals. This type of regulation obviously functions only to prevent extreme rises and falls (e.g., hyper- or hypoglycemia) or chronic deviation of the controlled variable. More precise maintenance of the controlled variable requires a higher level of regulatory sensitivity (*high amplification factor*). However, this extends the settling time (→ E, subject no. 3) and can lead to regulatory instability, i.e., a situation where the actual value oscillates back and forth between extremes (*unstable oscillation*, → E, subject no. 4).

**Oscillation** of a controlled variable in response to a disturbance variable can be *attenuated* by either of two mechanisms. First, sensors with differential characteristics (*D sensors*) ensure that the intensity of the sensor signal increases in proportion with the **rate of deviation** of the controlled variable from the set point (→ p. 314 ff.). Second, **feedforward control** ensures that information regarding the expected intensity of disturbance is reported to the controller *before* the value of the controlled variable has changed at all. Feedforward control can be explained by example of physiologic thermoregulation, a process in which cold receptors on the skin trigger counterregulation before a change in the controlled value (core temperature of the body) has actually occurred (→ p. 226). The disadvantage of having *only* D sensors in the control circuit can be demonstrated by example of arterial pressosensors (= pressoreceptors) in acute blood pressure regulation. Very slow but steady changes, as observed in the development of arterial hypertension, then escape regulation. In fact, a rapid drop in the blood pressure of a hypertensive patient will potentially cause a counterregulatory increase in blood pressure. Therefore, other control systems are needed to ensure proper long-term blood pressure regulation.

**D. Control circuit response to disturbance or set point (SP) deviation**



**E. Blood pressure control after suddenly standing erect**



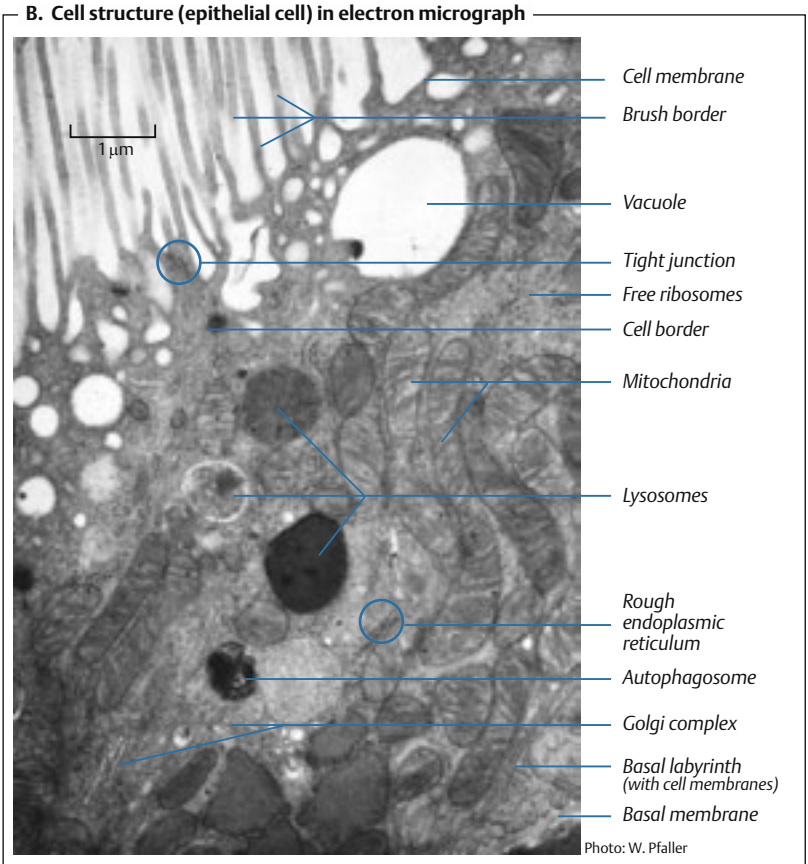
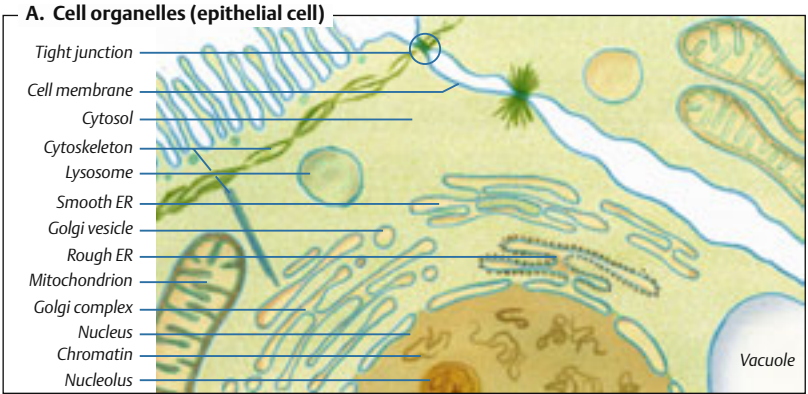
The cell is the smallest functional unit of a living organism. In other words, a cell (and no smaller unit) is able to perform essential vital functions such as metabolism, growth, movement, reproduction, and hereditary transmission (W. Roux) (→ p. 4). Growth, reproduction, and hereditary transmission can be achieved by *cell division*.

**Cell components:** All cells consist of a cell membrane, cytosol or cytoplasm (ca. 50 vol.%), and membrane-bound subcellular structures known as *organelles* (→ **A, B**). The organelles of eukaryotic cells are highly specialized. For instance, the genetic material of the cell is concentrated in the cell nucleus, whereas “digestive” enzymes are located in the lysosomes. Oxidative ATP production takes place in the mitochondria.

The **cell nucleus** contains a liquid known as karyolymph, a nucleolus, and chromatin. Chromatin contains deoxyribonucleic acids (**DNA**), the carriers of genetic information. Two strands of DNA forming a *double helix* (up to 7 cm in length) are twisted and folded to form chromosomes 10 μm in length. Humans normally have 46 chromosomes, consisting of 22 autosomal pairs and the chromosomes that determine the sex (XX in females, XY in males). DNA is made up of a strand of three-part molecules called *nucleotides*, each of which consists of a pentose (deoxyribose) molecule, a phosphate group, and a base. Each sugar molecule of the monotonic sugar–phosphate backbone of the strands (...deoxyribose – phosphate–deoxyribose...) is attached to one of four different bases. The sequence of bases represents the **genetic code** for each of the roughly 100 000 different proteins that a cell produces during its lifetime (**gene expression**). In a DNA double helix, each base in one strand of DNA is bonded to its complementary base in the other strand according to the rule: adenine (A) with thymine (T) and guanine (G) with cytosine (C). The base sequence of one strand of the double helix (→ **E**) is always a “mirror image” of the opposite strand. Therefore, one strand can be used as a template for making a new complementary strand, the information content of which is identical to that of the original. In cell division, this process is the means by which duplication of genetic information (**replication**) is achieved.

Messenger RNA (**mRNA**) is responsible for code transmission, that is, passage of coding sequences from DNA in the nucleus (base sequence) for protein synthesis in the cytosol (amino acid sequence) (→ **C1**). mRNA is formed in the nucleus and differs from DNA in that it consists of only a single strand and that it contains ribose instead of deoxyribose, and uracil (U) instead of thymine. In DNA, each amino acid (e.g., glutamate, → **E**) needed for synthesis of a given protein is coded by a set of three adjacent bases called a *codon* or *triplet* (C–T–C in the case of glutamate). In order to transcribe the DNA triplet, mRNA must form a complementary codon (e.g., G–A–G for glutamate). The relatively small transfer RNA (**tRNA**) molecule is responsible for reading the codon in the ribosomes (→ **C2**). tRNA contains a complementary codon called the *anticodon* for this purpose. The anticodon for glutamate is C–U–C (→ **E**).

**RNA synthesis** in the nucleus is controlled by *RNA polymerases* (types I–III). Their effect on DNA is normally blocked by a *repressor protein*. Phosphorylation of the polymerase occurs if the repressor is eliminated (de-repression) and the *general transcription factors* attach to the so-called promoter sequence of the DNA molecule (T–A–T–A in the case of polymerase II). Once activated, it separates the two strands of DNA at a particular site so that the code on one of the strands can be read and transcribed to form mRNA (**transcription**, → **C1a, D**). The heterogeneous nuclear RNA (*hnRNA*) molecules synthesized by the polymerase have a characteristic “cap” at their 5’ end and a polyadenine “tail” (A–A–A–...) at the 3’ end (→ **D**). Once synthesized, they are immediately “enveloped” in a protein coat, yielding heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein (*hnRNP*) particles. The *primary RNA* or *pre-mRNA* of hnRNA contains both coding sequences (*exons*) and non-coding sequences (*introns*). The exons code for amino acid sequences of the proteins to be synthesized, whereas the introns are not involved in the coding process. Introns may contain 100 to 10 000 nucleotides; they are removed from the primary mRNA strand by **splicing** (→ **C1b, D**) and then degraded. The introns, themselves, contain the information on the exact splicing site. Splicing is ATP-dependent and requires ▶



► the interaction of a number of proteins within a ribonucleoprotein complex called the *spliceosome*. Introns usually make up the lion's share of pre-mRNA molecules. For example, they make up 95% of the nucleotide chain of coagulation factor VIII, which contains 25 introns. mRNA can also be modified (e.g., through methylation) during the course of **posttranscriptional modification**.

RNA now exits the nucleus through **nuclear pores** (around 4000 per nucleus) and enters the cytosol (→ **C1c**). Nuclear pores are high-molecular-weight protein complexes (125 MDa) located within the nuclear envelope. They allow large molecules such as transcription factors, RNA polymerases or cytoplasmic steroid hormone receptors to pass into the nucleus, nuclear molecules such as mRNA and tRNA to pass out of the nucleus, and other molecules such as ribosomal proteins to travel both ways. The (ATP-dependent) passage of a molecule in either direction cannot occur without the help of a specific signal that guides the molecule into the pore. The above-mentioned *5' cap* is responsible for the exit of mRNA from the nucleus, and one or two specific sequences of a few (mostly cationic) amino acids are required as the signal for the entry of proteins into the nucleus. These sequences form part of the peptide chain of such *nuclear proteins* and probably create a peptide loop on the protein's surface. In the case of the cytoplasmic receptor for glucocorticoids (→ p. 280), the *nuclear localization signal* is masked by a chaperone protein (heat shock protein 90, hsp90) in the absence of the glucocorticoid, and is released only after the hormone binds, thereby freeing hsp90 from the receptor. The "activated" receptor then reaches the cell nucleus, where it binds to specific DNA sequences and controls specific genes.

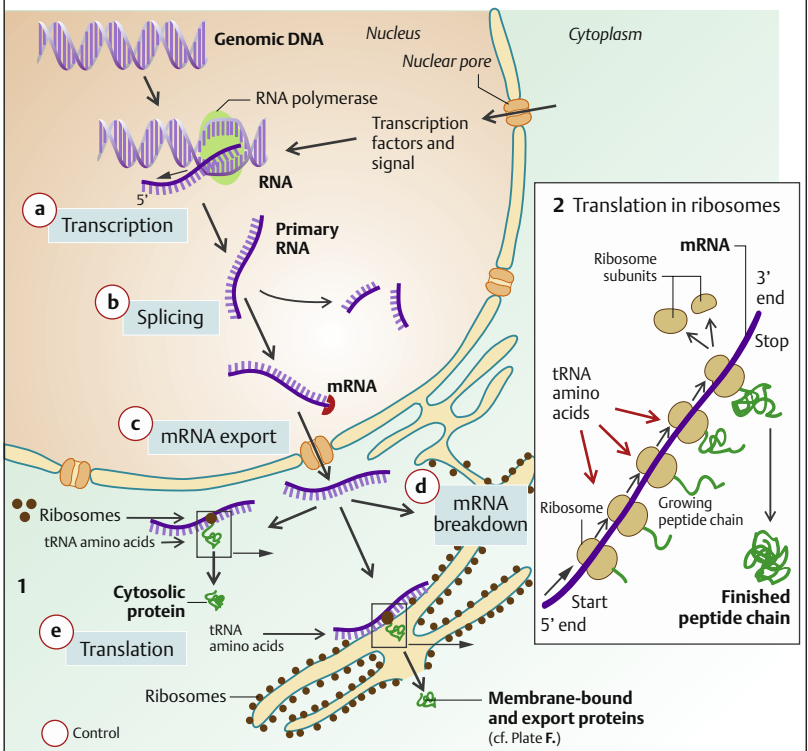
The **nuclear envelope** consists of two membranes (=two phospholipid bilayers) that merge at the nuclear pores. The two membranes consist of different materials. The external membrane is continuous with the membrane of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), which is described below (→ **F**).

The mRNA exported from the nucleus travels to the **ribosomes** (→ **C1**), which either

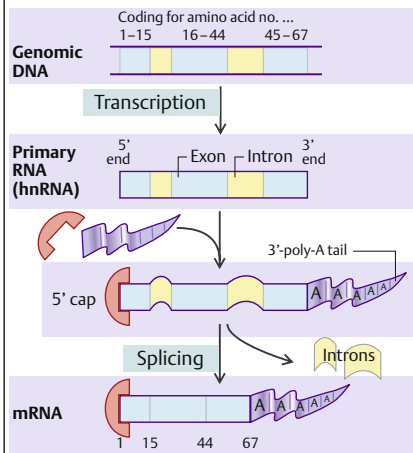
float freely in the cytosol or are bound to the cytosolic side of the endoplasmic reticulum, as described below. Each ribosome is made up of dozens of proteins associated with a number of structural RNA molecules called *ribosomal RNA (rRNA)*. The two subunits of the ribosome are first transcribed from numerous rRNA genes in the **nucleolus**, then separately exit the cell nucleus through the nuclear pores. Assembled together to form a ribosome, they now comprise the biochemical "machinery" for **protein synthesis (translation)** (→ **C2**). Synthesis of a peptide chain also requires the presence of specific tRNA molecules (at least one for each of the 21 proteinogenic amino acids). In this case, the target amino acid is bound to the C–C–A end of the tRNA molecule (same in all tRNAs), and the corresponding anticodon that recognizes the mRNA codon is located at the other end (→ **E**). Each ribosome has two tRNA binding sites: one for the last incorporated amino acid and another for the one beside it (not shown in **E**). Protein synthesis begins when the *start codon* is read and ends once the *stop codon* has been reached. The ribosome then breaks down into its two subunits and releases the mRNA (→ **C2**). Ribosomes can add approximately 10–20 amino acids per second. However, since an mRNA strand is usually translated simultaneously by many ribosomes (*polyribosomes* or *polysomes*) at different sites, a protein is synthesized much faster than its mRNA. In the bone marrow, for example, a total of around  $5 \times 10^{14}$  hemoglobin copies containing 574 amino acids each are produced per second.

The **endoplasmic reticulum (ER, → C, F)** plays a central role in the *synthesis of proteins and lipids*; it also serves as an intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  store (→ p. 17 A). The ER consists of a net-like system of interconnected branched channels and flat cavities bounded by a membrane. The enclosed spaces (*cisterns*) make up around 10% of the cell volume, and the membrane comprises up to 70% of the membrane mass of a cell. *Ribosomes* can attach to the cytosolic surface of parts of the ER, forming a **rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER)**. These ribosomes synthesize export proteins as well as transmembrane proteins (→ **G**) for the plasma membrane, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus ►

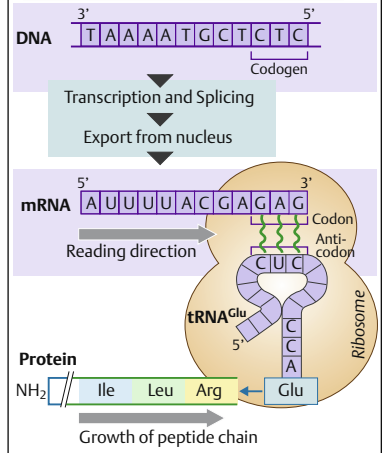
C. Transcription and translation



D. Transcription and splicing



E. Protein coding in DNA and RNA



▶ tus, lysosomes, etc. The start of protein synthesis (at the amino end) by such ribosomes (still unattached) induces a *signal sequence* to which a signal recognition particle (SRP) in the cytosol attaches. As a result, (a) synthesis is temporarily halted and (b) the ribosome (mediated by the SRP and a SRP receptor) attaches to a ribosome receptor on the ER membrane. After that, synthesis continues. In *synthesis of export protein*, a translocator protein conveys the peptide chain to the cisternal space once synthesis is completed. *Synthesis of membrane proteins* is interrupted several times (depending on the number of membrane-spanning domains (→ G2) by translocator protein closure, and the corresponding (hydrophobic) peptide sequence is pushed into the phospholipid membrane. The **smooth endoplasmic reticulum (SER)** contains no ribosomes and is the *production site of lipids* (e.g., for lipoproteins, → p. 256 ff.) and other substances. The ER membrane containing the synthesized membrane proteins or export proteins forms vesicles which are transported to the Golgi apparatus.

The Golgi complex or **Golgi apparatus** (→ F) has sequentially linked functional compartments for further processing of products from the endoplasmic reticulum. It consists of a *cis*-Golgi network (entry side facing the ER), stacked flattened cisternae (Golgi stacks) and a *trans*-Golgi network (sorting and distribution). Functions of the Golgi complex:

- ◆ polysaccharide synthesis;
- ◆ protein processing (**posttranslational modification**), e.g., glycosylation of membrane proteins on certain amino acids (in part in the ER) that are later borne as glycoconjugates on the external cell surface (see below) and  $\gamma$ -carboxylation of glutamate residues (→ p. 102);
- ◆ phosphorylation of sugars of glycoproteins (e.g., to mannose-6-phosphate, as described below);
- ◆ “packaging” of proteins meant for export into *secretory vesicles* (secretory granules), the contents of which are exocytosed into the extracellular space (see p. 248, for example).

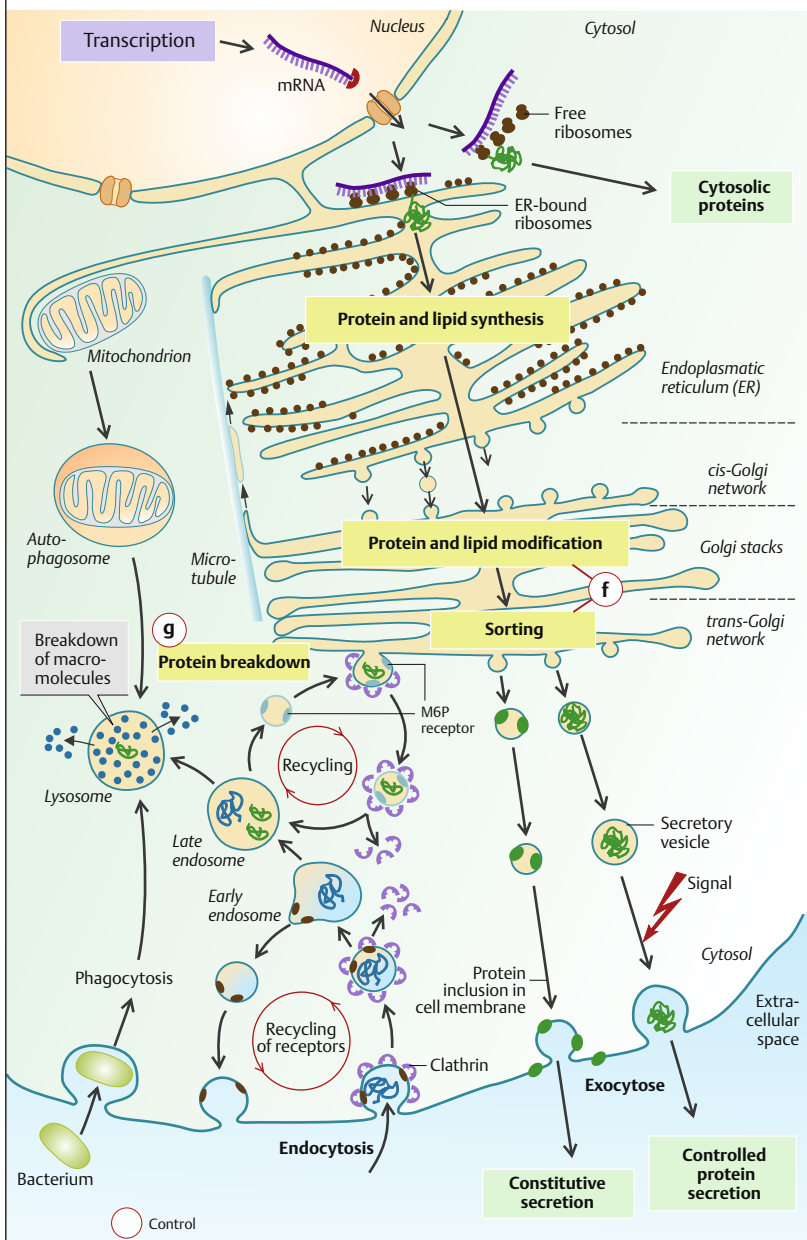
Hence, the Golgi apparatus represents a central **modification, sorting and distribution center** for proteins and lipids received from the endoplasmic reticulum.

**Regulation of gene expression** takes place on the level of transcription (→ C1a), RNA modification (→ C1b), mRNA export (→ C1c), RNA degradation (→ C1d), translation (→ C1e), modification and sorting (→ F,f), and protein degradation (→ F,g).

The **mitochondria** (→ A, B; p. 17 B) are the site of oxidation of carbohydrates and lipids to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and associated  $\text{O}_2$  expenditure. The Krebs cycle (citric acid cycle), respiratory chain and related ATP synthesis also occur in mitochondria. Cells intensely active in metabolic and transport activities are rich in mitochondria—e.g., hepatocytes, intestinal cells, and renal epithelial cells. Mitochondria are enclosed in a double membrane consisting of a smooth outer membrane and an inner membrane. The latter is deeply infolded, forming a series of projections (cristae); it also has important transport functions (→ p. 17 B). Mitochondria probably evolved as a result of symbiosis between aerobic bacteria and anaerobic cells (*symbiosis hypothesis*). The mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) of bacterial origin and the double membrane of mitochondria are relicts of their ancient history. Mitochondria also contain ribosomes which synthesize all proteins encoded by mtDNA.

**Lysosomes** are vesicles (→ F, g) that arise from the ER (via the Golgi apparatus) and are involved in the intracellular digestion of macromolecules. These are taken up into the cell either by *endocytosis* (e.g., uptake of albumin into the renal tubules; → p. 158) or by *phagocytosis* (e.g., uptake of bacteria by macrophages; → p. 94 ff.). They may also originate from the degradation of a cell's own organelles (autophagia, e.g., of mitochondria) delivered inside autophagosomes (→ B, F). A portion of the endocytosed membrane material recycles (e.g., receptor recycling in receptor-mediated endocytosis; → p. 28). *Early and late endosomes* are intermediate stages in this *vesicular transport*. Late endosomes and lysosomes contain acidic hydrolases (proteases, nucleases, lipases, glycosidases, phosphatases, etc., that are active only under acidic conditions). The membrane contains an  $\text{H}^+$ -ATPase that creates an acidic (pH 5) interior environment within the lysosomes and assorted *transport proteins* that (a) release the products of digestion (e.g., ▶

## F. Protein synthesis, sorting, recycling, and breakdown



► amino acids) into the cytoplasm and (b) ensure charge compensation during  $H^+$  uptake ( $Cl^-$  channels). These enzymes and transport proteins are delivered in *primary lysosomes* from the Golgi apparatus. Mannose-6-phosphate (M6P) serves as the “label” for this process; it binds to M6P receptors in the Golgi membrane which, as in the case of receptor-mediated endocytosis (→ p.28), cluster in the membrane with the help of a clathrin framework. In the acidic environment of the lysosomes, the enzymes and transport proteins are separated from the receptor, and M6P is dephosphorylated. The M6P receptor returns to the Golgi apparatus (recycling, → F). The M6P receptor no longer recognizes the dephosphorylated proteins, which prevents them from returning to the Golgi apparatus.

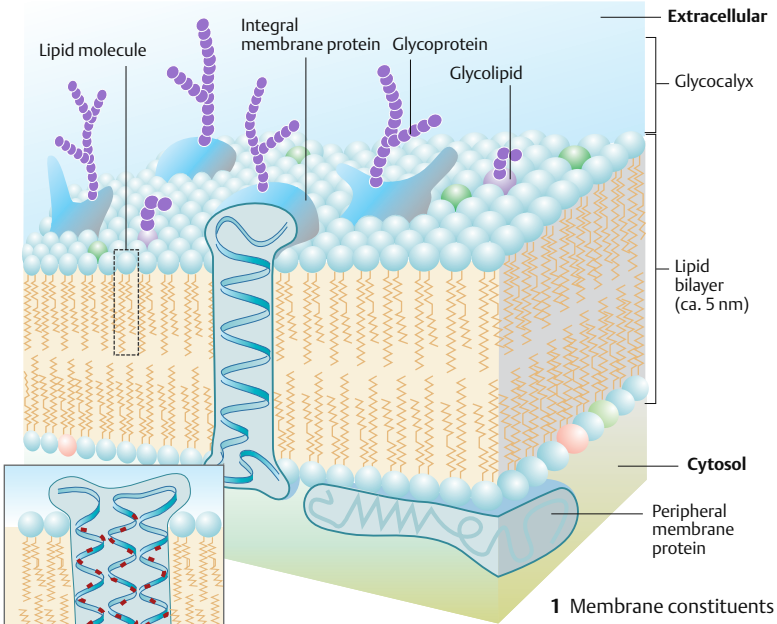
**Peroxisomes** are microbodies containing enzymes (imported via a signal sequence) that permit the oxidation of certain organic molecules ( $R-H_2$ ), such as amino acids and fatty acids:  $R-H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow R + H_2O_2$ . The peroxisomes also contain catalase, which transforms  $2H_2O_2$  into  $O_2 + H_2O$  and oxidizes toxins, such as alcohol and other substances.

Whereas the membrane of organelles is responsible for intracellular compartmentalization, the main job of the **cell membrane** (→ G) is to separate the cell interior from the extracellular space (→ p.2). The cell membrane is a **phospholipid bilayer** (→ G1) that may be either smooth or deeply infolded, like the brush border or the basal labyrinth (→ B). Depending on the cell type, the cell membrane contains variable amounts of *phospholipids*, *cholesterol*, and *glycolipids* (e.g., cerebrosides). The phospholipids mainly consist of phosphatidylcholine (→ G3), phosphatidylserine, phosphatidylethanolamine, and sphingomyelin. The hydrophobic components of the membrane face each other, whereas the hydrophilic components face the watery surroundings, that is, the extracellular fluid or cytosol (→ G4). The lipid composition of the two layers of the membrane differs greatly. Glycolipids are present only in the external layer, as described below. Cholesterol (present in both layers) reduces both the fluidity of the membrane and its permeability to polar substances. Within the two-dimensionally fluid phospholipid

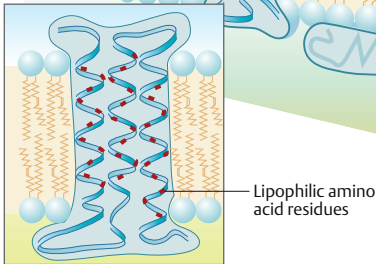
membrane are **proteins** that make up 25% (myelin membrane) to 75% (inner mitochondrial membrane) of the membrane mass, depending on the membrane type. Many of them span the entire lipid bilayer once (→ G1) or several times (→ G2) (*transmembrane proteins*), thereby serving as ion channels, carrier proteins, hormone receptors, etc. The proteins are anchored by their lipophilic amino acid residues, or attached to already anchored proteins. Some proteins can move about freely within the membrane, whereas others, like the anion exchanger of red cells, are anchored to the cytoskeleton. The cell surface is largely covered by the *glycocalyx*, which consists of sugar moieties of glycoproteins and glycolipids in the cell membrane (→ G1,4) and of the extracellular matrix. The glycocalyx mediates cell-cell interactions (surface recognition, cell docking, etc.). For example, components of the glycocalyx of neutrophils dock onto endothelial membrane proteins, called *selectins* (→ p.94).

The **cytoskeleton** allows the cell to maintain and change its shape (during cell division, etc.), make selective movements (migration, cilia), and conduct intracellular transport activities (vesicle, mitosis). It contains *actin filaments* as well as *microtubules* and *intermediate filaments* (e.g., vimentin and desmin filaments, neurofilaments, keratin filaments) that extend from the centrosome.

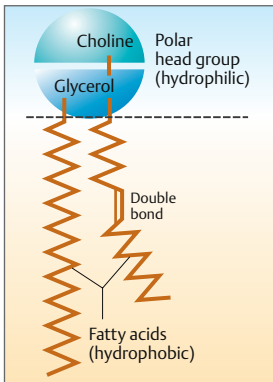
G. Cell membrane



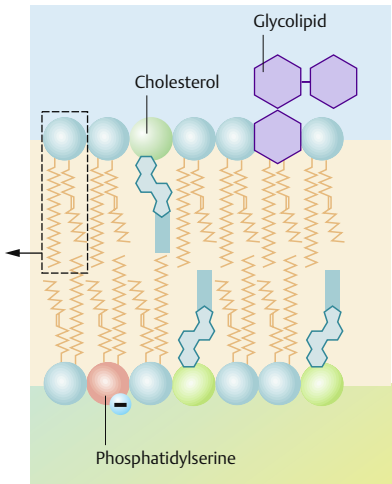
1 Membrane constituents



2 Multiple membrane-spanning integral protein



3 Phospholipid (phosphatidylcholine)



4 Membrane lipids

The lipophilic cell membrane protects the cell interior from the extracellular fluid, which has a completely different composition ( $\rightarrow$  p. 2). This is imperative for the creation and maintenance of a *cell's internal environment* by means of metabolic energy expenditure. Channels (pores), carriers, ion pumps ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26ff.) and the process of cytosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 28) allow **transmembrane transport** of selected substances. This includes the import and export of metabolic substrates and metabolites and the selective transport of ions used to create or modify the *cell potential* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32), which plays an essential role in excitability of nerve and muscle cells. In addition, the effects of substances that readily penetrate the cell membrane in most cases (e.g., water and  $\text{CO}_2$ ) can be mitigated by selectively transporting certain other substances. This allows the cell to compensate for undesirable changes in the cell volume or pH of the cell interior.

### Intracellular Transport

The cell interior is divided into different compartments by the organelle membranes. In some cases, very broad intracellular spaces must be crossed during transport. For this purpose, a variety of specific intracellular transport mechanisms exist, for example:

- ◆ Nuclear pores in the nuclear envelope provide the channels for RNA export out of the nucleus and protein import into it ( $\rightarrow$  p. 11 C);
- ◆ *Protein transport* from the rough endoplasmic reticulum to the Golgi complex ( $\rightarrow$  p. 13 F);
- ◆ *Axonal transport* in the nerve fibers, in which distances of up to 1 meter can be crossed ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42). These transport processes mainly take place along the filaments of the cytoskeleton. Example: while expending ATP, the microtubules set dynein-bound vesicles in motion in the one direction, and kinesin-bound vesicles in the other ( $\rightarrow$  p. 13 F). Main sites of Intracellular Transmembrane Transport are:
  - ◆ *Lysosomes*: Uptake of  $\text{H}^+$  ions from the cytosol and release of metabolites such as amino acids into the cytosol ( $\rightarrow$  p. 12);
  - ◆ *Endoplasmic reticulum (ER)*: In addition to a translocator protein ( $\rightarrow$  p. 10), the ER has two other proteins that transport  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\rightarrow$  A).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$

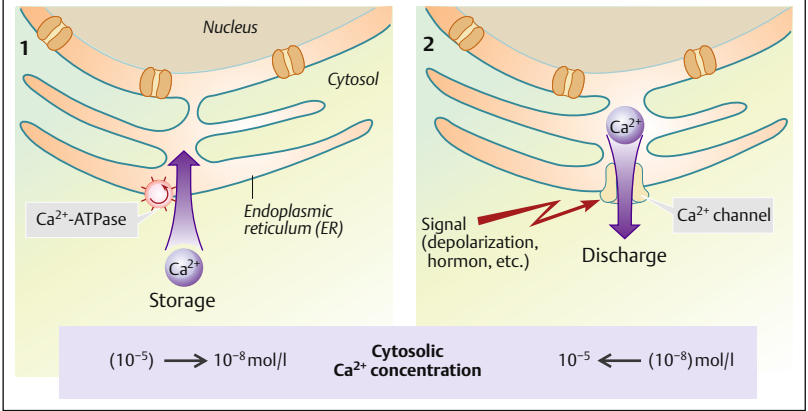
can be pumped from the cytosol into the ER by a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase called *SERCA* (sarcoplasmic endoplasmic reticulum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -transporting ATPase). The resulting  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stores can be released into the cytosol via a  *$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel* (ryanodine receptor, RyR) in response to a triggering signal ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36).

- ◆ *Mitochondria*: The outer membrane contains large pores called *porins* that render it permeable to small molecules ( $< 5$  kDa), and the inner membrane has high concentrations of specific carriers and enzymes ( $\rightarrow$  B). Enzyme complexes of the *respiratory chain* transfer electrons ( $\text{e}^-$ ) from high to low energy levels, thereby pumping  $\text{H}^+$  ions from the matrix space into the intermembrane space ( $\rightarrow$  B1), resulting in the formation of an  *$\text{H}^+$  ion gradient* directed into the matrix. This not only drives ATP synthetase (ATP production;  $\rightarrow$  B2), but also promotes the inflow of pyruvate $^-$  and anorganic phosphate,  $\text{P}_i^-$  (symport;  $\rightarrow$  B2b,c and p. 28).  *$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions* that regulate  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive mitochondrial enzymes in muscle tissue can be pumped into the matrix space with ATP expenditure ( $\rightarrow$  B2), thereby allowing the mitochondria to form a sort of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffer space for protection against dangerously high concentrations of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the cytosol. The inside-negative *membrane potential* (caused by  $\text{H}^+$  release) drives the uptake of  $\text{ADP}^{3-}$  in exchange for  $\text{ATP}^{4-}$  (potential-driven transport;  $\rightarrow$  B2a and p. 22).

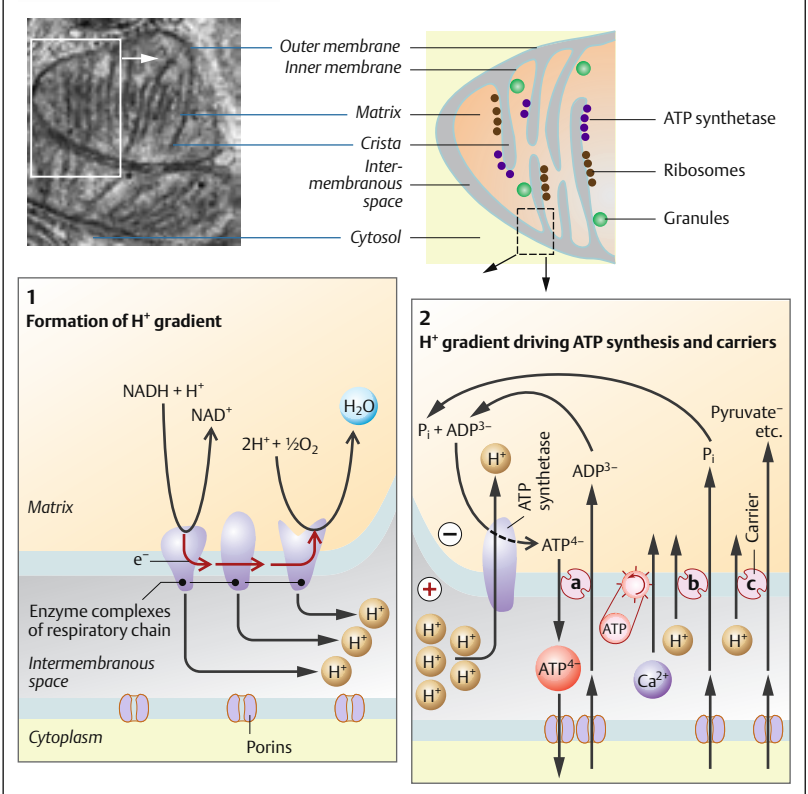
### Transport between Adjacent Cells

In the body, transport between adjacent cells occurs either via diffusion through the extracellular space (e.g., paracrine hormone effects) or through channel-like connecting structures (**connexons**) located within a so-called **gap junction** or **nexus** ( $\rightarrow$  C). A connexon is a hemichannel formed by six connexin molecules ( $\rightarrow$  C2). One connexon docks with another connexon on an adjacent cell, thereby forming a common channel through which substances with molecular masses of up to around 1 kDa can pass. Since this applies not only for ions such as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , but also for a number of organic substances such as ATP, these types of cells are united to form a close electrical and metabolic unit (**syncytium**), as is present in the epithelium, many smooth muscles (single- ▶

**A. Ca<sup>2+</sup> transport through the ER membrane**



**B. Mitochondrial transport**



► unit type, → p. 70), the myocardium, and the glia of the central nervous system. Electric coupling permits the transfer of excitation, e.g., from excited *muscle cells* to their adjacent cells, making it possible to trigger a wave of excitation across wide regions of an organ, such as the stomach, intestine, biliary tract, uterus, ureter, atrium, and ventricles of the heart, but not skeletal muscles. Certain neurons of the retina and CNS also communicate in this manner (*electric synapses*). Gap junctions in the glia (→ p. 344) and epithelia help to distribute the stresses that occur in the course of transport and barrier activities (see below) throughout the entire cell community. However, the connexons close when the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (in an extreme case, due to a hole in cell membrane) or  $\text{H}^+$  concentration increases too rapidly (→ C3). In other words, the individual (defective) cell is left to deal with its own problems when necessary to preserve the functionality of the cell community.

#### Transport through Cell Layers

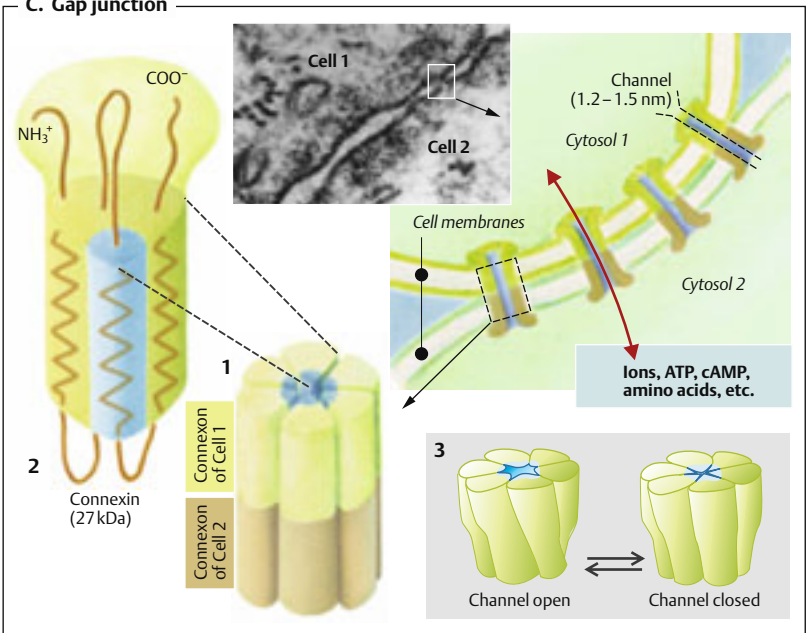
In single cells, the cell membrane is responsible for separating the “interior” from the “exterior.” In the multicellular organism, with its larger compartments, *cell layers* provide this function. The *epithelia* of skin and gastrointestinal, urogenital and respiratory tracts, the *endothelia* of blood vessels, and *neuroglia* are examples of this type of extensive barrier. They separate the immediate extracellular space from other spaces that are greatly different in composition, e.g., those filled with air (skin, bronchial epithelia), gastrointestinal contents, urine or bile (tubules, urinary bladder, gallbladder), aqueous humor of the eye, blood (endothelia) and cerebrospinal fluid (blood–cerebrospinal fluid barrier), and from the extracellular space of the CNS (blood–brain barrier). Nonetheless, certain substances must be able to pass through these cell layers. This requires selective **transcellular transport** with import into the cell followed by export from the cell. Unlike cells with a completely uniform plasma membrane (e.g., blood cells), epi- and endothelial cells are *polar cells*, as defined by their structure (→ p. 9A and B) and transport function. Hence, the *apical membrane* (facing

exterior) of an epithelial cell has a different set of transport proteins from the *basolateral membrane* (facing the blood). So called tight junctions (zonulae occludentes), at which the cells are held together, prevent mixing of the two membrane types (→ D2).

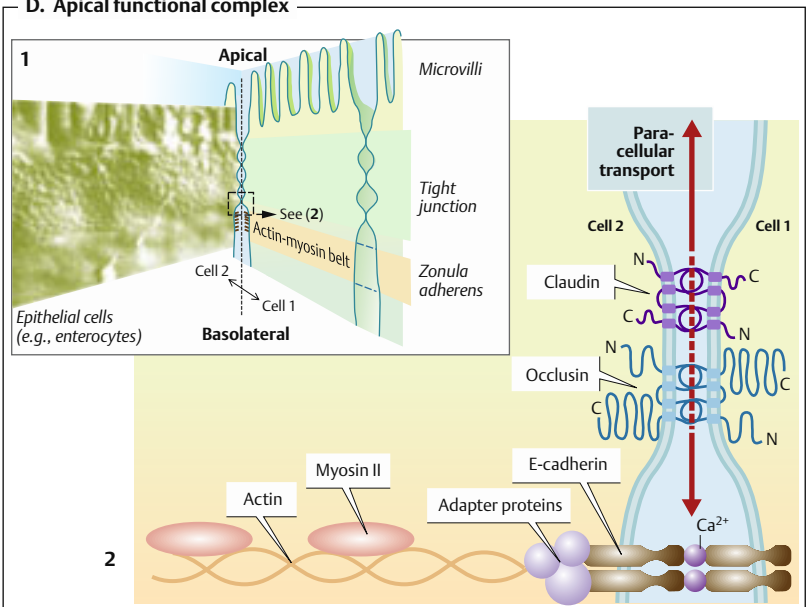
In addition to transcellular transport, cellular barriers also permit **paracellular transport** which takes place between cells. Certain *epithelia* (e.g., in the small intestinal and proximal renal tubules) are relatively permeable to small molecules (leaky), whereas others are less leaky (e.g., distal nephron, colon). The degree of permeability depends on the strength of the *tight junctions* and the types of proteins contained within: *occludins*, JAM [junction adhesion molecule], *claudins*. So far 16 claudins are known to determine the specific permeability: for example intact claudin 16 is required for the paracellular reabsorption of  $\text{Mg}^{2-}$  in the Henle’s loop section of the renal tubule (→ p. 180). The paracellular path and the degree of its permeability (for example cationic or anionic specificity) are essential functional elements of the various epithelia. Macromolecules can cross the barrier formed by the *endothelium* of the vessel wall by transcytosis (→ p. 28), yet paracellular transport also plays an essential role, especially in the fenestrated endothelium. Anionic macromolecules like albumin, which must remain in the bloodstream because of its colloid osmotic action (→ p. 210), are held back by the wall charges at the intercellular spaces and, in some cases, at the fenestra.

**Long-distance transport** between the various organs of the body and between the body and the outside world is also necessary. *Convection* is the most important transport mechanism involved in long-distance transport (→ p. 24).

C. Gap junction



D. Apical functional complex



Photos: H. Lodish. Reproduced with permission from Scientific American Books, New York, 1995.

**Diffusion** is movement of a substance owing to the random thermal motion (brownian movement) of its molecules or ions ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) in all directions throughout a solvent. *Net diffusion* or selective transport can occur only when the solute concentration at the starting point is higher than at the target site. (*Note:* unidirectional fluxes also occur in absence of a concentration gradient—i.e., at equilibrium—but net diffusion is zero because there is equal flux in both directions.) The driving force, “force” not to be taken in a physical sense, of diffusion is, therefore, a **concentration gradient**. Hence, diffusion equalizes concentration differences and requires a driving force: **passive transport** (= downhill transport).

Example: When a layer of  $O_2$  gas is placed on water, the  $O_2$  quickly diffuses into the water along the initially high gas pressure gradient ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). As a result, the partial pressure of  $O_2$  ( $P_{O_2}$ ) rises, and  $O_2$  can diffuse further downward into the next  $O_2$ -poor layer of water ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). (*Note:* with gases, partial pressure is used in lieu of concentration.) However, the steepness of the  $P_{O_2}$  profile or gradient ( $dP_{O_2}/dx$ ) decreases (exponentially) in each subsequent layer situated at distance  $x$  from the  $O_2$  source ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**), which indicates a decrease of the so-called diffusion rate (= diffusing amount of substance per unit of time). Therefore, diffusion is only feasible for **transport across short distances** within the body. Diffusion in liquids is slower than in gases.

The diffusion rate,  $J_{\text{diff}}$  ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ), is also proportional to the area available for diffusion ( $A$ ) and the absolute temperature ( $T$ ) and is inversely proportional to the viscosity ( $\eta$ ) of the solvent and the radius ( $r$ ) of the diffused particles.

According to the *Stokes–Einstein equation*, the *coefficient of diffusion* ( $D$ ) is derived from  $T$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $r$  as

$$D = \frac{R \cdot T}{N_A \cdot 6\pi \cdot r \cdot \eta} [\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}], \quad [1.1]$$

where  $R$  is the general gas constant ( $8.3144 \text{ J} \cdot \text{K}^{-1} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ) and  $N_A$  Avogadro’s constant ( $\rightarrow$  p. 380). In Fick’s first law of diffusion (Adolf Fick, 1855), the diffusion rate is expressed as

$$J_{\text{diff}} = A \cdot D \cdot \left( \frac{dC}{dx} \right) [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.2]$$

where  $C$  is the molar concentration and  $x$  is the distance traveled during diffusion. Since the *driving “force”*—i.e., the concentration gradient ( $dC/dx$ )—decreases with distance, as was explained above, the *time* required for diffusion increases exponentially with the distance traveled ( $t \sim x^2$ ). If, for example, a molecule travels the first  $\mu\text{m}$  in 0.5 ms, it will require 5 s to travel  $100 \mu\text{m}$  and a whopping 14 h for 1 cm.

Returning to the previous example ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**), if the above-water partial pressure of free  $O_2$  diffusion ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) is kept constant, the  $P_{O_2}$  in the water and overlying gas layer will eventually equalize and net diffusion will cease (*diffusion equilibrium*). This process takes place within the body, for example, when  $O_2$  diffuses from the alveoli of the lungs into the bloodstream and when  $CO_2$  diffuses in the opposite direction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120).

Let us imagine two spaces,  $a$  and  $b$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**) supposedly containing different concentrations ( $C_a > C_b$ ) of an uncharged solute. The membrane separating the solutions has pores  $\Delta x$  in length and with total cross-sectional area of  $A$ . Since the pores are permeable to the molecules of the dissolved substance, the molecules will diffuse from  $a$  to  $b$ , with  $C^a - C^b = \Delta C$  representing the concentration gradient as the driving “force”. If we consider only the spaces  $a$  and  $b$  (while ignoring the gradients  $dC/dx$  in the pore, as shown in **B2**, for the sake of simplicity), **Fick’s first law of diffusion** (Eq. 1.2) can be modified as follows:

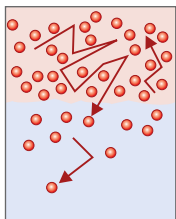
$$J_{\text{diff}} = A \cdot D \cdot \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]. \quad [1.3]$$

In other words, the rate of diffusion increases as  $A$ ,  $D$ , and  $\Delta C$  increase, and decreases as the thickness of the membrane ( $\Delta x$ ) increases.

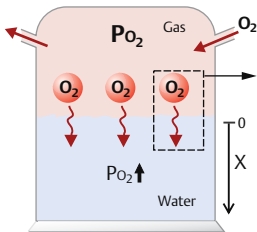
When diffusion occurs through the **lipid membrane** of a cell, one must consider that hydrophilic substances in the membrane are sparingly soluble (compare intramembrane gradient in **C1** to **C2**) and, accordingly, have a hard time penetrating the membrane by means of “*simple*” diffusion. The *oil-and-water partition coefficient* ( $k$ ) is a measure of the lipid solubility of a substance ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). ▶

**A. Diffusion in homogeneous media**

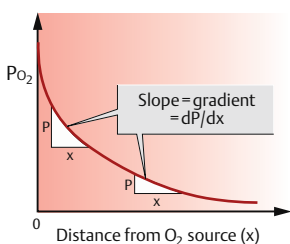
1 Brownian particle movement (~T)



2 Passive transport

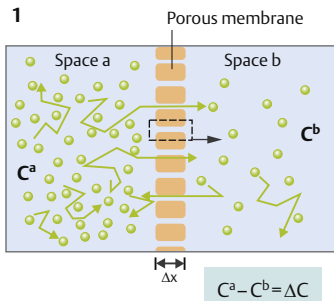


3  $P_{O_2}$  profile

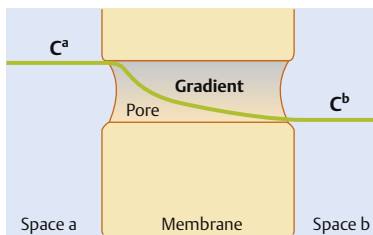


**B. Diffusion through porous membranes**

1

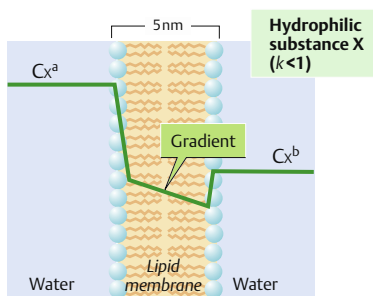


2

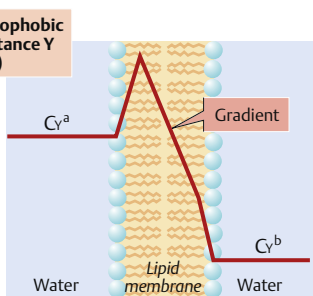


**C. Diffusion through lipid membranes**

1



2



$$k = \frac{\text{Equilibrium concentration in olive oil}}{\text{Equilibrium concentration in water}}$$

(Partly after S. G. Schultz)

► The higher the  $k$  value, the more quickly the substance will diffuse through a pure phospholipid bilayer membrane. Substitution into Eq. 1.3 gives

$$J_{\text{diff}} = k \cdot A \cdot D \cdot \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]; \quad [1.4]$$

Whereas the molecular radius  $r$  ( $\rightarrow$  Eq. 1.1) still largely determines the magnitude of  $D$  when  $k$  remains constant (cf. diethylmalonamide with ethylurea in **D**),  $k$  can vary by many powers of ten when  $r$  remains constant (cf. urea with ethanol in **D**) and can therefore have a decisive effect on the permeability of the membrane.

Since the value of the variables  $k$ ,  $D$ , and  $\Delta x$  within the body generally cannot be determined, they are usually summarized as the *permeability coefficient*  $P$ , where

$$P = k \cdot \frac{D}{\Delta x} [\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]. \quad [1.5]$$

If the diffusion rate,  $J_{\text{diff}}$  [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ], is related to area  $A$ , Eq. 1.4 is transformed to yield

$$\frac{J_{\text{diff}}}{A} = P \cdot \Delta C [\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]. \quad [1.6]$$

The quantity of substance (net) diffused per unit area and time is therefore proportional to  $\Delta C$  and  $P$  ( $\rightarrow$  **E**, blue line with slope  $P$ ).

When considering the **diffusion of gases**,  $\Delta C$  in Eq. 1.4 is replaced by  $\alpha \cdot \Delta P$  (solubility coefficient times partial pressure difference;  $\rightarrow$  p. 126) and  $J_{\text{diff}}$  [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ] by  $\dot{V}_{\text{diff}}$  [ $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ].  $k \cdot \alpha \cdot D$  is then summarized as diffusion conductance, or *Krogh's diffusion coefficient*  $K$  [ $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{Pa}^{-1}$ ]. Substitution into Fick's first diffusion equation yields

$$\frac{\dot{V}_{\text{diff}}}{A} = K \cdot \frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} [\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]. \quad [1.7]$$

Since  $A$  and  $\Delta x$  of alveolar gas exchange ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120) cannot be determined in living organisms,  $K \cdot F / \Delta x$  for  $\text{O}_2$  is often expressed as the  $\text{O}_2$  *diffusion capacity* of the lung,  $D_L$ :

$$\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2, \text{diff}} = D_L \cdot \Delta P_{\text{O}_2} [\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]. \quad [1.8]$$

**Nonionic diffusion** occurs when the uncharged form of a weak base (e.g., ammonia =  $\text{NH}_3$ ) or acid (e.g., formic acid,  $\text{HCOOH}$ ) passes through a membrane more readily than the charged form ( $\rightarrow$  **F**). In this case, the membrane would be more permeable to  $\text{NH}_3$  than to  $\text{NH}_4^+$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 176 ff.). Since the pH of a solution deter-

mines whether these substances will be charged or not (pK value;  $\rightarrow$  p. 384), the diffusion of weak acids and bases is clearly dependent on the pH.

The previous equations have not made allowances for the diffusion of electrically charged particles (**ions**). In their case, the **electrical potential difference** at cell membranes must also be taken into account. The electrical potential difference can be an additional driving force of diffusion (*electrodiffusion*). In that case, positively charged ions (cations) will then migrate to the negatively charged side of the membrane, and negatively charged ions (anions) will migrate to the positively charged side. The prerequisite for this type of transport is, of course, that the membrane contain ion channels ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.) that make it permeable to the transported ions. Inversely, every ion diffusing along a concentration gradient carries a charge and thus creates an electric *diffusion potential* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.).

As a result of the electrical charge of an ion, the permeability coefficient of the ion  $x$  ( $= P_x$ ) can be transformed into the **electrical conductance** of the membrane for this ion,  $g_x$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32):

$$g_x = \frac{P_x \cdot z_x^2 \cdot F^2}{R \cdot T} \cdot \bar{c}_x [\text{S} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}], \quad [1.9]$$

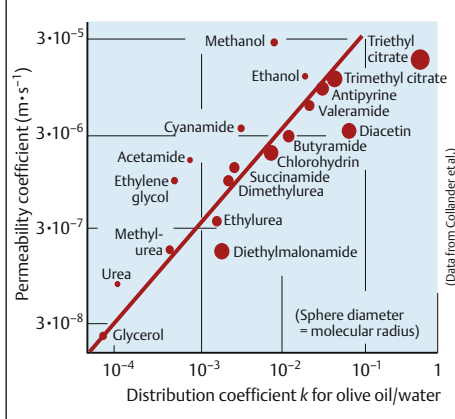
where  $R$  and  $T$  have their usual meaning (explained above) and  $z_x$  equals the charge of the ion,  $F$  equals the *Faraday constant* ( $9,65 \cdot 10^4 \text{ A} \cdot \text{s} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ), and  $\bar{c}_x$  equals the mean ionic activity in the membrane. Furthermore,

$$\bar{c} = \frac{c_1 - c_2}{\ln c_1 - \ln c_2} \quad [1.10]$$

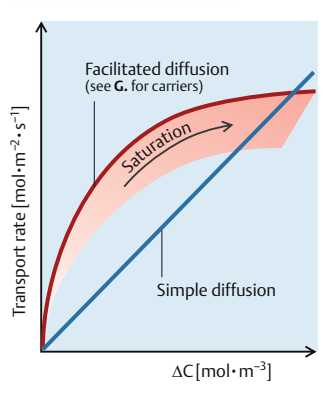
where index 1 = one side and index 2 = the other side of the membrane. Unlike  $P$ ,  $g$  is *concentration-dependent*. If, for example, the extracellular  $\text{K}^+$  concentration rises from 4 to 8 mmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (cytosolic concentration remains constant at 160 mmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ),  $\bar{c}$  and, therefore,  $g_x$  will increase by 20%.

Since most of the biologically important substances are so polar or lipophobic (*small k value*) that simple diffusion of the substances through the membrane would proceed much too slowly, other membrane transport proteins called **carriers** or **transporters** exist in addition to ion channels. Carriers bind the target molecule (e.g., glucose) on one side of the membrane and detach from it on the other side (after a conformational change) ( $\rightarrow$  **G**). As in

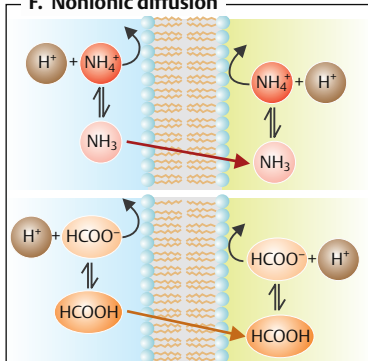
## D. Permeability of lipid membranes



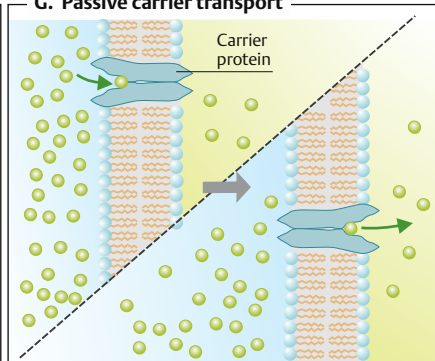
## E. Facilitated diffusion



## F. Nonionic diffusion



## G. Passive carrier transport



simple diffusion, a concentration gradient is necessary for such carrier-mediated transport (passive transport), e.g., with GLUT uniporters for glucose ( $\rightarrow$  p. 158). On the other hand, this type of “facilitated diffusion” is subject to *saturation*

and is *specific* for structurally similar substances that may *competitively inhibit* one another. The carriers in both passive and active transport have the latter features in common ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26).

Water flow or volume flow ( $J_V$ ) across a wall of partition (membrane or cell layer), in living organisms is achieved through *osmosis* (diffusion of water) or *filtration*. They can occur only if the wall is water-permeable. This allows osmotic and hydrostatic pressure differences ( $\Delta\pi$  and  $\Delta P$ ) across the wall to drive the fluids through it.

**Osmotic flow** equals the hydraulic conductivity ( $K_f$ ) times the osmotic pressure difference ( $\Delta\pi$ ) ( $\rightarrow A$ ):

$$J_V = K_f \cdot \Delta\pi \quad [1.11]$$

The **osmotic pressure difference** ( $\Delta\pi$ ) can be calculated using *van't Hoff's law*, as modified by *Staverman*:

$$\Delta\pi = \sigma \cdot R \cdot T \cdot \Delta C_{osm}, \quad [1.12]$$

where  $\sigma$  is the reflection coefficient of the particles (see below),  $R$  is the universal gas constant ( $\rightarrow p. 20$ ),  $T$  is the absolute temperature, and  $\Delta C_{osm}$  [ $osm \cdot kgH_2O^{-1}$ ] is the difference between the lower and higher particle concentrations,  $C_{osm}^a - C_{osm}^b$  ( $\rightarrow A$ ). Since  $\Delta C_{osm}$ , the *driving force for osmosis*, is a negative value,  $J_V$  is also negative (Eq. 1.11). The water therefore flows against the concentration gradient of the solute particles. In other words, the higher concentration,  $C_{osm}^b$ , *attracts* the water. When the *concentration of water* is considered in osmosis, the  $H_2O$  concentration in **A,a**,  $C_{H_2O}^a$ , is greater than that in **A,b**,  $C_{H_2O}^b$ .  $C_{H_2O}^a - C_{H_2O}^b$  is therefore the *driving force for  $H_2O$  diffusion* ( $\rightarrow A$ ). Osmosis also cannot occur unless the reflection coefficient is greater than zero ( $\sigma > 0$ ), that is, unless the wall of partition is less permeable to the solutes than to water.

**Aquaporins (AQP)** are *water channels* that permit the passage of water in many cell membranes. A chief cell in the renal collecting duct contains a total of ca. 107 water channels, comprising AQP2 (regulated) in the luminal membrane, and AQP3 and 4 (permanent) in the basolateral membrane. The permeability of the epithelium of the renal collecting duct to water ( $\rightarrow A$ , right panel) is controlled by the *insertion and removal of AQP2*, which is stored in the membrane of intracellular vesicles. In the presence of the antidiuretic hormone ADH ( $V_2$  receptors, cAMP;  $\rightarrow p. 276$ ), water channels are inserted in the luminal membrane within minutes, thereby increasing the water permeability of the membrane to around  $1.5 \times 10^{-17} L s^{-1}$  per channel.

In **filtration** ( $\rightarrow B$ ),

$$J_V = K_f \cdot (\Delta P - \Delta\pi) = K_f \cdot P_{eff} \quad [1.13]$$

Filtration occurs mainly through *capillary walls*, which allow the passage of small ions and molecules ( $\sigma = 0$ ; see below), but not of plasma proteins ( $\rightarrow B$ , molecule X). Their concentration difference leads to an oncotic pressure difference ( $\Delta\pi$ ) that opposes  $\Delta P$ . Therefore, filtration can occur only if  $\Delta P > \Delta\pi$  ( $\rightarrow B$ , p. 152, p. 210).

**Solvent drag** occurs when solute particles are carried along with the water flow of osmosis or filtration. The amount of solvent drag for solute X ( $J_X$ ) depends mainly on osmotic flow ( $J_V$ ) and the mean *solute activity*  $\bar{a}_X$  ( $\rightarrow p. 382$ ) at the site of penetration, but also on the degree of particle reflection from the membrane, which is described using the **reflection coefficient** ( $\sigma$ ). Solvent drag for solute X ( $J_X$ ) is therefore calculated as

$$J_X = J_V (1 - \sigma) \bar{a}_X [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.14]$$

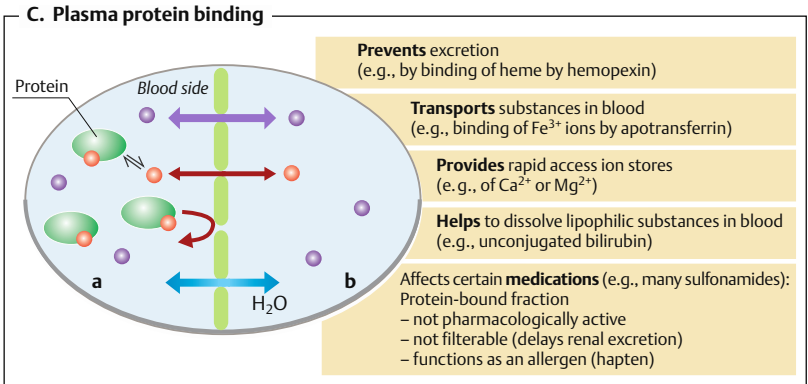
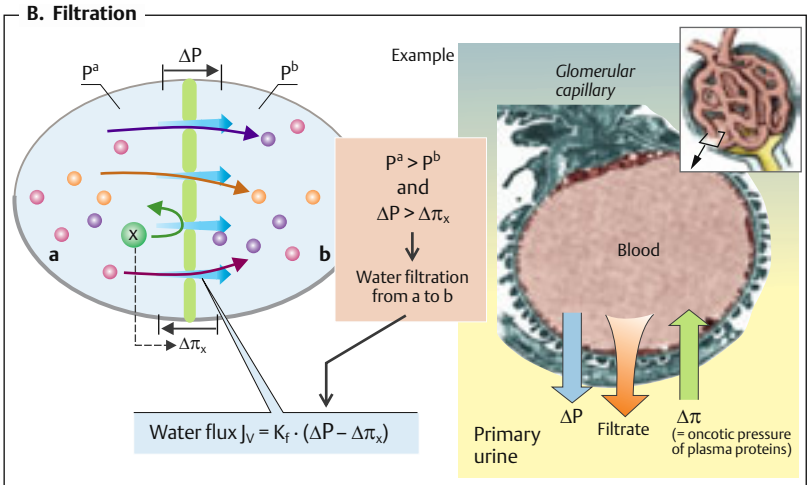
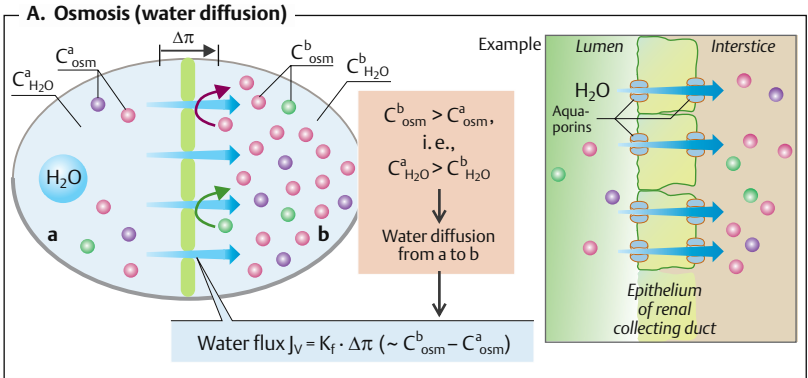
Larger molecules such as proteins are entirely reflected, and  $\sigma = 1$  ( $\rightarrow B$ , molecule X). Reflection of smaller molecules is lower, and  $\sigma < 1$ . When urea passes through the wall of the proximal renal tubule, for example,  $\sigma = 0.68$ . The value  $(1 - \sigma)$  is also called the *sieving coefficient* ( $\rightarrow p. 154$ ).

**Plasma protein binding** occurs when small-molecular substances in plasma bind to proteins ( $\rightarrow C$ ). This hinders the free penetration of the substances through the endothelium or the glomerular filter ( $\rightarrow p. 154$  ff.). At a glomerular filtration fraction of 20%, 20% of a freely filterable substance is filtered out. If, however, 9/10 of the substance is bound to plasma proteins, only 2% will be filtered during each renal pass.

**Convection** functions to transport solutes over *long distances*—e.g., in the circulation or urinary tract. The solute is then carried along like a piece of driftwood. The quantity of solute transported over time ( $J_{conv}$ ) is the product of volume flow  $J_V$  (in  $m^3 \cdot s^{-1}$ ) and the solute concentration  $C$  ( $mol \cdot m^{-3}$ ):

$$J_{conv} = J_V \cdot C [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]. \quad [1.15]$$

The flow of gases in the respiratory tract, the transmission of heat in the blood and the release of heat in the form of warmed air occurs through convection ( $\rightarrow p. 224$ ).



Active transport occurs in many parts of the body when solutes are transported against their concentration gradient (*uphill transport*) and/or, in the case of ions, against an electrical potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22). All in all, active transport occurs against the *electrochemical gradient* or *potential* of the solute. Since passive transport mechanisms represent “downhill” transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 20 ff.), they are not appropriate for this task. Active transport requires the **expenditure of energy**. A large portion of chemical energy provided by foodstuffs is utilized for active transport once it has been made readily available in the form of ATP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 41). The energy created by ATP hydrolysis is used to drive the transmembrane transport of numerous ions, metabolites, and waste products. According to the laws of thermodynamics, the energy expended in these reactions produces *order* in cells and organelles—a prerequisite for survival and normal function of cells and, therefore, for the whole organism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 38 ff.).

In **primary active transport**, the energy produced by hydrolysis of ATP goes *directly* into ion transport through an ion pump. This type of ion pump is called an **ATPase**. They establish the electrochemical gradients rather slowly, e.g., at a rate of around  $1 \mu\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$  of membrane surface area in the case of  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$ . The gradient can be exploited to achieve *rapid (passive) ionic currents* in the opposite direction after the permeability of ion channels has been increased ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.).  $\text{Na}^+$  can, for example, be driven into a nerve cell at a rate of up to  $1000 \mu\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$  during an action potential.

**ATPases** occur ubiquitously in cell membranes ( $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$ ) and in the endoplasmic reticulum and plasma membrane ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}\text{-ATPase}$ ), renal collecting duct and stomach glands ( $\text{H}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$ ), and in lysosomes ( $\text{H}^+\text{-ATPase}$ ). They transport  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{H}^+$ , respectively, by primarily active mechanisms. All except  $\text{H}^+\text{-ATPase}$  consist of 2  $\alpha$ -subunits and 2  $\beta$ -subunits (P-type ATPases). The  $\alpha$ -subunits are phosphorylated and form the ion transport channel ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**).

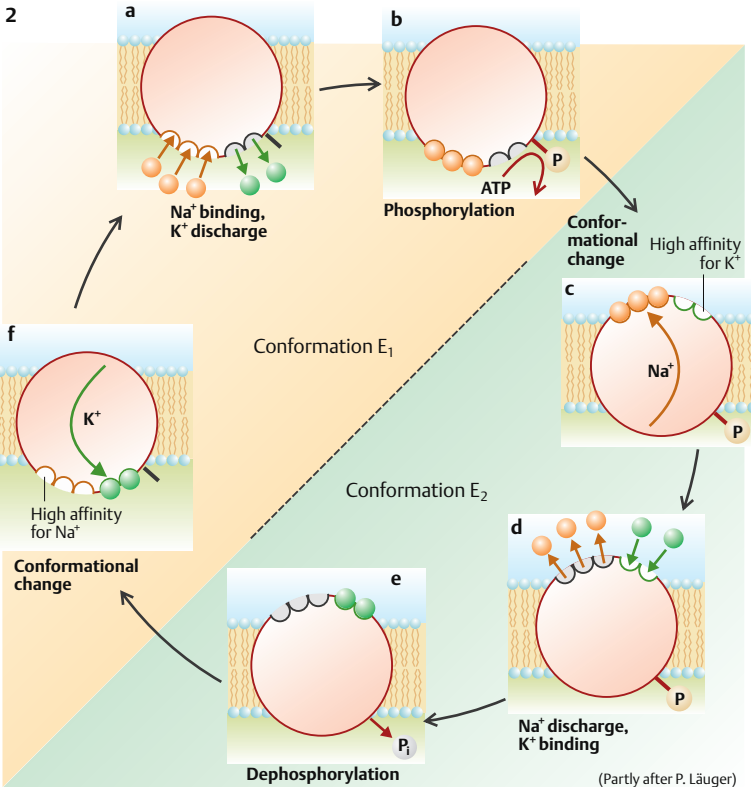
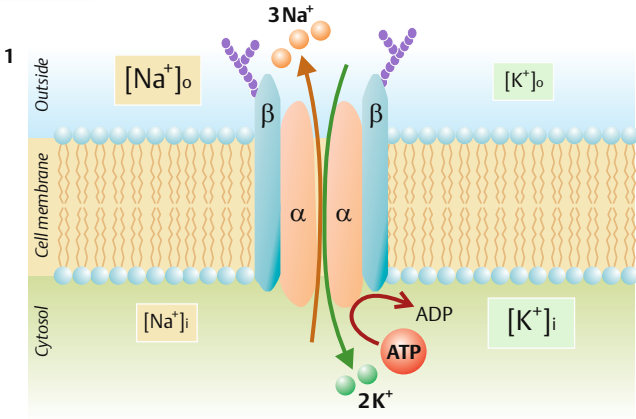
**$\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$**  is responsible for maintenance of *intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  homeostasis* and, thus, for maintenance of the *cell membrane potential*. During each transport cycle

( $\rightarrow$  **A1, A2**), 3  $\text{Na}^+$  and 2  $\text{K}^+$  are “pumped” out of and into the cell, respectively, while 1 ATP molecule is used to phosphorylate the carrier protein ( $\rightarrow$  **A2b**). Phosphorylation first changes the conformation of the protein and subsequently alters the affinities of the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  binding sites. The conformational change is the actual ion transport step since it moves the binding sites to the opposite side of the membrane ( $\rightarrow$  **A2b**  $\Rightarrow$  **d**). Dephosphorylation restores the pump to its original state ( $\rightarrow$  **A2e**  $\Rightarrow$  **f**). The pumping rate of the  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$  increases when the cytosolic  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration rises—due, for instance, to increased  $\text{Na}^+$  influx, or when the extracellular  $\text{K}^+$  rises. Therefore,  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-activatable ATPase}$  is the full name of the pump.  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$  is inhibited by *ouabain* and *cardiac glycosides*.

**Secondary active transport** occurs when uphill transport of a compound (e.g., glucose) via a carrier protein (e.g., sodium glucose transporter type 2, SGLT2) is coupled with the passive (downhill) transport of an ion (in this example  $\text{Na}^+$ ;  $\rightarrow$  **B1**). In this case, the electrochemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient into the cell (created by  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$  at another site on the cell membrane;  $\rightarrow$  **A**) provides the driving force needed for secondary active uptake of glucose into the cell. Coupling of the transport of compounds across a membrane is called **cotransport**, which may be in the form of symport or antiport. **Symport** occurs when the compound and driving ion are transported across the membrane in the same direction ( $\rightarrow$  **B1–3**). **Antiport** (countertransport) occurs when they are transported in opposite directions. Antiport occurs, for example, when an electrochemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient drives  $\text{H}^+$  in the opposite direction by secondary active transport ( $\rightarrow$  **B4**). The resulting  $\text{H}^+$  gradient can then be exploited for *tertiary active symport* of molecules such as peptides ( $\rightarrow$  **B5**) or Fe ions ( $\rightarrow$  p. 90).

**Electroneutral transport** occurs when the net electrical charge remains balanced during transport, e.g., during  $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$  antiport ( $\rightarrow$  **B4**) and  $\text{Na}^+\text{-Cl}^-$  symport ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**). Charge transport occurs in **electrogenic (rheogenic) transport**, e.g., in  $\text{Na}^+\text{-glucose}^0$  symport ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**),  $\text{Na}^+\text{-amino acid}^0$  symport ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**),  $2 \text{Na}^+\text{-amino acid}^-$  symport, or  $\text{H}^+\text{-peptide}^0$  symport ( $\rightarrow$  **B5**). The chemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient provides the sole

A.  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$



► driving force for **electroneutral transport** (e.g.,  $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$  antiport), whereas the negative membrane potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.) provides an additional driving force for rheogenic cotransport into the cell. When secondary active transport (e.g., of glucose) is coupled with the influx of not one but two  $\text{Na}^+$  ions (e.g., SGLT1 symporter), the driving force is doubled. The aid of ATPases is necessary, however, if the required “uphill” concentration ratio is several decimal powers large, e.g.,  $10^6$  in the extreme case of  $\text{H}^+$  ions across the luminal membrane of parietal cells in the stomach. ATPase-mediated transport can also be electrogenic or electroneutral, e.g.,  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$ -ATPase ( $3 \text{ Na}^+/2 \text{ K}^+$ ; cf. p. 46) or  $\text{H}^+-\text{K}^+$ -ATPase ( $1 \text{ H}^+/1 \text{ K}^+$ ), respectively.

Characteristics of active transport:

- ◆ It can be saturated, i.e., it has a limited *maximum capacity* ( $J_{\text{max}}$ ).
  - ◆ It is more or less *specific*, i.e., a carrier molecule will transport only certain chemically similar substances which inhibit the transport of each other (*competitive inhibition*).
  - ◆ Variable quantities of the similar substances are transported at a given concentration, i.e., each has a different *affinity* ( $\sim 1/K_M$ , see below) to the transport system.
  - ◆ Active transport is inhibited when the *energy supply* to the cell is disrupted.
- All of these characteristics except the last apply to passive carriers, that is, to uniporter-mediated (facilitated) diffusion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22).

The **transport rate** of saturable transport ( $J_{\text{sat}}$ ) is usually calculated according to Michaelis–Menten kinetics:

$$J_{\text{sat}} = J_{\text{max}} \cdot \frac{C}{K_M + C} [\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}], \quad [1.16]$$

where  $C$  is the concentration of the substrate in question,  $J_{\text{max}}$  is its maximum transport rate, and  $K_M$  (Michaelis constant) is the substrate concentration that produces one-half  $J_{\text{max}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 389 ff.).

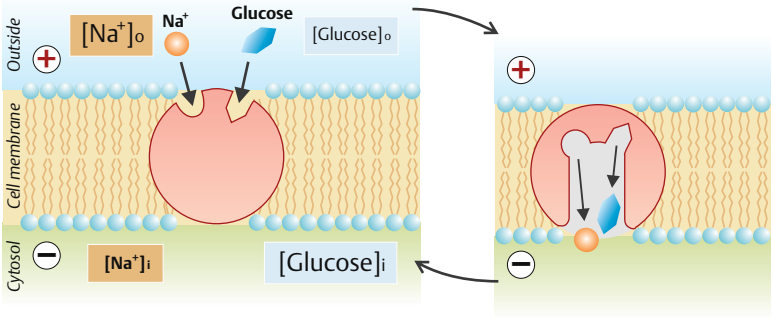
**Cytosis** is a completely different type of active transport involving the formation of membrane-bound vesicles with a diameter of 50–400 nm. **Vesicles** are either pinched off from the plasma membrane (*exocytosis*) or incorporated into it by invagination (*endocytosis*) in conjunction with the expenditure of ATP. In cytolysis, the uptake and release of mac-

romolecules such as proteins, lipoproteins, polynucleotides, and polysaccharides into and out of a cell occurs by specific mechanisms similar to those involved in intracellular transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 12 ff.).

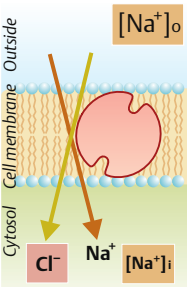
**Endocytosis** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 13) can be broken down into different types, including pinocytosis, receptor-mediated endocytosis, and phagocytosis. **Pinocytosis** is characterized by the continuous unspecific uptake of extracellular fluid and molecules dissolved in it through relatively small vesicles. **Receptor-mediated endocytosis** ( $\rightarrow$  C) involves the selective uptake of specific macromolecules with the aid of receptors. This usually begins at small depressions (*pits*) on the plasma membrane surface. Since the insides of the pits are often densely coated with the protein *clathrin*, they are called *clathrin-coated pits*. The **receptors** involved are integral cell membrane proteins such as those for low-density lipoprotein (LPL; e.g., in hepatocytes) or intrinsic factor-bound cobalamin (e.g., in ileal epithelial cells). Thousands of the same receptor type or of different receptors can converge at coated pits ( $\rightarrow$  C), yielding a tremendous increase in the efficacy of ligand uptake. The endocytosed vesicles are initially coated with clathrin, which is later released. The vesicles then transform into *early endosomes*, and most of the associated receptors circulate back to the cell membrane ( $\rightarrow$  C and p. 13). The endocytosed ligand is either exocytosed on the opposite side of the cell (*transcytosis*, see below), or is digested by *lysosomes* ( $\rightarrow$  C and p. 13). **Phagocytosis** involves the endocytosis of particulate matter, such as microorganisms or cell debris, by phagocytes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94 ff.) in conjunction with lysosomes. Small digestion products, such as amino acids, sugars and nucleotides, are transported out of the lysosomes into the cytosol, where they can be used for cellular metabolism or secreted into the extracellular fluid. When certain hormones such as *insulin* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 284) bind to receptors on the surface of target cells, hormone-receptor complexes can also enter the coated pits and are endocytosed (*internalized*) and digested by lysosomes. This reduces the density of receptors available for hormone binding. In other words, an increased hormone supply *down-regulates* the receptor density. ►

**B. Secondary and tertiary active transport**

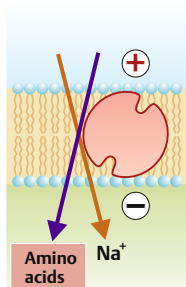
1 Electrochemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient drives secondary active glucose transport



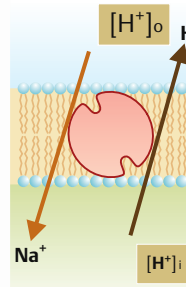
2 Electroneutral symport



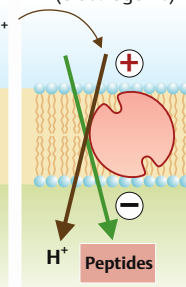
3 Electrogenic symport



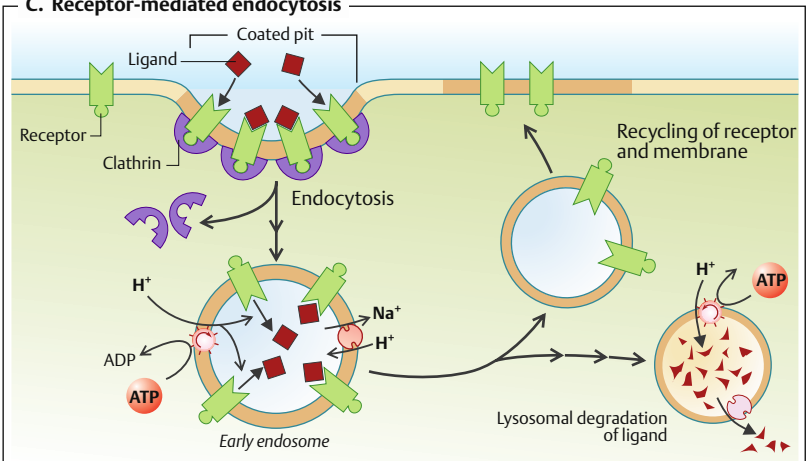
4 Electroneutral antiport



5 Tertiary active symport (electrogenic)



**C. Receptor-mediated endocytosis**



► **Exocytosis** (→ p.13 see Table F) is a method for selective export of macromolecules out of the cell (e.g., pancreatic enzymes; → p.248 ff.) and for release of many hormones (e.g., posterior pituitary hormone; → p.282) or neurotransmitters (→ p.50 ff.). These substances are kept “packed” and readily available in (clathrin-coated) *secretory vesicles*, waiting to be released when a certain signal is received (increase in cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ). The “packing material” (vesicle membrane) is later re-endocytosed and *recycled*. Exocytotic membrane fusion also helps to insert vesicle-bound proteins into the plasma membrane (→ p.13, Table F). The liquid contents of the vesicle then are automatically emptied in a process called **constitutive exocytosis** (→ D).

In constitutive exocytosis, the protein complex *coatomer* (coat assembly protomer) takes on the role of clathrin (see above). Within the Golgi membrane, GNRP (guanine nucleotide-releasing protein) phosphorylates the GDP of the ADP-ribosylation factor (ARF) to GTP (→ D1), resulting in the dispatch of vesicles from the trans-Golgi network. ARF-GTP complexes then anchor on the membrane and bind with coatomer (→ D2), thereby producing **coatomer-coated vesicles** (→ D3). The membranes of the vesicles contain v-SNAREs (vesicle synaptosome-associated protein receptors), which recognize t-SNAREs (target-SNAREs) in the target membrane (the plasma membrane, in this case). This results in cleavage of ARF-GTP, dissociation of ARF-GDP and coatomer molecules and, ultimately, to membrane fusion and exocytosis (→ D4, D5) to the extracellular space (ECS).

**Transcytosis** is the uptake of macromolecules such as proteins and hormones by endocytosis on one side of the cell, and their release on the opposite side. This is useful for *transcellular transport of the macromolecules* across cell layers such as endothelia.

## Cell Migration

Most cells in the body are theoretically able to move from one place to another or *migrate* (→ E), but only a few cell species actually do so. The *sperm* are probably the only cells with a special propulsion mechanism. By waving their whip-like tail, the sperm can travel at

speeds of up to around  $2000\ \mu\text{m}/\text{min}$ . Other cells also migrate, but at much slower rates. *Fibroblasts*, for example, move at a rate of around  $1.2\ \mu\text{m}/\text{min}$ . When an injury occurs, fibroblasts migrate to the wound and aid in the formation of scar tissue. Cell migration also plays a role in *embryonal development*. Chemotactically attracted *neutrophil granulocytes* and *macrophages* can even migrate through vessel walls to attack invading bacteria (→ p.94ff.). Cells of some tumors can also migrate to various tissues of the body or *metastasize*, thereby spreading their harmful effects.

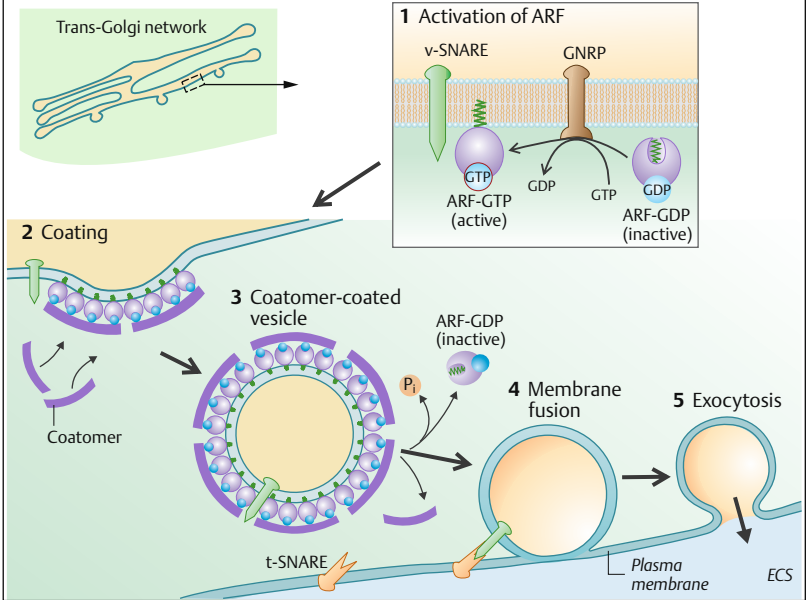
Cells migrate by “crawling” on a stable surface (→ E1). The following activities occur during cell migration:

◆ *Back end of the cell*: (a) Depolymerization of actin and tubulin in the cytoskeleton; (b) endocytosis of parts of the cell membrane, which are then propelled forward as endocytotic vesicles to the front of the cell, and (c) release of ions and fluids from the cell.

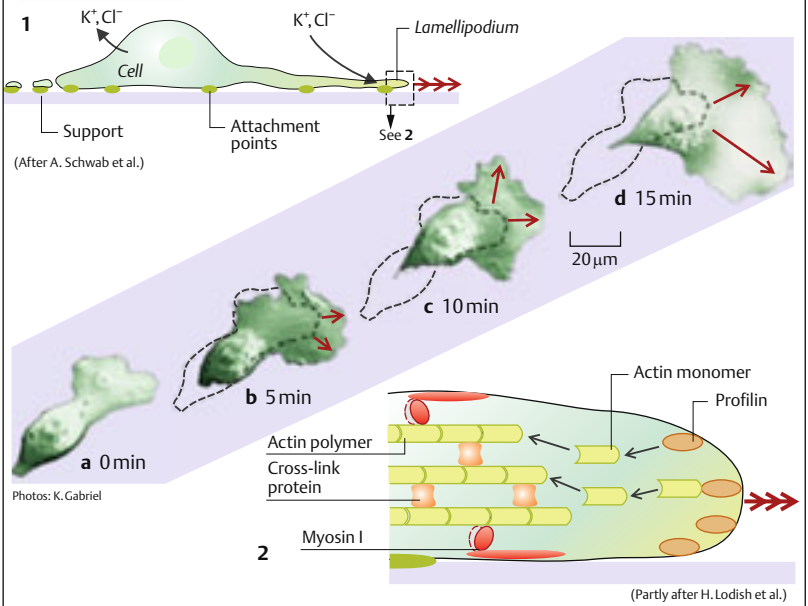
◆ *Front end of the cell (lamellipodia)*: (a) Polymerization of actin monomers is achieved with the aid of profilin (→ E2). The monomers are propelled forward with the help of plasma membrane-based myosin I (fueled by ATP); (b) reinsertion of the vesicles in the cell membrane; (c) uptake of ions and fluids from the environment.

Parts of the cell membrane that are not involved in cytoskeleton are conveyed from front to back, as on a track chain. Since the cell membrane is attached to the stable surface (primarily fibronectin of the extracellular matrix in the case of fibroblasts), the cell moves forward relative to the surface. This is achieved with the aid of specific receptors, such as fibronectin receptors in the case of fibroblasts.

**D. Constitutive exocytosis**



**E. Cell migration**



An **electrical potential difference** occurs due to the *net movement of charge during ion transport*. A **diffusion potential** develops for instance, when ions (e.g.,  $K^+$ ) diffuse (down a chemical gradient;  $\rightarrow$  p. 20ff.) out of a cell, making the cell interior negative relative to the outside. The rising diffusion potential then drives the ions back into the cell (potential-driven ion transport;  $\rightarrow$  p. 22). Outward  $K^+$  diffusion persists until equilibrium is reached. At equilibrium, the two opposing forces become equal in size. In other words, the sum of the two or the **electrochemical gradient** (and thereby the electrochemical potential) equals zero, and there is no further net movement of ions (*equilibrium concentration*) at a certain voltage (*equilibrium potential*).

The **equilibrium potential ( $E_x$ )** for any species of ion X distributed inside (i) and outside (o) a cell can be calculated using the Nernst equation:

$$E_x = \frac{R \cdot T}{F \cdot z_x} \cdot \ln \frac{[X]_o}{[X]_i} \quad [V] \quad [1.17]$$

where R is the universal gas constant ( $= 8.314 \text{ J} \cdot \text{K}^{-1} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ), T is the absolute temperature ( $310^\circ\text{K}$  in the body), F is the Faraday constant or charge per mol ( $= 9.65 \times 10^4 \text{ A} \cdot \text{s} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ), z is the valence of the ion in question (+1 for  $K^+$ , +2 for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , -1 for  $\text{Cl}^-$ , etc.), ln is the natural logarithm, and [X] is the effective concentration = *activity* of the ion X ( $\rightarrow$  p. 382).  $R \cdot T/F = 0.0267 \text{ V}^{-1}$  at body temperature ( $310^\circ\text{K}$ ). It is sometimes helpful to convert  $\ln([X]_o/[X]_i)$  into  $-\ln([X]_i/[X]_o)$ , V into mV and ln into log before calculating the equilibrium potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 386f). After insertion into Eq. 1.17, the **Nernst equation** then becomes

$$E_x = -61 \cdot \frac{1}{z_x} \cdot \log \frac{[X]_i}{[X]_o} \quad [\text{mV}] \quad [1.18]$$

If the ion of species X is  $K^+$ , and  $[K^+]_i = 140$ , and  $[K^+]_o = 4.5 \text{ mmol/kg H}_2\text{O}$ , the equilibrium potential  $E_K = -61 \cdot \log 31 \text{ mV}$  or  $-91 \text{ mV}$ . If the cell membrane is permeable only to  $K^+$ , the **membrane potential ( $E_m$ )** will eventually reach a value of  $-91 \text{ mV}$ , and  $E_m$  will equal  $E_K$  ( $\rightarrow$  A1).

At equilibrium potential of ion X, the chemical gradient will drive just as many ions of species X in the one direction as the electrical potential does in the opposite direction. The **electrochemical potential ( $E_m - E_x$ )** or so-called

electrochemical driving “force”, will equal zero, and the sum of ionic inflow and outflow or the **net flux ( $I_x$ )** will also equal zero.

**Membrane conductance ( $g_x$ )**, a concentration-dependent variable, is generally used to describe the permeability of a cell membrane to a given ion instead of the permeability coefficient P (see Eq. 1.5 on p. 22 for conversion). Since it is relative to membrane surface area,  $g_x$  is expressed in siemens ( $S = 1/\Omega$ ) per  $\text{m}^2$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22, Eq. 1.9).

**Ohm’s law** defines the net ion current per unit of membrane surface area  $I_x$  [ $\text{A} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ] as

$$I_x = g_x \cdot (E_m - E_x) \quad [1.19]$$

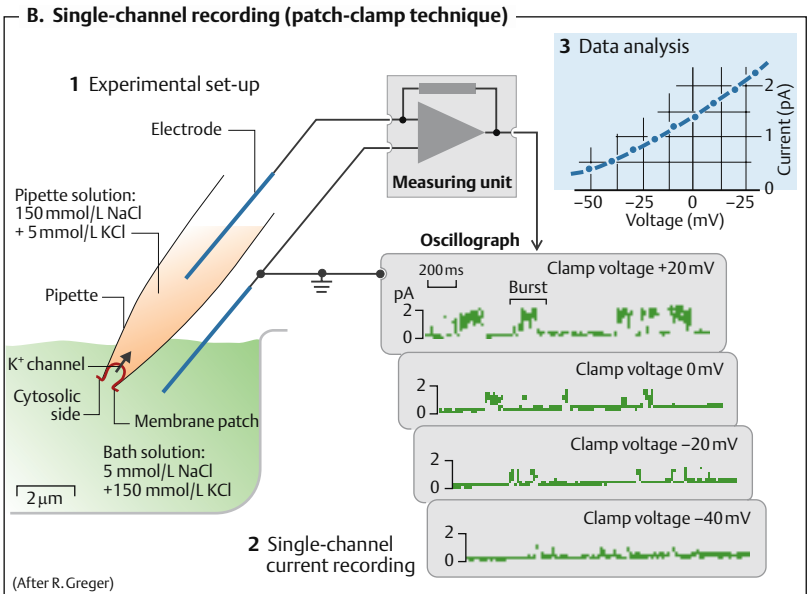
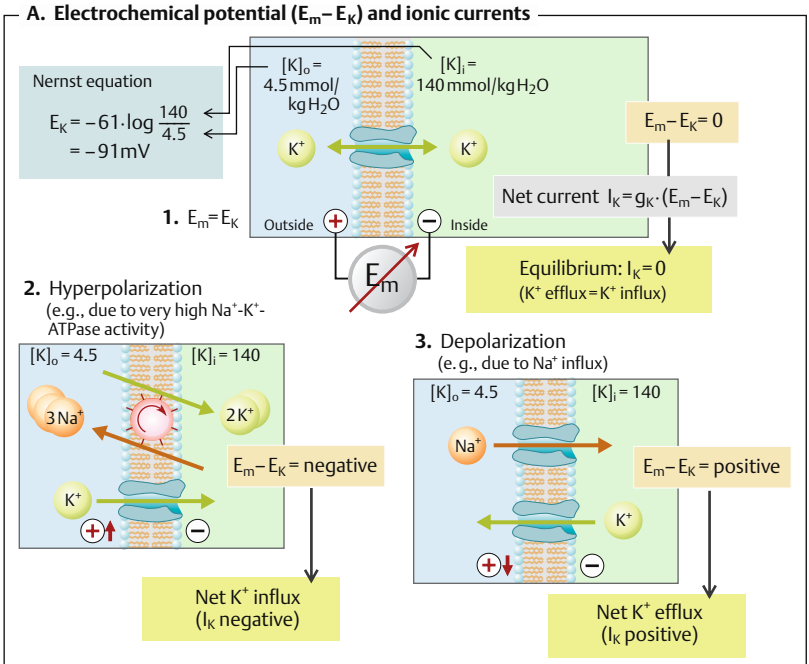
$I_x$  will therefore differ from zero when the prevailing membrane potential,  $E_m$ , does not equal the equilibrium potential,  $E_x$ . This occurs, for example, after strong transient activation of  $\text{Na}^+ \text{K}^+ \text{ATPase}$  (electrogenic;  $\rightarrow$  p. 26): hyperpolarization of the membrane ( $\rightarrow$  A2), or when the cell membrane conducts more than one ion species, e.g.,  $K^+$  as well as  $\text{Cl}^-$  and  $\text{Na}^+$ : depolarization ( $\rightarrow$  A3). If the membrane is permeable to different ion species, the **total conductance** of the membrane ( $g_m$ ) equals the sum of all parallel conductances ( $g_1 + g_2 + g_3 + \dots$ ). The **fractional conductance** for the ion species X ( $f_x$ ) can be calculated as

$$f_x = g_x/g_m \quad [1.20]$$

The membrane potential,  $E_m$ , can be determined if the fractional conductances and equilibrium potentials of the conducted ions are known (see Eq. 1.18). Assuming  $K^+$ ,  $\text{Na}^+$ , and  $\text{Cl}^-$  are the ions in question,

$$E_m = (E_K \cdot f_K) + (E_{\text{Na}} \cdot f_{\text{Na}}) + (E_{\text{Cl}} \cdot f_{\text{Cl}}) \quad [1.21]$$

Realistic values in *resting nerve cells* are:  $f_K = 0.90$ ,  $f_{\text{Na}} = 0.03$ ,  $f_{\text{Cl}} = 0.07$ ;  $E_K = -90 \text{ mV}$ ,  $E_{\text{Na}} = +70 \text{ mV}$ ,  $E_{\text{Cl}} = -83 \text{ mV}$ . Inserting these values into equation 1.21 results in an  $E_m$  of  $-85 \text{ mV}$ . Thus, the driving forces (=electrochemical potentials =  $E_m - E_x$ ), equal  $+5 \text{ mV}$  for  $K^+$ ,  $-145 \text{ mV}$  for  $\text{Na}^+$ , and  $-2 \text{ mV}$  for  $\text{Cl}^-$ . The driving force for  $K^+$  efflux is therefore low, though  $g_K$  is high. Despite a high driving force for  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Na}^+$  influx is low because the  $g_{\text{Na}}$  and  $f_{\text{Na}}$  of resting cells are relatively small. Nonetheless, the sodium current,  $I_{\text{Na}}$ , can rise tremendously when large numbers of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels open during an action potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46). ▶



► **Electrodiffusion.** The potential produced by the transport of one ion species can also drive other cations or anions through the cell membrane ( $\rightarrow$  p.22), provided it is permeable to them. The  $K^+$  diffusion potential leads to the efflux of  $Cl^-$ , for example, which continues until  $E_{Cl} = E_m$ . According to Equation 1.18, this means that the cytosolic  $Cl^-$  concentration is reduced to 1/25 th of the extracellular concentration (*passive distribution*) of  $Cl^-$  between cytosol and extracellular fluid). In the above example, there was a small electrochemical  $Cl^-$  potential driving  $Cl^-$  out of the cell ( $E_m - E_{Cl} = -2$  mV). This means that the cytosolic  $Cl^-$  concentration is higher than in passive  $Cl^-$  distribution ( $E_{Cl} = E_m$ ). Therefore,  $Cl^-$  ions must have been actively taken up by the cell, e.g., by a  $Na^+ Cl^-$  symport carrier ( $\rightarrow$  p.29 B): *active distribution* of  $Cl^-$ .

To achieve ion transport, membranes have a variable number of **channels** (pores) specific for different ion species ( $Na^+$ ,  $Ca^{2+}$ ,  $K^+$ ,  $Cl^-$ , etc.). The conductance of the cell membrane is therefore determined by the type and number of ion channels that are momentarily open. *Patch-clamp techniques* permit the direct measurement of *ionic currents through single ion channels* ( $\rightarrow$  B). Patch-clamp studies have shown that the conductance of a membrane does not depend on the change of the pore diameter of its ion channels, but on their average frequency of opening. The ion permeability of a membrane is therefore related to the **open-probability** of the channels in question. Ion channels open in frequent bursts ( $\rightarrow$  B2). Several ten thousands of ions pass through the channel during each individual burst, which lasts for only a few milliseconds.

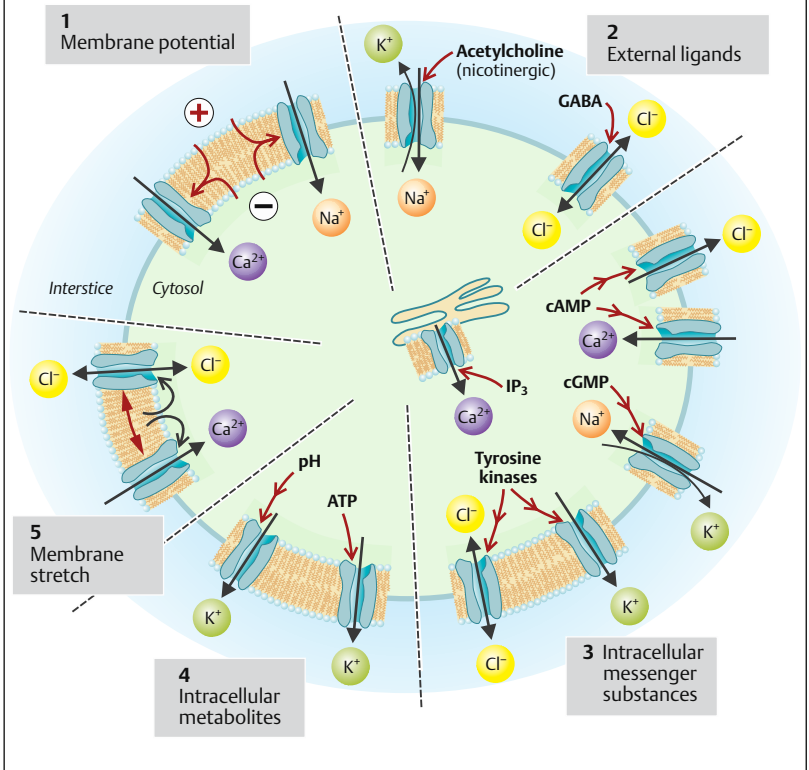
During a **patch-clamp recording**, the opening (0.3–3  $\mu$ m in diameter) of a glass electrode is placed over a cell membrane in such a way that the opening covers only a small part of the membrane (*patch*) containing only one or a small number of ion channels. The whole cell can either be left intact, or a membrane patch can excised for isolated study ( $\rightarrow$  B1). In *single-channel recording*, the membrane potential is kept at a preset value (*voltage clamp*). This permits the measurement of ionic current in a single channel. The measurements are plotted ( $\rightarrow$  B3) as current (I) over voltage (V). The slope of the *I/V curve* corresponds to the conduct-

ance of the channel for the respective ion species (see Eq. 1.18). The *zero-current potential* is defined as the voltage at which the *I/V curve* intercepts the x-axis of the curve ( $I = 0$ ). The ion species producing current *I* can be deduced from the zero-current potential. In example B, the zero-current potential equals  $-90$  mV. Under the conditions of this experiment, an electrochemical gradient exists only for  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$ , but not for  $Cl^-$  ( $\rightarrow$  B). At these gradients,  $E_K = -90$  mV and  $E_{Na} = +90$  mV. As  $E_K$  equals the zero-current potential, the channel is exclusively permeable to  $K^+$  and does not allow other ions like  $Na^+$  to pass. The channel type can also be determined by adding specific channel blockers to the system.

**Control of ion channels** ( $\rightarrow$  C). Channel open-probability is controlled by five main factors:

- ◆ *Membrane potential*, especially in  $Na^+$ ,  $Ca^{2+}$  and  $K^+$  channels in nerve and muscle fibers ( $\rightarrow$  C1; pp.46 and 50).
- ◆ *External ligands* that bind with the channel ( $\rightarrow$  C2). This includes acetylcholine on the postsynaptic membrane of nicotinic synapses (cation channels), glutamate (cation channels), and glycine or GABA ( $Cl^-$  channels).
- ◆ *Intracellular messenger substances* ( $\rightarrow$  C3) such as:
  - cAMP (e.g., in  $Ca^{2+}$  channels in myocardial cells and  $Cl^-$  channels in epithelial cells);
  - cGMP (plays a role in muscarinic effects of acetylcholine and in excitation of the retinal rods);
  - $IP_3$  (e.g. opening of  $Ca^{2+}$  channels of intracellular  $Ca^{2+}$  stores);
  - Small G-proteins (e.g.  $Ca^{2+}$  channels of the cell membrane);
  - Tyrosine kinases (e.g.  $Cl^-$  and  $K^+$  channels during apoptosis);
  - $Ca^{2+}$  (affects, for instance,  $K^+$  channels and degree of activation of rapid  $Na^+$  channels;  $\rightarrow$  p.46).
- ◆ *Intracellular metabolites* ( $\rightarrow$  C4) such as ATP (e.g., in  $K^+$  channels in the heart and B cells in pancreatic islets) or *H<sup>+</sup> ions* (e.g., in  $K^+$  channels in renal epithelial cells);
- ◆ *Membrane stretch* ( $\rightarrow$  C5), the direct or indirect (?) effects of which play a role in  $Ca^{2+}$  channels of smooth muscle fibers and generally in normal  $K^+$  and  $Cl^-$  channels in swelling cells.

C. Control of ion channels



The **cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration,  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$** , (ca. 0.1 to 0.01  $\mu\text{mol/L}$ ) is several decimal powers lower than the extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  (ca. 1.3  $\text{mmol/L}$ ). This is because  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is continuously pumped from the cytosol into **intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stores** such as the endoplasmic and sarcoplasmic reticulum ( $\rightarrow$  p. 17 A), vesicles, mitochondria and nuclei or is *transported out of the cell*. Both processes occur by primary active transport ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPases) and, in the case of efflux, by additional secondary active transport through  $\text{Ca}^{2+}/3\text{Na}^+$  antiporters ( $\rightarrow$  A1).

To **increase the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels** conduct  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from intracellular stores and the extracellular space into the cytosol ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The frequency of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel opening in the cell membrane is increased by

- ◆ **Depolarization** of the cell membrane (nerve and muscle cells);

- ◆ **Ligands** (e.g., via  $G_o$  proteins;  $\rightarrow$  p. 276);

- ◆ **Intracellular messengers** (e.g.,  $\text{IP}_3$  and cAMP;  $\rightarrow$  p. 276ff.);

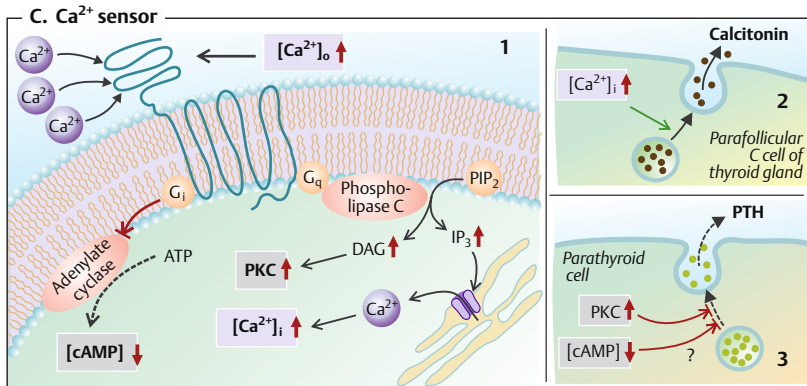
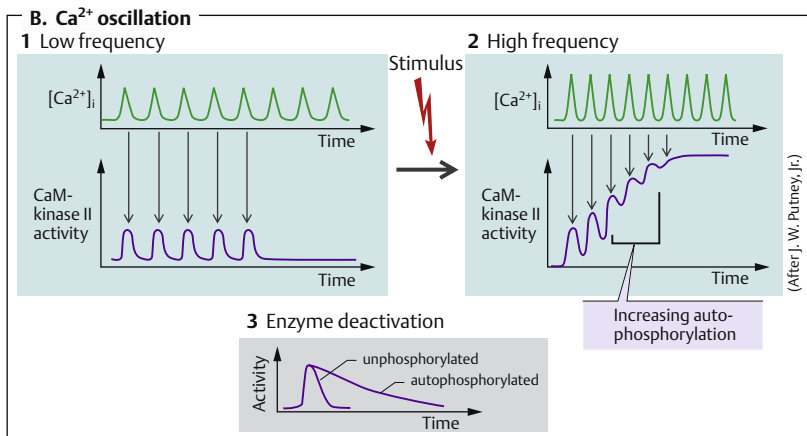
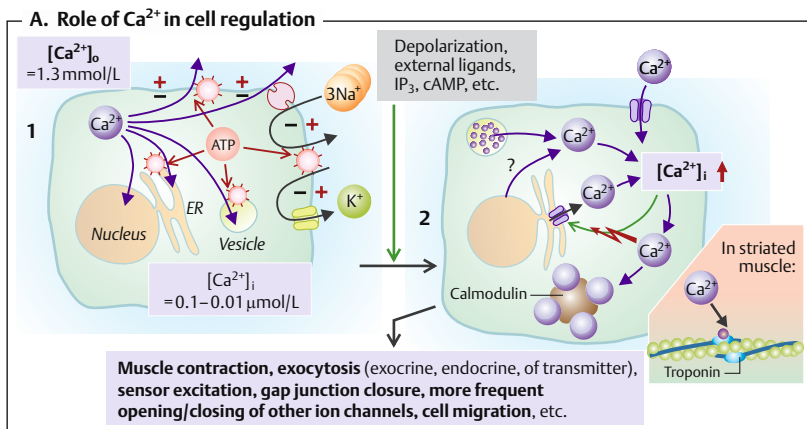
- ◆ **Stretching or heating** of the cell membrane. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels of the endoplasmic and sarcoplasmic reticulum open more frequently in response to signals such as a rise in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  (influx of external  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  works as the "spark" or trigger) or inositol *tris*-phosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ;  $\rightarrow$  A2 and p. 278).

A **rise in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  is a signal** for many important cell functions ( $\rightarrow$  A), including myocyte contraction, exocytosis of neurotransmitters in presynaptic nerve endings, endocrine and exocrine hormone secretion, the excitation of certain sensory cells, the closure of gap junctions in various cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 19 C), the opening of other types of ion channels, and the migration of leukocytes and tumor cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 30) as well as thrombocyte activation and sperm mobilization. Some of these activities are mediated by **calmodulin**. A calmodulin molecule can bind up to 4  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions when the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  rises ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The  **$\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -calmodulin complexes** activate a number of different enzymes, including calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II (CaM-kinase II) and myosin light chain kinase (MLCK), which is involved in smooth muscle contraction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 70).

**$[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillation** is characterized by multiple brief and regular  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  increases ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$

spikes) in response to certain stimuli or hormones ( $\rightarrow$  B). The frequency, not amplitude, of  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillation is the quantitative signal for cell response. When low-frequency  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillation occurs, CaM-kinase II, for example, is activated and phosphorylates only its target proteins, but is quickly and completely deactivated ( $\rightarrow$  B1, B3). High-frequency  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillation results in an increasing degree of autophosphorylation and progressively delays the deactivation of the enzyme ( $\rightarrow$  B3). As a result, the activity of the enzyme decays more and more slowly between  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  signals, and each additional  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  signal leads to a summation of enzyme activity ( $\rightarrow$  B2). As with action potentials ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46), this frequency-borne, digital *all-or-none* type of signal transmission provides a much clearer message than the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  amplitude, which is influenced by a number of factors.

**$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors.** The extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  plays an important role in blood coagulation and bone formation as well as in nerve and muscle excitation.  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  is tightly controlled by hormones such as PTH, calcitriol and calcitonin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 292), and represents the feedback signal in this control circuit ( $\rightarrow$  p. 292). The involved  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors are membrane proteins that detect **high  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  levels** on the cell surface and dispatch  $\text{IP}_3$  and DAG (diacylglycerol) as intracellular second messengers with the aid of a  $G_q$  protein ( $\rightarrow$  C1 and p. 276ff.).  $\text{IP}_3$  triggers an increase in the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  of parafollicular C cells of the thyroid gland. This induces the exocytosis of calcitonin, a substance that **reduces  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$**  ( $\rightarrow$  C2). In parathyroid cells, on the other hand, a high  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  reduces the secretion of PTH, a hormone that increases the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$ . This activity is mediated by DAG and PKC (protein kinase C) and, perhaps, by a ( $G_i$  protein-mediated;  $\rightarrow$  p. 276) reduction in the cAMP concentration ( $\rightarrow$  C3).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors are also located on osteoclasts as well as on renal and intestinal epithelial cells.



Energy is the ability of a system to perform work; both are expressed in joules (J). A **potential difference** (potential gradient) is the so-called *driving "force"* that mobilizes the matter involved in the work. Water falling from height X (in meters) onto a power generator, for example, represents the potential gradient in mechanical work. In electrical and chemical work, potential gradients are provided respectively by voltage (V) and a change in free enthalpy  $\Delta G$  ( $\text{J} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ). The amount of work performed can be determined by multiplying the potential difference (*intensity factor*) by the corresponding *capacity factor*. In the case of the water fall, the work equals the height the water falls (m) times the force of the falling water (in N). In the other examples, the amount work performed equals the voltage (V) times the amount of charge (C). Chemical work performed =  $\Delta G$  times the amount of substance (mol).

Living organisms cannot survive without an adequate supply of energy. Plants utilize solar energy to convert atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  into oxygen and various organic compounds. These, in turn, are used to fill the energy needs of humans and animals. This illustrates how energy can be converted from one form into another. If we consider such a transformation taking place in a **closed system** (exchange of energy, but not of matter, with the environment), energy can neither appear nor disappear spontaneously. In other words, when energy is converted in a closed system, the total energy content remains constant. This is described in the **first law of thermodynamics**, which states that the change of internal energy (= change of energy content,  $\Delta U$ ) of a system (e.g. of a chemical reaction) equals the sum of the work absorbed (+W) or performed (-W) by a system and the heat lost (-Q) or gained (+Q) by the system. This is described as:

$$\Delta U = \text{heat gained (Q)} - \text{work performed (W) [J]} \quad \text{and} \quad [1.22]$$

$$\Delta U = \text{work absorbed (W)} - \text{heat lost (Q) [J]} \quad [1.23]$$

(By definition, the signs indicate the direction of flow with respect to the system under consideration.)

**Heat** is transferred in all chemical reactions. The amount of heat produced upon conversion of a given substance into product X is the same, *regardless of the reaction pathway* or whether the system is closed or open, as in a biological system. For caloric values, see p. 230.

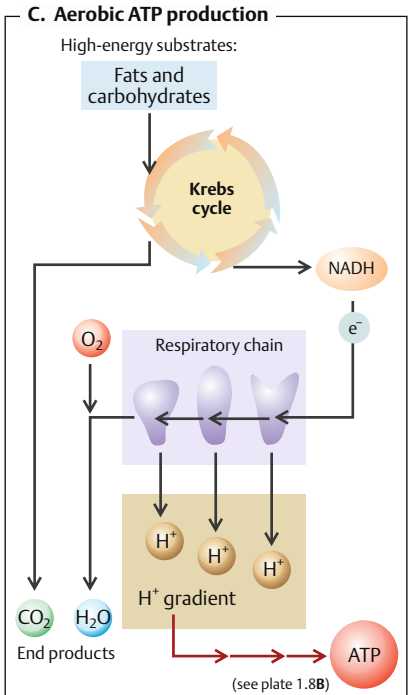
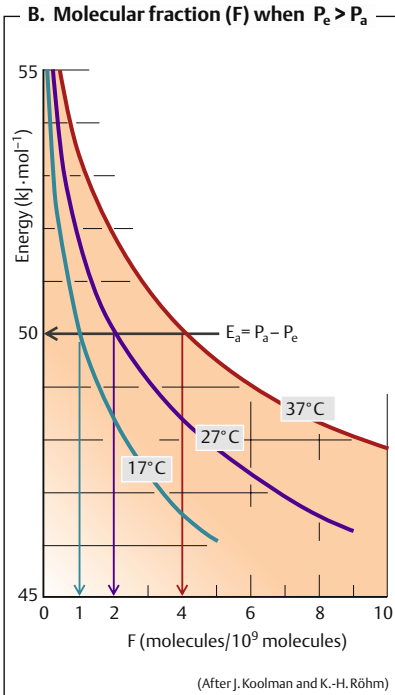
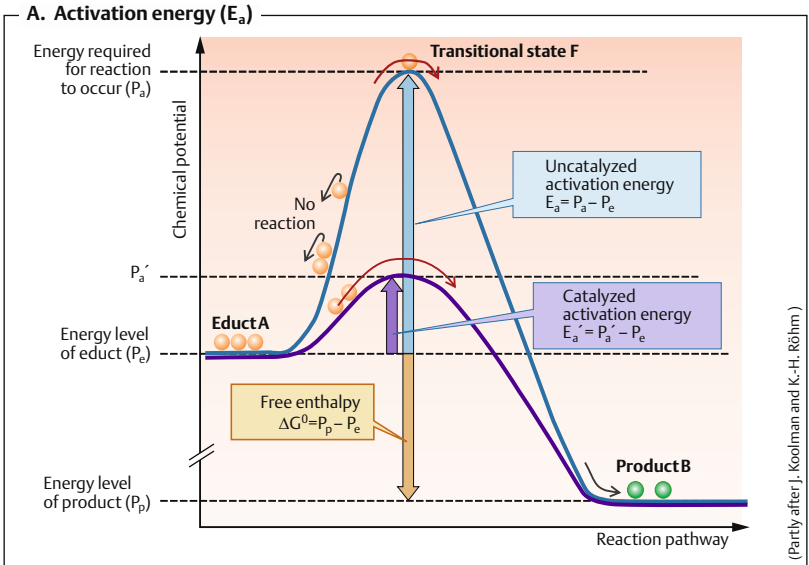
**Enthalpy change ( $\Delta H$ )** is the heat gained or lost by a system at constant pressure and is related to work, pressure, and volume ( $\Delta H = \Delta U + p \cdot \Delta V$ ). Heat is lost and  $\Delta H$  is negative in **exothermic** reactions, while heat is gained and  $\Delta H$  is positive in **endothermic** reactions. The **second law of thermodynamics** states that the total disorder (randomness) or entropy (S) of a closed system increases in any spontaneous process, i.e., **entropy change ( $\Delta S$ )**  $> 0$ . This must be taken into consideration when attempting to determine how much of  $\Delta H$  is freely available. This free energy or free enthalpy ( $\Delta G$ ) can be used, for example, to drive a chemical reaction. The heat produced in the process is the product of absolute temperature and entropy change ( $T \cdot \Delta S$ ).

**Free enthalpy ( $\Delta G$ )** can be calculated using the Gibbs-Helmholtz equation:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T \cdot \Delta S. \quad [1.24]$$

$\Delta G$  and  $\Delta H$  are approximately equal when  $\Delta S$  approaches zero. The maximum chemical work of glucose in the body can therefore be deduced based on heat transfer,  $\Delta H$ , measured during the combustion of glucose in a calorimeter (see p.230). Equation 1.24 also defines the conditions under which chemical reactions can occur. **Exergonic** reactions ( $\Delta G < 0$ ) are characterized by the release of energy and can proceed spontaneously, whereas **endergonic** reactions ( $\Delta G > 0$ ) require the absorption of energy and are not spontaneous. An endothermic reaction ( $\Delta H > 0$ ) can also be exergonic ( $\Delta G < 0$ ) when the entropy change  $\Delta S$  is so large that  $\Delta H - T \cdot \Delta S$  becomes negative. This occurs, for example, in the endothermic dissolution of crystalline NaCl in water.

Free enthalpy,  $\Delta G$ , is a concentration-dependent variable that can be calculated from the change in **standard free enthalpy ( $\Delta G^\circ$ )** and the prevailing concentrations of the substances in question.  $\Delta G^\circ$  is calculated assuming for all reaction partners that concentration = 1 mol/L, pH = 7.0, T = 298 K, and p = 1013 hPa. ▶



► Given the reaction



where A is the educt and B and C are the products,  $\Delta G^0$  is converted to  $\Delta G$  as follows:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + R \cdot T \cdot \ln \frac{[B] + [C]}{[A]} \quad [1.26]$$

or, at a temperature of 37°C,

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + 8.31 \cdot 310 \cdot 2.3 \cdot \log \frac{[B] + [C]}{[A]} \quad [J \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}] \quad [1.27]$$

Assuming the  $\Delta G^0$  of a reaction is +20 kJ · mol<sup>-1</sup> (endergonic reaction),  $\Delta G$  will be exergonic (<0) if  $[B] \cdot [C]$  is 10<sup>4</sup> times smaller than A:

$$\Delta G = 20000 + 5925 \cdot \log 10^{-4} = -3.7 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}. \quad [1.28]$$

In this case, A is converted to B and C and reaction 1.25 proceeds to the right.

If  $[B] \cdot [C]/[A] = 4.2 \times 10^{-4}$ ,  $\Delta G$  will equal zero and the reaction will come to equilibrium (no net reaction). This numeric ratio is called the **equilibrium constant ( $K_{\text{eq}}$ )** of the reaction.  $K_{\text{eq}}$  can be converted to  $\Delta G^0$  and vice versa using Equation 1.26:

$$0 = \Delta G^0 + R \cdot T \cdot \ln K_{\text{eq}} \text{ or} \quad \Delta G^0 = -R \cdot T \cdot \ln K_{\text{eq}} \quad [1.29]$$

$$\text{or} \quad K_{\text{eq}} = e^{-\Delta G^0/(R \cdot T)}. \quad [1.30]$$

Conversely, when  $[B] \cdot [C]/[A] > 4.2 \times 10^{-4}$ ,  $\Delta G$  will be >0, the net reaction will proceed backwards, and A will arise from B and C.

$\Delta G$  is therefore a measure of the direction of a reaction and of its *distance from equilibrium*. Considering the concentration-dependency of  $\Delta G$  and assuming the reaction took place in an open system (see below) where reaction products are removed continuously, e.g., in subsequent metabolic reactions, it follows that  $\Delta G$  would be a large negative value, and that the reaction would persist without reaching equilibrium.

The magnitude of  $\Delta G^0$ , which represents the difference between the energy levels (chemical potentials) of the product  $P_p$  and educt  $P_e$  ( $\rightarrow A$ ), does not tell us anything about the **rate of the reaction**. A reaction may be very slow, even if  $\Delta G^0 < 0$ , because the reaction rate also depends on the energy level ( $P_a$ ) needed *transiently* to create the necessary transitional state.  $P_a$  is higher than  $P_e$  ( $\rightarrow A$ ). The additional amount of energy required ( $P_a - P_e$ ) to reach

this level is called the **activation energy  $E_a$** . It is usually so large ( $\approx 50 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ) that only a tiny fraction ( $F \approx 10^{-9}$ ) of the educt molecules are able to provide it ( $\rightarrow A, B$ ). The energy levels of these individual educt molecules are incidentally higher than  $P_e$ , which represents the mean value for all educt molecules. The size of **fraction F** is temperature-dependent ( $\rightarrow B$ ). A 10°C decrease or rise in temperature lowers or raises F (and usually the reaction rate) by a factor of 2 to 4, i.e. the  **$Q_{10}$  value** of the reaction is 2 to 4.

Considering the high  $E_a$  values of many non-catalyzed reactions, the development of **enzymes** as biological catalysts was a very important step in evolution. Enzymes enormously accelerate reaction rates by lowering the activation energy  $E_a$  ( $\rightarrow A$ ). According to the Arrhenius equation, the **rate constant k** ( $s^{-1}$ ) of a unimolecular reaction is proportional to  $e^{-E_a/(R \cdot T)}$ . For example, if a given enzyme reduces the  $E_a$  of a unimolecular reaction from 126 to 63 kJ · mol<sup>-1</sup>, the rate constant at 310 °K (37 °C) will rise by  $e^{-63000/(8.31 \cdot 310)} / e^{-126000/(8.31 \cdot 310)}$ , i.e., by a factor of  $4 \cdot 10^{10}$ . The enzyme would therefore reduce the time required to metabolize 50% of the starting materials ( $t^{1/2}$ ) from, say, 10 years to 7 msec! The forward rate of a reaction ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ) is related to the product of the rate constant ( $s^{-1}$ ) and the starting substrate concentration ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ).

The second law of thermodynamics also implies that a continuous loss of free energy occurs as the total disorder or entropy (S) of a closed system increases. A living organism represents an **open system** which, by definition, can absorb energy-rich nutrients and discharge end products of metabolism. While the entropy of a closed system (organism + environment) increases in the process, an open system (organism) can either maintain its entropy level or reduce it using free enthalpy. This occurs, for example, when ion gradients or hydraulic pressure differences are created within the body. A closed system therefore has a maximum entropy, is in a true state of chemical equilibrium, and can perform work only once. An open system such as the body can *continuously* perform work while producing only a minimum of entropy. A true state of equilibrium is achieved in only a very few processes within the body, e.g., in the reaction

$\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{HCO}_3^- + \text{H}^+$ . In most cases (e.g. metabolic pathways, ion gradients), only a *steady state* is reached. Such metabolic pathways are usually *irreversible* due, for example, to excretion of the end products. The thought of reversing the “reaction” germ cell  $\rightarrow$  adult illustrates just how impossible this is.

At **steady state**, the *rate* of a reaction is more important than its equilibrium. The regulation of body functions is achieved by controlling reaction rates. Some reactions are so slow that it is impossible to achieve a sufficient reaction rate with enzymes or by reducing the concentration of the reaction products. These are therefore endergonic reactions that require the input of outside energy. This can involve “activation” of the educt by attachment of a high-energy phosphate group to raise the  $P_e$ .

**ATP** (adenosine triphosphate) is the universal carrier and transformer of free enthalpy within the body. ATP is a nucleotide that derives its chemical energy from energy-rich nutrients ( $\rightarrow$  C). Most ATP is produced by **oxidation** of energy-rich biological molecules such as glucose. In this case, oxidation means the removal of electrons from an electron-rich (reduced) donor which, in this case, is a carbohydrate.  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  are the end products of the reaction. In the body, oxidation (or electron transfer) occurs in several stages, and a portion of the liberated energy can be simultaneously used for ATP synthesis. This is therefore a **coupled reaction** ( $\rightarrow$  C and p. 17 B). The standard free enthalpy  $\Delta G^0$  of **ATP hydrolysis**,



is  $-30.5 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ . According to Eq. 1.27, the  $\Delta G$  of reaction 1.31 should increase when the ratio  $([\text{ADP}] \cdot [\text{P}_i])/[\text{ATP}]$  falls below the equilibrium constant  $K_{\text{eq}}$  of ATP hydrolysis. The fact that a high cellular ATP concentration does indeed yield a  $\Delta G$  of approximately  $-46$  to  $-54 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$  shows that this also applies in practice.

Some substances have a much higher  $\Delta G^0$  of hydrolysis than ATP, e.g., *creatine phosphate* ( $-43 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ). These compounds react with ADP and  $\text{P}_i$  to form ATP. On the other hand, the energy of ATP can be used to synthesize other compounds such as UTP, GTP and glucose-6-phosphate. The energy content of these substances is lower than that of ATP, but still relatively high.

The free energy liberated upon hydrolysis of ATP is used to drive hundreds of reactions within the body, including the active transmembrane transport of various substances, protein synthesis, and muscle contraction. According to the laws of thermodynamics, the expenditure of energy in all of these reactions leads to increased order in living cells and, thus, in the organism as a whole. Life is therefore characterized by the continuous reduction of entropy associated with a corresponding increase in entropy in the immediate environment and, ultimately, in the universe.

An excitable cell reacts to stimuli by altering its membrane characteristics ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32). There are two types of excitable cells: *nerve cells*, which transmit and modify impulses within the nervous system, and *muscle cells*, which contract either in response to nerve stimuli or autonomously ( $\rightarrow$  p. 59).

The human nervous system consists of more than  $10^{10}$  nerve cells or neurons. The **neuron** is the *structural and functional unit of the nervous system*. A typical neuron (motor neuron,  $\rightarrow$  A1) consists of the *soma* or cell body and two types of processes: the *axon* and *dendrites*. Apart from the usual intracellular organelles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 8 ff.), such as a nucleus and mitochondria ( $\rightarrow$  A2), the neuron contains *neurofibrils* and *neurotubules*. The neuron receives *afferent signals* (excitatory and inhibitory) from a few to sometimes several thousands of other neurons via its **dendrites** (usually arborescent) and sums the signals along the cell membrane of the soma (*summation*). The **axon** arises from the axon hillock of the soma and is responsible for the transmission of efferent neural signals to nearby or distant *effectors* (muscle and glandular cells) and adjacent neurons. Axons often have branches (*collaterals*) that further divide and terminate in swellings called *synaptic knobs* or *terminal buttons*. If the summed value of potentials at the axon hillock exceeds a certain threshold, an **action potential** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46) is generated and sent down the axon, where it reaches the next synapse via the **terminal buttons** ( $\rightarrow$  A1,3) described below.

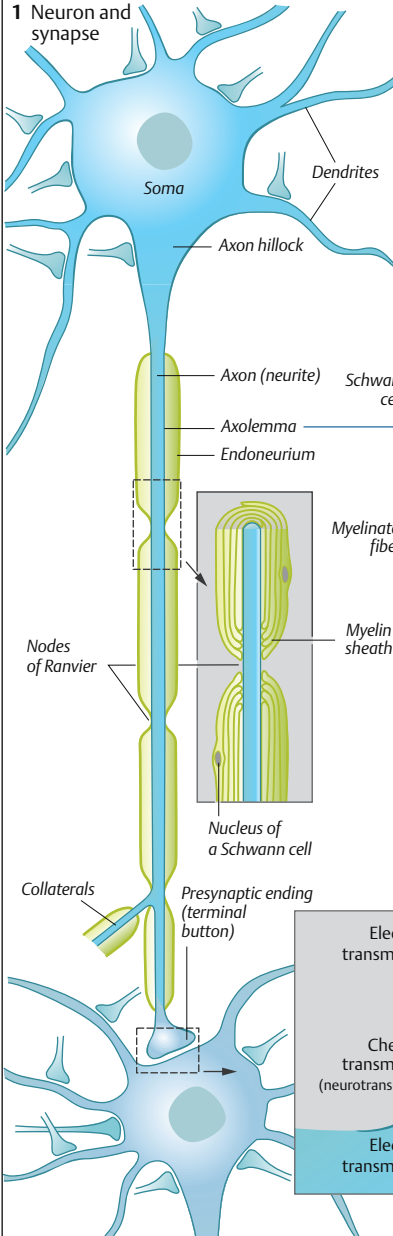
Vesicles containing materials such as proteins, lipids, sugars, and transmitter substances are conveyed from the Golgi complex of the soma ( $\rightarrow$  p. 13 F) to the terminal buttons and the tips of the dendrites by **rapid axonal transport** (40 cm/day). This type of *anterograde* transport along the neurotubules is promoted by *kinesin*, a myosin-like protein, and the energy required for it is supplied by ATP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 16). Endogenous and exogenous substances such as nerve growth factor (NGF), herpes virus, poliomyelitis virus, and tetanus toxin are conveyed by *retrograde* transport from the peripheral regions to the soma at a rate of ca. 25 cm/day. *Slow axon transport* (ca. 1 mm/day) plays a role in the regeneration of severed neurites.

Along the axon, the plasma membrane of the soma continues as the axolemma ( $\rightarrow$  A1,2). The axolemma is surrounded by **oligodendrocytes** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 344) in the central nervous system (CNS), and by **Schwann cells** in the peripheral nervous system ( $\rightarrow$  A1,2). A **nerve fiber** consists of an axon plus its sheath. In some neurons, Schwann cells form multiple concentric double phospholipid layers around an axon, comprising the **myelin sheath** ( $\rightarrow$  A1,2) that insulates the axon from ion currents. The sheath is interrupted every 1.5 mm or so at the **nodes of Ranvier** ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The *conduction velocity* of such myelinated nerve fibers is much higher than that of unmyelinated nerve fibers and increases with the diameter of the nerve fiber ( $\rightarrow$  p. 49 C).

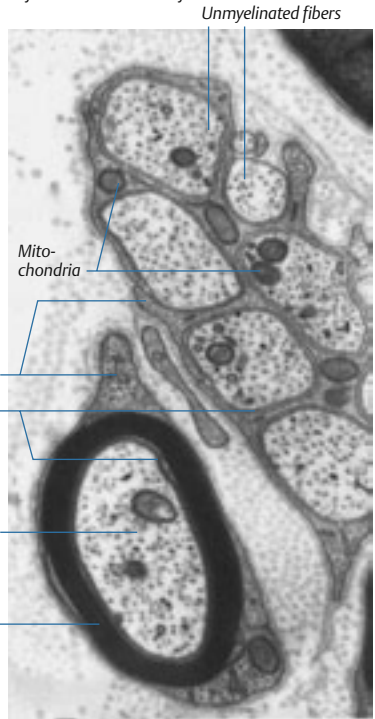
A **synapse** ( $\rightarrow$  A3) is the site where the axon of a neuron communicates with effectors or other neurons (see also p. 50 ff.). With very few exceptions, **synaptic transmissions** in mammals are mediated by chemicals, not by electrical signals. In response to an electrical signal in the axon, vesicles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 1.6) on the **presynaptic membrane** release transmitter substances (**neurotransmitters**) by exocytosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 30). The transmitter diffuses across the **synaptic cleft** (10–40 nm) to the postsynaptic membrane, where it binds to receptors effecting new electrical changes ( $\rightarrow$  A3). Depending on the type of neurotransmitter and postsynaptic receptor involved, the transmitter will either have an excitatory effect (e.g., acetylcholine in skeletal muscle) or inhibitory effect (e.g., glycine in the CNS) on the postsynaptic membrane. Since the postsynaptic membrane normally does not release neurotransmitters (with only few exceptions, for example p. 346), nerve impulses can pass the synapse in one direction only. The synapse therefore acts like a *valve* that ensures the orderly transmission of signals. Synapses are also the sites at which neuronal signal transmissions can be *modified* by other (excitatory or inhibitory) neurons.

**A. Nerve cell structure and function**

**1 Neuron and synapse**

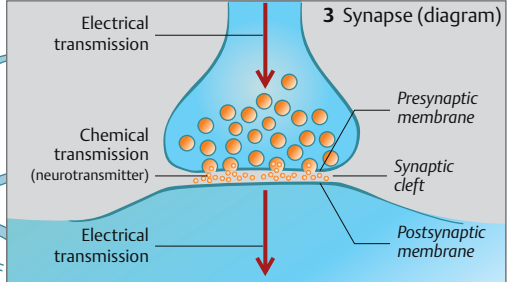


**2 Myelinated and unmyelinated nerve fibers**



Electron microscopic view, 1:22000 magnification. Photograph courtesy of Dr. Lauren A. Langford

**3 Synapse (diagram)**



An electrical potential difference, or **membrane potential** ( $E_m$ ), can be recorded across the plasma membrane of living cells. The potential of unstimulated muscle and nerve cells, or **resting potential**, amounts to  $-50$  to  $-100$  mV (cell interior is negative). A resting potential is caused by a slightly unbalanced distribution of ions between the intracellular fluid (ICF) and extracellular fluid (ECF) ( $\rightarrow$  B). The following factors are involved in establishing the membrane potential (see also p. 32 ff.).

◆ **Maintenance of an unequal distribution of ions:** The  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ -ATPase ( $\rightarrow$  p.26) continuously “pumps”  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cell and  $\text{K}^+$  into it ( $\rightarrow$  A2). As a result, the intracellular  $\text{K}^+$  concentration is around 35 times higher and the intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration is roughly 20 times lower than the extracellular concentration ( $\rightarrow$  B). As in any active transport, this process requires energy, which is supplied by ATP. Lack of energy or inhibition of the  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ -ATPase results in flattening of the ion concentration gradient and breakdown of the membrane potential.

Because anionic proteins and phosphates present in high concentrations in the cytosol are virtually unable to leave the cell, purely passive mechanisms (*Gibbs–Donnan distribution*) could, to a slight extent, contribute to the unequal distribution of diffusible ions ( $\rightarrow$  A1). For reasons of electroneutrality,  $[\text{K}^+ + \text{Na}^+]_{\text{ICF}} > [\text{K}^+ + \text{Na}^+]_{\text{ECF}}$  and  $[\text{Cl}^-]_{\text{ICF}} < [\text{Cl}^-]_{\text{ECF}}$ . However, this has practically no effect on the development of resting potentials.

◆ **Low resting  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conductance,  $g_{\text{Na}}$ ,  $g_{\text{Ca}}$ :** The membrane of a resting cell is only very slightly permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and the resting  $g_{\text{Na}}$  comprises only a small percentage of the total conductance ( $\rightarrow$  p.32 ff.). Hence, the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration difference ( $\rightarrow$  A3–A5) cannot be eliminated by immediate passive diffusion of  $\text{Na}^+$  back into the cell.

◆ **High  $\text{K}^+$  conductance,  $g_{\text{K}}$ :** It is relatively easy for  $\text{K}^+$  ions to diffuse across the cell membrane ( $g_{\text{K}} \approx 90\%$  of total conductance;  $\rightarrow$  p.32 ff.). Because of the steep concentration gradient ( $\rightarrow$  point 1),  $\text{K}^+$  ions diffuse from the ICF to the ECF ( $\rightarrow$  A3). Because of their positive charge, the diffusion of even small amounts of  $\text{K}^+$  ions leads to an electrical potential (*diffusion potential*) across the membrane. This (inside negative) diffusion potential drives  $\text{K}^+$  back into the

cell and rises until large enough to almost completely compensate for the  $\text{K}^+$  concentration gradient driving the  $\text{K}^+$ -ions out of the cell ( $\rightarrow$  A4). As a result, the membrane potential,  $E_m$ , is approximately equal to the  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potential  $E_{\text{K}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p.32).

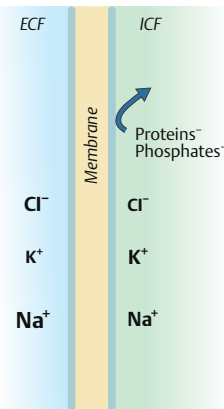
◆  **$\text{Cl}^-$  distribution:** Since the cell membrane is also conductive to  $\text{Cl}^-$  ( $g_{\text{Cl}}$  greater in muscle cells than in nerve cells), the membrane potential (electrical driving “force”) expels  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions from the cell ( $\rightarrow$  A4) until the  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration gradient (chemical driving “force”) drives them back into the cell at the same rate, i.e. until the intracellular  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration,  $[\text{Cl}^-]_i$  has reached a value at which the  $\text{Cl}^-$  equilibrium potential  $g_{\text{Cl}}$  equals  $E_m$  ( $\rightarrow$  A5). This  $[\text{Cl}^-]_i$  can be calculated using the *Nernst equation* ( $\rightarrow$  p.32, Eq. 1.18). Such a “passive” distribution of  $\text{Cl}^-$  between the intra- and extracellular spaces exists only as long as there is no active  $\text{Cl}^-$  uptake into the cell ( $\rightarrow$  p.34).

◆ **Why is  $E_m$  less negative than  $E_{\text{K}}$ ?** Although the conductances of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  are very low in resting cells, a few  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions constantly enter the cell ( $\rightarrow$  A4, 5). This occurs because the equilibrium potential for both types of ions extends far into the positive range, resulting in a high outside-to-inside electrical and chemical driving “force” for these ions ( $\rightarrow$  B;  $\rightarrow$  p.32 f.). This cation influx depolarizes the cell, thereby driving  $\text{K}^+$  ions out of the cell (1  $\text{K}^+$  for each positive charge that enters). If  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ -ATPase did not restore these gradients continuously ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  indirectly via the  $3 \text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger;  $\rightarrow$  p.36), the intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentrations would increase continuously, whereas  $[\text{K}^+]_i$  would decrease, and  $E_{\text{K}}$  and  $E_m$ , therefore, would become less negative.

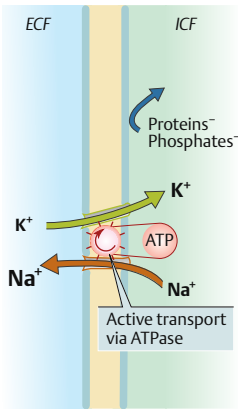
All living cells have a (resting) membrane potential, but only excitable cells such as nerve and muscle cells are able to greatly change the ion conductance of their membrane in response to a stimulus, as in an *action potential* ( $\rightarrow$  p.46).

**A. Causes and effects of resting membrane potentials**

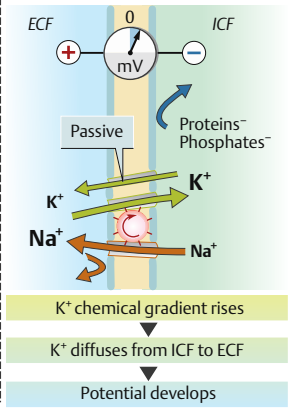
**1 Passive ion distribution**



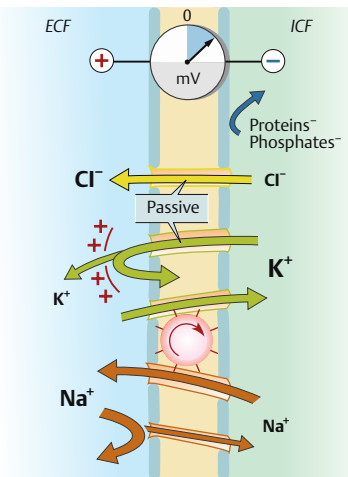
**2 Active Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-pump**



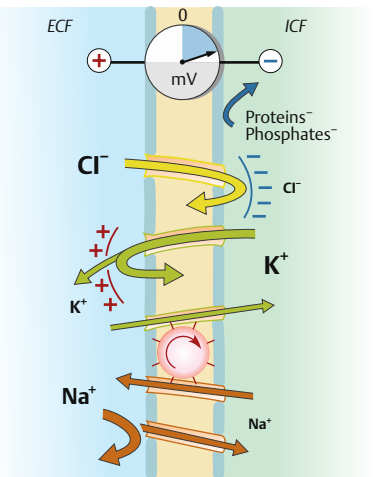
**3 K<sup>+</sup> diffusion potential**



**4 Potential drives Cl<sup>-</sup> from ICF to ECF**



**5 End state: Resting membrane potential**



**B. Typical “effective” concentrations and equilibrium potentials of important ions in skeletal muscle (at 37°C)**

	“Effective” concentration (mmol/kg H <sub>2</sub> O)		Equilibrium potential
	Interstice (ECF)	Cell (ICF)	
K <sup>+</sup>	4.5	160	-95 mV
Na <sup>+</sup>	144	7	+80 mV
Ca <sup>2+</sup>	1.3	0.0001–0.00001	+125 to +310 mV
H <sup>+</sup>	4·10 <sup>-5</sup> (pH 7.4)	10 <sup>-4</sup> (pH 7.0)	-24 mV
Cl <sup>-</sup>	114	7	-80 mV
HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	28	10	-27 mV

(Alter Conway)

An action potential is a signal passed on through an axon or along a muscle fiber that influences other neurons or induces muscle contraction. **Excitation** of a neuron occurs if the membrane potential,  $E_m$ , on the axon hillock of a motor neuron, for example ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42), or on the motor end-plate of a muscle fiber changes from its resting value ( $\rightarrow$  p. 44) to a less negative value (slow *depolarization*,  $\rightarrow$  **A1**). This depolarization may be caused by neurotransmitter-induced opening of postsynaptic cation channels ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50) or by the (electrotonic) transmission of stimuli from the surroundings ( $\rightarrow$  p. 48). If the  $E_m$  of a stimulated cell comes close to a critical voltage or **threshold potential** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**), "rapid" voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are activated ( $\rightarrow$  **B4** and **B1**  $\Rightarrow$  **B2**). This results in *increased  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance*,  $g_{\text{Na}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32), and a higher entry of  $\text{Na}^+$  into the cell ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). If the threshold potential is not reached, this process remains a *local (sub-threshold) response*.

Once the threshold potential is reached, the cell responds with a fast **all-or-none** depolarization called an **action potential, AP** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). The AP follows a pattern typical of the specific cell type, irregardless of the magnitude of the stimulus that generated it. Large numbers of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are activated, and the influxing  $\text{Na}^+$  accelerates depolarization which, in turn, increases  $g_{\text{Na}}$  and so on (positive feedback). As a result, the  $E_m$  rapidly collapses (0.1 ms in nerve cells: fast **depolarization phase** or up-sweep) and temporarily reaches positive levels (*overshooting*, +20 to +30 mV). The  $g_{\text{Na}}$  drops before overshooting occurs ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) because the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are *inactivated* within 0.1 ms ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**  $\Rightarrow$  **B3**). The potential therefore reverses, and restoration of the resting potential, the **repolarization phase** of the action potential, begins. Depolarization has increased (relatively slowly) the open-probability of voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels. This has increased the potassium conductance,  $g_{\text{K}}$ , thereby accelerating repolarization.

In many cases, potassium conductance,  $g_{\text{K}}$  is still increased after the original resting potential has been restored ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**), and  $E_m$  temporarily approaches  $E_{\text{K}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 44 and 32 ff.), resulting in a hyperpolarizing **afterpotential** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). Increased  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ -ATPase pumping

(electrogenic;  $\rightarrow$  p. 28) can contribute to this afterpotential.

Very long trains of action potentials can be generated (up to 1000/s in some nerves) since the quantity of ions penetrating the membrane is very small (only ca. 1/100 000th the number of intracellular ions). Moreover, the  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ -ATPase ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) ensures the continuous restoration of original ion concentrations ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

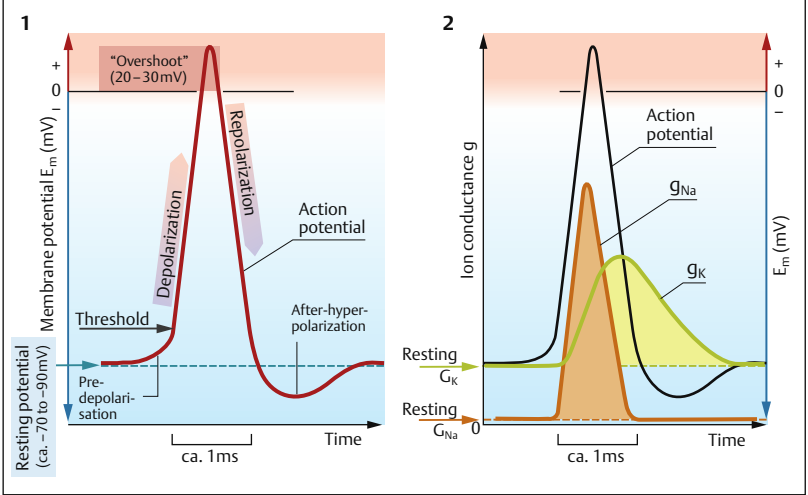
During an action potential, the cell remains unresponsive to further stimuli; this is called the **refractory period**. In the *absolute refractory period*, no other action potential can be triggered, even by extremely strong stimuli, since  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in depolarized membranes cannot be activated ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**). This is followed by a *relative refractory period* during which only action potentials of smaller amplitudes and rates of rise can be generated, even by strong stimuli. The refractory period ends once the membrane potential returns to its resting value ( $\rightarrow$  e.g. p. 59 A).

The extent to which  $\text{Na}^+$  channels can be activated and, thus, the strength of the  $\text{Na}^+$  current,  $I_{\text{Na}}$ , depends on the pre-excitatory resting potential, not the duration of depolarization. The activation of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels reaches a maximum at resting potentials of ca. -100 mV and is around 40% lower at -60 mV. In mammals,  $\text{Na}^+$  channels can no longer be activated at potentials of -50 mV and less negative values ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**). This is the reason for the absolute and relative refractory periods (see above) and the non-excitability of cells after the administration of continuously depolarizing substances such as suxamethonium ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56).

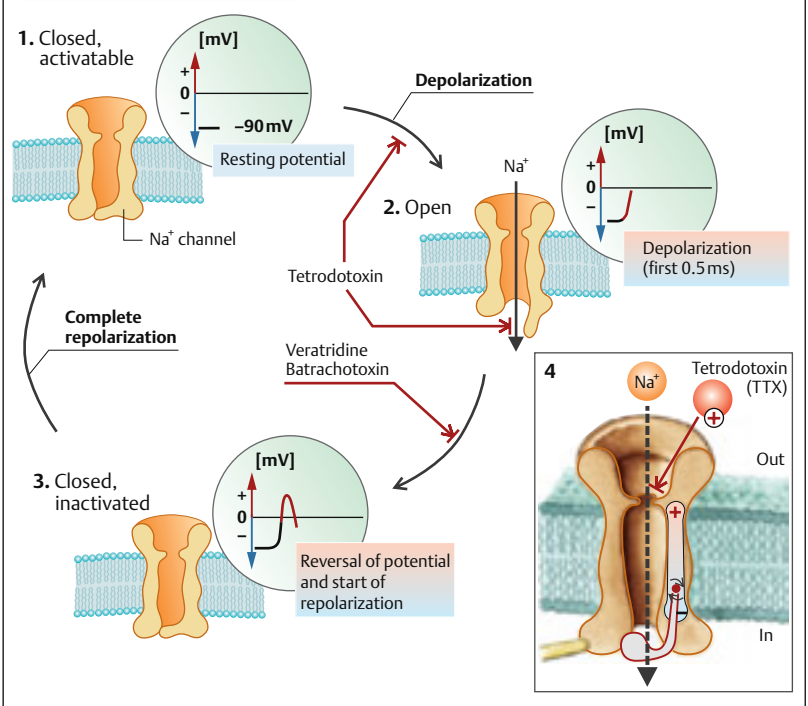
An increased extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration makes it more difficult to stimulate the cell because the threshold potential becomes less negative. On the other hand, excitability increases (lower threshold) in hypocalcemic states, as in muscle spasms in *tetany* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 292).

The special features of action potentials in cardiac and smooth muscle fibers are described on pages 59, 70, and 194.

**A. Action potential (1) and ion conductivity (2) (nerve and skeletal muscle)**



**B. Voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channel**



Electrical current flows through a *cable* when voltage is applied to it. The metal wire inside the cable is well insulated and has very low-level resistance, reducing current loss to a minimum. As a result, it can conduct electricity over long distances. *Nerve fibers*, especially unmyelinated ones ( $\rightarrow$  p.42), have a much greater internal longitudinal resistance ( $R_i$ ) and are not well insulated from their surroundings. Therefore, the cable-like, **electrotonic transmission** of neural impulses dwindles very rapidly, so the conducted impulses must be continuously “refreshed” by generating new **action potentials** ( $\rightarrow$  p.46).

**Propagation of action potentials:** The start of an action potential is accompanied by a brief influx of  $\text{Na}^+$  into the nerve fiber ( $\rightarrow$  A1a). The cell membrane that previously was inside negative now becomes positive (+20 to +30 mV), thus creating a longitudinal potential difference with respect to the adjacent, still unstimulated nerve segments (internal -70 to -90 mV;  $\rightarrow$  p.44). This is followed by a passive *electrotonic withdrawal of charge* from the adjacent segment of the nerve fiber, causing its *depolarization*. If it exceeds threshold, another action potential is created in the adjacent segment and the action potential in the previous segment dissipates ( $\rightarrow$  A1b).

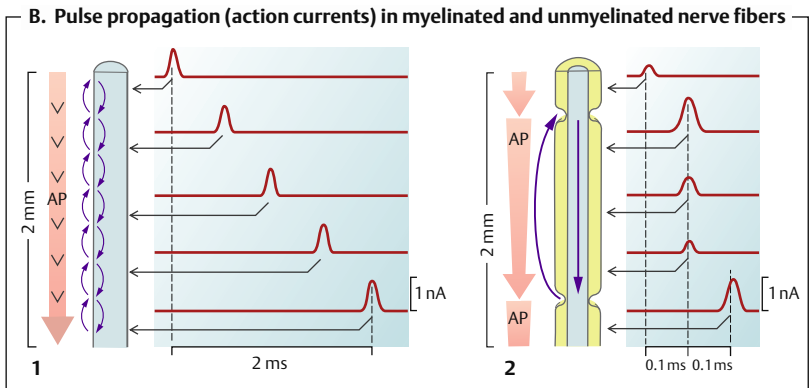
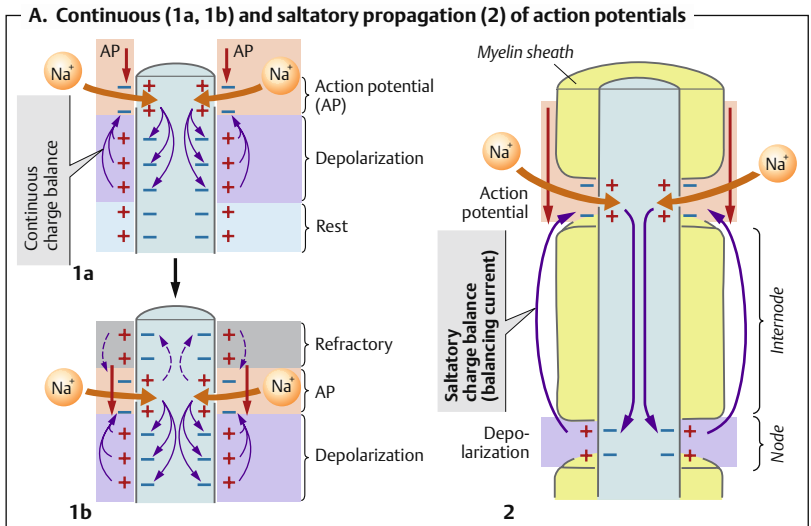
Because the membrane acts as a *capacitor*, the withdrawal of charge represents a capacitating (depolarizing) flow of charge that becomes smaller and rises less steeply as the spatial distance increases. Because of the relatively high  $R_i$  of nerve fiber, the outward loops of current cross the membrane relatively close to the site of excitation, and the longitudinal current decreases as it proceeds towards the periphery. At the same time, depolarization increases the driving force ( $= E_m - E_K$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p.32) for  $\text{K}^+$  outflow.  $\text{K}^+$  fluxing out of the cell therefore accelerates repolarization. Hence, distal action potentials are restricted to distances from which the capacitive current suffices to depolarize the membrane quickly and strongly enough. Otherwise, the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels will be deactivated before the threshold potential is reached ( $\rightarrow$  p.46).

Action potentials normally run forward (orthodromic) because each segment of nerve fiber becomes refractory when an action

potential passes ( $\rightarrow$  A1b and p.46). If, however, the impulses are conducted backwards (antidromic) due, for example, to electrical stimulation of nerve fibers from an external source ( $\rightarrow$  p.50), they will terminate at the next synapse (valve-like function,  $\rightarrow$  p.42).

Although the continuous generation of action potentials in the immediately adjacent fiber segment guarantees a refreshed signal, this process is rather time-consuming ( $\rightarrow$  B1). The **conduction velocity**,  $\theta$ , in unmyelinated (type C) nerve fibers ( $\rightarrow$  C) is only around 1 m/s. Myelinated (types A and B) nerve fibers ( $\rightarrow$  C) conduct much faster (up to 80 m/s = 180 mph in humans). In the *internode regions*, a *myelin sheath* ( $\rightarrow$  p.42) insulates the nerve fibers from the surroundings; thus, longitudinal currents strong enough to generate action potentials can travel further down the axon (ca. 1.5 mm) ( $\rightarrow$  A2). This results in more rapid conduction because the action potentials are generated only at the unmyelinated *nodes of Ranvier*, where there is a high density of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. This results in rapid, jump-like passage of the action potential from node to node (**saltatory propagation**). The saltatory length is limited since the longitudinal current (1 to 2 nA) grows weaker with increasing distance ( $\rightarrow$  B2). Before it drops below the threshold level, the signal must therefore be refreshed by a new action potential, with a time loss of 0.1 ms.

Since the internal resistance,  $R_i$ , of the nerve fiber limits the spread of depolarization, as described above, the **axon diameter** ( $2r$ ) also affects the conduction velocity,  $\theta$  ( $\rightarrow$  C).  $R_i$  is proportional to the cross-sectional area of the nerve fiber ( $\pi r^2$ ), i.e.,  $R_i \sim 1/r^2$ . Thick fibers therefore require fewer new APs per unit of length, which is beneficial for  $\theta$ . However, increases in fiber diameter are accompanied by an increase in fiber circumference ( $2\pi r$ ) and, therefore, in membrane capacity,  $K$  ( $K \sim r$ ). Although  $\theta$  decreases for this reason, the beneficial effect of the smaller  $R_i$  predominates because of the quadratic relationship.



**C. Classification of nerve fibers (in humans)**

Fiber type	Function according to fiber type (Lloyd and Hunt types I–IV)	Diameter ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	Conduction rate (m/s)
A $\alpha$	Skeletal muscle efferent, afferents in muscle spindles (Ib) and tendon organs (Ib)	11–16	60–80
A $\beta$	Mechanoafferents of skin (II)	6–11	30–60
A $\gamma$	Muscle spindle efferents	1–6	2–30
A $\delta$	Skin afferents (temperature and "fast" pain) (III)		
B	Sympathetic preganglionic; visceral afferents	3	3–15
C	Skin afferents ("slow" pain); sympathetic postganglionic afferents (IV)	0.5–1.5 (unmyelinated)	0.25–1.5

(After Erlanger and Gasser)

When an electrical stimulus is applied to a nerve cell from an external source, current flows from the positive stimulating electrode (*anode*) into the neuron, and exits at the negative electrode (*cathode*). The nerve fiber below the cathode is depolarized and an action potential is generated there if the threshold potential is reached.

The **conduction velocity** of a nerve can be measured by placing two electrodes on the skin along the course of the nerve at a known distance from each other, then stimulating the nerve (containing multiple neurons) and recording the time it takes the summated action potential to travel the known distance. The conduction velocity in humans is normally 40 to 70 m · s<sup>-1</sup>. Values below 40 m · s<sup>-1</sup> are considered to be pathological.

**Accidental electrification.** Exposure of the body to high-voltage electricity, especially low-frequency alternating current (e.g., in an electrical outlet) and low contact resistance (bare feet, bathtub accidents), primarily affects the conduction of impulses in the heart and can cause ventricular fibrillation (→ p. 202).

Direct current usually acts as a stimulus only when switched on or off: High-frequency alternating current (> 15 kHz), on the other hand, cannot cause depolarization but heats the body tissues. **Dia-thermy** works on this principle.

## Synaptic Transmission

*Synapses* connect nerve cells to other nerve cells (also applies for certain muscle cells) as well as to sensory and effector cells (muscle and glandular cells).

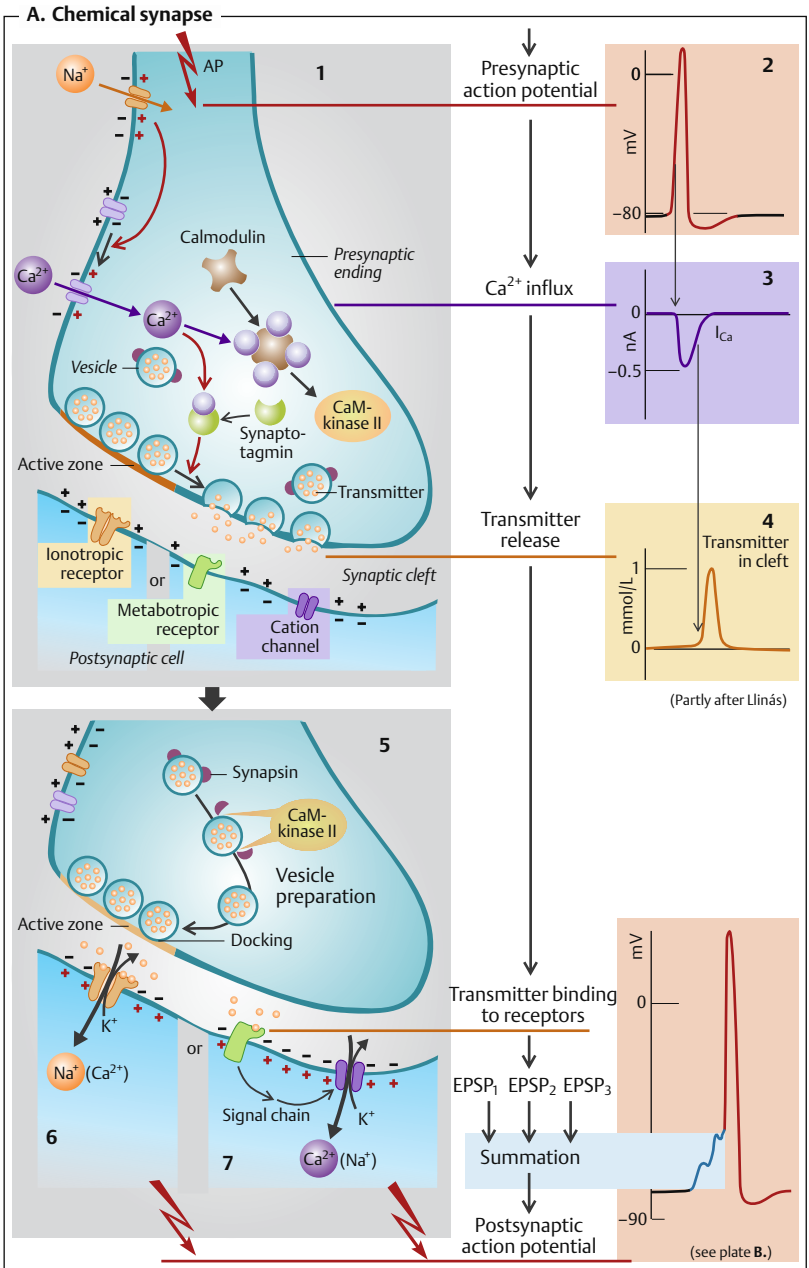
**Electrical synapses** are direct, ion-conducting cell-cell junctions through channels (*connexons*) in the region of *gap junctions* (→ p. 16f.). They are responsible for the conduction of impulses between neighboring smooth or cardiac muscle fibers (and sometimes between neurons in the retina and in the CNS) and ensure also communication between neighboring epithelial or glial cells.

**Chemical synapses** utilize (**neuro**)**transmitters** for the transmission of information and provide not only simple 1 : 1 connections, but also serve as switching elements for the nervous system. They can facilitate or inhibit

the neuronal transmission of information or process them with other neuronal input. At the chemical synapse, the arrival of an action potential (AP) in the axon (→ **A1,2** and p. 48) triggers the release of the transmitter from the presynaptic axon terminals. The transmitter then diffuses across the narrow synaptic cleft (ca. 30 nm) to bind postsynaptically to **receptors** in the *subs synaptic membrane* of a neuron or of a glandular or muscle cell. Depending on the type of transmitter and receptor involved, the effect on the *postsynaptic membrane* may either be excitatory or inhibitory, as is described below.

**Transmitters are released** by regulated *exocytosis* of so-called *synaptic vesicles* (→ **A1**). Each vesicle contains a certain *quantum* of neurotransmitters. In the case of the motor end-plate (→ p. 56), around 7000 molecules of acetylcholine (ACh) are released. Some of the vesicles are already docked on the membrane (*active zone*), ready to exocytose their contents. An incoming action potential functions as the signal for transmitter release (→ **A1,2**). The higher the action potential *frequency* in the axon the more vesicles release their contents. An action potential increases the open probability of *voltage-gated Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels* in the presynaptic membrane (sometimes oscillating), thereby leading to an increase in the cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration, [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]<sub>i</sub> (→ **A1, 3** and p. 36). Extracellular Mg<sup>2+</sup> inhibits this process. Ca<sup>2+</sup> binds to *synaptotagmin* (→ **A1**), which triggers the interaction of *syntaxin* and *SNAP-25* on the presynaptic membrane with *synaptobrevin* on the vesicle membrane, thereby triggering exocytosis of already docked vesicles (approximately 100 per AP) (→ **A1, 4**). On the other hand, Ca<sup>2+</sup> activates calcium-calmodulin-dependent protein kinase-II (*CaM-kinase-II*; → **A5**, and p. 36), which activates the enzyme *synapsin* at the presynaptic terminal. As a result, vesicles dock anew on the active zone.

**Synaptic facilitation (= potentiation).** If an action potential should arrive at the presynaptic terminal immediately after another AP (AP frequency > approx. 30 Hz), the cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration will not yet drop to the resting value, and residual Ca<sup>2+</sup> will accumulate. As a result, the more recent rise in [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]<sub>i</sub> builds on ▶



► the former one.  $[Ca^{2+}]_i$  rises to a higher level after the second stimulus than after the first, and also releases more transmitters. Hence, the first stimulus *facilitates* the response to the second stimulus. Muscle strength increases at high stimulus frequencies for similar reasons (→ p. 67 A).

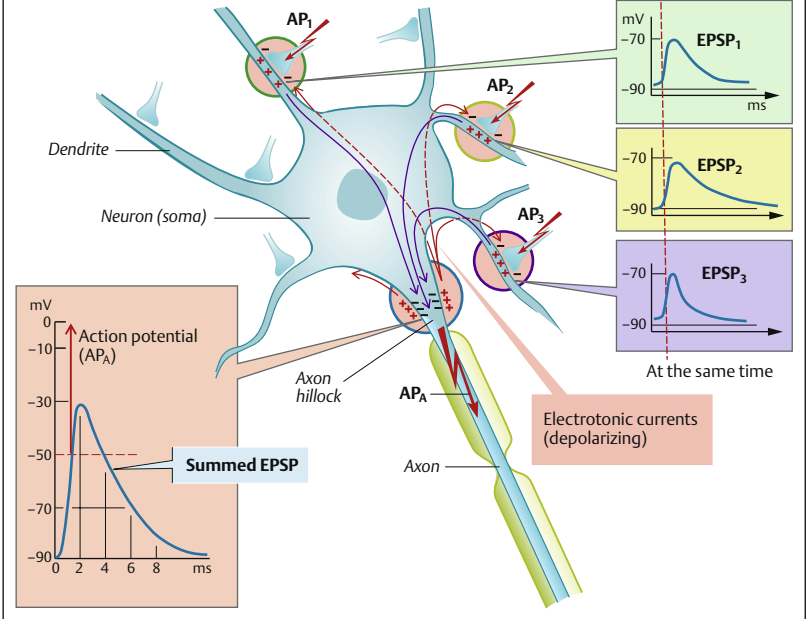
Among the many substances that act as **excitatory transmitters** are acetylcholine (ACh) and glutamate (Glu). They are often released together with *co-transmitters* which modulate the transmission of a stimulus (e.g., ACh together with substance P, VIP or galanin; Glu with substance P or enkephalin). If the transmitter's receptor is an ion channel itself (*ionotropic receptor* or *ligand-gated ion channel*; → **A6** and **F**), e.g., at the N-cholinergic synapse (→ p. 82), the channels open more often and allow a larger number of cations to enter ( $Na^+$ , sometimes  $Ca^{2+}$ ) and leave the cell ( $K^+$ ). Other, so-called *metabotropic receptors* influence the channel via *G proteins* that control channels themselves or by means of "second messengers" (→ **A7** and **F**). Because of the high electrochemical  $Na^+$  gradient (→ p. 32), the number of incoming  $Na^+$  ions is much larger than the number of exiting  $K^+$  ions.  $Ca^{2+}$  can also enter the cell, e.g., at the glutamate-NMDA receptor (→ **F**). The net influx of cations leads to depolarization: **excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP)** (maximum of ca. 20 mV; → **B**). The EPSP begins approx. 0.5 ms after the arrival of an action potential at the presynaptic terminal. This *synaptic delay* (latency) is caused by the relatively slow release and diffusion of the transmitter.

A single EPSP normally is not able to generate a postsynaptic (axonal) action potential ( $AP_A$ ), but requires the triggering of a large number of local depolarizations in the dendrites. Their depolarizations are transmitted electrotonically across the soma (→ p. 48) and summed on the axon hillock (**spatial summation**; → **B**). Should the individual stimuli arrive at different times (within approx. 50 ms of each other), the prior depolarization will not have dissipated before the next one arrives, and summation will make it easier to reach threshold. This type of **temporal summation** therefore increases the excitability of the postsynaptic neuron (→ **C**).

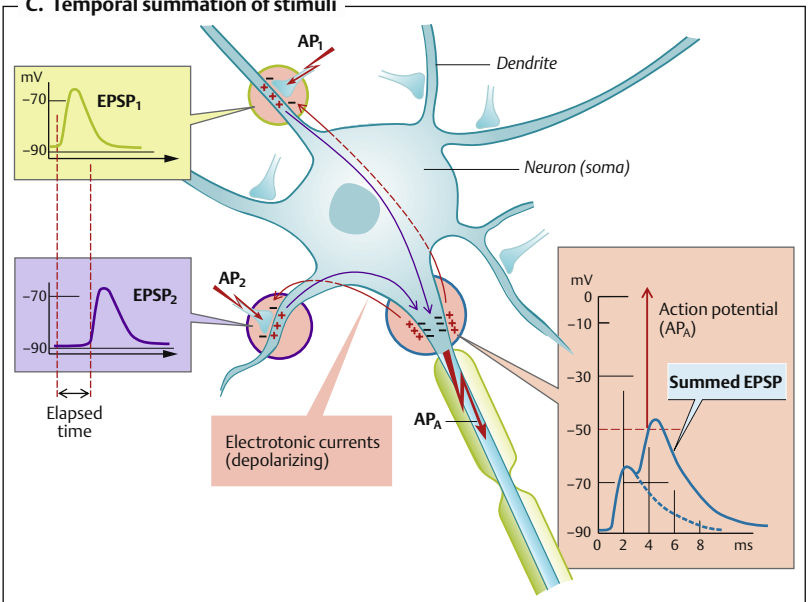
**Inhibitory transmitters** include substances as glycine, GABA ( $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid), and acetylcholine (at M2 and M3 receptors; → p. 82). They increase the conductance, g, of the subsynaptic membrane only to  $K^+$  (e.g., the metabotropic  $GABA_B$  receptor.) or  $Cl^-$  (e.g., the ionotropic glycine and  $GABA_A$  receptors; → **F**). The membrane usually becomes hyperpolarized in the process (ca. 4 mV max.). Increases in  $g_K$  occur when  $E_m$  approaches  $E_K$  (→ p. 44). However, the main effect of this *inhibitory postsynaptic potential IPSP* (→ **D**) is not hyperpolarization – which works counter to EPSP-related depolarization (the IPSP is sometimes even slightly depolarizing). Instead, the IPSP-related increase in membrane conductance short circuits the electrotonic currents of the EPSP (high  $g_K$  or  $g_{Cl}$  levels). Since both  $E_K$  and  $E_{Cl}$  are close to the resting potential (→ p. 44), stabilization occurs, that is, the EPSP is cancelled out by the high  $K^+$  and  $Cl^-$  short-circuit currents. As a result, EPSP-related depolarization is reduced and stimulation of postsynaptic neurons is inhibited (→ **D**).

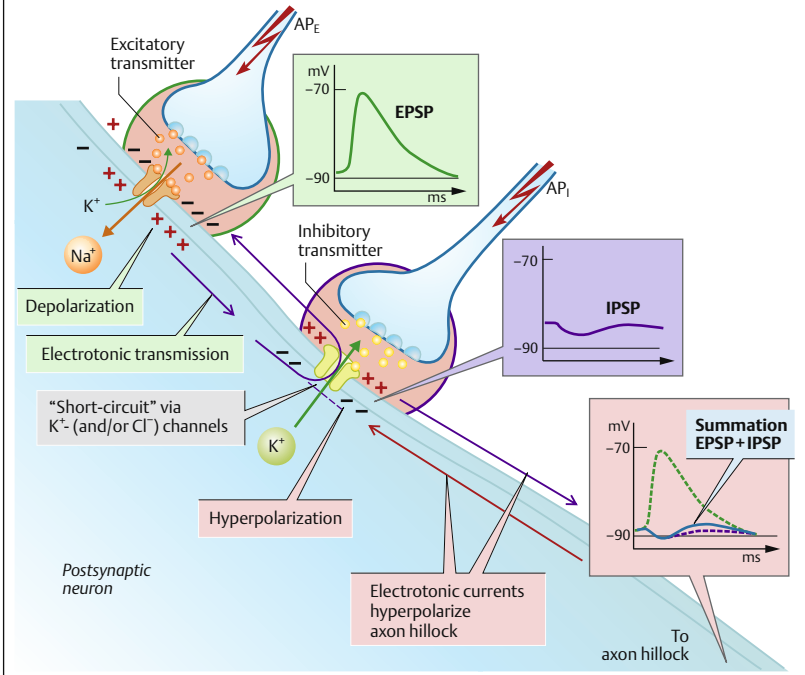
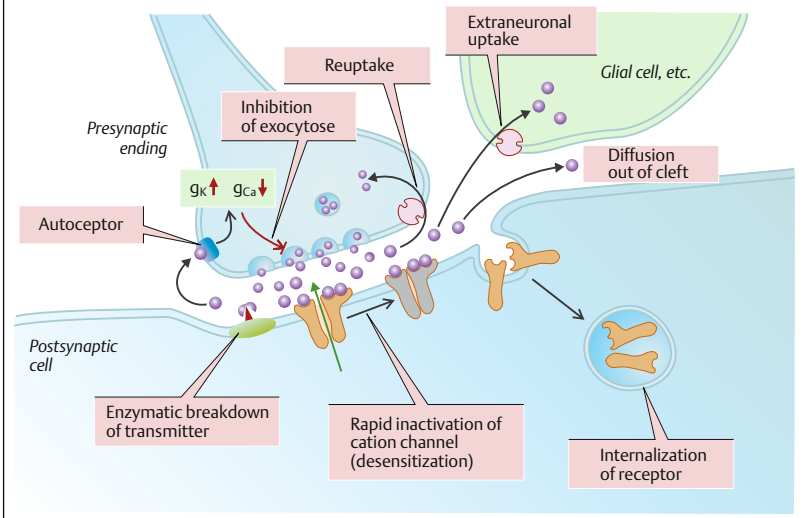
**Termination of synaptic transmission** (→ **E**) can occur due to *inactivation* of the cation channels due to a conformational change in the channel similar to the one that occurs during an action potential (→ p. 46). This very rapid process called *desensitization* also functions in the presence of a transmitter. Other terminating pathways include the rapid *enzymatic decay* of the transmitter (e.g., acetylcholine) while still in the synaptic cleft, the *re-uptake* of the transmitter (e.g., noradrenaline = norepinephrine) into the presynaptic terminal or *uptake* into extraneuronal cells (e.g., in glial cells of the CNS), endocytotic *internalization* of the receptor (→ p. 28), and binding of the transmitter to a receptor on the presynaptic membrane (autoceptor). In the latter case, a rise in  $g_K$  and a drop in  $g_{Ca}$  can occur, thus inhibiting transmitter release, e.g., of GABA via  $GABA_B$  receptors or of norepinephrine via  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors (→ **F** and p. 86).

**B. Spatial summation of stimuli**



**C. Temporal summation of stimuli**



**D. Effect of IPSP on postsynaptic stimulation****E. Termination of transmitter action**

## F. Neurotransmitters in the central nervous system

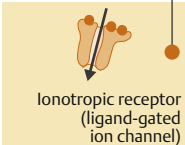
Transmitter	Receptor subtypes	Receptor types	Effect					
			Ion conductance				Second messenger	
			Na <sup>+</sup>	K <sup>+</sup>	Ca <sup>2+</sup>	Cl <sup>-</sup>	cAMP	IP <sub>3</sub> /DAG
Acetylcholine	Nicotinic Muscarinic: M1, M2, M3	●	↑	↑	↑			↑
ADH (= vasopressin)	V1 V2	●		↑			↑	↑
CCK (= cholecystokinin)	CCK <sub>A-B</sub>	●						↑
Dopamine	D1, D5 D2	●		↑	↓		↑	
GABA (= γ-aminobutyric acid)	GABA <sub>A</sub> , GABA <sub>C</sub> GABA <sub>B</sub>	●		↑	↓	↑	↓	
Glutamate (aspartate)	AMPA Kainat NMDA m-GLU	●	↑	↑	↑		↓	↑
Glycine	–	●				↑		
Histamine	H <sub>1</sub> H <sub>2</sub>	●					↑	↑
Neurotensin	–	●					↓	↑
Norepinephrine, epinephrine	α <sub>1(A-D)</sub> α <sub>2(A-C)</sub> β <sub>1-3</sub>	●		↑	↓		↓	↑
Neuropeptide Y (NPY)	Y1–2	●		↑	↓		↓	
Opioid peptides	μ, δ, κ	●		↑	↓		↓	
Oxytocin	–	●						↑
Purines	P <sub>1</sub> : A <sub>1</sub> A <sub>2a</sub> P <sub>2X</sub> P <sub>2Y</sub>	●	↑	↑	↑		↓	↑
Serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine)	5-HT <sub>1</sub> 5-HT <sub>2</sub> 5-HT <sub>3</sub> 5-HT <sub>4-7</sub>	●	↑	↑			↓	↑
Somatostatin (= SIH)	SRIF	●		↑	↓		↓	
Tachykinin	NK1–3	●						↑

Amino acids

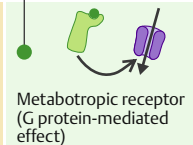
Catecholamines

Peptides

Others

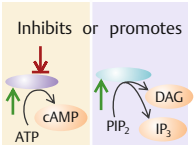


Ionotropic receptor  
(ligand-gated ion channel)



Metabotropic receptor  
(G protein-mediated effect)

Inhibits or promotes



ATP → cAMP (inhibited)

PIP<sub>2</sub> → DAG, IP<sub>3</sub> (promoted)

(Modified from F. E. Bloom)

The transmission of stimuli from a motor axon to a skeletal muscle fiber occurs at the motor end-plate, MEP ( $\rightarrow$  A), a type of chemical synapse ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50 ff.). The transmitter involved is **acetylcholine (ACh)**,  $\rightarrow$  cf. p. 82), which binds to the N(nicotinic)-cholinoceptors of the subsynaptic muscle membrane ( $\rightarrow$  A3). **N-cholinoceptors** are ionotropic, that is, they also function as *ion channels* ( $\rightarrow$  A4). The N-cholinoceptor of the MEP (type  $N_M$ ) has 5 subunits ( $2\alpha, 1\beta, 1\gamma, 1\delta$ ), each of which contains 4 membrane-spanning  $\alpha$ -helices ( $\rightarrow$  p. 14).

The channel opens briefly ( $\rightarrow$  B1) (for approx. 1 ms) when an ACh molecule binds to the two  $\alpha$ -subunits of an N-cholinoceptor ( $\rightarrow$  A4). Unlike voltage-gated  $Na^+$ -channels, the open-probability  $p_o$  of the  $N_M$ -cholinoceptor is not increased by depolarization, but is determined by the *ACh concentration in the synaptic cleft* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50 ff.).

The channel is *specific to cations* such as  $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ , and  $Ca^{2+}$ . Opening of the channel at a resting potential of ca.  $-90$  mV leads mainly to an *influx of  $Na^+$  ions* (and a much lower outflow of  $K^+$ ;  $\rightarrow$  pp. 32 ff. and 44). Depolarization of the subsynaptic membrane therefore occurs: **end-plate potential (EPP)**. *Single-channel currents* of 2.7 pA ( $\rightarrow$  B1) are summated to yield a *miniature end-plate current* of a few nA when spontaneous exocytosis occurs and a vesicle releases a quantum of ACh activating thousands of  $N_M$ -cholinoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  B2). Still, this is not enough for generation of a postsynaptic action potential unless an action potential transmitted by the motor neuron triggers exocytosis of around a hundred vesicles. This opens around 200,000 channels at the same time, yielding a *neurally induced end-plate current* ( $I_{EP}$ ) of ca. 400 nA ( $\rightarrow$  B3). **End-plate current,  $I_{EP}$** , is therefore dependent on:

- ◆ the number of open channels, which is equal to the total number of channels ( $n$ ) times the open-probability ( $p_o$ ) and  $p_o$  is determined by the concentration of ACh in the synaptic cleft (up to 1 mmol/L);
- ◆ the single-channel conductance  $\gamma$  (ca. 30 pS);
- ◆ and, to a slight extent, the membrane potential,  $E_m$ , since the electrical driving "force" ( $= E_m - E_{Na,K}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.) becomes smaller when  $E_m$  is less negative.

$E_{Na,K}$  is the common equilibrium potential for  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  and amounts to approx. 0 mV. It is also called the **reversal potential** because the direction of  $I_{EP}$  ( $= I_{Na} + I_K$ ), which enters the cell when  $E_m$  is negative ( $Na^+$  influx  $>$   $K^+$  outflow), reverses when  $E_m$  is positive ( $K^+$  outflow  $>$   $Na^+$  influx). As a result,

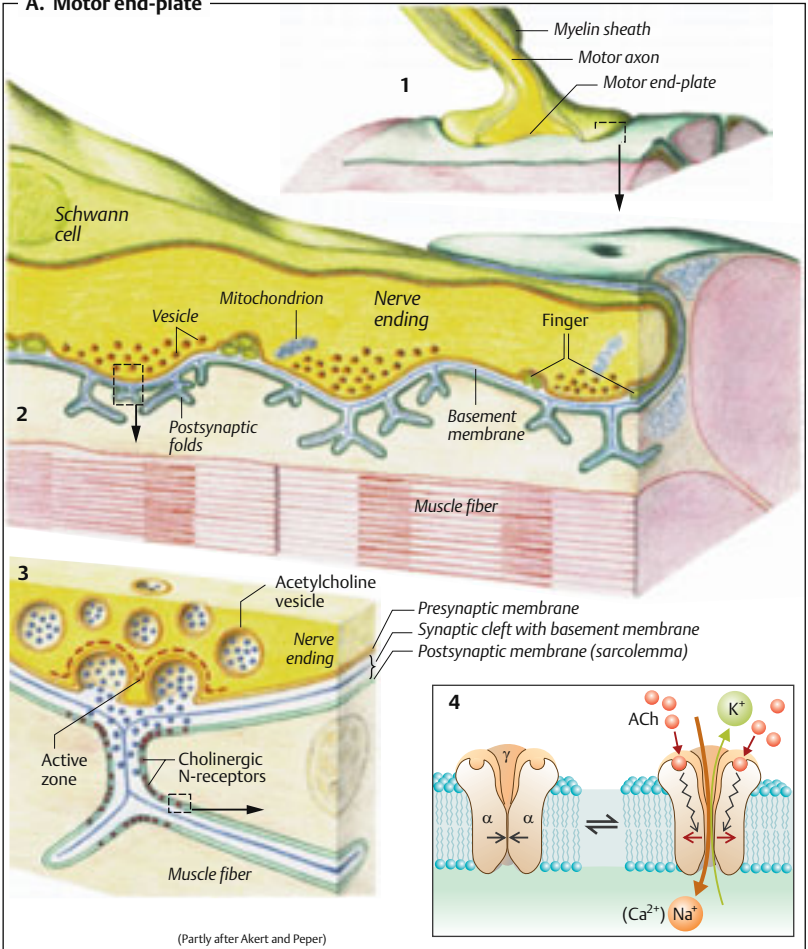
$$I_{EP} = n \cdot p_o \cdot \gamma \cdot (E_m - E_{Na,K}) \quad [2.1]$$

Because **neurally induced EPPs** in skeletal muscle are much larger (depolarization by ca. 70 mV) than neuronal EPSPs (only a few mV;  $\rightarrow$  p. 50 ff.), single motor axon action potentials are above threshold. The EPP is transmitted electrotonically to the adjacent sarcolemma, where muscle action potentials are generated by means of voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channels, resulting in muscle contraction.

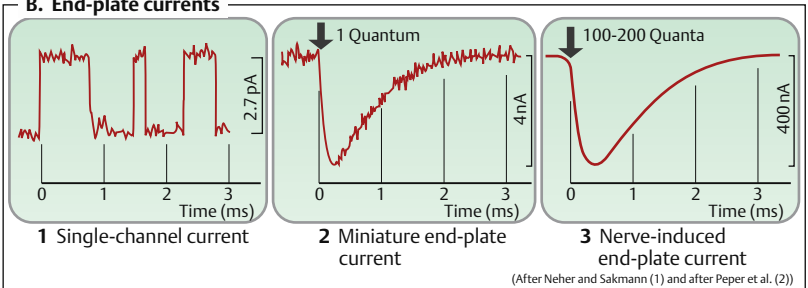
**Termination** of synaptic transmission in MEPs occurs (1) by rapid degradation of ACh in the synaptic cleft by *acetylcholinesterase* localized at the subsynaptic basal membrane, and (2) by diffusion of ACh out of the synaptic cleft ( $\rightarrow$  p. 82).

A motor end-plate can be blocked by certain **poisons and drugs**, resulting in muscular weakness and, in some cases, *paralysis*. *Botulinum neurotoxin*, for example, inhibits the discharge of neurotransmitters from the vesicles, and  *$\alpha$ -bungarotoxin* in cobra venom blocks the opening of ion channels. Curare-like substances such as (+)-tubocurarine are used as **muscle relaxants** in surgical operations. They displace ACh from its binding site (*competitive inhibition*) but do not have a depolarizing effect of their own. Their inhibitory effect can be reversed by *cholinesterase inhibitors* such as neostigmine (decurarization). These agents increase the concentration of ACh in the synaptic cleft, thereby displacing curare. Entry of anticholinesterase agents into intact synapses leads to an increase in the ACh concentration and, thus, to *paralysis due to permanent depolarization*. ACh-like substances such as suxamethonium have a similar depolarizing effect, but decay more slowly than ACh. In this case, paralysis occurs because permanent depolarization also permanently inactivates  $Na^+$  channels near the motor end-plate on the sarcolemma ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

**A. Motor end-plate**



**B. End-plate currents**



Active motility (ability to move) is due to either the **interaction of** energy-consuming **motor proteins** (fueled by ATPase) such as myosin, kinesin and dynein with other proteins such as actin or the **polymerization** and depolymerization of actin and tubulin. Cell division (cytokinesis), cell migration ( $\rightarrow$  p. 30), intracellular vesicular transport and cytosol ( $\rightarrow$  p. 12f.), sperm motility ( $\rightarrow$  p. 308f.), axonal transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42), electromotility of outer hair cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 372), and ciliary motility ( $\rightarrow$  p. 110) are examples of cell and organelle motility.

The muscles consist of cells (fibers) that contract when stimulated. **Skeletal muscle** is responsible for locomotion, positional change, and the convection of respiratory gases. **Cardiac muscle** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 192 ff.) is responsible for pumping the blood, and **smooth muscle** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 70) serves as the motor of internal organs and blood vessels. The different muscle types are distinguished by several functional characteristics ( $\rightarrow$  A).

### Motor Unit of Skeletal Muscle

Unlike some types of smooth muscle (single-unit type;  $\rightarrow$  p. 70) and cardiac muscle fibers, which pass electric stimuli to each other through gap junctions or nexus ( $\rightarrow$  A; p. 16f.), **skeletal muscle** fibers are not stimulated by adjacent muscle fibers, but by *motor neurons*. In fact, muscle paralysis occurs if the nerve is severed.

One motor neuron together with all muscle fibers innervated by it is called a **motor unit** (MU). Muscle fibers belonging to a single motor unit can be distributed over large portions (1 cm<sup>2</sup>) of the muscle cross-sectional area. To supply its muscle fibers, a motor neuron splits into collaterals with terminal branches ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42). A given motor neuron may supply only 25 muscle fibers (mimetic muscle) or well over 1000 (temporal muscle).

Two **types of skeletal muscle fibers** can be distinguished: **S** – slow-twitch fibers (type 1) and **F** – fast-twitch fibers (type 2), including two subtypes, **FR** (2A) and **FF** (2B). Since each motor unit contains only one type of fiber, this classification also applies to the motor unit. **Slow-twitch fibers** are the least fatigable and

are therefore equipped for *sustained performance*. They have high densities of capillaries and mitochondria and high concentrations of fat droplets (high-energy substrate reserves) and the red pigment myoglobin (short-term O<sub>2</sub> storage). They are also rich in oxidative enzymes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72). **Fast-twitch fibers** are mainly responsible for brief and rapid contractions. They are quickly fatigued (FF > FR) and are rich in glycogen (FF > FR) but contain little myoglobin (FF << FR).

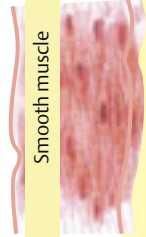
The **fiber type distribution** of a muscle depends on the muscle type. Motor units of the *S type* predominate in “red” muscles such as the soleus muscle, which helps to maintain the body in an upright position, whereas the *F type* predominates in “white” muscles such as the gastrocnemius muscle, which is involved in running activity. Each fiber type can also be *converted* to the other type. If, for example, the prolonged activation of fast-twitch fibers leads to a chronic increase in the cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration, fast-twitch fibers will be converted to slow-twitch fibers and vice versa.

**Graded muscle activity** is possible because a variable number of motor units can be recruited as needed. The more motor units a muscle has, the more finely graded its contractions. Contractions are much finer in the external eye muscles, for example, which have around 2000 motor units, than in the lumbrical muscles, which have only around 100 motor units. The larger the **number of motor units recruited**, the stronger the contraction. The number and type of motor units recruited depends on the type of movement involved (fine or coarse movement, intermittent or persistent contraction, reflex activity, voluntary or involuntary movement, etc.). In addition, the strength of each motor unit can be increased by increasing the **frequency of neuronal impulses**, as in the *tetanization* of skeletal muscle ( $\rightarrow$  p. 67 A).

A. Structure and function of heart, skeletal and smooth muscle

Structure and function

Motor end-plates	None
Fibers	Fusiform, short ( $\leq 0.2$ mm)
Mitochondria	Few
Nucleus per fiber	1
Sarcomeres	None
Electr. coupling	Some (single-unit type)
Sarcoplasmic reticulum	Little developed
Ca <sup>2+</sup> "switch"	Calmodulin/caldesmon
Pacemaker	Some spontaneous rhythmic activity ( $1s^{-1}$ , $-1h^{-1}$ )
Response to stimulus	Change in tone or rhythm frequency
Tetanizable	Yes
Work range	Length-force curve is variable

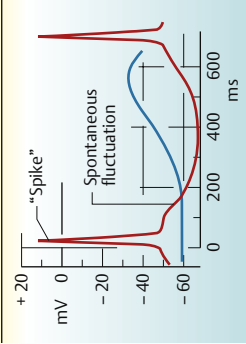


Smooth muscle



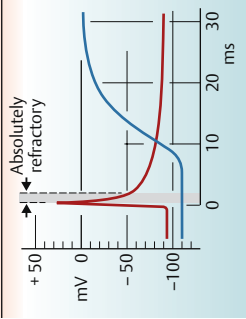
Cardiac muscle (striated)

Motor end-plates	None
Fibers	Branched
Mitochondria	Many
Nucleus per fiber	1
Sarcomeres	Yes, length $\leq 2.6$ $\mu$ m
Electr. coupling	Yes (functional syncytium)
Sarcoplasmic reticulum	Moderately developed
Ca <sup>2+</sup> "switch"	Troponin
Pacemaker	Yes (sinus nodes ca. $1s^{-1}$ )
Response to stimulus	All or none
Tetanizable	No
Work range	In rising length-force curve (see 2.15E)



Skeletal muscle (striated)

Motor end-plates	Yes
Fibers	Cylindrical, long ( $\leq 15$ cm)
Mitochondria	Few (depending on muscle type)
Nucleus per fiber	Multiple
Sarcomeres	Yes, length $\leq 3.65$ $\mu$ m
Electr. coupling	No
Sarcoplasmic reticulum	Highly developed
Ca <sup>2+</sup> "switch"	Troponin
Pacemaker	No (requires nerve stimulus)
Response to stimulus	Graded
Tetanizable	Yes
Work range	At peak of length-force curve (see 2.15E)



Response to stimulus

Potential —  
Muscle tension —

The **muscle cell** is a fiber ( $\rightarrow$  A2) approximately 10 to 100  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Skeletal muscle fibers can be as long as 15 cm. Meat “fibers” visible with the naked eye are actually bundles of muscle fibers that are around 100 to 1000  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter ( $\rightarrow$  A1). Each striated muscle fiber is invested by a cell membrane called the **sarcolemma**, which surrounds the **sarcoplasm** (cytoplasm), several cell nuclei, mitochondria (**sarcosomes**), substances involved in supplying  $\text{O}_2$  and energy ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72), and several hundreds of **myofibrils**.

So-called Z lines or, from a three-dimensional aspect, **Z plates** (plate-like proteins;  $\rightarrow$  B) subdivide each **myofibril** ( $\rightarrow$  A3) into approx. 2  $\mu\text{m}$  long, striated compartments called **sarcomeres** ( $\rightarrow$  B). When observed by (two-dimensional) microscopy, one can identify alternating light and dark bands and lines (hence the name “striated muscle”) created by the thick **myosin II filaments** and thin **actin filaments** ( $\rightarrow$  B; for myosin I, see p. 30). Roughly 2000 actin filaments are bound medially to the Z plate. Thus, half of the actin filament projects into two adjacent sarcomeres ( $\rightarrow$  B). The region of the sarcomere proximal to the Z plate contains only actin filaments, which form a so-called **I band** ( $\rightarrow$  B). The region where the actin and myosin filaments overlap is called the **A band**. The **H zone** solely contains myosin filaments (ca. 1000 per sarcomere), which thicken towards the middle of the sarcomere to form the M line (**M plate**).

The (actin) filaments are anchored to the membrane of muscle cell by the protein **dystrophin**, which is connected to sarcoglycans of the sarcolemma. Merosin binds the sarcoglycans to the collagen fibrils of the extracellular matrix.

Mutation of these proteins leads to **muscular dystrophy** (Duchenne muscular dystrophy, limb-girdle dystrophy, congenital muscular dystrophy) implying the degeneration of muscle fibers with increasing muscular weakness.

Each myosin filament consists of a bundle of ca. 300 dimeric **myosin-II molecules** ( $\rightarrow$  B). Each molecule has two globular heads connected by flexible necks (head and neck = subfragment S1; formed after proteolysis) to the filamentous tail of the molecule (two intertwined  $\alpha$ -helices = subfragment S2) ( $\rightarrow$  C).

Each of the heads has a **motor domain** with a **nucleotide binding pocket** (for ATP or ADP + P<sub>i</sub>) and an **actin binding site**. Two light protein chains are located on this heavy molecule (220 kDa): one is regulatory (20 kDa), the other so-called essential (17 kDa). Conformational changes in the head-neck segment allow the myosin head to “tilt” when interacting with actin (**sliding filaments**;  $\rightarrow$  p. 62).

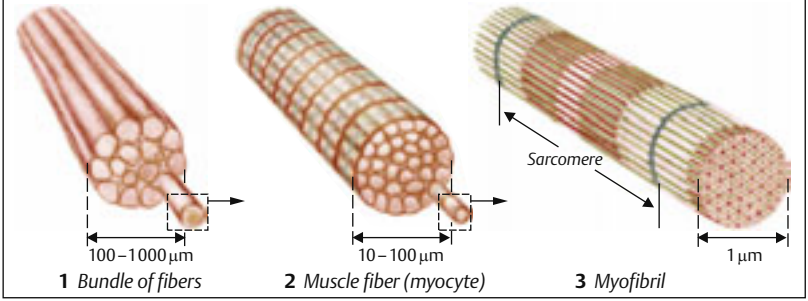
**Actin** is a globular protein molecule (G-actin). Four hundred such molecules join to form F-actin, a beaded polymer chain. Two of the twisted protein filaments combine to form an **actin filament** ( $\rightarrow$  B), which is positioned by the equally long protein **nebulin**.

**Tropomyosin** molecules joined end-to-end (40 nm each) lie adjacent to the actin filament, and a **troponin** (TN) molecule is attached every 40 nm or so ( $\rightarrow$  B). Each troponin molecule consists of three subunits: **TN-C**, which has two regulatory bindings sites for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  at the amino end, **TN-I**, which prevents the filaments from sliding when at rest ( $\rightarrow$  p. 62), and **TN-T**, which interacts with TN-C, TN-I, and actin.

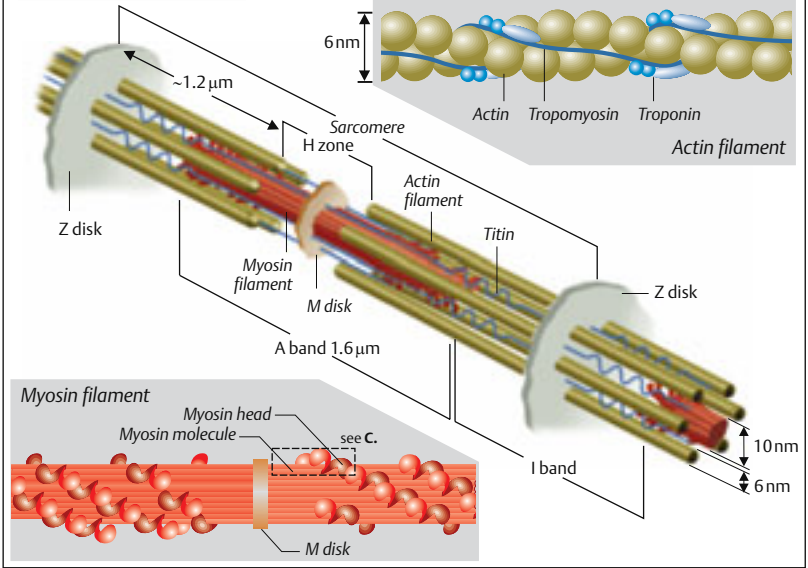
The sarcomere also has another system of filaments ( $\rightarrow$  B) formed by the filamentous protein **titin** (connectin). Titin is more than 1000 nm in length and has some 30 000 amino acids ( $M_r > 3000$  kDa). It is the longest known polypeptide chain and comprises 10% of the total muscle mass. Titin is anchored at its carboxyl end to the M plate and, at the amino end, to the Z plate ( $\rightarrow$  p. 66 for functional description).

The sarcolemma forms a T system with several **transverse tubules** (tube-like invaginations) that run perpendicular to the myofibrils ( $\rightarrow$  p. 63 A). The endoplasmic reticulum ( $\rightarrow$  p. 10 ff.) of muscle fibers has a characteristic shape and is called the **sarcoplasmic reticulum** (SR;  $\rightarrow$  p. 63 A). It forms closed chambers without connections between the intra- or extracellular spaces. Most of the chambers run lengthwise to the myofibrils, and are therefore called **longitudinal tubules** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 63 A). The sarcoplasmic reticulum is more prominently developed in skeletal muscle than in the myocardium and serves as a  **$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  storage space**. Each T system separates the adjacent longitudinal tubules, forming **triads** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 63 A, B).

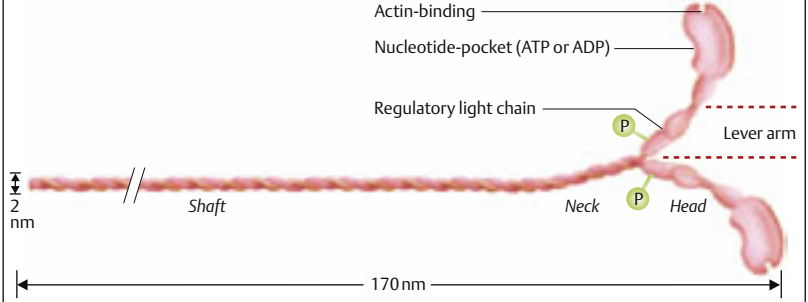
**A. Ultrastructure of striated muscle fibers**



**B. Sarcomere structure**



**C. Myosin II molecule**



(After D. M. Warshaw)

**Stimulation of muscle fibers.** The release of *acetylcholine* at the motor end-plate of skeletal muscle leads to an *end-plate current* that spreads electrotonically and activates fast voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in the sarcolemma ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56). This leads to the firing of an **action potential (AP)** that travels at a rate of 2 m/s along the sarcolemma of the entire muscle fiber, and penetrates rapidly into the depths of the fiber along the T system ( $\rightarrow$  A).

Genetic defects of these  $\text{Na}^+$  channels slow down their deactivation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46), which leads to hyperexcitability with extended contraction and delayed muscle relaxation (**myotonia**). The extended muscular activity is accompanied by a high number of  $\text{K}^+$  ions exiting the muscle fibers. This results in hyperkalemia that reduces the muscular resting potential to the point where the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels cannot be activated any longer and the muscle becomes temporarily paralyzed: **familial hyperkalemic periodic paralysis**.

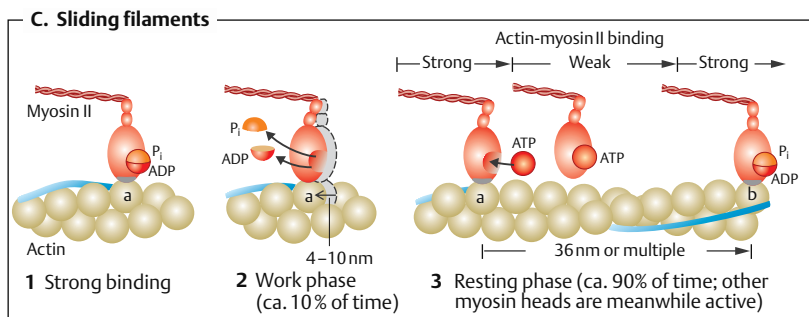
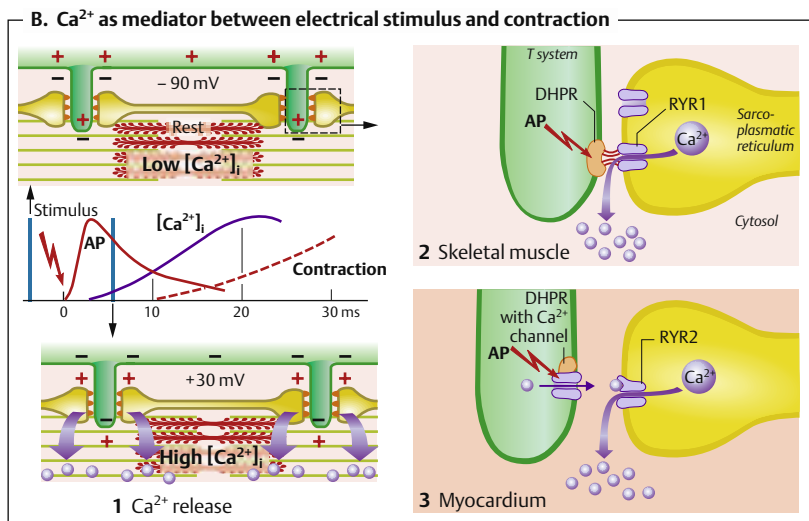
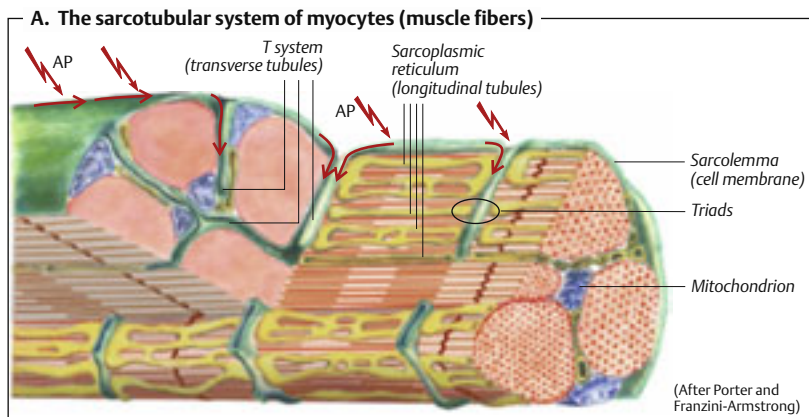
The conversion of this excitation into a contraction is called **electromechanical coupling** ( $\rightarrow$  B). In the *skeletal muscle*, this process begins with the action potential exciting voltage-sensitive *dihydropyridine receptors* (DHPR) of the sarcolemma in the region of the triads. The DHPR are arranged in rows, and directly opposite them in the adjacent membrane of the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) are rows of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels called *ryanodine receptors* (type 1 in skeletal muscle: RYR1). Every other RYR1 is associated with a DHPR ( $\rightarrow$  B2). RYR1 open when they directly “sense” by mechanical means an AP-related conformational change in the DHPR. In the *myocardium*, on the other hand, each DHPR is part of a *voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel* (L-type) of the sarcolemma that opens in response to an action potential. Small quantities of extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  enter the cell through this channel, subsequently leading to the opening of myocardial RYR2 (so-called *trigger effect of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spark*;  $\rightarrow$  B3).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions stored in the SR now flow through the opened RYR1 or RYR2 channels into the cytosol, increasing the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  from a resting value of ca.  $0.01 \mu\text{mol/L}$  to over  $1 \mu\text{mol/L}$  ( $\rightarrow$  B1). In skeletal muscle, DHPR stimulation at a single site is enough to trigger the coordinated opening of an entire group of RYR1. This increases the reliability of impulse

transmission. The increased cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration saturates the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding sites on **troponin-C**. This cancels the troponin-mediated inhibitory effect of tropomyosin on filament sliding ( $\rightarrow$  D1), which now allows for a strong (high affinity) actin-myosin-II binding.

In patients with genetic defects of RYR1, general anesthesia may lead to the massive release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , which causes intense muscle contractions accompanied by a rapid and life threatening increase of body temperature: **malignant hyperthermia**.

**ATP** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72) is essential for **filament sliding** and, hence, for muscle contraction. Due to their ATPase activity, the myosin heads ( $\rightarrow$  p. 60) act as the *motors* (motor proteins) of this process. The myosin-II and actin filaments of a sarcomere ( $\rightarrow$  p. 60) are arranged in such a way that they can slide past each other. The myosin heads connect with the actin filaments at a particular angle, forming so-called *cross-bridges*. Due to a *conformational change* in the region of the nucleotide binding site of myosin-II ( $\rightarrow$  p. 61 C), the spatial extent of which is increased by concerted movement of the neck region, the myosin head tilts down, drawing, in two separate steps, the thin filament a combined length of roughly 4–12 nm (power stroke). The second myosin head may also move an adjacent actin filament. The head then detaches and “tenses” in preparation for the next “oarstroke” when it binds to actin anew.

Kinesin, another motor protein ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 42 u. 58), independently advances on the microtubule by incremental movement of its two heads (8 nm increments), as in tug-of-war. In this case, fifty percent of the cycle time is “work time” (**duty ratio** = 0.5). Between two consecutive interactions with actin in *skeletal muscle*, on the other hand, myosin-II “jumps” 36 nm (or multiples of 36, e.g. 396 nm or more in rapid contractions) to reach the next (or the 11th) suitably located actin binding site ( $\rightarrow$  C3, jump from a to b). Meanwhile, the other myosin heads working on this particular actin filament must make at least another 10 to 100 oarstrokes of around 4–12 nm each. The duty ratio of a myosin-II head is therefore 0.1 to 0.01. This division of labor by the myosin heads ensures that a certain percentage of the heads



► will always be ready to generate rapid contractions.

When filament sliding occurs, the Z plates approach each other and the overlap region of thick and thin filaments becomes larger, but the length of the filaments remains unchanged. This results in shortening of the I band and H zone (→ p. 60). When the ends of the thick filaments ultimately bump against the Z plate, maximum muscle shortening occurs, and the ends of the thin filaments overlap (→ p. 67 C). Shortening of the sarcomere therefore occurs at both ends of the myosin bundle, but in opposite directions.

**Contraction cycle** (→ C and D). Each of the two myosin heads (M) of a myosin-II molecule bind (with the aid of  $Mg^{2+}$ ) one ATP molecule in their nucleotide binding pocket. The resulting M-ATP complex lies at an approx.  $45^\circ$  angle to the rest of the myosin filament (→ D4). In this state, myosin has only a very weak affinity for actin binding. Now, due to the influence of the *increased cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration* on the troponin-tropomyosin complex, *actin (A) activates myosin's ATPase*, resulting in hydrolysis of ATP ( $ATP \rightarrow ADP + P_i$ ) and the formation of an A-M-ADP- $P_i$  complex (→ D1). This causes the myosin-II heads to lift again and as a result of this conformational change the actin-myosin association constant increases by four powers of ten (→ C1, D1). Now  $P_i$  (inorganic phosphate) detaches from the complex, which results in a  $40^\circ$  tilt of the myosin heads (→ D2a). This causes the actin and myosin filaments to slide past each other (first step of the *power stroke*). The following release of ADP initiates part two of the power stroke, which ultimately results in the final positioning of the myosin heads (→ D2b). The remaining A-M complex (*rigor complex*) is stable and can again be transformed into a much weaker bond when the myosin heads bind ATP anew ("*softening effect*" of ATP, → D4). The high flexibility of the muscle at rest is important for processes such as cardiac filling or the relaxing of the extensor muscles during rapid bending movement. If the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration remains  $> 10^{-6}$  mol/L, the D1 to D4 cycle will begin anew. This depends mainly on whether subsequent action potentials arrive. Only a portion of the myosin heads that pull actin fila-

ments are "on duty" (low duty ratio; see p. 62) to ensure the smoothness of contractions.

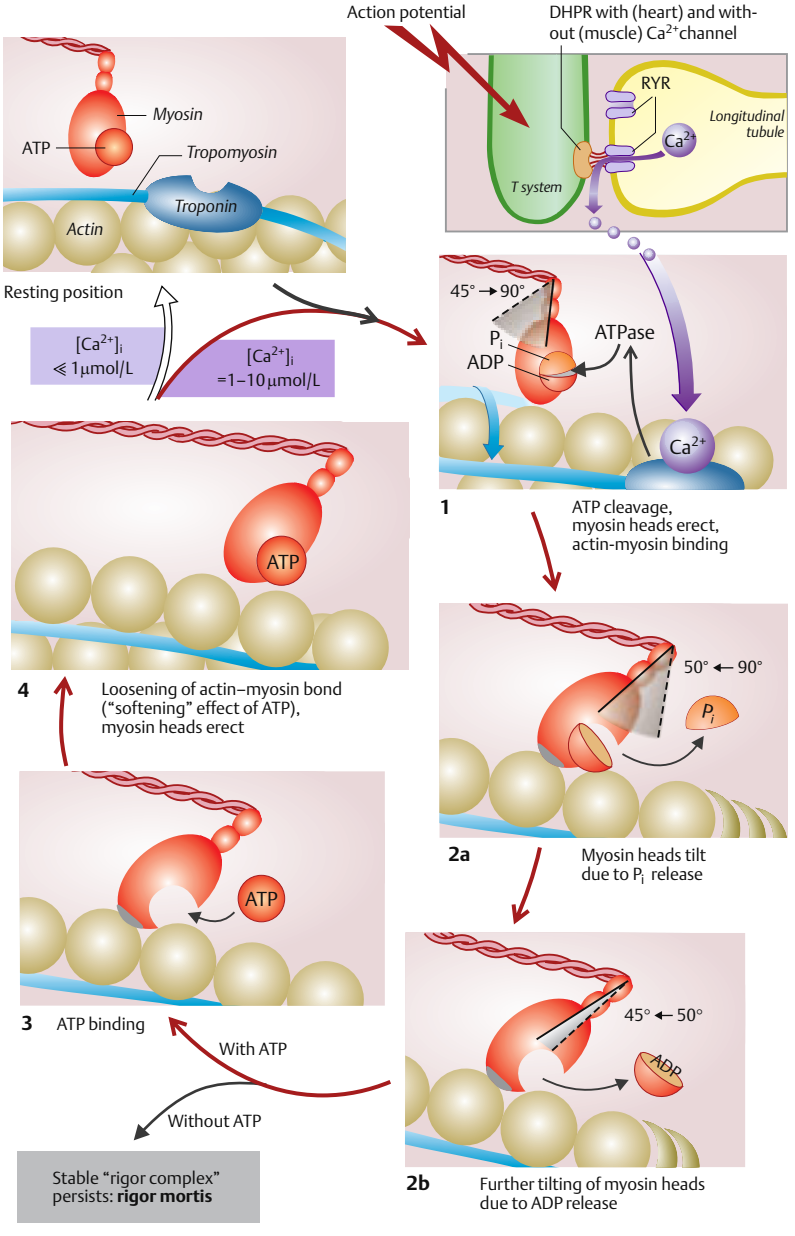
The  $Ca^{2+}$  ions released from the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) are continuously pumped back to the SR due to active transport by  $Ca^{2+}$ -ATPase (→ pp. 17 A and 26), also called SERCA (→ p. 16). Thus, if the RYR-mediated release of  $Ca^{2+}$  from the SR is interrupted, the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration rapidly drops below  $10^{-6}$  mol/L and filament sliding ceases (*resting position*; → D, upper left corner).

**Parvalbumin**, a protein that occurs in the cytosol of fast-twitch muscle fibers (→ type F; p. 58), accelerates muscle relaxation after short contractions by binding cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  in exchange for  $Mg^{2+}$ . Parvalbumin's binding affinity for  $Ca^{2+}$  is higher than that of troponin, but lower than that of SR's  $Ca^{2+}$ -ATPase. It therefore functions as a "slow"  $Ca^{2+}$  buffer.

The course of the filament sliding cycle as described above mainly applies to **isotonic contractions**, that is, to contractions where muscle shortening occurs. During strictly **isometric contractions** where muscular tension increases but the muscle length remains unchanged, the tilting of the myosin heads and the filament sliding cannot take place. Instead, the isometric force is created through the deformation of the myosin heads.

The muscle fibers of a dead body do not produce any ATP. This means that, after death,  $Ca^{2+}$  is no longer pumped back into the SR, and the ATP reserves needed to break down stable A-M complexes are soon depleted. This results in stiffening of the dead body or **rigor mortis**, which passes only after the actin and myosin molecules in the muscle fibers decompose.

D. Work cycle of sliding filaments (isotonic contraction)



Action potentials generated in muscle fibers increase the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$ , thereby triggering a contraction (skeletal muscle;  $\rightarrow$  p. 36 B; myocardium;  $\rightarrow$  p. 196). In skeletal muscles, **gradation of contraction force** is achieved by variable *recruitment* of motor units ( $\rightarrow$  p. 58) and by changing the *action potential frequency*. A single stimulus always leads to maximum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release and, thus, to a maximum single twitch of skeletal muscle fiber if above threshold (**all-or-none response**). Nonetheless, a single stimulus does not induce maximum shortening of muscle fiber because it is too brief to keep the sliding filaments in motion long enough for the end position to be reached. Muscle shortening continues only if a second stimulus arrives before the muscle has completely relaxed after the first stimulus. This type of stimulus repetition leads to incremental **mechanical summation** or **superposition** of the individual contractions ( $\rightarrow$  A). Should the frequency of stimulation become so high that the muscle can no longer relax at all between stimuli, sustained maximum contraction of the motor units or **tetanus** will occur ( $\rightarrow$  A). This occurs, for example, at 20 Hz in slow-twitch muscles and at 60–100 Hz in fast-twitch muscles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 58). The muscle force during tetanus can be as much as four times larger than that of single twitches. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, which decreases to some extent between superpositioned stimuli, remains high in tetanus.

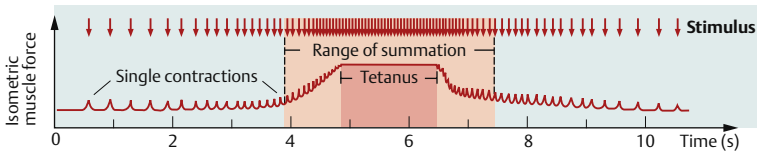
**Rigor** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 64) as well as **contracture**, another state characterized by persistent muscle shortening, must be distinguished from tetanus. Contracture is not caused by action potentials, but by *persistent local depolarization* due, for example, to increased extracellular  $\text{K}^+$  concentrations ( $\text{K}^+$  contracture) or drug-induced intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, e.g., in response to caffeine. The contraction of so-called **tonus fibers** (specific fibers in the external eye muscles and in muscle spindles;  $\rightarrow$  p. 320) is also a form of contracture. Tonus fibers do not respond to stimuli according to the all-or-none law, but contract in proportion with the magnitude of depolarization. The magnitude of contraction of tonus fibers is regulated by *variation of the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration* (not by action potentials!)

In contrast, the general **muscle tone** (*reflex tone*), or the tension of skeletal muscle at rest, is attributable to the arrival of normal action potentials at the individual motor units. The individual contractions cannot be detected because the motor units are alternately (asynchronously) stimulated. When apparently at rest, muscles such as the postural muscles are in this involuntary state of tension. Resting muscle tone is regulated by reflexes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 320 ff.) and increases as the state of attentiveness increases.

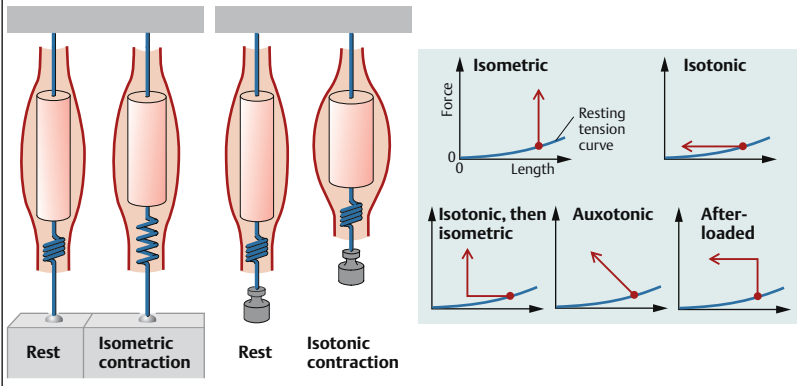
**Types of contractions** ( $\rightarrow$  B). There are different types of muscle contractions. In **isometric contractions**, muscle force (“tension”) varies while the length of the muscle remains constant. (In cardiac muscle, this also represents *isovolumetric contraction*, because the muscle length determines the atrial or ventricular volume.) In **isotonic contractions**, the length of the muscle changes while muscle force remains constant. (In cardiac muscle, this also represents *isobaric contraction*, because the muscle force determines the atrial or ventricular pressure.) In **auxotonic contractions**, muscle length and force both vary simultaneously. An isotonic or auxotonic contraction that builds on an isometric one is called an **afterloaded contraction**.

**Muscle extensibility.** A resting muscle containing ATP can be stretched like a rubber band. The force required to start the stretching action ( $\rightarrow$  D, E; extension force at rest) is very small, but increases exponentially when the muscle is under high elastic strain (see *resting tension curve*,  $\rightarrow$  D). A muscle’s *resistance to stretch*, which keeps the sliding filaments in the sarcomeres from separating, is influenced to a small extent by the fascia (fibrous tissue). The main factor, however, is the giant filamentous elastic molecule called **titin** (or *connectin*; 1000 nm long,  $M_r = 3$  to 3.7 MDa) which is incorporated in the sarcomere (6 titin molecules per myosin filament). In the A band region of the sarcomere ( $\rightarrow$  p. 61 B), titin lies adjacent to a myosin filament and helps to keep it in the center of the sarcomere. Titin molecules in the I band region are flexible and function as “elastic bands” that counteract passive stretching of a muscle and influence its shortening velocity. ▶

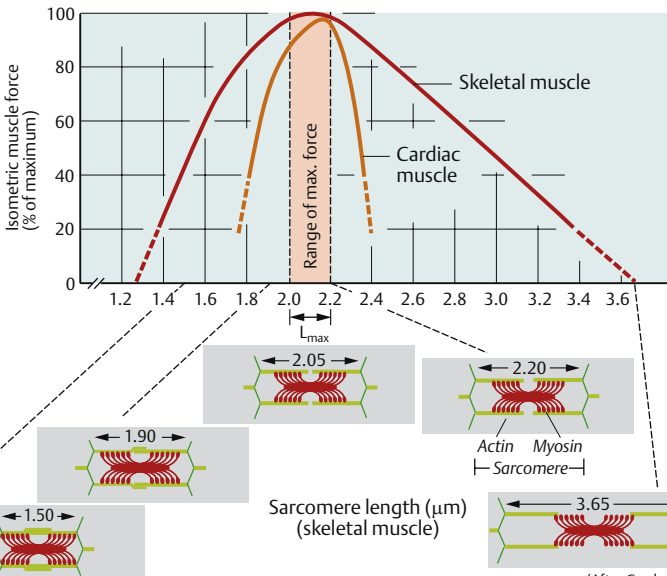
**A. Muscle strength at increasing and decreasing stimulus frequencies**



**B. Types of contractions**



**C. Isometric muscle force relative to sarcomere length**



► The **extensibility of titin molecules**, which can stretch to up to around ten times their normal length in skeletal muscle and somewhat less in cardiac muscle, is mainly due to frequent repetition of the *PEVK motif* (proline-glutamate-valine-lysine). In very strong muscle extension, which represents the steepest part of the resting extensibility curve (→ **D**), globular chain elements called immunoglobulin C2 domains also unfold. The quicker the muscle stretches, the more sudden and crude this type of “shock absorber” action will be.

The **length (L)** and **force (F)** or “tension” of a muscle are closely related (→ **C, E**). The total force of a muscle is the sum of its active force and its extension force at rest, as was explained above. Since the active force is determined by the magnitude of all potential actin-myosin interactions, it varies in accordance with the initial sarcomere length (→ **C, D**). Skeletal muscle can develop maximum active (isometric) force ( $F_0$ ) from its resting length ( $L_{max}$ ; sarcomere length ca. 2 to 2.2  $\mu\text{m}$ ; → **C**). When the sarcomeres shorten ( $L < L_{max}$ ), part of the thin filaments overlap, allowing only forces smaller than  $F_0$  to develop (→ **C**). When L is 70% of  $L_{max}$  (sarcomere length: 1.65  $\mu\text{m}$ ), the thick filaments make contact with the Z disks, and F becomes even smaller. In addition, a greatly pre-extended muscle ( $L > L_{max}$ ) can develop only restricted force, because the number of potentially available actin-myosin bridges is reduced (→ **C**). When extended to 130% or more of the  $L_{max}$ , the extension force at rest becomes a major part of the total muscle force (→ **E**).

The length-force curve corresponds to the **cardiac pressure-volume diagram** in which ventricular filling volume corresponds to muscle length, and ventricular pressure corresponds to muscle force; → p.204. Changes in the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration can modify the pressure-volume relationship by causing a change in **contractility** (→ p.205 B2).

Other important functional **differences between cardiac muscle and skeletal muscle** are listed below (see also p.59 A):

◆ Since skeletal muscle is more extensible than the cardiac muscle, the passive extension force of cardiac muscle at rest is greater than that of skeletal muscle (→ **E1, 2**).

◆ Skeletal muscle normally functions in the plateau region of its length-force curve, whereas cardiac muscle tends to operate in the ascending limb (below  $L_{max}$ ) of its length-force curve without a plateau (→ **C, E1, 2**). Hence, the ventricle responds to increased diastolic filling loads by increasing its force development (**Frank-Starling mechanism**; → p.206). In cardiac muscle, extension also affects troponin's sensitivity to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , resulting in a steeper curve (→ **E2**).

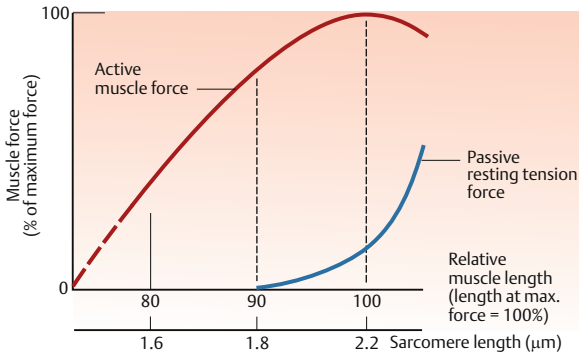
◆ **Action potentials** in cardiac muscle are of much longer duration than those in skeletal muscle (→ p.59 A) because  $g_K$  temporarily decreases and  $g_{Ca}$  increases for 200 to 500 ms after rapid inactivation of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. This allows the slow influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , causing the action potential to reach a **plateau**. As a result, the refractory period does not end until a contraction has almost subsided (→ p.59 A). Therefore, **tetanus cannot be evoked in cardiac muscle**.

◆ Unlike skeletal muscle, **cardiac muscle has no motor units**. Instead, the stimulus spreads across all myocardial fibers of the atria and subsequently of the ventricles generating an **all-or-none contraction** of both atria and, thereafter, both ventricles.

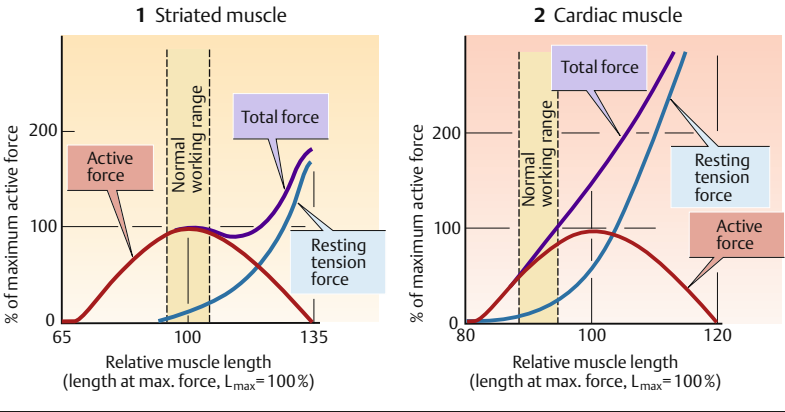
◆ In cardiac muscle but not in skeletal muscle, the duration of an action potential can change the force of contraction, which is controlled by the variable influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the cell.

The greater the force (load), the lower the **velocity** of an (isotonic) contraction (see velocity-force diagram, **F1**). Maximal force and a small amount of heat will develop if shortening does not occur. The maximal velocity (biceps: ca. 7 m/s) and a lot of heat will develop in muscle without a stress load. Light loads can therefore be picked up more quickly than heavy loads (→ **F2**). The total amount of energy consumed for work and heat is greater in isotonic contractions than in isometric ones. **Muscle power** is the product of force and the shortening velocity:  $\text{N} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} = \text{W}$  (→ **F1**, colored areas).

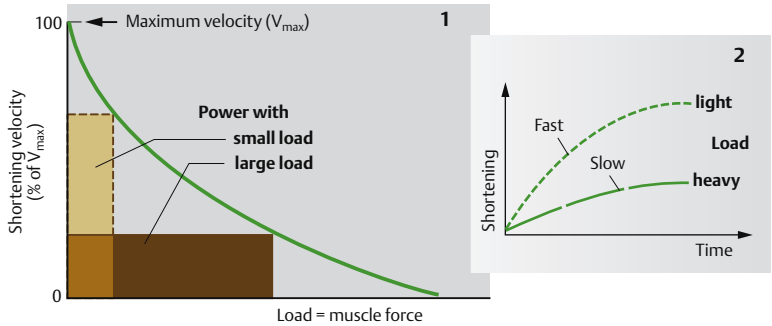
**D. Active and passive components of muscle force (skeletal muscle)**



**E. Length-force curve for skeletal and cardiac muscle**



**F. Muscle force (or load) and shortening velocity**



Smooth muscle (SmM) consists of multiple layers of spindle-shaped cells. It is involved in the function of many organs (stomach, intestine, gall bladder, urinary bladder, uterus, bronchi, eyes, etc.) and the blood vessels, where it plays an important role in circulatory control. SmM contains a special type of F-actin-tropomyosin and myosin II filaments ( $\rightarrow$  p.60), but lacks troponin and myofibrils. Furthermore, it has no distinct tubular system and no sarcomeres (nonstriated). It is therefore called smooth muscle because of this lack of striation (see p.59A for further differences in the muscle types). SmM filaments form a loose contractile apparatus arranged approximately longitudinally within the cell and attached to discoid plaques (see **B** for model), which also provide a mechanical means for cell–cell binding of SmM. Smooth muscle can shorten much more than striated muscle.

The **membrane potential** of the SmM cells of many organs (e.g., the intestine) is not constant, but fluctuates rhythmically at a low frequency (3 to 15  $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) and amplitude (10 to 20 mV), producing *slow waves*. These waves trigger a burst of action potentials (spikes) when they exceed a certain threshold potential. The longer the slow wave remains above the threshold potential, the greater the number and frequency of the action potentials it produces. A relatively sluggish contraction occurs around 150 ms after a spike ( $\rightarrow$  p.59A, left panel). *Tetanus* occurs at relatively low spike frequencies ( $\rightarrow$  p.66). Hence, SmM is constantly in a state of a more or less strong contraction (**tonus** or tone). The action potential of SmM cells of some organs has a plateau similar to that of the cardiac action potential ( $\rightarrow$  p.59A, middle panel).

There are two types of smooth muscles ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). The cells of **single-unit SmM** are electrically coupled with each other by *gap junctions* ( $\rightarrow$  pp.18 and 50). Stimuli are passed along from cell to cell in organs such as the stomach, intestine, gallbladder, urinary bladder, ureter, uterus, and some types of blood vessels. Stimuli are generated autonomously from within the SmM, partly by pacemaker cells. In other words, the stimulus is innervation-independent and, in many cases, spontaneous (*myogenic tonus*). The second type, **multi-unit**

**SmM**, contracts primarily due to stimuli from the autonomic nervous system (*neurogenic tonus*). This occurs in structures such as the arterioles, spermatic ducts, iris, ciliary body, and the muscles at the roots of the hair. Since these SmM cells generally are not connected by gap junctions, stimulation remains localized, as in the motor units of the skeletal muscle.

**Smooth muscle tonus is regulated** by the degree of depolarization (e.g., through stretch or pacemaker cells) as well as by transmitter substances (e.g., acetylcholine or noradrenaline) and numerous hormones (e.g., estrogens, progesterone and oxytocin in the uterus and histamine, angiotensin II, adiuoretin, serotonin and bradykinin in vascular muscle). An increase in tonus will occur if any of these factors directly or indirectly increases the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration to more than  $10^{-6}$  mol/L. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx comes mainly from extracellular sources, but a small portion comes from intracellular stores ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions bind to calmodulin (CM) ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**), and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -CM promotes contraction in the following manner.

**Regulation at myosin II** ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**): The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -CM complex activates myosin light chain kinase (MLCK), which phosphorylates myosin's regulatory light chain (RLC) in a certain position, thereby enabling the myosin head to interact with actin ( $\rightarrow$  **B6**).

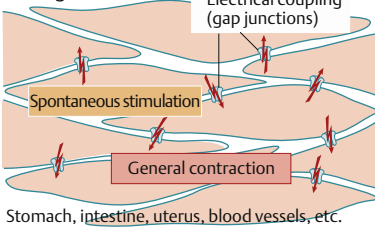
**Regulation at the actin level** ( $\rightarrow$  **B4**). The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -CM complex also binds with caldesmon (CDM), which then detaches from the actin-tropomyosin complex, thus making it available for filament sliding ( $\rightarrow$  **B6**). Phosphorylation of CDM by protein kinase C (PK-C) also seems to be able to induce filament sliding ( $\rightarrow$  **B5**).

Factors that lead to a **reduction of tonus** are: reduction of the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration to less than  $10^{-6}$  mol/L ( $\rightarrow$  **B7**), phosphatase activity ( $\rightarrow$  **B8**), and PK-C if it phosphorylates another position on the RLC ( $\rightarrow$  **B9**).

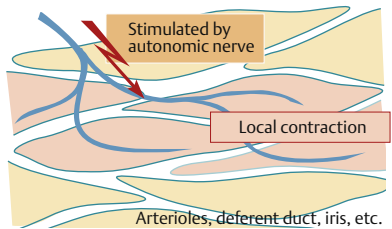
When length–force curves are recorded for smooth muscle, the curve shows that muscle force decreases continuously while muscle length remains constant. This property of a muscle is called **plasticity**.

**A. Smooth muscle fibers according to type of stimulation**

**1 Single-unit fibers**

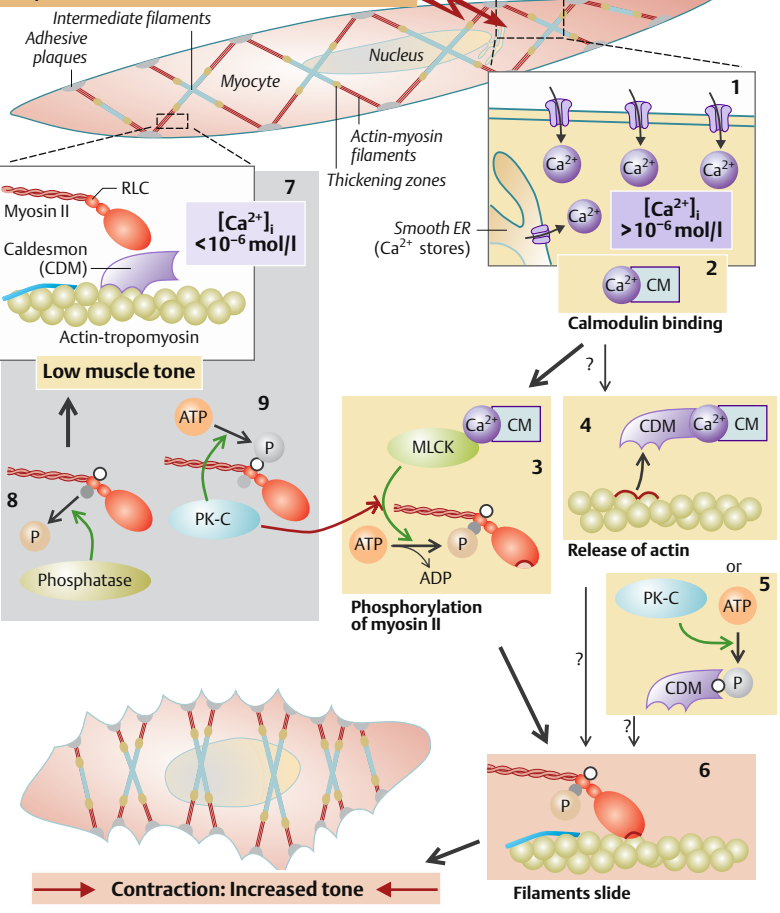


**2 Multi-unit fibers**



**B. Regulation of smooth muscle contraction**

**Depolarization, transmitter, hormones, stretch**



**Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)** is a direct source of chemical energy for muscle contraction ( $\rightarrow$  A, pp. 40 and 64). However, a muscle cell contains only a limited amount of ATP—only enough to take a sprinter some 10 to 20 m or so. Hence, spent ATP is continuously regenerated to keep the intracellular ATP concentration constant, even when large quantities of it are needed. The three routes of **ATP regeneration** are ( $\rightarrow$  B):

1. Dephosphorylation of creatine phosphate
  2. Anaerobic glycolysis
  3. Aerobic oxidation of glucose and fatty acids.
- Routes 2 and 3 are relatively slow, so **creatine phosphate (CrP)** must provide the chemical energy needed for *rapid ATP regeneration*. ADP derived from metabolized ATP is immediately transformed to ATP and creatine (Cr) by mitochondrial creatine kinase ( $\rightarrow$  B1 and p. 40). The CrP reserve of the muscle is sufficient for short-term high-performance bursts of 10–20 s (e.g., for a 100-m sprint).

**Anaerobic glycolysis** occurs later than CrP dephosphorylation (after a maximum of ca. 30 s). In anaerobic glycolysis, *muscle glycogen* is converted via glucose-6-phosphate to lactic acid ( $\rightarrow$  lactate +  $H^+$ ), yielding 3 ATP molecules for each glucose residue ( $\rightarrow$  B2). During *light exercise*, lactate $^-$  is broken down in the heart and liver whereby  $H^+$  ions are used up. **Aerobic oxidation** of glucose and fatty acids takes place approx. 1 min after this less productive anaerobic form of ATP regeneration. If aerobic oxidation does not produce a sufficient supply of ATP during *strenuous exercise*, anaerobic glycolysis must also be continued.

In this case, however, glucose must be imported from the liver where it is formed by glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis (see also p. 284f.). Imported glucose yields only two ATP for each molecule of glucose, because one ATP is required for 6-phosphorylation of glucose.

**Aerobic regeneration of ATP** from glucose (about 32 ATP per glucose residue) or fatty acids is required for *sustained exercise* ( $\rightarrow$  B3). The cardiac output (= heart rate  $\times$  stroke volume) and total ventilation must therefore be increased to meet the increased metabolic requirements of the muscle; the heart rate then becomes constant ( $\rightarrow$  p. 75 B). The several minutes that pass before this *steady state* is

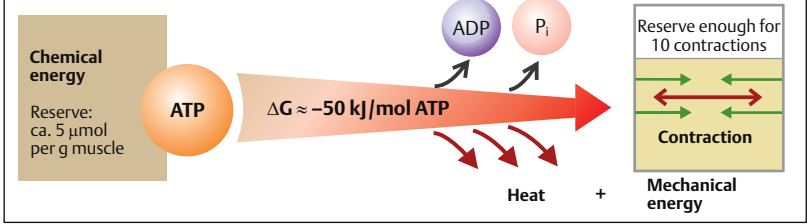
achieved are bridged by anaerobic energy production, *increased  $O_2$  extraction* from the blood and depletion of short-term  $O_2$  reserves in the muscle (*myoglobin*). The interim between the two phases is often perceived as the “*low point*” of physical performance.

The  $O_2$  affinity of **myoglobin** is higher than that of hemoglobin, but lower than that of respiratory chain enzymes. Thus, myoglobin is normally saturated with  $O_2$  and can pass on its oxygen to the mitochondria during brief arterial oxygen supply deficits.

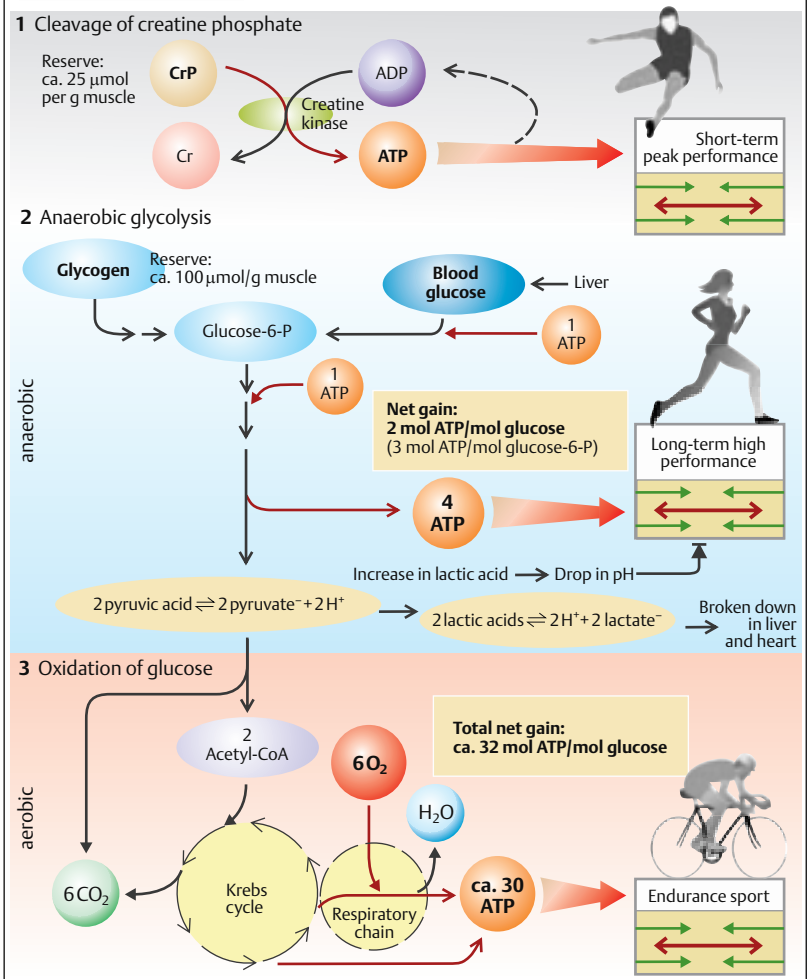
The **endurance limit**, which is some 370 W ( $\approx$  0.5 HP) in top athletes, is mainly dependent on the speed at which  $O_2$  is supplied and on how fast aerobic oxidation takes place. When the endurance limit is exceeded, steady state cannot occur, the heart rate then rises continuously ( $\rightarrow$  p. 75 B). The muscles can temporarily compensate for the energy deficit (see above), but the  $H^+$ -consuming lactate metabolism cannot keep pace with the persistently high level of anaerobic ATP regeneration. An excess of lactate and  $H^+$  ions, i.e. *lactacidosis*, therefore develops. If an individual exceeds his or her endurance limit by around 60%, which is about equivalent to maximum  $O_2$  consumption ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74), the **plasma lactate** concentration will increase sharply, reaching the so-called *anaerobic threshold* at 4 mmol/L. No significant increase in performance can be expected after that point. The systemic drop in pH results in increasing inhibition of the chemical reactions needed for muscle contraction. This ultimately leads to an ATP deficit, rapid muscle **fatigue** and, finally, a stoppage of muscle work.

CrP metabolism and anaerobic glycolysis enable the body to achieve three times the performance possible with aerobic ATP regeneration, albeit for only about 40 s. However, these processes result in an  **$O_2$  deficit** that must be compensated for in the post-exercise recovery phase ( **$O_2$  debt**). The body “pays off” this debt by regenerating its energy reserves and breaking down the excess lactate in the liver and heart. The  $O_2$  debt after strenuous exercise is much larger (up to 20 L) than the  $O_2$  deficit for several reasons.

**A. ATP as a direct energy source**



**B. Regeneration of ATP**



There are three types of muscle work:

- ◆ *Positive dynamic work*, which requires to muscles involved to alternately contract and relax (e.g., going uphill).

- ◆ *Negative dynamic work*, which requires the muscles involved to alternately extend while braking (*braking work*) and contract without a load (e.g., going downhill).

- ◆ *Static postural work*, which requires continuous contraction (e.g., standing upright).

Many activities involve a combination of two or three types of muscle work. Outwardly directed mechanical work is produced in dynamic muscle activity, but not in purely postural work. In the latter case, force  $\times$  distance = 0. However, chemical energy is still consumed and completely transformed into a form of heat called *maintenance heat* (= muscle force times the duration of postural work).

In *strenuous exercise*, the muscles require up to 500 times more  $O_2$  than when at rest. At the same time, the muscle must rid itself of metabolic products such as  $H^+$ ,  $CO_2$ , and **lactate** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72). Muscle work therefore requires drastic cardiovascular and respiratory changes.

In untrained subjects (UT), the cardiac output (CO;  $\rightarrow$  p. 188) rises from 5–6 L/min at rest to a maximum of 15–20 L/min during exercise ( $\rightarrow$  p. 77 C). Work-related **activation of the sympathetic nervous system** increases the heart rate up to ca. 2.5 fold and the stroke volume up to ca. 1.2 fold (UT). In *light to moderate exercise*, the heart rate soon levels out at a new constant level, and no fatigue occurs. *Very strenuous exercise*, on the other hand, must soon be interrupted because the heart cannot achieve the required long-term performance ( $\rightarrow$  B). The increased CO provides more blood for the muscles ( $\rightarrow$  A) and the skin (*heat loss*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 224). The blood flow in the kidney and intestine, on the other hand, is reduced by the sympathetic tone below the resting value ( $\rightarrow$  A). The systolic **blood pressure** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 208) rises while the diastolic pressure remains constant, yielding only a moderate increase in the mean pressure.

The smaller the muscle mass involved in the work, the higher the increase in blood pressure. Hence, the blood pressure increase in arm activity (cutting hedges) is higher than that in leg activity (cycling).

In patients with coronary artery disease or cerebrovascular sclerosis, arm activity is therefore more dangerous than leg activity due to the risk of myocardial infarction or brain hemorrhage.

**Muscular blood flow.** At the maximum work level, the blood flow in 1 kg of active muscle rises to as much as 2.5 L/min ( $\rightarrow$  p. 215 A), equivalent to 10% of the maximum cardiac output. Hence, no more than 10 kg of muscle ( $< 1/3$  the total muscle mass) can be fully active at one time. Vasodilatation, which is required for the higher blood flow, is mainly achieved through *local chemical influences* ( $P_{CO_2} \uparrow$ ,  $P_{O_2} \uparrow$ ,  $pH \downarrow$ ) or NO release ( $\rightarrow$  p. 214). In purely postural work, the increase in blood flow is prevented in part by the fact that the continuously contracted muscle squeezes its own vessels. The muscle then *fatigues* faster than in rhythmic dynamic work.

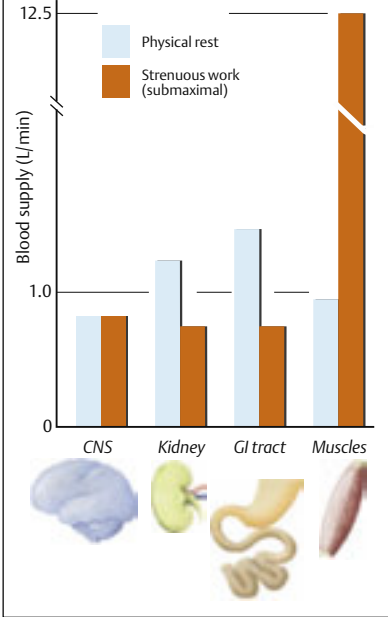
During physical exercise ( $\rightarrow$  C1), the **ventilation** ( $\dot{V}_E$ ) increases from a resting value of ca. 7.5 L/min to a maximum of 90 to 120 L/min ( $\rightarrow$  C3). Both the respiratory rate (40–60  $\text{min}^{-1}$  max;  $\rightarrow$  C2) and the tidal volume (ca. 2 L max.) contribute to this increase. Because of the high  $\dot{V}_E$  and increased CO, oxygen consumption ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ) can increase from ca. 0.3 L/min at rest to a maximum ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  max) of ca. 3 L/min in UT ( $\rightarrow$  C4 and p. 76). Around 25 L of air has to be ventilated to take up 1 L of  $O_2$  at rest, corresponding to a *respiratory equivalent* ( $\dot{V}_E/\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ) of 25. During physical exercise,  $\dot{V}_E/\dot{V}_{O_2}$  rises beyond the endurance limit to a value of 40–50.

Increased  **$O_2$  consumption** in the tissues also contributes to the large increase in  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  during exercise. The decreasing pH and increasing temperature shift the  $O_2$  binding curve towards the right ( $\rightarrow$  p. 129 B).  $O_2$  consumption is calculated as the arteriovenous difference in  $O_2$  concentration ( $avD_{O_2}$  in L/L blood) times the blood flow in L/min. The **maximum  $O_2$  consumption** ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  max) is therefore defined as:

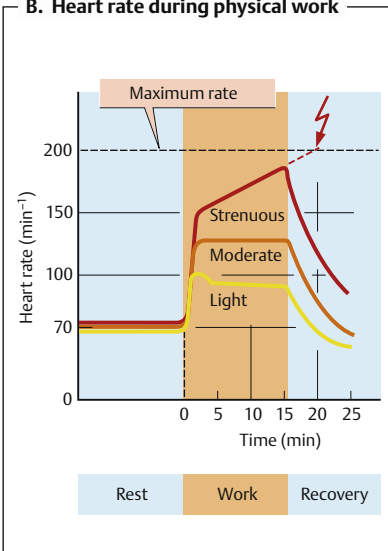
$$\dot{V}_{O_2} \text{ max} = \text{HRmax} \cdot \text{SVmax} \cdot avD_{O_2} \text{ max}$$

where HR is the heart rate and SV is the stroke volume.  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  max per body weight is an ideal measure of *physical exercise capacity* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 76).

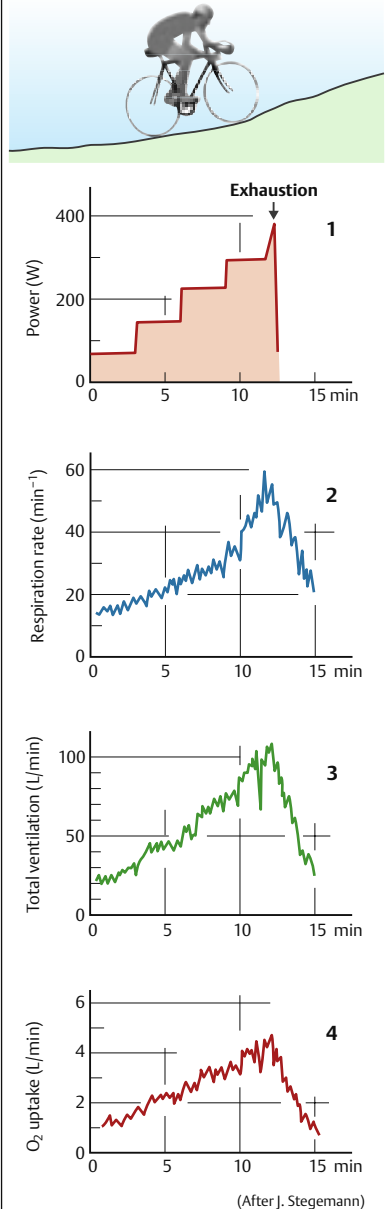
**A. Blood supply in organs at rest and during physical work**



**B. Heart rate during physical work**



**C. Respiration during physical work**



The **physical exercise capacity** can be measured using simple yet standardized techniques of **ergometry**. This may be desirable in athletes, for example, to assess the results of training, or in patients undergoing rehabilitation therapy. Ergometry assesses the effects of exercise on physiological parameters such as  $O_2$  consumption ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ), respiration rate, heart rate ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74), and the plasma lactate concentration ( $\rightarrow$  A). The measured physical power (performance) is expressed in watts (W) or W/kg body weight (BW).

In **bicycle ergometry**, a brake is used to adjust the watt level. In "uphill" ergometry on a *treadmill* set at an angle  $\alpha$ , exercise performance in watts is calculated as a factor of body mass (kg)  $\times$  gravitational acceleration  $g$  ( $m \cdot s^{-2}$ )  $\times$  distance traveled ( $m$ )  $\times$   $\sin \alpha \times 1/\text{time required}$  ( $s^{-1}$ ). In the **Margaria step test**, the test subject is required to run up a staircase as fast as possible after a certain starting distance. Performance is then measured as body mass (kg)  $\times$   $g$  ( $m \cdot s^{-2}$ )  $\times$  height/time ( $m \cdot s^{-1}$ ).

**Short-term performance tests** (10–30 s) measure performance achieved through the rapidly available energy reserves (creatine phosphate, glycogen). **Medium-term performance tests** measure performance fueled by anaerobic glycolysis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72). The **maximum  $O_2$  consumption** ( $\dot{V}_{O_2 \text{ max}}$ ) is used to measure longer term aerobic exercise performance achieved through oxidation of glucose and free fatty acids ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74).

In strenuous exercise (roughly 2/3 the maximum physical capacity or more), the aerobic mechanisms do not produce enough energy, so anaerobic metabolism must continue as a parallel energy source. This results in lactacidosis and a sharp increase in the plasma lactate concentration ( $\rightarrow$  A). **Lactate concentrations** of up to 2 mmol/L (*aerobic threshold*) can be tolerated for prolonged periods of exercise. Lactate concentrations above 4 mmol/L (*anaerobic threshold*) indicate that the performance limit will soon be reached. Exercise must eventually be interrupted, not because of the increasing lactate concentration, but because of the increasing level of acidosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74).

**Physical training** raises and maintains the physical exercise capacity. There are three types of physical training strategies, and most training programs use a combination of them.

◆ **Motor learning**, which increases the rate and accuracy of motor skills (e.g., typewriting). These activities primarily involve the CNS.

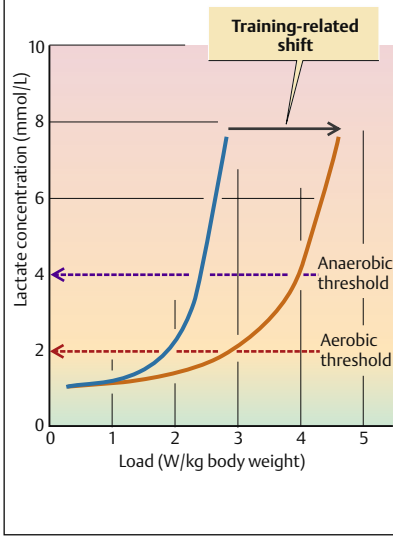
◆ **Endurance training**, which improves sub-maximal long-term performance (e.g., running a marathon). The main objectives of endurance training are to increase the oxidative capacity of slow-twitch motor units ( $\rightarrow$  p. 58), e.g., by increasing the mitochondrial density, increase the cardiac output and, consequently, to increase  $\dot{V}_{O_2 \text{ max}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  B, C). The resulting increase in heart weight allows higher stroke volumes ( $\rightarrow$  C) as well as higher tidal volumes, resulting in very low resting heart rates and respiratory rates. Trained athletes can therefore achieve larger increases in cardiac output and ventilation than untrained subjects ( $\rightarrow$  C). The  $\dot{V}_{O_2 \text{ max}}$  of a healthy individual is limited by the cardiovascular capacity, not the respiratory capacity. In individuals who practice endurance training, the exercise-related rise in the lactate concentration is also lower and occurs later than in untrained subjects ( $\rightarrow$  A).

◆ **Strength training** improves the maximum short-term performance level (e.g., in weight lifting). The main objectives are to increase the muscle mass by increasing the size of the muscle fibers (hypertrophy) and to increase the glycolytic capacity of type F motor units ( $\rightarrow$  p. 58).

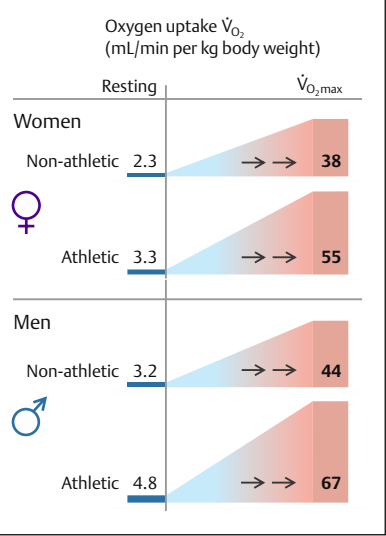
Excessive physical exercise causes **muscle soreness and stiffness**. The underlying cause is not lactic acid accumulation, but sarcomere microtrauma, which leads to muscle swelling and pain. The muscle ache, is a sign of microinflammation ( $\rightarrow$  D).

**Muscle fatigue** may be peripheral or central. *Peripheral fatigue* is caused by the exhaustion of energy reserves and the accumulation of metabolic products in the active muscle. This is particularly quick to occur during postural work ( $\rightarrow$  p. 66). *Central fatigue* is characterized by work-related pain in the involved muscles and joints that prevents the continuation of physical exercise or decreased the individual's motivation to continue the exercise.

**A. Lactate concentration (phys. exercise)**



**B. Maximum O<sub>2</sub> uptake**

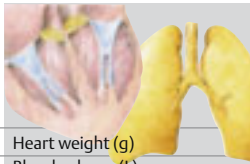


**C. Comparison of non-athletic individuals and endurance athletes**

Physiological parameters  
(2 men, age 25, 70 kg)

Non-athletes

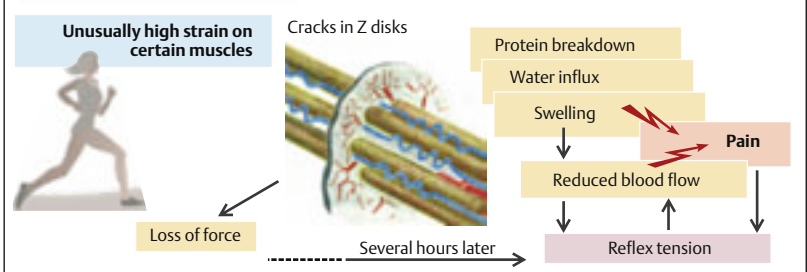
Endurance athletes



	Non-athletes		Endurance athletes	
	Resting	Maximum	Resting	Maximum
Heart weight (g)		300		500
Blood volume (L)		5.6		5.9
Heart rate (min <sup>-1</sup> )	80	→ → 180	40	→ → 180
Stroke volume (mL)	70	→ → 100	140	→ → 190
Cardiac output (L/min)	5.6	→ → 18	5.6	→ → 35
Total ventilation (L/min)	8.0	→ → 100	8.0	→ → 200
O <sub>2</sub> uptake (L/min)	0.3	→ → 2.8	0.3	→ → 5.2

(Data partly from H.-J. Ulmer)

**D. Post-exercise muscle ache**



In the *somatic nervous system*, nerve fibers extend to and from the skeletal muscles, skin and sense organs. They usually emit impulses in response to stimuli from the outside environment, as in the *withdrawal reflex* (→ p. 322). Much somatic nervous activity occurs *consciously* and under *voluntary control*. In contrast, the **autonomic** (= vegetative) **nervous system** (ANS) is mainly concerned with **regulation of circulation and internal organs**. It responds to changing outside conditions by triggering orthostatic responses, work start reactions, etc. to regulate the body's **internal environment** (→ p. 2). As the name implies, most activities of the ANS are not subject to voluntary control.

For the most part, the autonomic and somatic nervous systems are anatomically and functionally separate in the periphery (→ A), but closely connected in the central nervous system, CNS (→ p. 268). The *peripheral ANS* is *efferent*, but most of the nerves containing ANS fibers hold also afferent neurons. These are called *visceral afferents* because their signals originate from visceral organs, such as the esophagus, gastrointestinal (GI) tract, liver, lungs, heart, arteries, and urinary bladder. Some are also named after the nerve they accompany (e.g., vagal afferents).

Autonomic nervous activity is usually regulated by the **reflex arc**, which has an afferent limb (visceral and/or somatic afferents) and an efferent limb (autonomic and/or somatic efferents). The *afferent fibers* convey stimuli from the skin (e.g. nociceptive stimuli; → p. 318) and nocisensors, mechanosensors and chemosensors in organs such as the lungs, gastrointestinal tract, bladder, vascular system and genitals. The ANS provides the autonomic *efferent fibers* that convey the reflex response to such afferent information, thereby inducing smooth muscle contraction (→ p. 70) in organs such as the eye, lung, digestive tract and bladder, and influencing the function of the heart (→ p. 196) and glands. Examples of *somatic nervous system* involvement are afferent stimuli from the skin and sense organs (e.g., light stimuli) and efferent impulses to the skeletal muscles (e.g., coughing and vomiting).

Simple reflexes can take place *within an organ* (e.g., in the gut, → p. 246), but complex

reflexes are controlled by **superordinate autonomic centers** in the CNS, primarily in the *spinal cord* (→ A). These centers are controlled by the *hypothalamus*, which incorporates the ANS in the execution of its programs (→ p. 332). The *cerebral cortex* is an even higher-ranking center that integrates the ANS with other systems.

The **peripheral ANS** consists of a *sympathetic division* and a *parasympathetic division* (→ A) which, for the most part, are separate entities (→ also p. 80 ff.). The autonomic centers of the sympathetic division lie in the *thoracic and lumbar segments of the spinal cord*, and those of the parasympathetic division lie in the *brain stem* (eyes, glands, and organs innervated by the vagus nerve) and *sacral part of the spinal cord* (bladder, lower parts of the large intestine, and genital organs). (→ A). *Preganglionic fibers* of both divisions of the ANS extend from their centers to the **ganglia**, where they terminate at the *postganglionic neurons*.

Preganglionic **sympathetic neurons** arising from the spinal cord terminate either in the *paravertebral ganglionic chain*, in the *cervical or abdominal ganglia* or in so-called terminal ganglia. Transmission of stimuli from preganglionic to postganglionic neurons is *cholinergic*, that is, mediated by release of the neurotransmitter *acetylcholine* (→ p. 82). Stimulation of all effector organs except sweat glands by the postganglionic sympathetic fibers is *adrenergic*, i.e., mediated by the release of *norepinephrine* (→ A and p. 84ff.).

**Parasympathetic ganglia** are situated near or within the effector organ. Synaptic transmissions in the parasympathetic ganglia and at the effector organ are *cholinergic* (→ A).

Most organs are innervated by sympathetic and parasympathetic nerve fibers. Nonetheless, the organ's response to the two systems can be either antagonistic (e.g., in the heart) or complementary (e.g., in the sex organs).

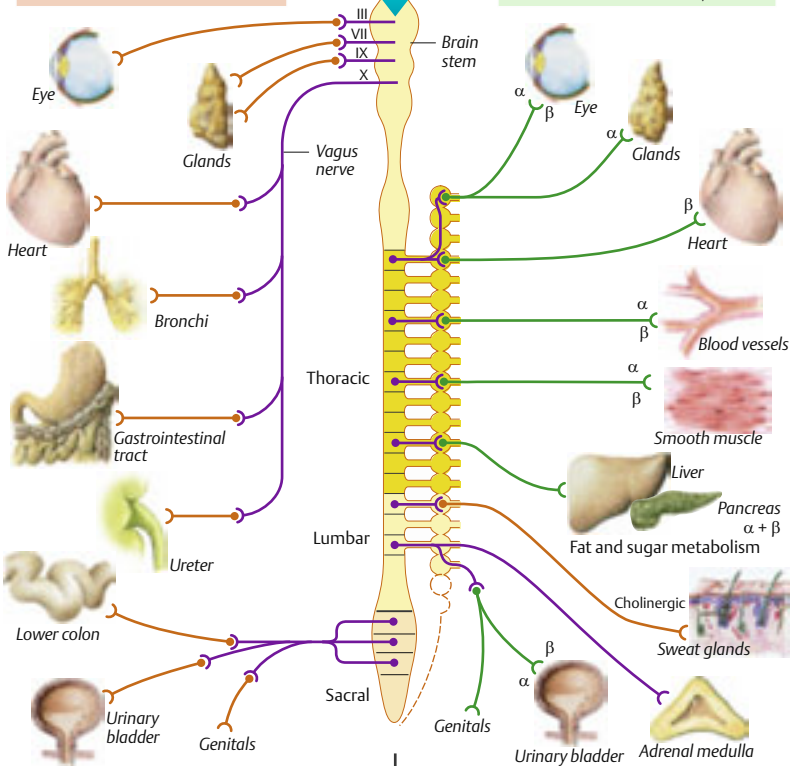
The **adrenal medulla** is a ganglion and hormone gland combined. Preganglionic sympathetic fibers in the adrenal medulla release acetylcholine, leading to the secretion of *epinephrine* (and some norepinephrine) *into the bloodstream* (→ p. 86).

**A. Schematic view of autonomic nervous system (ANS)**

**Parasympathetic division**  
(Craniosacral centers)  
Transmitter substances:  
Preganglionic: Acetylcholine  
Postganglionic: Acetylcholine

**Sympathetic division**  
(Thoracic and lumbar centers)  
Transmitter substances:  
Preganglionic: Acetylcholine  
Postganglionic: Norepinephrine  
(Exception: Sweat glands, some muscular blood vessels)

Controlled by superordinate centers

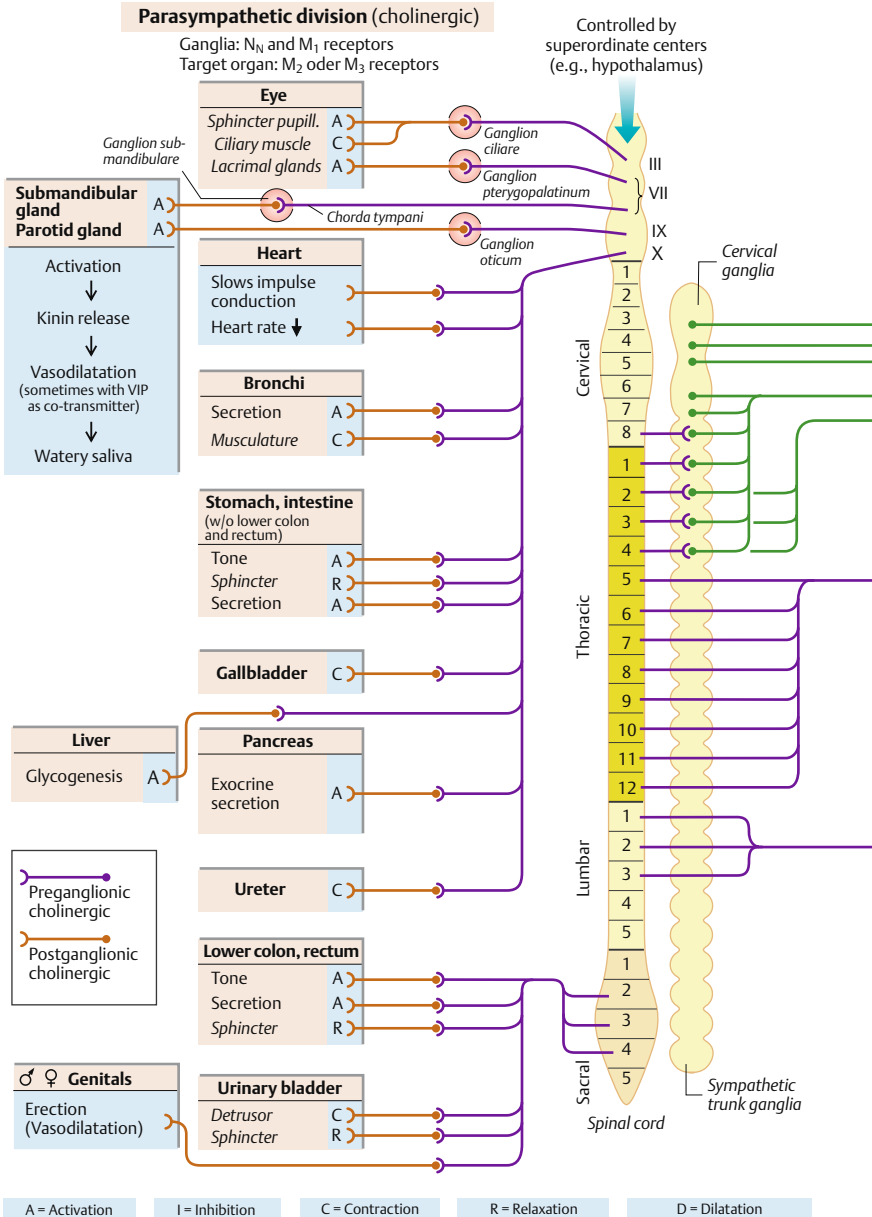


**Cholinoceptors**  
Nicotinic receptors:  
– All postganglionic, autonomic ganglia cells and dendrites  
– Adrenal medulla  
Muscarinic receptors:  
– All target organs innervated by postganglionic parasympathetic nerve fibers (and sweat glands innervated by sympathetic fibers)

**Adrenoceptors:**  
α Usually excitatory (except in GI tract, where they are indirect relaxants)  
β Usually inhibitory (except in heart, where they are excitatory)  
β<sub>1</sub> mainly in heart  
β<sub>2</sub> in bronchi, urinary bladder, uterus, gastrointestinal tract, etc.

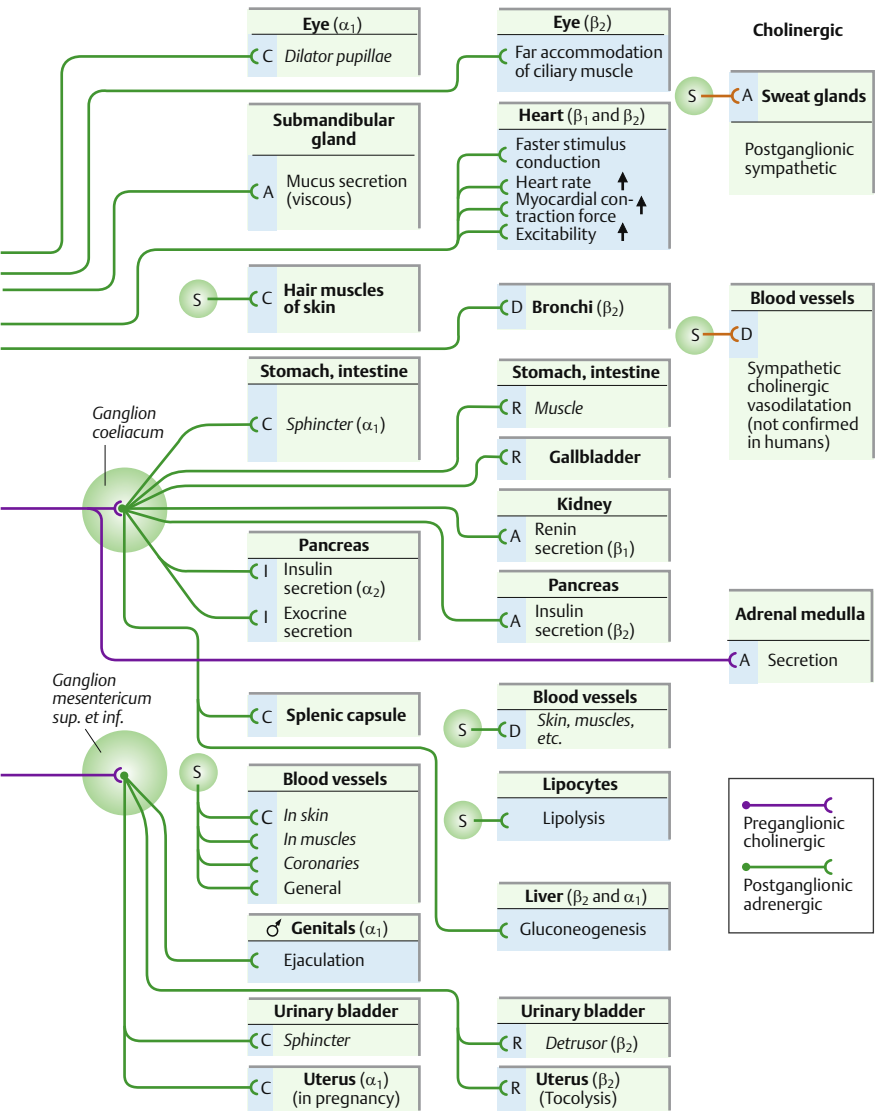
—○— Postganglionic: Cholinergic    
 —○— Preganglionic: Cholinergic    
 —○— Postganglionic: Adrenergic

## A. Functions of the autonomic nervous system (ANS)



**Sympathetic division** (Preganglionic cholinergic:  $N_N$  and  $M_1$  receptors, postganglionic mainly adrenergic)

$\alpha$  receptors ( $\alpha_1$ :  $IP_3 + DAG \uparrow$ ;  $\alpha_2$ :  $cAMP \downarrow$ )  $\beta$  receptors ( $cAMP \uparrow$ )



S = Efferents from affiliated CNS segment

Acetylcholine (**ACh**) serves as a neurotransmitter not only at motor end plates ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56) and in the central nervous system, but also in the **autonomic nervous system, ANS** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 78ff.), where it is active

- ◆ in all preganglionic fibers of the ANS;
- ◆ in all parasympathetic postganglionic nerve endings;
- ◆ and in some sympathetic postganglionic nerve endings (sweat glands).

**Acetylcholine synthesis.** ACh is synthesized in the cytoplasm of nerve terminals, and acetyl coenzyme A (acetyl-CoA) is synthesized in mitochondria. The reaction acetyl-CoA + choline is catalyzed by *choline acetyltransferase*, which is synthesized in the soma and reaches the nerve terminals by axoplasmic transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42). Since choline must be taken up from extracellular fluid by way of a carrier, this is the rate-limiting step of ACh synthesis.

**Acetylcholine release.** Vesicles on presynaptic nerve terminals empty their contents into the synaptic cleft when the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration rises in response to incoming action potentials (AP) ( $\rightarrow$  A, p. 50ff.). Epinephrine and norepinephrine can *inhibit ACh release* by stimulating presynaptic  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 84). In postganglionic parasympathetic fibers, ACh blocks its own release by binding to presynaptic autoreceptors (M-receptors; see below), as shown in B.

ACh binds to postsynaptic **cholinergic receptors** or **cholinoceptors** in autonomic ganglia and organs innervated by parasympathetic fibers, as in the heart, smooth muscles (e.g., of the eye, bronchi, ureter, bladder, genitals, blood vessels, esophagus, and gastrointestinal tract), salivary glands, lacrimal glands, and (sympathetically innervated) sweat glands ( $\rightarrow$  p. 80ff.). Cholinoceptors are nicotinic (N) or muscarinic (M). **N-cholinoceptors** (*nicotinic*) can be stimulated by the alkaloid nicotine, whereas *M-cholinoceptors* (*muscarinic*) can be stimulated by the alkaloid mushroom poison muscarine.

Nerve-specific  $\text{N}_\text{N}$ -cholinoceptors on autonomic ganglia ( $\rightarrow$  A) differ from muscle-specific  $\text{N}_\text{M}$ -cholinoceptors on motor end plates ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56) in that they are formed by different subunits. They are similar in that they are both *ionotropic receptors*, i.e., they act as cholinoceptors and cation channels at the

same time. ACh binding leads to rapid  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx and in early (rapid) excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSP;  $\rightarrow$  p. 50ff.), which trigger postsynaptic action potentials (AP) once they rise above threshold ( $\rightarrow$  A, **left panel**).

**M-cholinoceptors** ( $\text{M}_1$ – $\text{M}_5$ ) indirectly affect synaptic transmission through G-proteins (*metabotropic receptors*).

**$\text{M}_1$ -cholinoceptors** occur mainly on *autonomic ganglia* ( $\rightarrow$  A), CNS, and *exocrine gland cells*. They activate phospholipase  $\text{C}\beta$  (PLC $\beta$ ) via  $\text{G}_q$  protein in the postganglionic neuron. and inositol *tris*-phosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ) and diacylglycerol (DAG) are released as second messengers ( $\rightarrow$  p. 278) that stimulate  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx and a *late EPSP* ( $\rightarrow$  A, **middle panel**). Synaptic signal transmission is modulated by the late EPSP as well as by co-transmitting peptides that trigger *peptidergic EPSP or IPSP* ( $\rightarrow$  A, **right panel**).

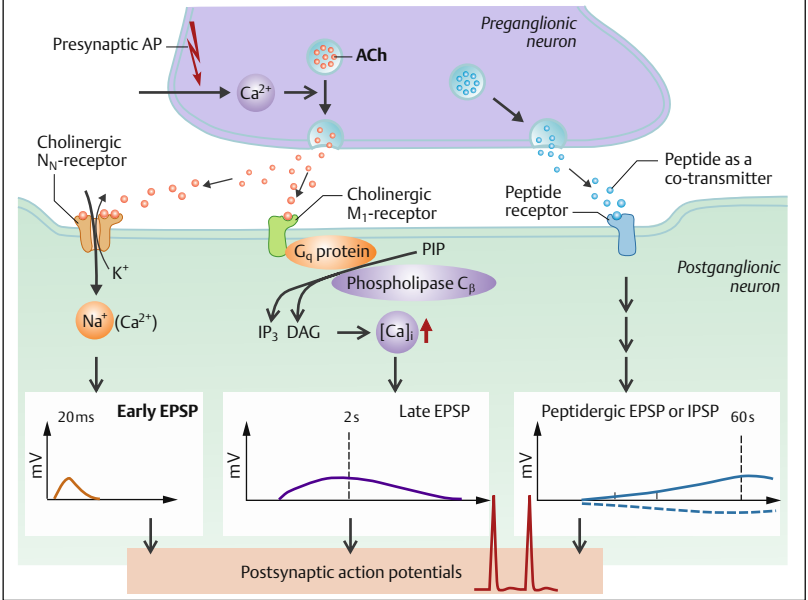
**$\text{M}_2$ -cholinoceptors** occur in the *heart* and function mainly via a  $\text{G}_i$  protein ( $\rightarrow$  p. 276 ff.). The  $\text{G}_i$  protein *opens specific  $\text{K}^+$  channels* located mainly in the sinoatrial node, atrioventricular (AV) node, and atrial cells, thereby exerting negative chronotropic and dromotropic effects on the heart ( $\rightarrow$  B). The  $\text{G}_i$  protein also *inhibits adenylate cyclase*, thereby reducing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**$\text{M}_3$ -cholinoceptors** occur mainly in *smooth muscles*. Similar to  $\text{M}_1$ -cholinoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  A, middle panel),  $\text{M}_3$ -cholinoceptors trigger contractions by stimulating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx ( $\rightarrow$  p. 70). However, they can also induce relaxation by activating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent NO synthase, e.g., in *endothelial cells* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 280).

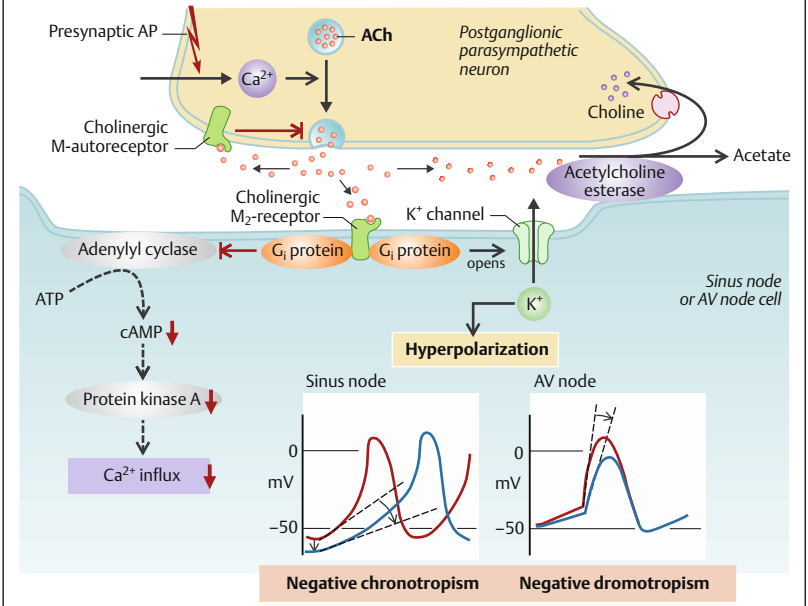
**Termination of ACh action** is achieved by *acetylcholinesterase*-mediated cleavage of ACh molecules in the synaptic cleft ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56). Approximately 50% of the liberated choline is reabsorbed by presynaptic nerve endings ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**Antagonists.** *Atropine* blocks all M-cholinoceptors, whereas *pirenzepine*, *methoctramine*, *hexahydrosiladifenidol*, and *tropicamide* selectively block  $\text{M}_1$ -,  $\text{M}_2$ -,  $\text{M}_3$ -, and  $\text{M}_4$ -cholinoceptors, respectively, *tubocurarine* blocks  $\text{N}_\text{M}$ -cholinoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56), and *trimetaphan* blocks  $\text{N}_\text{N}$ -cholinoceptors.

**A. Neurotransmission in autonomic ganglia**



**B. Cholinergic transmission in the heart**



Certain neurons can enzymatically produce *L-dopa* (*L*-dihydroxyphenylalanine) from the amino acid *L*-tyrosine. *L-dopa* is the parent substance of dopamine, norepinephrine (= noradrenaline), and epinephrine (=adrenaline)—the three natural **catecholamines**, which are enzymatically synthesized in this order. Dopamine (**DA**) is the final step of synthesis in neurons containing only the enzyme required for the first step (the *aromatic L-amino acid decarboxylase*). Dopamine is used as a transmitter by the dopaminergic neurons in the CNS and by autonomic neurons that innervate the *kidney*.

**Norepinephrine (NE)** is produced when a second enzyme (*dopamine- $\beta$ -hydroxylase*) is also present. In most *sympathetic postganglionic nerve endings* and noradrenergic central neurons ( $\rightarrow$  **A**), NE serves as the neurotransmitter along with the *co-transmitters* adenosine triphosphate (ATP), somatostatin (SIH), or neuropeptide Y (NPY).

Within the adrenal medulla (see below) and adrenergic neurons of the medulla oblongata, *phenylethanolamine N-methyltransferase* transforms norepinephrine (NE) into **epinephrine (E)**.

The endings of unmyelinated sympathetic postganglionic neurons are knobby or *varicose* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). These knobs establish synaptic contact, albeit not always very close, with the effector organ. They also serve as sites of **NE synthesis and storage**. *L*-tyrosine ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) is actively taken up by the nerve endings and transformed into dopamine. In adrenergic stimulation, this step is accelerated by protein kinase A-mediated (PKA;  $\rightarrow$  **A2**) phosphorylation of the responsible enzyme. This yields a larger dopamine supply. Dopamine is transferred to chromaffin vesicles, where it is transformed into NE ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Norepinephrine, the end product, inhibits further dopamine synthesis (negative feedback).

**NE release.** NE is exocytosed into the synaptic cleft ( $\rightarrow$  **A5**) after the arrival of action potentials at the nerve terminal and the initiation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx ( $\rightarrow$  **A4** and p. 50).

**Adrenergic receptors or adrenoceptors** ( $\rightarrow$  **A, B**). Four main types of adrenoceptors ( $\alpha_1$ ,  $\alpha_2$ ,  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$ ) can be distinguished according to their affinity to E and NE and to numerous agonists and antagonists. All adrenoceptors re-

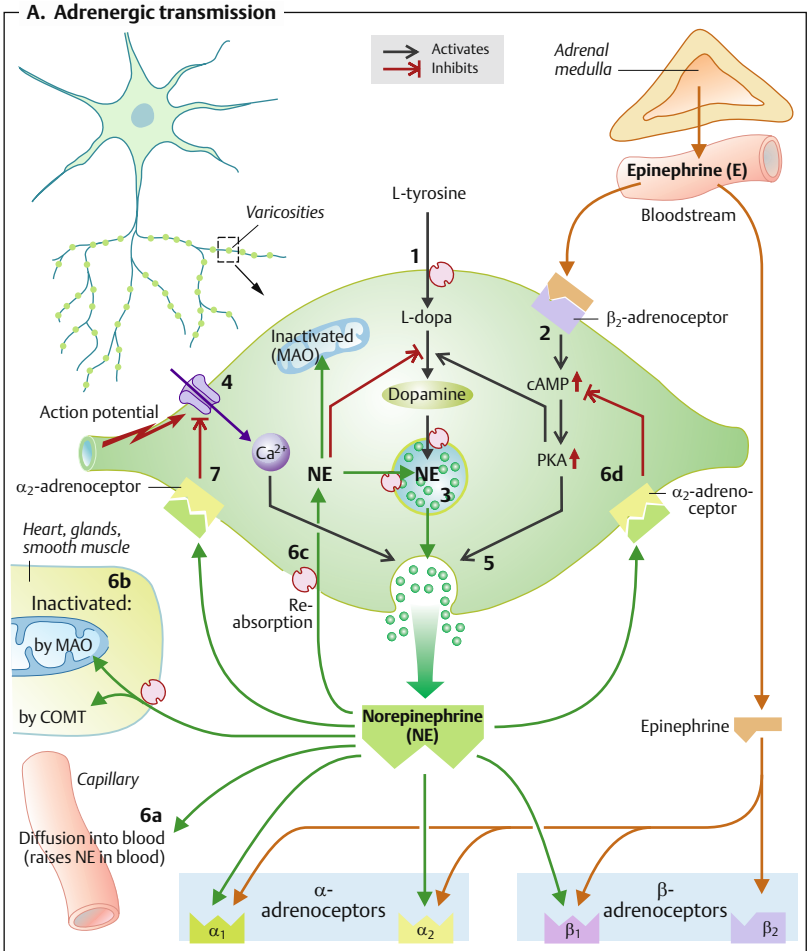
spond to E, but NE has little effect on  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptors. Isoproterenol (isoprenaline) activates only  $\beta$ -adrenoceptors, and phenolamine only blocks  $\alpha$ -adrenoceptors. The activities of all adrenoceptors are mediated by G proteins ( $\rightarrow$  p. 55).

Different subtypes ( $\alpha_{1A}$ ,  $\alpha_{1B}$ ,  $\alpha_{1D}$ ) of  **$\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors** can be distinguished ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**). Their location and function are as follows: CNS (sympathetic activity  $\uparrow$ ), salivary glands, liver (glycogenolysis  $\uparrow$ ), kidneys (alters threshold for renin release;  $\rightarrow$  p. 186), and smooth muscles (trigger contractions in the arterioles, uterus, deferent duct, bronchioles, urinary bladder, gastrointestinal sphincters, and dilator pupillae).

Activation of  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**), mediated by *G<sub>q</sub> proteins* and *phospholipase C $\beta$*  (PLC $\beta$ ), leads to formation of the second messengers *inositol tris-phosphate* (IP $_3$ ), which increases the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, and *diacylglycerol* (DAG), which activates protein kinase C (PKC; see also p. 278). *G<sub>q</sub>* protein-mediated  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptor activity also activates  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent *K<sup>+</sup> channels*. The resulting  $\text{K}^+$  outflow hyperpolarizes and relaxes target smooth muscles, e.g., in the gastrointestinal tract.

Three subtypes ( $\alpha_{2A}$ ,  $\alpha_{2B}$ ,  $\alpha_{2C}$ ) of  **$\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors** ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**) can be distinguished. Their location and action are as follows: CNS (sympathetic activity  $\downarrow$ , e.g., use of the  $\alpha_2$  agonist clonidine to lower blood pressure), salivary glands (salivation  $\downarrow$ ), pancreatic islets (insulin secretion  $\downarrow$ ), lipocytes (lipolysis  $\downarrow$ ), platelets (aggregation  $\uparrow$ ), and neurons (presynaptic autoreceptors, see below). Activated  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**) link with *G<sub>i</sub> protein* and inhibit (via  $\alpha_i$  subunit of *G<sub>i</sub>*) adenylate cyclase (*cAMP synthesis*  $\downarrow$ ,  $\rightarrow$  p. 274) and, at the same time, increase (via the  $\beta\gamma$  subunit of *G<sub>i</sub>*) the open-probability of voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels (*hyperpolarization*). When coupled with *G<sub>0</sub>* proteins, activated  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors also inhibit voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels ( $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$   $\downarrow$ ).

All  **$\beta$ -adrenoceptors** are coupled with a *G<sub>s</sub>* protein, and its  $\alpha_s$  subunit releases cAMP as a second messenger. cAMP then activates protein kinase A (PKA), which phosphorylates different proteins, depending on the target cell type ( $\rightarrow$  p. 274). ▶



► NE and E work via  **$\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors** (→ **B3**) to open L-type  $Ca^{2+}$  channels through cAMP and PKA in *cardiac cell* membranes. This increases the  $[Ca^{2+}]_i$  and therefore produces *positive chronotropic, dromotropic, and inotropic effects*. Activated  $G_s$  protein can also directly increase the open-probability of voltage-gated  $Ca^{2+}$  channels in the heart (→ **B3**). In the *kidney*, the basal renin secretion is increased via  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors.

Activation of  **$\beta_2$ -adrenoceptors** by epinephrine (→ **B4**) increases cAMP levels, thereby lowering the  $[Ca^{2+}]_i$  (by a still unclear mechanism). This *dilates* the bronchioles and blood vessels of skeletal muscles and *relaxes* the muscles of the uterus, deferent duct, and gastrointestinal tract. Further effects of  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptor activation are *increased insulin secretion* and *glycogenolysis* in liver and muscle and *decreased platelet aggregation*. ►

► Epinephrine also enhances NE release in noradrenergic fibers by way of presynaptic  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  **A2, A5**).

Heat production is increased via  $\beta_3$ -adrenoceptors on brown lipocytes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 224).

NE in the synaptic cleft is **deactivated** by ( $\rightarrow$  **A6 a - d**):

◆ *diffusion* of NE from the synaptic cleft into the blood;

◆ *extraneuronal NE uptake* (in the heart, glands, smooth muscles, glia, and liver), and subsequent intracellular degradation of NE by catecholamine-O-methyltransferase (COMT) and monoamine oxidase (MAO);

◆ *active re-uptake of NE (70%)* by the presynaptic nerve terminal. Some of the absorbed NE enters intracellular vesicles ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**) and is re-used, and some is inactivated by MAO;

◆ stimulation of presynaptic  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors (*autoreceptors*;  $\rightarrow$  **A 6d, 7**) by NE in the synaptic cleft, which inhibits the further release of NE.

Presynaptic  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors can also be found on cholinergic nerve endings, e.g., in the gastrointestinal tract (motility  $\downarrow$ ) and cardiac atrium (negative dromotropic effect), whereas presynaptic M-cholinoceptors are present on noradrenergic nerve terminals. Their mutual interaction permits a certain degree of peripheral ANS regulation.

### Adrenal Medulla

After stimulation of preganglionic sympathetic nerve fibers (cholinergic transmission;  $\rightarrow$  p. 81), 95% of all cells in the adrenal medulla secrete the endocrine hormone **epinephrine (E)** into the blood by exocytosis, and another 5% release norepinephrine (NE). Compared to noradrenergic neurons (see above), *NE synthesis* in the adrenal medulla is similar, but most of the NE leaves the vesicle and is enzymatically metabolized into E in the cytoplasm. Special vesicles called *chromaffin bodies* then actively store E and get ready to release it and co-transmitters (enkephalin, neuropeptide Y) by exocytosis.

In **alarm reactions**, secretion of E (and some NE) from the adrenal medulla increases substantially in response to physical and mental or emotional stress. Therefore, cells not sympa-

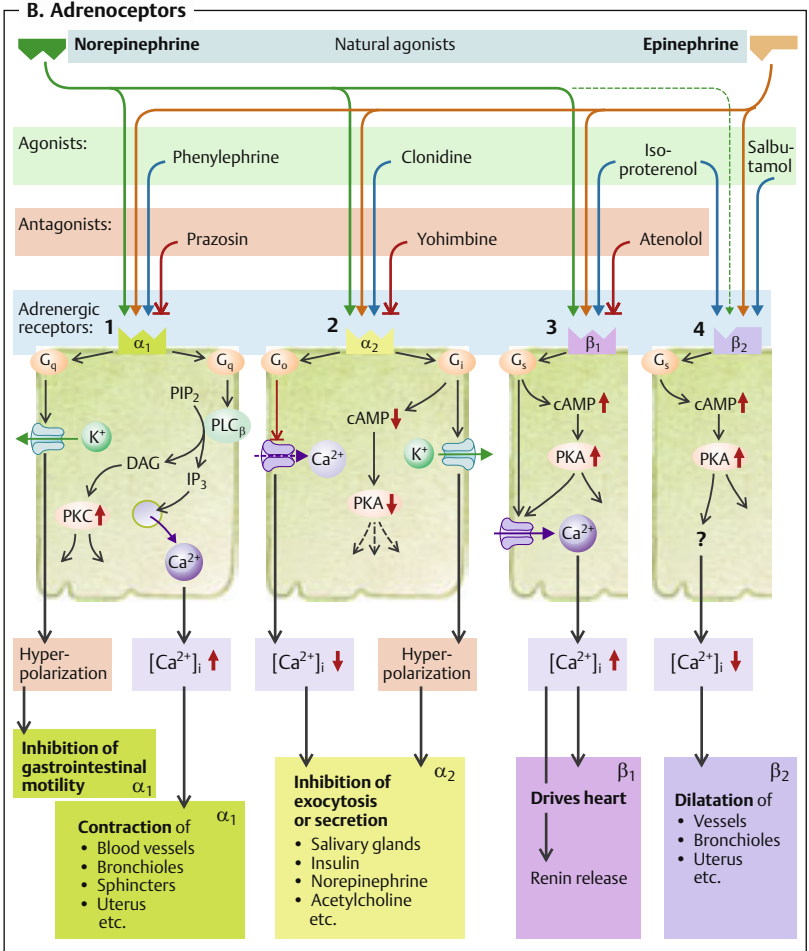
thetically innervated are also activated in such stress reactions. E also increases neuronal NE release via presynaptic  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Epinephrine secretion from the adrenal medulla (mediated by increased sympathetic activity) is stimulated by certain **triggers**, e.g., *physical work*, cold, heat, anxiety, anger (stress), *pain*, *oxygen deficiency*, or a *drop in blood pressure*. In severe hypoglycemia ( $< 30$  mg/dL), for example, the plasma epinephrine concentration can increase by as much as 20-fold, while the norepinephrine concentration increases by a factor of only 2.5, resulting in a corresponding rise in the E/NE ratio.

The **main task of epinephrine** is to mobilize stored chemical energy, e.g., through *lipolysis* and *glycogenolysis*. Epinephrine enhances the uptake of glucose into skeletal muscle ( $\rightarrow$  p. 285) and activates enzymes that accelerate glycolysis and lactate formation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72ff.). To enhance the blood flow in the muscles involved, the body increases the cardiac output while curbing gastrointestinal blood flow and activity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 75 A). Adrenal epinephrine and neuronal NE begin to stimulate the secretion of hormones responsible for replenishing the depleted energy reserves (e.g., ACTH;  $\rightarrow$  p. 299 A) while the alarm reaction is still in process.

### Non-cholinergic, Non-adrenergic Transmitters

In humans, gastrin-releasing peptide (GRP) and vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP) serve as co-transmitters in *preganglionic sympathetic fibers*; neuropeptide Y (NPY) and somatostatin (SIH) are the ones involved in *postganglionic* fibers. Postganglionic **parasympathetic fibers** utilize the peptides enkephalin, substance P (SP) and/or NPY as co-transmitters.

**Modulation of postsynaptic neurons** seems to be the primary goal of preganglionic peptide secretion. There is substantial evidence demonstrating that **ATP** (adenosine triphosphate), **NPY** and **VIP** also function as independent neurotransmitters in the autonomic nervous system. VIP and acetylcholine often occur jointly (but in separate vesicles) in the parasympathetic fibers of blood vessels, exocrine glands, ►



► and sweat glands. Within the gastrointestinal tract, VIP (along with nitric oxide) induces the slackening of the circular muscle layer and sphincter muscles and (with the co-transmit-

ters dynorphin and galanin) enhances intestinal secretion. **Nitric oxide (NO)** is liberated from nitrergic neurons (→ p.280)

The **blood volume** of an adult correlates with his or her (fat-free) body mass ( $\rightarrow$  Table) and amounts to ca. 4–4.5 L in women ( $\varnothing$ ) and 4.5–5 L in men of 70 kg BW ( $\delta$ ). The **functions of blood** include the *transport* of various molecules ( $O_2$ ,  $CO_2$ , nutrients, metabolites, vitamins, electrolytes, etc.), heat (regulation of body temperature) and *transmission of signals* (hormones) as well as *buffering* and immune *defense*. The blood consists of a fluid (*plasma*) and *formed elements* ( $\rightarrow$  Table): **Red blood cells** (RBCs) transport  $O_2$  and play an important role in pH regulation. **White blood cells** (WBCs) can be divided into *neutrophilic*, *eosinophilic* and *basophilic granulocytes*, *monocytes*, and *lymphocytes*. Neutrophils play a role in nonspecific immune defense, whereas monocytes and lymphocytes participate in specific immune responses. **Platelets (thrombocytes)** are needed for hemostasis. **Hematocrit** (Hct) is the volume ratio of RBCs to whole blood ( $\rightarrow$  C and Table). **Plasma** is the fluid portion of the blood in which electrolytes, nutrients, metabolites, vitamins, hormones, gases, and proteins are dissolved.

**Plasma proteins** ( $\rightarrow$  Table) are involved in humoral immune defense and maintain oncotic pressure, which helps to keep the blood volume constant. By *binding to plasma proteins*, compounds insoluble in water can be transported in blood, and many substances (e.g., heme) can be protected from breakdown and renal excretion. The binding of small

molecules to plasma proteins reduces their osmotic efficacy. Many plasma proteins are involved in blood clotting and fibrinolysis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 102 ff). **Serum** forms when fibrinogen separates from plasma in the process of blood clotting.

The **formation of blood cells** occurs in the red bone marrow of flat bone in adults and in the spleen and liver of the fetus. Hematopoietic tissues contain pluripotent **stem cells** which, with the aid of hematopoietic growth factors (see below), develop into myeloid, erythroid and lymphoid precursor cells. Since pluripotent stem cells are autoreproductive, their existence is ensured throughout life. In *lymphocyte development*, lymphocytes arising from lymphoid precursor cells first undergo special differentiation (in the thymus or bone marrow) and are later formed in the spleen and lymph nodes as well as in the bone marrow. All other precursor cells are produced by *myelocytopenesis*, that is, the entire process of proliferation (reproduction), maturation, and release into the bloodstream occurs in the bone marrow. Two hormones, erythropoietin and thrombopoietin, are involved in myelopoiesis. **Thrombopoietin** (formed mainly in the liver) promotes the proliferation and maturation of mega karyocytes from which the platelets are split off. A number of other growth factors affect blood cell formation in bone marrow via paracrine mechanisms.

**Erythropoietin** promotes the **proliferation and maturation of red blood cells**. It is secreted by the liver in the fetus, and chiefly by the kidney (ca. 90%) in postnatal life. In response to an oxygen deficiency (due to high altitudes, hemolysis, etc.;  $\rightarrow$  A), erythropoietin secretion increases, larger numbers of red blood cells are produced, and the fraction of reticulocytes (young erythrocytes) in the blood rises. The **life span** of a red blood cell is around 120 days. Red blood cells regularly exit from arterioles in the splenic pulp and travel through small pores to enter the splenic sinus ( $\rightarrow$  B), where old red blood cells are sorted out and destroyed (*hemolysis*). Macrophages in the spleen, liver, bone marrow, etc. engulf and break down the cell fragments. **Heme**, the iron-containing group of hemoglobin (Hb) released during hemolysis, is broken down into bilirubin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 252), and the iron is recycled ( $\rightarrow$  p. 90).

---

**Blood volume** in liters relative to body weight (BW)  
 $\delta$   $0.041 \times \text{BW (kg)} + 1.53$ ,  $\varnothing$   $0.047 \times \text{BW (kg)} + 0.86$

**Hematocrit** (cell volume/ blood volume):  
 $\delta$  0.40–0.54  $\varnothing$ : 0.37–0.47

**Erythrocytes** ( $10^{12}/L$  of blood =  $10^6/\mu L$  of blood):  
 $\delta$  4.6–5.9  $\varnothing$  4.2–5.4

**Hemoglobin** (g/L of blood):  
 $\delta$  140–180  $\varnothing$  120–160

**MCH, MCV, MCHC**—mean corpuscular (MC) hemoglobin (Hb), MC volume, MC Hb concentration ( $\rightarrow$  C)

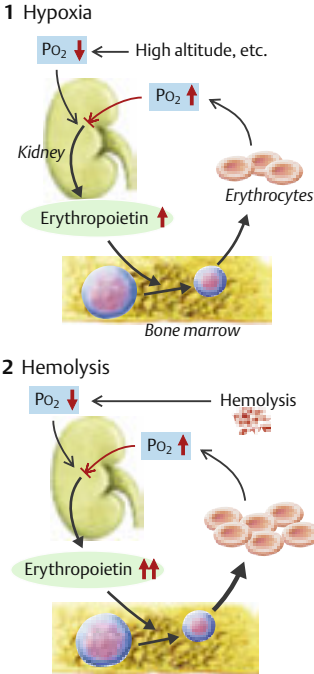
**Leukocytes** ( $10^9/L$  of blood =  $10^3/\mu L$  of blood):  
 3–11 (64% granulocytes, 31% lymphocytes, 6% monocytes)

**Platelets** ( $10^9/L$  of blood =  $10^3/\mu L$  of blood):  
 $\delta$  170–360  $\varnothing$  180–400

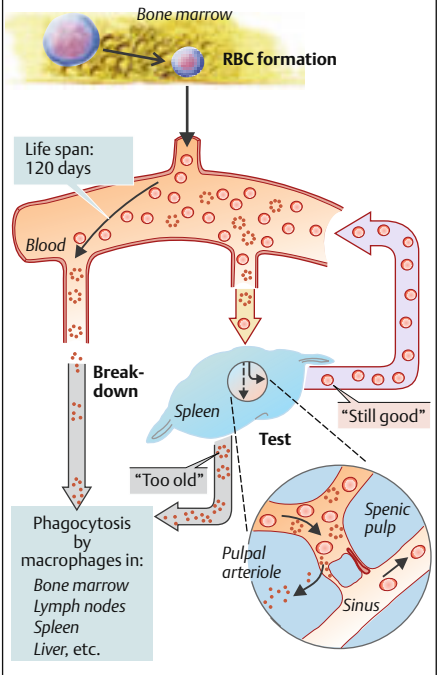
**Plasma proteins** (g/L of serum):  
 66–85 (including 55–64% albumin)

---

**A. Regulation of RBC production**



**B. Life cycle of red blood cells**



**C. Erythrocyte parameters MCH, MCV and MCHC**

**Blood sample**

Centrifugation

$\text{Hematocrit (Hct)} = \frac{b}{a}$   
( $L_{RBC} / L_{Blood}$ )

**Hemoglobin concentration**  
( $g / L_{Blood}$ )

**Red cell count (RCC)**  
( $quantity / L_{Blood}$ )

**MCH (mean Hb mass/RBC)**

$= \frac{\text{Hb conc.}}{\text{red cell count}}$  (g/RBC)

Normal: 27 – 32 pg

**MCV (mean volume of one RBC)**

$= \frac{\text{Hct}}{\text{red cell count}}$  (L/RBC)

Normal: 80 – 100 fl

**MCHC (mean Hb conc. in RBCs)**

$= \frac{\text{Hb conc.}}{\text{Hct}}$  (g/ $L_{RBC}$ )

Normal: 320 – 360 g/L

Roughly  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the body's **iron pool** (ca. 2 g in women and 5 g in men) is bound to **hemoglobin** (Hb). About  $\frac{1}{4}$  exists as **stored iron** (ferritin, hemosiderin), the rest as **functional iron** (myoglobin, iron-containing enzymes). **Iron losses** from the body amount to about 1 mg/day in men and up to 2 mg/day in women due to menstruation, birth, and pregnancy. **Iron absorption** occurs mainly in the duodenum and varies according to need. The absorption of iron usually amounts to about 3 to 15% of iron supplied by the diet in healthy individuals, but can increase to over 25% in individuals with iron deficiency ( $\rightarrow$  A1). A minimum daily **iron intake** of at least 10–20 mg/day is therefore recommended (women > children > men).

**Iron absorption ( $\rightarrow$  A2).** Fe supplied by the diet (hemoglobin, myoglobin found chiefly in meat and fish) is absorbed relatively efficiently as a **heme-Fe** by *HCP1* (heme carrier protein 1). Within mucosal cells,  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  is released by *heme oxygenase* and reduced to  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  which is transported across the cell by *mobilferrin*. It either enters the bloodstream or remains in the mucosa as a ferritin-Fe(III) complex and returns to the gut lumen during cell turnover. **Non-heme-Fe** can only be absorbed as  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ . Therefore, non-heme  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  must first be reduced to  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  by ferrireductase (FR;  $\rightarrow$  A2) and ascorbate on the surface of the luminal mucosa ( $\rightarrow$  A2).  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  is absorbed through secondary active transport via the  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ - $\text{H}^+$  symport carrier *DCT1* (= divalent cation transporter = DMT1 = divalent metal transporter) where it competes with  $\text{Mn}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Co}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Cd}^{2+}$ , etc. A **low chymous pH** is important since it (a) increases the  $\text{H}^+$  gradient that drives  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  via *DCT1* into the cell and (b) frees dietary iron from complexes. The uptake of iron into the bloodstream is **regulated by two mechanisms**: (1) When an iron deficiency exists, *aconitase* (an iron-regulating protein) in the cytosol binds with *ferritin-mRNA*, thereby inhibiting mucosal ferritin translation. As a result, larger quantities of absorbed Fe can enter the bloodstream. (2) On the baso-lateral cell side,  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  is oxidized to  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  by *hephaestin* (= membrane-bound homologue of the ferroxidase ceruloplasmin).  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  leaves the cell via *ferroportin 1* (= IREG1). Its density in the plasma membrane of mucosal cells (as well as of hepatocytes and macrophages) is diminished by *hepcidin*. Secretion of this liver

hormone decreases during iron deficiency. Thus, the IREG1 density increases and more  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  enters the blood. There, it binds to *apotransferrin*, a protein responsible for **iron transport in plasma** ( $\rightarrow$  A2, 3). *Transferrin* [= apotransferrin loaded with 2 Fe(III)], is taken up by endocytosis into erythroblasts and cells of the liver, placenta, etc. with the aid of *transferrin receptors*. Once Fe has been released to the target cells, apotransferrin again becomes available for uptake of Fe from the intestine and macrophages (see below).

**Iron storage and recycling ( $\rightarrow$  A3).** *Ferritin* occurs mainly in the intestinal mucosa, liver, bone marrow, red blood cells, and plasma. It contains binding pockets for up to 4500  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  ions and provides rapidly available stores of iron (ca. 600 mg), whereas iron mobilization from *hemosiderin* is much slower. Hb-Fe and heme-Fe released from malformed erythroblasts (so-called inefficient erythropoiesis) and hemolyzed red blood cells bind to haptoglobin and hemopexin, respectively. They are then engulfed by macrophages in the bone marrow or in the liver and spleen resulting in 97% iron recycling ( $\rightarrow$  A3).

An **iron deficiency** inhibits Hb synthesis, leading to hypochromic microcytic anemia:  $\text{MCH} < 26 \mu\text{g}$ ,  $\text{MCV} < 70 \text{ fL}$ ,  $\text{Hb} < 110 \text{ g/L}$ . The primary causes are: (1) blood loss (most common cause); 0.5 mg Fe are lost with each mL of blood; (2) insufficient Fe intake or absorption; (3) increased Fe requirement due to growth, pregnancy, breast-feeding, etc.; (4) decreased Fe recycling due to chronic infection. Inflammatory signals, e.g. IL6, increase secretion of hepcidin. Therefore, **IREG1** density decreases also in macrophages and Fe is retained there.

**Iron overload** (e.g. due to defects in hepcidin or IREG1) most commonly damages the liver, pancreas, and myocardium (*hemochromatosis*). If the Fe supply bypasses the intestinal tract (Fe injection), the transferrin capacity can be exceeded and the resulting quantities of free Fe can induce Fe poisoning.

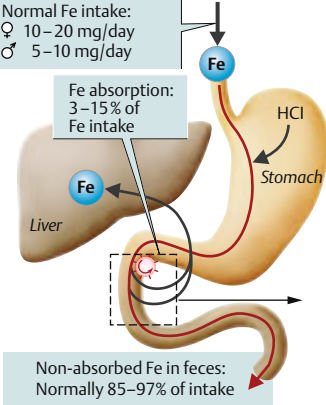
**B<sub>12</sub> vitamins (cobalamins) and folic acid** are also required for erythropoiesis ( $\rightarrow$  B). Deficiencies lead to **hyperchromic anemia** (decreased RCC, increased MCH). The main causes are lack of intrinsic factor (required for cobalamin resorption) and decreased folic acid absorption due to malabsorption (see also p.262) or an extremely unbalanced diet. Because of the large stores available, decreased cobalamin absorption does not lead to symptoms of deficiency until many years later, whereas folic acid deficiency leads to symptoms within a few months.

**A. Iron intake and metabolism**

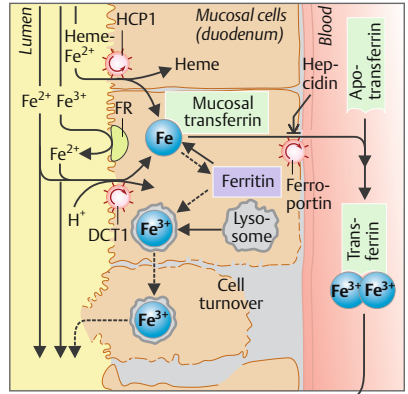
**1 Iron intake**

Normal Fe intake:  
 ♀ 10–20 mg/day  
 ♂ 5–10 mg/day

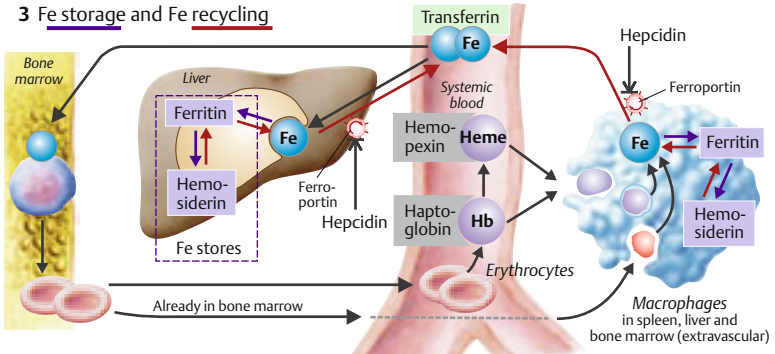
Fe absorption:  
 3–15% of Fe intake



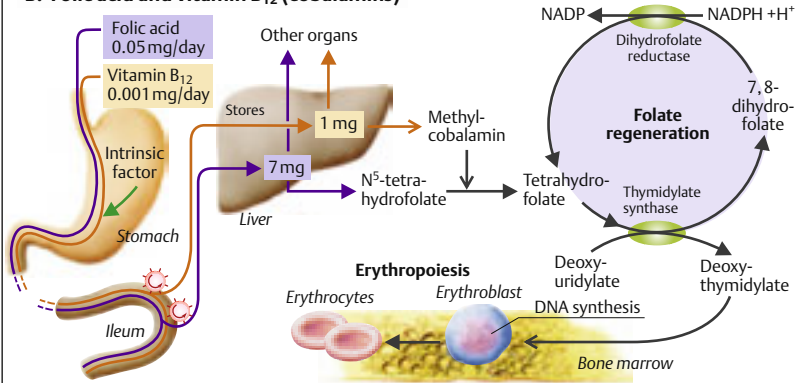
**2 Fe absorption**



**3 Fe storage and Fe recycling**



**B. Folic acid and vitamin B<sub>12</sub> (cobalamins)**



The **viscosity** ( $\eta$ ) of blood is higher than that of plasma due to its erythrocyte (RBC) content. Viscosity ( $\eta$ ) = 1/fluidity = shearing force ( $\tau$ )/shearing action ( $\gamma$ ) [Pa · s]. The viscosity of blood rises with increasing *hematocrit* and decreasing *flow velocity*. Erythrocytes lack the major organelles and, therefore, are highly deformable. Because of the low viscosity of their contents, the liquid film-like characteristics of their membrane, and their high surface/volume ratio, the blood behaves more like an emulsion than a cell suspension, especially when it flows rapidly. The viscosity of *flowing* blood ( $\eta_{\text{blood}}$ ) passing through small arteries ( $\varnothing$  20  $\mu\text{m}$ ) is about 4 relative units (RU). This is twice as high as the viscosity of plasma ( $\eta_{\text{plasma}}$  = 2 RU; water: 1 RU = 0.7 mPa · s at 37 °C).

Because they are *highly deformable*, normal RBCs usually have no problem passing through capillaries or pores of the splenic circulation (see p. 89B), although their diameter ( $\varnothing$  < 5  $\mu\text{m}$ ) is smaller than that of freely mobile RBCs (7  $\mu\text{m}$ ). Although the slowness of flow in small vessels causes the blood viscosity to increase, this is partially compensated for ( $\eta_{\text{blood}} \downarrow$ ) by the passage of red cells in single file through the center of small vessels (diameter < 300  $\mu\text{m}$ ) due to the **Fåhræus-Lindqvist effect** ( $\rightarrow$  A). Blood viscosity is only slightly higher than plasma viscosity in arterioles ( $\varnothing \approx 7 \mu\text{m}$ ), but rises again in capillaries ( $\varnothing \approx 4 \mu\text{m}$ ).

A *critical increase* in blood viscosity can occur a) if blood flow becomes too sluggish and/or b) if the fluidity of red cells decreases due to hyperosmolality (resulting in crenation), cell inclusion, hemoglobin malformation (e.g., sickle-cell anemia), changes in the cell membrane (e.g., in old red cells), and so forth. Under such circumstances, the RBCs undergo aggregation (*rouleaux formation*), increasing the blood viscosity tremendously (up to 1000 RU). This can quickly lead to the cessation of blood flow in small vessels ( $\rightarrow$  p. 220).

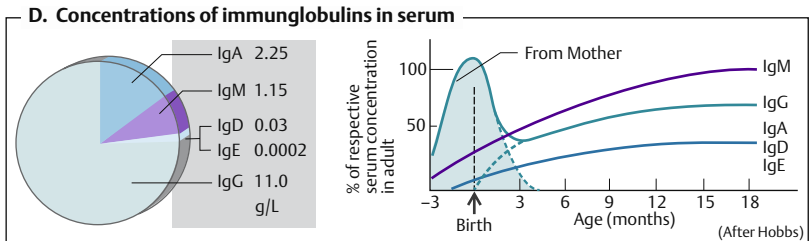
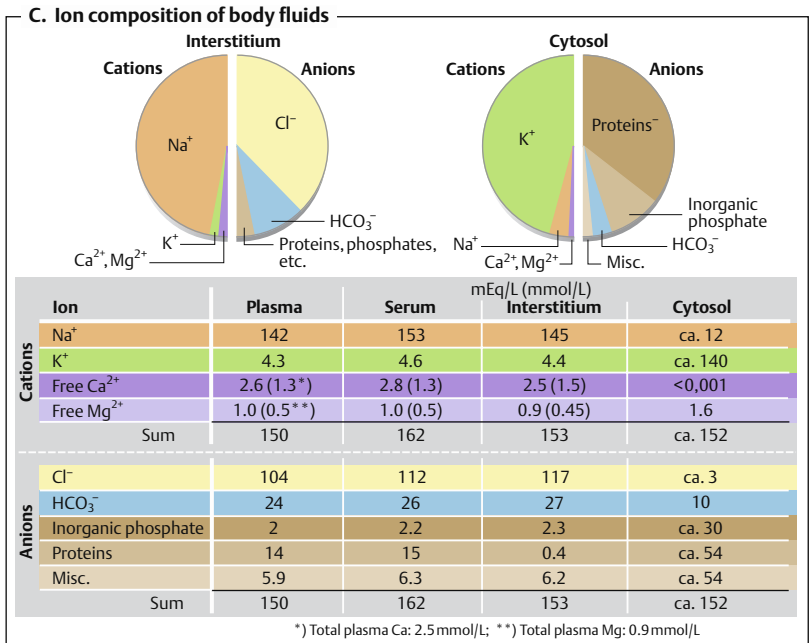
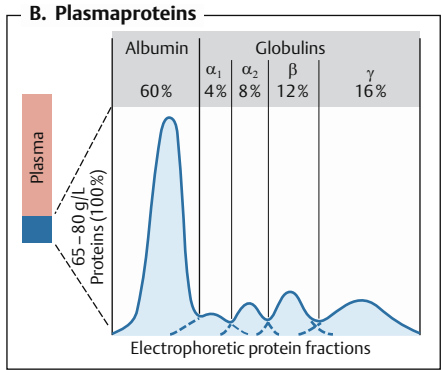
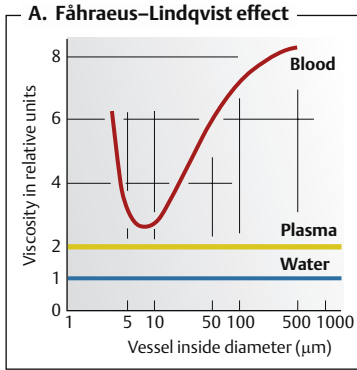
### Plasma, Ion Distribution

Plasma is obtained by preventing the blood from clotting and extracting the formed elements by centrifugation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 89C). High molecular weight proteins ( $\rightarrow$  B, C) as well as ions and non-charged substances with low

molecular weights are dissolved in plasma. The sum of the concentrations of these particles yields a *plasma osmolality* of 290 mOsm/kgH<sub>2</sub>O ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 164, 383). The most abundant cation in plasma is Na<sup>+</sup>, and the most abundant anions are Cl<sup>-</sup> and HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>. Although plasma proteins carry a number of anionic (i.e. negative) net charges ( $\rightarrow$  C), their osmotic efficacy is smaller because the number of particles, not the ionic valency, is the determining factor.

The fraction of proteins able to leave the blood vessels is small and varies from one organ to another. Capillaries in the liver, for example, are much more permeable to proteins than those in the brain. The composition of *interstitial fluid* therefore differs significantly from that of plasma, especially with respect to protein content ( $\rightarrow$  C). A completely different composition is found in the *cytosol*, where K<sup>+</sup> is the prevailing cation, and where phosphates, proteins and other organic anions comprise the major fraction of anions ( $\rightarrow$  C). These fractions vary depending on cell type.

Sixty percent of all **plasma protein** ( $\rightarrow$  B) is albumin (35–46 g/L). Albumin serves as a vehicle for a number of substances in the blood. They are the main cause of colloidal osmotic pressure or, rather, *oncotic pressure* ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 210, 384), and they provide a protein reserve in times of protein deficiency. The  $\alpha_1$ ,  $\alpha_2$  and  $\beta$  globulins ( $\rightarrow$  B) mainly serve to transport lipids (apolipoproteins), hemoglobin (haptoglobin), iron (apotransferrin), cortisol (transcortin), and cobalamins (transcobalamin). Most plasma factors for coagulation and fibrinolysis are also proteins. Most plasma *immunoglobulins* (Ig,  $\rightarrow$  D) belong to the group of  $\gamma$  globulins and serve as defense proteins (antibodies). IgG, the most abundant immunoglobulin (7–15 g/L), can cross the placental barrier (maternofetal transmission;  $\rightarrow$  D). Each Ig consists of two group-specific, heavy protein chains (IgG:  $\gamma$  chain, IgA:  $\alpha$  chain, IgM:  $\mu$  chain, IgD:  $\delta$  chain, IgE:  $\epsilon$  chain) and two light protein chains (lambda or  $\kappa$  chain) linked by disulfide bonds to yield a characteristic Y-shaped configuration (see p. 95 A).



### Fundamental Principles

The body has *nonspecific (innate) immune defenses* linked with *specific (acquired) immune defenses* that counteract bacteria, viruses, fungi, parasites and foreign (non-self) macromolecules. They all function as **antigens**, i.e., substances that stimulate the specific immune system, resulting in the activation of antigen-specific **T lymphocytes (T cells)** and **B lymphocytes (B cells)**. In the process, B lymphocytes differentiate into *plasma cells* that secrete antigen-specific **antibodies (immunoglobulins, Ig)** (→ C and p. 93 D). Ig function to neutralize and opsonize antigens and to activate the complement system (→ p. 96). These mechanisms ensure that the respective antigen is *specifically recognized*, then eliminated by relatively nonspecific means. Some of the T and B cells have an *immunologic memory*.

*Precursor lymphocytes* without an antigen-binding receptor are *preprocessed* within the *thymus (T)* or *bone marrow (B)*. These organs produce a set of up to  $10^8$  monospecific T or B cells, each of which is directed against a specific antigen. *Naive* T and B cells which have not previously encountered antigen circulate through the body (blood → peripheral lymphatic tissue → lymph → blood) and undergo **clonal expansion and selection** after contact with its specific antigen (usually in lymphatic tissue). The lymphocyte then begins to divide rapidly, producing numerous monospecific daughter cells. The progeny differentiates into plasma cells or “armed” T cells that initiate the elimination of the antigen.

**Clonal deletion** is a mechanism for eliminating lymphocytes with receptors directed against auto- (self) tissue. After first contact with their specific self-antigen, these lymphocytes are eliminated during the early stages of development in the thymus or bone marrow. Clonal deletion results in **central immunologic tolerance**. The ability of the immune system to distinguish between endogenous and foreign antigens is called **self/nonself recognition**. This occurs around the time of birth. All substances encountered by that time are recognized as endogenous (self); others are identified as foreign (nonself).

The inability to distinguish self from nonself results in *autoimmune disease*.

At first contact with a virus (e.g., measles virus), the nonspecific immune system usually cannot prevent the viral proliferation and the development of the measles. The specific immune system, with its T-killer cells (→ B2) and Ig (first IgM, then IgG; → C3), responds slowly: **primary immune response** or **sensitization**. Once activated, it can eliminate the pathogen, i.e., the individual recovers from the measles.

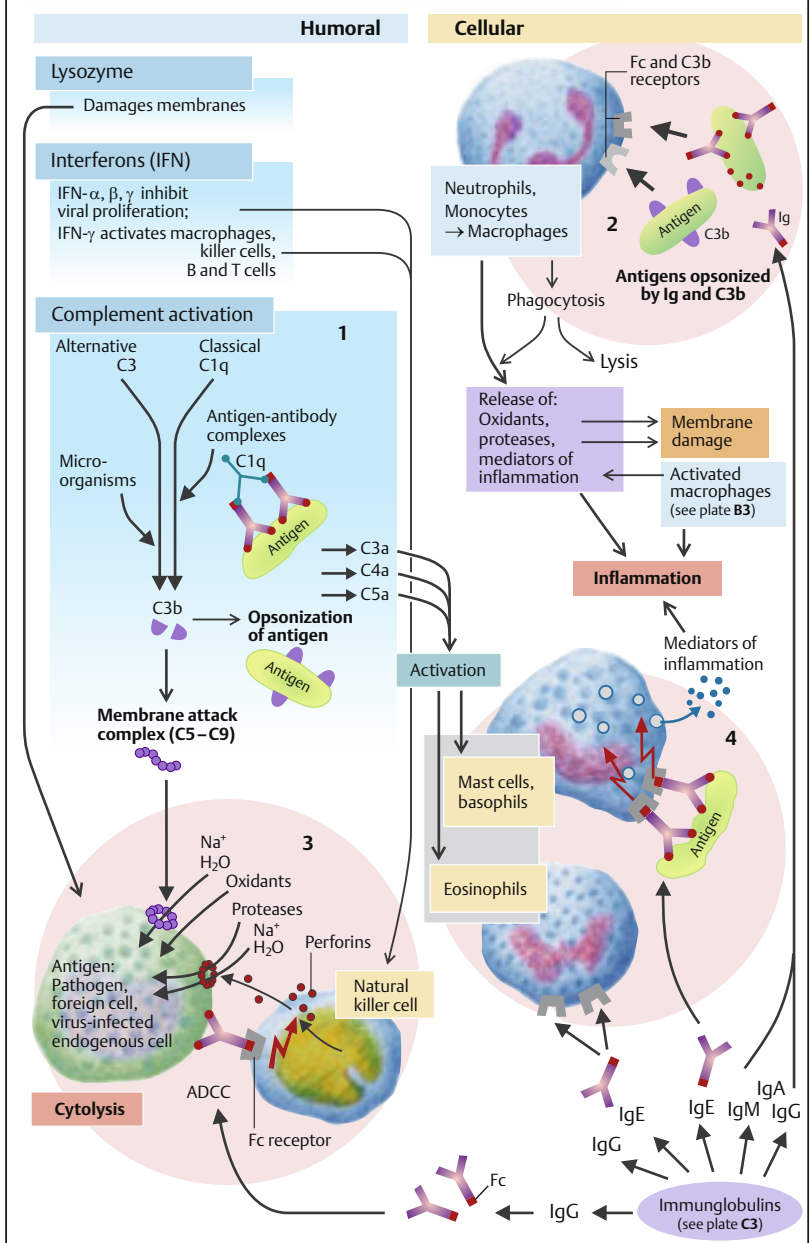
**Secondary immune response**: When infected a second time, specific IgG is produced much more rapidly. The virus is quickly eliminated, and the disease does not develop a second time. This type of protection against infectious disease is called **immunity**. It can be achieved by vaccinating the individual with a specific antigen (*active immunization*). *Passive immunization* can be achieved by administering ready-made Ig (immune serum).

### Nonspecific Immunity

*Lysozyme* and *complement factors* dissolved in plasma (→ A1) as well as *natural killer cells (NK cells)* and phagocytes, especially *neutrophils* and *macrophages* that arise from *monocytes* that migrate into the tissues (→ A2) play an important role in nonspecific immunity. Neutrophils, monocytes, and eosinophils circulate throughout the body. They have chemokine receptors (e.g., CXCR1 and 2 for IL-8) and are attracted by various *chemokines* (e.g., IL-8) to the sites where microorganisms have invaded (*chemotaxis*). These cells are able to migrate. With the aid of selectins, they dock onto the endothelium (*margination*), penetrate the endothelium (*diapedesis*), and engulf and damage the microorganism with the aid of *lysozyme*, *oxidants* such as  $H_2O_2$ , oxygen radicals ( $O_2^-$ ,  $OH^-$ ,  $^1O_2$ ), and *nitric oxide (NO)*. This is followed by digestion (*lysis*) of the microorganism with the aid of lysosomal enzymes. If the antigen (parasitic worm, etc.) is too large for digestion, other substances involved in nonspecific immunity (e.g., proteases and cytotoxic proteins) are also exocytosed by these cells.

Reducing enzymes such as catalase and superoxide dismutase usually keep the oxidant concentration low. This is often discontinued, especially when macrophages are activated (→ below and B3), to fully exploit the bactericidal effect of the oxidants. However, ►

**A. Nonspecific immune defenses enhanced by specific antibodies**



► the resulting *inflammation* (→ **A2, 4**) also damages cells involved in nonspecific defense and, in some cases, even other endogenous cells.

**Opsonization** (→ **A1, 2**) involves the binding of *opsonins*, e.g., IgG or complement factor C3b, to specific domains of an antigen, thereby enhancing phagocytosis. It is the only way to make bacteria with a polysaccharide capsule phagocytatable. The phagocytes have **receptors** on their surface for the (antigen-independent) Fc segment of IgG as well as for C3b. Thus, the antigen-bound IgG and C3b bind to their respective receptors, thereby linking the rather unspecific process of phagocytosis with the specific immune defense system. Carbohydrate-binding proteins (lectins) of plasma, called *collectins* (e.g. mannose-binding protein), which dock onto microbial cell walls, also acts as unspecific opsonins.

The **complement cascade** is activated by antigens opsonized by Ig (classical pathway) as well as by non-opsonophilic antigens (alternative pathway) (→ **A1**). Complement components C3a, C4a and C5a activate basophils and eosinophils (→ **A4**). Complement components C5–C9 generate the *membrane-attack complex* (MAC), which perforates and kills (Gram-negative) bacteria by **cytolysis** (→ **A3**). This form of defense is assisted by **lysozyme** (= muramidase), an enzyme that breaks down murein-containing bacterial cell walls. It occurs in granulocytes, plasma, lymph, and secretions.

**Natural killer (NK) cells** are large, granular lymphocytes specialized in nonspecific defense against viruses, mycobacteria, tumor cells etc. They recognize infected cells and tumor cells on “foreign surfaces” and dock via their Fc receptors on IgG-opsonized surface antigens (*antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity*, **ADCC**; → **A3**). *Perforins* exocytosed by NK cells form pores in target cell walls, thereby allowing their subsequent lysis (*cytolysis*). This not only makes the virus unable to proliferate (enzyme apparatus of the cell), but also makes it (and other intracellular pathogens) subject to attack from other defense mechanisms.

Various **interferons (IFNs)** stimulate NK cell activity: IFN- $\alpha$ , IFN- $\beta$  and, to a lesser degree, IFN- $\gamma$ . IFN- $\alpha$  and IFN- $\beta$  are released mainly from leukocytes and fibro-

blasts, while IFN- $\gamma$  is liberated from activated T cells and NK cells. Virus-infected cells release large quantities of IFNs, resulting in heightened viral resistance in non-virus-infected cells. **Defensins** are cytotoxic peptides released by phagocytes. They can exert unspecific cytotoxic effects on pathogens resistant to NK cells (e.g., by forming ion channels in the target cell membrane).

**Macrophages** arise from monocytes that migrate into the tissues. Some macrophages are freely mobile (*free macrophages*), whereas others (*fixed macrophages*) remain restricted to a certain area, such as the hepatic sinus (Kupffer cells), the pulmonary alveoli, the intestinal serosa, the splenic sinus, the lymph nodes, the skin (Langerhans cells), the synovia (synovial A cells), the brain (microglia), or the endothelium (e.g., in the renal glomeruli). The **mononuclear phagocytic system (MPS)** is the collective term for the circulating monocytes in the blood and macrophages in the tissues. Macrophages recognize relatively unspecific carbohydrate components on the surface of bacteria and ingest them by phagocytosis. The macrophages have to be activated if the pathogens survive within the phagosomes (→ below and **B3**).

#### Specific Immunity: Cell-Mediated Immune Responses

Since specific cell-mediated immune responses through “armed” T effector cells need a few days to become effective, this is called *delayed-type immune response*. It requires the participation of **professional antigen-presenting cells (APCs)**: dendritic cells, macrophages and B cells. APCs process and present antigenic peptides to the T cells in association with *MHC-I or MHC-II proteins*, thereby delivering the co-stimulatory signal required for activation of naive T cells. (The gene loci for these proteins are the class I (MHC-I) and class II (MHC-II) major histocompatibility complexes (MHC)), **HLA** (*human leukocyte antigen*) is the term for MHC proteins in humans. Virus-infected dendritic cells, which are mainly located in lymphatic tissue, most commonly serve as APCs. Such HLA-restricted antigen presentation (→ **B1**) involves the insertion of an antigen in the binding pocket of an HLA protein. An **ICAM** (intercellular adhesion molecule) on the surface of the APC then binds to ►

**B. Specific immunity: T-cell activation**

**Antigen-presenting cells (APCs):**

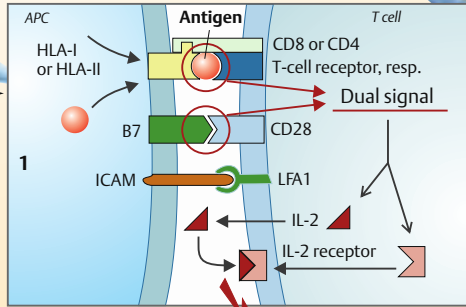
- Macrophages
- Dendritic cells
- B cells

Example:  
*Dendritic cell*

**T lymphocytes**

CD8<sup>+</sup> T cells recognize antigen in HLA(MHC)-I

CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells recognize antigen in HLA(MHC)-II



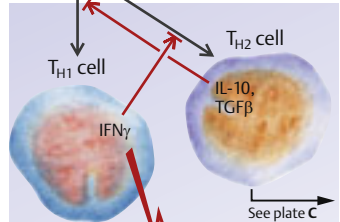
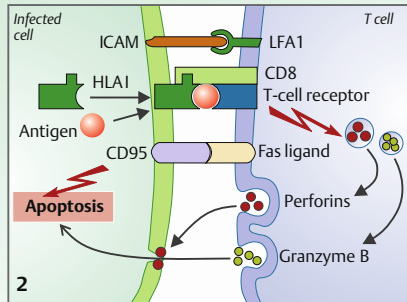
**T-cell proliferation**  
(clonal expansion and differentiation)

CD8/HLA-I

CD4/HLA-II

Infected cell, tumor cell, foreign cell

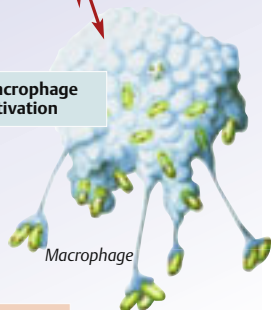
Cytotoxic T cell



**Macrophage activation**

3

**Inflammation**



► **LFA1** (lymphocyte function-associated antigen 1) on the T cell membrane. When a T cell specific for the antigen in question docks onto the complex, the bond is strengthened and the **APC dual signal** stimulates the activation and clonal selection of the T cell (→ **B1**).

The **APC dual signal** consists of **1) recognition of the antigen** (class I or class II HLA-restricted antigen) by the **T cell receptor** and its **co-receptor** and **2) a costimulatory signal**, that is, the binding of the **B7 protein** (on the APC) with the **CD28 protein** on the T cell (→ **B1**). **CD8 molecules** on T cytotoxic cells ( $T_C$  cells = T-killer cells) and **CD4 molecules** on T helper cells ( $T_H$  cells) function as the co-receptors. When antigen binding occurs without co-stimulation (e.g., in the liver, where there are no APCs), the lymphocyte is inactivated, i.e., it becomes **anergic**, and **peripheral immunologic tolerance** develops.

The T cell can receive APC dual signals from infected macrophages or B cells, provided their receptors have bound the antigen in question (e.g., insect or snake venom or allergens). The APC dual signal induces the T cell to express **interleukin-2 (IL-2)** and to bind the respective **IL-2 receptor** (→ **B1**). **IL-2** is the actual **signal for clonal expansion** of these monospecific T cells. It functions through autocrine and paracrine mechanisms.

Potent **immunosuppression**, e.g., for organ transplantation, can be achieved with **IL-2 inhibitors** like **cyclosporin A**.

During clonal expansion, the T cells differentiate into three "armed" subtypes, i.e., **T cytotoxic cells ( $T_C$  cells)** or **T killer cells** and **Helper cells type 1 ( $T_{H1}$  cells)** and type 2 ( **$T_{H2}$  cells**). These cells no longer require costimulation and express a different type of adhesion molecule (**VLA-4** instead of **L-selectins**) by which they now dock onto the endothelium of inflamed tissues (rather than to lymphatic tissue like their naïve precursors).

**T killer cells** develop from naïve **CD8-containing ( $CD8^+$ ) T cells** after **HLA-I-restricted antigen presentation** (→ **B2**). **Endogenous antigen presentation** occurs when the **HLA-I protein** takes up the antigen (virus, cytosolic protein) from the cytosol of the APC, which is usually the case. With its **CD8-associated T-cell receptor**, the T killer cell is able to recognize **HLA-I-restricted antigens** on (virus) infected endogenous cells and tumor cells as well as on cells of transplanted organs. It subsequently drives the cells into **apoptosis** (programmed

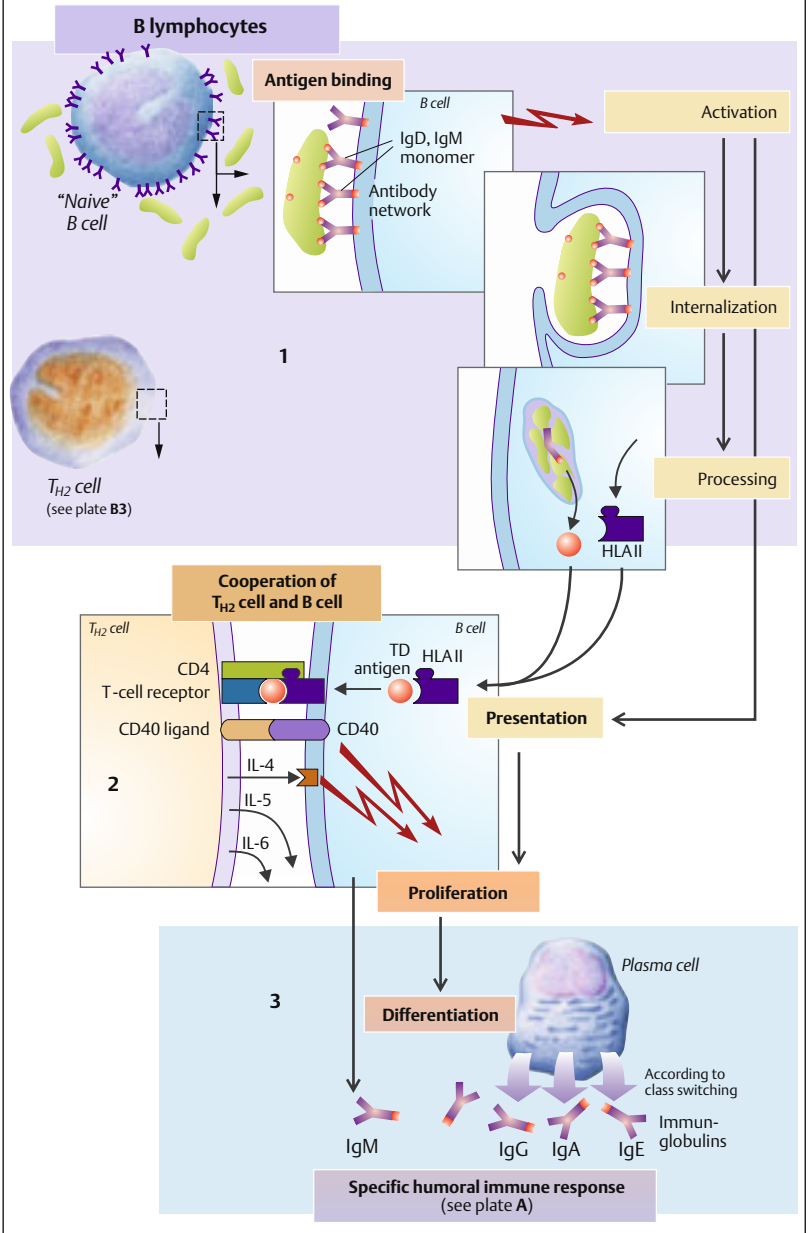
cell death) or **necrosis**. Binding of the **Fas ligand** to **CD95 (=Fas)** plays a role, as does **granzyme B** (protease), which enters the cell through pores created by exocytosed **perforins** (→ **B2**).

Once **HLA-II-restricted presentation** (→ **B1**) of antigens from intracellular vesicles (e.g., phagocytosed bacteria or viral envelope proteins = **exogenous antigen presentation**) has occurred, naïve  **$CD4^+$  T cells** transform into immature T helper cells ( $T_{H0}$ ), which differentiate into  **$T_{H1}$  or  $T_{H2}$  cells**.  **$T_{H1}$  cells** induce **inflammatory responses** and promote the activation of macrophages with the aid of **IFN- $\gamma$**  (→ **B3**), while  **$T_{H2}$  cells** are required for **B-cell activation** (→ **C2**).  $T_{H1}$  and  $T_{H2}$  cells mutually **suppress** each other, so only one of the two types will predominate in any given cell-mediated immune response (→ **B3**).

#### Specific Immunity: Humoral Immune Responses

**Humoral immunity** arise from **B cells** (→ **C1**). Numerous **IgD** and **IgM monomers** anchored onto the B-cell surface bind with the respective antigen (dissolved **IgM** occurs in pentameric form). A resulting network of antigen-bound Ig leads to **internalization** and **processing of the antigen-antibody complex** in B cells. However, **B-cell activation** requires a second signal, which can come directly from a thymus-independent (TI) antigen (e.g., bacterial polysaccharide) or indirectly from a  **$T_{H2}$  cell** in the case of a thymus-dependent (TD) antigen. In the latter case, the B cell presents the **HLA-II-restricted TD antigen** to the  **$T_{H2}$  cell** (→ **C2**). If the **CD4-associated T-cell receptor (TCR)** of the  **$T_{H2}$  cell** recognizes the antigen, **CD40 ligands** are expressed on the  **$T_{H2}$  surface** (**CD40 ligands** bind with **CD40 proteins** on B cells) and **IL-4** is secreted. The **CD40 ligand** and **IL-4** (later also **IL-5** and **IL-6**) stimulate the B cell to undergo **clonal selection**, **IgM secretion**, and differentiation into **plasma cells** (→ **C3**). Before differentiation, **class switching** can occur, i.e., a different type of Ig heavy chain (→ p. 92) can be expressed by altered DNA splicing (→ p. 8f.). In this manner, **IgM** is converted into **IgA**, **IgG** or **IgE** (→ p. 92). All Ig types arising from a given B-cell clone remain monospecific for the same antigen. The plasma cells formed after class switching produce only a single type of Ig.

C. Specific immunity: B-cell activation



Allergy is a specific, exaggerated immune response to a (usually harmless) foreign substance or antigen ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.). **Allergens** are antigens that induce allergies. Small molecules conjugated to endogenous proteins can also have antigenic effects. In this case, they are referred to as incomplete antigens or **haptens**. The heightened immune response to secondary antigen contact ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.) normally has a protective effect. In allergies, however, the first contact with an antigen induces sensitization (allergization), and subsequent exposure leads to the destruction of healthy cells and intact tissue. This can also result in damage to endogenous proteins and *autoantibody* production. *Inflammatory reactions* are the main causes of damage.

**Types of hypersensitivity reactions: Type I** reactions are common. On first contact, the allergen internalized by B cells is presented to  $T_{H2}$  cells. The B cell then proliferates and differentiates into plasma cells (see p. 98), which release *immunoglobulin E (IgE)*. The Fc fragment of IgE binds to *mast cells* and *basophils*. On subsequent contact, the antigens bind to the already available IgE-linked mast cells ( $\rightarrow$  A). Due to the rapid release of mostly vasoactive mediators of inflammation such as histamine, leukotrienes and platelet-activating factor (PAF) from these cell types, an immediate reaction (*anaphylaxis*) occurs within seconds or minutes: **immediate type hypersensitivity**. This is the mechanism by which allergens breathed into the lungs trigger hay fever and asthma attacks. The vasodilatory effect of a generalized type I reaction can lead to *anaphylactic shock* (see p. 220).

In **type II** reactions, the immune system mainly attacks *cells* with antigenic properties. This can be attributable to the transfusion of the erythrocytes of the wrong blood group or the binding of *haptens* (e.g., medications) to endogenous cells. The binding of haptens to platelets can, for example, result in thrombocytopenia.

**Type III** reactions are caused by antigen-antibody complexes. If more antigen than antibody is available, *soluble antigen-antibody complexes* circulate in blood for a long time ( $\rightarrow$  B) and settle mainly in the capillaries, making the capillary wall subject to attack by the complement system. This leads to the development of **serum sickness** ( $\rightarrow$  B), the main symptoms of which are joint pain and fever.

**Type IV** reactions are mainly mediated by  $T_{H1}$  cells,  $T_C$  cells, and macrophages. Since symptoms peak 2 to 4 days after antigen contact, this is called **delayed type hypersensitivity**. The main triggers are mycobacteria (e.g. Tbc), other foreign proteins, and haptens, such as medications and plant substances, such as poison ivy. Primary *transplant rejection* is also a type IV hypersensitivity reaction. *Contact dermatitis* is also a type IV reaction caused by various haptens (e.g., nickel in jewelry).

## Blood Groups

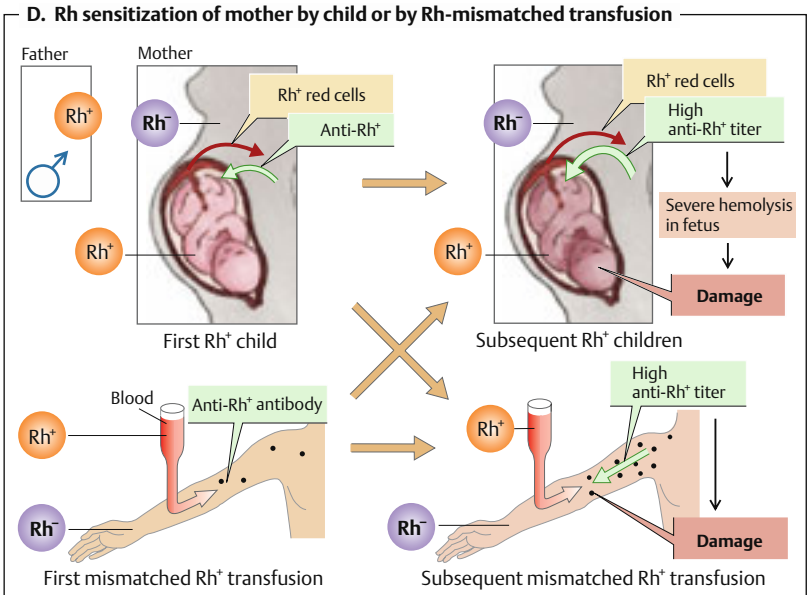
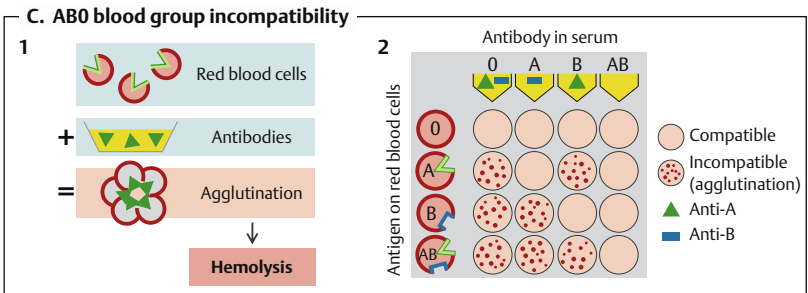
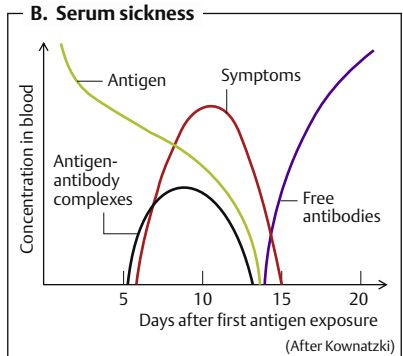
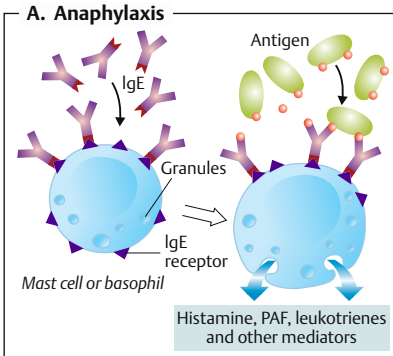
A person's blood group is determined by the type of antigen (certain glycolipids) present on the red blood cells (RBCs). In the **ABO system**, the antigens are A and B ( $\rightarrow$  C). In blood type A, antigen A (on RBC) and anti-B antibody (in serum) are present; in type B, B and anti-A are present; in type AB, A and B are present, no antibody; in type 0 (zero), no antigen but anti-A and anti-B are present.

When giving a **blood transfusion**, it is important that the blood groups of donor and recipient match, i.e. that the RBCs of the donor (e.g. A) do not come in contact with the respective antibodies (e.g. anti-A) in the recipient. If the donor's blood is the wrong type, *agglutination* (cross-linking by IgM) and *hemolysis* (bursting) of the donor's RBCs will occur ( $\rightarrow$  C1). Donor and recipient blood types must therefore be determined and *cross-matched* ( $\rightarrow$  C2) prior to a blood transfusion.

Since ABO antibodies belong to the IgM class, they usually do not cross the placenta.

In the **Rh system**, antibodies against rhesus antigens (C, D, E) on RBCs do not develop unless *prior sensitization* has occurred. D is by far the most antigenic. A person is Rh-positive ( $Rh^+$ ) when D is present on their RBCs (most people), and Rh-negative ( $Rh^-$ ) when D is absent. Anti-D antibodies belong to the IgG class of immunoglobulins, which are capable of crossing the placenta ( $\rightarrow$  p. 93 D).

$Rh^-$  individuals can form anti- $Rh^+$  (= anti-D) antibodies, e.g., after sensitization by a mismatched blood transfusion or of an  $Rh^-$  mother by an  $Rh^+$  fetus. Subsequent exposure to the mismatched blood leads to a severe antigen-antibody reaction characterized by intravascular agglutination and hemolysis ( $\rightarrow$  D).



The hemostatic system stops bleeding. *Thrombocytes (platelets), coagulation (or clotting) factors in plasma and vessel walls* interact to seal leaks in blood vessels. The damaged vessel constricts (release of endothelin), and platelets aggregate at the site of puncture (and attract more platelets) to seal the leak by a *platelet plug*. The time required for sealing (ca. 2 to 4 min) is called the *bleeding time*. Subsequently, the coagulation system produces a fibrin meshwork. Due to covalent cross-linking of fibrin, it turns to a *fibrin clot* or *thrombus* that retracts afterwards, thus reinforcing the seal. Later recanalization of the vessel can be achieved by fibrinolysis.

**Platelets** ( $170\text{--}400 \cdot 10^3$  per  $\mu\text{L}$  of blood; half-life  $\approx 10$  days) are small non-nucleated bodies that are pinched off from megakaryocytes in the bone marrow. When an endothelial injury occurs, platelets adhere to subendothelial collagen fibers ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) bridged by **von Willebrand's factor** (vWF), which is formed by endothelial cells and circulates in the plasma complexed with factor VIII. Glycoprotein complex GP Ib/IX on the platelets are vWF receptors. This *adhesion* activates **platelets** ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). They begin to release substances ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**), some of which promote platelet adhesiveness (vWF). Others like serotonin, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and thromboxane  $A_2$  (TXA $_2$ ) promote vasoconstriction. Vasoconstriction and platelet *contraction* slow the blood flow. Mediators released by platelets enhance platelet activation and attract and activate more platelets: ADP, TXA $_2$ , platelet-activating factor (PAF). The shape of activated platelets change drastically ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**). Discoid platelets become spherical and exhibit pseudopodia that intertwine with those of other platelets. This *platelet aggregation* ( $\rightarrow$  **A5**) is further enhanced by thrombin and stabilized by GP IIb/IIIa. Once a platelet changes its shape, GP IIb/IIIa is expressed on the platelet surface, leading to fibrinogen binding and platelet aggregation. GP IIb/IIIa also increases the adhesiveness of platelets, which makes it easier for them to stick to subendothelial fibronectin.

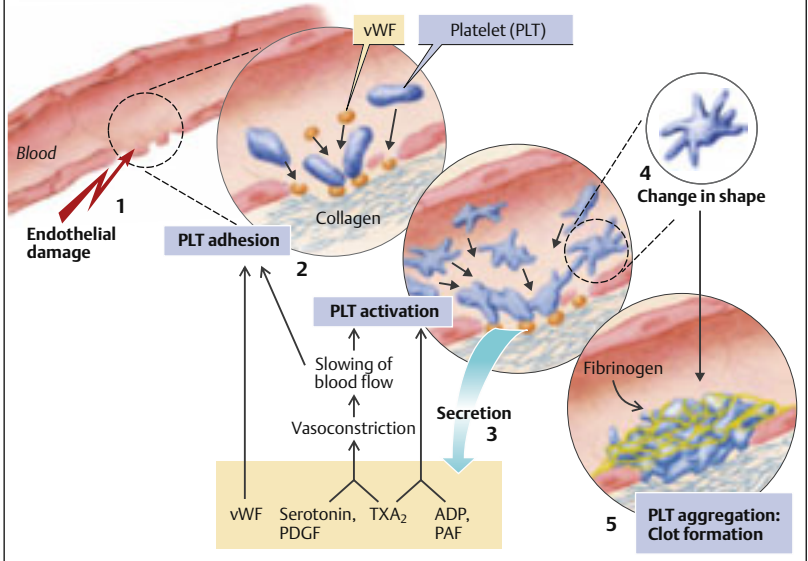
Several **coagulation factors** are involved in the clotting process. Except for Ca $^{2+}$ , they are proteins formed in the *liver* ( $\rightarrow$  **B** and Table). Factors labeled with a "K" in the table (as well

I	Fibrinogen	Half-life (h):	96
II <sup>K</sup>	Prothrombin		72
III	Tissue thromboplastin		
IV	Ionized calcium (Ca $^{2+}$ )		
V	Proaccelerin		20
VII <sup>K</sup>	Proconvertin		5
VIII	Antihemophilic factor A		12
IX <sup>K</sup>	Antihemophilic factor B; plasma thromboplastin component (PTC); Christmas factor		24
X <sup>K</sup>	Stuart–Prower factor		30
XI	Plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA)		48
XII	Hageman factor		50
XIII	Fibrin-stabilizing factor (FSF)		250
–	Prekallikrein (PKK); Fletcher factor		
–	High-molecular-weight kininogen (HMK); Fitzgerald factor		

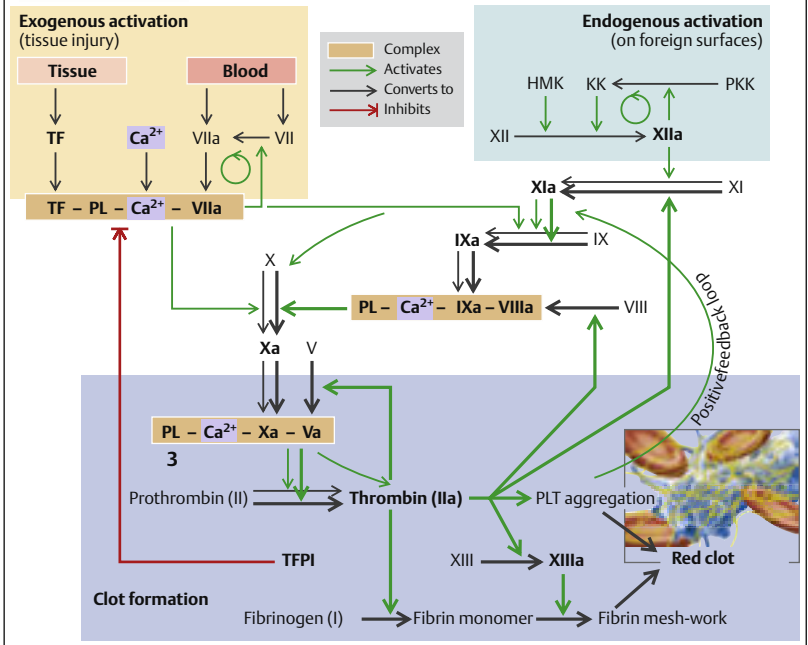
duced with **vitamin K**, an essential cofactor in posttranslational  $\gamma$ -carboxylation of glutamate residues of the factors. These  $\gamma$ -carboxyglutamyl groups are chelators of Ca $^{2+}$ . They are required for Ca $^{2+}$ -mediated complex formation of factors on the surface of phospholipid layers (PL), particularly on the platelet membrane (platelet factor 3). Vitamin K is oxidized in the reaction and has to be re-reduced by liver epoxide reductase (*vitamin K recycling*). **Ca $^{2+}$  ions** are required for several steps in the clotting process ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). When added to blood samples in vitro, citrate, oxalate, and EDTA bind with Ca $^{2+}$  ions, thereby preventing the blood from clotting. This effect is desirable when performing various blood tests.

**Activation of blood clotting** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Most coagulation factors normally are not active, or *zymogenic*. Their activation takes place as a cascade of events (An "a" added to the factor number means "activated") that enhance one another. Thus, even small amounts of a trigger factor lead to rapid blood clotting. The trigger can be endogenous (within a vessel) or exogenous (external). In the case of exogenous (extravascular) activation, following injuries to the blood vessels ( $\rightarrow$  **B** top left), the *tissue factor* (TF = extrinsic thromboplastin, an integral membrane protein) forms a complex with VIIIa and Ca $^{2+}$ , already contained in the blood, on phospholipid surfaces (**PL**). This complex acti- ▶

**A. Platelet-mediated hemostasis**



**B. Blood clotting**



► vates VII, IX, and X, which in turn leads to the formation of small amounts of thrombin (**initiating reaction**, → **B**, narrow arrows). This amount of thrombin is sufficient to activate V, IIIV, XI, IX, and X (→ **B**, bold arrows) and then, by way of positive feedback, release the amount of thrombin that allows clot formation (see below). The effects of the TF-PL-Ca<sup>2+</sup>-VIIIa-complex are now inhibited by TFPI (tissue factor pathway inhibitor) (→ **B**, left). The “endogenous” activation (→ **B**, top right) starts through contact activation of XII. Because patients with a genetic defect of XII do not display hemorrhagic diatheses, it is now believed that this activation type only plays a part on external (test tube) or internal (vascular prosthesis) foreign surfaces.

**Fibrin formation** (→ **B3**). Xa and Va form an additional complex with PL and Ca<sup>2+</sup>. This complex activates prothrombin (II) to **thrombin** (IIa). In the process, Ca<sup>2+</sup> binds with phospholipids, and the N-terminal end of prothrombin splits off. The thrombin liberated in the process now activates not only V, VIII, IX, X, and XI (see above) but also fibrinogen to **fibrin**, as well as fibrin-stabilizing factor (XIII). The single (monomeric) fibrin threads form a soluble meshwork (*fibrin<sub>s</sub>*; “s” for soluble) which XIIIa ultimately stabilizes to insoluble fibrin (*fibrin<sub>i</sub>*). XIIIa links the side chains of the fibrin threads via covalent bonds. Thrombin also supports the PLT aggregation, resulting in a very stable tight seal (red clot) formed by PLT aggregate (white clot) and the fibrin meshwork.

### Fibrinolysis and Thromboprotection

To prevent excessive clotting and occlusion of major blood vessels (*thrombosis*) and *embolisms* due to clot migration, fibrin<sub>s</sub> is re-dissolved (fibrinolysis) and inhibitory factors are activated as soon as vessel repair is initiated.

**Fibrinolysis** is mediated by **plasmin** (→ **C**). Various factors in blood (plasma kallikrein, factor XIIa), tissues (tissue plasminogen activator, tPA, at endothelial cells etc.), and urine (urokinase) activate *plasminogen* to plasmin.

Streptokinase, urokinase and tPA are used therapeutically to activate plasminogen. This is useful for dissolving a fresh thrombus located, e.g., in a coronary artery.

Fibrin is split into fibrinopeptides which inhibit thrombin formation and polymerization of fibrin to prevent further clot formation. *Alph<sub>2</sub>-antiplasmin* is an endogenous inhibitor of fibrinolysis. *Tranexamic acid* is administered therapeutically for the same purpose.

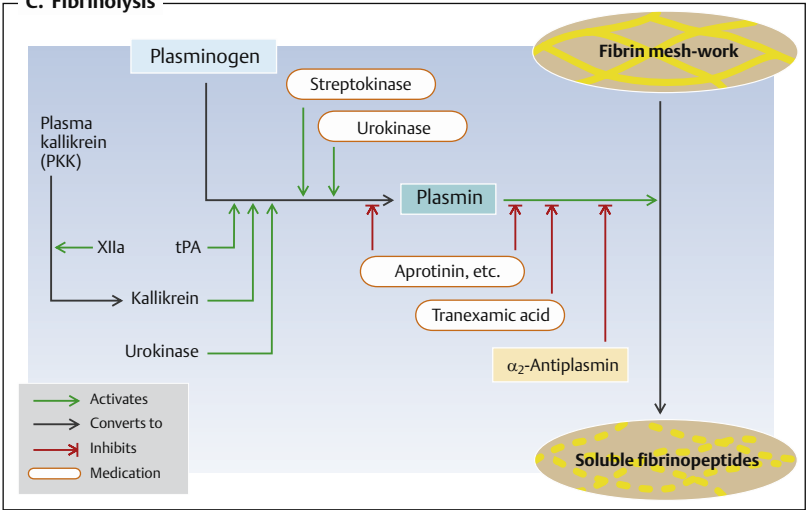
**Thromboprotection. Antithrombin III**, a serpin, is the most important thromboprotective plasma protein (→ **D**). It inactivates the protease activity of thrombin and factors IXa, Xa, XIa and XIIa by forming complexes with them. This is enhanced by **heparin** and heparin-like endothelial glucosaminoglycans. Heparin is produced naturally by mast cells and granulocytes, and synthetic heparin is injected for therapeutic purposes.

The binding of thrombin with endothelial **thrombomodulin** provides further thromboprotection. Only in this form does thrombin have anticoagulant effects (→ **D**, negative feedback). Thrombomodulin activates protein C to Ca which, after binding to protein S, deactivates coagulation factors Va and VIIIa. The synthesis of proteins C and S is vitamin K-dependent. Other plasma proteins that inhibit thrombin are **α<sub>2</sub>-macroglobulin** and **α<sub>1</sub>-antitrypsin** (→ **D**). Endothelial cells secrete **tissue thromboplastin inhibitor**, a substance that inhibits exogenous activation of coagulation, and **prostacyclin** (= prostaglandin I<sub>2</sub>), which inhibits platelet adhesion to the normal endothelium.

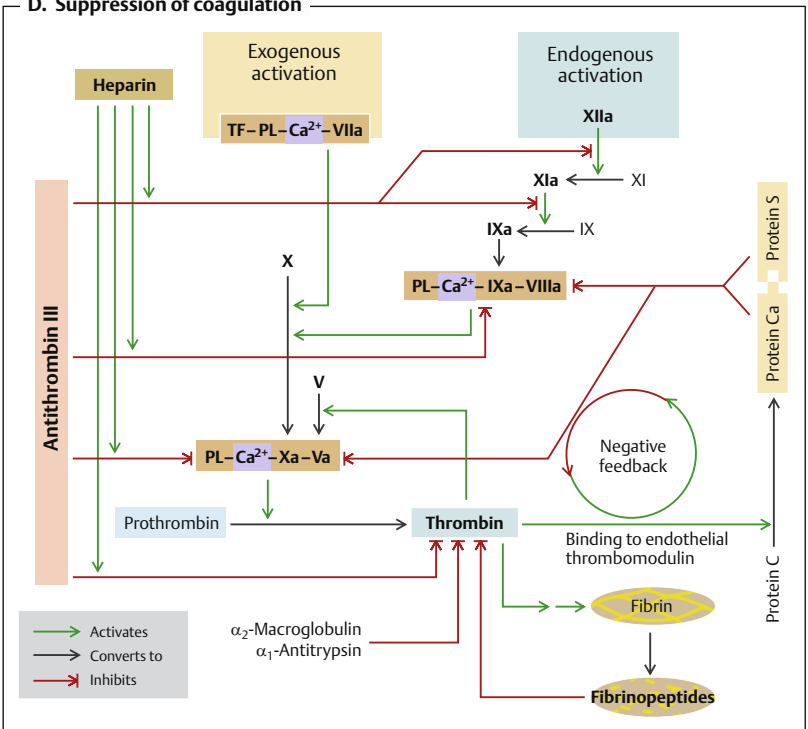
**Anticoagulants** are administered for thromboprotection in patients at risk of blood clotting. Injected **heparin** has immediate action. Oral coumarin derivatives (phenprocoumon, warfarin, acenocoumarol) are **vitamin K antagonists** that work by inhibiting epoxide reductase, which is necessary for vitamin K recycling. Therefore, these drugs do not take effect until the serum concentration of vitamin K-dependent coagulation factors has decreased. **Cyclooxigenase inhibitors**, such as aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid), inhibit platelet aggregation by blocking thromboxane A<sub>2</sub> (TXA<sub>2</sub>) synthesis (→ p. 271).

**Hemorrhagic diatheses** can have the following causes: a) Congenital deficiency of certain coagulation factors. Lack of VIII or IX, for example, leads to *hemophilia A* or *B*, respectively. b) Acquired deficiency of coagulation factors. The main causes are liver damage as well as vitamin K deficiency due to the destruction of vitamin K-producing intestinal flora or intestinal malabsorption. c) Increased consumption of coagulation factors, by *disseminated intravascular coagulation*. d) Platelet deficiency (thrombocytopenia) or platelet defect (thrombocytopathy). e) Certain vascular diseases, and f) excessive fibrinolysis.

C. Fibrinolysis



D. Suppression of coagulation



The lung is mainly responsible for respiration, but it also has *metabolic functions*, e.g. conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II ( $\rightarrow$  p. 186). In addition, the pulmonary circulation *buffers the blood volume* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 206) and *filters out small blood clots* from the venous circulation before they obstruct the arterial circulation (heart, brain!).

External **respiration** is the **exchange of gases** between the body and the environment. (*Internal or tissue respiration* involves nutrient oxidation,  $\rightarrow$  p. 230). **Convection (bulk flow)** is the means by which the body transports gases over long distances ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24) along with the flow of air and blood. Both flows are driven by a pressure difference. **Diffusion** is used to transport gases over short distances of a few  $\mu\text{m}$ —e.g., through cell membranes and other physiological barriers ( $\rightarrow$  p. 20ff.). The exchange of gas between the atmosphere and alveoli is called **ventilation**. Oxygen ( $\text{O}_2$ ) in the inspired air is convected to the alveoli before diffusing across the alveolar membrane into the bloodstream. It is then transported via the bloodstream to the tissues, where it diffuses from the blood into the cells and, ultimately, to the intracellular mitochondria. *Carbon dioxide* ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) produced in the mitochondria returns to the lung by the same route.

The **total ventilation per unit time**,  $\dot{V}_T$ , is the volume ( $V$ ) of air inspired or expired per time. As the expiratory volume is usually measured, it is also abbreviated  $\dot{V}_E$ . (The dot means “per unit time”). At rest, the body maintains a  $\dot{V}_E$  of about 8 L/min, with a corresponding **oxygen consumption rate** ( $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ ) of about 0.3 L/min and a  **$\text{CO}_2$  elimination rate** ( $\dot{V}_{\text{CO}_2}$ ) of about 0.25 L/min. Thus, about 26 L of air have to be inspired and expired to supply 1 L of  $\text{O}_2$  (*respiratory equivalent* = 26). The **tidal volume** ( $V_T$ ) is the volume of air moved in and out during one respiratory cycle.  $\dot{V}_E$  is the product of  $V_T$  (ca. 0.5 L at rest) and **respiration rate**  $f$  (about 16/min at rest) (see p. 74 for values during physical work). Only around 5.6 L/min (at  $f = 16 \text{ min}^{-1}$ ) of the  $\dot{V}_E$  of 8 L/min reaches the alveoli; this is known as **alveolar ventilation** ( $\dot{V}_A$ ). The rest fills airways space not contributing to gas exchange (**dead space ventilation**,  $\dot{V}_D$ ;  $\rightarrow$  pp. 114 and 120).

The human body contains around 300 million **alveoli**, or thin-walled air sacs (ca. 0.3 mm

in diameter) located on the terminal branches of the bronchial tree. They are surrounded by a dense network of **pulmonary capillaries** and have a total surface area of about  $100 \text{ m}^2$ . Because of this and the small air/blood diffusion distances of only a few  $\mu\text{m}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22, Eq. 1.7), sufficient quantities of  $\text{O}_2$  can **diffuse** across the alveolar wall into the blood and  $\text{CO}_2$  towards the alveolar space ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120ff.), even at a tenfold increased  $\text{O}_2$  demand ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74). The oxygen-deficient “venous” blood of the pulmonary artery is thus oxygenated (“arterialized”) and pumped back by the left heart to the periphery.

The **cardiac output (CO)** is the volume of blood pumped through the pulmonary and systemic circulation per unit time (5–6 L/min at rest). CO times the *arterial–venous  $\text{O}_2$  difference* ( $av\text{DO}_2$ )—i.e., the difference between the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  fraction in the aorta and in mixed venous blood of the right atrium (ca. 0.05 L of  $\text{O}_2$  per L of blood)—gives the  *$\text{O}_2$  volume transported per unit time from the lungs to the periphery*. At rest, it amounts to ( $6 \times 0.05 =$ ) 0.3 L/min, a value matching that of  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$  (see above). Inversely, if  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$  and  $av\text{DO}_2$  have been measured, CO can be calculated (**Fick’s principle**):

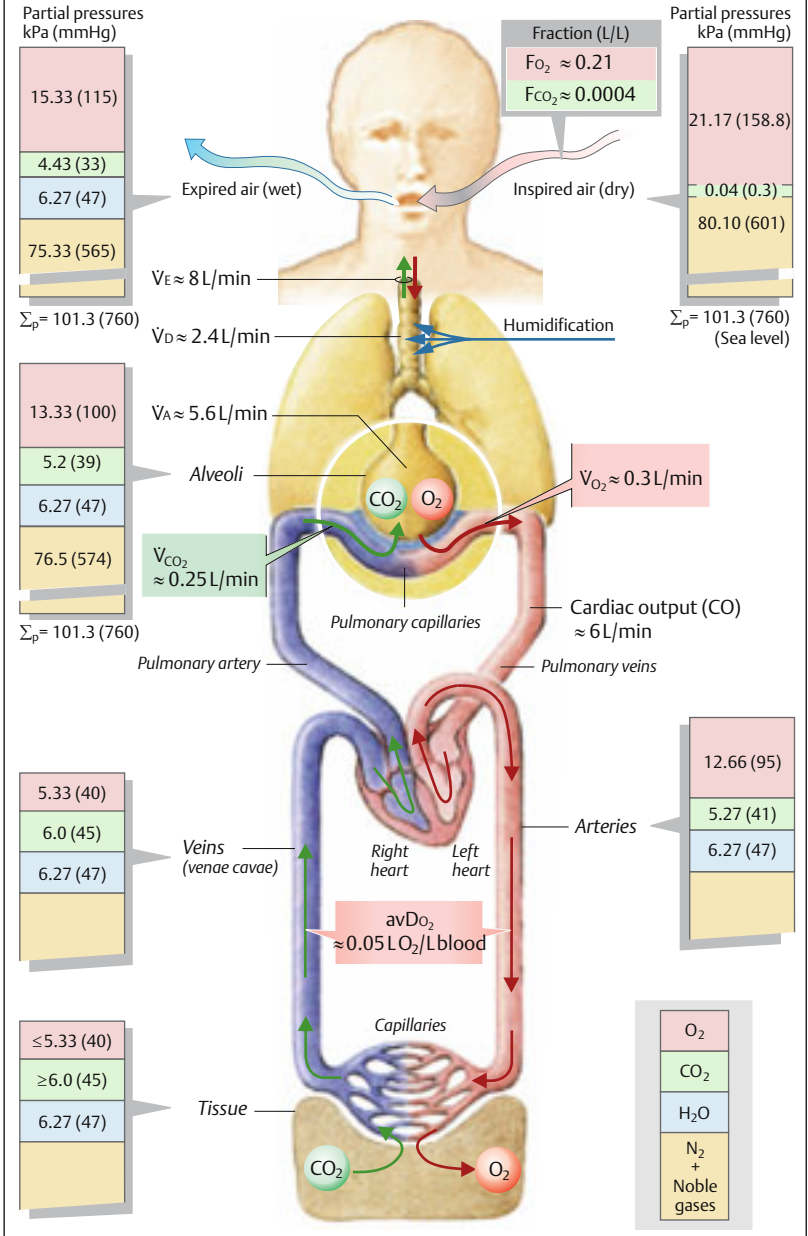
$$\text{CO} = \dot{V}_{\text{O}_2} / av\text{DO}_2 \quad [5.1]$$

The **stroke volume (SV)** is obtained by dividing CO by the heart rate (pulse rate).

According to **Dalton’s law**, the total pressure ( $P_{\text{total}}$ ) of a **mixture of gases** is the sum of the **partial pressures (P)** of the individual gases. The **volume fraction (F, in L/L;  $\rightarrow$  p. 382)** of the individual gas relative to the total volume times  $P_{\text{total}}$  gives the partial pressure—in the case of  $\text{O}_2$ , for example,  $P_{\text{O}_2} = F_{\text{O}_2} \times P_{\text{total}}$ . The atmospheric partial pressures in *dry* ambient air at sea level ( $P_{\text{total}} = 101.3 \text{ kPa} = 760 \text{ mmHg}$ ) are:  $F_{\text{O}_2} = 0.209$ ,  $F_{\text{CO}_2} = 0.0004$ , and  $F_{\text{N}_2 + \text{noble gases}} = 0.79$  ( $\rightarrow$  A, top right).

If the mixture of gases is “wet”, the **partial pressure of water,  $P_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$**  has to be subtracted from  $P_{\text{total}}$  (usually = atmospheric pressure). The other partial pressures will then be lower, since  $P_x = F_x (P_{\text{total}} - P_{\text{H}_2\text{O}})$ . When passing through the respiratory tract ( $37^\circ\text{C}$ ), inspired air is fully saturated with water. As a result,  $P_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$  rises to 6.27 kPa (47 mmHg), and  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  drops 1.32 kPa lower than the dry atmospheric air ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112). The partial pressures in the inspiratory air, alveoli, arteries, veins (mixed venous blood), tissues, and expiratory air (all “wet”) are listed in A.

**A. Gas transport**



**Pressure differences** between the alveoli and the environment are the *driving "forces"* for the exchange of gases that occurs during ventilation. **Alveolar pressure** ( $P_A$  = intrapulmonary pressure;  $\rightarrow B$ ) must be lower than the barometric pressure ( $P_B$ ) during **inspiration** (breathing in), and higher during **expiration** (breathing out). If the barometric pressure  $P_B$  is defined as zero, the alveolar pressure is negative during inspiration and positive during expiration ( $\rightarrow B$ ). These pressure differences are created through coordinated movement of the diaphragm and chest (thorax), resulting in an increase in lung volume ( $V_{pulm}$ ) during inspiration and a decrease during expiration ( $\rightarrow A1,2$ ).

The **inspiratory muscles** consist of the *diaphragm*, *scalene muscles*, and external intercostal muscles. Their contraction lowers (flattens) the diaphragm and raises and expands the chest, thus expanding the lungs. Inspiration is therefore *active*. The external intercostal muscles and accessory respiratory muscles are activated for deep breathing. During **expiration**, the diaphragm and other inspiratory muscles *relax*, thereby raising the diaphragm and lowering and reducing the volume of the chest and lungs. Since this action occurs primarily due to the intrinsic elastic recoil of the lungs ( $\rightarrow p. 116$ ), expiration is *passive* at rest. In deeper breathing, active mechanisms can also play a role in expiration: the *internal intercostal muscles* contract, and the diaphragm is pushed upward by *abdominal pressure* created by the muscles of the abdominal wall.

Two adjacent ribs are bound by internal and external intercostal muscle. Counteractivity of the muscles is due to variable leverage of the upper and lower rib ( $\rightarrow A3$ ). The distance separating the insertion of the external intercostal muscle on the upper rib (Y) from the axis of rotation of the upper rib (X) is smaller than the distance separating the insertion of the muscles on the lower rib (Z') and the axis of rotation of the lower rib (X'). Therefore, X'-Z' is longer and a more powerful lever than X-Y. The chest generally rises when the external intercostal muscles contract, and lowers when the opposing internal intercostal muscles contract ( $X-Y > X'-Z$ ).

To exploit the motion of the diaphragm and chest for ventilation, the lungs must be able to

follow this motion without being completely attached to the diaphragm and chest. This is achieved with the aid of the **pleura**, a thin fluid-covered sheet of cells that invests each lung (*visceral pleura*), thereby separating it from the adjacent organs, which are covered by the pleura as well (*parietal pleura*).

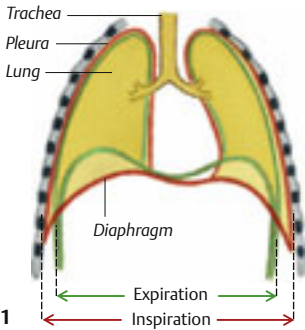
The lung has a tendency to shrink due to its *intrinsic elasticity* and *alveolar surface tension* ( $\rightarrow p. 118$ ). Since the fluid in the pleural space cannot expand, the lung sticks to the inner surface of the chest, resulting in suction (which still allows tangential movement of the two pleural sheets). **Pleural pressure** ( $P_{pl}$ ) is then negative with respect to atmospheric pressure.  $P_{pl}$ , also called *intrapleural* ( $P_{ip}$ ) or *intrathoracic* pressure, can be measured during breathing (dynamically) using an esophageal probe ( $\approx P_{pl}$ ). The intensity of suction (negative pressure) increases when the chest expands during inspiration, and decreases during expiration ( $\rightarrow B$ ).  $P_{pl}$  usually does not become positive unless there is very forceful expiration requiring the use of expiratory muscles.

The **transmural pressures** ( $P_{tm}$ ) of the **respiratory system** (internal pressure less external pressure) are calculated using  $P_A$ ,  $P_{pl}$  ( $\rightarrow B$ ) and the environmental pressure ( $P_{bar} = 0$ , see above):

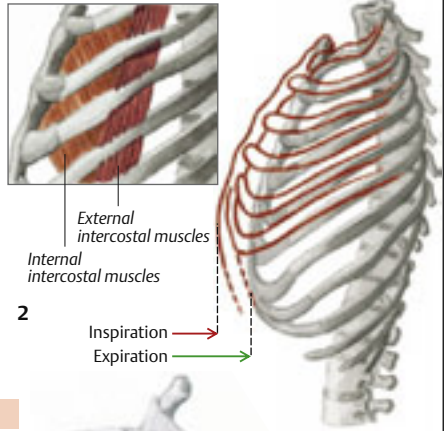
- $P_{tm}$  of Lungs:  $P_A - P_{pl} =$  transpulmonary pressure ( $\rightarrow B$ , bottom right)
- $P_{tm}$  of Thorax (with diaphragm):  $P_{pl} - 0 = P_{pl} =$  transthoracic pressure
- $P_{tm}$  of Lungs plus Thorax:  $P_A - 0 = P_A =$  transmural pressure of the whole respiratory system. Plotting the latter pressure ( $P_A$ ) against lung volume gives the resting pressure-volume curve of the respiratory system ( $\rightarrow p. 117 A$ ).

**Characterization of breathing activity.** The terms *hyperpnea* and *hypopnea* are used to describe abnormal increases or decreases in the depth and rate of respiratory movements. *Tachypnea* (too fast), *bradypnea* (too slow), and *apnea* (cessation of breathing) describe abnormal changes in the respiratory rate. The terms *hyperventilation* and *hypoventilation* imply that the volume of exhaled  $CO_2$  is larger or smaller, respectively, than the rate of  $CO_2$  production, and the arterial partial pressure of  $CO_2$  ( $P_{aco_2}$ ) decreases or rises accordingly ( $\rightarrow p. 142$ ). *Dyspnea* is used to describe difficult or labored breathing, and *orthopnea* occurs when breathing is difficult except in an upright position.

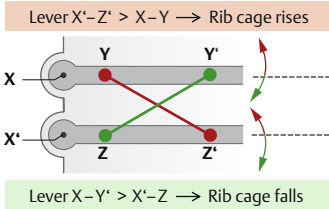
**A. Respiratory muscles**



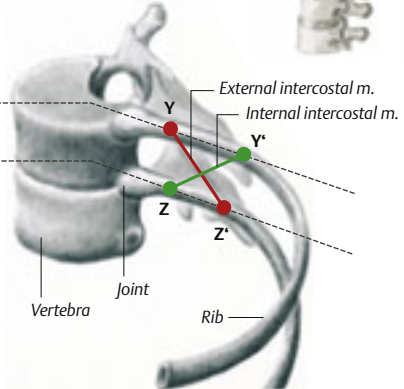
1



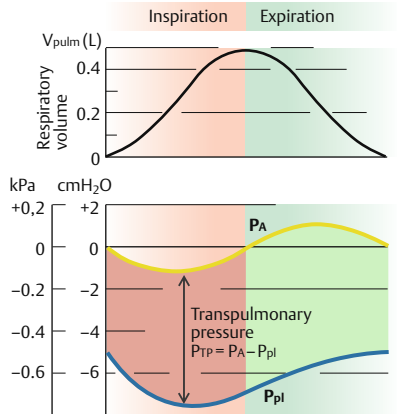
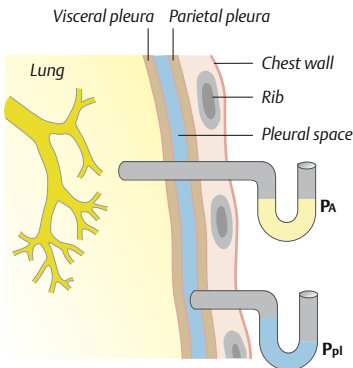
2



3



**B. Alveolar pressure  $P_A$  and pleural pressure  $P_{Pl}$  during respiration**



Inhaled foreign particles are trapped by **mucus** in the nose, throat, trachea, and bronchial tree. The entrapped particles are engulfed by *macrophages* and are driven back to the trachea by the *cilia* lining the bronchial epithelium. **Ciliary escalator:** The cilia move at a rate of  $5\text{--}10\text{ s}^{-1}$  and propel the mucus towards the mouth at a rate of 1 cm/min on a film of fluid secreted by the epithelium. Heavy smoking, cystic fibrosis (mucoviscidosis) can impair ciliary transport. A volume of 10–100 mL of mucus is produced each day, depending on the type and frequency of local irritation (e.g., smoke inhalation) and vagal stimulation. Mucus is usually swallowed, and the fluid fraction is absorbed in the gastrointestinal tract.

## Artificial Respiration

**Mouth-to-mouth resuscitation** is an emergency measure performed when someone stops breathing. The patient is placed flat on the back. While pinching the patient's nostrils shut, the aid-giver places his or her mouth on the patient's mouth and blows forcefully into the patient's lungs ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). This raises the alveolar pressure ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108) in the patient's lungs relative to the atmospheric pressure outside the chest and causes the lungs and chest to expand (inspiration). The rescuer then removes his or her mouth to allow the patient to exhale. Expulsion of the air blown into the lungs (expiration) occurs due to the intrinsic elastic recoil of the lungs and chest ( $\rightarrow$  p. 109 **A2**). This process can be accelerated by pressing down on the chest. The rescuer should ventilate the patient at a rate of about  $16\text{ min}^{-1}$ . The expiratory  $\text{O}_2$  fraction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 107 **A**) of the the rescuer is high enough to adequately oxygenate the patient's blood. The color change in the patient's skin from blue (cyanosis;  $\rightarrow$  p. 130) to pink indicates that a resuscitation attempt was successful.

**Mechanical ventilation.** Mechanical *intermittent positive pressure ventilation (IPPV)* works on the same principle. This technique is used when the respiratory muscles are paralyzed due to disease, anesthesia, etc. The pump of the respirator drives air into the patient's lung during inspiration ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). The external inspiratory and expiratory pathways are separated by a valve (close to the patient's mouth as possible) to prevent enlargement of dead space ( $\rightarrow$

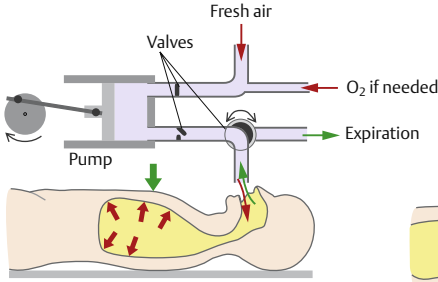
p. 114). Ventilation frequency, tidal volume, inspiratory flow, as well as duration of inspiration and expiration can be preselected at the respirator. The drawback of this type of ventilation is that venous return to the heart is impaired to some extent ( $\rightarrow$  p. 206). Today, the standard technique of mechanical respiration is *continuous positive pressure ventilation (CPPV)*. In contrast to IPPV, the *endexpiratory pressure* is kept *positive* (PEEP) in CPPV. In any case, all ventilated patients should be continuously monitored (expiratory gas fraction; blood gas composition, etc.).

The **iron lung** (Drinker respirator) makes use of *negative-pressure respiration* ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). The patient's body is enclosed from the neck down in a metal tank. To achieve inhalation, pressure in the tank is decreased to a level below normal ambient pressure and, thus, below alveolar pressure. This pressure difference causes the chest to expand (inspiratory phase), and the cessation of negative pressure in the tank allows the patient to breathe out (expiratory phase). This type of respirator is used to ventilate patients who require long-term mechanical ventilation due to paralytic diseases, such as polio.

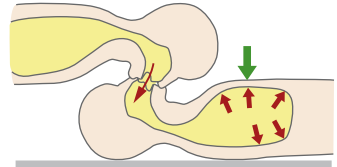
## Pneumothorax

Pneumothorax occurs when air enters the pleural space and  $P_{\text{pl}}$  falls to zero ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108), which can lead to collapse of the affected lung due to elastic recoil and respiratory failure ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). The contralateral lung is also impaired because a portion of the inspired air travels back and forth between the healthy and collapsed lung and is not available for gas exchange. *Closed pneumothorax*, i.e., the leakage of air from the alveolar space into the pleural space, can occur spontaneously (e.g., lung rupture due to bullous emphysema) or due to lung injury (e.g., during mechanical ventilation = barotrauma;  $\rightarrow$  p. 134). **Open pneumothorax** ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**) can be caused by an open chest wound or blunt chest trauma (e.g., penetration of the pleura by a broken rib). **Valvular pneumothorax** ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**) is a life-threatening form of pneumothorax that occurs when air enters the pleural space with every breath and can no longer be expelled. A flap of skin or similar at the trauma site acts like a valve. Positive pressure develops in the pleural space on the affected side, as well as in the rest of the thoracic cavity. Since the tidal volume increases due to hypoxia, high pressure levels ( $4\text{ kPa} = 30\text{ mmHg}$ ) quickly develop. This leads to increasing impairment of cardiac filling and compression of the healthy contralateral lung. Treatment of valvular pneumothorax consists of slow drainage of excess pressure and measures to prevent further valvular action.

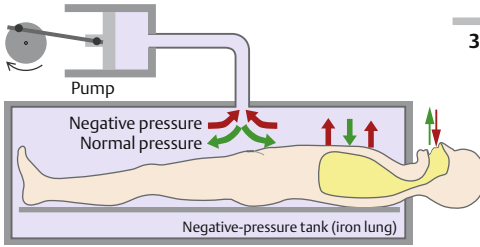
**A. Artificial respiration**



**1 Positive-pressure respiration**



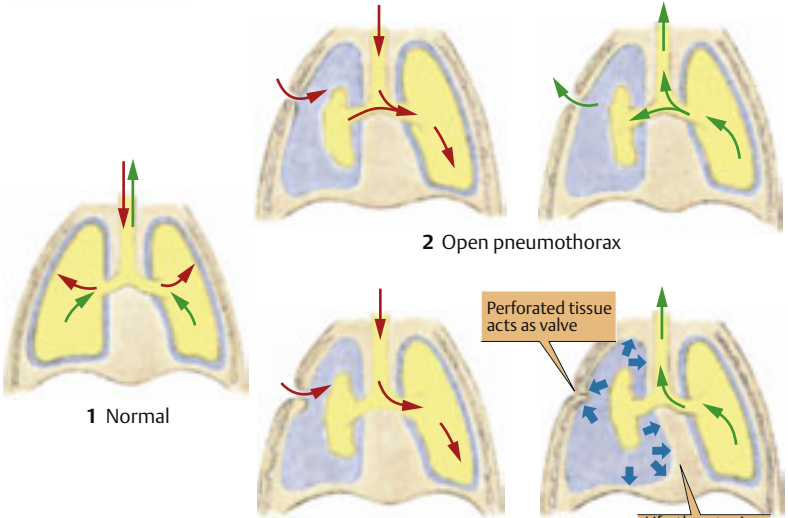
**3 Mouth-to-mouth resuscitation**



**2 Negative-pressure respiration**

Pressure	
	Inspiration
	Expiration
Gas flow	
	Inspiration
	Expiration

**B. Pneumothorax**



**1 Normal**

**2 Open pneumothorax**

**3 Valvular pneumothorax**

At the end of normal quiet expiration, the lung–chest system returns to its intrinsic **resting position**. About 0.5 L of air is taken in with each breath during normal quiet respiration; this is called the **resting tidal volume** ( $V_T$ ). Inspiration can be increased by another 3 L or so on forced (maximum) inspiration; this is called the **inspiratory reserve volume** (IRV). Likewise, expiration can be increased by about 1.7 L more on forced (maximum) expiration. This is called the **expiratory reserve volume** (ERV). These reserve volumes are used during strenuous physical exercise ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74) and in other situations where normal tidal volumes are insufficient. Even after forced expiration, about 1.3 L of air remains in the lungs; this is called the **residual volume** (RV). Lung capacities are sums of the individual lung volumes. The **vital capacity** (VC) is the maximum volume of air that can be moved in and out in a single breath. Therefore,  $VC = V_T + IRV + ERV$ . The average 20-year-old male with a height of 1.80 m has a VC of about 5.3 L. Vital capacity decreases and residual volume increases with age ( $1.5 \Rightarrow 3$  L). The **total lung capacity** is the sum of VC and RV—normally 6 to 7 L. The **functional residual capacity** is the sum of ERV and RV ( $\rightarrow$  A and p. 114). The **inspiratory capacity** is the sum of  $V_T$  and IRV. All numerical values of these volumes apply under body temperature–pressure saturation (BTPS) conditions (see below).

**Spirometry.** These lung volumes and capacities (except FRC, RV) can be measured by routine spirometry. The *spirometer* ( $\rightarrow$  A) consists usually of a water-filled tank with a bell-shaped floating device. A tube connects the air space within the spirometer ( $\rightarrow$  A) with the airways of the test subject. A counterweight is placed on the bell. The position of the bell indicates how much air is in the spirometer and is calibrated in volume units ( $L_{ATPS}$ ; see below). The bell on the spirometer rises when the test subject blows into the device (expiration), and falls during inspiration ( $\rightarrow$  A).

If the spirometer is equipped with a recording device (*spirograph*), it can be also used for graphic measurement of the total ventilation per unit time ( $\dot{V}_E$ ;  $\rightarrow$  pp. 106 and 118), compliance ( $\rightarrow$  p. 116),  $O_2$  consumption ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ), and in dynamic lung function tests ( $\rightarrow$  p. 118).

**Range of normal variation.** Lung volumes and capacities vary greatly according to age, height, physical constitution, sex, and degree of physical fitness. The range of normal variation of VC, for example, is 2.5 to 7 L. Empirical formulas were therefore developed to create normative values for better interpretation of lung function tests. For instance, the following formulas are used to calculate the range of normal values for VC in Caucasians:

$$\text{Men: } VC = 5.2 h - 0.022 a - 3.6 (\pm 0.58)$$

Women:  $VC = 5.2 h - 0.018 a - 4.36 (\pm 0.42)$ , where  $h$  = height (in meters) and  $a$  = age (in years); the standard deviation is given in parentheses. Because of the broad range of normal variation, patients with mild pulmonary disease may go undetected. Patients with lung disease should ideally be monitored by recording baseline values and observing changes over the course of time.

**Conversion of respiratory volumes.** The volume,  $V$ , of a gas (in L or  $m^3$ ;  $1 m^3 = 1000 L$ ) can be obtained from the amount,  $M$ , of the gas (in mol), absolute temperature,  $T$  (in K), and total pressure,  $P$  (in Pa), using the *ideal gas equation*:

$$V = M \cdot R \cdot T/P, \quad [5.2]$$

where  $P$  is barometric pressure ( $P_B$ ) minus water partial pressure ( $P_{H_2O}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 106) and  $R$  is the universal gas constant =  $8.31 J \cdot K^{-1} \cdot mol^{-1}$ .

#### Volume conditions

---

STPD: Standard temperature pressure dry  
(273 K, 101 kPa,  $P_{H_2O} = 0$ )

---

ATPS: Ambient temperature pressure  
H<sub>2</sub>O-saturated  
( $T_{amb}$ ,  $P_B$ ,  $P_{H_2O}$  at  $T_{amb}$ )

---

BTPS: Body temperature pressure-saturated  
(310 K,  $P_B$ ,  $P_{H_2O} = 6.25$  kPa)

---

It follows that:

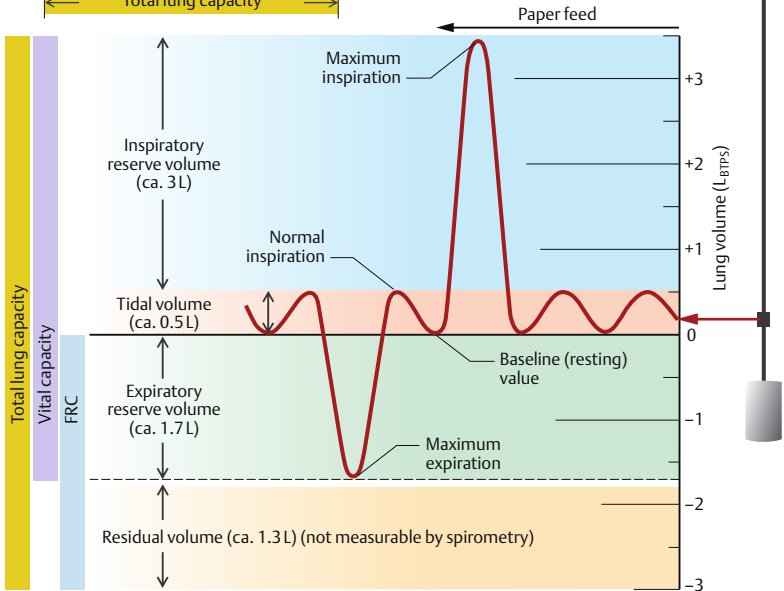
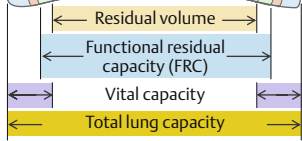
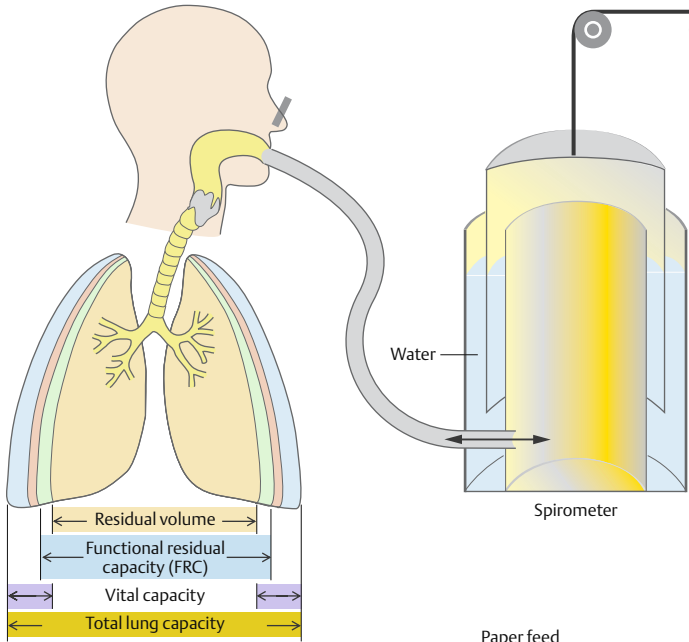
$$V_{STPD} = M \cdot R \cdot 273/101\,000 [m^3]$$

$$V_{ATPS} = M \cdot R \cdot T_{amb}/(P_B - P_{H_2O}) [m^3]$$

$$V_{BTPS} = M \cdot R \cdot 310/(P_B - 6250) [m^3].$$

Conversion factors are derived from the respective quotients ( $M \cdot R$  is a reducing factor). Example:  $V_{BTPS}/V_{STPD} = 1.17$ . If  $V_{ATPS}$  is measured by spirometry at room temperature ( $T_{amb} = 20^\circ C$ ;  $P_{H_2O_{sat}} = 2.3$  kPa) and  $P_B = 101$  kPa,  $V_{BTPS} \approx 1.1 V_{ATPS}$  and  $V_{STPD} \approx 0.9 V_{ATPS}$ .

A. Lung volumes and their measurement



The exchange of gases in the respiratory tract occurs in the alveoli. Only a portion of the tidal volume ( $V_T$ ) reaches the alveoli; this is known as the **alveolar part** ( $V_A$ ). The rest goes to dead space (not involved in gas exchange) and is therefore called **dead space volume** ( $V_D$ ). The oral, nasal, and pharyngeal cavities plus the trachea and bronchi are jointly known as *physiological dead space* or *conducting zone of the airways*. The physiological dead space (ca. 0.15 L) is approximately equal to the *functional dead space*, which becomes larger than physiological dead space when the exchange of gases fails to take place in a portion of the alveoli ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120). The **functions of dead space** are to conduct incoming air to the alveoli and to purify ( $\rightarrow$  p. 110), humidify, and warm inspired ambient air. Dead space is also an element of the vocal organ ( $\rightarrow$  p. 370).

The **Bohr equation** ( $\rightarrow$  A) can be used to estimate the dead space.

*Derivation:* The expired tidal volume  $V_T$  is equal to the sum of its alveolar part  $V_A$  plus dead space  $V_D$  ( $\rightarrow$  A, top). Each of these three variables has a characteristic  $\text{CO}_2$  fraction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 382):  $F_{\text{ECO}_2}$  in  $V_T$ ,  $F_{\text{ACO}_2}$  in  $V_A$ , and  $F_{\text{ICO}_2}$  in  $V_D$ .  $F_{\text{ICO}_2}$  is extremely small and therefore negligible. The product of each of the three volumes and its corresponding  $\text{CO}_2$  fraction gives the volume of  $\text{CO}_2$  for each. The  $\text{CO}_2$  volume in the expired air ( $V_T \cdot F_{\text{ECO}_2}$ ) equals the sum of the  $\text{CO}_2$  volumes in its two components, i.e. in  $V_A$  and  $V_D$  ( $\rightarrow$  A).

Thus,  $V_T$ ,  $F_{\text{ECO}_2}$  and  $F_{\text{ACO}_2}$  must be known to **determine the dead space**.  $V_T$  can be measured using a spirometer, and  $F_{\text{ECO}_2}$  and  $F_{\text{ACO}_2}$  can be measured using a Bunte glass burette or an infrared absorption spectrometer.  $F_{\text{ACO}_2}$  is present in the last expired portion of  $V_T$ —i.e., in *alveolar gas*. This value can be measured using a Rahn valve or similar device.

The **functional residual capacity** (FRC) is the amount of air remaining in the lungs at the end of normal quiet expiration, and the **residual volume** (RV) is the amount present after forced maximum expiration ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112). About 0.35 L of air ( $V_A$ ) reaches the alveolar space with each breath during normal quiet respiration. Therefore, only about 12% of the 3 L total FRC is renewed at rest. The composition of gases in the alveolar space therefore remains relatively constant.

**Measurement of FRC and RV** cannot be performed by spirometry. This must be done using

indirect techniques such as **helium dilution** ( $\rightarrow$  B). Helium (He) is a poorly soluble inert gas. The test subject is instructed to repeatedly inhale and exhale a known volume ( $V_{\text{Sp}}$ ) of a helium-containing gas mixture (e.g.,  $F_{\text{He}_0} = 0.1$ ) out of and into a spirometer. The helium distributes evenly in the lungs ( $V_L$ ) and spirometer ( $\rightarrow$  B) and is thereby diluted ( $F_{\text{He}_x} < F_{\text{He}_0}$ ). Since the total helium volume does not change, the known initial helium volume ( $V_{\text{Sp}} \cdot F_{\text{He}_0}$ ) is equal to the final helium volume ( $(V_{\text{Sp}} + V_L) \cdot F_{\text{He}_x}$ .  $V_L$  can be determined once  $F_{\text{He}_x}$  in the spirometer has been measured at the end of the test ( $\rightarrow$  B).  $V_L$  will be equivalent to RV if the test was started after a forced expiration, and will be equivalent to FRC if the test was started after normal expiration, i.e. from the resting position of lung and chest. The helium dilution method measures gases in *ventilated* airways only.

**Body plethysmography** can also detect gases in encapsulated spaces (e.g., cysts) in the lung. The test subject is placed in an airtight chamber and instructed to breathe through a *pneumotachygraph* (instrument for recording the flow rate of respired air). At the same time, respiration-dependent changes in air pressure in the subject's mouth and in the chamber are continuously recorded. FRC and RV can be derived from these measurements.

Such measurements can also be used to determine **airway resistance**,  $R_L$ , which is defined as the *driving pressure gradient* between the alveoli and the atmosphere *divided by the air flow per unit time*. Airway resistance is very low under normal conditions, especially during inspiration when (a) the lungs become more expanded (*lateral traction* of the airways), and (b) the *transpulmonary pressure* ( $P_A - P_{\text{pl}}$ ) rises ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108).  $P_A - P_{\text{pl}}$  represents the transmural pressure of the airways and widens them more and more as it increases. Airway resistance may become too high when the airway is narrowed by mucus—e.g., in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, or when its smooth muscle contracts, e.g. in asthma ( $\rightarrow$  p.118).

The **RV fraction of the total lung capacity** (TLC) is clinically significant ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112). It normally is  $\leq 0.25$  and somewhat higher in old age. It can rise to  $> 0.55$  when pathological enlargement of the alveoli has occurred (e.g. in *emphysema*). The RV/TLC fraction is therefore a rough measure of the severity of such diseases.

**A. Measurement of dead space**

The diagram illustrates the measurement of dead space. It shows a human profile with the respiratory system highlighted. The process involves the mixing of alveolar gas (FA<sub>CO2</sub>) and dead space gas (FI<sub>CO2</sub>) to produce expired air (FE<sub>CO2</sub>). The alveolar volume is VA and the dead space volume is VD. The total tidal volume is VT. The resulting expired air volume is VT.

Alveolar part of tidal volume  $V_A$   $F_{A_{CO_2}}$  Dead space volume  $V_D$   $F_{I_{CO_2}}$  Mixing Tidal volume  $V_T$   $F_{E_{CO_2}}$

Alveolar CO<sub>2</sub> volume + Dead space CO<sub>2</sub> volume = CO<sub>2</sub> volume in expired air

$V_A \cdot F_{A_{CO_2}} + V_D \cdot F_{I_{CO_2}} = V_T \cdot F_{E_{CO_2}}$

Insert values  $V_A = V_T - V_D$   $F_{I_{CO_2}} = 0$

**Bohr equation**

$$\text{Dead space } V_D = \frac{V_T (F_{A_{CO_2}} - F_{E_{CO_2}})}{F_{A_{CO_2}}}$$

Using normal values:

$$V_D = \frac{0.5 (0.056 - 0.040)}{0.056}$$

Dead space  $V_D = 143 \text{ mL}$

**B. Measurement of residual volume and functional residual capacity**

The diagram illustrates the measurement of residual volume (VL) using helium dilution. A spirometer containing a known volume of helium (V<sub>Sp</sub>) and a known fraction of helium (F<sub>He0</sub>) is connected to the lungs. The helium gas mixes with the gas in the lungs (VL). The final mixture has a total volume (V<sub>Sp</sub> + VL) and a new fraction of helium (F<sub>Hex</sub>).

Helium volume (in spirometer only) = Helium volume (in lung and spirometer)

$V_{Sp} \cdot F_{He_0} = (V_{Sp} + V_L) \cdot F_{Hex}$

$V_L = V_{Sp} \cdot \frac{F_{He_0} - F_{Hex}}{F_{Hex}}$

$V_{Sp}$  and  $F_{He_0}$  are known  
 $F_{Hex}$ : Measurement

**Respiratory resting position (RRP)** is the position to which the lung–chest system returns at the end of normal quiet expiration; this lung volume equals the functional residual capacity (FRC,  $\rightarrow$  p. 114). Its value is set at zero ( $V_{\text{pulm}} = 0$ ) in **A–C**. RRP ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) is a stable central position characterized by the reciprocal cancellation of two passive forces: chest expansion force (CEF) and lung contraction force (LCF). As we breathe in and out, the lung–chest system makes excursions from RRP; thus,  $\text{LCF} > \text{CEF}$  during inspiration, and  $\text{CEF} > \text{LCF}$  during expiration. The difference between LCF and CEF, i.e. the net force ( $\rightarrow$  blue arrows in **A2, 3, 5, 6**), is equal to the **alveolar pressure** ( $P_A \rightarrow$  p. 108) if the airway is closed (e.g., by turning a stopcock, as in **A1–3, 5, 6**) after a known air volume has been inhaled ( $V_{\text{pulm}} > 0$ ,  $\rightarrow$  **A2**) from a spirometer or expelled into it ( $V_{\text{pulm}} < 0$ ,  $\rightarrow$  **A3**). (In the RRP,  $\text{CEF} = \text{LCF}$ , and  $P_A = 0$ ). Therefore, the relationship between  $V_{\text{pulm}}$  and  $P_A$  in the lung–chest system can be determined as illustrated by the **static resting pressure–volume (PV) curve** ( $\rightarrow$  blue curve in **A–C**; see also p. 108) (“static” = measured while holding the breath; “resting” = with the respiratory muscles relaxed).

(Compression and expansion of  $V_{\text{pulm}}$  by a positive or negative  $P_A$  during measurement has to be taken into account;  $\rightarrow$  **A**, dark-gray areas).

The **slope** of the static resting PV curve,  $\Delta V_{\text{pulm}} / \Delta P_A$ , represents the (static) **compliance of the lung–chest system** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). The steepest part of the curve (range of greatest compliance; ca. 1 L/kPa in an adult) lies between RRP and  $V_{\text{pulm}} = 1$  L. This is in the normal respiratory range. The curve loses its steepness, i.e. compliance decreases, in old age or in the presence of lung disease. As a result, greater effort is needed to breathe the same tidal volume.

The above statements apply to lung-and-chest compliance. It is also possible to calculate compliance for the *chest wall alone* ( $\Delta V_A / \Delta P_{\text{pl}} = 2$  L/kPa) or for the *lung alone* ( $\Delta V_A / \Delta [P_A - P_{\text{pl}}] = 2$  L/kPa) when the pleural pressure ( $P_{\text{pl}}$ ) is known ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108).

PV relationships can also be plotted during maximum expiratory and inspiratory effort to determine the **peak expiratory and inspiratory pressures** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, red and green curves). Only a very small pressure can be generated from a

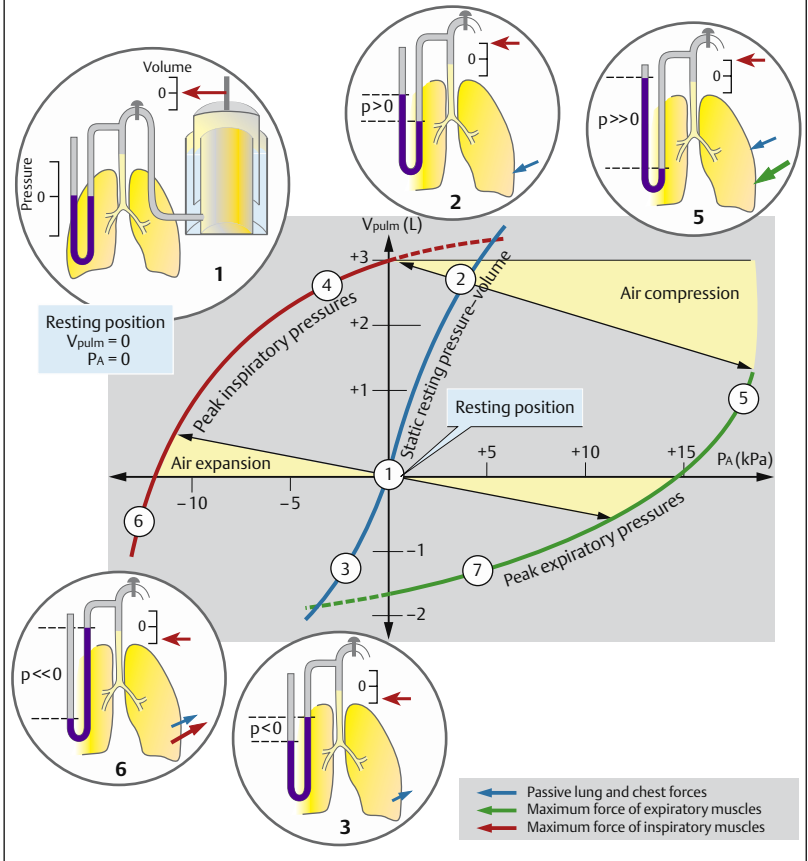
position of near-maximum expiration ( $V_{\text{pulm}} \ll 0$ ;  $\rightarrow$  **A7**) compared to a peak pressure of about 15 kPa ( $\approx 110$  mmHg) at  $V_{\text{pulm}} \gg 0$  (Valsalva’s maneuver;  $\rightarrow$  **A5**). Likewise, the greatest negative pressure (suction) (ca.  $-10$  kPa = 75 mmHg) can be generated from a position of maximum expiration (Müller’s maneuver;  $\rightarrow$  **A6**), but not from an inspiratory position ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**).

A **dynamic PV curve** is obtained *during* respiration ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). The result is a loop consisting of the opposing inspiratory (red) and expiratory (green) curves transected by the resting curve (blue) because airway flow resistance ( $R_L$ ) must be overcome (mainly in the upper and middle airways) while inhaling in the one direction and exhaling in the other. The **driving pressure gradients** ( $\Delta P$ ) also oppose each other (inspiratory  $P_A < 0$ ; expiratory  $P_A > 0$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 109 B). As in Ohm’s law,  $\Delta P = R_L \cdot \text{respiratory flow rate } (\dot{V})$ . Therefore,  $\Delta P$  must increase if the bronchial tubes narrow and/or if the respiratory flow rate increases ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).

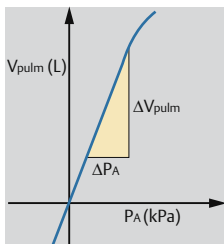
In **asthma**, the airway radius ( $r$ ) decreases and a very high  $\Delta P$  is needed for normal ventilation ( $R_L \sim 1/r^4$ !). During expiration, a high  $\Delta P$  decreases the **transpulmonary pressure** ( $= P_A - P_{\text{pl}}$ ) and thereby squeezes the airways ( $R_L \uparrow$ ). The high  $R_L$  results in a pressure decrease along the expiratory airway ( $P_{\text{airway}} \downarrow$ ) until  $P_{\text{airway}} - P_{\text{pl}} < 0$ . At this point, the airway will collapse. This is called **dynamic airway compression**, which often results in a life-threatening vicious cycle:  $r \downarrow \leftrightarrow \Delta P \uparrow \leftrightarrow r \downarrow \downarrow \leftrightarrow \Delta P \uparrow \uparrow \dots$

**Respiratory work.** The colored areas within the loop ( $A_{R_{\text{insp}}}$  and  $A_{R_{\text{exp}}}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  **C**) represent the inspiratory and expiratory PV work ( $\rightarrow$  p. 380) exerted to overcome flow resistance. The cross-hatched area ( $\rightarrow$  **C**) is the work required to overcome the intrinsic elastic force of the lungs and chest ( $A_{\text{elast}}$ ). **Inspiratory work** is defined as  $A_{R_{\text{insp}}} + A_{\text{elast}}$ . The inspiratory muscles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108) must overcome the elastic force, whereas the same elastic force provides the (passive) driving force for expiration at rest (sign reverses for  $A_{\text{elast}}$ ). Thus, **expiratory work** is  $A_{R_{\text{exp}}} - A_{\text{elast}}$ . Expiration can also require muscle energy if  $A_{R_{\text{exp}}}$  becomes larger than  $A_{\text{elast}}$ —e.g., during forced respiration or if  $R_L$  is elevated.

**A. Pressure–volume relationships of the lung–chest system**

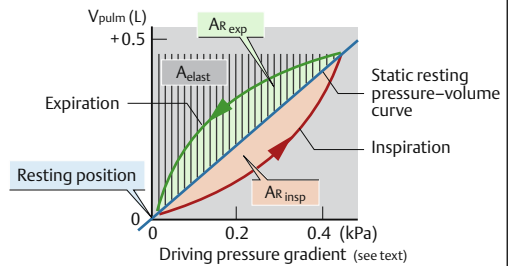


**B. Static compliance**



$$\frac{\Delta V_{pulm}}{\Delta P_A} = \text{Compliance of lung–chest system}$$

**C. Dynamic pressure–volume curve**



Respiratory work

Inspiration:  $AR_{insp} + A_{elast}$   
 Expiration:  $AR_{exp} - A_{elast}$

Surface tension is the main factor that determines the *compliance* of the lung-chest system ( $\rightarrow$  p. 116) and develops at gas-liquid interfaces or, in the case of the lungs, on the *gas exchange surface of the alveoli* (ca.  $100 \text{ m}^2$ ).

The effectiveness of these forces can be demonstrated by filling an isolated and completely collapsed lung with (a) air or (b) liquid. In example (a), the lung exerts a much higher resistance, especially at the beginning of the filling phase. This represents the **opening pressure**, which raises the alveolar pressure ( $P_A$ ) to about 2 kPa or 15 mmHg when the total lung capacity is reached ( $\rightarrow$  p. 113 A). In example (b), the resistance and therefore  $P_A$  is only one-fourth as large. Accordingly, the larger pressure requirement in example (a) is required to overcome surface tension.

If a *gas bubble* with radius  $r$  is surrounded by liquid, the surface tension  $\gamma$  ( $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1}$ ) raises the pressure inside the bubble relative to the outside pressure (transmural pressure  $\Delta P > 0$ ). According to *Laplace's law* (cf. p. 190):

$$\Delta P = 2\gamma/r \text{ (Pa)}. \quad [5.3]$$

Since  $\gamma$  normally remains constant for the respective liquid (e.g., plasma:  $10^{-3} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1}$ ),  $\Delta P$  becomes larger and larger as  $r$  decreases.

**Soap bubble model.** If a flat soap bubble is positioned on the opening of a cylinder,  $r$  will be relatively large ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) and  $\Delta P$  small. (Since two air-liquid interfaces have to be considered in this case, Eq. 5.3 yields  $\Delta P = 4\gamma/r$ ). For the bubble volume to expand,  $r$  must initially decrease and  $\Delta P$  must increase ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Hence, a relatively high “opening pressure” is required. As the bubble further expands,  $r$  increases again ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**) and the pressure requirement/volume expansion ratio decreases. The alveoli work in a similar fashion. This model demonstrates that, in the case of two alveoli connected with each other ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**), the smaller one ( $\Delta P_2$  high) would normally become even smaller while the larger one ( $\Delta P_1$  low) becomes larger due to pressure equalization.

**Surfactant (surface-active agent)** lining the inner alveolar surface prevents this problem by lowering  $\gamma$  in smaller alveoli more potently than in larger alveoli. Surfactant is a mixture of proteins and phospholipids (chiefly dipalmitoyl lecithin) secreted by alveolar type II cells.

*Respiratory distress syndrome of the newborn*, a serious pulmonary gas exchange disorder, is caused by failure of the immature lung to produce sufficient quantities of surfactant. Lung damage related to  $\text{O}_2$  toxicity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 136) is also partly due to oxidative destruction of surfactant, leading to reduced compliance. This can ultimately result in alveolar collapse (*atelectasis*) and pulmonary edema.

## Dynamic Lung Function Tests

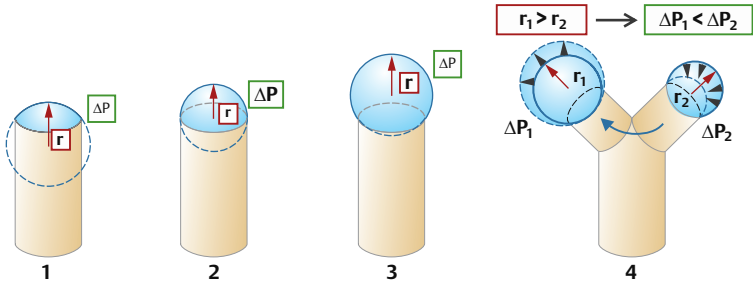
The **maximum breathing capacity** (MBC) is the greatest volume of gas that can be breathed (for 10 s) by voluntarily increasing the tidal volume and respiratory rate ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). The MBC normally ranges from 120 to 170 L/min. This capacity can be useful for monitoring diseases affecting the respiratory muscles, e.g., myasthenia gravis.

The **forced expiratory volume** (FEV or Tiffeneau test) is the maximum volume of gas that can be expelled from the lungs. In clinical medicine, FEV in the first second (FEV<sub>1</sub>) is routinely measured. When its absolute value is related to the *forced vital capacity* (FVC), the *relative FEV<sub>1</sub>* (normally  $> 0.7$ ) is obtained. (FVC is the maximum volume of gas that can be expelled from the lungs as quickly and as forcefully as possible from a position of full inspiration;  $\rightarrow$  **C**). It is often slightly lower than the vital capacity VC ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112). **Maximum expiratory flow**, which is measured using a pneumotachygraph during FVC measurement, is around 10 L/s.

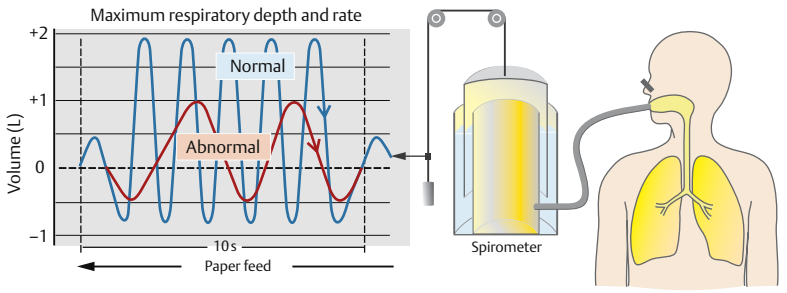
Dynamic lung function tests are useful for distinguishing *restrictive lung disease* (RLD) from *obstructive lung disease* (OLD). RLD is characterized by a functional reduction of lung volume, as in pulmonary edema, pneumonia and impaired lung inflation due to spinal curvature, whereas OLD is characterized by physical narrowing of the airways, as in asthma, bronchitis, emphysema, and vocal cord paralysis ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**).

As with VC ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112), empirical formulas are also used to standardize FVC for age, height and sex.

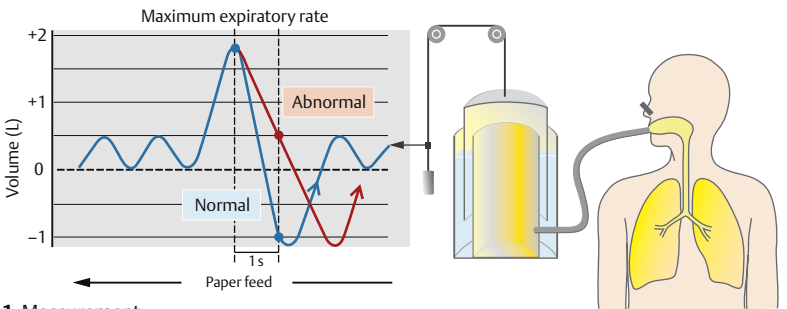
**A. Surface tension (soap bubble model)**



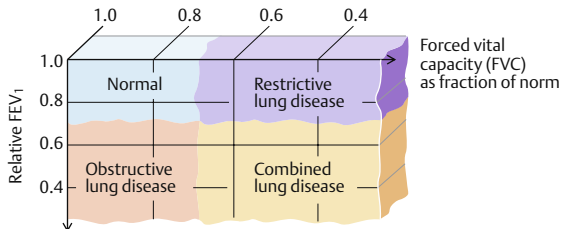
**B. Maximum breathing capacity (MBC)**



**C. Forced expired volume in first second (FEV<sub>1</sub>)**



**1 Measurement**



**2 Clinical significance**

**Alveolar ventilation.** Only the alveolar part ( $V_A$ ) of the tidal volume ( $V_T$ ) reaches the alveoli. The rest stays in the dead space ( $V_D$ ). It follows that  $V_A = V_T - V_D$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 114). Multiplying these volumes by the *respiratory rate* ( $f$  in  $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) results in the respective ventilation, i.e.,  $\dot{V}_A$ ,  $\dot{V}_E$  (or  $\dot{V}_T$ ), and  $\dot{V}_D$ . Thus,  $\dot{V}_A = \dot{V}_E - \dot{V}_D$  ( $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ). Since  $V_D$  is anatomically determined,  $\dot{V}_D (= V_D \cdot f)$  rises with  $f$ . If, at a given total ventilation ( $\dot{V}_E = V_T \cdot f$ ), the breathing becomes more frequent ( $f \uparrow$ ) yet more shallow ( $V_T \downarrow$ ),  $\dot{V}_A$  will decrease because  $\dot{V}_D$  increases.

*Example:* At a  $\dot{V}_E$  of  $8 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ , a  $V_D$  of  $0.15 \text{ L}$  and a normal respiratory rate  $f$  of  $16 \text{ min}^{-1}$   $\dot{V}_A = 5.6 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$  or 70% of  $\dot{V}_E$ . When  $f$  is doubled and  $V_T$  drops to one-half,  $\dot{V}_A$  drops to  $3.2 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$  or 40% of  $V_T$ , although  $\dot{V}_E$  ( $8 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ) remains unchanged.

Alveolar gas exchange can therefore decrease due to flat breathing and panting (e.g., due to a painful rib fracture) or due to pathologic ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**, **3**) or artificial enlargement of  $V_D$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 134).

**O<sub>2</sub> consumption** ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ) is calculated as the *difference between the inspired O<sub>2</sub> volume/time* ( $= \dot{V}_E \cdot F_{I_{O_2}}$ ), and the *expired O<sub>2</sub> volume/time* ( $= \dot{V}_E \cdot F_{E_{O_2}}$ ). Therefore,  $\dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{V}_E (F_{I_{O_2}} - F_{E_{O_2}})$ . At rest,  $\dot{V}_{O_2} \approx 8 (0.21 - 0.17) = 0.32 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ .

The **eliminated CO<sub>2</sub> volume** ( $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ ) is calculated as  $\dot{V}_E \cdot F_{E_{CO_2}}$  ( $\approx 0.26 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$  at rest;  $F_{I_{CO_2}} \approx 0$ ).  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  and  $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$  increase about tenfold during strenuous physical work ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74). The  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  to  $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$  ratio is called the **respiratory quotient (RQ)**, which depends on a person's nutritional state. RQ ranges from 0.7 to 1.0 ( $\rightarrow$  p. 230).

The **exchange of gases** between the alveoli and the blood occurs by **diffusion**, as described by Fick's law of diffusion ( $\rightarrow$  Eq. 1.7, p. 22.). The driving "force" for this diffusion is provided by the *partial pressure differences* between alveolar space and erythrocytes in pulmonary capillary blood ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). The mean alveolar partial pressure of O<sub>2</sub> ( $P_{A_{O_2}}$ ) is about 13.3 kPa (100 mmHg) and that of CO<sub>2</sub> ( $P_{A_{CO_2}}$ ) is about 5.3 kPa (40 mmHg). The mean partial pressures in the "venous" blood of the pulmonary artery are approx. 5.3 kPa (40 mmHg) for O<sub>2</sub> ( $P_{V_{O_2}}$ ) and approx. 6.1 kPa (46 mmHg) for CO<sub>2</sub> ( $P_{V_{CO_2}}$ ). Hence, the mean **partial pressure difference** between alveolus and capillary is about 8 kPa (60 mmHg) for O<sub>2</sub> and about

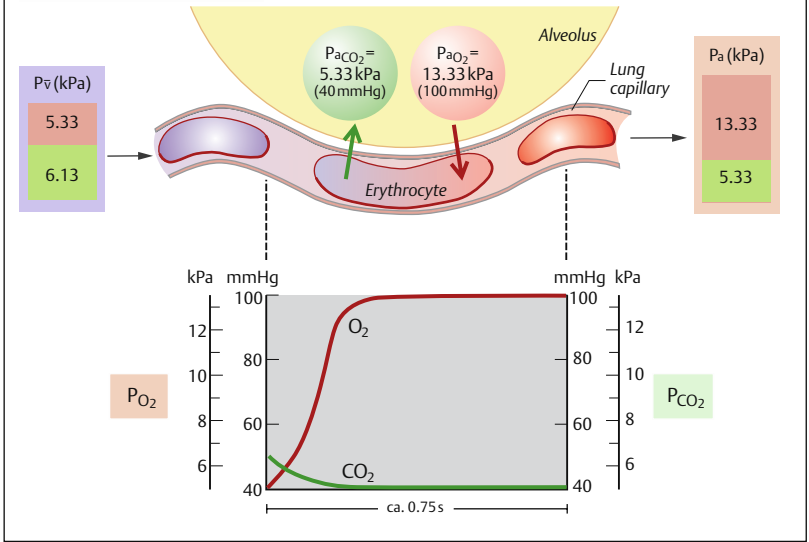
0.8 kPa (6 mmHg) for CO<sub>2</sub>, although regional variation occurs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 122).  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  will rise when  $P_{A_{CO_2}}$  falls (e.g., due to hyperventilation) and vice versa ( $\rightarrow$  alveolar gas equation, p. 136).

O<sub>2</sub> diffuses about 1–2  $\mu\text{m}$  from alveolus to bloodstream (**diffusion distance**). Under normal resting conditions, the blood in the pulmonary capillary is in contact with the alveolus for about 0.75 s. This **contact time** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) is long enough for the blood to equilibrate with the partial pressure of alveolar gases. The capillary blood is then *arterialized*.  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  in arterialized blood ( $P_{a_{O_2}}$  and  $P_{a_{CO_2}}$ ) are about the same as the corresponding mean alveolar pressures ( $P_{A_{O_2}}$  and  $P_{A_{CO_2}}$ ). However, venous blood enters the arterialized blood through arteriovenous shunts in the lung and from bronchial and thebesian veins ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). This *extra-alveolar shunt* as well as *ventilation-perfusion inequality* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 122) make the  $P_{a_{O_2}}$  decrease from 13.3 kPa (after alveolar passage) to about 12.0 kPa (90 mmHg) in the aorta ( $P_{a_{CO_2}}$  increases slightly;  $\rightarrow$  **A** and p. 107).

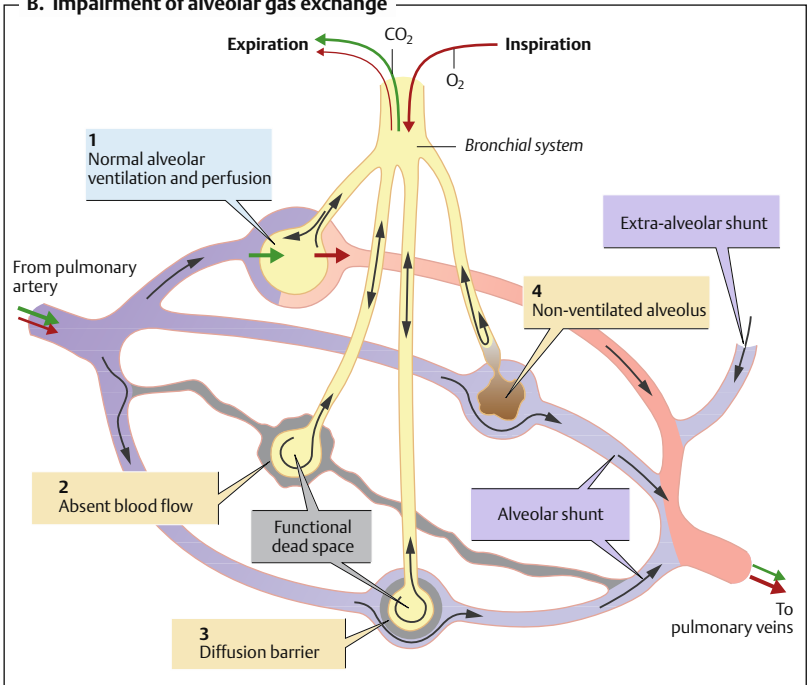
The small pressure difference of about 0.8 kPa is large enough for alveolar CO<sub>2</sub> exchange, since Krogh's diffusion coefficient  $K$  for CO<sub>2</sub> ( $K_{CO_2} \approx 2.5 \cdot 10^{-16} \text{ m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{Pa}^{-1}$  in tissue) is 23 times larger than that for O<sub>2</sub> ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22). Thus, CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses much more rapidly than O<sub>2</sub>. During physical work (high cardiac output), the contact time falls to a third of the resting value. If diffusion is impaired (see below), alveolar equilibration of O<sub>2</sub> partial pressure is less likely to occur during physical exercise than at rest.

**Impairment of alveolar gas exchange** can occur for several reasons: (a) when the blood flow rate along the alveolar capillaries decreases (e.g., due to *pulmonary infarction*;  $\rightarrow$  **B2**), (b) if a *diffusion barrier exists* (e.g., due to a thickened alveolar wall, as in pulmonary edema;  $\rightarrow$  **B3**), and (c) if *alveolar ventilation is reduced* (e.g., due to bronchial obstruction;  $\rightarrow$  **B4**). Cases **B2** and **B3** lead to an *increase in functional dead space* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 114); cases **B3** and **B4** lead to inadequate arterialization of the blood (*alveolar shunt*, i.e. non-arterialized blood mixing towards arterial blood). Gradual impairments of type **B2** and **B4** can occur even in healthy individuals ( $\rightarrow$  p. 122).

**A. Alveolar gas exchange**



**B. Impairment of alveolar gas exchange**



Neglecting the slight amount of blood that reaches the lungs via the bronchial arteries, the mean **pulmonary perfusion** ( $\dot{Q}$ ), or blood flow to the lungs, is equal to the cardiac output (CO = 5–6 L/min). The **pulmonary arterial pressure** is about 25 mmHg in systole and 8 mmHg in diastole, with a mean ( $\bar{P}$ ) of about 15 mmHg.  $\bar{P}$  decreases to about 12 mmHg ( $P_{\text{precap}}$ ) in the precapillary region (up to the origin of the pulmonary capillaries) and about 8 mmHg in the postcapillary region ( $P_{\text{postcap}}$ ). These values apply to the areas of the lung located at the level of the pulmonary valve.

**Uneven distribution of blood flow within the lung** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Due to the additive effect of hydrostatic pressure (up to 12 mmHg),  $P_{\text{precap}}$  increases in blood vessels below the pulmonary valves (near the base of the lung) when the chest is positioned upright. Near the apex of the lung,  $P_{\text{precap}}$  decreases in vessels above the pulmonary valve ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, zone 1). Under these conditions,  $P_{\text{precap}}$  can even drop to subatmospheric levels, and the mean alveolar pressure ( $P_A$ ) is atmospheric and can therefore cause extensive capillary compression ( $P_A > P_{\text{precap}} > P_{\text{postcap}}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  **A**).  $\dot{Q}$  per unit of lung volume is therefore very small. In the central parts of the lung ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, zone 2), luminal narrowing of capillaries can occur at their venous end, at least temporarily ( $P_{\text{precap}} > P_A > P_{\text{postcap}}$ ), while the area near the base of the lung ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, zone 3) is continuously supplied with blood ( $P_{\text{precap}} > P_{\text{postcap}} > P_A$ ).  $\dot{Q}$  per unit of lung volume therefore decreases from the apex of the lung to the base ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, **B**, red line).

**Uneven distribution of alveolar ventilation.** Alveolar ventilation ( $\dot{V}_A$ ) per unit of lung volume also increases from the apex to the base of the lungs due to the effects of gravity ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, orange line), although not as much as  $\dot{Q}$ . Therefore, the  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  ratio decreases from the apex to the base of the lung ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, green curve and top scale).

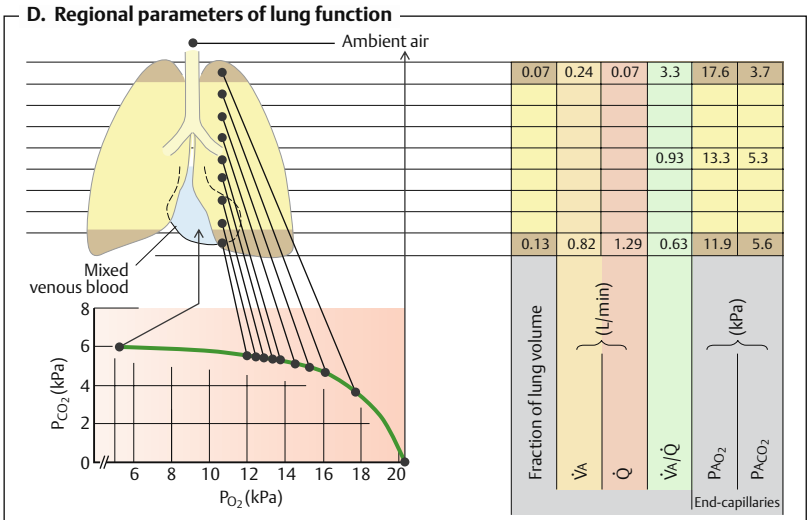
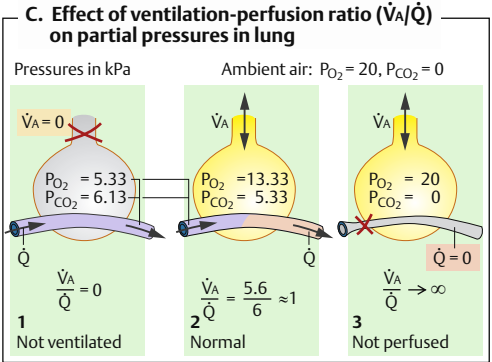
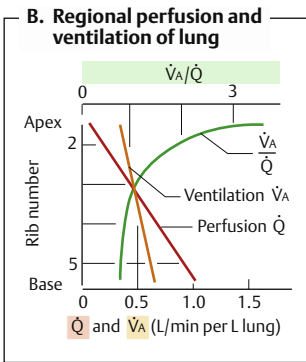
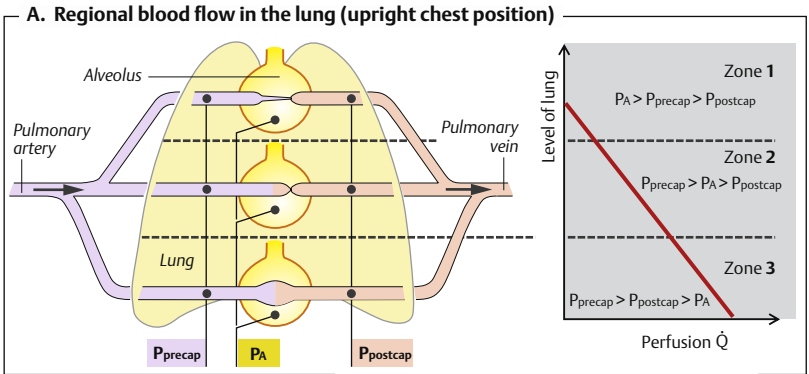
**$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  imbalance.** The mean  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  for the entire lung is 0.93 ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**). This value is calculated from the mean alveolar ventilation  $\dot{V}_A$  (ca. 5.6 L/min) and total perfusion  $\dot{Q}$  (ca. 6 L/min), which is equal to the cardiac output (CO). Under extreme conditions in which one part of the lung is not ventilated at all,  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q} = 0$  ( $\rightarrow$  **C1**). In the other extreme in which blood flow is absent ( $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  approaches infinity;  $\rightarrow$  **C3**), fresh air conditions will prevail in the alveoli (functional dead space;  $\rightarrow$  p. 120). Therefore,  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  can vary tremendously—theoretically, from 0 to  $\infty$ . In this range, the  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  will fluctuate between mixed venous  $P_{\bar{V}_{O_2}}$  and  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  of

(humidified) fresh air ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). In a healthy upright lung,  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  decreases greatly (from 3.3 to 0.63) from apex to base at rest ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, green line);  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  ( $P_{A_{CO_2}}$ ) is therefore 17.6 (3.7) kPa in the “hyperventilated” lung apex, 13.3 (5.3) kPa in the normally ventilated central zone, and 11.9 (5.6) kPa in the “hypoventilated” lung base. These changes are less pronounced during physical exercise because  $\dot{Q}$  also increases in zone 1 due to the corresponding increase in  $P_{\text{precap}}$ .

$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  imbalance *decreases the efficiency of the lungs for gas exchange.* In spite of the high  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  at the apex of the lung (ca. 17.6 kPa;  $\rightarrow$  **D**, right panel) and the fairly normal mean  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  value, the relatively small  $\dot{Q}$  fraction of zone 1 contributes little to the total  $\dot{Q}$  of the pulmonary veins. In this case,  $P_{a_{O_2}} < P_{A_{O_2}}$  and an *alveolar–arterial  $O_2$  difference* ( $Aa_{D_{O_2}}$ ) exists (normally about 1.3 kPa). When a total arteriovenous shunt is present ( $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q} = 0$ ), even oxygen treatment will not help the patient, because it would not reach the pulmonary capillary bed ( $\rightarrow$  **C1**).

**Hypoxic vasoconstriction** regulates alveolar perfusion and prevents the development of extreme  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  ratios. When the  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  decreases sharply, receptors in the alveoli emit local signals that trigger constriction of the supplying blood vessels. This throttles shunts in poorly ventilated or non-ventilated regions of the lung, thereby routing larger quantities of blood for gas exchange to more productive regions.

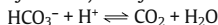
$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  imbalance can cause severe complications in many lung diseases. In *shock lung*, for example, shunts can comprise 50% of  $\dot{Q}$ . Life-threatening lung failure can quickly develop if a concomitant pulmonary edema, alveolar diffusion barrier, or surfactant disorder exists ( $\rightarrow$  p. 118).



(A, B, C, D after West et al.)

**Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>)** is an end-product of energy metabolism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 230). CO<sub>2</sub> produced by cells of the body undergoes **physical dissolution** and diffuses into adjacent blood capillaries. A small portion of CO<sub>2</sub> in the blood remains dissolved, while the rest is **chemically bound** in form of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and carbamate residues of hemoglobin ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, lower panel, blue arrows;  $\rightarrow$  arteriovenous CO<sub>2</sub> difference given in the table). Circulating CO<sub>2</sub>-loaded blood reaches the pulmonary capillaries via the right heart. CO<sub>2</sub> entering the pulmonary capillaries is released from the compounds ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, red arrows), diffuses into the alveoli, and is expired into the atmosphere ( $\rightarrow$  **A** and p. 106).

The enzyme **carbonic anhydrase** (carbonate dehydratase) catalyzes the reaction

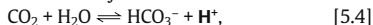


in erythrocytes ( $\rightarrow$  **A5**, **7**). Because it accelerates the establishment of equilibrium, the short contact time (< 1 s) between red blood cells and alveolus or peripheral tissue is sufficient for the transformation CO<sub>2</sub>  $\rightleftharpoons$  HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>.

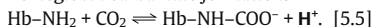
CO<sub>2</sub> diffusing from the **peripheral cells** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, bottom panel: "Tissue") increases P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (approx. 5.3 kPa = 40 mmHg in arterial blood) to a mean venous P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> of about 6.3 kPa = 47 mmHg. It also increases the concentration of CO<sub>2</sub> dissolved in plasma. However, the major portion of the CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses into red blood cells, thereby increasing their content of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>. CO<sub>2</sub> (+ H<sub>2</sub>O) within the cells is converted to HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> ( $\rightarrow$  **A5**, **2**) and **hemoglobin carbamate** ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). The HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> concentration in erythrocytes therefore becomes higher than in plasma. As a result, about three-quarters of the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> ions exit the erythrocytes by way of an HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>/Cl<sup>-</sup> antiporter. This **anion exchange** is also called **Hamburger shift** ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**).

**H<sup>+</sup> ions** are liberated when CO<sub>2</sub> in red cells circulating in the periphery is converted to HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and hemoglobin (Hb) carbamate.

*Bicarbonate formation:*



*Hemoglobin carbamate formation:*



**Hemoglobin (Hb)** is a **key buffer for H<sup>+</sup> ions** in the red cells ( $\rightarrow$  **A6**; see also p. 140, "Non-bicarbonate buffers"). Since the removal of H<sup>+</sup> ions in reactions 5.4 and 5.5 prevents the rapid establishment of equilibrium, large quantities of

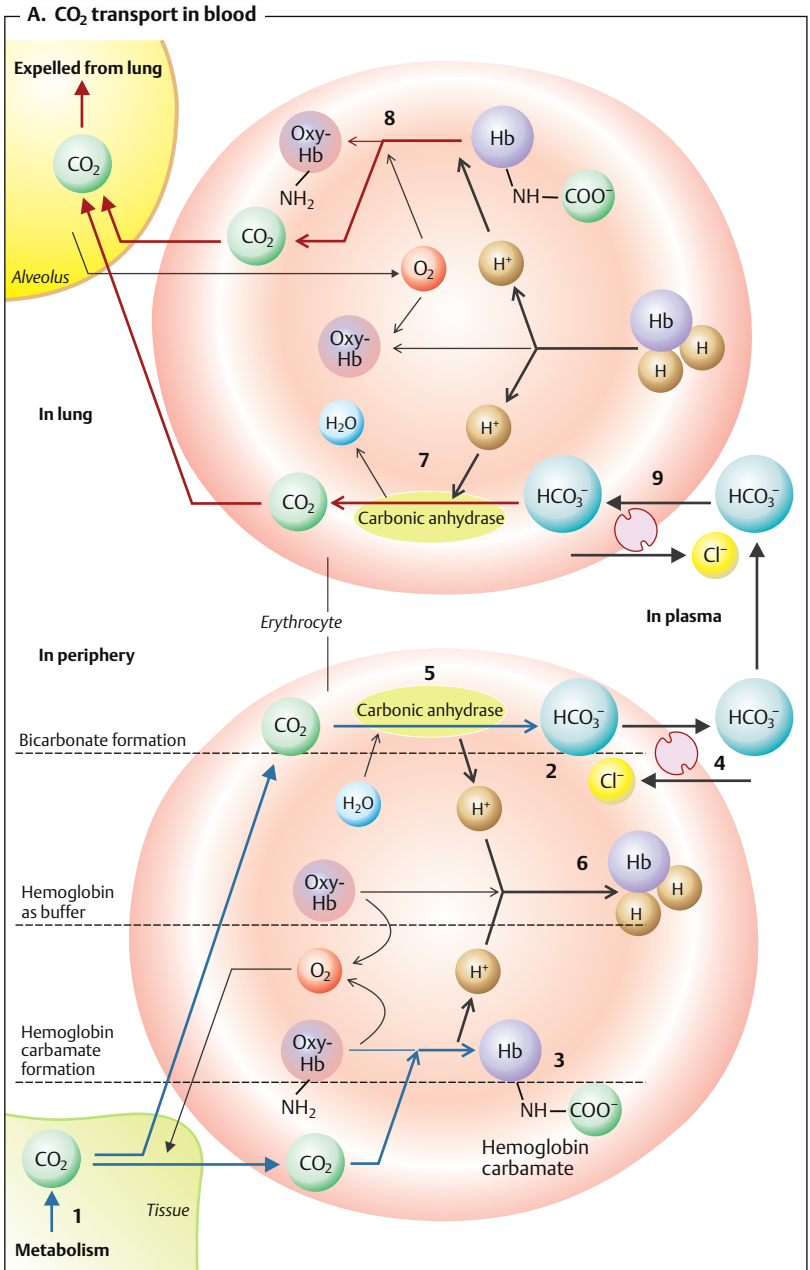
CO<sub>2</sub> can be incorporated in HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and Hb carbamate. Deoxygenated hemoglobin (Hb) can take up more H<sup>+</sup> ions than oxygenated hemoglobin (Oxy-Hb) because Hb is a weaker acid ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). This promotes CO<sub>2</sub> uptake in the peripheral circulation (*Haldane effect*) because of the simultaneous liberation of O<sub>2</sub> from erythrocytes, i.e. deoxygenation of Oxy-Hb to Hb.

In the **pulmonary capillaries**, these reactions proceed in the opposite direction ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, top panel, red and black arrows). Since the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in alveoli is lower than in venous blood, CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses into the alveoli, and reactions 5.4 and 5.5 proceed to the left. CO<sub>2</sub> is released from HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and Hb carbamate whereby H<sup>+</sup> ions (released from Hb) are bound in both reactions ( $\rightarrow$  **A7**, **A8**), and the direction of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>/Cl<sup>-</sup> exchange reverses ( $\rightarrow$  **A9**). Reoxygenation of Hb to Oxy-Hb in the lung promotes this process by increasing the supply of H<sup>+</sup> ions (*Haldane effect*).

**CO<sub>2</sub> distribution in blood** (mmol/L blood, 1 mmol = 22.26 mL CO<sub>2</sub>)

	Dis-solved CO <sub>2</sub>	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Carbamate	Total
<b>Arterial blood:</b>				
Plasma*	0.7	13.2	0.1	14.0
Erythrocytes**	0.5	6.5	1.1	8.1
<i>Blood</i>	1.2	19.7	1.2	22.1
<b>Mixed venous blood:</b>				
Plasma*	0.8	14.3	ca. 0.1	15.2
Erythrocytes**	0.6	7.2	1.4	9.2
<i>Blood</i>	1.4	21.5	1.5	24.4
<b>Arteriovenous CO<sub>2</sub> difference in blood</b>				
	0.2	1.8	0.3	2.3
<b>Percentage of total arteriovenous difference</b>				
	9%	78%	13%	100%

\* Approx 0.55 L plasma/L blood; \*\* ca. 0.45 L erythrocytes/L blood



The **total carbon dioxide** concentration (= chemically bound "CO<sub>2</sub>" + dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>) of mixed venous blood is about 24–25 mmol/L; that of arterial blood is roughly 22–23 mmol/L. Nearly 90% of this is present as HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (→ **A**, right panel, and table on p. 124). The partial pressure of CO<sub>2</sub> (P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>) is the chief factor that determines the CO<sub>2</sub> content of blood. The **CO<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve** illustrates how the total CO<sub>2</sub> concentration depends on P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (→ **A**).

The concentration of **dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>**, [CO<sub>2</sub>], in plasma is directly proportional to the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in plasma and can be calculated as follows:

$$[\text{CO}_2] = \alpha_{\text{CO}_2} \cdot \text{P}_{\text{CO}_2} \text{ (mmol/L plasma or mL/L plasma),} \quad [5.6]$$

where  $\alpha_{\text{CO}_2}$  is the (Bunsen) *solubility coefficient* for CO<sub>2</sub>. At 37 °C,

$$\alpha_{\text{CO}_2} = 0.225 \text{ mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1},$$

After converting the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> into volume CO<sub>2</sub> (mL = mmol · 22.26), this yields

$$\alpha_{\text{CO}_2} = 5 \text{ mL} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1}.$$

The *curve for dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>* is therefore linear (→ **A**, green line).

Since the buffering and carbamate formation capacities of hemoglobin are limited, the relation between **bound CO<sub>2</sub>** and P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> is curvilinear. The *dissociation curve for total CO<sub>2</sub>* is calculated from the sum of dissolved and bound CO<sub>2</sub> (→ **A**, red and violet lines).

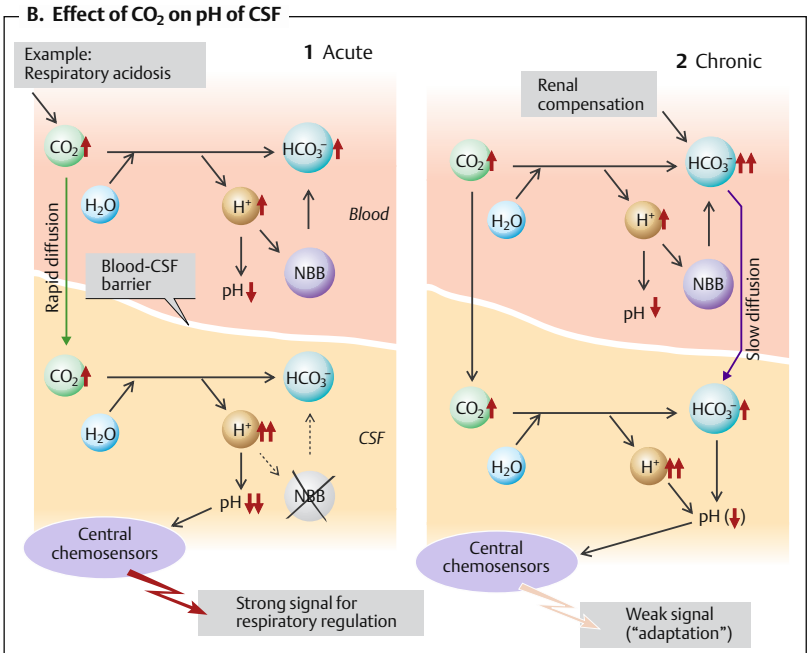
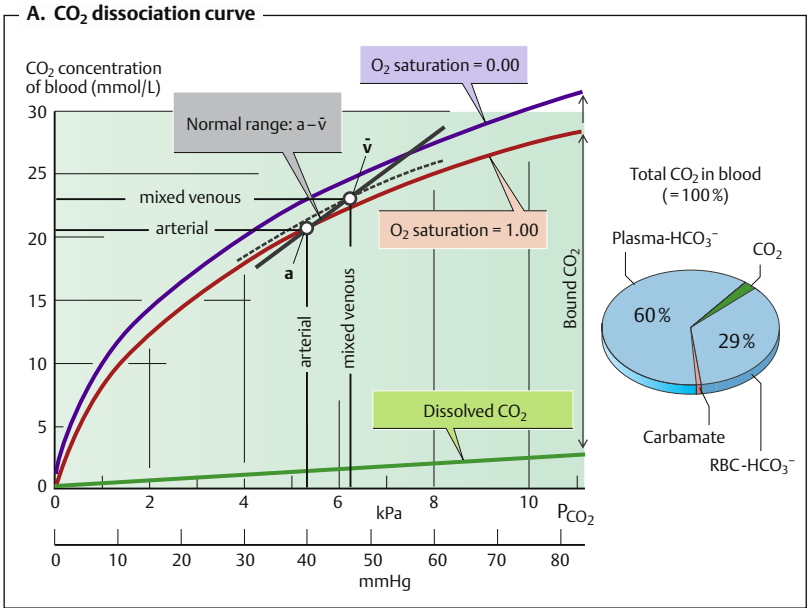
CO<sub>2</sub> binding with hemoglobin depends on the degree of **oxygen saturation** (S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) of hemoglobin. Blood completely saturated with O<sub>2</sub> is not able to bind as much CO<sub>2</sub> as O<sub>2</sub>-free blood at equal P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> levels (→ **A**, red and violet lines). When venous blood in the lungs is loaded with O<sub>2</sub>, the buffer capacity of hemoglobin and, consequently, the levels of chemical CO<sub>2</sub> binding decrease due to the Haldane effect (→ p. 124). Venous blood is never completely void of O<sub>2</sub>, but is always O<sub>2</sub>-saturated to a certain degree, depending on the degree of O<sub>2</sub> extraction (→ p. 130) of the organ in question. The S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> of mixed venous blood is about 0.75. The CO<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve for S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> = 0.75 therefore lies between those for S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> = 0.00 and 1.00 (→ **A**, dotted line). In arterial blood, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> ≈ 5.33 kPa and S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> ≈ 0.97 (→ **A**, point a). In mixed venous blood, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> ≈ 6.27 kPa and S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> ≈ 0.75 (→ **A**, point v). The normal range of CO<sub>2</sub> dissociation is determined by connecting these two points by a line called "*physiologic CO<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve*."

The concentration ratio of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> to dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> in plasma and red blood cells differs (about 20 : 1 and 12 : 1, respectively). This reflects the difference in the pH of plasma (7.4) and erythrocytes (ca. 7.2) (→ p. 138ff.).

## CO<sub>2</sub> in Cerebrospinal Fluid

Unlike HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and H<sup>+</sup>, CO<sub>2</sub> can cross the blood-cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) barrier with relative ease (→ **B1** and p. 312). The P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in CSF therefore adapts quickly to **acute changes in the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in blood**. CO<sub>2</sub>-related (respiratory) pH changes in the body can be buffered by *non-bicarbonate buffers* (NBBs) only (→ p. 144). Since the concentration of non-bicarbonate buffers in CSF is very low, an acute rise in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (respiratory acidosis; → p. 144) leads to a relatively sharp decrease in the pH of CSF (→ **B1**, pH ↓↓). This decrease is registered by central chemosensors (or chemoreceptors) that adjust respiratory activity accordingly (→ p. 132). (In this book, sensory receptors are called sensors in order to distinguish them from hormone and transmitter receptors.)

The concentration of non-bicarbonate buffers in blood (hemoglobin, plasma proteins) is high. When the CO<sub>2</sub> concentration increases, the liberated H<sup>+</sup> ions are therefore effectively buffered in the blood. The actual HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> concentration in blood then rises relatively slowly, to ultimately become higher than in the CSF. As a result, HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> diffuses (relatively slowly) into the CSF (→ **B2**), resulting in a renewed increase in the pH of the CSF because the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>/CO<sub>2</sub> ratio increases (→ p. 140). This, in turn, leads to a reduction in respiratory activity (via central chemosensors), a process enhanced by renal compensation, i.e., a pH increase through HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> retention (→ p. 144). By this mechanism, the body ultimately adapts to **chronic elevation in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>**—i.e., a chronically elevated P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> will no longer represent a respiratory drive (cf. p. 132).



**Hemoglobin (Hb)** is the O<sub>2</sub>-carrying protein of red blood cells (RBCs) (mol. mass: 64 500 Da). Hb is also involved in CO<sub>2</sub> transport and is an important blood pH buffer (→ pp. 124 and 138ff.). Hb is a tetramer with 4 subunits (adults: 98%: 2 $\alpha$  + 2 $\beta$  = **HbA**; 2% 2 $\alpha$  + 2 $\delta$  = **HbA<sub>2</sub>**), each with its own heme group. **Heme** consists of porphyrin and **Fe(II)**. Each of the four Fe(II) atoms (each linked with one histidine residue of Hb) binds reversibly with an O<sub>2</sub> molecule. This is referred to as **oxygenation** (not oxidation) of Hb to oxyhemoglobin (Oxy-Hb). The amount of O<sub>2</sub> which combines with Hb depends on the partial pressure of O<sub>2</sub> (P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>): **oxygen dissociation curve** (→ **A**, red line). The curve has a sigmoid shape, because initially bound O<sub>2</sub> molecules change the conformation of the Hb tetramer (positive cooperativity) and thereby increase **hemoglobin-O<sub>2</sub> affinity**.

When fully saturated with O<sub>2</sub>, 1 mol of tetrameric Hb combines with 4 mol O<sub>2</sub>, i.e., 64 500 g of Hb combine with 4 × 22.4 L of O<sub>2</sub>. Thus, 1 g Hb can theoretically transport 1.39 mL O<sub>2</sub>, or 1.35 mL in vivo (Hüfner number). The total Hb concentration of the blood ([Hb]<sub>total</sub>) is a mean 150 g/L (→ p. 88), corresponding to a maximum O<sub>2</sub> concentration of 9.1 mmol/L or an O<sub>2</sub> fraction of 0.203 L O<sub>2</sub>/L blood. This **oxygen-carrying capacity** is a function of [Hb]<sub>total</sub> (→ **A**, yellow and purple curves as compared to the red curve).

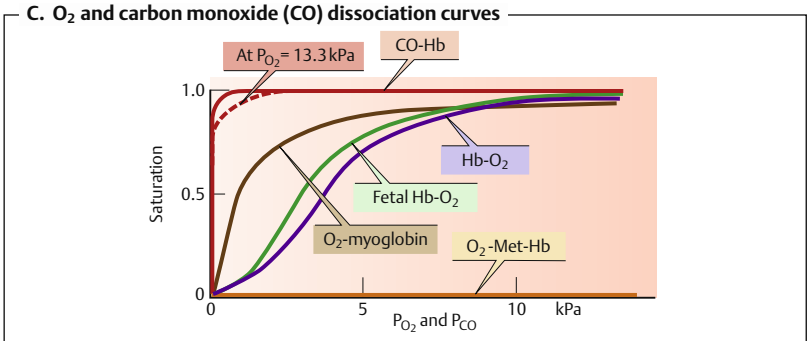
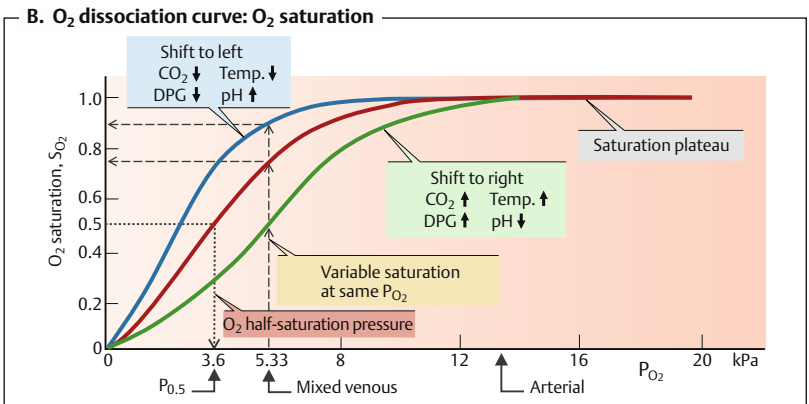
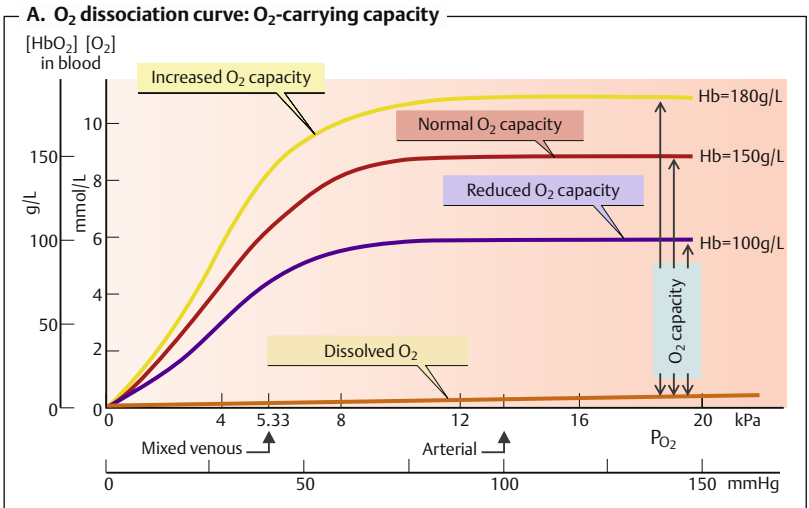
The O<sub>2</sub> content of blood is virtually equivalent to the amount of O<sub>2</sub> bound by Hb since only 1.4% of O<sub>2</sub> in blood is dissolved at a P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> of 13.3 kPa (→ **A**, orange line). The solubility coefficient ( $\alpha_{O_2}$ ), which is 10  $\mu\text{mol} \cdot [\text{L of plasma}]^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1}$ , is 22 times smaller than  $\alpha_{CO_2}$  (→ p. 126).

**Oxygen saturation** (S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) is the fraction of Oxy-Hb relative to [Hb]<sub>total</sub>, or the ratio of **actual O<sub>2</sub> concentration/O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity**. At normal P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> in arterial blood (e.g., P<sub>aO<sub>2</sub></sub> = 12.6 kPa or 95 mmHg), S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> will reach a **saturation plateau** at approx. 0.97, while S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> will still amount to 0.73 in mixed venous blood (P<sub>vO<sub>2</sub></sub> = 5.33 kPa or 40 mmHg). The venous S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> values in different organs can, however, vary greatly (→ p. 130).

O<sub>2</sub> dissociation is independent of total Hb if plotted as a function of S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (→ **B**). Changes in O<sub>2</sub> affinity to Hb can then be easily identified as **shifting of the O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve**. A shift to the right signifies an affinity decrease, and a

shift to the left signifies an affinity increase, resulting in flattening and steepening, respectively, of the initial part of the curve. **Shifts to the left** are caused by increases in pH (with or without a P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> decrease) and/or decreases in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, temperature and 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate (BPG; normally 1 mol/mol Hb tetramer). **Shifts to the right** occur due to decreases in pH and/or increases in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, temperature and 2,3-BPG (→ **B**). The **half-saturation pressure** (P<sub>0.5</sub> or P<sub>50</sub>) of O<sub>2</sub> (→ **B**, dotted lines) is the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> at which S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> is 0.5 or 50%. The P<sub>0.5</sub>, which is normally 3.6 kPa or 27 mmHg, is a measure of shifting to the right (P<sub>0.5</sub> ↑) or left (P<sub>0.5</sub> ↓). Displacement of the O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve due to changes in pH and P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> is called the **Bohr effect**. A shift to the right means that, in the periphery (pH ↓, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> ↑), larger quantities of O<sub>2</sub> can be taken up from the blood without decreasing the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>, which is the driving force for O<sub>2</sub> diffusion (→ **B**, broken lines). A higher affinity for O<sub>2</sub> is then re-established in the pulmonary capillaries (pH ↑, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> ↓). A shift to the left is useful when the P<sub>aO<sub>2</sub></sub> is decreased (e.g., in altitude hypoxia), a situation where arterial P<sub>aO<sub>2</sub></sub> lies to the left of the S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> plateau.

**Myoglobin** is an Fe(II)-containing muscle protein that serves as a short-term storage molecule for O<sub>2</sub> (→ p. 72). As it is monomeric (no positive cooperativity), its O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve at low P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> is much steeper than that of HbA (→ **C**). Since the O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve of **fetal Hb** (2 $\alpha$  + 2 $\gamma$  = HbF) is also steeper, S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> values of 45 to 70% can be reached in the fetal umbilical vein despite the low P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (3–4 kPa or 22–30 mmHg) of maternal placental blood. This is sufficient, because the fetal [Hb]<sub>total</sub> is 180 g/L. The **carbon monoxide (CO) dissociation curve** is extremely steep. Therefore, even tiny amounts of CO in the respiratory air will dissociate O<sub>2</sub> from Hb. This can result in **carbon monoxide poisoning** (→ **C**). **Methemoglobin**, Met-Hb (normally 1% of Hb), is formed from Hb by oxidation of Fe(II) to Fe(III) either spontaneously or via exogenous oxidants. Met-Hb cannot combine with O<sub>2</sub> (→ **C**). **Methemoglobin reductase** reduces Fe(III) of Met-Hb back to Fe(II); deficiencies of this enzyme can cause methemoglobinemia, resulting in neonatal anoxia.



O<sub>2</sub> **diffuses** from peripheral blood to adjacent tissues and CO<sub>2</sub> in the opposite direction (→ pp.20ff. and 106). Since CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses much faster (→ p.120), O<sub>2</sub> diffusion is the limiting factor. Sufficient O<sub>2</sub> delivery is ensured by a dense capillary network with a **gas exchange area** of about 1000 m<sup>2</sup>. The **diffusion distance** (→ R in **A**) is only 10–25 μm. The **driving force** for diffusion is the difference in partial pressures of oxygen (ΔP<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) in capillary blood and mitochondria, where the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> must not fall below 0.1 kPa ≈ 1 mmHg. Since P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> decreases with distance parallel and perpendicular to the course of capillaries, the O<sub>2</sub> supply to cells at the venous end far away from the capillaries (large R) is lowest, as shown using **Krogh's cylinder model** (→ **A1**). Since these cells are also the first to be affected by oxygen deficiency (**hypoxia**), this is sometimes called the “lethal corner” (→ **A2**).

Using **Fick's principle** (→ p.106), **oxygen consumption** of a given organ,  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  (in L/min), is calculated as the difference between the **arterial supply** ( $\dot{Q} \cdot [O_2]_a$ ) and **non-utilized venous O<sub>2</sub> volume/time** ( $\dot{Q} \cdot [O_2]_v$ ), where  $\dot{Q}$  is rate of blood flow in the organ (L/min) and [O<sub>2</sub>] is the oxygen fraction (L O<sub>2</sub>/L blood):

$$\dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{Q} ([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v) \quad [5.7]$$

To meet **increased O<sub>2</sub> demands**,  $\dot{Q}$  can therefore be increased by **vasodilatation** in the organ in question and/or by **raising the oxygen extraction (E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>)**. E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> describes the O<sub>2</sub> consumption in the organ ( $= \dot{Q} ([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v)$ ; see Eq. 5.7) relative to the arterial O<sub>2</sub> supply ( $\dot{Q} \cdot [O_2]_a$ ). Since  $\dot{Q}$  can be simplified,

$$E_{O_2} = ([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v) / [O_2]_a \quad [5.8]$$

E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> varies according to the type and function of the organ under resting conditions: skin 0.04 (4%), kidney 0.07; brain, liver and resting skeletal muscle ca. 0.3, myocardium 0.6. The E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> of muscle during strenuous exercise can rise to 0.9. Skeletal muscle can therefore meet **increased O<sub>2</sub> demands** by raising the E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (0.3 ⇒ 0.9), whereas in myocardial tissue, and in the three types of hypoxia listed below (→ **B 1–3**) only a limited compensation is possible (→ p.212).

**Hypoxia.** An abnormally reduced O<sub>2</sub> supply to tissue is classified as follows:

1. **Hypoxic hypoxia** (→ **A2, B1**): an insufficient O<sub>2</sub> supply reaches the blood due, for example, to decreased atmospheric P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> at high

altitudes (→ p.136), reduced alveolar ventilation, or impaired alveolar gas exchange.

2. **Anemic hypoxia** (→ **B2**): reduced O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity of blood (→ p.128), e.g., due to decreased total Hb in iron deficiency anemia (→ p.90).

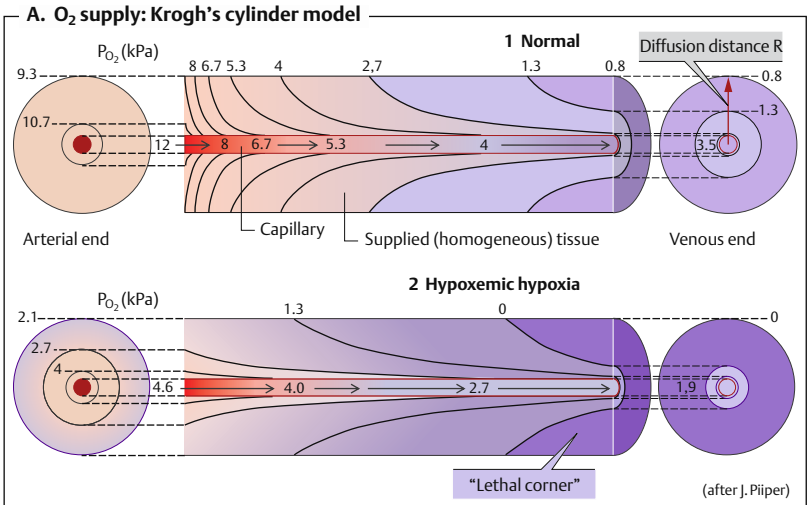
3. **Stagnant or ischemic hypoxia** (→ **B3**): insufficient O<sub>2</sub> reaches the tissue due to reduced blood flow ( $\dot{Q} \downarrow$ ). The cause can be systemic (e.g., heart failure) or local (e.g., obstructed artery). The reduction of blood flow must be compensated for by a rise in ( $[O_2]_a - [O_2]_v$ ) to maintain an adequate O<sub>2</sub> delivery (see Eq. 5.7). This is not the case in hypoxic and anemic hypoxia. The influx and efflux of substrates and metabolites is also impaired in stagnant hypoxia. Anaerobic glycolysis (→ p.72) is therefore of little help.

4. Hypoxia can also occur when the **diffusion distance** is increased due to tissue thickening without a corresponding increase in the number of blood capillaries. This results in an insufficient blood supply to cells lying outside the O<sub>2</sub> supply radius (R) of the Krogh cylinder (→ **A**).

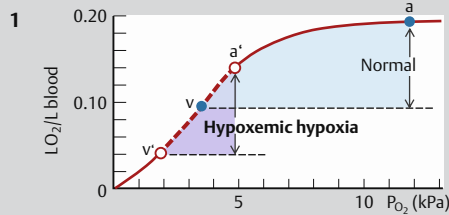
5. **Histotoxic or cytotoxic hypoxia** occurs due to impaired utilization of O<sub>2</sub> by the tissues despite a sufficient supply of O<sub>2</sub> in the mitochondria, as observed in **cyanide poisoning**. Cyanide (HCN) blocks oxidative cellular metabolism by inhibiting cytochromoxidase.

**Brain tissue** is extremely susceptible to hypoxia, which can cause critical damage since dead nerve cells usually cannot be replaced. **Anoxia**, or a total lack of oxygen, can occur due to heart or respiratory failure. The cerebral survival time is thus the limiting factor for overall survival. Unconsciousness occurs after only 15 s of anoxia, and irreparable brain damage occurs if anoxia lasts for more than 3 min or so.

**Cyanosis** is a bluish discoloration of the skin, lips, nails, etc. due to excessive arterial deoxyhemoglobin (>50 g/L). Cyanosis is a sign of hypoxia in individuals with normal or only moderately reduced total Hb levels. When total Hb is extremely low, O<sub>2</sub> deficiencies (anemic hypoxia) can be life-threatening, even in the absence of cyanosis. Cyanosis can occur in absence of significant hypoxia when the Hb level is elevated.



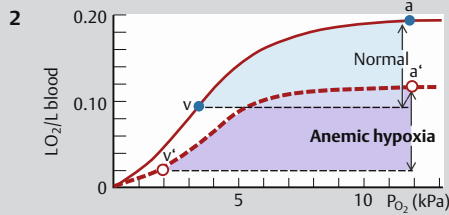
**B. Hypoxia**



**Arterial  $P_{O_2}$  and  $[O_2]_a$  decrease from a to a'**

$[O_2]_v \downarrow$  from v to v'

$([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v)$  unchanged, but  $E_{O_2} \uparrow$

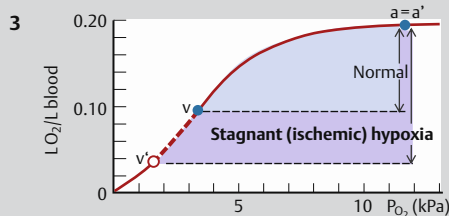


**Hb concentration decreases**

$O_2$  capacity  $\downarrow$  from a to a'

$[O_2]_v \downarrow$  from v to v'

$([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v)$  unchanged, but  $E_{O_2} \uparrow$



**Perfusion  $\dot{Q}$  decreases**

$O_2$  supply ( $= \dot{Q} \cdot [O_2]_a$ )  $\downarrow$   $E_{O_2} \uparrow$

$[O_2]_v \downarrow$  from v to v'

$([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v) \uparrow$

The respiratory muscles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108) are innervated by nerve fibers extending from the cervical and thoracic medulla (C4–C8 and T1–T7). The most important **control centers** are located in the *medulla oblongata* and cervical *medulla* (C1–C2), where interactive *inspiratory and expiratory neurons* exist on different levels ( $\rightarrow$  A1, red and green areas). The network of these spatially separate neuron groups form a **rhythm generator (respiratory “center”)** where respiratory rhythm originates ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The neuron groups are triggered alternately, resulting in rhythmic inspiration and expiration. They are activated in a tonic (non-rhythm-dependent) manner by the *formatio reticularis*, which receives signals from *respiratory stimulants* in the periphery and higher centers of the brain.

**Respiratory sensors** or receptors are involved in respiratory control circuits ( $\rightarrow$  p. 4). *Central and peripheral chemosensors* on the medulla oblongata and in the arterial circulation continuously register gas partial pressures in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and blood, respectively, and *mechanosensors* in the chest wall respond to stretch of intercostal muscles to modulate the depth of breathing ( $\rightarrow$  A2). *Pulmonary stretch sensors* in the tracheal and bronchial walls respond to marked increases in lung volume, thereby limiting the depth of respiration in humans (*Hering–Breuer reflex*). *Muscle spindles* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 320) in the respiratory muscles also respond to changes in airway resistance in the lung and chest wall.

**Chemical respiratory stimulants.** The extent of involuntary ventilation is mainly determined by the partial pressures of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  and the pH of blood and CSF. Chemosensors respond to any changes in these variables. **Peripheral chemosensors** in the glomera aortica and carotica ( $\rightarrow$  A3) register changes in the arterial  $P_{O_2}$ . If it falls, they stimulate an increase in ventilation via the vagus (X) and glossopharyngeal nerves (IX) until the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  rises again. This occurs, for example, at high altitudes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 136). The impulse frequency of the sensors increases sharply when the  $P_{O_2}$  drops below 13 kPa or 97 mmHg (**peripheral ventilatory drive**). These changes are even stronger when  $P_{CO_2}$  and/or the  $H^+$  concentration in blood also increase.

The **central chemosensors**, in particular, in the medulla react to  $CO_2$  and  $H^+$  increases (= pH decrease) in the CSF ( $\rightarrow$  A4 and p. 126). Ventilation is then increased until  $P_{CO_2}$  and the  $H^+$  concentration in blood and CSF decrease to normal values. This mostly **central respiratory drive** is very effective in responding to acute changes. An increase in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ , from, say, 5 to 9 kPa increases the total ventilation  $\dot{V}_E$  by a factor of ten, as shown in the  *$CO_2$  response curve* ( $\rightarrow$  A6).

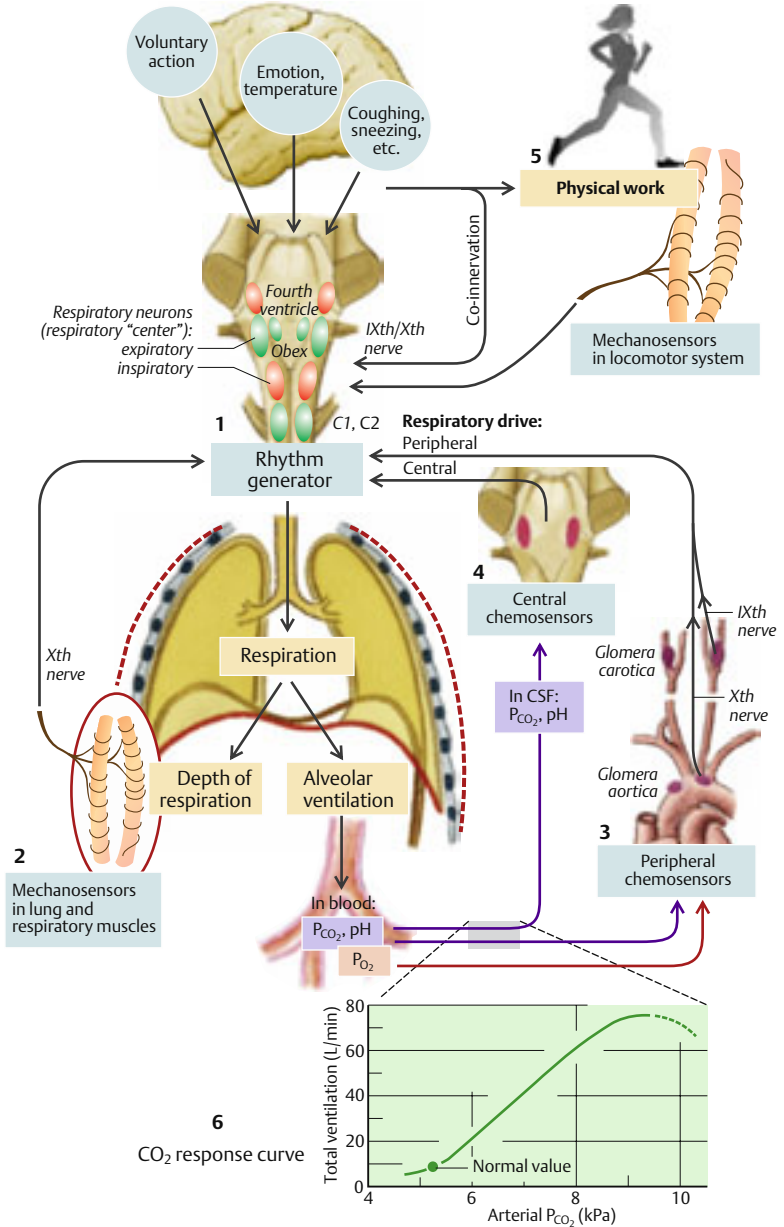
When a **chronic rise in  $P_{CO_2}$**  occurs, the previously increased central respiratory drive decreases ( $\rightarrow$  p. 126). If  $O_2$  supplied by artificial respiration tricks the peripheral chemosensors into believing that there is adequate ventilation, the residual peripheral respiratory drive will also be in jeopardy.

During **physical work** ( $\rightarrow$  A5), the total ventilation increases due to (a) co-innervation of the respiratory centers (by collaterals of cortical efferent motor fibers) and (b) through impulses transmitted by proprioceptive fibers from the muscles.

**Non-feedback sensors** and stimulants also play an important role in modulating the basic rhythm of respiration. They include

- ◆ *Irritant sensors* in the bronchial mucosa, which quickly respond to lung volume decreases by increasing the respiratory rate (deflation reflex or Head’s reflex), and to dust particles or irritating gases by triggering the cough reflex.
- ◆ *J sensors* of free C fiber endings on alveolar and bronchial walls; these are stimulated in pulmonary edema, triggering symptoms such as apnea and lowering the blood pressure.
- ◆ *Higher central nervous centers* such as the cortex, limbic system, hypothalamus or pons. They are involved in the expression of emotions like fear, pain and joy; in reflexes such as sneezing, coughing, yawning and swallowing; and in voluntary control of respiration while speaking, singing, etc.
- ◆ *Pressosensors* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 216), which are responsible for increasing respiration when the blood pressure decreases.
- ◆ *Heat and cold sensors* in the skin and thermoregulatory center. Increases (fever) and decreases in body temperature lead to increased respiration.
- ◆ *Certain hormones* also help to regulate respiration. Progesterone, for example, increases respiration in the second half of the menstrual cycle and during pregnancy.

A. Respiratory control and stimulation



Diving creates a problem for respiration due to the lack of normal ambient air supply and to higher the outside pressures exerted on the body. The total pressure on the body underwater is equal to the water pressure (98 kPa or 735 mmHg for each 10 m of water) plus the atmospheric pressure at the water surface.

A **snorkel** can be used when diving just below the water surface (→ A), but it increases dead space (→ pp. 114 and 120), making it harder to breathe. The additional pressure load from the water on chest and abdomen must also be overcome with each breath.

The depth at which a snorkel can be used is limited 1) because an intolerable increase in dead space or airway resistance will occur when using an extremely long or narrow snorkel, respectively, and 2) because the water pressure in deeper waters will prevent inhalation. The maximum suction produced on inspiration is about 11 kPa, equivalent to 112 cm H<sub>2</sub>O (peak inspiratory pressure, → p. 116). Inspiration therefore is no longer possible at aquatic depths of about 112 cm or more due to the risk of hypoxic anoxia (→ A).

**Scuba diving equipment** (scuba = self-contained **underwater breathing apparatus**) is needed to breathe at lower depths (up to about 70 m). The inspiratory air pressure (from pressurized air cylinders) is automatically adjusted to the water pressure, thereby permitting the diver to breathe with normal effort.

However, the additional water pressure increases the partial pressure of **nitrogen**  $P_{N_2}$  (→ B), resulting in higher concentrations of dissolved  $N_2$  in the blood. The pressure at a depth of 60 meters is about seven times higher than at the water surface. The pressure decreases as the diver returns to the water surface, but the additional  $N_2$  does not remain dissolved. The diver must therefore ascend slowly, in gradual stages so that the excess  $N_2$  can return to and be expelled from the lungs. Resurfacing too quickly would lead to the development of  $N_2$  bubbles in tissue (pain!) and blood, where they can cause obstruction and embolism of small blood vessels. This is called **decompression sickness** or **caisson disease** (→ B). Euphoria ( $N_2$  narcosis?), also called *rapture of the deep*, can occur when diving at depths of over 40 to 60 meters. Oxygen toxicity can occur at depths of 75 m or more (→ p. 136).

When **diving unassisted**, i.e., simply by holding one's breath,  $P_{CO_2}$  in the blood rises, since the  $CO_2$  produced by the body is not exhaled. Once

a certain  $P_{CO_2}$  has been reached, chemosensors (→ p. 132) trigger a sensation of shortness of breath, signaling that it is time to resurface.

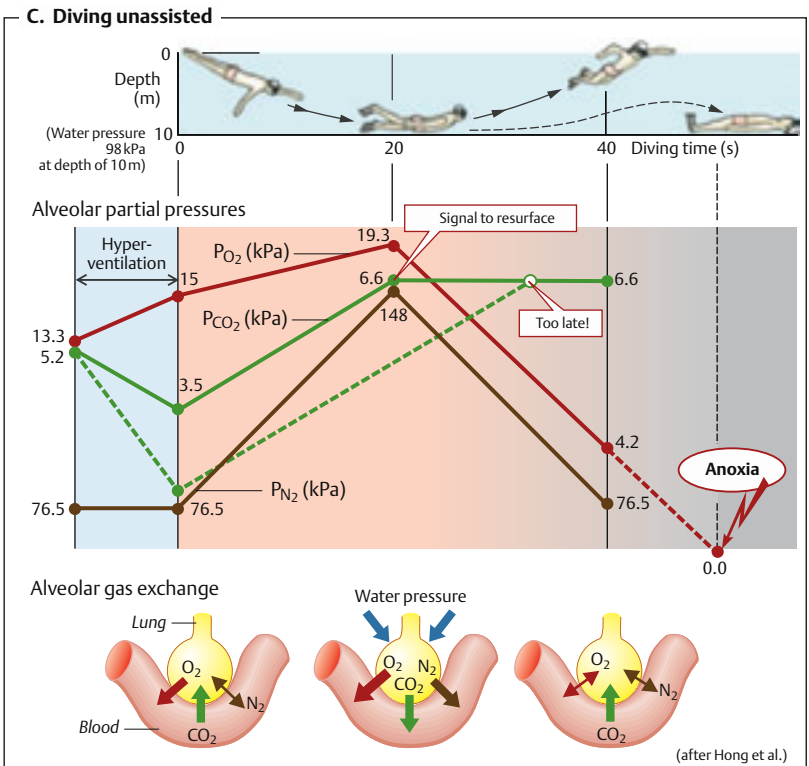
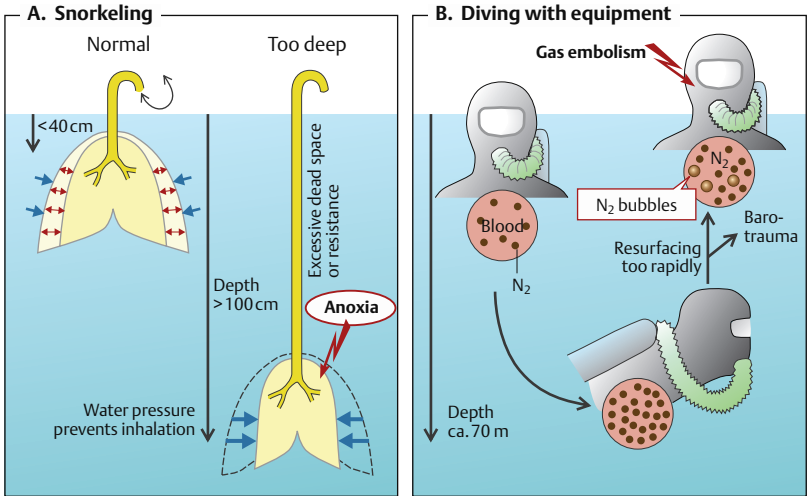
To delay the time to resurface, it is possible to lower the  $P_{CO_2}$  in blood by **hyperventilating before diving**. Experienced divers use this trick to stay under water longer. The course of alveolar partial pressures over time and the direction of alveolar gas exchange while diving (depth: 10 m; duration 40 s) is shown in C: Hyperventilating before a dive reduces the  $P_{CO_2}$  (solid green line) and slightly increases the  $P_{O_2}$  (red line) in the alveoli (and in blood). Diving at a depth of 10 m doubles the pressure on the chest and abdominal wall. As a result, the partial pressures of gases in the alveoli ( $P_{CO_2}$ ,  $P_{O_2}$ ,  $P_{N_2}$ ) increase sharply. Increased quantities of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  therefore diffuse from the alveoli into the blood. Once the  $P_{CO_2}$  in blood rises to a certain level, the body signals that it is time to resurface. If the diver resurfaces at this time, the  $P_{O_2}$  in the alveoli and blood drops rapidly ( $O_2$  consumption + pressure decrease) and the alveolar  $O_2$  exchange stops.

Back at the water surface, the  $P_{O_2}$  reaches a level that is just tolerable. If the diver excessively hyperventilates before the dive, the signal to resurface will come too late, and the  $P_{O_2}$  will drop to zero (**anoxia**) before the person reaches the water surface, which can result in unconsciousness and drowning (→ C, dotted lines).

**Barotrauma**. The increased pressure associated with diving leads to compression of air-filled organs, such as the lung and middle ear. Their gas volumes are compressed to  $1/2$  their normal size at water depths of 10 m, and to  $1/4$  at depths of 30 m.

The missing volume of air in the lungs is automatically replaced by the scuba, but not that of the middle ear. The middle ear and throat are connected by the Eustachian tube, which is open only at certain times (e.g., when swallowing) or not at all (e.g., in pharyngitis). If volume loss in the ear is not compensated for during a dive, the increasing water pressure in the outer auditory canal distends the eardrum, causing pain or even eardrum rupture. As a result, cold water can enter the middle ear and impair the organ of equilibrium, leading to nausea, dizziness, and disorientation. This can be prevented by pressing air from the lungs into the middle ear by holding the nose and blowing with the mouth closed.

The air in air-filled organs expand when the diver ascends to the water surface. Resurfacing too quickly, i.e., without expelling air at regular intervals, can lead to complications such as lung laceration and pneumothorax (→ p. 110) as well as potentially fatal hemorrhage and air embolism.



At sea level, the average barometric pressure ( $P_B$ )  $\approx$  101 kPa (760 mmHg), the  $O_2$  fraction in ambient air ( $F_{IO_2}$ ) is 0.209, and the inspiratory partial pressure of  $O_2$  ( $P_{IO_2}$ )  $\approx$  21 kPa ( $\rightarrow$  p. 106). However,  $P_B$  decreases with increasing altitude ( $h$ , in km):

$$P_B(\text{at } h) = P_B(\text{at sea level}) \cdot e^{-0.127 \cdot h} \quad [5.9]$$

This results in a drop in  $P_{IO_2}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, column 1), alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  ( $P_{AO_2}$ ) and arterial  $P_{O_2}$  ( $P_{aO_2}$ ). The  $P_{AO_2}$  at sea level is about 13 kPa ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, column 2).  $P_{AO_2}$  is an important measure of oxygen supply. If the  $P_{AO_2}$  falls below a critical level (ca. 4.7 kPa = 35 mmHg), hypoxia ( $\rightarrow$  p. 130) and impairment of cerebral function will occur. The *critical*  $P_{AO_2}$  would be reached at heights of about 4000 m above sea level during normal ventilation ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, dotted line in column 2). However, the low  $P_{aO_2}$  triggers chemosensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 132) that stimulate an increase in total ventilation ( $\dot{V}_E$ ); this is called  **$O_2$  deficiency ventilation** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, column 4). As a result, larger volumes of  $CO_2$  are exhaled, and the  $P_{ACO_2}$  and  $P_{aCO_2}$  decrease (see below). As described by the *alveolar gas equation*,

$$P_{AO_2} = P_{IO_2} - \frac{P_{aCO_2}}{RQ} \quad [5.10]$$

where  $RQ$  is the respiratory quotient ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 120 and 230), any fall in  $P_{aCO_2}$  will lead to a rise in the  $P_{AO_2}$ .  $O_2$  deficiency ventilation stops the  $P_{AO_2}$  from becoming critical up to altitudes of about 7000 m (*altitude gain*,  $\rightarrow$  **A**).

The maximal increase in ventilation ( $\approx 3 \times$  resting rate) during acute  $O_2$  deficiency is relatively small compared to the increase ( $\approx 10$  times the resting rate) during strenuous physical exercise at normal altitudes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74, C3) because increased ventilation at high altitudes reduces the  $P_{aCO_2}$  (= **hyperventilation**,  $\rightarrow$  p. 108), resulting in the development of **respiratory alkalosis** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144). Central chemosensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 132) then emit signals to lower the respiratory drive, thereby counteracting the signals from  $O_2$  chemosensors to increase the respiratory drive. As the mountain climber adapts, respiratory alkalosis is compensated for by increased renal excretion of  $HCO_3^-$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144). This helps return the pH of the blood toward normal, and the  $O_2$  deficiency-related increase in respiratory drive can now prevail. Stimulation of  $O_2$  chemosensors at high altitudes also leads to an increase in the

heart rate and a corresponding *increase in cardiac output*, thereby increasing the  $O_2$  supply to the tissues.

High altitude also stimulates **erythropoiesis** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 88ff.). Prolonged exposure to high altitudes increases the hematocrit levels, although this is limited by the corresponding rise in blood viscosity ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 92, 188).

**Breathing oxygen** from pressurized  $O_2$  cylinders is necessary for survival at altitudes above 7000 m, where  $P_{IO_2}$  is almost as high as the barometric pressure  $P_B$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, column 3). The critical  $P_{AO_2}$  level now occurs at an altitude of about 12 km with normal ventilation, and at about 14 km with increased ventilation. Modern long-distance planes fly slightly below this altitude to ensure that the passengers can survive with an oxygen mask in case the cabin pressure drops unexpectedly.

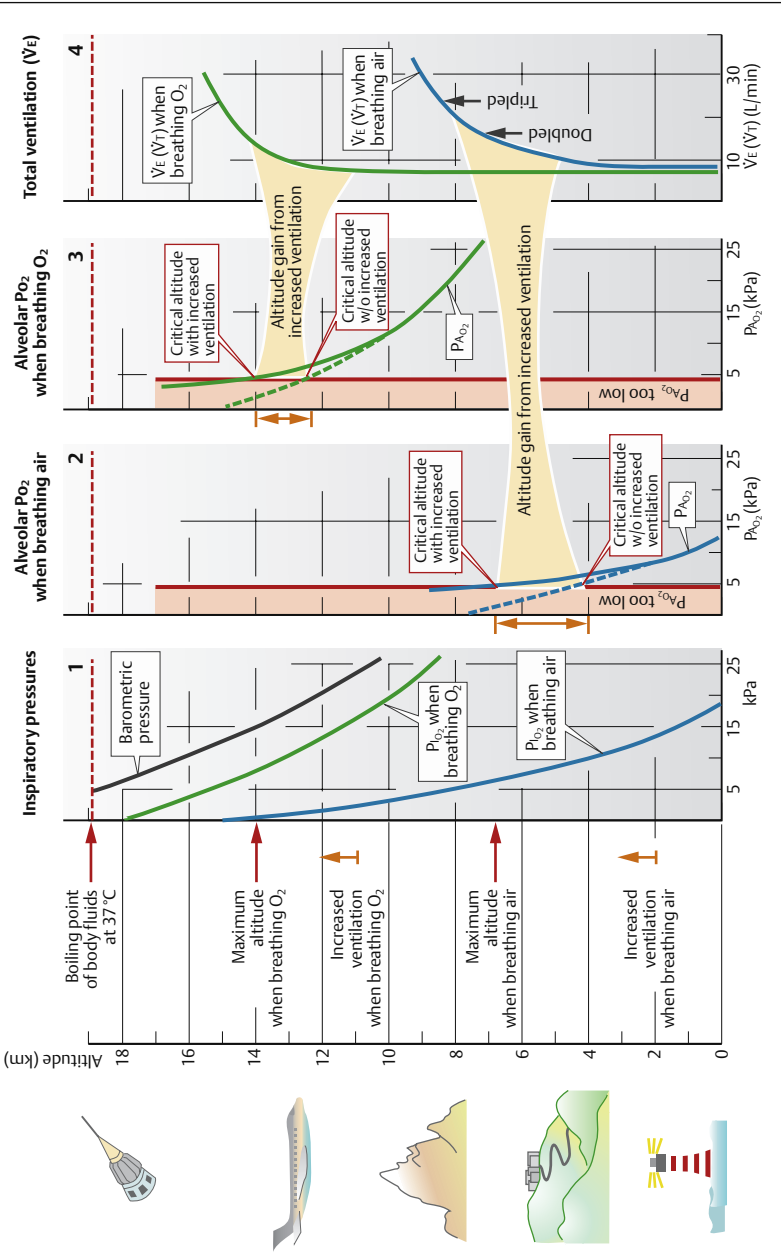
Survival at altitudes above 14 km is not possible without pressurized chambers or pressurized suits like those used in space travel. Otherwise, the body fluids would begin to boil at altitudes of 20 km or so ( $\rightarrow$  **A**), where  $P_B$  is lower than water vapor pressure at body temperature (37°C).

## Oxygen Toxicity

**Hyperoxia** occurs when  $P_{IO_2}$  is above normal ( $> 22$  kPa or 165 mmHg) due to an increased  $O_2$  fraction (*oxygen therapy*) or to an overall pressure increase with a normal  $O_2$  fraction (e.g. in diving,  $\rightarrow$  p. 134). The degree of  $O_2$  toxicity depends on the  $P_{IO_2}$  level (critical: ca. 40 kPa or 300 mmHg) and duration of hyperoxia. Lung dysfunction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 118, *surfactant deficiency*) occurs when a  $P_{IO_2}$  of about 70 kPa (525 mmHg) persists for several days or 200 kPa (1500 mmHg) for 3–6 hours. Lung dysfunction initially manifests as *coughing* and *painful breathing*. *Seizures* and *unconsciousness* occur at  $P_{IO_2}$  levels above 220 kPa (1650 mmHg), e.g., when diving at a depth of about 100 m using pressurized air.

Newborns will go blind if exposed to  $P_{IO_2}$  levels much greater than 40 kPa (300 mmHg) for long periods of time (e.g., in an incubator), because the vitreous body then opacifies.

A. Respiration at high altitudes (without acclimatization)

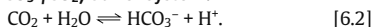


The **pH** indicates the hydrogen ion activity or the “effective”  $H^+$  concentration of a solution ( $H^+$  activity =  $f_H \cdot [H^+]$ , where square brackets mean concentration;  $\rightarrow$  p. 384), where

$$pH = -\log(f_H \cdot [H^+]) \quad [6.1]$$

In healthy individuals, the **pH of the blood** is usually a mean **pH 7.4** (see p. 142 for normal range), corresponding to  $H^+$  activity of about 40 nmol/L. The maintenance of a constant pH is important for human survival. Large deviations from the norm can have detrimental effects on metabolism, membrane permeability, and electrolyte distribution. Blood pH values below 7.0 and above 7.8 are not compatible with life.

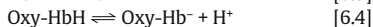
Various **pH buffers** are responsible for maintaining the body at a constant pH ( $\rightarrow$  p. 385). One important buffer for blood and other body fluids is the **bicarbonate/carbon dioxide ( $HCO_3^-/CO_2$ ) buffer system**:



The  $pK_a$  value ( $\rightarrow$  p. 378f.) determines the prevailing concentration ratio of the *buffer base and buffer acid* ( $[HCO_3^-]$  and  $[CO_2]$ , respectively in Eq. 6.2) at a given pH (*Henderson–Hasselbalch equation*;  $\rightarrow$  A).

The primary **function of the  $HCO_3^-/CO_2$  buffer system** in blood is to buffer  $H^+$  ions. However, this system is especially important because the concentrations of the two buffer components can be modified largely independent of each other:  $[CO_2]$  by respiration and  $[HCO_3^-]$  by the liver and kidney ( $\rightarrow$  A; see also p. 176). It is therefore classified as an **open buffer system** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 140).

**Hemoglobin** in red blood cells (320 g Hb/L erythrocytes!  $\rightarrow$  MCHC, p. 89C), the second most important buffer in blood, is a **non-bicarbonate buffer**.



The relatively acidic oxyhemoglobin anion ( $Oxy-Hb^-$ ) combines with fewer  $H^+$  ions than deoxygenated  $Hb^-$ , which is less acidic (see also p. 124).  $H^+$  ions are therefore liberated upon oxygenation of Hb to  $Oxy-Hb$  in the lung. Reaction 6.2 therefore proceeds to the left, thereby promoting the release of  $CO_2$  from its bound forms ( $\rightarrow$  p. 124). This, in turn, increases the pulmonary elimination of  $CO_2$ .

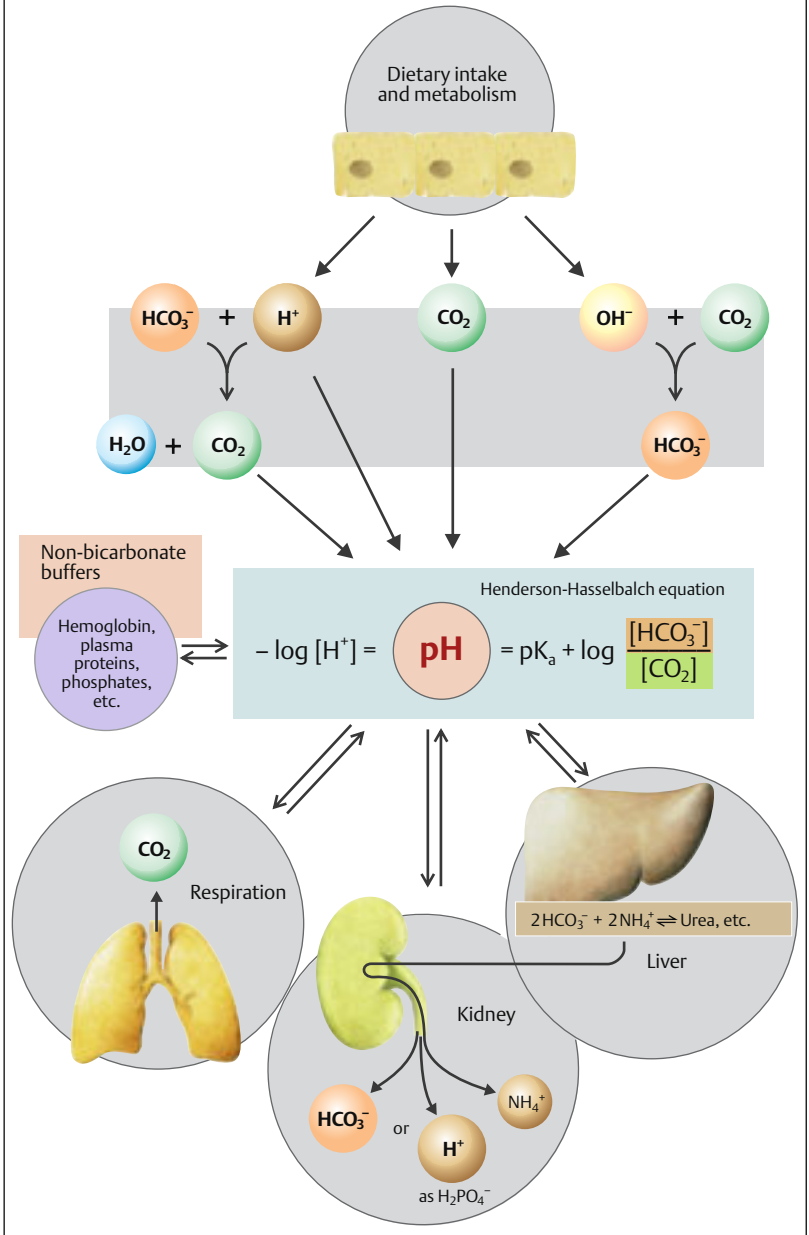
**Other non-bicarbonate buffers** of the blood include *plasma proteins* and inorganic *phosphate* ( $H_2PO_4^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HPO_4^{2-}$ ) as well as organic phosphates (in red blood cells). Intracellular organic and inorganic substances in various tissues also function as buffers.

The **buffer capacity** is a measure of the buffering power of a buffer system ( $mol \cdot L^{-1} \cdot [\Delta pH]^{-1}$ ). It corresponds to the number of added  $H^+$  or  $OH^-$  ions per unit volume that change the pH by one unit. The buffer capacity therefore corresponds to the slope of the titration curve for a given buffer ( $\rightarrow$  p. 386, B). The buffer capacity is dependent on (a) the buffer concentration and (b) the pH. The farther the pH is from the  $pK_a$  of a buffer system, the smaller the buffer capacity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 386). The buffer capacity of the blood is about  $75 \text{ mmol} \cdot L^{-1} \cdot (\Delta pH)^{-1}$  at pH 7.4 and constant  $P_{CO_2}$ . Since the buffer capacity is dependent on the prevailing  $P_{CO_2}$ , the **buffer base concentration** of the blood (normally about 48 mEq/L) is normally used as the measure of buffering power of the blood in clinical medicine ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 142 and 146). The buffer base concentration is the sum of the concentrations of all buffer components that accept hydrogen ions, i.e.,  $HCO_3^-$ ,  $Hb^-$ ,  $Oxy-Hb^-$ , diphosphoglycerate anions, plasma protein anions,  $HPO_4^{2-}$ , etc.

**Changes in the pH of the blood** are chiefly due to changes in the following factors ( $\rightarrow$  A and p. 142ff.):

- ◆  $H^+$  ions: Direct uptake in foodstuffs (e.g., vinegar) or by metabolism, or removal from the blood (e.g., by the kidney;  $\rightarrow$  p. 176 ff.).
- ◆  $OH^-$  ions: Uptake in foodstuffs containing (basic) salts of weak acids, especially in primarily vegetarian diet.
- ◆  $CO_2$ : Its concentration,  $[CO_2]$ , can change due to alterations in metabolic production or pulmonary elimination of  $CO_2$ . A drop in  $[CO_2]$  leads to a rise in pH and vice versa ( $\rightarrow$  A:  $[CO_2]$  is the denominator in the equation).
- ◆  $HCO_3^-$ : It can be eliminated directly from the blood by the kidney or gut (in diarrhea) ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 178, 142). A rise or fall in  $[HCO_3^-]$  will lead to a corresponding rise or fall in pH ( $\rightarrow$  A:  $[HCO_3^-]$  is the numerator in the equation).

A. Factors that affect the blood pH



The pH of any buffer system is determined by the concentration *ratio* of the buffer pairs and the  $pK_a$  of the system ( $\rightarrow$  p. 384). The pH of a bicarbonate solution is the concentration ratio of bicarbonate and dissolved carbon dioxide ( $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$ ), as defined in the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). Given  $[\text{HCO}_3^-] = 24 \text{ mmol/L}$  and  $[\text{CO}_2] = 1.2 \text{ mmol/L}$ ,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2] = 24/1.2 = 20$ . Given  $\log_{10} 20 = 1.3$  and  $pK_a = 6.1$ , a pH of 7.4 is derived when these values are set into the equation ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). If  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  drops to 10 and  $[\text{CO}_2]$  decreases to 0.5 mmol/L, the *ratio* of the two variables will not change, and the pH will remain constant.

When added to a buffered solution,  $\text{H}^+$  ions combine with the buffer base ( $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in this case), resulting in the formation of buffer acid ( $\text{HCO}_3^- + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ). In a **closed system** from which  $\text{CO}_2$  cannot escape ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**), the amount of buffer acid formed ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) equals the amount of buffer base consumed ( $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ). The inverse holds true for the addition of hydroxide ions ( $\text{OH}^- + \text{CO}_2 \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^-$ ). After **addition of 2 mmol/L of  $\text{H}^+$** , the aforementioned baseline ratio  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  of 24/1.2 ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) changes to 22/3.2, making the pH fall to 6.93 ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Thus, the buffer capacity of the  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer at pH 7.4 is very low in a *closed system*, for which the  $pK_a$  of 6.1 is too far from the target pH of 7.4 ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 138, 386 ff).

If, however, the additionally produced  $\text{CO}_2$  is eliminated from the system (**open system**;  $\rightarrow$  **A4**), only the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  will change when the same amount of  $\text{H}^+$  is added (2 mmol/L). The corresponding decrease in the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio (22/1.2) and pH (7.36) is much less than in a closed system. In the body, bicarbonate buffering occurs in an open system in which the partial pressure ( $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ ) and hence the concentration of carbon dioxide in plasma ( $[\text{CO}_2] = \alpha \cdot P_{\text{CO}_2}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 126) are regulated by respiration ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). The lungs normally eliminate as much  $\text{CO}_2$  as produced by metabolism (15 000–20 000 mmol/day), while the alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  remains constant ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120 ff.). Since the plasma  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  adapts to the alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  during each respiratory cycle, the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  ( $P_{\text{aCO}_2}$ ) also remains constant. An increased supply of  $\text{H}^+$  in the periphery leads to an increase in the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  of venous blood ( $\text{H}^+ + \text{HCO}_3^- \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**). The lungs eliminate the additional  $\text{CO}_2$  so quickly that the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  remains practi-

cally unchanged despite the addition of  $\text{H}^+$  (open system!).

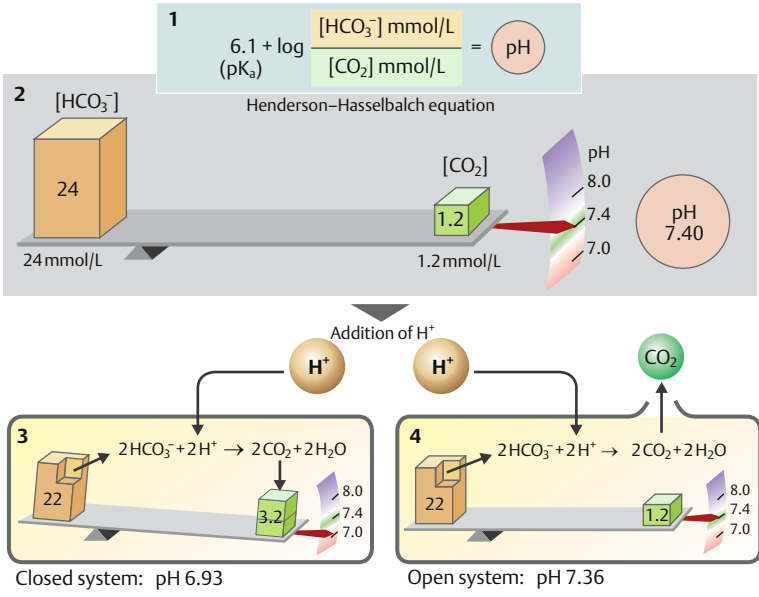
The following example demonstrates the quantitatively small impact of increased **pulmonary  $\text{CO}_2$  elimination**. A two-fold increase in the amount of  $\text{H}^+$  ions produced within the body on a given day (normally 60 mmol/day) will result in the added production of 60 mmol more of  $\text{CO}_2$  per day (disregarding non-bicarbonate buffers). This corresponds to only about 0.3% of the normal daily  $\text{CO}_2$  elimination rate.

An increased supply of  $\text{OH}^-$  ions in the periphery has basically similar effects. Since  $\text{OH}^- + \text{CO}_2 \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^-$ ,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  increases and the venous  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  becomes smaller than normal. Because the rate of  $\text{CO}_2$  elimination is also reduced, the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  also does not change in the illustrated example ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**).

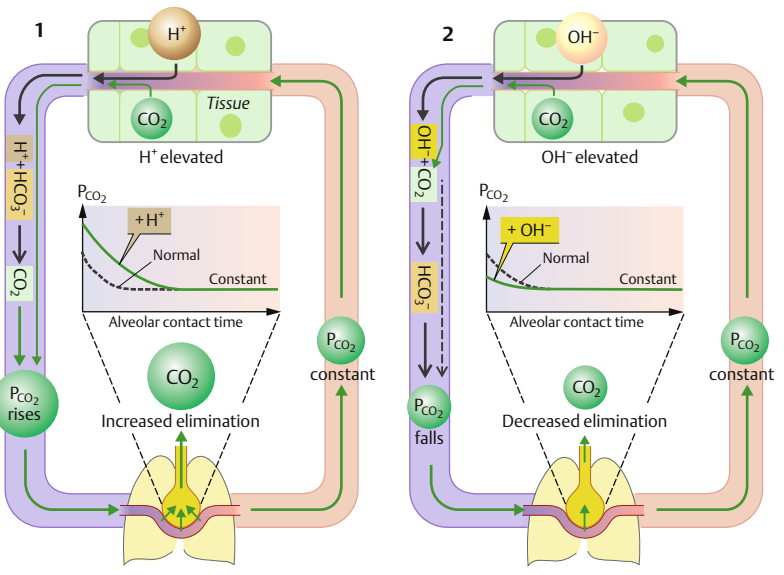
At a pH of 7.4, the open  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer system makes up about two-thirds of the buffer capacity of the blood when the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  remains constant at 5.33 kPa ( $\rightarrow$  p. 138). Mainly intracellular non-bicarbonate buffers provide the remaining buffer capacity.

Since **non-bicarbonate buffers** (NBBs) function in *closed systems*, their total concentration ( $[\text{NBB base}] + [\text{NBB acid}]$ ) remains constant, even after buffering. The total concentration changes in response to changes in the hemoglobin concentration, however, since hemoglobin is the main constituent of NBBs ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 138, 146). NBBs supplement the  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer in non-respiratory (metabolic) acid-base disturbances ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142), but are the *only effective buffers* in respiratory acid-base disturbances ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144).

**A. Bicarbonate buffers in closed and open systems**



**B. Bicarbonate buffers in blood (open system)**



The main objective of acid–base regulation is to keep the pH of blood, and thus of the body, constant. The normal ranges for parameters relevant to acid–base homeostasis, as measured in plasma (arterialized capillary blood) are listed in the table (see table on p. 124 for erythrocyte  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  values).

Normal range of acid–base parameters in plasma

	Women	Men
$[\text{H}^+]$ (nmol/L)	$39.8 \pm 1.4$	$40.7 \pm 1.4$
pH	$7.40 \pm 0.015$	$7.39 \pm 0.015$
$P_{\text{CO}_2}$ (kPa)	$5.07 \pm 0.3$	$5.47 \pm 0.3$
(mmHg)	$38.9 \pm 2.3$	$41.0 \pm 2.3$
$[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ (mmol/L)	$24 \pm 2.5$	$24 \pm 2.5$

Acid–base homeostasis exists when the following balances are maintained:

- $(\text{H}^+ \text{ addition} + \text{production}) - (\text{HCO}_3^- \text{ addition} + \text{production}) = (\text{H}^+ \text{ excretion}) - (\text{HCO}_3^- \text{ excretion}) \approx 60 \text{ mmol/day}$  (diet-dependent).
- $(\text{CO}_2 \text{ production}) = (\text{CO}_2 \text{ excretion}) \approx 15\,000\text{--}20\,000 \text{ mmol/day}$ .

$\text{H}^+$  production (HCl,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , lactic acid,  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ , etc.) and adequate renal  $\text{H}^+$  excretion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 176 ff.) are the main factors that influence the first balance. A vegetarian diet can lead to a considerable addition of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (metabolism:  $\text{OH}^- + \text{CO}_2 \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^-$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 138).  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is excreted in the urine to compensate for the added supply (the urine of vegetarians therefore tends to be alkaline).

**Acid–base disturbances.** *Alkalosis* occurs when the pH of the blood rises above the normal range (see table), and *acidosis* occurs when it falls below the lower limits of normal. *Respiratory* acid–base disturbances occur due to primary changes in  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144), whereas *non-respiratory (metabolic)* disturbances occur due to a primary change in  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ . Acid–base disturbances can be partially or almost completely compensated.

#### Nonrespiratory (Metabolic) Acid–Base Disturbances

**Nonrespiratory acidosis** is most commonly caused by (1) *renal failure* or isolated renal tubular  $\text{H}^+$  secretion defect resulting in inability to eliminate normal quantities of  $\text{H}^+$  ions

(*renal acidosis*); (2) *hyperkalemia* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 182); (3) increased  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid and acetoacetic acid production (*diabetes mellitus, starvation*); (4) increased anaerobic conversion of glucose to lactic acid ( $\rightarrow$  lactate $^- + \text{H}^+$ ), e.g., due to *strenuous physical work* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74) or hypoxia; (5) increased metabolic production of HCl and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  in individuals with a *high intake of dietary proteins*; and (6) *loss of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$*  through renal excretion (proximal renal tubular acidosis, use of carbonic anhydrase inhibitors) or *diarrhea*.

**Buffering** ( $\rightarrow$  A1) of excess hydrogen ions occurs in the first stage of non-respiratory acidosis (every  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  lost results in an  $\text{H}^+$  gained). Two-thirds and one-third of the buffering is achieved by  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and non-bicarbonate buffer bases (NBB $^-$ ), respectively, and the  $\text{CO}_2$  arising from  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  buffering is eliminated from the body by the lungs (open system;  $\rightarrow$  p. 140). The standard bicarbonate concentration  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$ , the actual bicarbonate concentration  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  and the buffer base concentration [BB] *decrease* (negative base excess;  $\rightarrow$  p. 146).

**Respiratory compensation** of non-respiratory acidosis ( $\rightarrow$  A2) occurs in the second stage. The total ventilation rises in response to the reduced pH levels (via central chemosensors), leading to a decrease in the alveolar and arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  (hyperventilation;  $\rightarrow$  A2a). This not only helps to return the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio towards normal (20:1), but also converts NBB-H back to NBB $^-$  (due to the increasing pH) ( $\rightarrow$  A2b). The latter process also requires  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and, thus, further compensatory pulmonary elimination of  $\text{CO}_2$  ( $\rightarrow$  A2c). If the cause of acidosis persists, respiratory compensation will eventually become insufficient, and increased renal excretion of  $\text{H}^+$  ions will occur ( $\rightarrow$  p. 176 ff.), provided that the acidosis is not of renal origin (see above, cause 1).

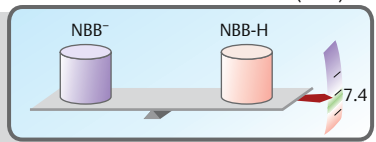
**Nonrespiratory (metabolic) alkalosis** is caused by (1) the administration of bases (e.g.,  *$\text{HCO}_3^-$  infusion*); (2) increased breakdown of *organic anions* (e.g., lactate $^-$ ,  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate $^{2-}$ ); (3) loss of  $\text{H}^+$  ions due to *vomiting* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 240) or *hypokalemia*; and (4) *volume depletion*. **Buffering** in metabolic alkalosis is similar to that of non-respiratory acidosis (rise in  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$ , positive base excess). Nonetheless, the capacity for **respiratory compensa-**

**A. Metabolic acidosis**

Bicarbonate buffer

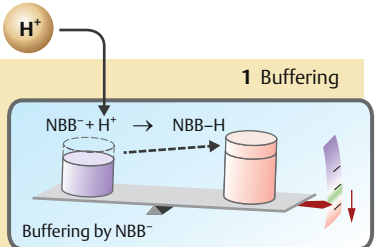
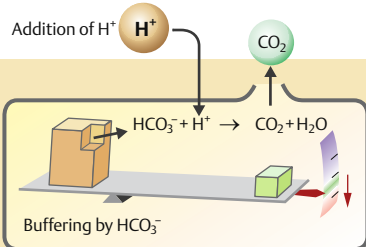


Non-bicarbonate buffer (NBB)



Normal: pH 7.4

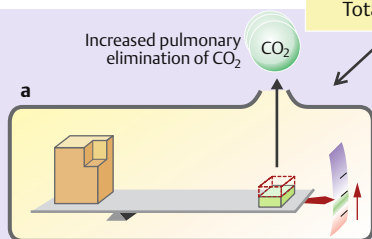
Addition of  $H^+$



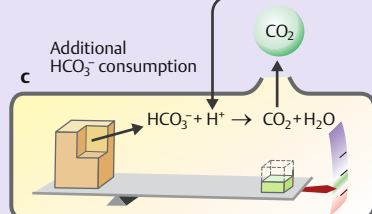
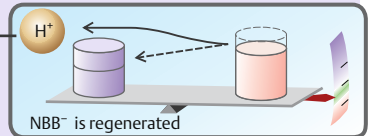
Non-respiratory (metabolic) acidosis: pH ↓

Stimulation of chemosensors

Total ventilation increases



2 Respiratory compensation



But:  $[HCO_3^-]_{act}$  und  $P_{CO_2}$  are decreased

Increased renal excretion of  $H^+$  and  $NH_4^+$

$HCO_3^-$  replenished

tion through hypoventilation is very limited because of the resulting  $O_2$  deficit.

### Respiratory Acid-Base Disturbances

**Respiratory alkalosis** ( $\rightarrow$  B) occurs when the lungs eliminate more  $CO_2$  than is produced by metabolism (*hyperventilation*), resulting in a decrease in plasma  $P_{CO_2}$  (hypocapnia). Inversely, respiratory acidosis occurs ( $\rightarrow$  B) when less  $CO_2$  is eliminated than produced (*hypoventilation*), resulting in an increase in plasma  $P_{CO_2}$  (hypercapnia). Whereas bicarbonate and non-bicarbonate buffer bases ( $NBB^-$ ) jointly buffer the pH decrease in non-respiratory acidosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142), the two buffer systems behave very differently in respiratory alkalosis ( $\rightarrow$  B1). In the latter case, the  $HCO_3^-/CO_2$  system is not effective because the change in  $P_{CO_2}$  is the primary *cause*, not the result of respiratory alkalosis.

**Respiratory acidosis** can occur as the result of lung tissue damage (e.g., tuberculosis), impairment of alveolar gas exchange (e.g., pulmonary edema), paralysis of respiratory muscles (e.g., polio), insufficient respiratory drive (e.g., narcotic overdose), reduced chest motility (e.g., extreme spinal curvature), and many other conditions. The resulting increase in plasma  $CO_2$  concentration ( $[CO_2] = \alpha \cdot P_{CO_2}$ ) is followed by increased  $HCO_3^-$  and  $H^+$  production ( $\rightarrow$  B1, left panel). The  $H^+$  ions are buffered by  $NBB$  bases ( $NBB^- + H^+ \rightarrow NBB-H$ ;  $\rightarrow$  B1, right panel) while  $[HCO_3^-]_{Act}$  increases. Unlike non-respiratory acidosis,  $[HCO_3^-]_{St}$  remains unchanged (at least initially since it is defined for normal  $P_{CO_2}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 146) and  $[BB]$  remains unchanged because the  $[NBB^-]$  decrease equals the  $[HCO_3^-]_{Act}$  increase. Since the percentage increase in  $[HCO_3^-]_{Act}$  is much lower than the rise in  $[CO_2]$ , the  $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$  ratio and pH are lower than normal (acidosis).

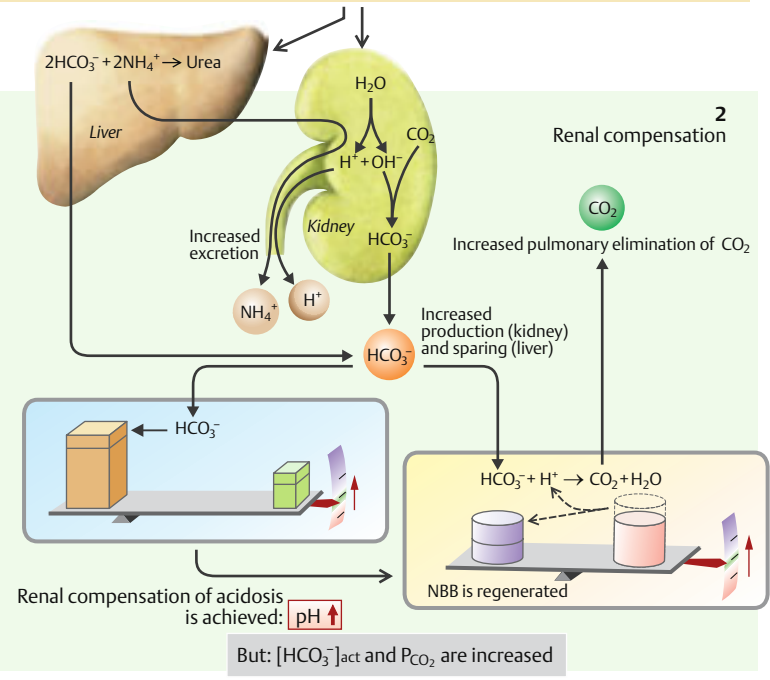
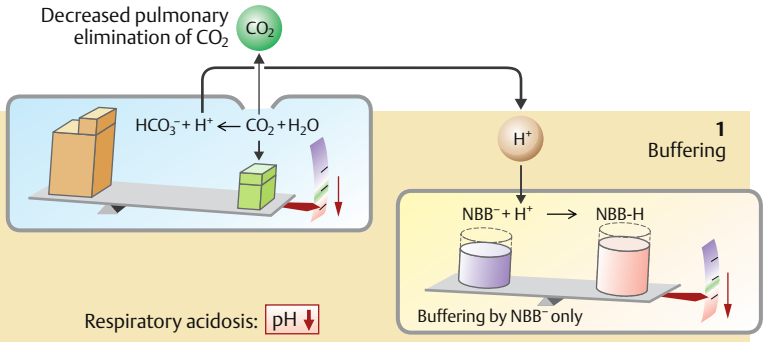
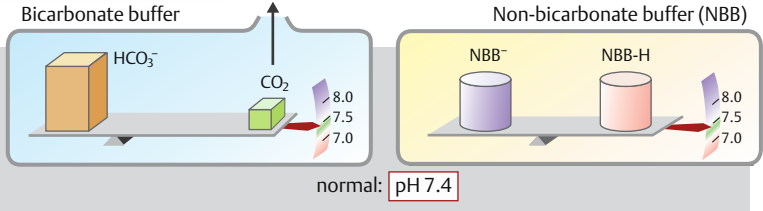
If the increased  $P_{CO_2}$  persists, **renal compensation** ( $\rightarrow$  B2) of the respiratory disturbance will occur. The kidneys begin to excrete increased quantities of  $H^+$  in form of titratable acidity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 176 ff.) and, after a latency period of 1 to 2 days, of  $NH_4^+$  as well. Each  $NH_4^+$  ion excreted results in the sparing of one  $HCO_3^-$  ion in the liver, and each  $H^+$  ion excreted results in the tubular cellular release of one  $HCO_3^-$  ion into the blood ( $\rightarrow$  p. 176 ff.). This process con-

tinues until the pH has been reasonably normalized despite the  $P_{CO_2}$  increase. A portion of the  $HCO_3^-$  is used to buffer the  $H^+$  ions liberated during the reaction  $NBB-H \rightarrow NBB^- + H^+$  ( $\rightarrow$  B2, right panel). Because of the relatively long latency for renal compensation, the drop in pH is more pronounced in acute respiratory acidosis than in chronic respiratory acidosis. In the chronic form,  $[HCO_3^-]_{Act}$  can rise by about 1 mmol per 1.34 kPa (10 mmHg) increase in  $P_{CO_2}$ .

**Respiratory alkalosis** is usually *caused* by hyperventilation due to anxiety or high altitude (oxygen deficit ventilation;  $\rightarrow$  p. 136), resulting in a fall in plasma  $P_{CO_2}$ . This leads to a slight decrease in  $[HCO_3^-]_{Act}$  since a small portion of the  $HCO_3^-$  is converted to  $CO_2$  ( $H^+ + HCO_3^- \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$ ); the  $HCO_3^-$  required for this reaction is supplied by  $H^+$  ions from  $NBB^-$ 's (**buffering**:  $NBB-H \rightarrow NBB^- + H^+$ ). This is also the reason for the additional drop in  $[HCO_3^-]_{Act}$  when respiratory compensation of non-respiratory acidosis occurs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 143 A, **bottom** panel, and p. 146). Further reduction of  $[HCO_3^-]_{Act}$  is required for adequate pH normalization (compensation). This is achieved through reduced renal tubular secretion of  $H^+$ . As a consequence, increased renal excretion of  $HCO_3^-$  will occur (renal compensation).

In acute respiratory acidosis or alkalosis,  $CO_2$  diffuses more rapidly than  $HCO_3^-$  and  $H^+$  from the blood into the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). The low  $NBB$  concentrations there causes relatively strong fluctuations in the pH of the CSF ( $\rightarrow$  p. 126), providing an adequate stimulus for central chemosensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 132).

**B. Respiratory acidosis**



The *Henderson–Hasselbalch equation* for the  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer system states:

$$\text{pH} = \text{pK}_a + \log \left( \frac{[\text{HCO}_3^-]}{[\text{CO}_2]} \right). \quad [6.5]$$

Since  $[\text{CO}_2] = \alpha \cdot P_{\text{CO}_2}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 126), Equation 6.5 contains two constants ( $\text{pK}_a$  and  $\alpha$ ) and three variables ( $\text{pH}$ ,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ , and  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ ). At  $37^\circ\text{C}$  in plasma,  $\text{pK}_a = 6.1$  and  $\alpha = 0.225 \text{ mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1}$  (cf. p. 126). When one of the variables remains constant (e.g.,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ ), the other two (e.g.,  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $\text{pH}$ ) are interdependent. In a graphic representation, this dependency is reflected as a straight line when the logarithm of  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  is plotted against the  $\text{pH}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A–C** and p. 388).

When the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  varies in a **bicarbonate solution** (without other buffers), the  $\text{pH}$  changes but  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  remains constant ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, solid line). One can also plot the lines for different  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentrations, all of which are parallel ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, **B**, dotted orange lines). Figures **A** through **C** use a scale that ensures that the bicarbonate lines intersect the coordinates at  $45^\circ$  angles. The **Siggaard–Andersen nomogram** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**) does not use the lines, but only the points of intersection of the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  lines with the normal  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  of 5.33 kPa (40 mmHg).

The **blood** contains not only the  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer but also **non-bicarbonate buffers**, **NBB** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 138). Thus, a change in the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  does not alter the  $\text{pH}$  as much as in a solution containing the  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer alone ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144). In the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}/\text{pH}$  nomogram, the slope is therefore steeper than  $45^\circ$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, green and red lines). Hence, the **actual bicarbonate** concentration,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$ , in blood changes and shifts in the same direction as the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  if the  $\text{pH}$  varies ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144). Therefore, both the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  and the **standard bicarbonate** concentration,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$ , can be determined in clinical blood tests. By definition,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  represents the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  at a normal  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  of 5.33 kPa (40 mmHg).  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  therefore permits an assessment of  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  independent of  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  changes.

$[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  and  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  are **determined** using measured  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $\text{pH}$  values obtained with a blood gas analyzer. When plotted on the *Siggaard–Andersen nomogram*,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  is read from the line as indicated by the points of intersect of the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  line ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, orange lines) and the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}/\text{pH}$  line (**B** and **C**, green and red lines) at normal  $P_{\text{CO}_2} = 5.33$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B** and **C**, points *D* and *d*).  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  is read from the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  line

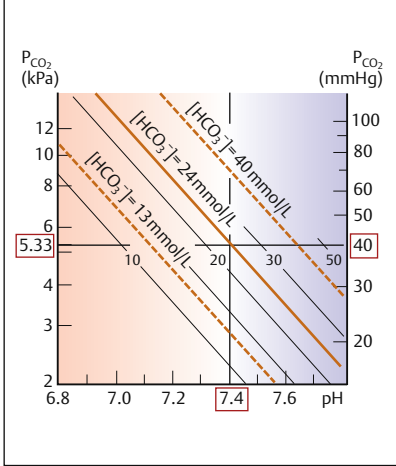
intersected by the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}/\text{pH}$  line at the level of the *actually measured*  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ . Since the normal and measured  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  values agree in normals, their  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  is usually equal to  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$ . If  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  deviates from normal ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, **C**, point *c*),  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  is read at point *e* on the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  line ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, **C**, interrupted  $45^\circ$  line) on which the actually measured  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  lies ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, **C**, point *c*).

**Blood  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $\text{pH}$  measurement.** When using the equilibration method (*Astrup method*), three  $\text{pH}$  measurements are taken: (1) in the unchanged blood sample; (2) after equilibration with a high  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  (e.g., 10 kPa [75 mmHg];  $\rightarrow$  **C**, points *A* and *a*), and (3) after equilibration with a low  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  (e.g., 2.7 kPa [20 mmHg];  $\rightarrow$  **C**, points *B* and *b*). The  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  of the original blood sample can then be read from lines *A–B* and *a–b* using the  $\text{pH}$  value obtained in measurement 1. In normals ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, upper case letters, green),  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}} = [\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}} = 24 \text{ mmol/L}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, points *E* and *D*). **Example 2** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, lower case letters, red) shows an acid–base disturbance: The  $\text{pH}$  is too low (7.2) and  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, point *d*) has dropped to 13 mmol/L (metabolic acidosis). This has been partially compensated ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142) by a reduction in  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  to 4 kPa, which led to a consequent reduction in  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  to 11 mmol/L ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, point *e*).

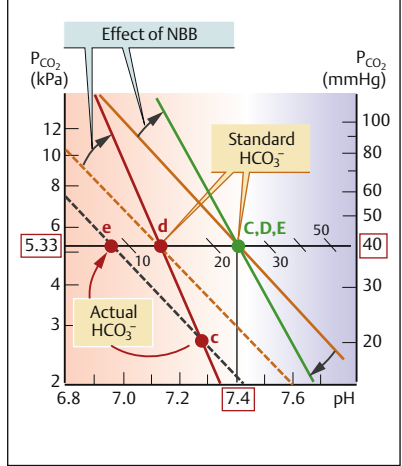
**Total buffer bases (BB) and base excess (BE)** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142) can also be read from the *Siggaard–Andersen nomogram* ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). The base excess (points *F* and *f* on the curve) is the difference between the measured buffer base value (points *G* or *g*) and the normal buffer base value (point *G*). Point *G* is dependent on the hemoglobin concentration of the blood ( $\rightarrow$  **C**;  $[\text{Hb}]/\text{BB}$  comparison). Like  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$ , deviation of BB from the norm ( $0 \pm 2.5 \text{ mEq/L}$ ) is diagnostic of primary non-respiratory acid–base disturbances.

The  $P_{\text{CO}_2}/\text{pH}$  line of the blood sample in plate **C** can also be determined if (1) the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  (without equilibration), (2) the  $\text{pH}$ , and (3) the hemoglobin concentration are known. One point ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, point *c*) on the unknown line can be drawn using (1) and (2). The line must be drawn through the point in such a way that  $\text{BB}(\text{point } g) - \text{BB}_{\text{normal}}(\text{dependent on Hb value}) = \text{BE}(\text{point } f)$ .

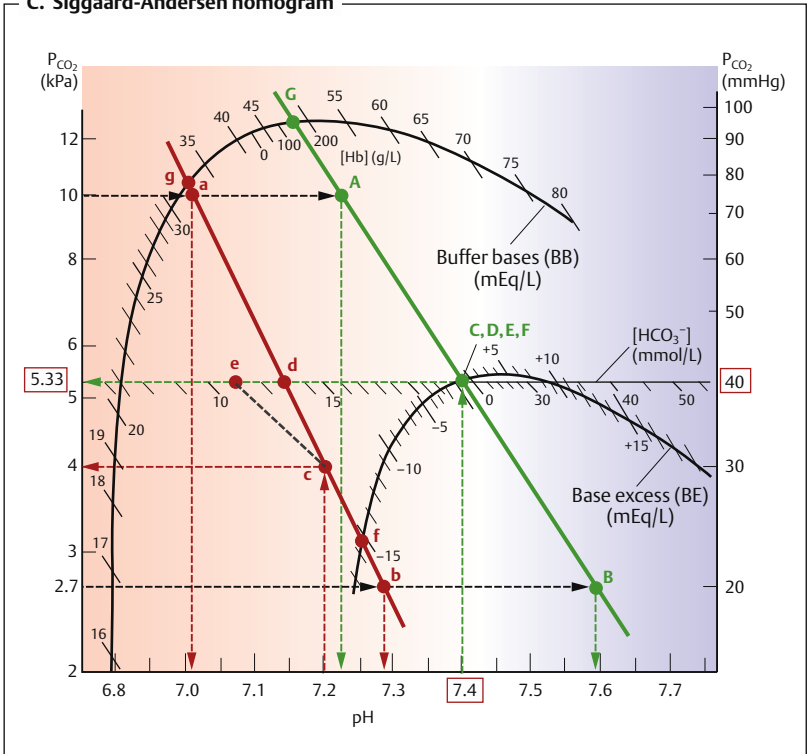
A.  $P_{CO_2}$ /pH nomogram (without NBB)



B.  $P_{CO_2}$ /pH nomogram (with NBB)



C. Siggaard-Andersen nomogram



Three fundamental mechanisms characterize kidney function: (1) large quantities of water and solutes are **filtered** from the blood. (2) This *primary urine* enters the tubule, where most of it is **reabsorbed**, i.e., it exits the tubule and passes back into the blood. (3) Certain substances (e.g., toxins) are not only not reabsorbed but actively **secreted** into the tubule lumen. The non-reabsorbed residual filtrate is **excreted** together with the secreted substances in the *final urine*.

**Functions:** The kidneys (1) adjust salt and water excretion to maintain a constant *extracellular fluid volume* and *osmolality*; (2) they help to maintain *acid-base homeostasis*; (3) they *eliminate end-products* of metabolism and foreign substances while (4) preserving useful compounds (e.g., glucose) by reabsorption; (5) they produce *hormones* (e.g., erythropoietin) and hormone activators (renin), and (6) have *metabolic functions* (protein and peptide catabolism, gluconeogenesis, etc.).

### Nephron Structure

Each kidney contains about  $10^6$  **nephrons**, each consisting of the malpighian body and the tubule. The **malpighian body** is located in the renal cortex ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) and consists of a tuft of capillaries (**glomerulus**) surrounded by a double-walled capsule (**Bowman's capsule**). The *primary urine* accumulates in the capsular space between its two layers ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Blood enters the glomerulus by an afferent arteriole (*vas afferens*) and exits via an efferent arteriole (*vas efferens*) from which the peritubular capillary network arises ( $\rightarrow$  p. 150). The **glomerular filter** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**) separates the blood side from the Bowman's capsular space.

The **glomerular filter** comprises the partially fenestrated, partially perforated endothelium of the glomerular capillaries (50–100 nm pore size) followed by the basal membrane as the second layer and the visceral membrane of Bowman's capsule on the urine side. The latter is formed by *podocytes* with numerous interdigitating footlike processes (*pedicels*). The slit-like spaces between them are covered by the *slit membrane*, the *pores* of which are about 5 nm in diameter. They are shaped by the protein *nephrine*, which is anchored to the cytoskeleton of the podocytes.

◆ The **proximal tubule** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, dark green) is the longest part of a nephron (ca. 10 mm). Its twisted initial segment (*proximal convoluted tubule*, PCT;  $\rightarrow$  **A3**) merges into a straight part, PST (*pars recta*;  $\rightarrow$  **A4**).

◆ The **loop of Henle** consists of a *thick descending limb* that extends into the renal medulla ( $\rightarrow$  **A4** = PST), a *thin descending limb* ( $\rightarrow$  **A5**), a *thin ascending limb* (only in juxtamedullary nephrons which have long loops), and a *thick ascending limb*, TAL ( $\rightarrow$  **A6**). It contains the **macula densa** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 186), a group of specialized cells that closely communicate with the glomerulus of the respective nephron. Only about 20% of all Henle's loops (those of the deep juxtamedullary nephrons) are long enough to penetrate into the inner medulla. Cortical nephrons have shorter loops ( $\rightarrow$  **A** and p. 150).

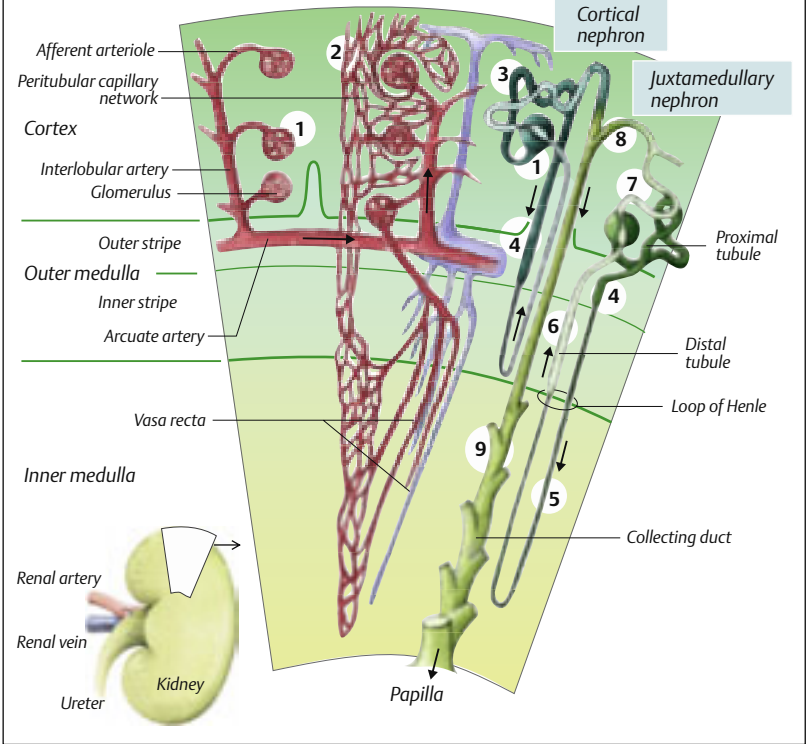
◆ The **distal tubule** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, grayish green) has an initially straight part (= TAL of Henle's loop;  $\rightarrow$  **A6**) that merges with a convoluted part (*distal convoluted tubule*, DCT;  $\rightarrow$  **A7**).

The DCT merges with a connecting tubule ( $\rightarrow$  **A8**). Many of them lead into a **collecting duct**, CD ( $\rightarrow$  **A9**) which extends through the renal cortex (cortical CD) and medulla (medullary CD). At the *renal papilla* the collecting ducts opens in the *renal pelvis*. From there, the urine (propelled by peristaltic contractions) passes via the *ureter* into the *urinary bladder* and, finally, into the *urethra*, through which the urine exits the body.

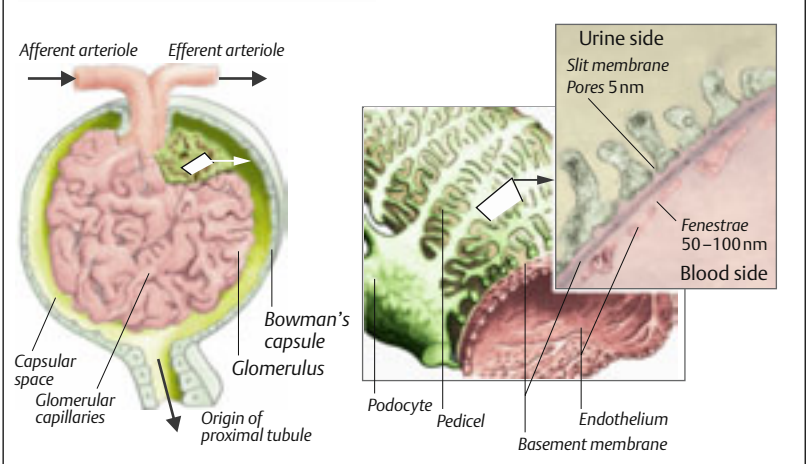
### Micturition

Voiding of the bladder is controlled by reflexes. Filling of the bladder activates the smooth detrusor muscle of the bladder wall via stretch sensors and parasympathetic neurons ( $S_2$ – $S_4$ ,  $\rightarrow$  p. 78 ff.). At low filling volumes, the wall relaxes via sympathetic neurons ( $L_1$ – $L_2$ ) controlled by supraspinal centers (pons). At higher filling volumes ( $> 0.3$  L), the threshold pressure (about 1 kPa) that triggers the *micturition reflex* via a positive feedback loop is reached: The detrusor muscle contracts  $\rightarrow$  pressure  $\uparrow$   $\rightarrow$  contraction  $\uparrow\uparrow$  and so on until the *internal* (smooth m.) and *external sphincter* (striated m.) open so the urine can exit the body.

**A. Anatomy of the kidney (schematic diagram)**



**B. Glomerulus and Bowman's capsule**



The *arcuate arteries* ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) pass between the renal cortex and medulla. They branch towards the cortex into the *interlobular arteries* ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) from which the *afferent arterioles* (or vasa afferentia) arise ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Unlike other organs, the kidney has *two successive capillary networks* that are connected with each other by an *efferent arteriole* (or vas efferens) ( $\rightarrow$  **A, B**). Pressure in the first network of **glomerular capillaries** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 148) is a relatively *high* ( $\rightarrow$  **B** and p. 152) and is regulated by adjusting the width of interlobular artery, the afferent and/or efferent arterioles ( $\rightarrow$  **A 3,4**). The second network of **peritubular capillaries** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) winds around the cortical tubules. It supplies the tubule cells with blood, but it is also involved in the exchange of substances with the tubule lumen (reabsorption, secretion;  $\rightarrow$  p. 154ff.).

The **renal blood flow (RBF)** is relatively high, ca. 1.2 L/min, equivalent to 20–25% of the cardiac output. This is required to maintain a high glomerular filtration rate (GFR;  $\rightarrow$  p. 152) and results in a very low arteriovenous  $O_2$  difference (ca. 15 mL/L of blood). In the *renal cortex*,  **$O_2$  is consumed** (ca. 18 mL/min) for oxidative **metabolism** of fatty acids, etc. Most of the ATP produced in the process is used to fuel active transport. In the renal medulla, metabolism is mainly anaerobic ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72).

Around 90% of the renal blood supply goes to the cortex. Per gram of tissue, approximately 5, 1.75 and 0.5 mL/min of blood pass through the cortex, outer medulla, and inner medulla, respectively. The latter value is still higher than in most organs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 215A).

The kidney contains **two types of nephrons** that differ with respect to the features of their second network of capillaries ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).

- ◆ **Cortical nephrons** are supplied by peritubular capillaries (see above) and have short loops of Henle.

- ◆ **Juxtamedullary nephrons** are located near the cortex-medulla junction. Their efferent arterioles give rise to relatively long ( $\leq 40$  mm), straight arterioles (**vasa recta**) that descend into the renal medulla. The vasa recta supply the renal medulla and can accompany long loops of Henle of juxtamedullary nephrons as far as the tip of the renal papilla ( $\rightarrow$  p. 148). Their hairpin shape is important for the concentration of urine ( $\rightarrow$  p. 164ff.).

Any **change in blood distribution** to these two types of nephrons affects NaCl excretion. Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) increases the GFR of the juxtamedullary nephrons.

Due to **autoregulation of renal blood flow**, only slight changes in *renal plasma flow (RPF)* and glomerular filtration rate (GFR) occur (even in a denervated kidney) when the systemic blood pressure fluctuates between 80 and about 180 mmHg ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). Resistance in the *interlobular arteries* and *afferent arterioles* located upstream to the cortical glomeruli is automatically adjusted when the mean blood pressure changes ( $\rightarrow$  **B, C**). If the blood pressure falls below about 80 mmHg, however, renal circulation and filtration will ultimately fail ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). RBF and GFR can also be regulated independently by making isolated changes in the (serial) resistances of the afferent and efferent arterioles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152).

Non-invasive **determination of RBF** is possible if the **RPF** is known (approx. **0.6 L/min**). RPF is obtained by measuring the amount balance (Fick's principle) of an intravenously injected test substance (e.g., *p*-aminohippurate, **PAH**) that is almost completely eliminated in the urine during one renal pass (PAH is filtered and highly secreted,  $\rightarrow$  p. 156ff.). The eliminated amount of PAH is calculated as the arterial inflow of PAH into the kidney minus the venous flow of PAH out of the kidney per unit time. Since

$$\text{Amount/time} = (\text{volume/time}) \cdot \text{concentration} \quad [7.1]$$

$$(\text{RPF} \cdot \text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}) - (\text{RPF} \cdot \text{Prv}_{\text{PAH}}) = \dot{V}_{\text{U}} \cdot \text{U}_{\text{PAH}} \quad [7.2]$$

or

$$\text{RPF} = \dot{V}_{\text{U}} \cdot \text{U}_{\text{PAH}} / (\text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}} - \text{Prv}_{\text{PAH}}). \quad [7.3]$$

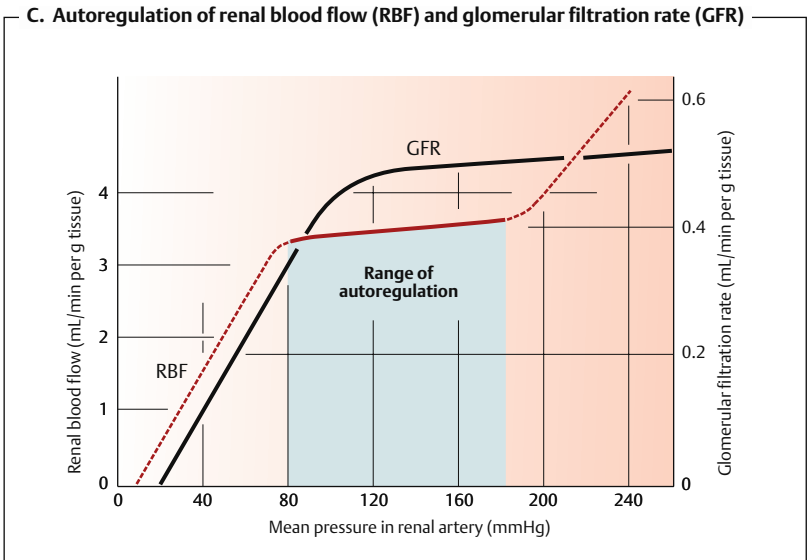
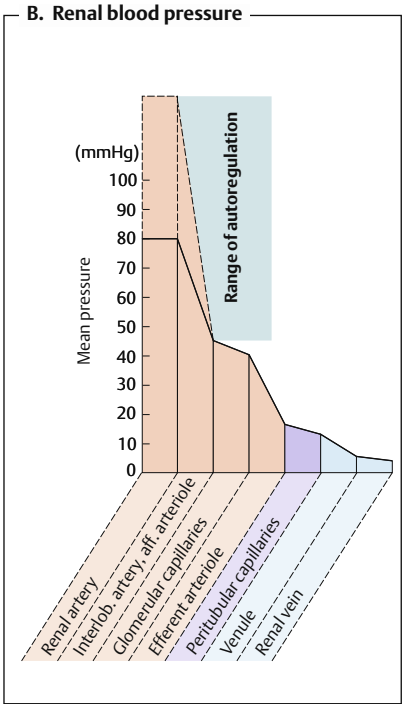
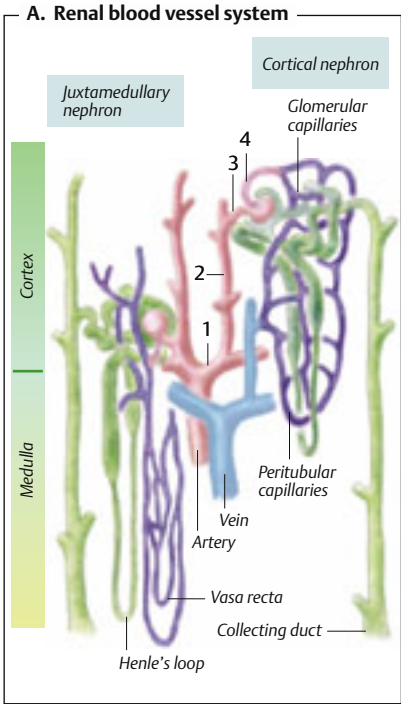
where  $\text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}$  is the arterial PAH conc.,  $\text{Prv}_{\text{PAH}}$  is the renal venous PAH conc.,  $\text{U}_{\text{PAH}}$  is the urinary PAH conc., and  $\dot{V}_{\text{U}}$  is the urine output/time.  $\text{Prv}_{\text{PAH}}$  makes up only about 10% of the  $\text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}$  and normally is not measured directly, but is estimated by dividing **PAH clearance** ( $= \dot{V}_{\text{U}} \cdot \text{U}_{\text{PAH}} / \text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 152) by a factor of 0.9. Therefore,

$$\text{RPF} = \dot{V}_{\text{U}} \cdot \text{U}_{\text{PAH}} / (0.9 \cdot \text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}). \quad [7.4]$$

This equation is only valid when the  $\text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}$  is not too high. Otherwise, PAH secretion will be saturated and PAH clearance will be much smaller than RPF ( $\rightarrow$  p. 161A).

RBF is derived by inserting the known hematocrit (Hct) value ( $\rightarrow$  p. 88) into the following equation:

$$\text{RBF} = \text{RPF} / (1 - \text{Hct}) \quad [7.5]$$



The **glomerular filtration rate (GFR)** is the total volume of fluid filtered by the glomeruli of both kidneys per unit time. It is normally about **120 mL/min** per 1.73 m<sup>2</sup> of body surface area, equivalent to around 180 L/day. Accordingly, the volume of exchangeable extracellular fluid of the whole body (ca. 17 L) enters the renal tubules about 10 times a day. About 99% of the GFR returns to the extracellular compartment by tubular reabsorption. The mean *fractional excretion of H<sub>2</sub>O* is therefore about 1% of the GFR, and absolute H<sub>2</sub>O excretion (= **urine output/time** =  $\dot{V}_U$ ) is about 1 to 2 L per day. (The filtration of dissolved substances is described on p. 154).

The GFR makes up about 20% of renal plasma flow, RPF ( $\rightarrow$  p. 150). The **filtration fraction (FF)** is defined as the ratio of GFR/RPF. The filtration fraction is increased by *atriopeptin*, a peptide hormone that increases efferent arteriolar resistance ( $R_e$ ) while lowering afferent arteriolar resistance ( $R_a$ ). This raises the effective filtration pressure in the glomerular capillaries without significantly changing the overall resistance in the renal circulation.

The effective filtration pressure ( $P_{\text{eff}}$ ) is the driving “force” for filtration.  $P_{\text{eff}}$  is the glomerular capillary pressure ( $P_{\text{cap}} \approx 48$  mmHg) minus the pressure in Bowman’s capsule ( $P_{\text{Bow}} \approx 13$  mmHg) and the oncotic pressure in plasma ( $\pi_{\text{cap}} = 25$  to 35 mmHg):

$$P_{\text{eff}} = P_{\text{cap}} - P_{\text{Bow}} - \pi_{\text{cap}} \quad [7.6]$$

$P_{\text{eff}}$  at the arterial end of the capillaries equals 48–13–25 = 10 mmHg. Because of the high filtration fraction, the plasma protein concentration and, therefore,  $\pi_{\text{cap}}$  values along the glomerular capillaries increase ( $\rightarrow$  p. 384) and  $P_{\text{eff}}$  decreases. (The mean effective filtration pressure,  $\bar{P}_{\text{eff}}$ , is therefore used in Eq. 7.7.) Thus, filtration ceases (near distal end of capillary) when  $\pi_{\text{cap}}$  rises to about 35 mmHg, decreasing  $P_{\text{eff}}$  to zero (*filtration equilibrium*).

GFR is the product of  $\bar{P}_{\text{eff}}$  (mean for all glomeruli), the glomerular filtration area  $A$  (dependent on the number of intact glomeruli), and the water permeability  $k$  of the glomerular filter. The *ultrafiltration coefficient*  $K_f$  is used to represent  $A \cdot k$ . This yields

$$\text{GFR} = \bar{P}_{\text{eff}} \cdot K_f \quad [7.7]$$

**Indicators** present in the plasma are used to **measure GFR**. They must have the following properties:

- They must be freely filterable
- Their filtered amount must not change due to resorption or secretion in the tubule
- They must not be metabolized in the kidney
- They must not alter renal function

**Inulin**, which must be infused intravenously, fulfills these requirements. **Endogenous creatinine** (normally present in blood) can also be used with certain limitations.

The amount of indicator filtered over time ( $\rightarrow A$ ) is calculated as the plasma concentration of the indicator ( $P_{\text{in}}$ , in g/L or mol/L) times the GFR in L/min. The same amount of indicator/time appears in the urine (conditions 2 and 3; see above) and is calculated as  $\dot{V}_U$  (in L/min), times the indicator conc. in urine ( $U_{\text{in}}$ , in g/L or mol/L, resp.), i.e.  $P_{\text{in}} \cdot \text{GFR} = \dot{V}_U \cdot U_{\text{in}}$ , or:

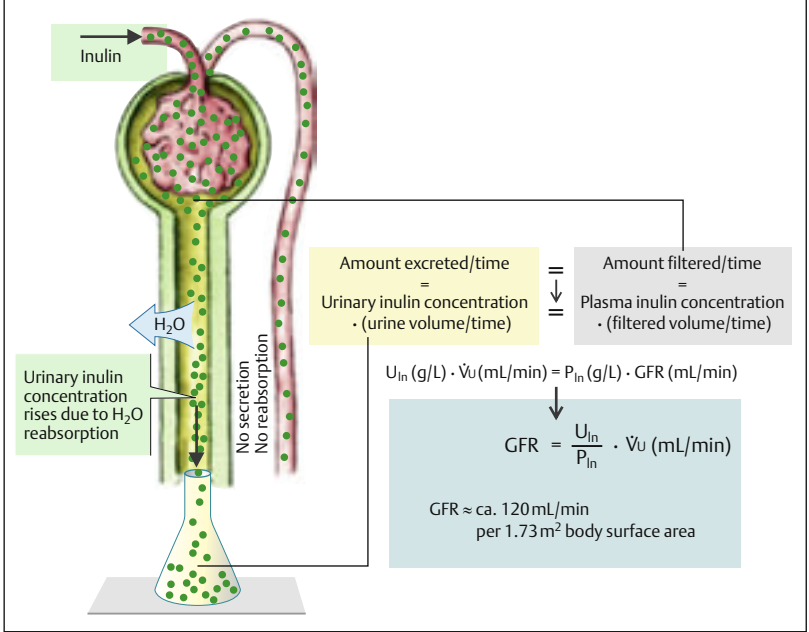
$$\text{GFR} = \frac{\dot{V}_U \cdot U_{\text{in}}}{P_{\text{in}}} [\text{L/min}] (\rightarrow A). \quad [7.8]$$

The expression on the right of Eq. 7.8 represents **clearance**, regardless of which substance is being investigated. Therefore, the *inulin or creatinine clearance represents the GFR*. (Although the plasma concentration of creatinine,  $P_{\text{cr}}$ , rises as the GFR falls,  $P_{\text{cr}}$  alone is a quite unreliable measure of GFR.)

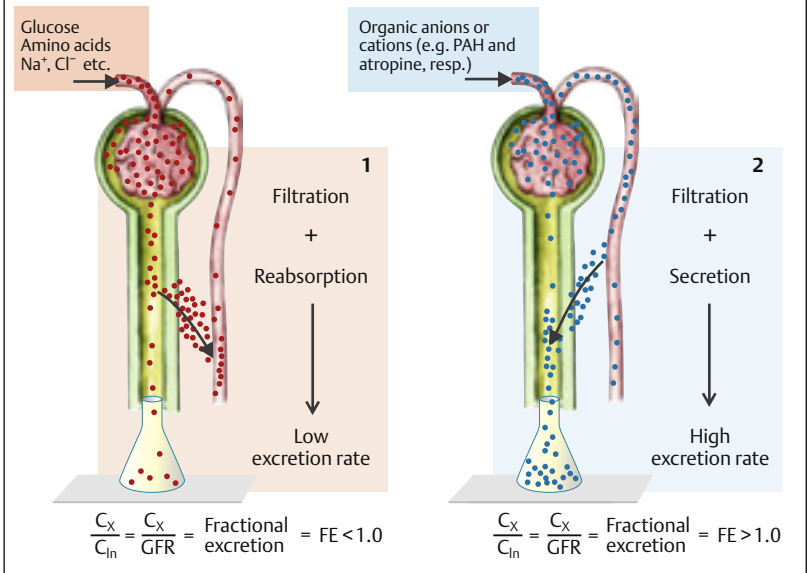
Clearance can also be regarded as the completely indicator-free (or cleared) plasma volume flowing through the kidney per unit time. **Fractional excretion (FE)** is the ratio of clearance of a given substance  $X$  to inulin clearance ( $C_X/C_{\text{in}}$ ) and defines which fraction of the filtered quantity of  $X$  was excreted (cf. p. 154).  $\text{FE} < 1$  if the substance is removed from the tubule by reabsorption (e.g.  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , amino acids, glucose, etc.;  $\rightarrow B1$ ), and  $\text{FE} > 1$  if the substance is subject to filtration plus tubular secretion ( $\rightarrow B2$ ). For PAH ( $\rightarrow$  p. 150), tubular secretion is so effective that  $\text{FE}_{\text{PAH}} \approx 5$  (500%).

The **absolute rate of reabsorption or secretion** by the kidneys of a freely filterable substance  $X$  (mol/min) is calculated as the difference between the filtered amount/time ( $\text{GFR} \cdot P_X$ ) and the excreted amount/time ( $\dot{V}_U \cdot U_X$ ), where a positive result means net reabsorption and a negative net secretion. (For inulin, the result would be zero.)

**A. Inulin clearance = glomerular filtration rate (GFR)**



**B. Clearance levels (1) lower or (2) higher than inulin clearance**



**Filtration of solutes.** The glomerular filtrate also contains small dissolved molecules of plasma (*ultrafiltrate*) ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152). The *glomerular sieving coefficient GSC* of a substance (= concentration in filtrate/concentration in plasma water) is a measure of the permeability of the glomerular filter for this substance ( $\rightarrow$  p. 148). Molecules with a radius of  $r < 1.8$  nm (molecular mass  $< \text{ca. } 10\,000$  Da) can freely pass through the filter ( $\text{GSC} \approx 1.0$ ), while those with a radius of  $r > 4.4$  nm (molecular mass  $> 80\,000$  Da, e.g., globulins) normally cannot pass through it ( $\text{GSC} = 0$ ). Only a portion of molecules where  $1.8 \text{ nm} < r < 4.4 \text{ nm}$  applies are able to pass through the filter ( $\text{GSC}$  ranges between 1 and 0). Negatively charged particles (e.g., albumin:  $r = 3.4$  nm;  $\text{GSC} \approx 0.0003$ ) are less permeable than neutral substances of equal radius because negative charges on the wall of the glomerular filter repel the ions. When small molecules are bound to plasma proteins (**protein binding**), the bound fraction is practically non-filterable ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24).

Molecules entrapped in the glomerular filter are believed to be eliminated by phagocytic mesangial macrophages ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.) and glomerular podocytes.

**Tubular epithelium.** The epithelial cells lining the renal tubule and collecting duct are *polar cells*. As such, their luminal (or apical) membrane on the urine side differs significantly from that of the basolateral membrane on the blood side. The luminal membrane of the proximal tubule has a high *brush border* consisting of *microvilli* that greatly increase the surface area (especially in the convoluted proximal tubule). The basolateral membrane of this tubule segment has deep folds (*basal labyrinth*) that are in close contact with the intracellular mitochondria ( $\rightarrow$  p. 9B), which produce the ATP needed for  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$ -ATPase ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) located in the basolateral membrane (of all epithelial cells). The large surface areas (about  $100 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the proximal tubule cells of both kidneys are needed to reabsorb the lion's share of filtered solutes within the contact time of a couple of seconds. Postproximal tubule cells do not need a brush border since the amount of substances reabsorbed decreases sharply from the proximal to the distal segments of the tubules.

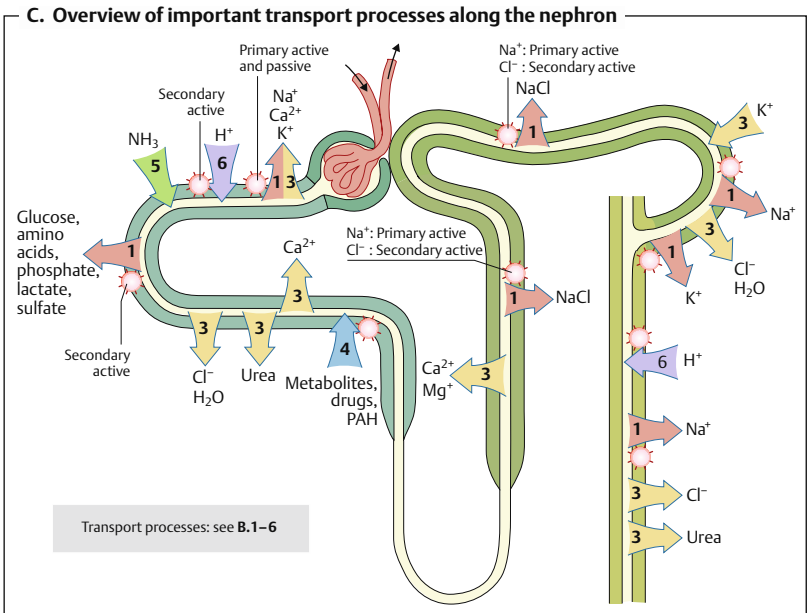
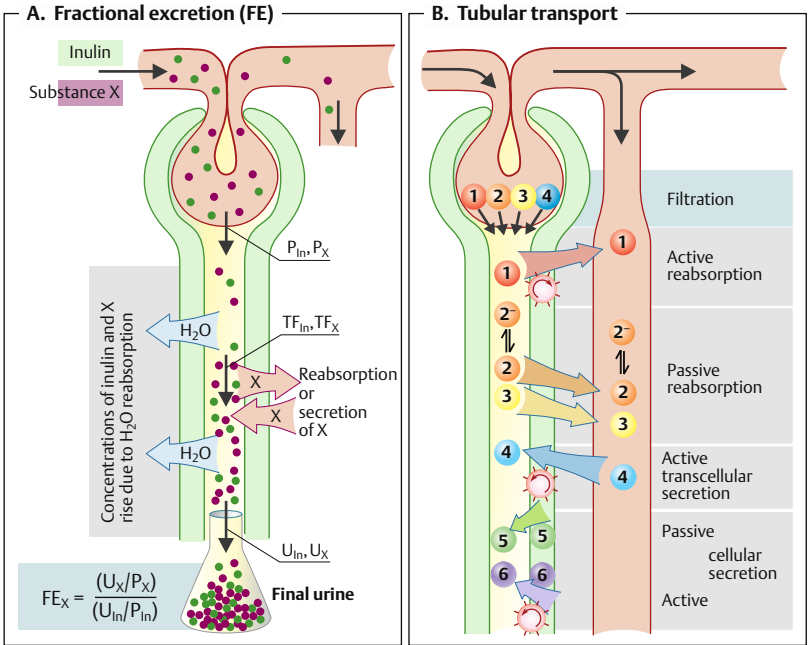
Whereas permeability of the two membranes in series is decisive for **transcellular transport** (reabsorption, secretion), the tightness of *tight junctions* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 18) determines the paracellular permeability of the epithelium for water and solutes that cross the epithelium by **paracellular transport**. The tight junctions in the proximal tubule are relatively permeable to water and small ions which, together with the large surface area of the cell membranes, makes the epithelium well equipped for paracellular and transcellular mass transport ( $\rightarrow$  D, column 2). The thin limbs of Henle's loop are relatively "leaky", while the thick ascending limb and the rest of the tubule and collecting duct are "moderately tight" epithelia. The tighter epithelia can develop much higher *trans-epithelial chemical and electrical gradients* than "leaky" epithelia.

**Measurement of reabsorption, secretion and excretion.** Whether and to which degree a substance filtered by the glomerulus is reabsorbed or secreted at the tubule and collecting duct cannot be determined based on its urinary concentration alone as concentrations rise due to the reabsorption of water ( $\rightarrow$  p. 164). The urinary/plasma inulin (or creatinine) concentration ratio,  $U_{in}/P_{in}$  is a *measure of the degree of water reabsorption*. These substances can be used as indicators because they are neither reabsorbed nor secreted ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152). Thus, changes in indicator concentration along the length of the tubule occur due to the  **$\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption** alone ( $\rightarrow$  A). If  $U_{in}/P_{in} = 200$ , the inulin concentration in the final urine is 200 times higher than in the original filtrate. This implies that *fractional excretion of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  ( $FE_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$ )* is  $1/200$  or  $0.005$  or  $0.5\%$  of the GFR. Determination of the concentration of a (freely filterable and perhaps additionally secreted) substance X in the same plasma and urine samples for which  $U_{in}/P_{in}$  was measured will yield  $U_x/P_x$ . Considering  $U_{in}/P_{in}$ , the fractional excretion of X,  $FE_x$  can be calculated as follows ( $\rightarrow$  A and D, in % in column 5):

$$FE_x = (U_x/P_x)/(U_{in}/P_{in}) \quad [7.9]$$

Eq. 7.9 can be derived from  $C_x/C_{in}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152) when simplified for  $\dot{V}_U$ . The **fractional reabsorption of X ( $FR_x$ )** is calculated as

$$FR_x = 1 - FE_x \quad [7.10] \blacktriangleright$$



► **Reabsorption in different segments of the tubule.** The concentration of a substance X ( $TF_x$ ) and inulin ( $TF_{in}$ ) in tubular fluid can be measured via micropuncture ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). The values can be used to calculate the non-reabsorbed fraction (*fractional delivery*,  $FD$ ) of a freely filtered substance X as follows:

$$FD = (TF_x/P_x)/(TF_{in}/P_{in}),$$

where  $P_x$  and  $P_{in}$  are the respective concentrations in plasma (more precisely: in plasma water).

*Fractional reabsorption* ( $FR$ ) up to the sampling site can then be derived from  $1 - FD$  ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, columns 2 and 3, in %).

**Reabsorption and secretion of various substances** (see pp. 16–30, transport mechanisms). Apart from  $H_2O$ , many inorganic ions (e.g.,  $Na^+$ ,  $Cl^-$ ,  $K^+$ ,  $Ca^{2+}$ , and  $Mg^{2+}$ ) and organic substances (e.g.,  $HCO_3^-$ , D-glucose, L-amino acids, urate, lactate, vitamin C, peptides and proteins;  $\rightarrow$  **C**, **D**, p. 158ff.) are also subject to tubular **reabsorption** ( $\rightarrow$  **B1–3**). Endogenous products of metabolism (e.g., urate, glucuronides, hippurates, and sulfates) and foreign substances (e.g., penicillin, diuretics, and PAH;  $\rightarrow$  p. 150) enter the tubular urine by way of **transcellular secretion** ( $\rightarrow$  **B4**, **C**). Many substances, such as ammonia ( $NH_3$ ) and  $H^+$  are first produced by tubule cells before they enter the tubule by **cellular secretion**.  $NH_3$  enters the tubule lumen by passive transport ( $\rightarrow$  **B5**), while  $H^+$  ions are secreted by active transport ( $\rightarrow$  **B6** and p. 176 ff.).

$Na^+/K^+$  transport by  **$Na^+-K^+-ATPase$**  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) in the basolateral membrane of the tubule and collecting duct serves as the “**motor**” for most of these transport processes. By *primary active transport* (fueled directly by ATP consumption),  $Na^+-K^+-ATPase$  pumps  $Na^+$  out of the cell into the blood while pumping  $K^+$  in the opposite direction (subscript “i” = intracellular and “o” = extracellular). This creates two driving “forces” essential for the transport of numerous substances (including  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$ ): first, a **chemical  $Na^+$  gradient** ( $[Na^+]_o > [Na^+]_i$ ) and (because  $[K^+]_i > [K^+]_o$ ), second, a **membrane potential** (inside the cell is negative relative to the outside) which represents an **electrical gradient** and can drive ion transport ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 32ff. and 44).

**Transcellular transport** implies that two membranes must be crossed, usually by two different mechanisms. If a given substance (D-glucose, PAH, etc.) is actively transported across an epithelial barrier (i.e., against an electrochemical gradient;  $\rightarrow$  see p. 26ff.), at least one of the two serial membrane transport steps must also be active.

**Interaction of transporters.** Active and passive transport processes are usually closely interrelated. The active absorption of a solute such as  $Na^+$  or D-glucose, for example, results in the development of an *osmotic gradient* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24), leading to the passive absorption of water. When water is absorbed, certain solutes are carried along with it (*solvent drag*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 24), while other substrates within the tubule become more *concentrated*. The latter solutes (e.g.,  $Cl^-$  and urea) then return to the blood along their concentration gradients by passive reabsorption. Electrogenic ion transport and ion-coupled transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 28) can depolarize or hyperpolarize only the luminal or only the basolateral membrane of the tubule cells. This causes a *transepithelial potential* which serves as the driving “force” for paracellular ion transport in some cases.

Since non-ionized forms of weak electrolytes are more lipid-soluble than ionized forms, they are better able to penetrate the membrane (**non-ionic diffusion**;  $\rightarrow$  **B2**). Thus, the pH of the urine has a greater influence on passive reabsorption by non-ionic diffusion. *Molecular size* also influences diffusion: the smaller a molecule, the larger its diffusion coefficient ( $\rightarrow$  p. 20ff.).

## D. Reabsorption, secretion and fractional excretion

Substance	Fractional reabsorption (FR) [%]						Effects: ↑ raises FE ↓ lowers FE
	Concentration in plasma water (P) [mmol/L]	Fractional reabsorption (FR) [%]			Fractional excretion (FE) [% of filtered amount]	P = Plasma concentration TF = Concentration in tubular urine	
		% in proximal tubule (TF/P)	% in loop of Henle (TF/P)	Total %			
<b>H<sub>2</sub>O</b>	---	65%	10%	93%–99.5%	0.5%–7%	ADH: ↓	
<b>Na<sup>+</sup></b>	153	65% (1.0)	25% (0.4)	95%–99.5%	0.5%–5%	Aldosterone: ↓ ADH: ↓ ANP: ↑	
<b>K<sup>+</sup></b>	4,6	65% (1.0)	10%–20%	Secretion possible	2%–150%	Aldosterone: ↑	
<b>Ca<sup>2+</sup></b>	Free: 1.6	60% (1.1)	30%	95%–99%	1%–5%	PTH: ↓ Acidosis: ↑	
<b>Mg<sup>2+</sup></b>	Free: 0.6	15% (2.5)	ca. 70%	80%–95%	5%–20%	P rise: ↑	
<b>Cl<sup>-</sup></b>	112	55% (1.3)	ca. 20%	95%–99.5%	0.5%–5%	---	
<b>HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup></b>	24	93% (0.2)		98%–99%	1%–2%	Alkalosis: ↑	
<b>Phosphate</b>	2.2	65% (1.0)	15%	80%–97%	3%–20%	P rise: ↑ PTH: ↑ Ca <sup>2+</sup> falls: ↑ Acidosis: ↑	
<b>D-Glucose</b>	5	96% (0.1)	4%	≈ 100%	≈ 0%	Sharp P rise: ↑	
<b>Urea</b>	5	50% (1.4)	Secretion	ca. 60%	ca. 40%	Diuresis: ↑	
<b>Creatinine</b>	0.1	0% (2.9)	0%	0%	100%	---	
<b>PAH (I.V.)</b>	C <sub>test</sub>	Secretion	Secretion	Secretion	≈ 500%	Sharp P rise: ↓	

The **filtered load of a substance** is the product of its plasma concentration and glomerular filtration rate (GFR). Since the GFR is high (ca. 180 L/day), enormous quantities of substances enter the primary urine each day (e.g., 160 g/day of D-glucose).

Fractional excretion (FE, → p. 154) of **D-glucose** is very low (FE ≈ 0.4%). This virtually complete reabsorption is achieved by secondary active transport (*Na<sup>+</sup>-glucose symport*) at the luminal cell membrane (→ B and p. 29 B1). About 95% of this activity occurs in the proximal tubule.

If the plasma glucose conc. exceeds 10–15 mmol/L, as in diabetes mellitus (normally 5 mmol/L), *glucosuria* develops, and urinary glucose conc. rises (→ A). Glucose reabsorption therefore exhibits *saturation kinetics* (Michaelis-Menten kinetics; → p. 28). The above example illustrates *prerenal glucosuria*. *Renal glucosuria* can also occur when one of the tubular glucose carriers is defective.

Low-affinity **carriers** in the luminal cell membrane of the *pars convoluta* (sodium-glucose transporter type 2 = SGLT2) and high-affinity carriers (SGLT1) in the *pars recta* are responsible for D-glucose reabsorption. The co-transport of D-glucose and Na<sup>+</sup> occurs in each case, namely at a ratio of 1 : 1 with SGLT2 and 1 : 2 with SGLT1. The energy required for this form of *secondary active* glucose transport is supplied by the electrochemical Na<sup>+</sup> gradient directed towards the cell interior. Because of the co-transport of two Na<sup>+</sup> ions, the gradient for SGLT1 is twice as large as that for SGLT2. A *uniporter* (GLUT2 = glucose transporter type 2) on the blood side facilitates the passive transport of accumulated intracellular glucose out of the cell (*facilitated diffusion*, → p. 22). **D-galactose** also makes use of the SGLT1 carrier, while **D-fructose** is passively absorbed by tubule cells (GLUT5).

The plasma contains over 25 **amino acids**, and about 70 g of amino acids are filtered each day. Like D-glucose, most L-amino acids are reabsorbed at proximal tubule cells by Na<sup>+</sup>-coupled secondary active transport (→ B and p. 29 B3). At least 7 different amino acid transporters are in the proximal tubule, and the specificities of some overlap.  $J_{\max}$  and  $K_M$  (→ p. 28) and, therefore, saturability and reabsorption capacities vary according to the type of amino acid and carrier involved. Fractional excretion of most amino acids ≈ to 1% (ranging from 0.1% for L-valine to 6% for L-histidine).

Increased urinary excretion of amino acids (**hyperaminoaciduria**) can occur. *Prerenal* hyperaminoaciduria occurs when plasma amino acid concentrations are elevated (and reabsorption becomes saturated, as in A), whereas *renal* hyperaminoaciduria occurs due to deficient transport. Such a dysfunction may be *specific* (e.g., in cystinuria, where only L-cystine, L-arginine and L-lysine are hyperexcreted) or *unspecific* (e.g., in Fanconi's syndrome, where not only amino acids but also glucose, phosphate, bicarbonate etc. are hyperexcreted).

Certain substances (lactate, sulfate, phosphate, dicarboxylates, etc.) are also reabsorbed at the proximal tubule by way of Na<sup>+</sup> symport, whereas urea is subject to passive back diffusion (→ p. 166).

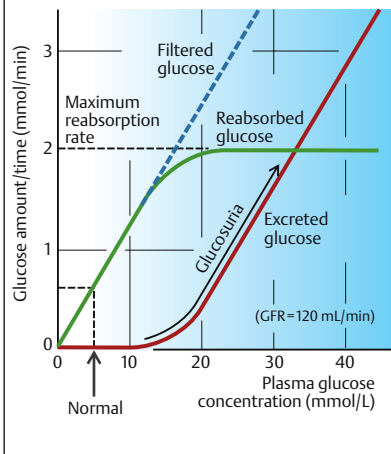
**Urate** and **oxalate** are both reabsorbed and secreted (→ p. 160), with the predominant process being reabsorption for urate (FE ≈ 0.1) and secretion for oxalate (FE > 1). If the urinary conc. of these poorly soluble substances rises above normal, they will start to precipitate (increasing the risk of **urinary calculus formation**). Likewise, the excessive urinary excretion of **cystine** can lead to cystine calculi.

**Oligopeptides** such as glutathione and angiotensin II are broken down so quickly by *luminal peptidases* in the brush border that they can be reabsorbed as free amino acids (→ C1). **Dipeptides** resistant to luminal hydrolysis (e.g., carnosine) must be reabsorbed as intact molecules. A symport carrier (*Pept2*) driven by the inwardly directed H<sup>+</sup> gradient (→ p. 176) transports the molecules into the cells *tertiary active* H<sup>+</sup> symport; → p. 26, 29 B4). The dipeptides are then hydrolyzed within the cell (→ C2). The *Pept2* carrier is also used by certain drugs and toxins.

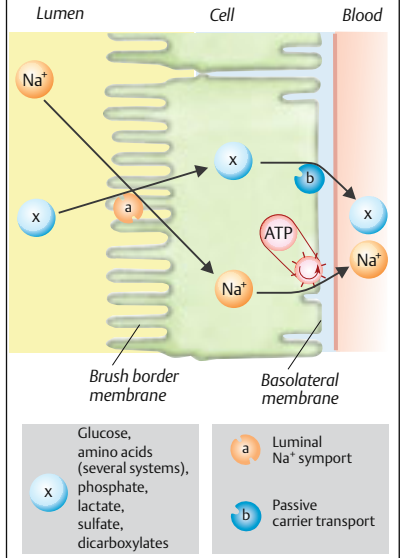
**Proteins.** Although **albumin** has a low sieving coefficient of 0.0003 (→ p. 154), 2400 mg/day are filtered at a plasma conc. of 45 g/L (180 L/day · 45 g/L · 0.0003 = 2400 mg/day). Only 2 to 35 mg of albumin are excreted each day (FE ≈ 1%). In the proximal tubule, albumin, lysozyme, α<sub>1</sub>-microglobulin, β<sub>2</sub>-microglobulin and other proteins are reabsorbed by *receptor-mediated endocytosis* (→ p. 28) and are “digested” by lysosomes (→ D). Since this type of reabsorption is nearly saturated at normal filtered loads of proteins, an elevated plasma protein conc. or increased protein sieving coefficient will lead to *proteinuria*.

25-OH-cholecalciferol, which is bound to **DBP** (vitamin D-binding protein) in plasma and glomerular filtrate, is reabsorbed in combination with DBP by receptor-mediated endocytosis (→ p. 294).

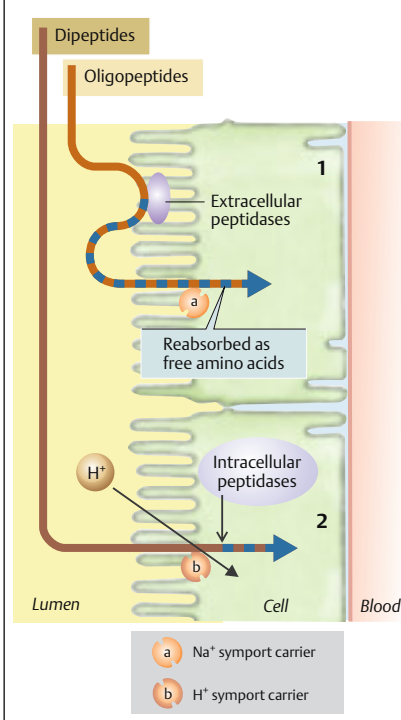
**A. Reabsorption of glucose and amino acids**



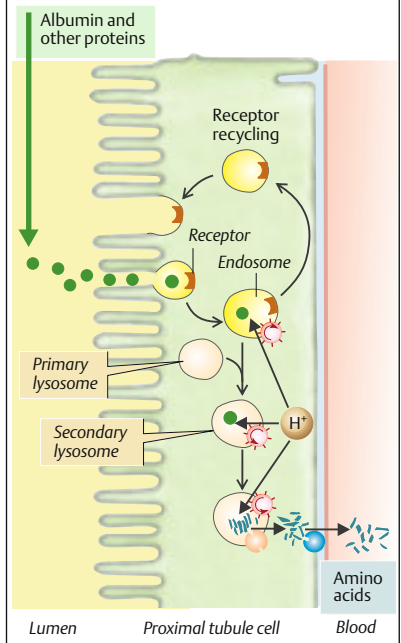
**B. Reabsorption of organic substances**



**C. Reabsorption of oligopeptides**



**D. Reabsorption of proteins by endocytosis**



Food provides necessary nutrients, but also contains inert and harmful substances. The body can usually sort out these substances already at the time of **intake**, either based on their smell or taste or, if already eaten, with the help of specific digestive enzymes and intestinal absorptive mechanisms (e.g., D-glucose and L-amino acids are absorbed, but L-glucose and D-amino acids are not). Similar distinctions are made in **hepatic excretion** ( $\Rightarrow$  bile  $\Rightarrow$  stools): useful bile salts are almost completely reabsorbed from the gut by way of specific carriers, while waste products such as bilirubin are mainly eliminated in the feces. Likewise, the **kidney** reabsorbs hardly any useless or harmful substances (including end-products such as creatinine). Valuable substances (e.g., D-glucose and L-amino acids), on the other hand, are reabsorbed via specific transporters and thus spared from excretion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 158).

The liver and kidney are also able to modify endogenous waste products and foreign compounds (xenobiotics) so that they are "**detoxified**" if toxic and made ready for rapid elimination. In unchanged form or after the enzymatic addition of an OH or COOH group, the substances then combine with glucuronic acid, sulfate, acetate or glutathione to form **conjugates**. The conjugated substances are then secreted into the bile and proximal tubule lumen (with or without further metabolic processing).

#### Tubular Secretion

The proximal tubule utilizes **active transport mechanisms** to secrete numerous waste products and xenobiotics. This is done by way of carriers for organic anions ( $\text{OA}^-$ ) and organic cations ( $\text{OC}^+$ ). The secretion of these substances makes it possible to raise their clearance level above that of inulin and, therefore, to raise their fractional excretion (FE) above 1.0 = 100% ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152) in order to eliminate them more effectively ( $\rightarrow$  **A**; compare red and blue curves). Secretion is carrier-mediated and is therefore subject to saturation kinetics. Unlike reabsorbed substances such as D-glucose ( $\rightarrow$  p. 159 A), the fractional excretion (FE) of organic anions and cations decreases when their plasma concentrations rise ( $\rightarrow$  **A**; PAH secretion curve reaches plateau, and slope of PAH excretion curve decreases). Some organic an-

ions (e.g., urate and oxalate) and cations (e.g., choline) are both secreted and reabsorbed (bidirectional transport), which results in net reabsorption (urate, choline) or net secretion (oxalate).

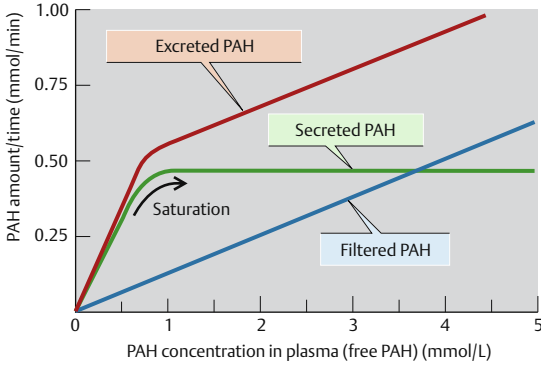
The secreted **organic anions ( $\text{OA}^-$ )** include indicators such as PAH (p-aminohippurate;  $\rightarrow$  p. 150) and phenol red; endogenous substances such as oxalate, urate, hippurate; drugs such as penicillin G, barbiturates, and numerous diuretics ( $\rightarrow$  p. 174); and conjugated substances (see above) containing glucuronate, sulfate or glutathione. Because of its high affinity for the transport system, *probenecid* is a potent inhibitor of  $\text{OA}^-$  secretion.

The *active step of  $\text{OA}^-$  secretion* ( $\rightarrow$  **B**) occurs across the *basolateral membrane* of proximal tubule cells and accumulates organic anions in the cell where the inside-negative membrane potential has to be overcome. The membrane has a broad specificity carrier (OAT1 = *organic anion transporter* type 1) that transports  $\text{OA}^-$  from the blood into the tubule cells in exchange for a dicarboxylate, such as succinate<sup>2-</sup> or  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate<sup>2-</sup>;  $\rightarrow$  **B1**). The latter substance arises from the glutamine metabolism of the cell ( $\rightarrow$  p. 179 D2); the human  $\text{Na}^+$ -dicarboxylate transporter hNADC-1 also conveys dicarboxylates (in combination with 3  $\text{Na}^+$ ) into the cell by secondary active transport ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**). The transport of  $\text{OA}^-$  is therefore called *tertiary active transport*. The efflux of  $\text{OA}^-$  into the lumen is passive (facilitated diffusion;  $\rightarrow$  **B3**). An ATP-dependent *conjugate pump* (MRP2 = multi-drug resistance protein type 2) in the luminal membrane is also used for secretion of amphiphilic conjugates, such as glutathione-linked lipophilic toxins ( $\rightarrow$  **B4**).

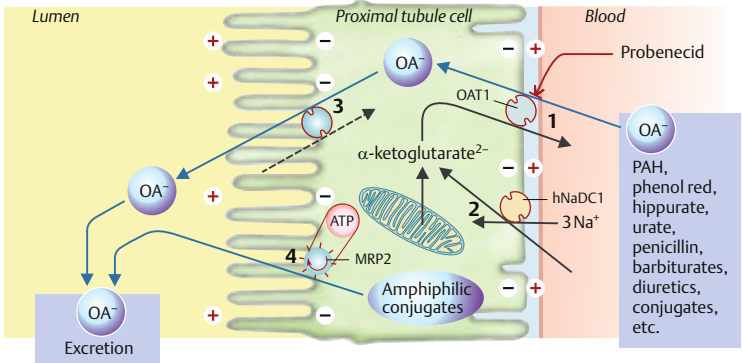
The **organic cations ( $\text{OC}^+$ )** secreted include endogenous substances (epinephrine, choline, histamine, serotonin, etc.) and drugs (atropine, quinidine, morphine, etc.).

In contrast to  $\text{OA}^-$  secretion, the *active step of  $\text{OC}^+$  secretion* occurs across the *luminal membrane* of proximal tubule cells (luminal accumulation occurs after overcoming the negative membrane potential inside the cell). The membrane contains (a) direct ATP-driven carriers for organic cations (mdr1; primary active  $\text{OC}^+$  transport;  $\rightarrow$  **C1**) and (b) a multi-specific  $\text{OC}^+/\text{H}^+$  antiporter (tertiary active transport;  $\rightarrow$  **C2**). The  $\text{OC}^+$  diffuse passively from the blood into the cell by way of a poly-specific organic cation transporter (OCT;  $\rightarrow$  **C3**).

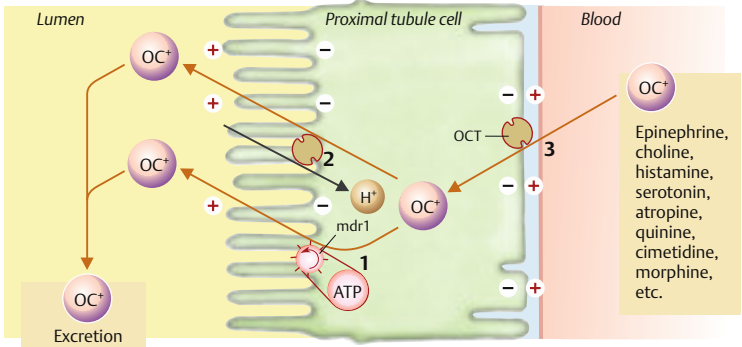
**A. Secretion and excretion of p-aminohippurate (PAH)**



**B. Secretion of organic anions ( $OA^-$ )**



**C. Secretion of organic cations ( $OC^+$ )**



About 99% of the *filtered load of Na<sup>+</sup>* is reabsorbed (ca. 27 000 mmol/day), i.e., the fractional excretion of Na<sup>+</sup> (FE<sub>Na</sub>) is about 1%. The precise value of FE<sub>Na</sub> needed (range 0.5 to 5%) is regulated by aldosterone, atriopeptin (ANF) and other hormones (→ B9 and p. 170).

**Sites of Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption.** The reabsorption of Na<sup>+</sup> occurs in all parts of the renal tubule and collecting duct. About 65% of the filtered Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule, while the luminal Na<sup>+</sup> conc. remains constant (→ p. 166). Another 25% is reabsorbed in the loop of Henle, where luminal Na<sup>+</sup> conc. drops sharply; → p. 157 D, columns 2 and 3). The distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct also reabsorb Na<sup>+</sup>. The latter serves as the site of hormonal *fine adjustment* of Na<sup>+</sup> excretion.

**Mechanisms of Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption.** Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase pumps Na<sup>+</sup> ions out of the cell while conveying K<sup>+</sup> ions into the cell (→ A and p. 156), thereby producing a chemical Na<sup>+</sup> gradient (→ A2). Back diffusion of K<sup>+</sup> (→ A3) also leads to the development of a membrane potential (→ A4). Both combined result in a high electrochemical Na<sup>+</sup> gradient that provides the driving “force” for passive Na<sup>+</sup> influx, the features of which vary in the individual nephron segments (→ B).

◆ In the **proximal tubule**, Na<sup>+</sup> ions diffuse passively from the tubule lumen into the cells via (a) the electroneutral Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger type 3 (NHE3), an Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup>-antiport carrier for electroneutral exchange of Na<sup>+</sup> for H<sup>+</sup> (→ B1, p. 29 B4 and p. 176) and (b) various Na<sup>+</sup> symport carriers for reabsorption of D-glucose etc. (→ B1 and p. 158). Since most of these symport carriers are electrogenic, the luminal cell membrane is depolarized, and an early proximal *lumen-negative transepithelial potential* (LNTP) develops.

◆ In the thick ascending limb (TAL) of the **loop of Henle** (→ B6), Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed via the bumetanide-sensitive co-transporter BSC, a Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-2Cl<sup>-</sup> symport carrier (→ p. 172). Although BSC is primarily electroneutral, the absorbed K<sup>+</sup> recirculates back to the lumen through K<sup>+</sup> channels. This hyperpolarizes the luminal membrane, resulting in the development of a lumen-positive transepithelial potential (LPTP).

◆ In the **distal convoluted tubule, DCT** (→ B8), Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed via the thiazide-sensitive co-transporter TSC, an electroneutral Na<sup>+</sup>-Cl<sup>-</sup> symport carrier (→ p. 174).

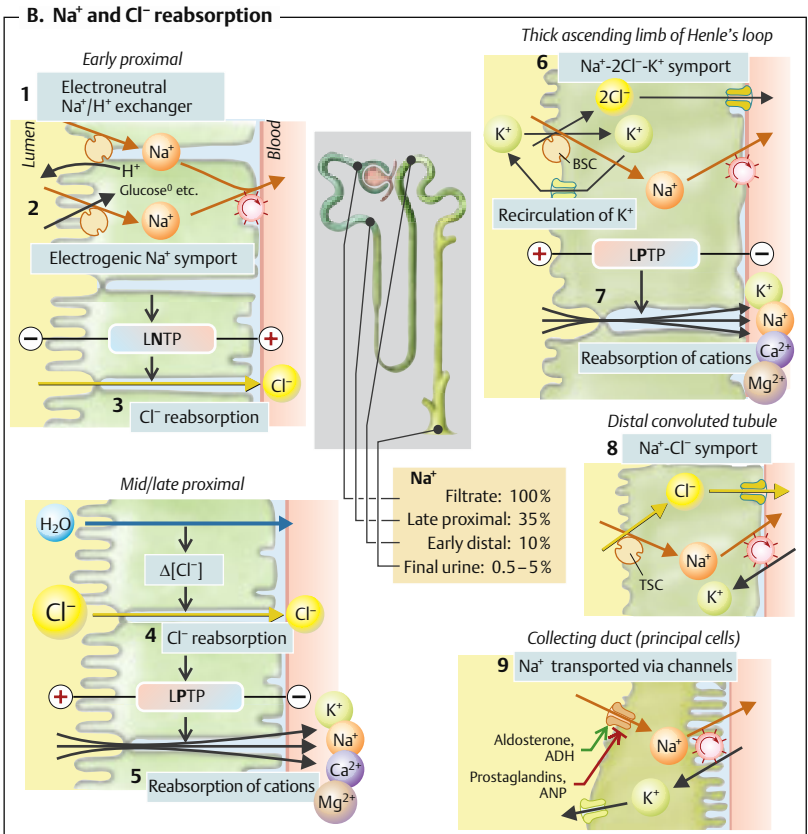
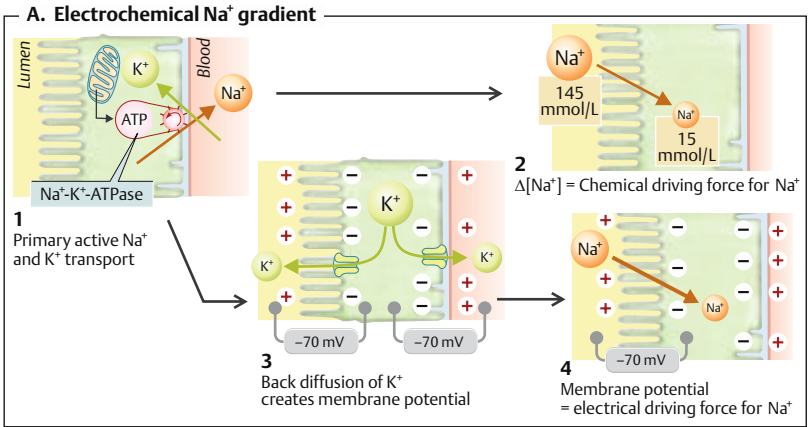
◆ In **principal cells** of the connecting tubule and collecting duct (→ B9), Na<sup>+</sup> exits the lumen via Na<sup>+</sup> channels (ENaC) activated by aldosterone and antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and inhibited by prostaglandins and ANF (→ p. 170).

Since these four passive Na<sup>+</sup> transport steps in the luminal membrane are serially connected to active Na<sup>+</sup> transport in the basolateral membrane (Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase), the associated **trans-epithelial Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption** is also *active*. This makes up about 1/3 of the Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption in the proximal tubule, and 1 ATP molecule is consumed for each 3 Na<sup>+</sup> ions absorbed (→ p. 26). The other 2/3 of proximal sodium reabsorption is passive and **paracellular**.

Two **driving “forces”** are responsible for this: (1) the LPTP in the mid and late proximal tubule (→ B5) and in the loop of Henle (→ B7) drives Na<sup>+</sup> and other cations onto the blood side of the epithelium. (2) **Solvent drag** (→ p. 24): When water is reabsorbed, solutes for which the reflection coefficient < 1 (including Na<sup>+</sup>) are “dragged along” due to friction forces (like a piece of wood drifts with flowing water). Since driving forces (1) and (2) are indirect products of Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase, the **energy balance** rises to about 9 Na<sup>+</sup> per ATP molecule in the proximal tubule (and to about 5 Na<sup>+</sup> per ATP molecule in the rest of the kidney).

On the basolateral side, Na<sup>+</sup> ions exit the proximal tubule cell via Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase and an Na<sup>+</sup>-3HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> symport carrier (→ p. 176). In the latter case, Na<sup>+</sup> exits the cell via tertiary active transport as secondary active secretion of H<sup>+</sup> (on the opposite cell side) results in intracellular accumulation of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>.

The **fractional Cl<sup>-</sup> excretion** (FE<sub>Cl</sub>) ranges from 0.5% to 5%. About 50% of all Cl<sup>-</sup> reabsorption occurs in the *proximal tubule*. The early proximal LNTP drives Cl<sup>-</sup> through paracellular spaces out of the lumen (→ B3). The reabsorption of Cl<sup>-</sup> lags behind that of Na<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O, so the luminal Cl<sup>-</sup> conc. rises. As a result, Cl<sup>-</sup> starts to diffuse down its chemical gradient paracellularly along the mid and late proximal tubule (→ B4), thereby producing a LPTP (reversal of potential, → B5). At the TAL and the DCT, Cl<sup>-</sup> enters the cells by secondary active transport and exits passively through ADH-activated basolateral Cl<sup>-</sup> channels (→ B6, 8).



The glomeruli filter around 180 L of plasma water each day (= GFR; → p. 152). By comparison, the normal **urine output** ( $\dot{V}_U$ ) is relatively small (**0.5 to 2 L/day**). Normal fluctuations are called *antidiuresis* (low  $\dot{V}_U$ ) and *diuresis* (high  $\dot{V}_U$ ; → p. 174). Urine output above the range of normal is called *polyuria*. Below normal output is defined as *oliguria* (< 0.5 L/day) or *anuria* (< 0.1 L/day). The **osmolality** (→ p. 383) of plasma and glomerular filtrate is about 290 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O (=  $P_{osm}$ ); that of the final urine ( $U_{osm}$ ) ranges from 50 (hypotonic urine in extreme water diuresis) to about 1200 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O (hypertonic urine in maximally concentrated urine). Since *water diuresis* permits the excretion of large volumes of H<sub>2</sub>O without the simultaneous loss of NaCl and other solutes, this is known as “free water excretion”, or “free water clearance” ( $C_{H_2O}$ ). This allows the kidneys to normalize decreases in plasma osmolality, for example (→ p. 170). The  $C_{H_2O}$  represents the volume of water that could be theoretically extracted in order for the urine to reach the same osmolality as the plasma:

$$C_{H_2O} = \dot{V}_U (1 - [U_{osm}/P_{osm}]). \quad [7.11]$$

### Countercurrent Systems

A **simple exchange** system (→ A1) can consist of two tubes in which *parallel streams* of water flow, one cold (0 °C) and one hot (100 °C). Due to the exchange of heat between them, the water leaving the ends of both tubes will be about 50 °C, that is, the initially steep temperature gradient of 100 °C will be offset.

In **countercurrent exchange** of heat (→ A2), the fluid within the tubes flows in *opposite directions*. Since a temperature gradient is present in all parts of the tube, heat is exchanged along the entire length. Molecules can also be exchanged, provided the wall of the tube is permeable to them and that a concentration gradient exists for the substance.

If the countercurrent exchange of heat occurs in a **hairpin-shaped loop**, the bend of which is in contact with an environment with a temperature different from that inside the tube (ice, → A3), the fluid exiting the loop will be only slightly colder than that entering it, because heat always passes from the warmer limb of the loop to the colder limb.

Countercurrent exchange of **water in the vasa recta** of the **renal medulla** (→ A6 and p. 150) occurs if the medulla becomes increasingly hypertonic towards the papillae (see below) and if the vasa recta are permeable to water. Part of the water diffuses by osmosis from the de-

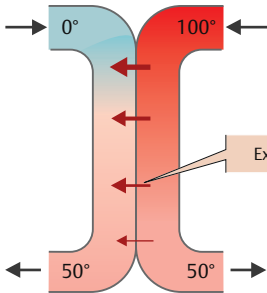
scending vasa recta to the ascending ones, thereby “bypassing” the inner medulla (→ A4). Due to the extraction of water, the concentration of all other blood components increases as the blood approaches the papilla. The plasma osmolality in the vasa recta is therefore continuously adjusted to the osmolality of the surrounding interstitium, which rises towards the papilla. The hematocrit in the vasa recta also rises. Conversely, substances entering the blood in the renal medulla diffuse from the ascending to the descending vasa recta, provided the walls of both vessels are permeable to them (e.g., urea; → C). The countercurrent exchange in the vasa recta permits the necessary supply of blood to the renal medulla without significantly altering the high osmolality of the renal medulla and hence impairing the urine concentration capacity of the kidney.

In a **countercurrent multiplier** such as the **loop of Henle**, a concentration gradient between the two limbs is maintained by the expenditure of energy (→ A5). The countercurrent flow amplifies the relatively small gradient at all points between the limbs (*local gradient* of about 200 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O) to a relatively large gradient along the limb of the loop (about 1000 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O). The longer the loop and the higher the one-step gradient, the steeper the multiplied gradient. In addition, it is inversely proportional to (the square of) the flow rate in the loop.

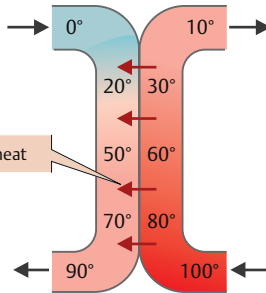
### Reabsorption of Water

Approximately 65% of the GFR is reabsorbed at the **proximal convoluted tubule, PCT** (→ B and p. 157 D). The driving “force” for this is the reabsorption of solutes, especially Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>. This slightly dilutes the urine in the tubule, but H<sub>2</sub>O immediately follows this small osmotic gradient because the PCT is “leaky” (→ p. 154). The reabsorption of water can occur by a *paracellular* route (through leaky tight junctions) or *transcellular* route, i.e., through *water channels* (aquaporin type 1 = *AQP1*) in the two cell membranes. The urine in PCT therefore remains (virtually) isotonic. *Oncotic pressure* (→ p. 384) in the peritubular capillaries provides an additional driving force for water reabsorption. The more water filtered at the glomerulus, the higher this oncotic pressure. ▶

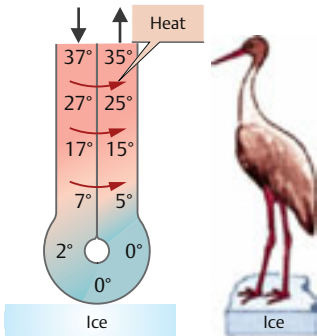
**A. Countercurrent systems**



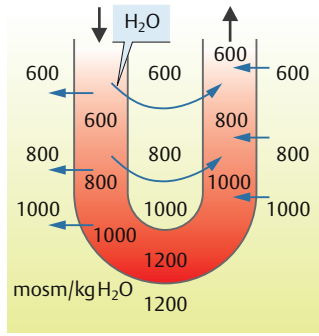
1 Simple exchange system



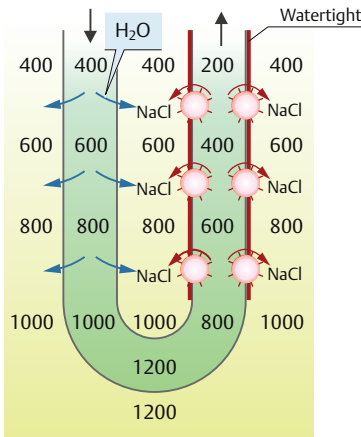
2 Countercurrent exchange



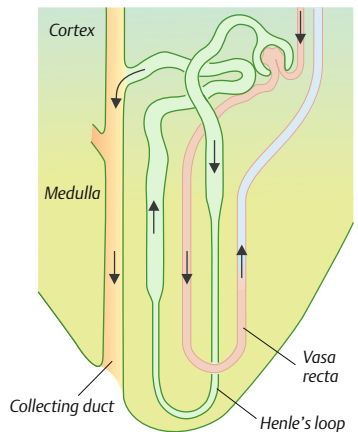
3 Countercurrent exchange (heat) in loop



4 Countercurrent exchange (water) in loop (e.g. vasa recta)



5 Countercurrent multiplier (Henle's loop)



6 Countercurrent systems in renal medulla

► Thus, the reabsorption of water at the proximal tubule is, to a certain extent, adjusted in accordance with the GFR (**glomerulotubular balance**).

Because the *descending limb* of the **loop of Henle** has aquaporins (AQP1) that make it permeable to water, the urine in it is largely in osmotic balance with the hypertonic interstitium, the content of which becomes increasingly hypertonic as it approaches the papillae (→ **A5**). The urine therefore becomes increasingly concentrated as it flows in this direction. In the *thin* descending limb, which is only sparingly permeable to salt, this increases the conc. of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$ . Most water drawn into the interstitium is carried off by the vasa recta (→ **B**). Since the *thin* and *thick ascending limbs* of the loop of Henle are largely impermeable to water,  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  passively diffuses (thin limb) and is actively transported (thick limb) out into the interstitium (→ **B**). Since water cannot escape, the urine leaving the loop of Henle is *hypotonic*.

Active reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  from the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle (TAL; → p. 162) creates a **local gradient** (ca. 200 mOsm/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; → **A5**) at all points between the TAL on the one side and the descending limb and the medullary interstitium on the other. Since the high osmolality of fluid in the medullary interstice is the reason why water is extracted from the collecting duct (see below), active NaCl transport is the ATP-consuming “motor” for the kidney’s urine-concentrating mechanism and is up-regulated by sustained stimulation of ADH secretion.

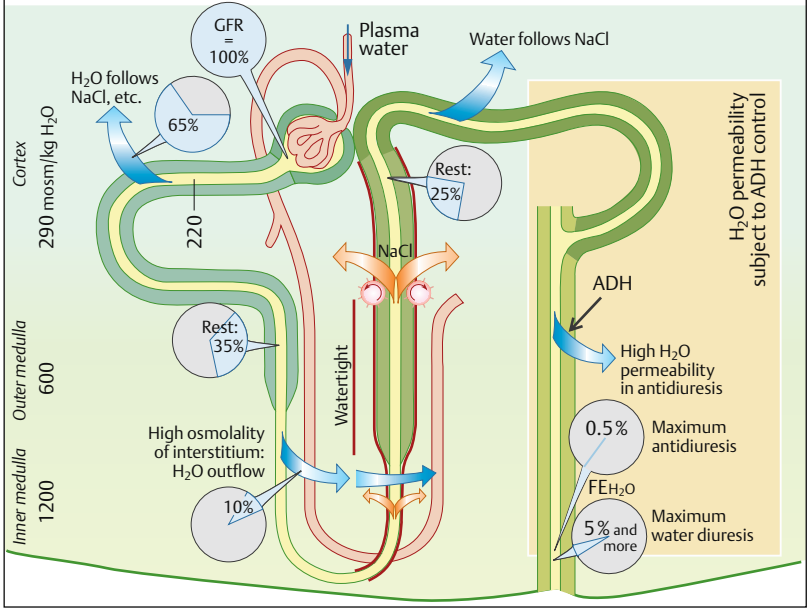
Along the course of the **distal convoluted tubule** and, at the latest, at the **connecting tubule**, which contains aquaporins and ADH receptors of type  $V_2$  (explained below), the fluid in the tubule will again become isotonic (in osmotic balance with the isotonic interstice of the renal cortex) if ADH is present (→ p. 168), i.e., when *antidiuresis* occurs. Although  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  are still reabsorbed here (→ p. 162), the osmolality does not change significantly because  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is reabsorbed (ca. 5% of the GFR) into the interstitial space due to osmotic forces and *urea* increasingly determines the osmolality of the tubular fluid.

*Final adjustment* of the excreted urine volume occurs in the **collecting duct**. In the presence of antidiuretic hormone, **ADH** (which binds to basolateral  $V_2$  receptors, named after vasopressin, the synonym for ADH), **aquaporins (AQP2)** in the (otherwise water-impermeable) luminal membrane of principal cells are used to extract enough water from the urine passing through the increasingly hypertonic renal medulla. Thereby, the  $U_{\text{osm}}$  rises about four times higher than the  $P_{\text{osm}}$  ( $U_{\text{osm}}/P_{\text{osm}} \approx 4$ ), corresponding to *maximum antidiuresis*. The *absence of ADH* results in *water diuresis*, where  $U_{\text{osm}}/P_{\text{osm}}$  can drop to  $< 0.3$ . The  $U_{\text{osm}}$  can even fall below the osmolality at the end of TAL, since reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  is continued in the distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct (→ p. 162) but water can hardly follow.

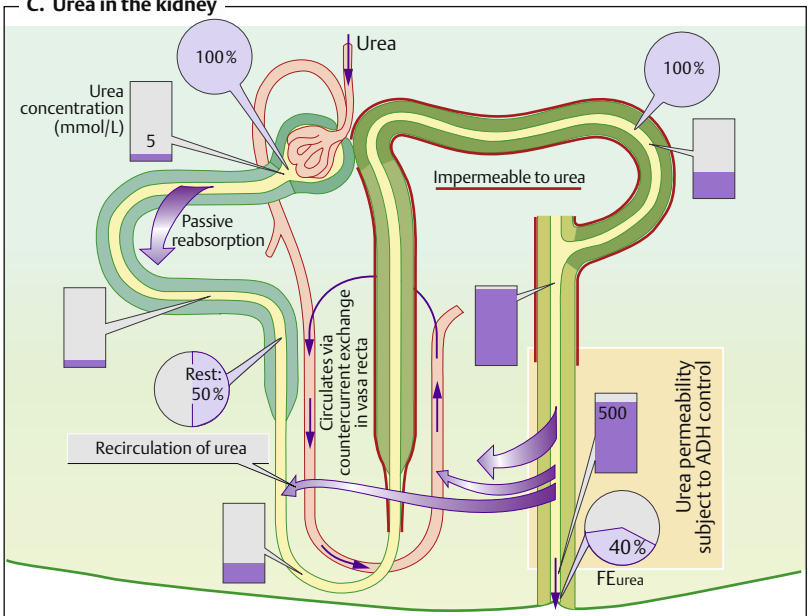
**Urea** also plays an important role in the formation of concentrated urine. A protein-rich diet leads to increased urea production, thus increased the urine-concentrating capacity of the kidney. About 50% of the filtered urea leaves the proximal tubule by diffusion (→ **C**). Since the ascending limb of the loop of Henle, the distal convoluted tubule, and the cortical and outer medullary sections of the collecting duct are only sparingly permeable to urea, its conc. increases downstream in these parts of the nephron (→ **C**). **ADH** can (via  $V_2$  receptors) introduce *urea carriers* (urea transporter type 1, UT1) in the luminal membrane, thereby making the inner medullary collecting duct permeable to urea. Urea now diffuses back into the interstitium (where urea is responsible for half of the high osmolality there) via UT1 and is then transported by UT2 carriers back into the descending limb of the loop of Henle, comprising the **recirculation of urea** (→ **C**). The non-reabsorbed fraction of urea is excreted:  $\text{FE}_{\text{urea}} \approx 40\%$ . Urea excretion increases in water diuresis and decreases in antidiuresis, presumably due to up-regulation of the UT2 carrier.

**Urine concentration disorders** primarily occur due to (a) excessive medullary blood flow (washing out  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and urea); (b) osmotic diuresis; (c) loop diuretics (→ p. 174); (d) deficient secretion or effectiveness of ADH, as seen in *central or peripheral diabetes insipidus*, respectively.

**B. Water reabsorption and excretion**



**C. Urea in the kidney**



Water is the initial and final product of countless biochemical reactions. It serves as a solvent, transport vehicle, heat buffer, and coolant, and has a variety of other functions. Water is present in cells as *intracellular fluid* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 2).

The volume of fluid circulating in the body remains relatively constant when the **water balance** ( $\rightarrow$  A) is properly regulated. The average **fluid intake** of ca. 2.5 L per day is supplied by *beverages, solid foods, and metabolic oxidation* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 231 C). The fluid intake must be high enough to counteract **water losses** due to *urination, respiration, perspiration* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 225 B3), and *defecation* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 267 C). The mean daily  $H_2O$  turnover is 2.5 L/70 kg (1/30 th the body weight [BW]) in adults and 0.7 liters/7 kg (1/10th the BW) in infants. The water balance of infants is therefore more susceptible to disturbance.

Significant **risers in the  $H_2O$  turnover** can occur, but must be adequately compensated for if the body is to function properly (regulation,  $\rightarrow$  p. 170). Respiratory  $H_2O$  losses occur, for example, due to *hyperventilation* at high altitudes ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 106 and 136), and *perspiration losses* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 224) occur due to exertion at high temperatures (e.g., hiking in the sun or hot work environment as in an ironworks). Both can lead to the loss of several liters of water per hour, which must be compensated for by increasing the intake of fluids (and salt) accordingly. Conversely, an increased intake of fluids will lead to an increased volume of urine being excreted ( $\rightarrow$  p. 170).

**Body water content** ( $\rightarrow$  B). The fraction of total body water (TBW) to body weight (BW = 1.0) ranges from **0.46** (46%) to **0.75** depending on a person's age and sex ( $\rightarrow$  B). The TBW content in *infants* is 0.75 compared to only 0.64 (0.53) in young men (women) and 0.53 (0.46) in elderly men (women). Gender-related differences (and interindividual differences) are mainly due to differences in a person's total *body fat content*. The average fraction of water in most body tissues (in young adults) is 0.73 compared to a fraction of only about 0.2 in fat.

**Fluid compartments** ( $\rightarrow$  C). In a person with an average TBW of ca. 0.6, about 3/5 (0.35 BW) of the TBW is intracellular fluid (**ICF**), and the other 2/5 (0.25 BW) is extracellular (**ECF**). ICF and ECF are therefore separated by the plasma membrane of the cells. Extracellular fluid is located between cells (*interstice*, 0.19 BW), in

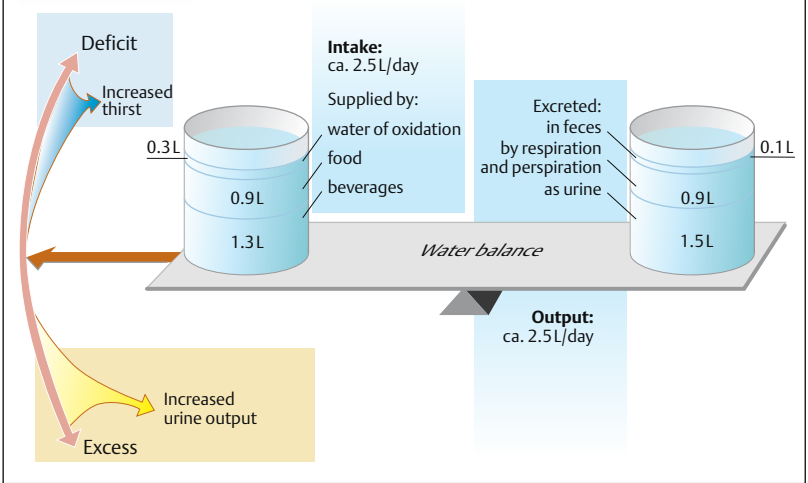
blood (*plasma water* (0.045 BW) and in "*transcellular*" compartments (0.015 BW) such as the pleural, peritoneal and pericardial spaces, CSF space, chambers of the eye as well as intestinal lumen, renal tubules and glandular ducts ( $\rightarrow$  C). Blood plasma is separated from the interstice by the *endothelium*, while the epithelium divides the interstice from the transcellular compartments. The *protein concentration* of the plasma is significantly different from that of the interstitial fluid. Moreover, there are fundamental differences in the *ionic composition* of the ECF and the ICF ( $\rightarrow$  p. 93 C). Since most of the body's supply of  $Na^+$  ions are located in extracellular compartments, the total  $Na^+$  content of the body determines its ECF volume ( $\rightarrow$  p. 170).

**Measurement of fluid compartments.** In clinical medicine, the body's fluid compartments are usually measured by *indicator dilution techniques*. Provided the indicator substance, S, injected into the bloodstream spreads to the target compartment only ( $\rightarrow$  C), its volume V can be calculated from:

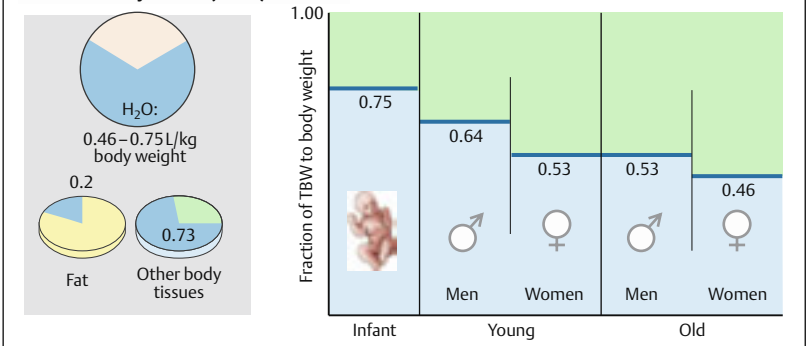
$$V[L] = \frac{\text{injected amount of indicator}}{S [\text{mol}]/C_S [\text{mol/L}]} \quad [7.12]$$

where  $C_S$  is the concentration of S after it spreads throughout the target compartment (measured in collected blood specimens). The ECF volume is generally measured using *inulin* or sodium bromide as the indicator (does not enter cells), and the TBW volume is determined using *antipyrine*, heavy water ( $D_2O$ ) or radiolabeled  $H_2O$ . The ICF volume is approximately equal to the antipyrine distribution volume minus the inulin distribution volume. Radiolabeled albumin or *Evans blue*, a substance entirely bound by plasma proteins, can be used to measure the plasma volume. The interstitial volume can be calculated as the ECF volume minus the plasma volume, and the blood volume as the plasma volume divided by  $[1 - \text{hematocrit}]$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 88). (Since  $1/10$  of the plasma remains interspersed with the erythrocytes after centrifuging, replacing 1 with 0.91 in this formula gives a more precise result.) The blood volume can also be determined by injection of  $^{51}Cr$ -marked erythrocytes, so that the plasma volume is then calculated as blood volume times  $(0.91 - Hct)$ .

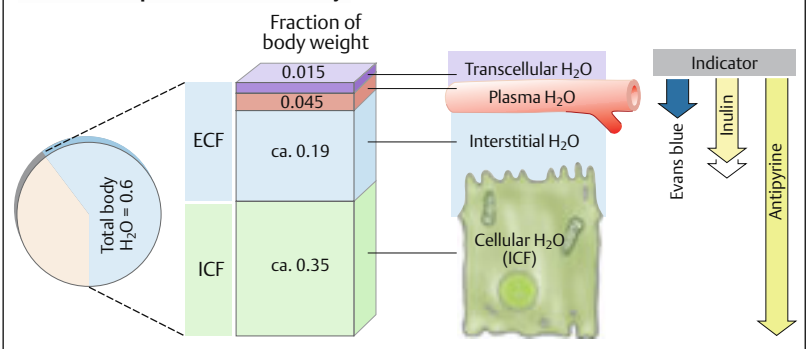
**A. Water balance**



**B. Total body water (TBW) content**



**C. Fluid compartments of the body**



**Osmoregulation.** The osmolality of most body fluids is about 290 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O (→ p. 383), so that the intracellular fluid (ICF) and extracellular fluid (ECF) are generally in osmotic balance. Any increase in the osmolality of ECF due, for example, to NaCl absorption or water loss, results in an outflow of water from the intracellular space (**Cell shrinkage**, → A1 and p. 175 A2 and 6). A fall in extracellular osmolality due to drinking or infusion of large volumes of water or to sodium loss (e.g. in aldosterone deficit) results in an inflow of water to the cells from the ECF (**cell expansion**, → A2 and p. 175 A3 and 5). Both volume fluctuations endanger the cell's functioning, but the cell can protect against them.

The cell's plasma membrane contains **mechanosensors** that stimulate balancing ion flow accompanied by water, for example K<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup> outflow in cell volume expansion and Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, and Cl<sup>-</sup> inflow in cell shrinkage. Such mechanisms also balance a volume expansion resulting from increased absorption of Na<sup>+</sup> and glucose in intestinal mucous cells or from a momentary hypoxia of a cell (with decreasing Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase activity).

Cells which are physiologically exposed to large osmolality fluctuations (e.g. in the kidney), are further able to regulate their intracellular osmolality through formation/absorption, or release/resorption of small molecular substances known as **organic osmolytes** (e.g. betaine, taurine, *myo*-inositol, sorbitol).

The osmolality of the ECF as a whole must be tightly regulated to protect cells from large volume fluctuations. Osmoregulation is controlled by *central osmosensors* (or *osmoreceptors*) located in circumventricular organs (SFO and OVLT, see below). H<sub>2</sub>O fluctuations in the gastrointestinal tract are monitored by peripheral osmosensors in the portal vein region and communicated to the hypothalamus by vagal afferent neurons.

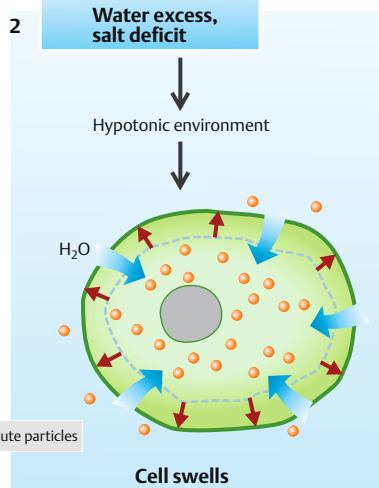
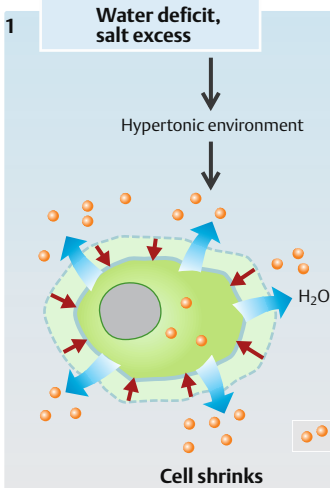
**Water deficit** (→ B1). Net water losses (hypovolemia) due, for example, to sweating make the ECF hypertonic. Osmolality rises of only 1–2% (= 3–6 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O) are sufficient to increase the secretion of **ADH** (antidiuretic hormone = vasopressin; → p. 282), from the posterior lobe of the pituitary (→ C1). ADH decreases urinary H<sub>2</sub>O excretion (→ p. 166).

Fluid intake from outside the body is also required, however. The likewise hypertonic cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), via osmosensors in the OVLT (organum vasculosum laminae terminalis) and SFO (subfornical organ) stimulates the secretion of (central) angiotensin II (**AT II**) which trigger **hyperosmotic thirst** (→ C). **Isotonic hypovolemia**, for example following blood loss or secondarily following hyponatremia (**D1**), also stimulates thirst (hypovolemic thirst, → C), but the procentual deficit of the ECF in this case must be greater (> 10%) than the procentual increase in osmolality for hyperosmotic thirst (1–2%). The sensors for hypovolemia are primarily the atrial volume sensors (→ p. 216ff). Via their afferent pathways and the nucleus tractus solitarius (NTS) secretion of central AT II is triggered in the SFO (→ C, D1) and via the sympathetic nervous system and β<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptors in the kidney the peripheral renin-AT-II system (**RAS**) is activated (→ A4 and p. 186). A drop in mean blood pressure below approx. 85 mmHg triggers very high renin secretion directly in the kidney. Like central AT II, peripheral AT II can also contribute to thirst and to increased Na<sup>+</sup> appetite, because the SFO and OVLT are located outside the blood-brain barrier.

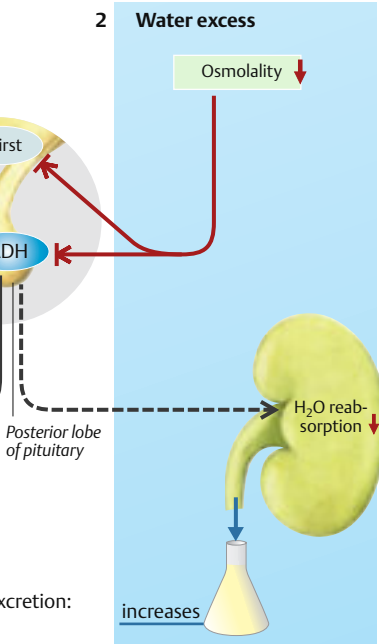
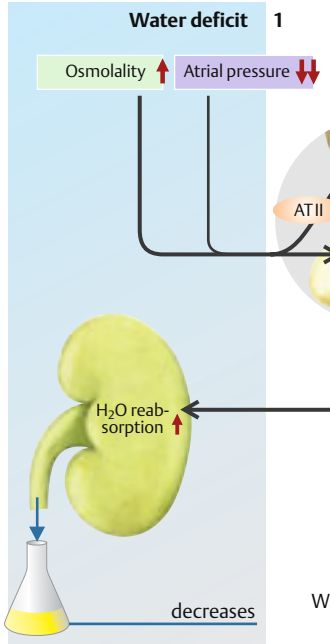
**Relaxin**, a peptide hormone produced by the corpus luteum in pregnant women, binds to receptors in the SFO and OVLT. It causes thirst and stimulates ADH secretion. Despite the reduced plasma osmolality during pregnancy, which would suppress thirst and ADH secretion, relaxin evidently provides for normal or even increased fluid intake during pregnancy.

**Thirst** is a subjective perception and motivation to search for fluids and drink. The thirst that is a homeostatic response to hyperosmolality or hypovolemia (> 0.5% of body weight: thirst threshold) triggers **primary drinking**. Drinking quenches the thirst before osmolality has completely normalized. This pre-resorptive thirst quenching is astonishingly accurate as regards the estimate of volume, due to afferent signals from volume sensors and osmosensors in the throat, gastrointestinal tract, and liver. Primary drinking, however, is actually the exception under normal conditions where adequate fluids are available for drinking. A person usually drinks because she has a dry mouth or while eating a meal, but also out of habit, because it is cus- ▶

**A. Water output and intake from the cell**



**B. Regulation of salt and water balance**



► tomary or part of social ritual. This everyday form of drinking is called *secondary drinking*.

**In older age** thirst decreases, and 30% of 65–74-year-olds and 50% of the over 80s drink too little fluids. Since in older age the urine concentration capacity and ADH and aldosterone secretion also decrease, a substantial fluid deficit is common. This is a cause of confusion and forgetfulness, so that in turn the fluid intake drops further and sets off a vicious circle. Some older people also try to combat nocturia and pollakisuria by drinking less, which further dehydrates the body.

**Water excess** (→ B2). The absorption of hypotonic fluid including for example stomach flushes or the infusion of glucose solutions (where the glucose is quickly metabolized into CO<sub>2</sub> and water) reduces the osmolality of ECF. This signal inhibits the secretion of ADH, resulting in water diuresis (→ p. 166) and normalization of plasma osmolality within less than 1 hour.

**Water intoxication** occurs when excessive volumes of water are absorbed too quickly, leading to symptoms of nausea, vomiting and shock. The condition is caused by an undue drop in the plasma osmolality before adequate inhibition of ADH secretion has occurred.

**Volume regulation.** Around 8–15 g of NaCl are absorbed each day. The kidneys have to excrete the same amount over time to maintain Na<sup>+</sup> and ECF homeostasis (→ p. 168). Since Na<sup>+</sup> is the major extracellular ion (Cl<sup>-</sup> balance is maintained secondarily), *changes in total body Na<sup>+</sup> content lead to changes in ECF volume*. It is regulated mainly by the following **factors**:

◆ **Renin-angiotensin system (RAS)** AT II not only induces *thirst* and *salt* appetite, but also reduces the GFR and promotes the secretion of ADH and **aldosterone**, which inhibits Na<sup>+</sup> excretion (→ D2 and p. 163 B9) and, despite recent water intake, maintains a stable salt appetite.

◆ Oxytocin, a neurotransmitter produced in the hypothalamus, inhibits the neurons which uphold the continued salt appetite and via neuronal pathways causes increased NaCl excretion.

◆ **Atriopeptin (atrial natriuretic peptide; ANP)** is a peptide hormone secreted by specific cells of the cardiac atrium in response to rises in ECF volume and hence atrial pressure. ANP inhibits

thirst and reduces ADH secretion. It also promotes the renal excretion of Na<sup>+</sup> by raising the filtration fraction (→ p. 152) and inhibiting Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption from the collecting duct (→ p. 163 B9). ANP is therefore effectively an antagonist to RAS.

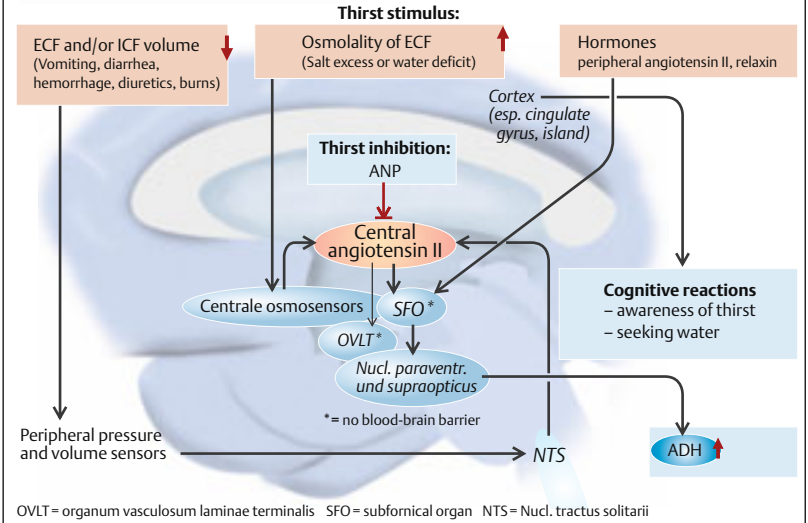
◆ **ADH.** ADH secretion is stimulated by (a) *increased plasma* and *CSF osmolality*; (b) the *Gauer-Henry reflex*, which occurs when a decrease (> 10%) in ECF volume (~atrial pressure) is communicated to the hypothalamus. AT II is the key agent for this.

◆ **Pressure diuresis** (→ p. 174) results in increased excretion of Na<sup>+</sup> and water. It is caused by an elevated blood pressure in the renal medulla, e.g. due to an elevated ECF volume (→ p. 218).

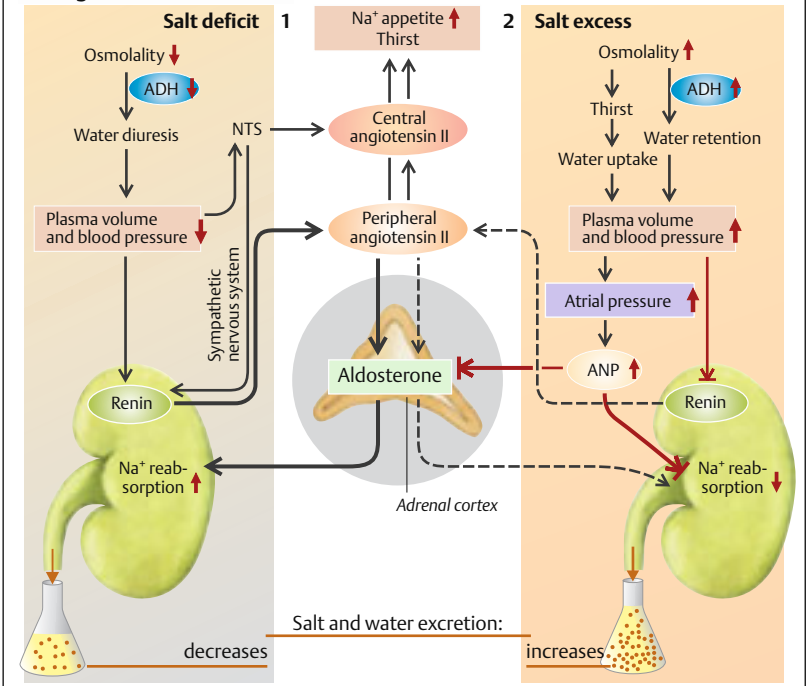
**Salt deficit** (→ D1). When hyponatremia (e.g. in aldosterone deficit) occurs in the presence of a primarily normal H<sub>2</sub>O content of the body, blood osmolality and therefore ADH secretion decrease, thereby increasing transiently the excretion of H<sub>2</sub>O. Although the hypoosmolality is elevated the ECF volume, plasma volume, and blood pressure consequently decrease (→ D1). This, in turn, activates the RAS, which triggers *hypovolemic thirst* by secreting AT II and induces Na<sup>+</sup> retention by secreting aldosterone. The retention of Na<sup>+</sup> increases plasma osmolality leading to secretion of ADH and, ultimately, to the retention of water. The additional intake of fluids in response to *thirst* also helps to normalize the ECF volume.

**Salt excess** (→ D2). An abnormally high NaCl content of the body e.g. after drinking salt water leads to increased plasma osmolality (thirst → drinking) as well as ADH secretion (retention of H<sub>2</sub>O). Thus, the ECF volume rises and RAS activity is curbed. The additional secretion of ANP, perhaps together with a natriuretic hormone with a longer half-life than ANP (ouabain?), leads to increased excretion of NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O.

**C. Thirst: activation and inhibition**



**D. Regulation of salt balance**



► When *osmolality* remains normal, disturbances of salt and water homeostasis only affect the ECF volume (→ E1, 4). When the osmolality of the ECF increases (hyperosmolality) or decreases (hypoosmolality), water in the extra- and intracellular compartments is redistributed (→ E2, 3, 5, 6). The main **causes** of these disturbances are listed in E (orange background). The **effects** of these disturbances are *hypovolemia* in cases 1, 2 and 3, *intracellular edema* (e.g. swelling of the brain) in disturbances 3 and 5, and *extracellular edema* (pulmonary edema) in disturbances 4, 5, and 6.

### Diuresis and Diuretics

Increases in urine excretion above 1 mL/min (**diuresis**) can have the following **causes**:

- ◆ **Water diuresis:** Decreases in plasma osmolality and/or an increased blood volume lead to the reduction of ADH levels and, thus, to the excretion of “free water” (→ p. 164).
- ◆ **Osmotic diuresis** results from the presence of non-reabsorbable, osmotically active substances (e.g., mannitol) in the renal tubules. These substances retain H<sub>2</sub>O in the tubule lumen, which is subsequently excreted. Osmotic diuresis can also occur when the concentration of a reabsorbable substance (e.g., glucose) exceeds its tubular reabsorption capacity resulting from hyperglycemia (→ p. 158). The glucosuria occurring in diabetes mellitus is therefore accompanied by diuresis and a secondary increase in thirst. Hyperbicarbonaturia can lead to osmotic diuresis to the same reason (→ p. 178).
- ◆ **Pressure diuresis** occurs when osmolality in the renal medulla decreases in the presence of increased renal medullary blood flow due, in most cases, to hypertension (→ p. 170).
- ◆ **Diuretics** (→ F) are drugs that induce diuresis. Most of them (except osmotic diuretics like mannitol) work primarily by inhibiting NaCl reabsorption (*saluretics*) and, secondarily, by decreasing water reabsorption. The goal of therapeutic diuresis, e.g., in treating edema and hypertension, is to reduce the ECF volume.

Although diuretics basically inhibit NaCl transport throughout the entire body, they have a large degree of **renal “specificity”** because they act from the tubular lumen, where they become highly concen-

trated due to **tubular secretion** (→ p. 160) and tubular water reabsorption. Therefore, dosages that do not induce unwanted systemic effects are therapeutically effective in the tubule lumen.

Diuretics of the **carbonic anhydrase inhibitor type** (e.g., acetazolamide, benzolamide) decrease Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchange and HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> reabsorption in the *proximal tubule* (→ p. 176 ff.). The overall extent of diuresis achieved is small because more distal segments of the tubule reabsorb the NaCl not reabsorbed upstream and because the GFR decreases due to tubuloglomerular feedback, TGF (→ p. 186). In addition, increased HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> excretion also leads to non-respiratory (metabolic) acidosis. Therefore, this type of diuretic is used only in patients with concomitant alkalosis.

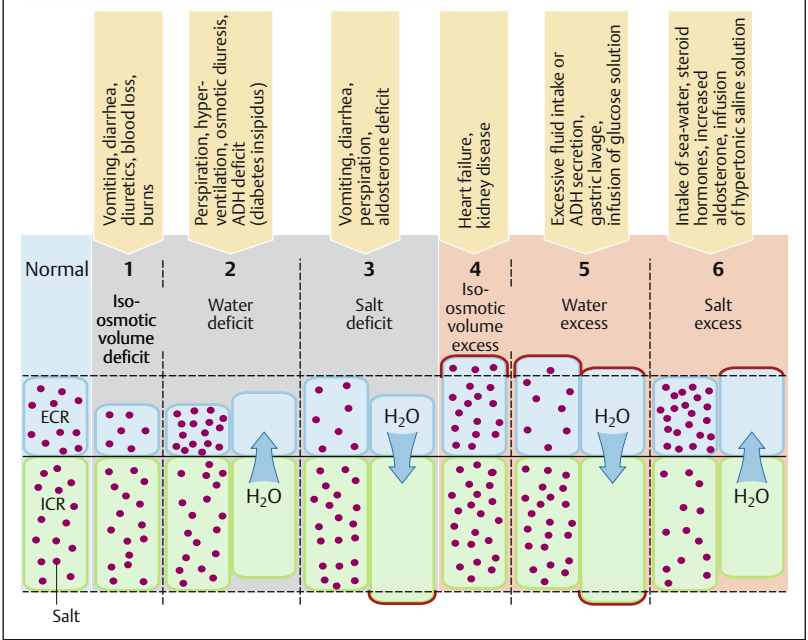
**Loop diuretics** (e.g., furosemide and bumetanide) are highly effective. They inhibit the *bumetanide-sensitive co-transporter BSC* (→ p. 162 B6), a Na<sup>+</sup>-2Cl<sup>-</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> symport carrier, in the thick ascending limb (TAL) of the loop of Henle. This not only decreases NaCl reabsorption there, but also stalls the “motor” on the concentration mechanism (→ p. 166). Since the lumen-positive transepithelial potential (LP<sub>TP</sub>) in the TAL also falls (→ p. 162 B7), paracellular reabsorption of Na<sup>+</sup>, Ca<sup>2+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup> is also inhibited. Because increasing amounts of non-reabsorbed Na<sup>+</sup> now arrive at the collecting duct (→ p. 183 B3), K<sup>+</sup> secretion increases and the simultaneous loss of H<sup>+</sup> leads to *hypokalemia* and *hypokalemic alkalosis*.

Loop diuretics inhibit BSC at the **macula densa**, thereby “tricking” the juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA) into believing that no more NaCl is present in the tubular lumen. The GFR then rises as a result of the corresponding tubuloglomerular feedback (→ p. 186), which further promotes diuresis.

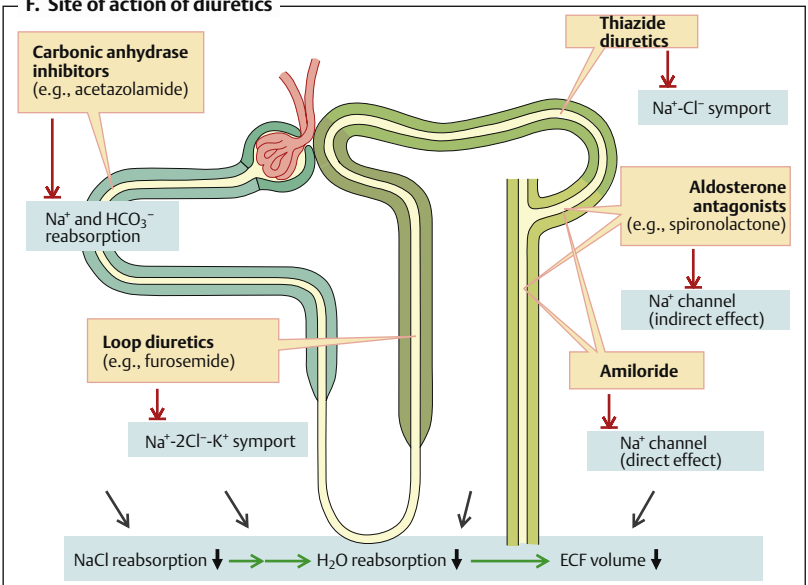
**Thiazide diuretics** inhibit NaCl resorption in the distal tubule (TSC, → p. 162 B8). Like loop diuretics, they increase Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption downstream, resulting in losses of K<sup>+</sup> and H<sup>+</sup>.

**Potassium-sparing diuretics.** *Amiloride* blocks Na<sup>+</sup> channels in the principal cells of the connecting tubule and collecting duct, leading to a *reduction of K<sup>+</sup> excretion*. *Aldosterone antagonists* (e.g., spironolactone), which block the cytoplasmic aldosterone receptor, also have a potassium-sparing effect.

**E. Disturbances of salt and water homeostasis**



**F. Site of action of diuretics**



Main functions of renal  $H^+$  secretion ( $\rightarrow$  A):

- reabsorption of filtered bicarbonate ( $\rightarrow$  B),
- excretion of  $H^+$  ions measurable as titratable acidity ( $\rightarrow$  C), and
- nonionic transport of  $NH_4^+$ , i.e. in the form of  $NH_3$  ( $\rightarrow$  D1, 2).

1. Very large quantities of  $H^+$  ions are secreted into the lumen of the **proximal tubule** ( $\rightarrow$  A1) by (a) primary active transport via  $H^+$ -ATPase and (b) by secondary active transport via an electroneutral  $Na^+/H^+$ -antipporter (NHE3 = SLC9 A3,  $\rightarrow$  p. 162). The *luminal pH* then decreases from 7.4 (filtrate) to about 6.6. One  $OH^-$  ion remains in the cell for each  $H^+$  ion secreted;  $OH^-$  reacts with  $CO_2$  to form  $HCO_3^-$  (accelerated by carbonic anhydrase-II, see below).  $HCO_3^-$  leaves the cell for the blood, where it binds one  $H^+$  ion. Thus, each  $H^+$  ion secreted into the lumen (and excreted) results in the elimination of one  $H^+$  ion from the body, except the secreted  $H^+$  is accompanied by a secreted  $NH_3$ .

2. In the **connecting tubule and collecting duct** ( $\rightarrow$  A2) *type A intercalated cells* secrete  $H^+$  ions via  $H^+/K^+$ -ATPase and  $H^+$ -ATPase, allowing the luminal pH to drop as far as 4.5. The remaining  $OH^-$  in the cell reacts with  $CO_2$  to  $HCO_3^-$ , released basolaterally via the *anion exchanger AE1* (= SLC 4 A1) ( $\rightarrow$  A2). In metabolic alkalosis, *type B intercalated cells* can secrete  $HCO_3^-$  via *pendrin* (= SLC 26 A4) ( $\rightarrow$  A3).

**Carbonic anhydrase (CA)** is important in all cases where  $H^+$  ions exit from one side of a cell and/or  $HCO_3^-$  exits from the other, e.g., in renal tubule cells, which contain  $CA^{II}$  in the cytosol and  $CA^{IV}$  on the outside of the luminal membrane;  $\rightarrow$  A, B, D), as well as in the stomach, small intestine, pancreatic duct and erythrocytes, etc. CA catalyzes the gross reaction



Underlying the aforementioned gross reaction are the reactions  $H_2O \rightleftharpoons OH^- + H^+$  and  $OH^- + CO_2 \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^-$ .

**Reabsorption of  $HCO_3^-$**  ( $\rightarrow$  B). The amount of  $HCO_3^-$  filtered each day is 40 times the quantity present in the blood.  $HCO_3^-$  must therefore be reabsorbed to maintain acid–base balance ( $\rightarrow$  p. 183ff.). The  $H^+$  ions secreted into the lumen of the proximal convoluted tubule react with about 90% of the filtered  $HCO_3^-$  to form  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  ( $\rightarrow$  B).  $CA^{IV}$  anchored in the membrane catalyzes this reaction.  $CO_2$  readily dif-

fuses into the cell via water channels (aquaporin 1  $\rightarrow$  B and p. 166).  $CA^{II}$  then catalyzes the transformation of  $CO_2 + H_2O$  to  $H^+ + HCO_3^-$  within the cell ( $\rightarrow$  B). The  $H^+$  ions are again secreted, while  $HCO_3^-$  exits through the basolateral membrane of the cell via an electrogenic  $Na^+$ -bicarbonate cotransporter (NBC1 = NBCe1 = SLC4 A4;  $\rightarrow$  B) co-transporters 1  $Na^+$  with 3  $HCO_3^-$  (and/or with 1  $HCO_3^- + 1 CO_3^{2-}$ ?) Thus,  $HCO_3^-$  is transported through the luminal membrane in the form of  $CO_2$  (driving force:  $\Delta P_{CO_2}$ ), and exits the cell across the basolateral membrane as  $HCO_3^-$  (main driving force: membrane potential).

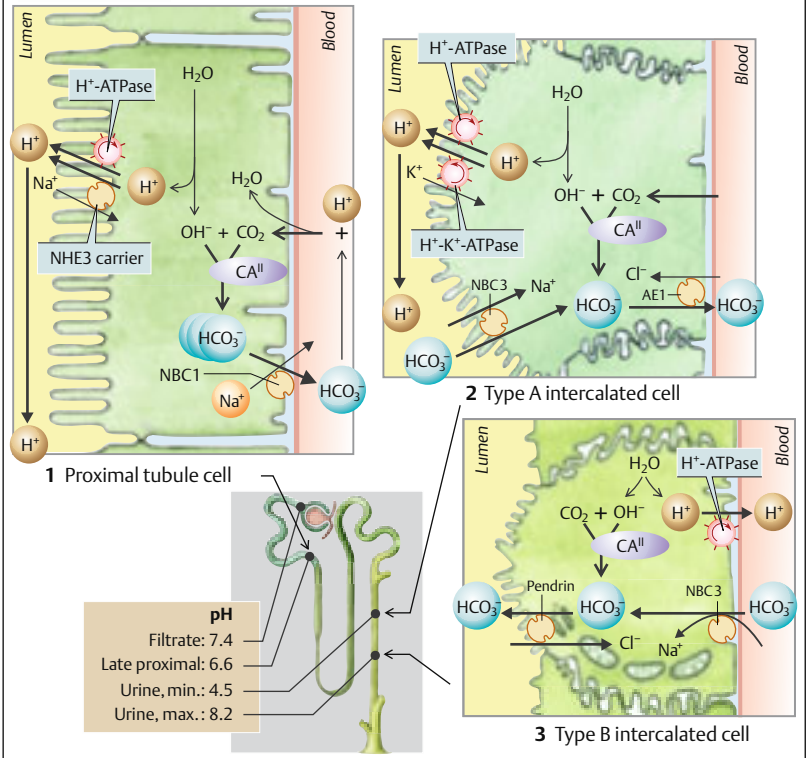
**Hypokalemia** leads to a rise in membrane potential (Nernst equation,  $\rightarrow$  p. 32) and thus to a rise in basolateral  $HCO_3^-$  transport. This results in increased  $H^+$  secretion and, ultimately, in **hypokalemic alkalosis**.

**Urinary acid excretion.** If the dietary protein intake is 70 g/day ( $\rightarrow$  p. 228), a daily load of about 190 mmol of  $H^+$  occurs after the amino acids of the protein have been metabolized. HCl (from arginine, lysine and histidine),  $H_2SO_4$  (from methionine and cystine),  $H_3PO_4$ , and lactic acid are the main sources of  $H^+$  ions. They are “fixed” acids which, unlike  $CO_2$ , are not eliminated by respiration. Since about 130 mmol  $H^+$ /day are used to break down organic anions (glutamate $^-$ , aspartate $^-$ , lactate $^-$ , etc.), the **net  $H^+$  production** is about **60** (40–80) **mmol/day**. Although the  $H^+$  ions are buffered at their production site, they must be excreted to regenerate the buffers.

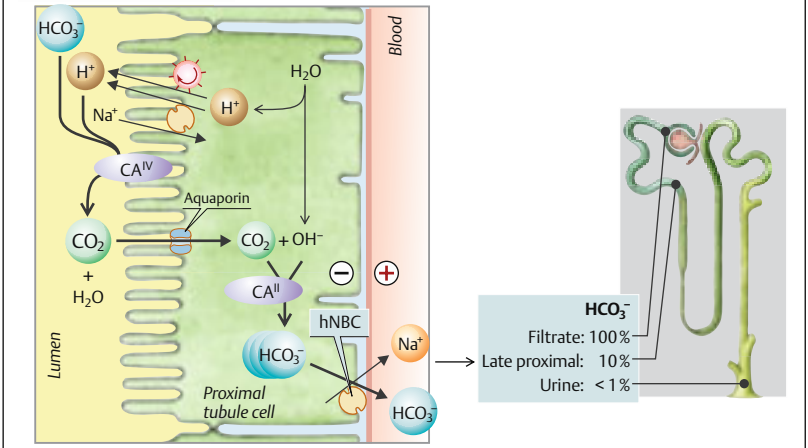
In extreme cases, the **urinary pH** can rise to about pH 8 (high  $HCO_3^-$  excretion) or fall to about pH 4.5 (maximum  $H^+$  conc. is 0.03 mmol/L). At a daily urine output of 1.5 L, the kidneys will excrete < 1% of the produced  $H^+$  ions in their free form.

**Titrateable acids** (80% phosphate, 20% uric acid, citric acid, etc.) comprise a significant fraction (10–30 mmol/day) of  $H^+$  excretion ( $\rightarrow$  C1). This amount of  $H^+$  ions can be determined by titrating the urine with NaOH back to the plasma pH value, which is normally pH 7.4 ( $\rightarrow$  C2). Around 80% of **phosphate** ( $pK_a = 6.8$ ) in the blood occurs in the form of  $HPO_4^{2-}$ , whereas about all phosphate in acidic urine occurs as  $H_2PO_4^-$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 386), i.e., the secreted  $H^+$  ions are buffered by filtered  $HPO_4^{2-}$ . Non-reabsorbed phosphate (5–20% of the filtered

**A. H<sup>+</sup> secretion**

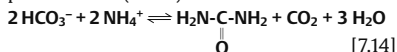


**B. HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> reabsorption**



► quantity, → p. 180) is therefore loaded with  $H^+$  ions, about half of it in the proximal tubule (pH 7.4 ⇒ ca. 6.6), and the rest in the collecting duct (pH 6.6 ⇒ 4.5) (→ C1). When *acidosis* occurs, increased quantities of phosphate are mobilized from the bone and excreted. The resulting increase in  $H^+$  excretion precedes the increased  $NH_4^+$  production associated with *acidosis* (see below).

**Excretion of ammonium ions ( $NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_3 + H^+$ ),** about 25–50 mmol/day on average diet, is *equivalent* to  $H^+$  disposal and is therefore an *indirect* form of  $H^+$  excretion (see below, → D).  $NH_4^+$  is *not* a titratable form of acidity. Unlike  $HPO_4^{2-} + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_2PO_4^-$ , the reaction  $NH_3 + H^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+$  does not function in the body as a buffer because of its high  $pK_a$  value of ca. 9.2. Nevertheless, for every  $NH_4^+$  excreted by the kidney, one  $HCO_3^-$  is spared by the liver. This is equivalent to one  $H^+$  disposed since the spared  $HCO_3^-$  ion can buffer a  $H^+$  ion (hence “indirect  $H^+$  excretion”). With an average dietary intake of protein, the amino acid metabolism produces roughly equimolar amounts of  $HCO_3^-$  and  $NH_4^+$  (ca. 700–1000 mmol/day). The liver utilizes about 95% of these two products to produce **urea** (→ D1):



Thus, one  $HCO_3^-$  less is consumed for each  $NH_4^+$  that passes from the liver to the kidney and is eliminated in the urine. Before exporting  $NH_4^+$  to the kidney, the **liver** incorporates it into **glutamate** yielding **glutamine**; only a small portion reaches the kidney as free  $NH_4^+$ . High levels of  $NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_3$  are toxic.

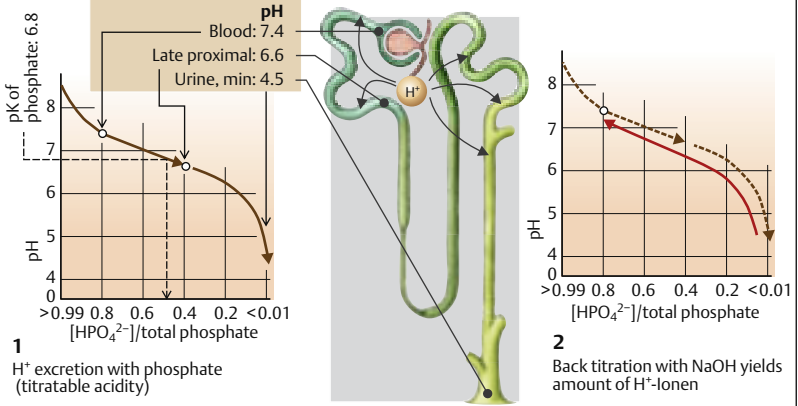
In the **kidney**, **glutamine** enters proximal tubule cells by  $Na^+$  symport and is cleaved by mitochondrial **glutaminase**, yielding  $NH_4^+$  and glutamate $^-$  ( $Glu^-$ ).  $Glu^-$  is further metabolized by **glutamate dehydrogenase** to yield  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate $^{2-}$ , producing a second  $NH_4^+$  ion (→ D2). The  $NH_4^+$  can reach the tubule lumen on two ways: (1) it dissociates within the cell to yield  $NH_3$  and  $H^+$ , allowing  $NH_3$  to diffuse (non-ionically, → p. 22) into the lumen, where it re-joins the separately secreted  $H^+$  ions; (2) the NHE3 carrier secretes  $NH_4^+$  (instead of  $H^+$ ). Once  $NH_4^+$  has arrived at the **thick ascending limb** of the loop of Henle (→ D4), the BSC carrier (→ p. 162) reabsorbs  $NH_4^+$  (instead of  $K^+$ )

so that it remains in the **renal medulla**. Recirculation of  $NH_4^+$  through the loop of Henle yields a very high conc. of  $NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_3 + H^+$  towards the papilla (→ D3). While the  $H^+$  ions are then actively pumped into the lumen of the collecting duct (→ A2, D4), the  $NH_3$  molecules arrive there by non-ionic diffusion and possibly by  $NH_3$  transporter (RhB and RhC glycoproteins) (→ D4). The  $NH_3$  gradient required to drive this diffusion can develop because the especially low luminal pH value (about 4.5) leads to a much smaller  $NH_3$  conc. in the lumen than in the medullary interstitium where the pH is about two pH units higher and the  $NH_3$  conc. is consequently about 100-times higher than in the lumen.

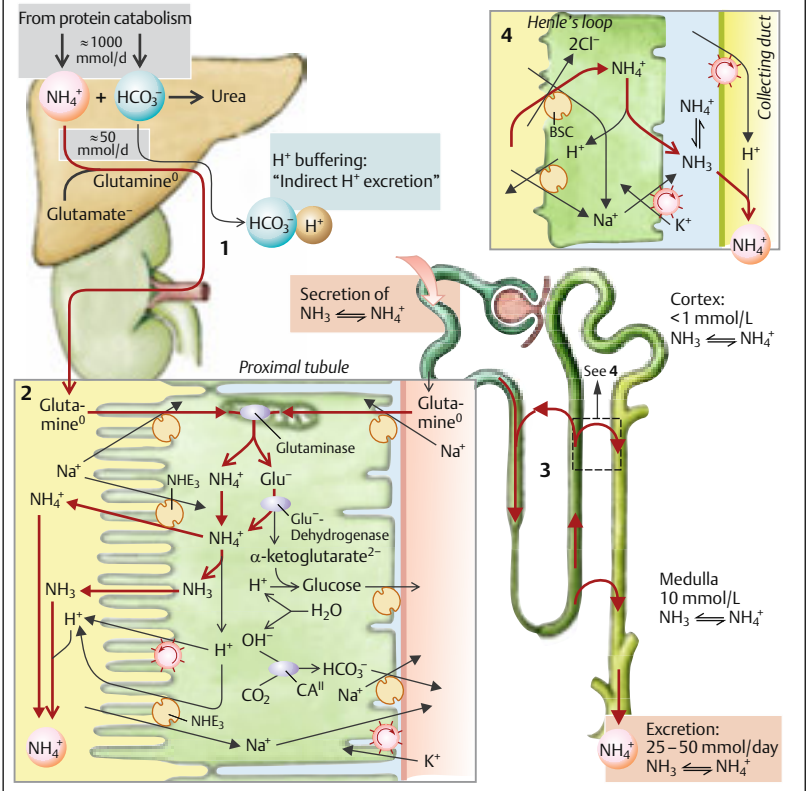
**Disturbances of acid–base metabolism** (see also p. 142ff.). When **chronic non-respiratory acidosis** of non-renal origin occurs,  $NH_4^+$  excretion rises to about 3 times the normal level within 1 to 2 days due to a parallel increase in hepatic glutamine production (at the expense of urea formation) and renal glutaminase activity. **Non-respiratory alkalosis** only decreases the renal  $NH_4^+$  production and  $H^+$  secretion. This occurs in conjunction with an increase in filtered  $HCO_3^-$  (increased plasma concentration, → p. 144), resulting in a sharp rise in  $HCO_3^-$  excretion and, consequently, in osmotic diuresis (→ p. 174). To **compensate for respiratory disturbances** (→ p. 144), it is important that increased (or decreased) plasma  $P_{CO_2}$  levels result in increased (or decreased)  $H^+$  secretion and, thus, in increased (or decreased)  $HCO_3^-$  resorption.  $CO_2$  and  $HCO_3^-$  sensors on the basolateral side of the cell regulate this process.

The kidney can also be the primary site of an acid–base disturbance (**renal acidosis**), with the defect being either generalized or isolated. In a generalized defect, as observed in *renal failure*, acidosis occurs because of reduced  $H^+$  excretion. In an isolated defect with disturbance of proximal  $H^+$  secretion (e.g. a defect of the NBC1 gene), large portions of filtered  $HCO_3^-$  are not reabsorbed, leading to *proximal renal tubular acidosis*. When impaired renal  $H^+$  secretion occurs in the collecting duct (e.g. a defect of the AE1 gene function), the urine can no longer be acidified (pH > 6 despite acidosis) and the excretion of titratable acids and  $NH_4^+$  is consequently impaired (*distal renal tubular acidosis*).

**C. Excretion of titratable acids**



**D. Secretion and excretion of  $NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_3$**



**Phosphate metabolism.** The plasma phosphate conc. normally ranges from 0.8–1.4 mmol/L, and a corresponding amount of ca. 150–250 mmol/day of inorganic phosphate  $\text{P}_i$  ( $\text{HPO}_4^{2-} + \text{H}^+ \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_2\text{PO}_4^-$ ) is filtered each day, a large part of which is reabsorbed. The fractional excretion ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**), which ranges between 5 and 20%, functions to balance  $\text{P}_i$ ,  $\text{H}^+$ , and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .  $\text{P}_i$  excretion rises in the presence of a  $\text{P}_i$  excess (elevated  $\text{P}_i$  levels in plasma) and falls during a  $\text{P}_i$  deficit. Acidosis also results in phosphaturia and increased  $\text{H}^+$  excretion (treatable acidity,  $\rightarrow$  p. 176 ff.). This also occurs in phosphaturia for other causes. Hypocalcemia and parathyrin also induce a rise in  $\text{P}_i$  excretion ( $\rightarrow$  **A3** and p. 292 f).

$\text{P}_i$  is reabsorbed at the proximal tubule ( $\rightarrow$  **A2,3**). Its luminal membrane contains the type 3  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{P}_i$  symport carrier ( $\text{NaPi-3}$ ). The carrier accepts  $\text{H}_2\text{PO}_4^-$  and  $\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$  and cotransports it with  $\text{Na}^+$  by secondary active transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26 ff.).

**Regulation of  $\text{P}_i$  reabsorption.**  $\text{P}_i$  deficits, alkalosis, hypercalcemia, and low PTH levels result in the increased incorporation of  $\text{NaPi-3}$  transporters into the luminal membrane, whereas  $\text{P}_i$  excesses, acidosis, hypocalcemia and increased PTH secretion results in internalization (down-regulation) and subsequent lysosomal degradation of  $\text{NaPi-3}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**).

**Calcium metabolism** (see also p. 36). Unlike the  $\text{Na}^+$  metabolism, the calcium metabolism is regulated mainly by absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the gut ( $\rightarrow$  p. 292 ff.) and, secondarily, by renal excretory function. Total plasma calcium (bound calcium + ionized  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) is a mean 2.5 mmol/L. About 1.3 mmol/L of this is present as free, ionized  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 0.2 mmol/L forms complexes with phosphate, citrate, etc., and the rest of 1 mmol/L is bound to plasma proteins and, thus, not subject to glomerular filtration ( $\rightarrow$  p. 154). Fractional excretion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\text{FE}_{\text{Ca}}$ ) in the urine is 0.5%–3% ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**).

$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption occurs practically throughout the entire nephron ( $\rightarrow$  **A1,2**). The reabsorption of filtered  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  occurs to about 60% in the proximal tubule and about 30% in the thick ascending limb (TAL) of the loop of Henle and is paracellular, i.e., passive ( $\rightarrow$  **A4a** and p. 163 B5, B7). The lumen-positive trans-epithelial potential (LTP) provides most of the driving force for this activity. Since  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  re-

absorption in TAL depends on  $\text{NaCl}$  reabsorption, loop diuretics ( $\rightarrow$  p. 174) inhibit  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption there. PTH promotes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption in TAL as well as in the distal convoluted tubule, where  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is reabsorbed by transcellular active transport ( $\rightarrow$  **A4b**). Thereby,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx into the cell is passive and occurs via luminal  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  efflux is active and occurs via  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase (primary active  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport) and via the  $3\text{Na}^+/1\text{Ca}^{2+}$  antiporter (secondary active  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport). Acidosis inhibits  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption via unclear mechanisms.

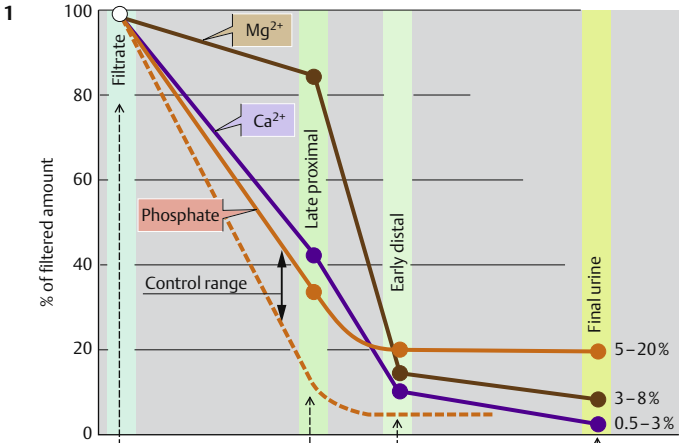
**Urinary calculi** usually consist of calcium phosphate or calcium oxalate. When  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{P}_i$  or oxalate levels are increased, the solubility product will be exceeded but calcium complex formers (e.g., citrate) and inhibitors of crystallization (e.g., nephrocalcin) normally permit a certain degree of supersaturation. Stone formation can occur if there is a deficit of these substances or if extremely high urinary concentrations of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{P}_i$  and oxalate are present (applies to all three in pronounced antidiuresis).

**Magnesium metabolism and reabsorption.** Since part of the magnesium in plasma (0.7–1.2 mmol/L) is protein-bound, the  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  conc. in the filtrate is only 80% of the plasma magnesium conc. Fractional excretion of  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{FE}_{\text{Mg}}$ , is 3–8% ( $\rightarrow$  **A1,2**). Unlike  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , however, only about 15% of the filtered  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  ions leave the proximal tubule. About 70% of the  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  is subject to paracellular reabsorption in the TAL ( $\rightarrow$  **A4** and p. 163 B5, B7). Another 10% of the  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  is subject to transcellular reabsorption in the distal tubule ( $\rightarrow$  **A4b**), probably like  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (see above).

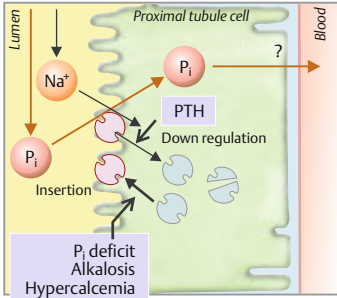
**$\text{Mg}^{2+}$  excretion** is stimulated by hypermagnesemia, hypercalcemia, hypervolemia and loop diuretics, and is inhibited by  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  deficit,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  deficit, volume deficit, PTH and other hormones that mainly act in the TAL.

The kidney has sensors for divalent cations like  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36). When activated, the sensors inhibit  $\text{NaCl}$  reabsorption in the TAL which, like loop diuretics, reduces the driving force for paracellular cation reabsorption, thereby diminishing the normally pronounced  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  reabsorption there.

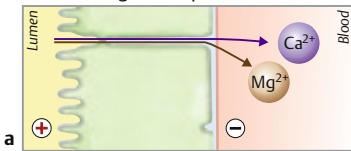
**A. Reabsorption of phosphate,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$**



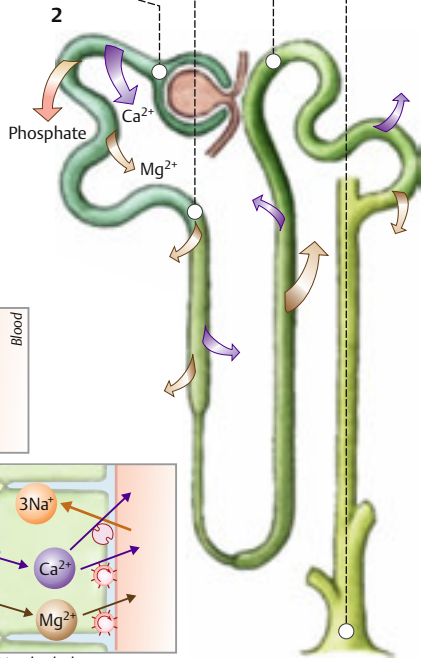
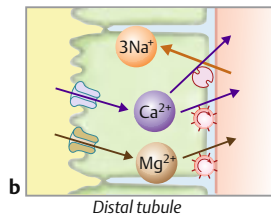
**3 Phosphate transport**



**4  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  transport**



Proximal tubule and thick ascending limb of Henle's loop



The dietary intake of  $K^+$  is about 100 mmol/day (minimum requirement: 25 mmol/day). About 90% of intake is excreted in the urine, and 10% is excreted in the feces. The plasma  $K^+$  conc. normally ranges from 3.5 to 4.8 mmol/L, while intracellular  $K^+$  conc. can be more than 30 times as high (due to the activity of  $Na^+K^+$ -ATPase;  $\rightarrow$  A). Therefore, about 98% of the ca. 3000 mmol of  $K^+$  ions in the body are present in the cells. Although the extracellular  $K^+$  conc. comprises only about 2% of total body  $K^+$ , it is still very important because (a) it is needed for regulation of  $K^+$  homeostasis and (b) relatively small changes in cellular  $K^+$  (influx or efflux) can lead to tremendous changes in the plasma  $K^+$  conc. (with an associated risk of cardiac arrhythmias). Regulation of  $K^+$  homeostasis therefore implies *distribution of  $K^+$*  through intracellular and extracellular compartments and *adjustment of  $K^+$  excretion according to  $K^+$  intake*.

**Acute regulation** of the extracellular  $K^+$  conc. is achieved by internal **shifting of  $K^+$**  between the extracellular fluid and intracellular fluid ( $\rightarrow$  A). This relatively rapid process prevents or mitigates dangerous rises in extracellular  $K^+$  (hyperkalemia) in cases where large quantities of  $K^+$  are present due to high dietary intake or internal  $K^+$  liberation (e.g., in sudden hemolysis). The associated  $K^+$  shifting is mainly subject to *hormonal control*. The **insulin** secreted after a meal stimulates  $Na^+K^+$ -ATPase and distributes the  $K^+$  supplied in the animal and vegetable cells of the food to the cells of the body. This is also the case in diet-independent hyperkalemia, which stimulates insulin secretion per se. **Epinephrine** likewise increases cellular  $K^+$  uptake, which is particularly important in muscle work and trauma—two situations that lead to a rise in plasma  $K^+$ . In both cases, the increased epinephrine levels allow the re-uptake of  $K^+$  in this and other cells. **Aldosterone** also increases the intracellular  $K^+$  conc. (see below).

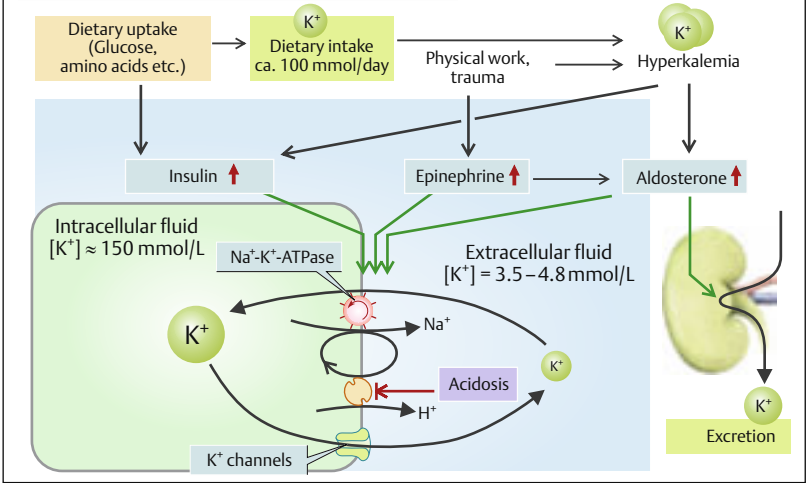
**Changes in pH** affect the intra- and extracellular distribution of  $K^+$  ( $\rightarrow$  A). This is mainly because the ubiquitous  $Na^+/H^+$  antiporter works faster in alkalosis and more slowly in acidosis ( $\rightarrow$  A). In acidosis,  $Na^+$  influx therefore decreases,  $Na^+K^+$ -ATPase slows down, and the extracellular  $K^+$  concentration rises (especially in non-respiratory acidosis, i.e., by 0.6 mmol/L

per 0.1 unit change in pH). Alkalosis results in hypokalemia.

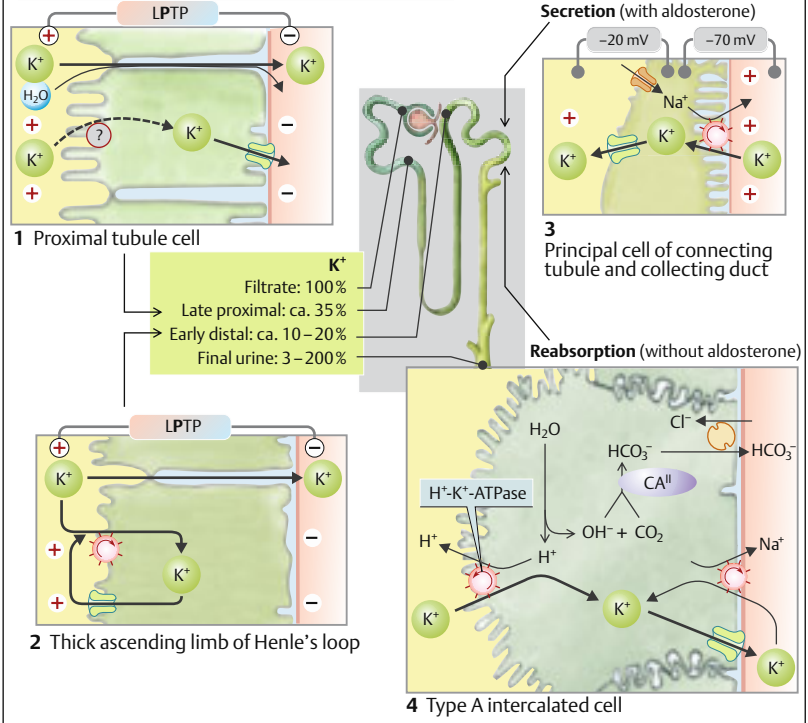
**Chronic regulation** of  $K^+$  homeostasis is mainly achieved by the **kidney** ( $\rightarrow$  B).  $K^+$  is subject to free glomerular filtration, and most of the filtered  $K^+$  is normally reabsorbed (net *reabsorption*). The excreted amount can, in some cases, exceed the filtered amount (net *secretion*, see below). About 65% of the filtered  $K^+$  is reabsorbed before reaching the end of the *proximal tubule*, regardless of the  $K^+$  supply. This is comparable to the percentage of  $Na^+$  and  $H_2O$  reabsorbed ( $\rightarrow$  B1 and p. 157, column 2). This type of  $K^+$  transport is mainly paracellular and therefore passive. Solvent drag ( $\rightarrow$  p.24) and the lumen-positive trans-epithelial potential, **LPTP** ( $\rightarrow$  B1 and p. 162), in the mid and late proximal segments of the tubule provide the driving forces for it. In the *loop of Henle*, another 15% of the filtered  $K^+$  is reabsorbed by trans- and paracellular routes ( $\rightarrow$  B2). The amount of  $K^+$  excreted is determined in the *connecting tubule and collecting duct*. Larger or smaller quantities of  $K^+$  are then either reabsorbed or secreted according to need. In extreme cases, the fractional excretion of  $K^+$  ( $FE_K$ ) can rise to more than 100% in response to a high  $K^+$  intake, or drop to about 3–5% when there is a  $K^+$  deficit ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**Cellular mechanisms of renal  $K^+$  transport.** The connecting tubule and collecting duct contain **principal cells** ( $\rightarrow$  B3) that reabsorb  $Na^+$  and secrete  $K^+$ . Accumulated intracellular  $K^+$  can exit the cell through  $K^+$  *channels* on either side of the cell. The electrochemical  $K^+$  gradient across the membrane in question is decisive for the efflux of  $K^+$ . The luminal membrane of principal cells also contains  $Na^+$  *channels* through which  $Na^+$  enters the cell ( $\rightarrow$  p. 162). This depolarizes the luminal membrane, which reaches a potential of about  $-20$  mV, while the basolateral membrane maintains its normal potential of ca.  $-70$  mV ( $\rightarrow$  B3). The driving force for  $K^+$  efflux ( $E_m - E_K$ ,  $\rightarrow$  p. 32) is therefore higher on the luminal side than on the opposite side. Hence,  $K^+$  preferentially exits the cell toward the lumen (*secretion*). This is mainly why  $K^+$  secretion is coupled with  $Na^+$  reabsorption, i.e., the more  $Na^+$  reabsorbed by the principle cell, the more  $K^+$  secreted.  $\blacktriangleright$

**A. Regulation of extracellular  $K^+$  concentration**



**B. Resorption and secretion of  $K^+$  in the kidney**



► Another apparent reason is that the reabsorption-related increase in intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration decreases the driving force for the  $3\text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange at the basolateral cell membrane, resulting in a rise in the **cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$**  concentration. This rise acts as a signal for more frequent opening of luminal  $\text{K}^+$  channels.

Type A **intercalated cells** ( $\rightarrow$  B4) can active reabsorb  $\text{K}^+$  in addition to secreting  $\text{H}^+$  ions. Like the parietal cells of the stomach, their luminal membrane contains a  $\text{H}^+/\text{K}^+-\text{ATPase}$  for this purpose.

**Factors that affect  $\text{K}^+$  excretion** ( $\rightarrow$  C):

1. An **increased  $\text{K}^+$  intake** raises the intracellular and plasma  $\text{K}^+$  concentrations, which thereby increases the chemical driving force for  $\text{K}^+$  secretion.

2. **Blood pH:** The intracellular  $\text{K}^+$  conc. in renal cells *rises in alkalosis* and *falls in acute acidosis*. This leads to a simultaneous fall in  $\text{K}^+$  excretion, which again rises in chronic acidosis. The reasons for this are that (a) acidosis-related inhibition of  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+-\text{ATPase}$  reduces proximal  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption, resulting in increased distal urinary flow (see no. 3), and (b) the resulting hyperkalemia stimulates aldosterone secretion (see no. 4).

3. If there is **increased urinary flow** in the connecting tubule and collecting duct (e.g., due to a high  $\text{Na}^+$  intake, osmotic diuresis, or other factors that inhibit  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption upstream), larger quantities of  $\text{K}^+$  will be excreted. This explains the *potassium-losing effect of certain diuretics* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 175). The reason for this is, presumably, that  $\text{K}^+$  secretion is limited at a certain luminal  $\text{K}^+$  concentration. Hence, the larger the volume/time, the more  $\text{K}^+$  taken away over time.

4. **Aldosterone** leads to retention of  $\text{Na}^+$ , an increase in extracellular volume ( $\rightarrow$  p. 186), a moderate increase in  $\text{H}^+$  secretion (cellular pH rises), and *increased  $\text{K}^+$  excretion*. It also increases the number of  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+-\text{ATPase}$  molecules in the target cells and leads to a chronic increase in mitochondrial density in  $\text{K}^+$  adaptation, for example (see below).

**Cellular mechanisms of aldosterone effects.** The increase in  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption is achieved by increased production of transport proteins, called aldosterone-induced factors (AIFs). This is a genome-mediated effect that begins approx. 30 min to 1 hour after aldosterone administration or secretion. The maxi-

mum effects are observed after several hours. Aldosterone increases  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption, thereby depolarizing the luminal cell membrane ( $\rightarrow$  B3). Consequently, it increases the driving force for  $\text{K}^+$  secretion and increases  $\text{K}^+$  conductance by increasing the pH of the cell. Both effects lead to increased  $\text{K}^+$  secretion. Aldosterone also has a very rapid (few seconds to minutes) non-genomic effect on the cell membrane, the physiological significance of which has yet to be explained.

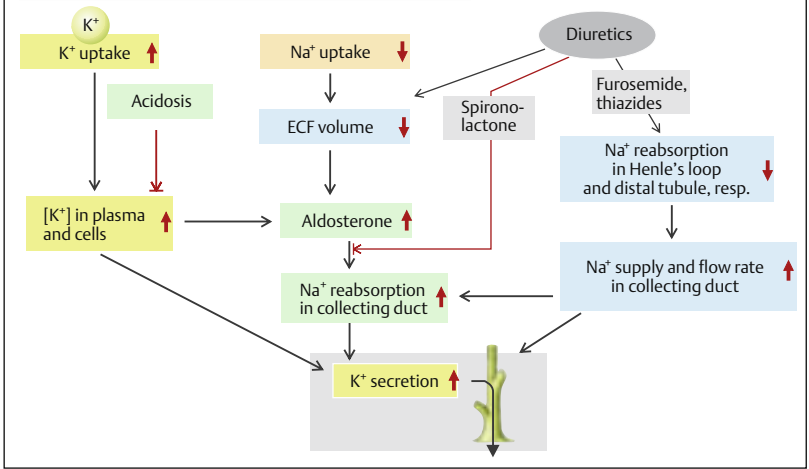
The capacity of the  $\text{K}^+$  excretory mechanism increases in response to long-term increases in the  $\text{K}^+$  supply ( **$\text{K}^+$  adaptation**). Even when renal function is impaired, this largely maintains the  $\text{K}^+$  balance in the remaining, intact parts of the tubular apparatus. The colon can then take over more than  $1/3$  of the  $\text{K}^+$  excretion.

**Mineralocorticosteroids.** Aldosterone is the main mineralocorticoid hormone synthesized and secreted by the *zona glomerulosa of the adrenal cortex* ( $\rightarrow$  D and p. 296ff.). As with other steroid hormones, aldosterone is not stored, but is synthesized as needed. The principal function of aldosterone is to regulate  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  transport in the kidney, gut, and other organs ( $\rightarrow$  D). **Aldosterone secretion** increases in response to (a) drops in blood volume and blood pressure (mediated by angiotensin II;  $\rightarrow$  p. 186) and (b) hyperkalemia ( $\rightarrow$  D). Aldosterone synthesis is inhibited by atriopeptin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 173 D2).

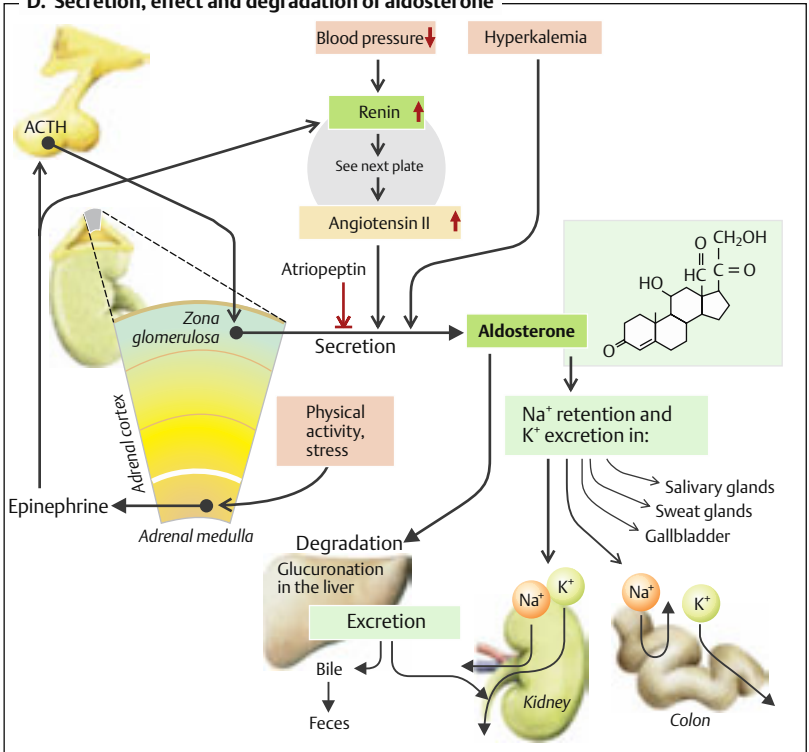
Normal **cortisol** concentrations are *not* effective at the aldosterone receptor only because cortisol is converted to cortisone by an  $11\beta$ -hydroxysteroid oxidoreductase in aldosterone's target cells.

**Hyperaldosteronism** can be either *primary* (aldosterone-secreting tumors of adrenal cortex, as observed in *Conn's syndrome*) or *secondary* (in volume depletion,  $\rightarrow$  p. 186).  *$\text{Na}^+$  retention* resulting in high ECF volumes and *hypertension* as well as a simultaneous  *$\text{K}^+$  losses* and hypokalemic *alkalosis* are the consequences. When more than about 90% of the adrenal cortex is destroyed, e.g. by autoimmune adrenalitis, metastatic cancer or tuberculosis, primary chronic **adrenocortical insufficiency** develops (*Addison's disease*). The *aldosterone deficit* leads to a sharp increase in  $\text{Na}^+$  excretion, resulting in hypovolemia, hypotension and  $\text{K}^+$  retention (hyperkalemia). As glucocorticoid deficiency also develops, complications can be life-threatening, especially under severe stress (infections, trauma). If only one gland is destroyed, *ACTH* causes hypertrophy of the other ( $\rightarrow$  p. 299 A).

C. Factors that affect K<sup>+</sup> secretion and excretion



D. Secretion, effect and degradation of aldosterone



The **juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA)** consists of (a) juxtaglomerular cells of the *afferent arteriole* (including renin-containing and sympathetically innervated granulated cells) and *efferent arteriole*, (b) *macula densa cells* of the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle and (c) juxtaglomerular mesangial cells (*polkissen*, → **A**) of a given nephron (→ **A**).

**JGA functions:** (1) local transmission of tubuloglomerular feedback (**TGF**) at its own nephron via angiotensin II (**ATII**) and (2) systemic production of angiotensin II as part of the renin–angiotensin system (**RAS**).

**Tubuloglomerular feedback (TGF).** Since the daily GFR is 10 times larger than the total ECF volume (→ p. 168), the excretion of salt and water must be precisely adjusted according to uptake. **Acute changes in the GFR** of the single nephron (SNGFR) and the amount of NaCl filtered per unit time can occur for several reasons. An excessive SNGFR is associated with the risk that the distal mechanisms for NaCl reabsorption will be overloaded and that too much NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O will be lost in the urine. A too low SNGFR means that too much NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O will be retained. The extent of NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption in the proximal tubule determines how quickly the tubular urine will flow through the loop of Henle. When less is absorbed upstream, the urine flows more quickly through the thick ascending limb of the loop, resulting in a lower extent of urine dilution (→ p. 162) and a higher NaCl concentration at the macula densa,  $[\text{NaCl}]_{\text{MD}}$ . If the  $[\text{NaCl}]_{\text{MD}}$  becomes too high, the afferent arteriole will constrict to curb the GFR of the affected nephron within 10 s or vice versa (*negative feedback*). It is unclear how the  $[\text{NaCl}]_{\text{MD}}$  results in the signal to constrict, but type 1 A angiotensin II (**AT<sub>1A</sub>**) receptors play a key role.

If, however, the  $[\text{NaCl}]_{\text{MD}}$  changes due to **chronic shifts in total body NaCl** and an associated change in ECF volume, rigid coupling of the SNGFR with the  $[\text{NaCl}]_{\text{MD}}$  through TGF would be fatal. Since long-term increases in the ECF volume reduce proximal NaCl reabsorption, the  $[\text{NaCl}]_{\text{MD}}$  would increase, resulting in a decrease in the GFR and a further increase in the ECF volume. The reverse occurs in ECF volume deficit. To prevent these effects, the  $[\text{NaCl}]_{\text{MD}}$ /SNGFR response curve is shifted in the appropriate direction by certain substances. Nitric oxide (NO) shifts the curve when there is an ECF excess (increased SNGFR at same  $[\text{NaCl}]_{\text{MD}}$ ), and (only locally effective) angiotensin II shifts it in the other direction when there is an ECF deficit.

**Renin–angiotensin system (RAS).** If the mean renal blood pressure acutely drops below 90 mmHg or so, renal baroreceptors will trig-

ger the release of **renin**, thereby increasing the systemic plasma renin conc. Renin is a peptidase that catalyzes the cleavage of *angiotensin I* from the renin substrate *angiotensinogen* (released from the liver). Angiotensin-converting enzyme (**ACE**) produced in the lung, etc. cleaves two amino acids from angiotensin I to produce **angiotensin II** approx. 30–60 minutes after the drop in blood pressure (→ **B**).

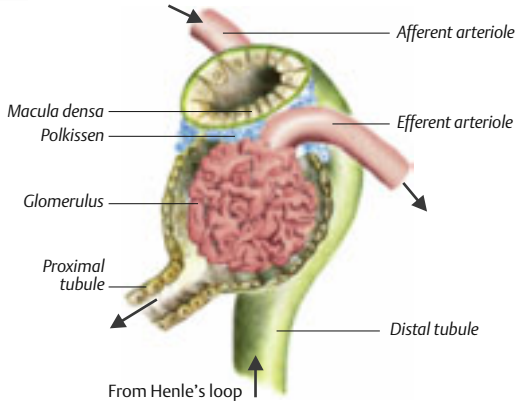
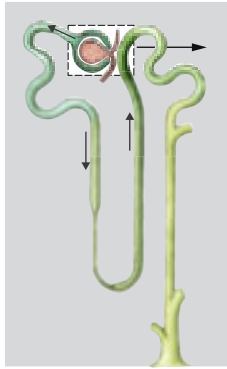
**Control of the RAS (→ B).** The blood pressure *threshold* for renin release is raised by  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors, and *basal renin secretion* is increased by  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors. *Angiotensin II* and *aldosterone* are the most important effectors of the RAS. Angiotensin II stimulates the release of aldosterone by adrenal cortex (see below). Both hormones directly (fast action) or indirectly (delayed action) lead to a renewed increase in arterial blood pressure (→ **B**), and renin release therefore decreases to normal levels. Moreover, both hormones *inhibit renin release* (negative feedback).

If the mean blood pressure is decreased in only one kidney (e.g., due to stenosis of the affected renal artery), the affected kidney will also start to release more renin which, in this case, will lead to **renal hypertension** in the rest of the circulation.

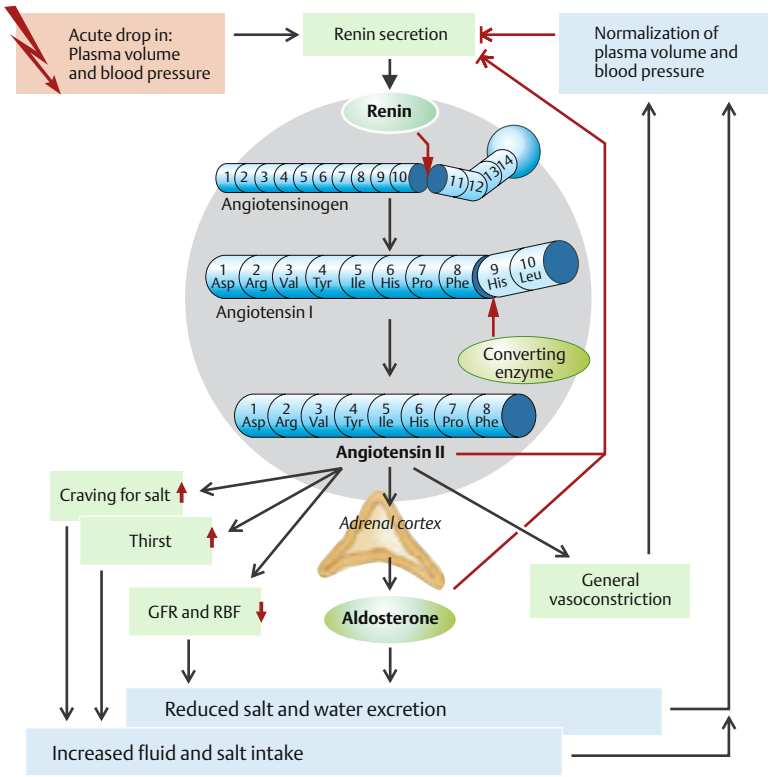
**Angiotensin II effects:** Beside altering the structure of the myocardium and blood vessels (mainly via **AT<sub>2</sub>** receptors), angiotensin II has the following fast or delayed effects mediated by **AT<sub>1</sub>** receptors (→ **A**).

- ◆ **Vessels:** Angiotensin II has potent vasoconstrictive and hypertensive action, which (via endothelin) takes effect in the arterioles (fast action).
- ◆ **CNS:** Angiotensin II takes effect in the hypothalamus, resulting in vasoconstriction through the circulatory “center” (rapid action). It also increases ADH secretion in the hypothalamus, which stimulates thirst and a craving for salt (delayed action).
- ◆ **Kidney:** Angiotensin II plays a major role in regulating renal circulation and GFR by constricting of the afferent and/or efferent arteriole (delayed action; cf. autoregulation, → p. 150). It directly stimulates Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption in the proximal tubule (delayed action).
- ◆ **Adrenal gland:** Angiotensin II stimulates aldosterone synthesis in the adrenal cortex (delayed action; → p. 184) and leads to the release of epinephrine in the adrenal medulla (fast action).

**A. Juxtaglomerular apparatus**



**B. Renin-Angiotensin-System**



Blood is pumped from the left ventricle of the heart to capillaries in the periphery via the arterial vessels of the *systemic* (or greater) *circulation* and returns via the veins to the right heart. It is then expelled from the right ventricle to the lungs via the *pulmonary* (or lesser) *circulation* and returns to the left heart ( $\rightarrow$  A).

The total **Blood volume** is roughly 4–5 L ( $\approx$  7% of the fat-free body mass;  $\rightarrow$  table on p. 88). Around 80% of the blood circulates through the veins, right heart and pulmonary vessels, which are jointly referred to as the *low pressure system* ( $\rightarrow$  A, left). These highly distensible *capacitance vessels* function as a *blood reservoir* in which blood is stored and released as needed via venous vasoconstriction ( $\rightarrow$  e.g., p. 220). When the blood volume increases—due, for example, to a blood transfusion—over 99% of the transfused volume remains in the low-pressure system (*high capacitance*), while only  $<$  1% circulates in the arterial *high-pressure system* (*low capacitance*). Conversely, a decrease will be reflected almost entirely by a decrease in the blood stores in the low-pressure system. **Central venous pressure** (measured in or near to the right atrium; normally 4–12 cm H<sub>2</sub>O) is therefore a good indicator of blood volume (and ECF volume) in individuals with normally functioning heart and lungs.

**Cardiac output (CO).** The cardiac output is calculated as heart rate (HR) times stroke volume (SV). Under normal resting conditions, the CO is approx.  $70 \text{ [min}^{-1}] \times 0.08 \text{ [L]} = 5.6 \text{ L/min}$  or, more precisely (cardiac index), a mean 3.4 L/min per m<sup>2</sup> body surface area. An increase in HR (up to about  $180 \text{ min}^{-1}$ ) and/or SV can increase the CO to 15–20 L/min.

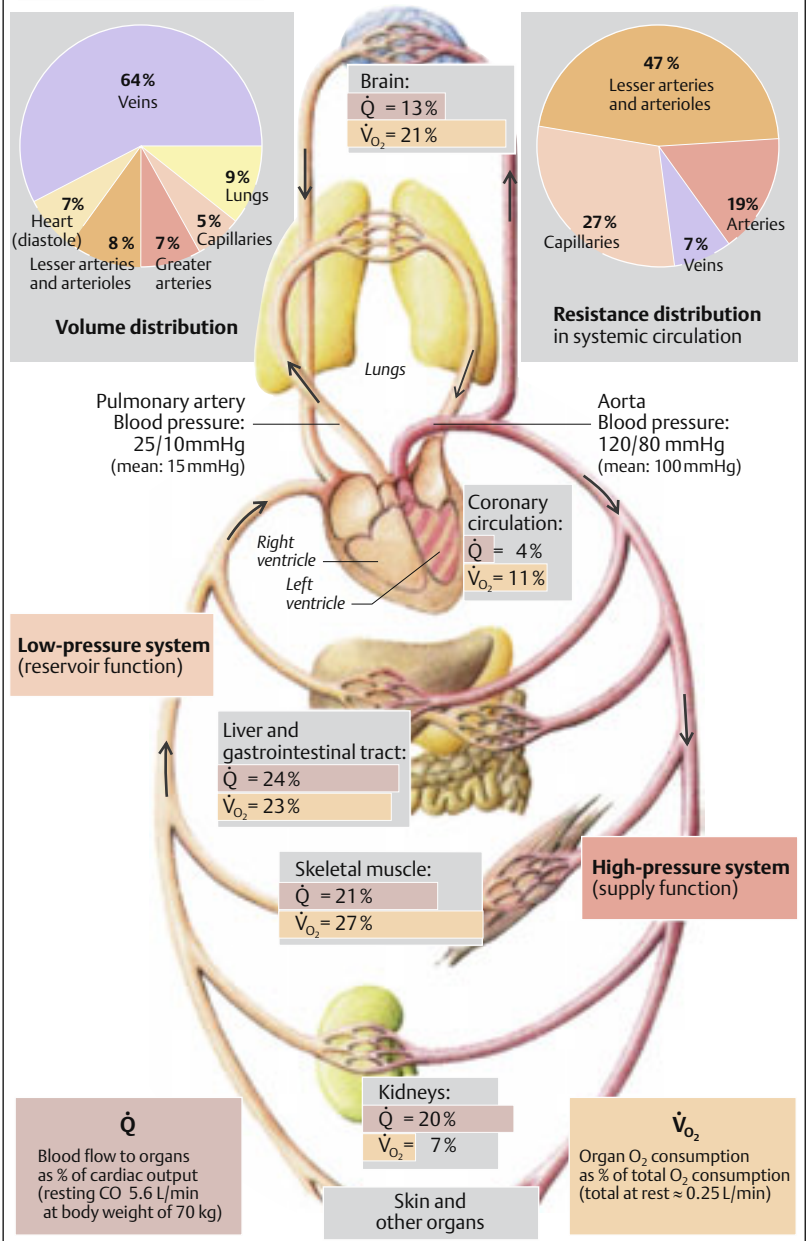
The **distribution of blood** to the organs arranged in *parallel* in the **systemic circulation** ( $\rightarrow$  A, Q values) is determined by their *functional priority* (vital organs) and by the *current needs* of the body (see also p. 215 A). Maintaining adequate cerebral perfusion (approx. 13% of the resting CO) is the top priority, not only because the *brain* is a major vital organ, but also because it is very susceptible to hypoxic damage ( $\rightarrow$  p. 130). *Myocardial* perfusion via coronary arteries (approx. 4% of the CO at rest) must also be maintained, because any disruption of cardiac pumping function will

endanger the entire circulation. About 20 to 25% of the CO is distributed to the *kidneys*. This fraction is very large relative to the kidney weight (only 0.5% of body mass). Renal blood flow is primarily used to maintain renal *excretory and control functions*. Thus, renal blood flow may be reduced transiently in favor of cardiac and cerebral perfusion, e.g., to ward off impending shock ( $\rightarrow$  p. 220). During strenuous physical *exercise*, the CO increases and is allotted mainly to the *skeletal muscle*. During digestion, the *gastrointestinal tract* also receives a relatively high fraction of the CO. Naturally, both of these organ groups cannot receive the maximum blood supply at the same time ( $\rightarrow$  p. 75 A). Blood flow to the *skin* (approx. 10% of the resting CO) mainly serves the purpose of *heat disposal* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 224ff.). The cutaneous blood flow rises in response to increased heat production (physical work) and/or high external temperatures and decreases (pallor) in favor of vital organs in certain situations (e.g., shock;  $\rightarrow$  p. 220).

The total CO flows through the **pulmonary circulation** as it and the systemic circulation are arranged in series ( $\rightarrow$  A). Oxygen-depleted (venous) blood is carried via the pulmonary arteries to the lungs, where it is *oxygenated* or “*arterialized*.” A relatively small quantity of additional oxygenated blood from the systemic circulation reaches the lung tissue via the bronchial arteries. All blood in the pulmonary circulation drains via the pulmonary veins.

**Peripheral resistance.** Flow resistance in the pulmonary circulation is only about 10% of the *total peripheral resistance (TPR)* in the systemic circulation. Consequently, the mean pressure in the right ventricle (approx. 15 mmHg = 2 kPa) is considerably lower than in the left ventricle (100 mmHg = 13.3 kPa). Since the resistance in the lesser arteries and arterioles amounts to nearly 50% of TPR ( $\rightarrow$  A, top right), they are called *resistance vessels*.

A. Cardiovascular system



In the systemic circulation, blood is ejected from the left ventricle to the aorta and returns to the right atrium via the venae cavae ( $\rightarrow$  A). As a result, the **mean blood pressure** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 208) drops from around 100 mmHg in the aorta to 2–4 mmHg in the venae cavae ( $\rightarrow$  A2), resulting in a pressure difference ( $\Delta P$ ) of about 97 mmHg (pulmonary circulation;  $\rightarrow$  p. 122). According to **Ohm's Law**,

$$\Delta P = \dot{Q} \cdot R \text{ (mmHg)} \quad [8.1]$$

where  $\dot{Q}$  is the blood flow ( $L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ) and  $R$  is the flow resistance ( $\text{mmHg} \cdot \text{min} \cdot L^{-1}$ ). Equation 8.1 can be used to calculate blood flow in a given organ ( $R = \text{organ resistance}$ ) as well as in the entire cardiovascular system, where  $\dot{Q}$  is the cardiac output (CO;  $\rightarrow$  p. 188) and  $R$  is the total peripheral flow resistance (TPR). The TPR at rest is about  $18 \text{ mmHg} \cdot \text{min} \cdot L^{-1}$ .

The **aorta** and **greater arteries** distribute the blood to the periphery. In doing so, they act as a **hydraulic filter** because (due to their high **compliance**,  $\Delta V/\Delta P_{\text{tm}}$ ) they convert the intermittent flow at the aortic root to a nearly steady flow through the capillaries. The high systolic pressures generated during the ejection phase cause the walls of these blood vessels to stretch, and part of the ejected blood is “stored” in the dilated lumen (*windkessel*). Elastic recoil of the vessel walls after aortic valve closure maintains blood flow during diastole. Arterial vessel compliance decreases with age.

**Flow velocity** ( $\dot{V}$ ) and **flow rate** ( $\dot{Q}$ ) of the blood. Assuming an aortic cross-sectional area (CSA) of  $5.3 \text{ cm}^2$  and a total CSA of  $20 \text{ cm}^2$  of all downstream arteries ( $\rightarrow$  A5), the **mean  $\dot{V}$**  (during systole and diastole) at rest can be calculated from a resting CO of  $5.6 \text{ L/min}$ : It equals  $18 \text{ cm/s}$  in the aorta and  $5 \text{ cm/s}$  in the arteries ( $\rightarrow$  A3). As the aorta receives blood only during the ejection phase ( $\rightarrow$  p. 192), the maximum resting values for  $\dot{V}$  and  $\dot{Q}$  in the aortic root are much higher during this phase ( $\dot{V} = 95 \text{ cm/s}$ ,  $\dot{Q} = 500 \text{ mL/s}$ ).

In the **Hagen–Poiseuille equation**,

$$R = 8 \cdot l \cdot \eta / (\pi \cdot r^4) \quad [8.2]$$

the flow resistance ( $R$ ) in a tube of known length ( $l$ ) is dependent on the viscosity ( $\eta$ ) of the fluid in the tube ( $\rightarrow$  p. 92) and the fourth power of the inner radius of the tube ( $r^4$ ). Decreasing the radius by only about 16% will therefore suffice to double the resistance.

The **lesser arteries** and **arterioles** account for nearly 50% of the TPR (*resistance vessels*;  $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 189 A) since their small radii have a much stronger effect on total TPR ( $R \sim 1/r^4$ ) than their large total CSA ( $R \sim r^2$ ). Thus, the blood pressure in these vessels drops significantly. Any change in the radius of the small arteries or arterioles therefore has a radical effect on the TPR ( $\rightarrow$  p. 214ff.). Their width and that of the **precapillary sphincter** determines the amount of blood distributed to the capillary beds (exchange area).

Although the **capillaries** have even smaller radii (and thus much higher individual resistances than the arterioles), their total contribution to the TPR is only about 27% because their total CSA is so large ( $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 189 A). The *exchange of fluid and solutes* takes place across the walls of capillaries and **postcapillary venules**. Both vessel types are particularly suitable for the task because (a) their  $\dot{V}$  is very small ( $0.02\text{--}0.1 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  A3) (due to the large total CSA), (b) their total surface area is very large (approx.  $1000 \text{ m}^2$ ), (3) and their walls can be very thin as their inner radius ( $4.5 \mu\text{m}$ ) is extremely small (*Laplace's law*, see below).

**Transmural pressure**  $P_{\text{tm}}$  [ $\text{N/m}^2$ ], that is, the pressure difference across the wall of a hollow organ (= internal pressure minus external pressure), causes the wall to stretch. Its materials must therefore be able to withstand this stretch. The resulting tangential *mural tension*  $T$  [ $\text{N/m}$ ] is a function of the inner radius  $r$  [ $\text{m}$ ] of the organ. According to **Laplace's law** for cylindrical (or spherical) hollow bodies,

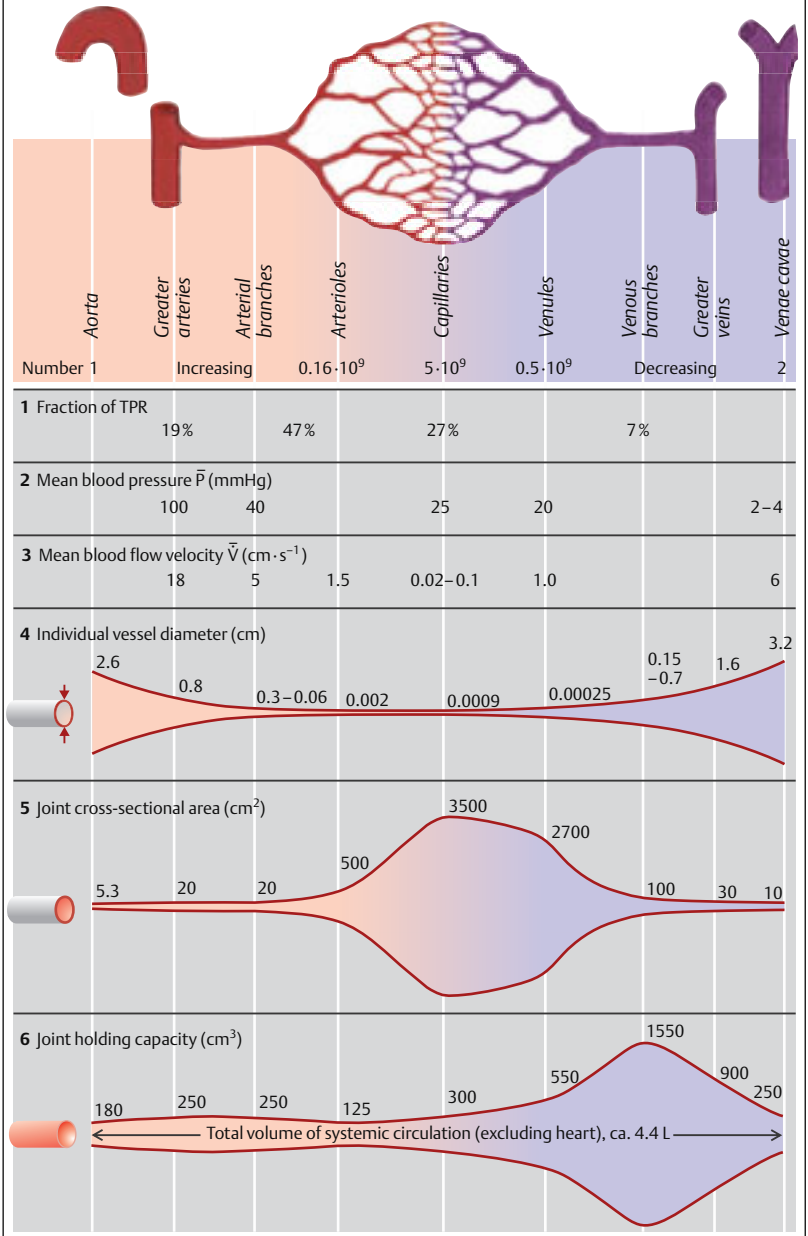
$$P_{\text{tm}} = T/r \text{ (or } P_{\text{tm}} = 2T/r, \text{ resp.)} \quad [8.3a/b]$$

Here,  $T$  is the total mural tension, regardless how thick the wall is. A thick wall can naturally withstand a given  $P_{\text{tm}}$  more easily than a thin one. In order to determine the **tension exerted per unit CSA of the wall** (i.e., the stress requirements of the wall material in  $\text{N/m}^2$ ), the thickness of the wall ( $w$ ) must be considered. Equation 8.3 a/b is therefore transformed to

$$P_{\text{tm}} = T \cdot w/r \text{ (or } P_{\text{tm}} = 2T \cdot w/r, \text{ resp.)} \quad [8.4a/b]$$

The blood collects in the **veins**, which can accommodate large volumes of fluid ( $\rightarrow$  A6). These *capacitance vessels* serve as a **blood reservoir** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 188).

A. Characteristics of the vessel segments



The resting heart rate is 60–80 beats per minute. A **cardiac cycle** ( $\rightarrow$  A) therefore takes roughly 1 s. It can be divided into four distinct phases: (I) contraction phase and (II) ejection phase, both occurring in *systole*; (III) relaxation phase and filling phase (IV), both occurring in *diastole*. At the end of phase IV, the atria contract (phase IVc). Electrical excitation of the atria and ventricles precedes their contraction.

The **cardiac valves** determine the direction of blood flow within the heart, e.g., from the atria to the ventricles (phase IV) or from the ventricles to the aorta or pulmonary artery (phase II). All cardiac valves are closed during phases I and III ( $\rightarrow$  A, top). Opening and closing of the valves is controlled by the pressures exerted on the two sides of the valves.

**Cardiac cycle.** Near the end of ventricular diastole, the sinoatrial (SA) node emits an **electrical impulse**, marking to the beginning of the P wave of the ECG (phase IVc,  $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 198ff.). This results in **atrial contraction** ( $\rightarrow$  A4) and is followed by **ventricular excitation** (QRS complex of the ECG). The ventricular pressure then starts to rise ( $\rightarrow$  A2, blue line) until it exceeds the atrial pressure, causing the atrioventricular valves (mitral and tricuspid valves) to close one immediately after the other producing part of the first heart sound. This marks the *end of diastole*. The mean **end-diastolic volume (EDV)** in the ventricle is now about 120 mL ( $\rightarrow$  A4) or, more precisely, 70 mL/m<sup>2</sup> body surface area.

The **isovolumetric contraction** phase now begins (phase I, ca. 50 ms). With all valves are closed, the ventricles now contract ( $\rightarrow$  A6), and the ventricular pressure increases rapidly. The slope of this ascending pressure curve indicates the maximum rate of pressure developed (**maximum dp/dt**). The semilunar valves (aortic and pulmonary valves) now open because the pressure in the left ventricle ( $\rightarrow$  A2, blue line) exceeds that in the aorta ( $\rightarrow$  A2, black broken curve) at about 80 mmHg, and the pressure in the right ventricle exceeds that in the pulmonary artery at about 10 mmHg.

The **ejection** phase (now begins phase II; ca. 210 ms at rest). During this period, the pressure in the left ventricle and aorta reaches a maximum of ca. 120 mmHg (systolic pressure). In the early phase of ejection (IIa or *rapid ejection*

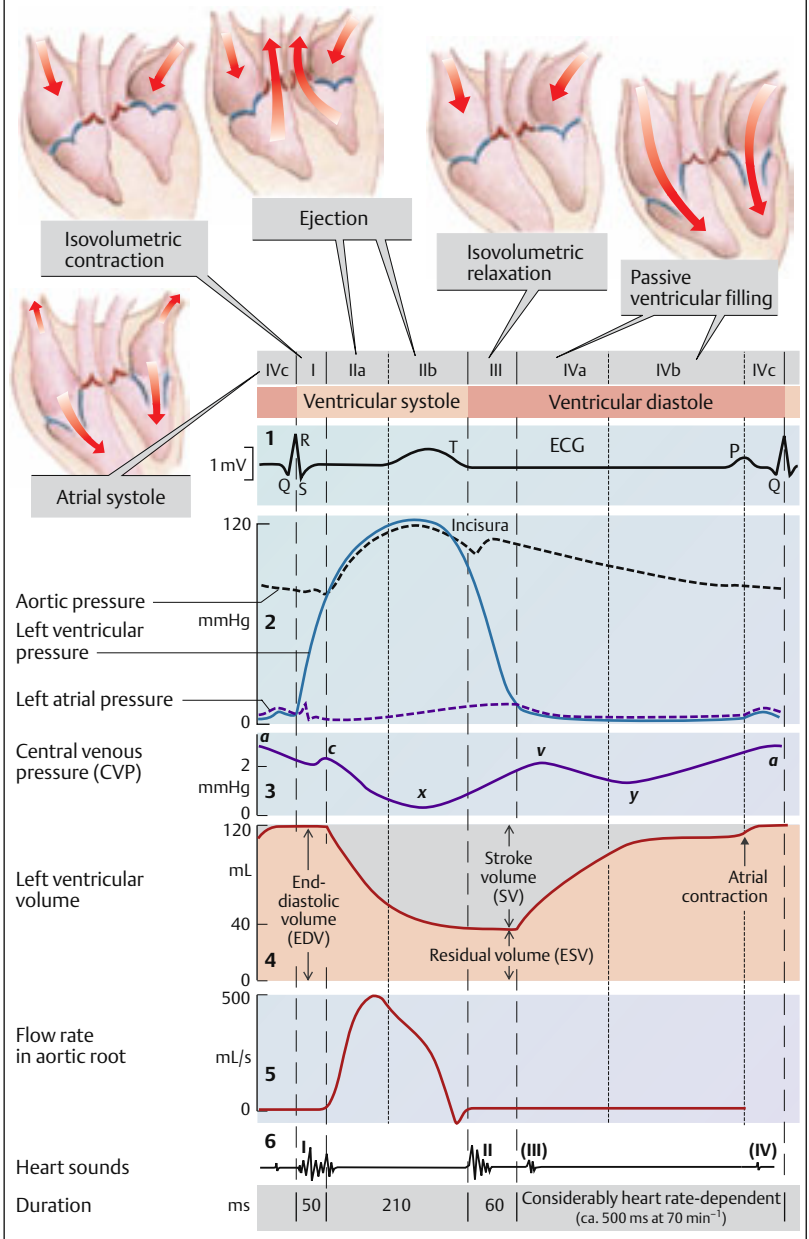
*phase*), a large portion of the stroke volume (SV) is rapidly expelled ( $\rightarrow$  A4) and the blood flow rate reaches a maximum ( $\rightarrow$  A5). Myocardial excitation subsequently decreases (T wave of the ECG,  $\rightarrow$  A1) and ventricular pressure decreases (the remaining SV fraction is *slowly ejected*, phase IIb) until it falls below that of the aorta or pulmonary artery, respectively. This leads to closing of the semilunar valves, producing the **second heart sound** ( $\rightarrow$  A6). The mean SV at rest is about 80 mL or, more precisely, 47 mL/m<sup>2</sup> body surface area. The corresponding mean **ejection fraction (SV/EDV)** at rest is about 0.67. The **end-systolic volume (ESV)** remaining in the ventricles at this point is about 40 mL ( $\rightarrow$  A4).

The first phase of ventricular diastole or **isovolumetric relaxation** now begins (phase III; ca. 60 ms). The atria have meanwhile refilled, mainly due to the suction effect created by the lowering of the valve plane during ejection. As a result, the central venous pressure (CVP) decreases ( $\rightarrow$  A3, falls from c to x). The ventricular pressure now drops rapidly, causing the atrioventricular valves to open again when it falls short of atrial pressure.

The **filling phase** now begins (phase IV; ca. 500 ms at rest). The blood passes rapidly from the atria into the ventricles, resulting in a drop in CVP ( $\rightarrow$  A3, point y). Since the ventricles are 80% full by the first quarter of diastole, this is referred to as **rapid ventricular filling** (phase IVa;  $\rightarrow$  A4). **Ventricular filling slows down** (phase IVb), and the **atrial systole** (phase IVc) and the a wave of CVP follows ( $\rightarrow$  A2,3). At a normal heart rate, the atrial contraction contributes about 15% to ventricular filling. When the heart rate increases, the duration of the cardiac cycle decreases mainly at the expense of diastole, and the contribution of atrial contraction to ventricular filling increases.

The heart beats produce a **pulse wave** (pressure wave) that travels through the arteries at a specific **pulse wave velocity (PWV)**: the PWV of the aorta is 3–5 m/s, and that of the radial artery is 5–12 m/s. PWV is much higher than the blood flow velocity ( $\dot{V}$ ), which peaks at 1 m/s in the aorta and increases proportionally to (a) decreases in the compliance of aortic and arterial walls and (b) increases in blood pressure.

A. Action phases of the heart (cardiac cycle)



The heart contains muscle cells that generate (*pacemaker system*), conduct (*conduction system*) and respond to electrical impulses (*working myocardium*). Cardiac impulses are generated within the heart (**automaticity**). The frequency and regularity of pacemaking activity are also intrinsic to the heart (**rhythmicity**). Myocardial tissue comprises a *functional* (not truly anatomical) *syncytium* because the cells are connected by *gap junctions* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 16ff.). This also includes the atrioventricular junction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 195 A). Thus, an impulse arising in any part of the heart leads to complete contraction of both atria and ventricles or to none at all (**all-or-none response**).

Cardiac contraction is normally stimulated by impulses from the **sinoatrial node** (SA node), which is therefore called the *primary pacemaker*. The impulses are conducted ( $\rightarrow$  A) through the atria to the **atrioventricular node** (AV node). The *bundle of His* is the beginning of the **specialized conduction system**, including also the left and right (Tawara's) *bundle branches* and the *Purkinje fibers*, which further transmit the impulses to the ventricular myocardium, where they travel from inside to outside and from apex to base of the heart. This electrical activity can be tracked in vivo ( $\rightarrow$  C) by electrocardiography ( $\rightarrow$  p. 198ff.).

**Pacemaker potential** ( $\rightarrow$  B1, top). The cell potential in the SA node is a *pacemaker potential*. These cells do not have a constant resting potential. Instead, they slowly depolarize immediately after each repolarization, the most negative value of which is the *maximum diastolic potential* (MDP, ca.  $-70$  mV). The slow *diastolic depolarization* or *prepotential* (PP) prevails until the *threshold potential* (TP) has again been reached. Thus triggering another action potential (AP).

The pacemaker potential ( $\rightarrow$  B1, bottom) is subject to various underlying **changes in ion conductance** ( $g$ ) and **ionic flow** ( $I$ ) through the plasma membrane ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.). Starting at the MDP, a hyperpolarization-triggered increase in non-selective conductance and influx ( $I_f$ , = "funny") of cations into the cells lead to slow depolarization (PP). When the TP is reached,  $g_{Ca}$  increases quickly, and the slope of the pacemaker potential rises. This upslope is caused by increased influx of  $Ca^{2+}$  ( $I_{Ca}$ ). When the potential rises to the positive range,  $g_K$  in-

creases sharply, resulting in the efflux of  $K^+$  ( $I_K$ ), and the pacemaker cells repolarize to the MDP.

Each action potential in the SA node normally generates one heart beat. The **heart rate** is therefore determined by the rate of impulse generation by the pacemaker. The impulse generation frequency *decreases* ( $\rightarrow$  B3, broken curves) when (a) the PP slope decreases ( $\rightarrow$  B3a), (b) the TP becomes less negative ( $\rightarrow$  B3b), (c) the MDP becomes more negative, resulting in the start of spontaneous depolarization at lower levels ( $\rightarrow$  B3c), or (d) repolarization after an action potential occurs more slowly (slope flatter).

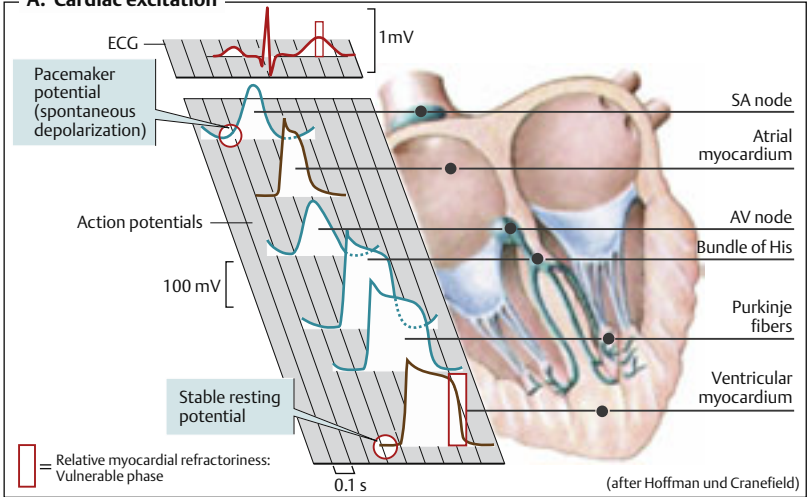
The first three conditions extend the time required to reach the threshold potential.

All components of the conduction system can depolarize spontaneously, but the SA node is the natural or *nomotopic pacemaker* in cardiac excitation (sinus rhythm normally has a rate of 60 to 100  $\text{min}^{-1}$ ). The intrinsic rhythms of the other pacemakers are slower than the sinus rhythm ( $\rightarrow$  C, table) because the slope of their PPs and repolarizations are "flatter" (see above). APs arising in the SA node therefore arrive at subordinate ("lower") levels of the conduction system before spontaneous depolarization has reached the intrinsic TP there. The intrinsic rhythm of the lower components come into play (*ectopic pacemakers*) when (a) their own frequency is enhanced, (b) faster pacemakers are depressed, or (c) the conduction from the SA node is interrupted ( $\rightarrow$  p. 202). The heart beats at the AV rhythm (40 to 55  $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) or even slower (25 to 40  $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) when controlled by tertiary (ventricular) pacemakers.

**Overdrive suppression.** The automaticity of lower pacemaker cells (e.g., AV node or Purkinje cells) is suppressed temporarily after they have been driven by a high frequency. This leads to increased  $Na^+$  influx and therefore to increased activity of the  $Na^+K^+$ -ATPase. Because it is electrogenic ( $\rightarrow$  p. 28), the cells become hyperpolarized and it takes longer to reach threshold than without prior high-frequency overdrive ( $\rightarrow$  B3c).

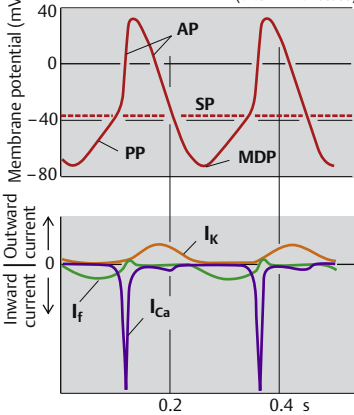
The cells of the **working myocardium** contain voltage-gated *fast  $Na^+$  channels* that permit the brief but rapid influx of  $Na^+$  at the beginning of an AP. The slope of their APs therefore rises more sharply than that of a pacemaker potential ( $\rightarrow$  A). A **resting potential** prevails between ▶

**A. Cardiac excitation**

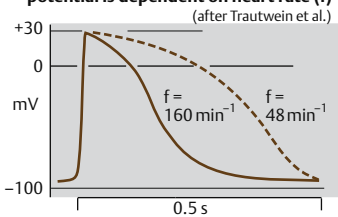


**B. Pacemaker potential and rate of impulse generation**

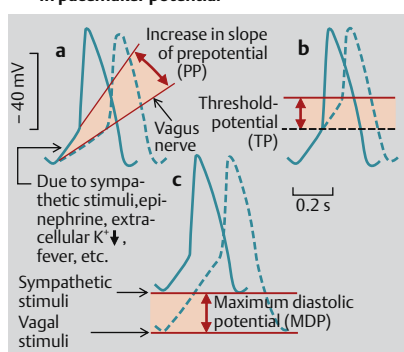
**1 Pacemaker potential and ionic currents**  
(after Di Francesco)



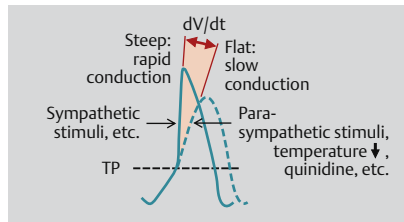
**2 Duration of myocardial action potential is dependent on heart rate (f)**  
(after Trautwein et al.)



**3 Changes in heart rate due to changes in pacemaker potential**



**4 Factors that affect the conduction of action potentials (AV node)**



▶ APs, i.e. spontaneous depolarization normally does not occur in the working myocardium. The long-lasting myocardial AP has a characteristic **plateau** (→ p. 59A). Thus, the first-stimulated parts of the myocardium are still in a refractory state when the AP reaches the last-stimulated parts of the myocardium. This prevents the cyclic re-entry of APs in the myocardium. This holds true, regardless of whether the heart rate is very fast or very slow since the duration of an AP varies according to heart rate (→ B2).

**Role of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .** The incoming AP opens *voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels* (associated with *dihydropyridine receptors*) on the sarcolemma of myocardial cells, starting an influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ECF (→ p. 63/B3). This produces a local increase in cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  “spark”) which, in turn, triggers the opening of *ligand-gated, ryanodine-sensitive  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels* in the sarcoplasmic reticulum ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  store). The influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the cytosol results in electromechanical coupling (→ p. 62) and myocardial contraction. The cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is also determined by active transport of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions back (a) into the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stores via a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase, called *SERCA*, which is stimulated by *phospholamban*, and (b) to the ECF. This is achieved with the aid of a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase and a  $3\text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange carrier that is driven by the electrochemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient established by  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase.

Although the heart beats autonomously, efferent **cardiac nerves** are mainly responsible for **modulating heart action** according to changing needs. The *autonomic nervous system* (and epinephrine in plasma) can alter the following aspects of heart action: (a) *rate of impulse generation* by the pacemaker and, thus, the heart rate (chronotropism); (b) *velocity of impulse conduction*, especially in the AV node (dromotropism); and (c) *contractility* of the heart, i.e., the force of cardiac muscle contraction at a given initial fiber length (inotropism).

These changes in heart action are induced by **acetylcholine (ACh)**: (→ p. 82) released by parasympathetic fibers of the vagus nerve (binds with  $\text{M}_2$  cholinergic receptors on pacemaker cells), by **norepinephrine (NE)** released by sympathetic nerve fibers, and by plasma **epinephrine (E)**. NE and E bind with  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors (→ p. 84ff.). The firing frequency of the SA node is increased by NE and E (positive

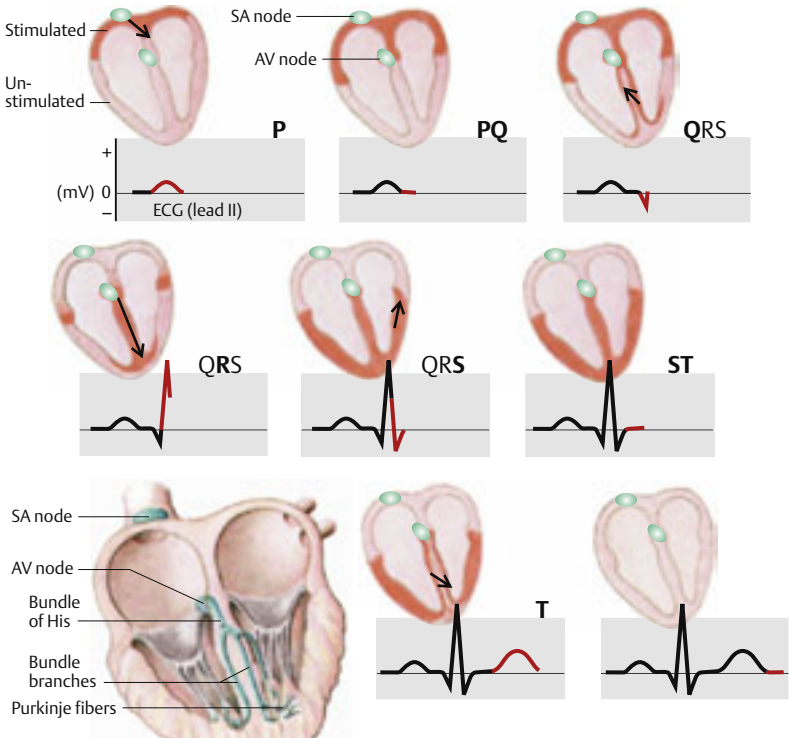
chronotropism) and decreased by ACh (negative chronotropism) because these substances alter the slopes of the PP and the MDP in the SA cells (→ B3a and c). Under the influence of ACh, the slope of the PP becomes flatter and the MDP becomes more negative as  $g_{\text{K}}$  rises. Inversely, slope and amplitude of PP rises under the influence of E or sympathetic stimuli (higher  $I_{\text{f}}$ ) due to a rise in cation ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) conductance and, under certain conditions, a decrease in the  $g_{\text{K}}$ . Only NE and E have chronotropic effects in the lesser components of the impulse conduction system. This is decisive when the AV node or tertiary pacemakers take over.

ACh (left branch of vagus nerve) decreases the velocity of **impulse conduction in the AV node**, whereas NE and E increase it due to their negative and positive dromotropic effects, respectively. This is mainly achieved through changes in the amplitude and slope of the upstroke of the AP (→ B3c and B4), caused by changes of  $g_{\text{K}}$  and  $g_{\text{Ca}}$ .

In positive inotropism, NE and E have a direct effect on the working myocardium. The resulting increase in **contractility** is based on an *increased influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions* from the ECF triggered by  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors, resulting in an increased cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . This  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx can be inhibited by administering  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel blockers ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  antagonists). Other factors that increase cardiac contractility are an *increase in AP duration*, resulting in a longer duration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx, and *inhibition of  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase* (e.g., by the cardiac glycosides digitalis and strophanthin). The consequences are: flatter  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient across the cell membrane ⇒ decreased driving force for  $3\text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange carriers ⇒ decreased  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  efflux ⇒ increased cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc.

When the heart rate is low,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx over time is also low (fewer APs per unit time), allowing plenty of time for the efflux of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  between APs. The mean cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. is therefore reduced and contractility is low. Only by this indirect mechanism are parasympathetic neurons able to elicit a negative inotropic effect (*frequency inotropism*). NE and E can exert their positive inotropic effects either indirectly by increasing the high heart or directly via  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors of the working myocardium.

C. Cardiac impulse spreading



Normal activation sequence	Time (ms)	ECG	Conduction velocity ( $m \cdot s^{-1}$ )	Intrinsic rate ( $min^{-1}$ )
<b>SA node</b> Impulse generation	0	P wave	0.05	 60-100
Arrival of impulse in distal parts of atrium	50			
	85			
<b>AV node</b> Arrival of impulse Relaying of impulse	50	P-Q segment (delayed conduction)	0.05	 40-55
	125			
<b>His bundle activated</b>	130		1.0-1.5	 25-40
<b>End of bundle branches activated</b>	145		1.0-1.5	
<b>Purkinje fibers activated</b>	150		3.0-3.5	
<b>Inner myocardium</b> completely activated	175	QRS complex	1.0 in myocardium	None
	190			
<b>Outer myocardium</b> completely activated	205			
	225			

The ECG records **potential differences** (few mV) caused by cardiac excitation. This provides information on heart position, relative chamber size, heart rhythm, impulse origin/propagation and rhythm/conduction disturbances, extent and location of myocardial ischemia, changes in electrolyte concentrations, and drug effects on the heart. However, it does *not* provide data on cardiac contraction or pumping function.

ECG potential differences arise at the interface between stimulated and non-stimulated myocardium. Totally stimulated or unstimulated myocardial tissue does not generate any visible potentials. The **migration of the excitatory front** through the heart muscle gives rise to numerous potentials that vary in magnitude and direction.

These **vectors** can be depicted as arrows, where the length of the arrow represents the magnitude of the potential and the direction of the arrow indicates the direction of the potential (arrowhead is +). As in a force parallelogram, the **integral vector** (summation vector) is the sum of the numerous individual vectors at that moment ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{A}$ , red arrow).

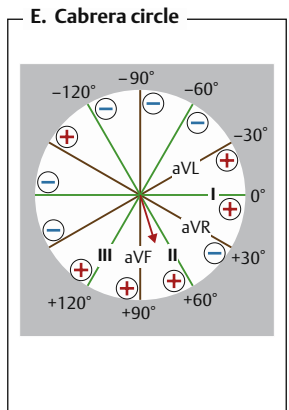
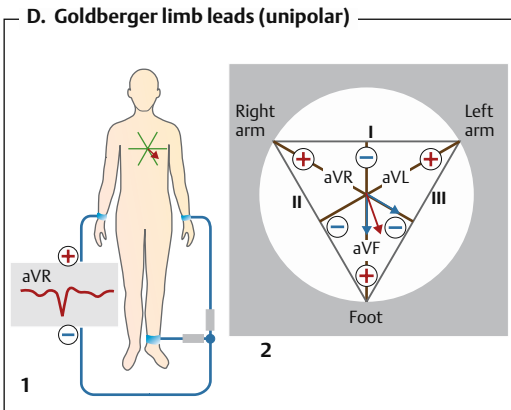
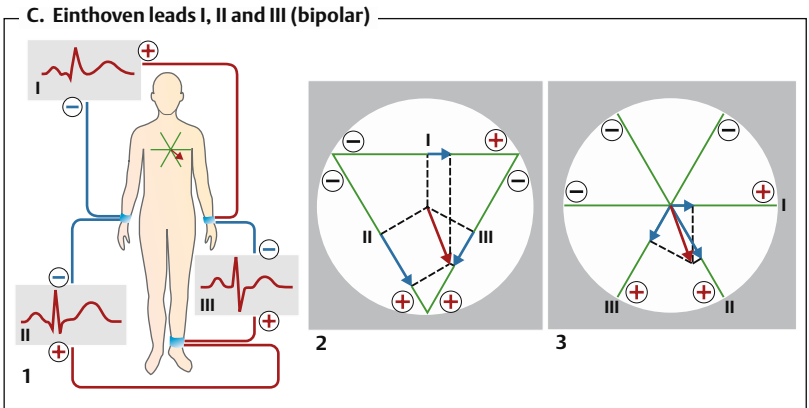
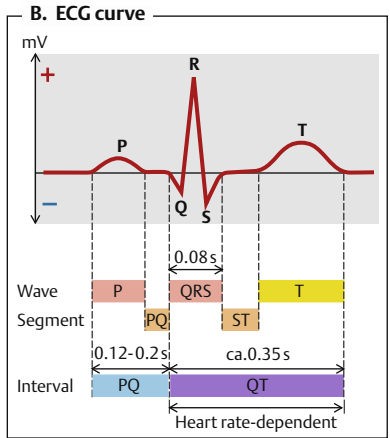
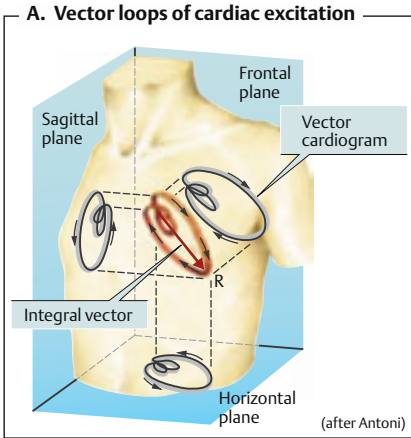
The magnitude and direction of the integral vector change during the cardiac cycle, producing the typical **vector loop** seen on a **vectorcardiogram**. (In **A**, the maximum or chief vector is depicted by the arrow, called the “electrical axis” of the heart, see below).

**Limb and chest leads** of the ECG make it possible to visualize the course of the integral vector over time, projected at the plane determined by the leads (scalar ECG). Leads parallel to the integral vector show full deflection (R wave  $\approx 1-2$  mV), while those perpendicular to it show no deflection. *Einthoven leads I, II, and III* are **bipolar limb leads** positioned in the frontal plane. Lead I records potentials between the left and right arm, lead II those between the right arm and left leg, and lead III those between the left arm and left leg ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{C1}$ ). *Goldberger leads* are **unipolar augmented limb leads** in the frontal plane. One lead (right arm, aVR, left arm aVL, or left leg, aVF;  $\rightarrow \mathbf{D2}$ ) acts as the *different electrode*, while the other two limbs are connected and serve as the *indifferent (reference) electrode* ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{D1}$ ). *Wilson leads* ( $V_1-V_6$ ) are **unipolar chest leads** positioned on the left side of the thorax in a nearly **horizontal plane** ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{F}$ ). When used in combination with

the aforementioned leads in the frontal plane, they provide a **three-dimensional view** of the integral vector. To make recordings with the chest leads (*different electrode*), the three limb leads are connected to form an *indifferent electrode* with high resistances ( $5\text{ k}\Omega$ ). The chest leads mainly detect potential vectors directed towards the back. These vectors are hardly detectable in the frontal plane. Since the mean QRS vector (see below) is usually directed downwards and towards the left back region, the QRS vectors recorded by leads  $V_1-V_3$  are usually negative, while those detected by  $V_5$  and  $V_6$  are positive.

*Intraesophageal leads* and additional leads positioned in the region of the *right chest* ( $V_{3-6}$ ) and *left back* ( $V_{7-9}$ ) are useful in certain cases ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{F2}$ ).

An ECG depicts electrical activity as waves, segments, and intervals ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{B}$  and p. 197 C). By convention, upward deflection of the waves is defined as positive (+), and downward deflection as negative (-). The electrical activity associated with *atrial depolarization* is defined as the **P wave** ( $< 0.3\text{ mV}$ ,  $< 0.1\text{ s}$ ). Repolarization of the atria normally cannot be visualized on the ECG since it tends to be masked by the QRS complex. The **QRS complex** ( $< 0.1\text{ s}$ ) consists of one, two or three components: **Q wave** ( $mV < 1/4$  of R,  $< 0.04\text{ s}$ ), **R wave** and/or **S wave** ( $R+S > 0.6\text{ mV}$ ). The potential of the **mean QRS vector** is the sum of the amplitudes of the Q, R and S waves (taking their positive and negative polarities into account). The voltage of the mean QRS vector is higher (in most leads) than that of the P wave because the muscle mass of the ventricles is much larger than that of the atria. The R wave is defined as the first positive deflection of the QRS complex, which means that R waves from different leads may not be synchronous. The QRS complex represents the *depolarization of the ventricles*, and the **T wave** represents their *repolarization*. Although opposing processes, the T wave usually points in the same direction as the R wave (+ in most leads). This means that depolarization and repolarization do not travel in the same direction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 197 C, **QRS** and **T**: vector arrows point in the same direction despite reversed polarity during repolarization). The **PQ** (or **PR**) **segment** (complete atrial excitation) and the **ST segment** (complete ventricular excitation) lie ap- ▶



► prox. on the **isoelectric line** (0 mV). The **PQ** (or PR) **interval** ( $< 0.2$  s) is measured from the beginning of the P wave to the beginning of the Q wave (or to the R wave if Q wave is absent) and corresponds to the time required for **atrioventricular conduction** ( $\rightarrow$  B). The **QT interval** is measured from the start of the Q wave to the end of the T wave. It represents the overall time required for depolarization and repolarization of the ventricles and is dependent on the heart rate (0.35 to 0.40 s at a heart rate of  $75 \text{ min}^{-1}$ ).

Figure E illustrates the six frontal leads (Einthoven and Goldberger leads) on the *Cabrera circle*. Synchronous measurement of the amplitude of Q, R and S from two or more leads can be used to determine any integral vector in the frontal plane ( $\rightarrow$  G). The direction of the largest mean QRS vector is called the **QRS axis** ( $\rightarrow$  C3 and G, red arrows). If the excitation spreads normally, the QRS axis roughly corresponds to the anatomic longitudinal axis of the heart.

The mean QRS axis (“**electrical axis**”) of the heart, which normally lies between  $+90$  degrees to  $-30$  degrees in adults ( $\rightarrow$  G, H). **Right type** ( $\alpha = +120^\circ$  to  $+90^\circ$ ) is not unusual in children, but is often a sign of abnormality in adults. Mean QRS axes ranging from  $+90$  degrees to  $+60$  degrees are described as the **vertical type** ( $\rightarrow$  G1), and those ranging from  $+60$  degrees to  $+30$  degrees are classified as the **intermediate type** ( $\rightarrow$  G2). **Left type** occurs when  $\alpha = +30$  degrees to  $-30$  degrees ( $\rightarrow$  G3).

**Abnormal deviation:** *Right axis deviation* ( $> +120^\circ$ ) can develop due right ventricular hypertrophy, while *left axis deviation* (more negative than  $-30^\circ$ ) can occur due to left ventricular hypertrophy.

An extensive **myocardial infarction (MI)** can shift the electrical axis of the heart. Marked **Q wave abnormality** ( $\rightarrow$  I1) is typical in *transmural myocardial infarction* (involving entire thickness of ventricular wall): Q wave duration  $> 0.04$  s and Q wave amplitude  $> 25\%$  of total amplitude of the QRS complex. These changes appear within 24 hours of MI and are caused by failure of the dead myocardium to conduct electrical impulses. Preponderance of the excitatory vector in the healthy contralateral side of the heart therefore occurs while the affected part of the myocardium should be depolarizing (first 0.04 s of QRS). The so-called “0.04-sec vector” is therefore said to point away from the infarction. *Anterior MI* is

detected as highly negative Q waves (with smaller R waves) mainly in leads V5, V6, I and aVL. Q wave abnormalities can persist for years after MI ( $\rightarrow$  I2/3), so they may not necessarily be indicative of an acute infarction. *ST elevation* points to ischemic but not (yet) necrotic parts of the myocardium. This can be observed: (1) in myocardial ischemia (angina pectoris), (2) in the initial phase of transmural MI, (3) in non-transmural MI, and (4) along the margins of a transmural MI that occurred a few hours to a few days prior ( $\rightarrow$  I4). The ST segment normalizes within 1 to 2 days of MI, but the T wave remains inverted for a couple of weeks ( $\rightarrow$  I5 and 2).

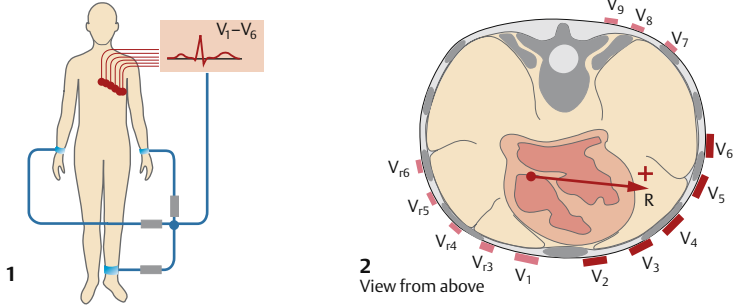
## Excitation in Electrolyte Disturbances

**Hyperkalemia.** *Mild hyperkalemia* causes various changes, like elevation of the MDP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 192) in the SA node. It can sometimes have positive chronotropic effects ( $\rightarrow$  p. 193 B3c). In *severe hyperkalemia*, the more positive MDP leads to the inactivation of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46) and to a reduction in the slope and amplitude of APs in the AV node (negative dromotropic effect;  $\rightarrow$  p. 195 B4). Moreover, the  $\text{K}^+$  conductance ( $g_{\text{K}}$ ) rises, and the PP slope becomes flatter due to a negative chronotropic effect ( $\rightarrow$  p. 195 B3a). Faster myocardial repolarization decreases the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. In extreme cases, the pacemaker is also brought to a standstill (*cardiac paralysis*). **Hypokalemia** (moderate) has positive chronotropic and inotropic effects ( $\rightarrow$  p. 195 B3a), whereas **hypercalcemia** is thought to raise the  $g_{\text{K}}$  and thereby shortens the duration of the myocardial AP.

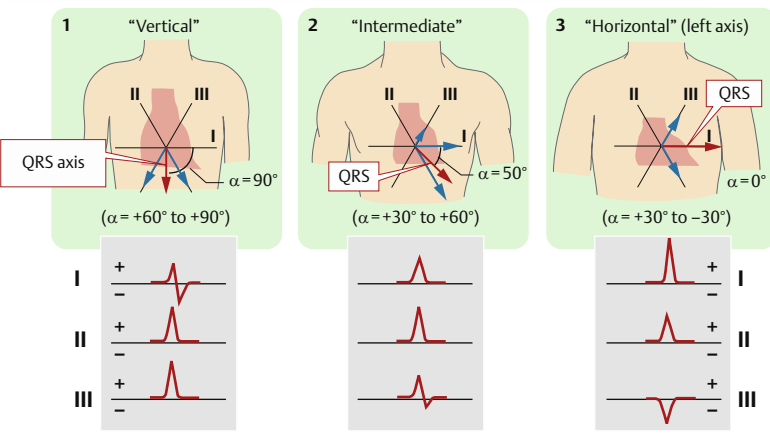
**ECG.** Changes in serum  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  induce characteristic changes in myocardial excitation.

- ◆ **Hyperkalemia** ( $> 6.5 \text{ mmol/L}$ ): tall, peaked T waves and conduction disturbances associated with an increased PQ interval and a widened QRS. Cardiac arrest can occur in extreme cases.
- ◆ **Hypokalemia** ( $< 2.5 \text{ mmol/L}$ ): ST depression, biphasic T wave (first positive, then negative) followed by a positive U wave.
- ◆ **Hypercalcemia** ( $> 2.75 \text{ mmol/L}$  total calcium): shortened QT interval due to a shortened ST segment.
- ◆ **Hypocalcemia** ( $< 2.25 \text{ mmol/L}$  total calcium): prolonged QT interval.

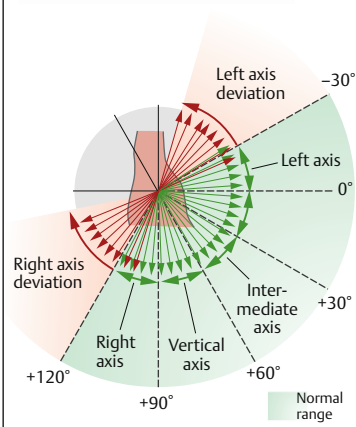
**F. Wilson chest leads (unipolar)**



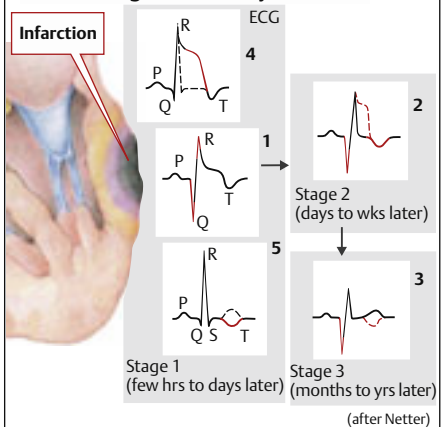
**G. Determination of largest mean QRS vector (QRS axis) using ECG leads I–III**



**H. Electrical axis of the heart**



**I. ECG changes in coronary infarction**



Arrhythmias are pathological changes in cardiac *impulse generation or conduction* that can be visualized by ECG. **Disturbances of impulse generation** change the sinus rhythm. *Sinus tachycardia* ( $\rightarrow$  A2): The sinus rhythm rises to  $100 \text{ min}^{-1}$  or higher e.g., due to physical exertion, anxiety, fever (rise of about 10 beats/min for each  $1^\circ\text{C}$ ) or hyperthyroidism. *Sinus bradycardia*: The heart rate falls below  $60 \text{ min}^{-1}$  (e.g., due to hypothyroidism). In both cases the rhythm is regular whereas in *sinus arrhythmias* the rate varies. In adolescents, sinus arrhythmias can be physiological and respiration-dependent (heart rate increases during inspiration and decreases during expiration).

**Ectopic pacemakers.** Foci in the atrium, AV node or ventricles can initiate abnormal *ectopic* (heterotopic) impulses, even when normal (*nomotopic*) stimulus generation by the SA node is taking place ( $\rightarrow$  A). The rapid discharge of impulses from an atrial focus can induce **atrial tachycardia** (serrated baseline instead of normal P waves), which triggers a ventricular response rate of up to  $200 \text{ min}^{-1}$ . Fortunately, only every second or third stimulus is transmitted to the ventricles because part of the impulses arrive at the Purkinje fibers (longest APs) during their refractory period. Thus, Purkinje fibers act as impulse *frequency filters*. Elevated atrial contraction rates of up to  $350 \text{ min}^{-1}$  are defined as **atrial flutter**, and all higher rates are defined as **atrial fibrillation** (up to  $500 \text{ min}^{-1}$ ). Ventricular stimulation is then totally irregular (**absolute arrhythmia**). **Ventricular tachycardia** is a rapid train of impulses originating from a ventricular (ectopic) focus, starting with an extrasystole (ES) ( $\rightarrow$  B3; second ES). The heart therefore fails to fill adequately, and the stroke volume decreases. A ventricular ES can lead to **ventricular fibrillation** (extremely frequent and uncoordinated contractions;  $\rightarrow$  B4). Because of failure of the ventricle to transport blood, ventricular fibrillation can be fatal.

Ventricular fibrillation mainly occurs when an ectopic focus fires during the **relative refractory period** of the previous AP (called the "*vulnerable phase*" synchronous with T wave on the ECG;  $\rightarrow$  p.195 A). The APs triggered during this period have *smaller slopes, lower propagation velocities, and shorter durations*.

This leads to re-excitation of myocardial areas that have already been stimulated (*re-entry cycles*). Ventricular fibrillation can be caused by electrical accidents and can usually be corrected by timely electrical *defibrillation*.

**Extrasystoles (ES).** The spread of impulses arising from an supraventricular (atrial or nodal) ectopic focus to the ventricles can disturb their sinus rhythm, leading to a *supraventricular arrhythmia*. When **atrial extrasystoles** occur, the P wave on the ECG is distorted while the QRS complex remains normal. **Nodal extrasystoles** lead to retrograde stimulation of the atria, which is why the P wave is negative and is either masked by the QRS complex or appears shortly thereafter ( $\rightarrow$  B1 right). Since the SA node often is discharged by a supraventricular extrasystole, the interval between the R wave of the extrasystole ( $R_{ES}$ ) and the next normal R wave increases by the amount of time needed for the stimulus to travel from the focus to the SA node. This is called the *post-extrasystole pause*. Thereby, the *RR intervals* are as follows:  $R_{ES}R > RR$  and  $(RR_{ES} + R_{ES}R) < 2 RR$  ( $\rightarrow$  B1).

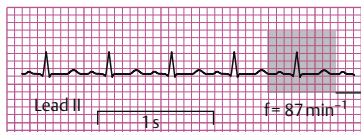
**Ventricular** (or infranodal) **ES** ( $\rightarrow$  B2, B3) distorts the QRS complex of the ES. If the sinus rate is slow enough, the ES will cause a ventricular contraction between two normal heart beats; this is called an *interpolated* (or interposed) ES ( $\rightarrow$  B2). If the sinus rate is high, the next sinus stimulus reaches the ventricles while they are still refractory from the ectopic excitation. Ventricular contraction is therefore blocked until the next sinus stimulus arrives, resulting in a *compensatory pause*, where  $RR_{ES} + R_{ES}R = 2 RR$ .

#### **Disturbances of impulse conduction: AV block.**

*First-degree AV block:* prolonged but otherwise normal impulse conduction in the AV node (PQ interval  $> 0.2$  sec); *second-degree AV block:* only every second (2:1 block) or third (3:1 block) impulse is conducted. *Third-degree AV block:* no impulses are conducted; sudden cardiac arrest may occur (*Adam–Stokes attack* or *syncope*). Ventricular atopic pacemakers then take over (ventricular bradycardia with normal atrial excitation rate), resulting in partial or total disjunction of QRS complexes and P waves ( $\rightarrow$  B5). The heart rate drops to 40 to  $55 \text{ min}^{-1}$  when the AV node acts as the pacemaker ( $\rightarrow$  B5), and to a mere 25 to  $40 \text{ min}^{-1}$  when tertiary (ventricular) pacemakers take over. Artificial pacemakers are then used.

**Bundle branch block:** disturbance of conduction in a branch of the bundle of His. Severe QRS changes occur because the affected side of the myocardium is activated by the healthy side via abnormal pathways.

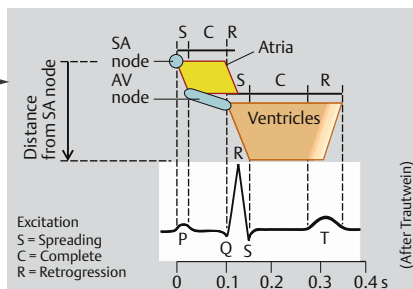
**A. Nomotopic impulse generation with normal conduction**



1 Normal sinus rhythm



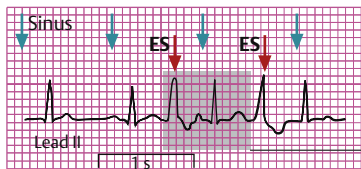
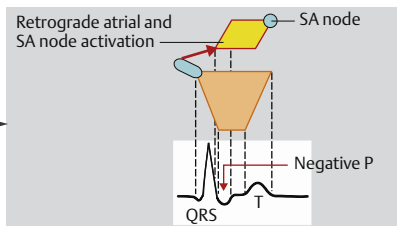
2 Sinus tachycardia



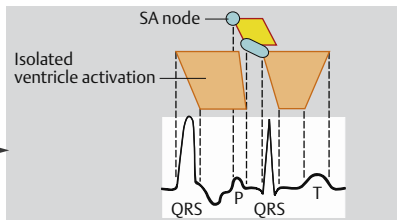
**B. Heterotopic impulse generation (1–5) and disturbances of impulse conduction (5)**



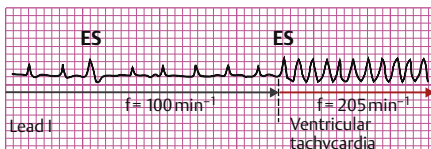
1 Nodal (AV) extrasystole (ES) with post-extrasystolic pause



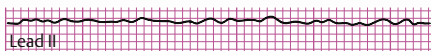
2 Interpolated ventricular extrasystole (ES)



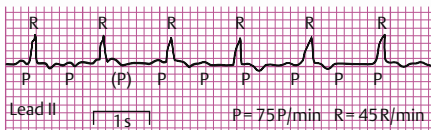
3 Ventricular tachycardia following extrasystole (ES)



4 Ventricular fibrillation



5 Total AV block with ventricular escape rhythm



(Partly after Riecker)

The relationship between the volume (length) and pressure (tension) of a ventricle illustrates the interdependence between muscle length and force in the specific case of the heart ( $\rightarrow$  p. 66ff.). The **work diagram** of the heart can be constructed by plotting the changes in *ventricular pressure over volume* during one complete cardiac cycle ( $\rightarrow$  A1, points A–D–S–V–A, pressure values are those for the left ventricle).

The following *pressure–volume curves* can be used to construct a **work diagram of the ventricles**:

- ◆ **Passive (or resting) pressure–volume curve:** Indicates the pressures that result passively (without muscle contraction) at various ventricular volume loads ( $\rightarrow$  A1, 2; blue curve).

- ◆ **Isovolumic peak curve** ( $\rightarrow$  A1, 2, green curves): Based on experimental measurements made using an isolated heart. Data are generated for various volume loads by measuring the peak ventricular pressure at a constant ventricular volume during contraction. The contraction is therefore *isovolumetric (isovolumic)*, i.e., ejection does not take place ( $\rightarrow$  A2, vertical arrows).

- ◆ **Isotonic (or isobaric) peak curve** ( $\rightarrow$  A1, 2, violet curves). Also based on experimental measurements taken at various volume loads under isotonic (isobaric) conditions, i.e., the ejection is controlled in such a way that the ventricular pressure remains constant while the volume decreases ( $\rightarrow$  A2, horizontal arrows).

- ◆ **Afterloaded peak curve:** (A1, 2, orange curves). Systole ( $\rightarrow$  p. 192) consists of an *isovolumic* contraction phase ( $\rightarrow$  A1, A–D and p. 193 A, phase I) followed by an *auxotonic* ejection phase (volume decreases while pressure continues to rise) ( $\rightarrow$  A1, D–S and p. 193 A, phase II). This type of mixed contraction is called an *afterloaded contraction* (see also p. 67 B). At a given volume load (preload) ( $\rightarrow$  A1, point A), the afterloaded peak value changes ( $\rightarrow$  A1, point S) depending on the aortic end-diastolic pressure ( $\rightarrow$  A1, point D). All the afterloaded peak values are represented on the curve, which appears as a (nearly) straight line connecting the isovolumic and isotonic peaks for each respective volume load (point A) ( $\rightarrow$  A1, points T and M).

**Ventricular work diagram.** The pressure–volume relationships observed during the cardiac cycle ( $\rightarrow$  p. 192) can be plotted as a work diagram, e.g., for the left ventricle ( $\rightarrow$  A1): The *end-diastolic volume (EDV)* is 125 mL ( $\rightarrow$  A1, point A). During the *isovolumetric contraction phase*, the pressure in the left ventricle rises (all valves closed) until the diastolic aortic pressure (80 mmHg in this case) is reached

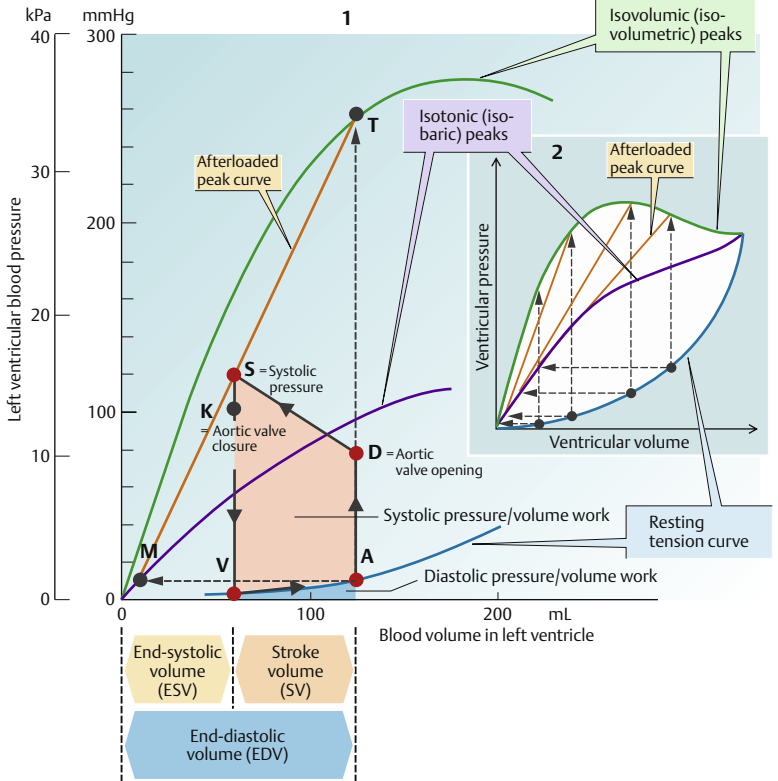
( $\rightarrow$  A1, point D). The aortic valve then opens. During the *ejection phase*, the ventricular volume is reduced by the *stroke volume (SV)* while the pressure initially continues to rise ( $\rightarrow$  p. 190, *Laplace's law*, Eq. 8.4b:  $P_{tm} \uparrow$  because  $r \downarrow$  and  $w \uparrow$ ). Once maximum (systolic) pressure is reached ( $\rightarrow$  A1, point S), the volume will remain virtually constant, but the pressure will drop slightly until it falls below the aortic pressure, causing the aortic valve to close ( $\rightarrow$  A1, point K). During the *isovolumetric relaxation phase*, the pressure rapidly decreases to (almost) 0 ( $\rightarrow$  A1, point V). The ventricles now contain only the *end-systolic volume (ESV)*, which equals 60 mL in the illustrated example. The ventricular pressure rises slightly during the filling phase (passive pressure–volume curve).

## Cardiac Work and Cardiac Power

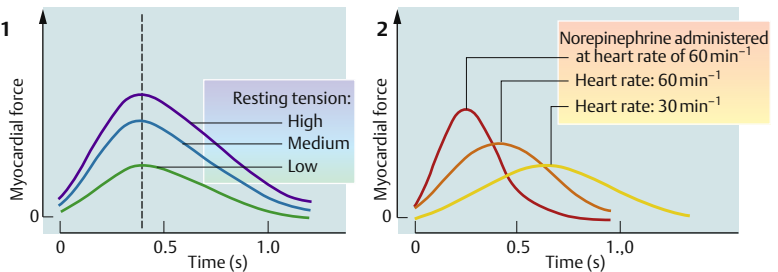
Since work ( $J = N \cdot m$ ) equals pressure ( $N \cdot m^{-2} = Pa$ ) times volume ( $m^3$ ), the area within the working diagram ( $\rightarrow$  A1, pink area) represents the **pressure/volume (P/V) work** achieved by the left ventricle during systole (13,333 Pa  $\cdot$  0.0008  $m^3 = 1.07 J$ ; right ventricle: 0.16 J). In systole, the bulk of cardiac work is achieved by active contraction of the myocardium, while a much smaller portion is attributable to passive elastic recoil of the ventricle, which stretches while filling. This represents *diastolic filling work* ( $\rightarrow$  A1, blue area under the blue curve), which is shared by the ventricular myocardium (indirectly), the atrial myocardium, and the respiratory and skeletal muscles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 206, venous return).

**Total cardiac work.** In addition to the cardiac work performed by the left and right ventricles in systole (ca. 1.2 J at rest), the heart has to generate 20% more energy (0.24 J) for the pulse wave ( $\rightarrow$  p. 190, windkessel). Only a small amount of energy is required to accelerate the blood at rest (1% of total cardiac work), but the energy requirement rises with the heart rate. The total **cardiac power** (= work/time) at rest ( $70 \text{ min}^{-1} = 1.17 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ) is approximately  $1.45 J \cdot 1.17 \text{ s}^{-1} = 1.7 W$ .

**A. Work diagram of the heart (left ventricle)**



**B. Effects of pretension (preload) (1), heart rate and sympathetic stimuli (2) on myocardial force and contraction velocity**



(See text on next page)

(After Sonnenblick)

**Frank–Starling mechanism (FSM):** The heart *autonomously* responds to changes in ventricular volume load or aortic pressure load by adjusting the stroke volume (SV) in accordance with the myocardial *preload* (resting tension;  $\rightarrow$  p. 66 ff.). The FSM also functions to maintain an equal SV in both ventricles to prevent congestion in the pulmonary or systemic circulation.

**Preload change.** When the volume load (preload) *increases*, the start of isovolumic contraction shifts to the right along the passive P–V curve ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**, from point A to point A<sub>1</sub>). This increases end-diastolic volume (EDV), stroke volume (SV), cardiac work and end-systolic volume (ESV) ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).

**Afterload change.** When the aortic pressure load (afterload) *increases*, the aortic valve will not open until the pressure in the left ventricle has risen accordingly ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, point D<sub>1</sub>). Thus, the SV in the short transitional phase (SV<sub>t</sub>) will decrease, and ESV will rise (ESV<sub>t</sub>). Consequently, the start of the isovolumic contraction shifts to the right along the passive P–V curve ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, point A<sub>2</sub>). SV will then normalize (SV<sub>2</sub>) despite the increased aortic pressure (D<sub>2</sub>), resulting in a relatively large increase in ESV (ESV<sub>2</sub>).

**Preload or afterload-independent changes** in myocardial contraction force are referred to as **contractility** or **inotropism**. It increases in response to norepinephrine (NE) and epinephrine (E) as well as to increases in heart rate ( $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptor-mediated, positive inotropic effect and frequency inotropism, respectively;  $\rightarrow$  p. 196). This causes a number of effects, particularly, an increase in isovolumic pressure peaks ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**, green curves). The heart can therefore pump against increased pressure levels ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**, point D<sub>3</sub>) and/or eject larger SVs (at the expense of the ESV) ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**, SV<sub>4</sub>).

While changes in the preload only affect the **force** of contraction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 205 B1), changes in contractility also affect the **velocity** of contraction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 205/B2). The steepest increase in isovolumic pressure per unit time (*maximum dP/dt*) is therefore used as a measure of contractility in clinical practice. dP/dt is increased E and NE and decreased by bradycardia ( $\rightarrow$  p. 205 B2) or heart failure.

## Venous Return

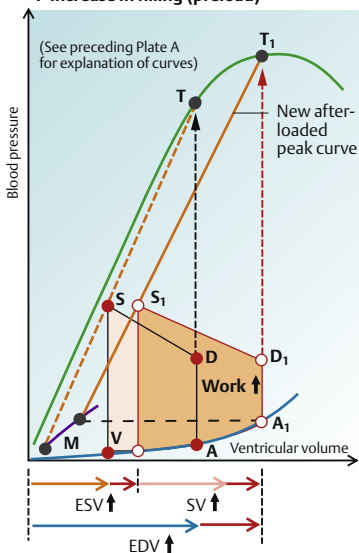
Blood from the capillaries is collected in the veins and returned to the heart. The **driving forces** for this venous return ( $\rightarrow$  **B**) are: (a) *vis a tergo*, i.e., the postcapillary blood pressure (BP) (ca. 15 mmHg); (b) the suction that arises due to lowering of the cardiac valve plane in systole; (c) the pressure exerted on the veins during skeletal muscle contraction (*muscle pump*); the valves of veins prevent the blood from flowing in the wrong direction, (d) the increased abdominal pressure together with the lowered intrathoracic pressure during inspiration (P<sub>pi</sub>;  $\rightarrow$  p. 108), which leads to thoracic venous dilatation and suction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 208).

**Orthostatic reflex.** When rising from a supine to a standing position (orthostatic change), the blood vessels in the legs are subjected to additional hydrostatic pressure from the blood column. The resulting vasodilation raises blood volume in the leg veins (by ca. 0.4 L). Since this blood is taken from the *central blood volume*, i.e., mainly from pulmonary vessels, venous return to the left atrium decreases, resulting in a decrease in stroke volume and cardiac output. A reflexive increase (*orthostatic reflex*) in heart rate and peripheral resistance therefore occurs to prevent an excessive drop in arterial BP ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 7 E and 214 ff.); *orthostatic collapse* can occur. The drop in central blood volume is more pronounced when standing than when walking due to muscle pump activity. Conversely, pressure in veins above the heart level, e.g., in the cerebral veins, decreases when a person stands still for prolonged periods of time. Since the venous pressure just below the diaphragm remains constant despite changes in body position, it is referred to as a *hydrostatic indifference point*.

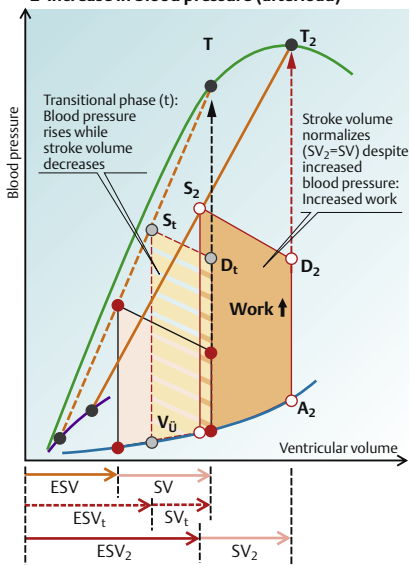
The **central venous pressure (CVP)** is measured at the right atrium (normal range: 0–12 cm H<sub>2</sub>O or 0–9 mmHg). Since it is mainly dependent on the blood volume, the CVP is used to monitor the blood volume in clinical medicine (e.g., during a transfusion). Elevated CVP (> 20 cm H<sub>2</sub>O or 15 mmHg) may be pathological (e.g., due to heart failure or other diseases associated with cardiac pump dysfunction), or physiological (e.g., in pregnancy).

**A. Factors influencing cardiac action**

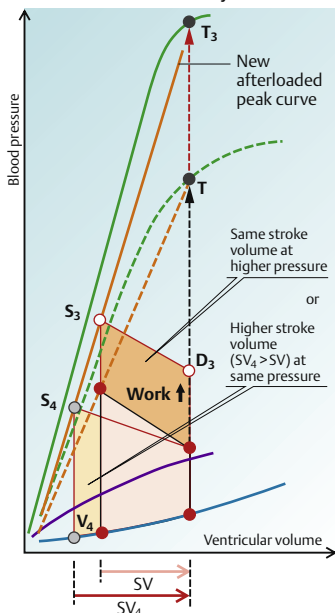
**1 Increase in filling (preload)**



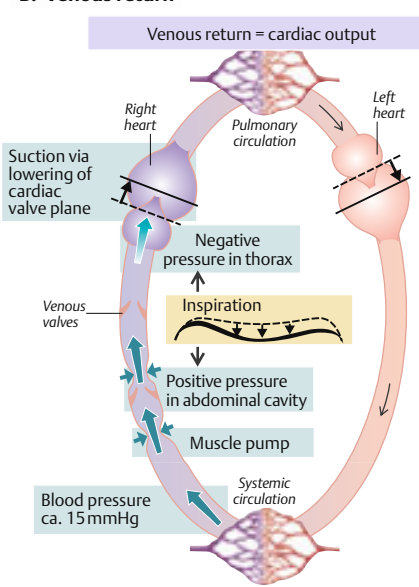
**2 Increase in blood pressure (afterload)**



**3 Increase in contractility**



**B. Venous return**



The term blood pressure (BP) *per se* refers to the arterial BP in the systemic circulation. The maximum BP occurs in the aorta during the systolic ejection phase; this is the **systolic pressure** ( $P_s$ ); the minimum aortic pressure is reached during the isovolumic contraction phase (while the aortic valves are closed) and is referred to as the **diastolic pressure** ( $P_d$ ) ( $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 193, phase I in A2). The systolic–diastolic pressure difference ( $P_s - P_d$ ) represents the **blood pressure amplitude**, also called **pulse pressure** (PP), and is a function of the stroke volume (SV) and arterial compliance ( $C = dV/dP$ ,  $\rightarrow$  p. 190). When  $C$  decreases at a constant SV, the systolic pressure  $P_s$  will rise more sharply than the diastolic pressure  $P_d$ , i.e., the PP will increase (common in the elderly; described below). The same holds true when the SV increases at a constant  $C$ .

If the **total peripheral resistance** (TPR,  $\rightarrow$  p. 190) **increases** while the SV ejection time remains constant, then  $P_s$  and the  $P_d$  will increase by the same amount (no change in PP). However, increases in the TPR normally lead to retardation of SV ejection and a decrease in the ratio of arterial volume rise to peripheral drainage during the ejection phase. Consequently,  $P_s$  rises less sharply than  $P_d$  and PP decreases.

**Normal range.**  $P_d$  optimally ranges from 60 to 80 mm Hg and  $P_s$  from 100 to 120 mm Hg at rest (while sitting or reclining). A  $P_s$  of 120–139 mm Hg and/or a  $P_d$  of 80–89 mm Hg are considered to be prehypertensive (JNC-7 classification) ( $\rightarrow$  C). Optimal BP regulation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 214) is essential for proper tissue perfusion.

Abnormally low BP (**hypotension**) can lead to *shock* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 220), *anoxia* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 130) and tissue destruction. Chronically elevated BP ( $P_s > 140$  and/or  $P_d > 90$ ; **hypertension**;  $\rightarrow$  p. 218) also causes damage because important vessels (especially those of the heart, brain, kidneys and retina) are injured.

The **mean BP** (=the average measured over time) is the decisive factor of peripheral perfusion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 190).

The mean BP can be determined by continuous BP measurement using an arterial catheter, etc. ( $\rightarrow$  A). By *attenuating* the pressure signal, only the  $\bar{P}$  is recorded. It is calculated as follows:  $\bar{P} \approx 1/3 (2 P_d + P_s)$ .

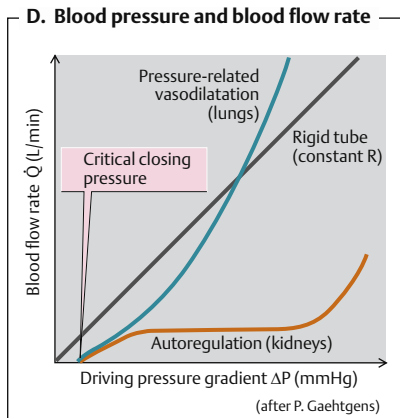
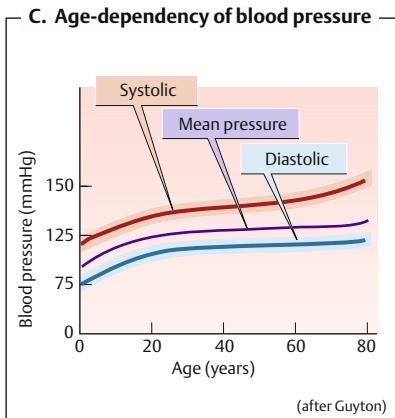
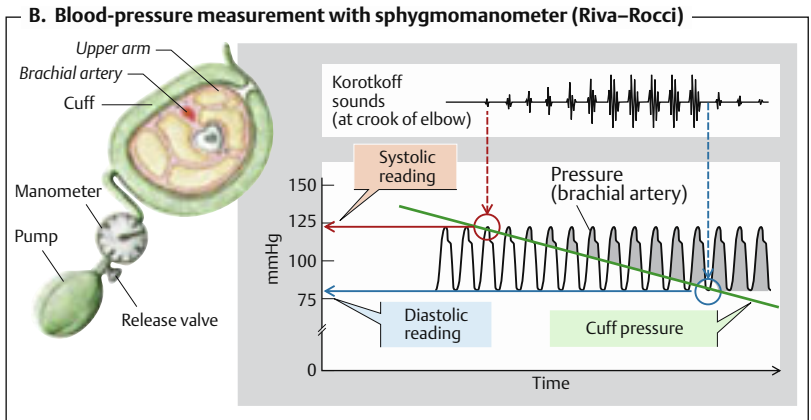
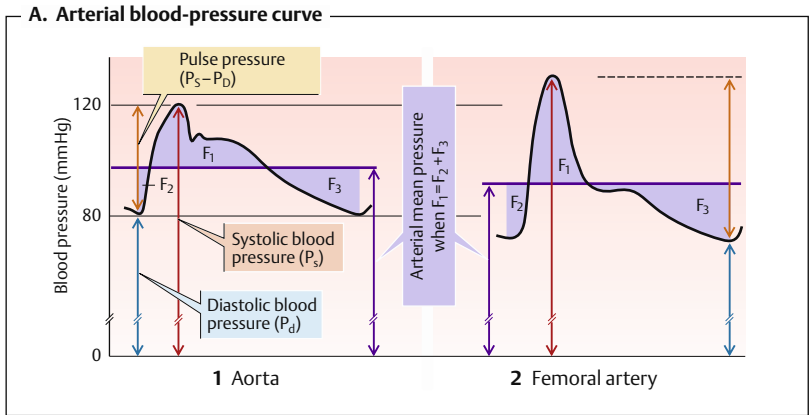
Although the mean BP falls slightly as the blood travels from the aorta to the arteries, the  $P_s$  in the greater arteries (e.g., femoral artery) is usually higher than in the aorta (A1 v. A2) because their compliance is lower than that of the aorta (see pulse wave velocity, p. 192).

Direct invasive BP measurements show that the BP curve in arteries distal to the heart is not synchronous with that of the aorta due to the time delay required for passage of the pulse wave (3–10 m/s;  $\rightarrow$  p. 192); its shape is also different ( $\rightarrow$  A1/A2).

The **BP is routinely measured** externally (at the level of the heart) according to the *Riva-Rocci* method by **sphygmomanometer** ( $\rightarrow$  B). An inflatable cuff is snugly wrapped around the arm and a stethoscope is placed over the brachial artery at the crook of the elbow. While reading the manometer, the cuff is inflated to a pressure higher than the expected  $P_s$  (the radial pulse disappears). The air in the cuff is then slowly released (2–4 mmHg/s). The first sounds synchronous with the pulse (*Korotkoff sounds*) indicate that the cuff pressure has fallen below the  $P_s$ . This value is read from the manometer. These sounds first become increasingly louder, then more quiet and muffled and eventually disappear when the cuff pressure falls below the  $P_d$  (second reading).

**Reasons for false BP readings.** When re-measuring the blood pressure, the cuff pressure must be completely released for 1 to 2 min. Otherwise venous pooling can mimic elevated  $P_d$ . The cuff of the sphygmomanometer should be 20% broader than the diameter of the patient's upper arm. Falsely high  $P_d$  readings can also occur if the cuff is too loose or too small relative to the arm diameter (e.g., in obese or very muscular patients) or if measurement has to be made at the thigh.

The **blood pressure in the pulmonary artery** is much lower than the aortic pressure ( $\rightarrow$  p. 188). The pulmonary vessels have relatively thin walls and their environment (air-filled lung tissue) is highly compliant. Increased cardiac output from the right ventricle therefore leads to expansion and thus to decreased resistance of the pulmonary vessels ( $\rightarrow$  D). This prevents excessive rises in pulmonary artery pressure during physical exertion when cardiac output rises. The pulmonary vessels also function to buffer short-term fluctuations in blood volume ( $\rightarrow$  p. 206).



Nutrients and waste products are exchanged across the walls of the capillaries and post-capillary venules (*exchange vessels*; → p. 190). Their endothelia can contain small (ca. 2–5 nm) or large (20–80 nm, especially in the kidneys and liver) *functional pores*: permeable, intercellular fissures or endothelial fenestrae, respectively. The degree of endothelial permeability varies greatly from one organ to another. Virtually all endothelia allow water and inorganic ions to pass, but most are largely impermeable to blood cells and large protein molecules. Transcytosis and carriers (→ p. 26f.) allow for passage of certain larger molecules.

**Filtration and reabsorption.** About 20 L/day of fluid is filtered (excluding the kidneys) into the interstitium from the body's exchange vessels. About 18 L/day of this fluid is thought to be reabsorbed by the capillaries and venules, (see below). The remaining 2 L/day or so make up the **lymph flow** and thereby return to the bloodstream (→ A). The *filtration or reabsorption rate*  $Q_f$  is a factor of the endothelial **filtration coefficient**  $K_f$  (= water permeability  $k$  · exchange area  $A$ ) and the **effective filtration pressure**  $P_{\text{eff}}$  ( $Q_f = K_f \cdot P_{\text{eff}}$ ).  $P_{\text{eff}}$  is calculated as the hydrostatic pressure difference  $\Delta P$  minus the oncotic pressure difference  $\Delta\pi$  (→ p. 383) across the capillary wall (*Starling's relationship*; → A), where  $\Delta P$  = capillary pressure ( $P_{\text{cap}}$ ) minus interstitial pressure ( $P_{\text{int}}$ , normally  $\approx 0$  mmHg). At the level of the heart,  $\Delta P$  at the arterial end of the systemic capillaries is about 30 mmHg and decreases to about 22 mmHg at the venous end. Since  $\Delta\pi$  ( $\pi_{\text{Kap}} - \pi_{\text{int}}$ )  $\approx 24$  mmHg; (→ A) counteracts  $\Delta P$ , the initially high filtration rate ( $P_{\text{eff}} = +6$  mmHg) drops off along the capillary and when  $P_{\text{eff}} = 0$  stops completely (filtration pressure equilibrium). A short (< 1 min) drop in  $P_{\text{eff}}$  below 0 causes reabsorption into the lumens of capillaries and venules. Rhythmic contraction ( $1\text{--}20 \text{ min}^{-1}$ ) of the arterioles (**vasomotion**; → A) may play a role by briefly decreasing  $P_{\text{cap}}$  (and therefore  $\Delta P$ ) to values less than  $\Delta\pi$ , making  $P_{\text{eff}}$  negative. Since  $\Delta P$  is only 10 mm Hg in the lungs, the pulmonary  $P_{\text{eff}}$  is negative to start with and therefore generally no filtration occurs.

In parts of the body below the heart, the effects of **hydrostatic pressure** from the blood column increase the pressure in the capillary lumen (in the feet  $\approx 90$  mmHg). The filtration rate in these regions therefore rise, especially when standing still. This is counteracted by two "self-regulatory" mechanisms: (1) the outflow of water results in an increase in the luminal protein concentration (and thus  $\Delta\pi$ ) along the capillaries (normally the case in glomerular capillaries, → p. 152); (2) increased filtration results in an increase in  $P_{\text{int}}$  and a consequent decrease in  $\Delta P$ .

**Edema.** Fluid will accumulate in the interstitial space (*extracellular edema*), portal venous system (*ascites*), and pulmonary interstice (*pulmonary edema*) if the volume of filtered fluid is higher than the amount returned to the blood.

**Causes of edema** (→ B):

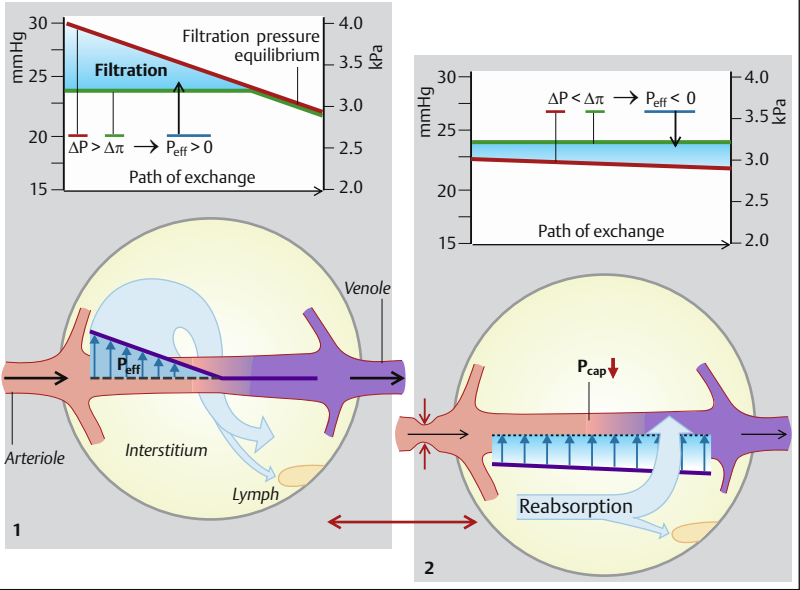
- ◆ *Increased capillary pressure* (→ B1) due to precapillary vasodilatation ( $P_{\text{cap}} \uparrow$ ), especially when the capillary permeability to proteins also increases ( $\sigma_{\text{prot}} \downarrow$  and  $\Delta\pi \downarrow$ ) due, for example, to infection or anaphylaxis (histamine etc.). Hypertension in the portal vein leads to ascites.
- ◆ *Increased venous pressure* ( $P_{\text{cap}} \uparrow$ , → B2) due, for example, to venous thrombosis or heart failure (*cardiac edema*).
- ◆ *Decreased concentration of plasma proteins*, especially albumin, leading to a drop in  $\Delta\pi$  (→ B3 and p. 385 A) due, for example, to loss of proteins (proteinuria), decreased hepatic protein synthesis (e.g., in liver cirrhosis), or to increased breakdown of plasma proteins to meet energy requirements (*hunger edema*).
- ◆ *Decreased lymph drainage* due, e.g., to lymph tract compression (tumors), severance (surgery), obliteration (radiation therapy) or obstruction (bilharziosis) can lead to *localized edema* (→ B4).
- ◆ *Increased hydrostatic pressure* promotes edema formation in lower regions of the body (e.g., in the ankles; → B).

**Diffusion.** Although dissolved particles are dragged through capillary walls along with filtered and reabsorbed water (solvent drag; → p. 24), diffusion plays a much greater role in the exchange of solutes. *Net diffusion* of a substance (e.g.,  $\text{O}_2$ ,  $\text{CO}_2$ ) occurs if its plasma and interstitial conc. are different.

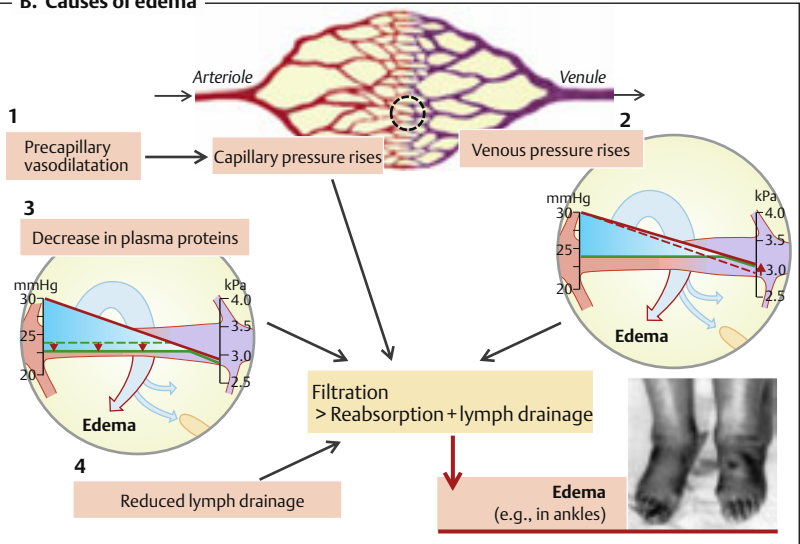
**A. Exchange of fluids via capillaries**

$$P_{\text{eff}} \text{ (effective filtration pressure)} = \Delta P \text{ (hydrostatic pressure difference)} - \Delta\pi \text{ (oncotic pressure difference)}$$

= internal/external pressure difference



**B. Causes of edema**



**Coronary arteries.** The blood flow to the myocardium is supplied by the two coronary arteries that arise from the aortic root. The right coronary artery (approx. 1/7th of the blood) usually supplies the greater portion of the right ventricle, while the left coronary artery (6/7th of the blood) supplies the left ventricle ( $\rightarrow$  A). The contribution of both arteries to blood flow in the septum and posterior wall of the left ventricle varies.

**Coronary blood flow** ( $\dot{Q}_{cor}$ ) is phasic, i.e., the amount of blood in the coronary arteries fluctuates during the cardiac cycle due to extremely high rises in extravascular tissue pressure during systole ( $\rightarrow$  B, C). The blood flow in the epicardial coronary artery branches and subepicardial vessels remains largely unaffected by these pressure fluctuations. However, the *subendocardial vessels* of the left ventricle are compressed during systole when the extravascular pressure in that region ( $\approx$  pressure in left ventricle,  $P_{lv}$ ) exceeds the pressure in the lumen of the vessels ( $\rightarrow$  C). Consequently, the left ventricle is mainly supplied during diastole ( $\rightarrow$  B middle). The fluctuations in right ventricular blood flow are much less distinct because right ventricular pressure ( $P_{rv}$ ) is lower ( $\rightarrow$  B, C).

**Myocardial O<sub>2</sub> consumption** ( $\dot{V}O_2$ ) is defined as  $\dot{Q}_{cor}$  times the arteriovenous O<sub>2</sub> concentration difference,  $(C_a - C_v)O_2$ . The myocardial  $(C_a - C_v)O_2$  is relatively high (0.12 L/L blood), and *oxygen extraction* at rest ( $[(C_a - C_v)O_2 / C_a O_2 = 0.12 / 0.21]$ ) is almost 60% and, thus, not able to rise much further. Therefore, an increase in  $\dot{Q}_{cor}$  is practically the only way to increase myocardial  $\dot{V}O_2$  when the O<sub>2</sub> demand rises ( $\rightarrow$  D, right side).

**Adaptation of the myocardial O<sub>2</sub> supply** according to need is therefore primarily achieved by *adjusting vascular resistance* ( $\rightarrow$  D, left side). The (distal) coronary vessel resistance can normally be reduced to about 1/4 the resting value (*coronary reserve*). The coronary blood flow  $\dot{Q}_{cor}$  (approx. 250 mL/min at rest) can therefore be increased as much as 4–5 fold. In other words, approx. 4 to 5 times more O<sub>2</sub> can be supplied during maximum physical exertion.

**Arteriosclerosis (atherosclerosis)** of the coronary arteries leads to luminal narrowing and a resultant decrease in poststenotic pressure. Dilatation of the distal vessels then occurs as an autoregulatory response (see below). Depending on the extent of the stenosis, it may be necessary to use a fraction of the coronary reserve, even during rest. As a result, lower

or insufficient quantities of O<sub>2</sub> will be available to satisfy increased O<sub>2</sub> demand, and *coronary insufficiency* may occur ( $\rightarrow$  D)

**Myocardial O<sub>2</sub> demand** increases with cardiac output (increased pressure–volume–work/time;  $\rightarrow$  p. 204f), i.e., in response to increases in heart rate and/or contractility, e.g., during physical exercise ( $\rightarrow$  D, right). It also increases as a function of mural tension ( $T_{ventr}$ ) times the duration of systole (*tension–time index*). Since  $T_{ventr} = P_{ventr} \cdot V_{ventr} / 2w$  (*Laplace's law*  $\rightarrow$  Eq. 8.4b, p. 190), O<sub>2</sub> demand is greater when the ventricular pressure ( $P_{ventr}$ ) is high and the stroke volume small than when  $P_{ventr}$  is low and the stroke volume high, even when the same amount of work ( $P \times V$ ) is performed. In the first case, the **efficiency of the heart** is reduced. When the ventricular pressure  $P_{ventr}$  is elevated, e.g., in *hypertension*, the myocardium therefore requires more O<sub>2</sub> to perform the same amount of work ( $\rightarrow$  D, right).

Since the myocardial metabolism is aerobic, an increased O<sub>2</sub> demand quickly has to lead to vasodilatation. The following factors are involved in the **coronary vasodilatation**:

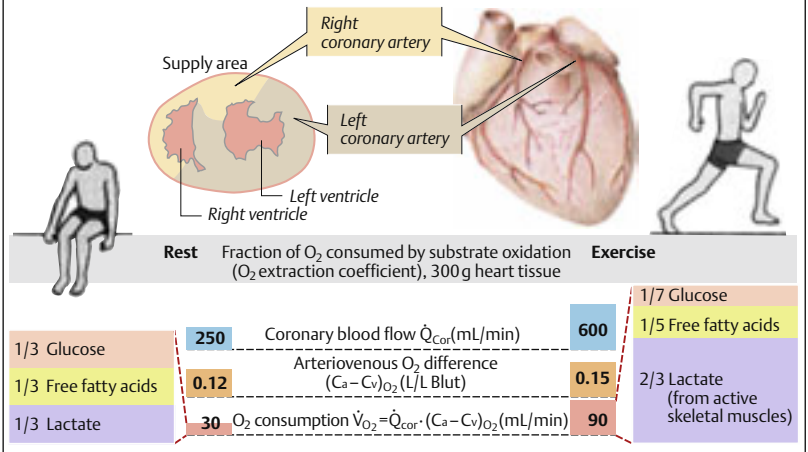
◆ **Metabolic factors:** (a) oxygen deficiency since O<sub>2</sub> acts as a vasoconstrictor; (b) Adenosine; oxygen deficiencies result in insufficient quantities of AMP being re-converted to ATP, leading to accumulation of *adenosine*, a degradation product of AMP. This leads to A<sub>2</sub> receptor-mediated vasodilatation; (c) Accumulation of lactate and H<sup>+</sup> ions (from the anaerobic myocardial metabolism); (d) prostaglandin I<sub>2</sub>.

◆ **Endothelial factors:** ATP (e.g., from platelets), bradykinin, histamine and acetylcholine are vasodilators. They liberate nitric oxide (NO) from the endothelium, which diffuses into vascular muscle cells to stimulate vasodilatation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 281 E).

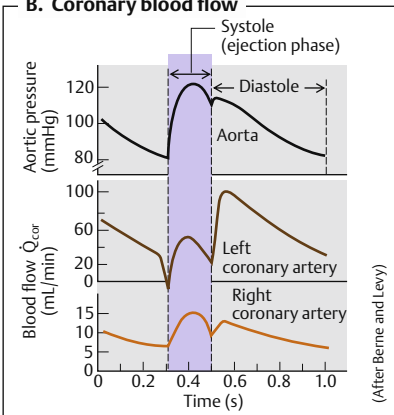
◆ **Neurohumoral factors:** Norepinephrine released from sympathetic nerve endings and adrenal epinephrine have a vasodilatory effect on the distal coronary vessels via  $\beta_2$  adrenoceptors.

**Myocardial energy sources.** The myocardium can use the available glucose, free fatty acids, lactate and other molecules for ATP production. The oxidation of each of these three energy substrates consumes a certain fraction of myocardial O<sub>2</sub> (O<sub>2</sub> extraction coefficient); accordingly, each contributes approx. one-third of the produced ATP at rest. The myocardium consumes increasing quantities of *lactate* from the skeletal muscles during physical exercise ( $\rightarrow$  A,  $\rightarrow$  p. 72 and 284).

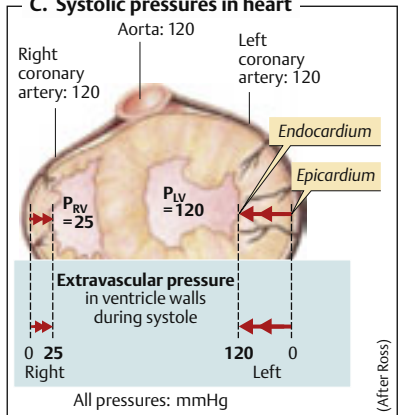
**A. Blood supply, O<sub>2</sub> and substrate consumption of heart muscle**



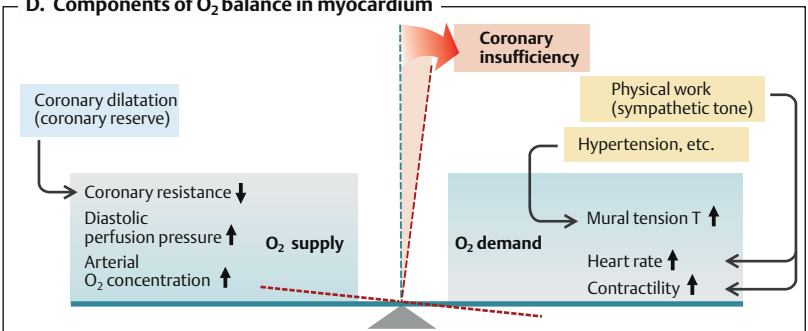
**B. Coronary blood flow**



**C. Systolic pressures in heart**



**D. Components of O<sub>2</sub> balance in myocardium**



The blood flow must be regulated to ensure an adequate blood supply, even under changing environmental conditions and stress (cf. p.74). This implies (a) optimal regulation of cardiac activity and blood pressure (*homeostasis*), (b) adequate perfusion of all organ systems, and (c) shunting of blood to active organ systems (e.g., muscles) at the expense of the resting organs (e.g., gastrointestinal tract) to keep from overtaxing the heart (→ A).

**Regulation of blood flow to the organs** is mainly achieved by changing the *diameter of blood vessels*. The muscle tone (tonus) of the vascular smooth musculature changes in response to (1) *local stimuli* (→ B2a/b), (2) *hormonal signals* (→ B3 a/b) and (3) *neuronal signals* (→ B1 a/b). Most blood vessels have an intermediary muscle tone at rest (*resting tone*). Many vessels dilate in response to denervation, resulting in a *basal tone*. This occurs due to spontaneous depolarization of smooth muscle in the vessels (see also p. 70).

#### Local Regulation of Blood Flow (Autoregulation)

Autoregulation has two **functions**:

- ◆ Autoregulatory mechanisms help to maintain a *constant blood flow* to certain organs when the blood pressure changes (e.g., renal vessels constrict in response to rises in blood pressure; → p. 150).

- ◆ Autoregulation also functions to *adjust the blood flow* according to changes in metabolic activity of an organ (*metabolic autoregulation*); the amount of blood flow to the organ (e.g., cardiac and skeletal muscle; → A and p.212) can thereby increase many times higher than the resting level.

Types of autoregulatory **mechanism**:

- ◆ **Myogenic effects** arising from the vascular musculature of the lesser arteries and arterioles (*Bayliss effect*) ensure that these vessels *contract* in response to blood pressure-related dilatation (→ B2a) in certain organs (e.g., kidneys, gastrointestinal tract and brain), but not in others (e.g., skin and lungs).

- ◆ **Oxygen deficiencies** generally cause the blood vessels to *dilate*. Hence, the degree of blood flow and O<sub>2</sub> uptake increase with increasing O<sub>2</sub> consumption. In the lungs, on the other hand, a low P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> in the surrounding alveoli causes the vessels to *contract* (*hypoxic vasoconstriction*; → p. 122).

- ◆ **Local metabolic (chemical) effects**: An increase in local concentrations of *metabolic products* such as CO<sub>2</sub>, H<sup>+</sup>, ADP, AMP, adenosine, and K<sup>+</sup> in the interstitium has a *vasodilatory effect*, especially in precapillary arterioles. The resulting rise in blood flow not only improves the supply of substrates and O<sub>2</sub>, but also accelerates the efflux of these metabolic products from the tissue. The blood flow to the *brain* and *myocardium* (→ p.212) is almost entirely subject to local metabolic control. Both local metabolic effects and O<sub>2</sub> deficiencies lead to an up to 5-fold increase in blood flow to an affected region in response to the decreased blood flow (*reactive hyperemia*).

- ◆ **Vasoactive substances**: A number of vasoactive substances such as prostaglandins play a role in autoregulation (see below).

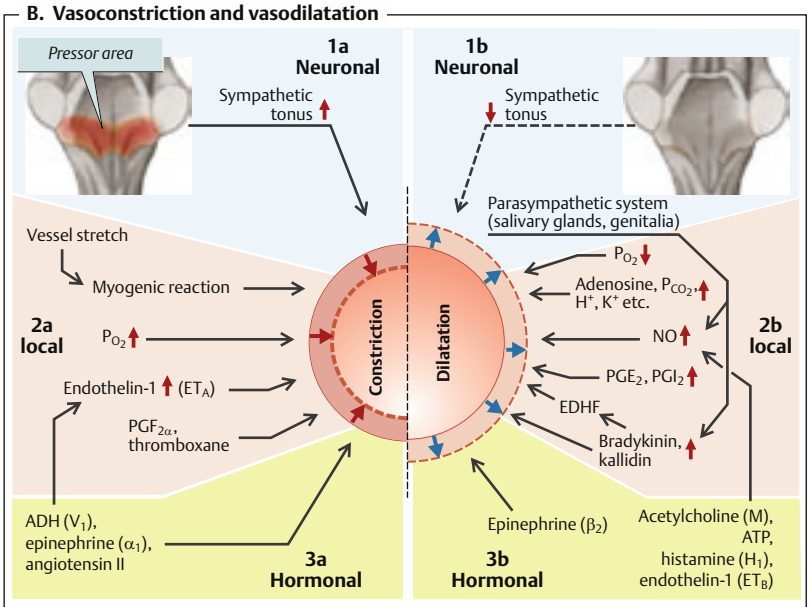
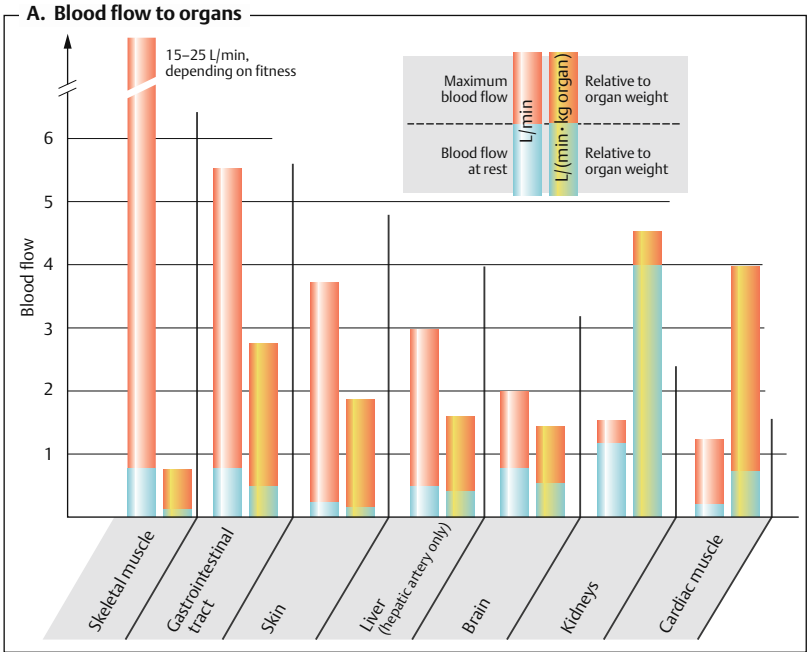
#### Hormonal Control of Circulation

**Vasoactive substances.** Vasoactive hormones either have a direct effect on the vascular musculature (e.g., epinephrine) or lead to the local release of vasoactive substances (e.g., nitric oxide, endothelin) that exert local paracrine effects (→ B).

- ◆ **Nitric (mon)oxide (NO)** acts as a *vasodilatory agent*. NO is released from the *endothelium* when acetylcholine (M receptors), ATP, endothelin (ET<sub>B</sub> receptors), or histamine (H<sub>1</sub> receptors) binds with an endothelial cell (→ p.280). NO then diffuses to and relaxes vascular myocytes in the vicinity.

- ◆ **Endothelin-1** can lead to *vasodilatation* by inducing the release of NO from the *endothelium* by way of ET<sub>B</sub> receptors (see above), or can cause *vasoconstriction* via ET<sub>A</sub> receptors in the vascular musculature. When substances such as angiotensin II or ADH (= vasopressin; V<sub>1</sub> receptor) bind to an endothelial cell, they release endothelin-1, which diffuses to and constricts the adjacent vascular muscles with the aid of ET<sub>A</sub> receptors.

- ◆ **Epinephrine (E)**: High concentrations of E from the adrenal medulla (→ p.86) have a *vasoconstrictive effect* (α<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptors), whereas low concentrations exert *vasodilatory effects* by way of β<sub>2</sub> adrenoceptors in the *myocardium*, *skeletal muscle* and *liver* (→ C). The effect of E mainly depends on which type of adrenoceptor is predominant in the organ. α<sub>1</sub>-▶



► adrenoceptors are predominant in the blood vessels of the *kidney* and *skin*.

◆ **Eicosanoids** (→ p. 271): Prostaglandin (PG)  $F_{2\alpha}$  and the thromboxanes  $A_2$  (released from platelets, → p. 102) and  $B_2$  have *vasoconstrictive* effects, while  $PGI_2$  (= prostacyclin, e.g. released from endothelium) and  $PGE_2$  have *vasodilatory* effects. Another vasodilator released from the endothelium (e.g., by bradykinin; see below) opens  $K^+$  channels in vascular myocytes and hyperpolarizes them, leading to a drop in the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration. This endothelium-derived hyperpolarizing factor (EDHF), has been identified as a 11,12-epoxyeicosatrienoic acid (11,12-EET).

◆ **Bradykinin and kallidin** are *vasodilatory* agents cleaved from kininogens in blood plasma by the enzyme kallikrein. **Histamine** also acts as a vasodilator. All three substances influence also vessel permeability (e.g., during infection) and blood clotting.

#### Neuronal Regulation of Circulation

Neuronal regulation of *blood flow* (→ **B1a/b**) mainly involves the *lesser arteries* and *greater arterioles* (→ p. 190), while that of *venous return* to the heart (→ p. 206) can be controlled by dilating or constricting the *veins* (changes in their blood storage capacity). Both mechanisms are usually controlled by the **sympathetic nervous system** (→ **B1a** and p. 78ff.), whereby **norepinephrine** (NE) serves as the postganglionic transmitter (except in the sweat glands). NE binds with the  $\alpha_1$  adrenoceptors on blood vessels, causing them to constrict (→ **B**). Vasodilatation is usually achieved by decreasing the tonus of the sympathetic system (→ **B1b**). This does not apply to blood vessels in salivary glands (increased secretion) or the genitals (erection), which dilate in response to *parasympathetic* stimuli. In this case, vasoactive substances (bradykinin and NO, respectively) act as the mediators. Some neurons release calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP), a potent vasodilator.

**Neuronal regulation of blood flow to organs** occurs mainly: (a) via *central co-innervation* (e.g., an impulse is simultaneously sent from the cerebral cortex to circulatory centers when a muscle group is activated, or (b) via *neuronal feedback* from the organs whose activity level

and metabolism have changed. If the neuronal and local metabolic mechanisms are conflicting (e.g., when sympathetic nervous stimulation occurs during skeletal muscle activity), the metabolic factors will predominate. Vasodilatation therefore occurs in the active **muscle** while the sympathetic nervous system reduces the blood flow to the inactive muscles. Blood flow to the **skin** is mainly regulated by neuronal mechanisms for the purpose of controlling heat disposal (*temperature control*; → p. 226). Hypovolemia and hypotension lead to *centralization of blood flow*, i.e., vasoconstriction in the kidney (oliguria) and skin (pallor) occurs to increase the supply of blood to vital organs such as the heart and central nervous system (→ p. 220).

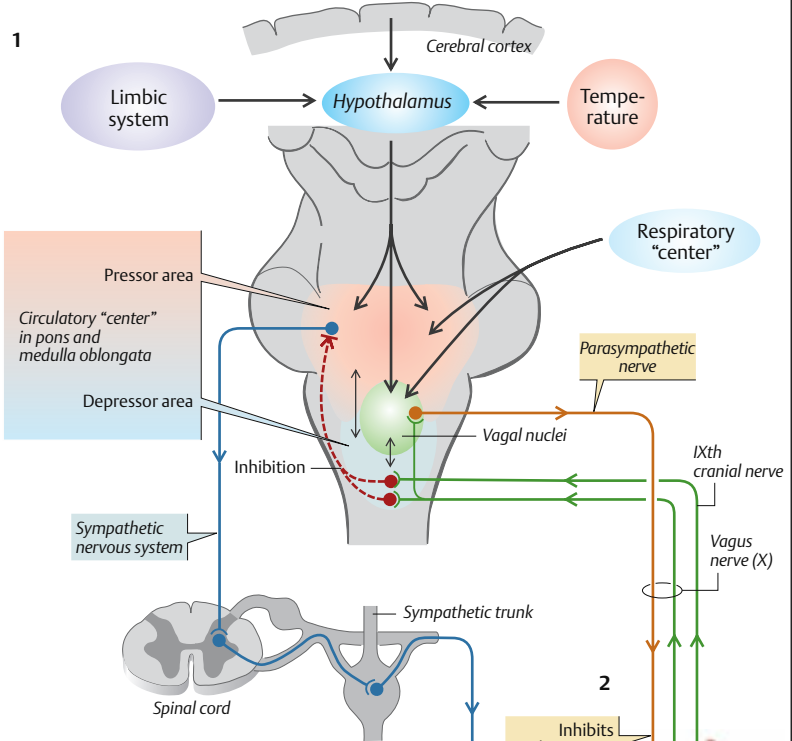
During exposure to extremely low temperatures, the cold-induced vasoconstriction of cutaneous vessels is periodically interrupted to supply the skin with blood to prevent tissue damage (**Lewis response**). Stimulation of nociceptor fibers in the skin can cause their axon collaterals to release neuropeptides (substance P, CGRP) which are responsible for vasodilatation and skin reddening in the area (**axon reflex**).

**Central regulation of blood flow** (→ **C**) is the responsibility of the CNS areas in the medulla oblongata and pons. They receive information from **circulatory sensors (S)** or **receptors** (a) in the high-pressure system (barosensors or pressure sensors,  $S_P$ , in the aorta and carotid artery); (b) in the low-pressure system (stretch sensors in the vena cava and atria,  $S_A$  and  $S_B$ ); and (c) in the left ventricle ( $S_V$ ). The sensors measure *arterial blood pressure* ( $S_P$ ), *pulse rate* ( $S_P$  and  $S_V$ ) and filling pressure in the low pressure system (indirect measure of *blood volume*). The A sensors ( $S_A$ ) mainly react to atrial contraction, whereas the B sensors ( $S_B$ ) react to passive filling stretch (→ **C2**). If the measured values differ from the set-point value, the *circulatory control centers* of the CNS transmit regulatory impulses through efferent nerve fibers to the heart and blood vessels (→ **D** and p. 5 C2).

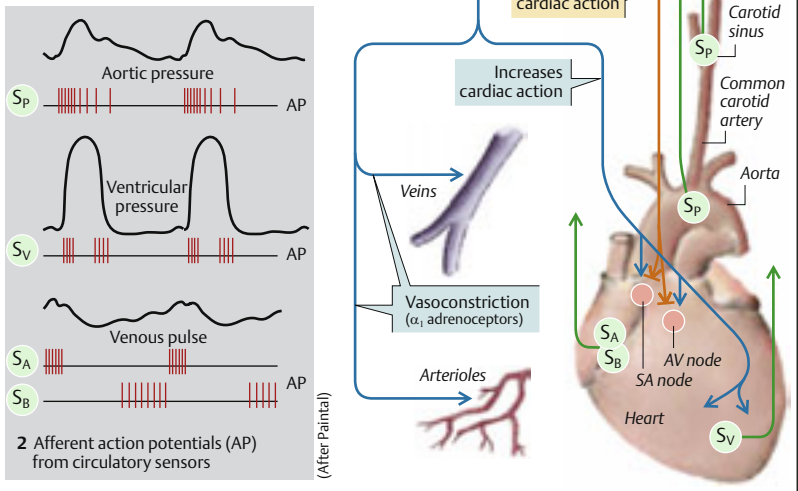
Situated laterally in the circulatory "center" is a **pressor area** (→ **C**, reddish zone), the neurons of which (blue arrows) continuously transmit sympathetic nerve impulses to the ►

C. Central regulation of blood flow

1



2



► heart to increase its activity (heart rate, conduction and contractility). Their effects on vessels are predominantly vasoconstrictive (resting tone). The pressor area is in close contact with more medial neurons (**depressor area**, light blue area in **C**). The pressor and depressor areas are connected to the dorsal nuclei of the vagus nerve (**→ C**, green), the stimulation of which reduces the heart rate and cardiac impulse conduction rate (**→ C**, orange arrows).

**Homeostatic circulatory reflexes** include signals along afferent nerve tracts (**→ D3a/b**) that extend centrally from the pressosensors in the aorta and carotid sinus (**→ C**, green tracts). The main purpose of homeostatic control is to maintain the *arterial blood pressure* at a stable level. Acute increases in blood pressure heighten the rate of afferent impulses and activate the depressor area. By way of the vagus nerve, parasympathetic neurons (**→ C**, orange tract) elicit the depressor reflex response, i.e., they decrease the *cardiac output* (CO). In addition, inhibition of sympathetic vessel innervation causes the vessels to dilate, thereby reducing the *peripheral resistance* (TPR; **→ D4a/b**). Both of these mechanisms help to lower acute increases in blood pressure. Conversely, an acute drop in blood pressure leads to activation of pressor areas, which stimulates a rise in CO and TPR as well as venous vasoconstriction (**→ C**, blue tracts), thereby raising the blood pressure back to normal.

Due to the *fast adaptation* of pressosensors (*differential characteristics*, **→ p. 314ff.**), these regulatory measures apply to *acute changes in blood pressure*. Rising, for example, from a supine to a standing position results in rapid redistribution of the blood volume. Without homeostatic control (*orthostatic reflex*; **→ p. 7, E and p. 206**), the resulting change in venous return would lead to a sharp drop in arterial blood pressure. The circulatory centers also respond to falling  $P_{O_2}$  or rising  $P_{CO_2}$  in the blood (cross-links from respiratory center) to raise the blood pressure as needed.

In individuals with chronic **hypertension**, the input from the pressosensors is normal because they are fully adapted. Therefore, circulatory control centers cannot respond to and decrease the high pressures. On the contrary, they may even help to “fix” the blood pressure at the high levels. Chronic hyperten-

sion leads to stiffening of the carotid sinus. This may also contribute to decreasing the sensitivity of carotid pressosensors in hypertension.

A temporary *increase in venous return* (e.g., after an intravenous infusion) also leads to an increase in heart action (**→ D**, right). This mechanism is known as the **Bainbridge reflex**. The physiological significance of this reflex is, however, not entirely clear, but it may complement the Frank–Starling mechanism (**→ p. 204ff.**).

### Hypertension

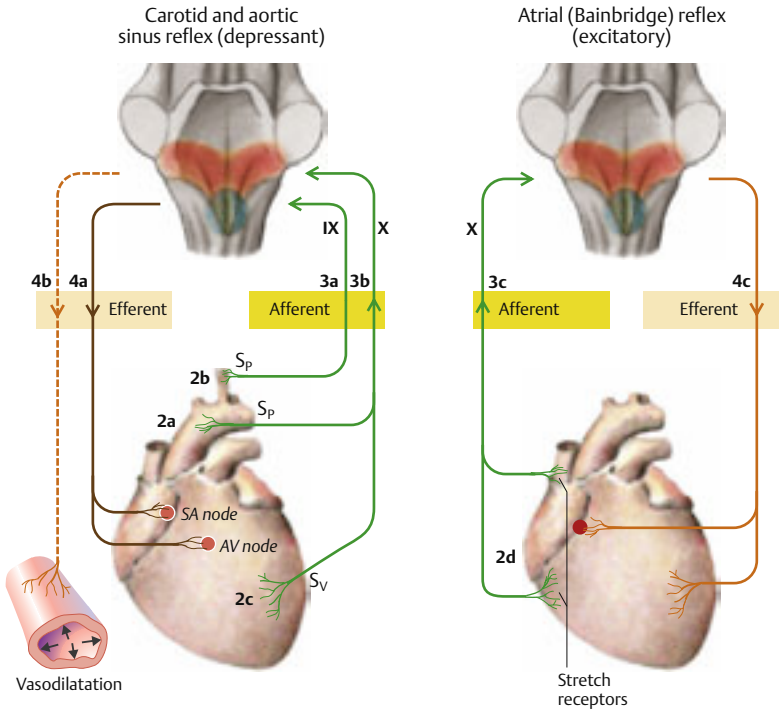
Hypertension is defined as a chronic increase in the systemic arterial blood pressure. The general criterion for diagnosis of hypertension is consistent elevation of resting blood pressure to  $> 90$  mmHg and/or  $> 140$  mmHg diastolic and systolic, respectively (**→ p. 208**). Untreated or inadequately managed hypertension results in stress and compensatory hypertrophy of the left ventricle which can ultimately progress to *left heart failure*. Individuals with hypertension are also at risk for arteriosclerosis and its sequelae (myocardial infarction, stroke, renal damage, etc.). Therefore, hypertension considerably shortens the life expectancy of a large fraction of the population.

The **main causes of hypertension** are (a) increased extracellular fluid (ECF) volume with increased venous return and therefore increased cardiac output (*volume hypertension*) and (b) increased total peripheral resistance (*resistance hypertension*). As hypertension always leads to vascular changes resulting in increased peripheral resistance, type *a* hypertension eventually proceeds to type *b* which, regardless of how it started, ends in a vicious circle.

The ECF volume increases when more NaCl (and water) is absorbed than excreted. The usually high intake of dietary salt may therefore play a role in the development of **essential hypertension** (primary hypertension), the most common type of hypertension, at least in patients sensitive to salt. Volume hypertension can even occur when a relatively low salt intake can no longer be balanced. This can occur in renal insufficiency or when an adrenocortical tumor produces uncontrolled amounts of aldosterone, resulting in  $Na^+$  retention.

Other important cause of hypertension is **pheochromocytoma**, a tumor that secretes epinephrine and norepinephrine and therefore raises the CO and TPR. **Renal hypertension** can occur due to renal artery stenosis and renal disease. This results in the increased secretion of *renin*, which in turn raises the blood pressure via the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone (RAA) system (**→ p. 186**).

D. Circulatory reflexes



<b>Arterial blood pressure rises</b>	<b>1. Stimulus</b>	<b>Venous return rises Atrial pressure rises</b>
Pressorsensors in: a) Aorta b) Carotid artery c) Left ventricle	<b>2. Sensors</b>	d) Atrial and venous stretch sensors
a) Glossopharyngeal nerve (IXth nerve) b) Vagus nerve (Xth nerve)	<b>3. Afferent path</b>	c) Vagus nerve (Xth nerve)
a) Stimulation of parasympathetic system b) Inhibition of sympathetic system	<b>4. Efferent path</b>	c) Stimulation of sympathetic system
↓ Bradycardia ↓ Cardiac output decreases	<b>5. Response</b>	Tachycardia, myocardial contractility increases
↓ Vasodilatation ↓ Peripheral resistance decreases		
<b>Arterial blood pressure decreases</b>	<b>6. Goal achieved</b>	<b>Cardiac output rises</b>

Circulatory shock is characterized by acute or subacute progressive *generalized failure of the circulatory system* with disruption of the microcirculation and *failure to maintain adequate blood flow to vital organs*. In most cases, the **cardiac output (CO) is insufficient** due to a variety of reasons, which are explained below.

◆ **Hypovolemic shock** is characterized by reduced central venous pressure and *reduced venous return*, resulting in an inadequate stroke volume (Frank-Starling mechanism). The blood volume can be reduced due to bleeding (*hemorrhagic shock*) or any other conditions associated with the external **loss of fluids** from the gastrointestinal tract (e.g., severe vomiting, chronic diarrhea), the kidneys (e.g., in diabetes mellitus, diabetes insipidus, high-dose diuretic treatment) or the skin (burns, profuse sweating without fluid intake). An *internal loss* of blood can also occur, e.g., due to bleeding into soft tissues, into the mediastinum or into the pleural and abdominal space.

◆ **Cardiogenic shock**: Acute *heart failure* can be caused by acute myocardial infarction, acute decompensation of heart failure or impairment of cardiac filling, e.g. in pericardial tamponade. The central venous pressure is higher than in hypovolemic shock.

◆ Shock can occur due to **hormonal causes**, such as adrenocortical insufficiency, diabetic coma or insulin overdose (hypoglycemic shock).

◆ **Vasogenic shock**: Reduced cardiac output can also be due to peripheral vasodilatation (absence of pallor) and a resultant drop of venous return. This occurs in Gram-positive septicemia (*septic shock*), *anaphylactic shock*, an immediate hypersensitivity reaction (food or drug allergy, insect bite/sting) in which vasoactive substances (e.g., histamines) are released.

**Symptoms.** Hypovolemic and cardiovascular shock are characterized by *decreased blood pressure (weak pulse) increased heart rate, pallor* with cold sweats (not observed with shock caused by vasodilatation), reduced urinary output (*oliguria*) and extreme *thirst*.

**Shock index.** The ratio of pulse rate (beats/min) to systolic blood pressure (mmHg), or *shock index*, provides a rough estimate of the extent of volume loss. An index of up to 0.5 indicates normal or < 10% blood loss; up to 1.0 = < 20–30% blood loss and impending shock; up to 1.5 = > 30–50% blood loss and manifest shock.

Most of the symptoms described reflect the **counterregulatory measures** taken by the body during the *non-progressive phase* of shock in order to ward off progressive shock (→ **A**). Rapid-acting mechanisms for *raising the*

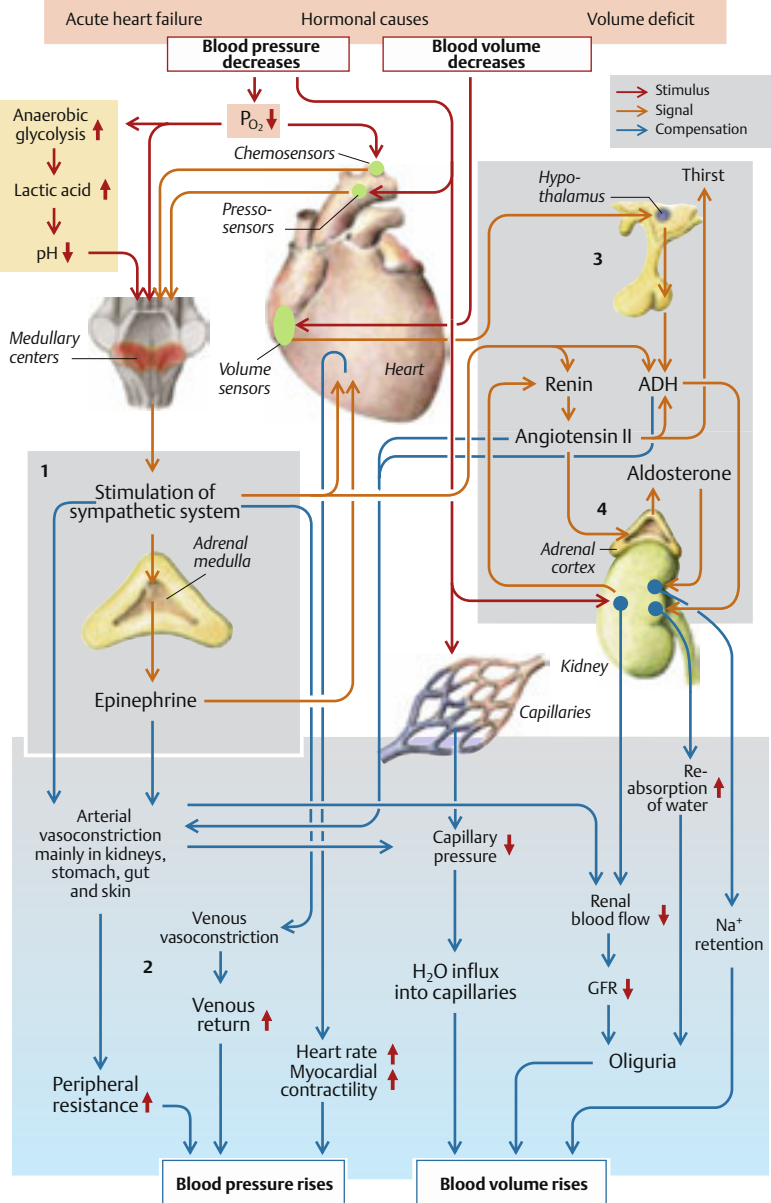
blood pressure and slower-acting mechanisms to *compensate for volume losses* both play a role.

**Blood pressure compensation** (→ **A** left): A drop in blood pressure *increases sympathetic tonus* (→ **A1** and p.216). *Arterial vasoconstriction* (absent in shock due to vasodilatation) shunts the reduced cardiac output from the skin (pallor), abdominal organs and kidneys (oliguria) to vital organs such as the coronary arteries and brain. This is known as **centralization of blood flow** (→ **A2**). Sympathetic constriction of venous capacitance vessels (which raises ventricular filling), tachycardia and positive inotropism increase the diminished cardiac output to a limited extent.

**Compensation for volume deficits** (→ **A**, right): When shock is imminent, the resultant drop in blood pressure and peripheral vasoconstriction lead to a *reduction of capillary filtration pressure*, allowing interstitial fluid to enter the bloodstream. Atrial stretch sensors detect the decrease in ECF volume (reduced atrial filling) and transmit signals to stop the atria from secreting atriopeptin (= ANP) and to start the secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) from the posterior lobe of the pituitary (*Gauer-Henry reflex*; → p.170). ADH induces vasoconstriction ( $V_1$  receptors) and water retention ( $V_2$  receptors). The drop in renal blood pressure triggers an increase in *renin secretion* and activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone (RAA) system (→ p.186). If these measures are successful in warding off the impending shock, the lost red blood cells are later replaced (via increased renal erythropoietin secretion, → p.88) and the plasma protein concentration is normalized by increased hepatic synthesis.

**Manifest (or progressive) shock** will develop if these homeostatic compensation mechanisms are unable to prevent impending shock and the patient does not receive medical treatment (infusion, etc.). Severe hypotension (< 90 mmHg systolic or < 60 mmHg mean blood pressure) can persist for extended periods, even in spite of volume replacement. The resulting development of hypoxia leads to organ damage and **multiple organ failure**, ultimately culminating in **irreversible shock** and death.

**A. Compensation mechanisms for impending hypovolemic shock**



**Placenta.** The maternal placenta acts as the “gut” (absorption of nutrients), “kidneys” (removal of waste products) and “lungs” of the fetus (uptake of  $O_2$  and elimination of  $CO_2$ ). Although the *fetal  $O_2$ -hemoglobin dissociation curve* is shifted to the left compared to that of adults ( $\rightarrow$  p. 129 C), only 60% (0.6) of placental hemoglobin is saturated with  $O_2$  ( $\rightarrow$  A).

In the fetus, not yet active or hardly active organs such as the lungs receive little blood. The **fetal cardiac output** (from both ventricles) is about 0.2 L/min per kg body weight. The **fetal heart rate** rises from an initial 65  $\text{min}^{-1}$  (week 5) to 130–160  $\text{min}^{-1}$  in later weeks. Approx. 50% of the blood ejected from the heart flows through the placenta, the other half supplies the body (35%) and lungs (15%) of the fetus. This is supplied by the left and right heart, which function essentially *in parallel* until after the birth (see below).

**Fetal circulation.** The blood flows through the fetal body as follows ( $\rightarrow$  A): After being *arterialized in the placenta*, the blood passes into the fetus via the *umbilical vein* and part of it travels through the **ductus venosus** (Arantii), thereby bypassing the liver. When entering the inferior vena cava, the blood *mixes with venous blood* from the lower half of the body. Guided by special folds in the vena cava, the mixed blood passes directly from right atrium to the left atrium through an opening in the atrial septum (**foramen ovale**). From the left atrium, it then proceeds to the left ventricle. While in the right atrium, the blood mingles with venous blood from the superior vena cava (only slight mixing), which is received by the right ventricle. Only about one-third of this blood reaches the lungs (due to high flow resistance since the lungs are not yet expanded, and due to hypoxic vasoconstriction,  $\rightarrow$  C and p. 122). The other two-thirds of the blood travels through the **ductus arteriosus** (Botalli) to the aorta (*right-to-left shunt*). Due to the low peripheral resistance (placenta), the **blood pressure** in the aorta is relatively low—only about 65 mmHg towards the end of pregnancy.

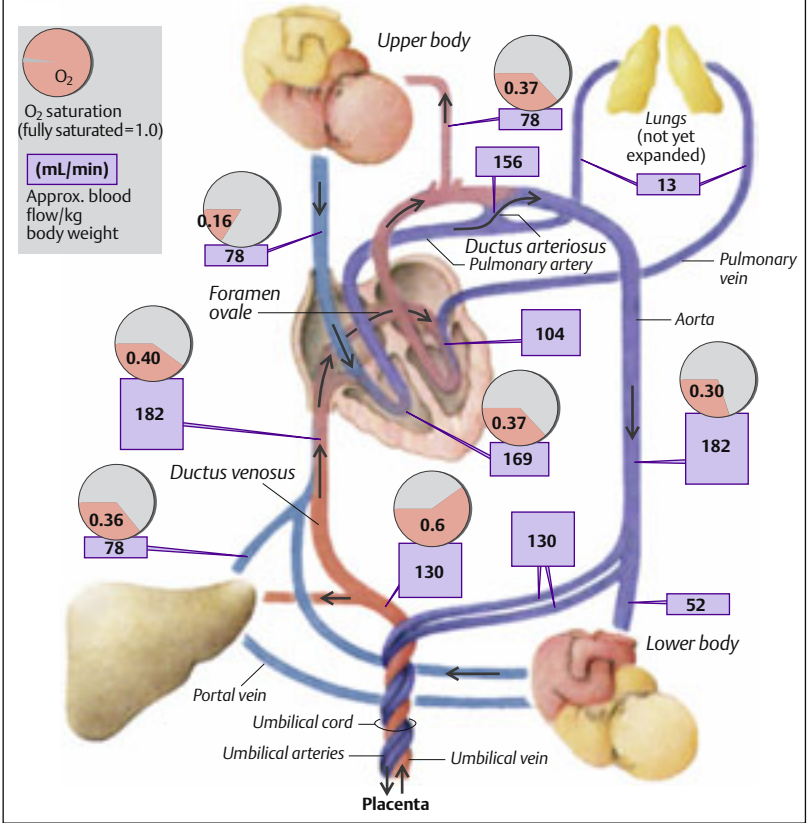
The arteries of the head and upper body are supplied with partly arterIALIZED blood from the left ventricle ( $\rightarrow$  A). This is important since brain tissue is susceptible to hypoxia. The remaining blood leaves the aorta and mixes with

venous blood from the ductus arteriosus. As a result, the blood supplied to the lower half of the body has a relatively low  $O_2$  concentration ( $O_2$  saturation = 0.3;  $\rightarrow$  A). The majority of this blood returns via the *umbilical arteries* to the placenta, where it is oxygenated again.

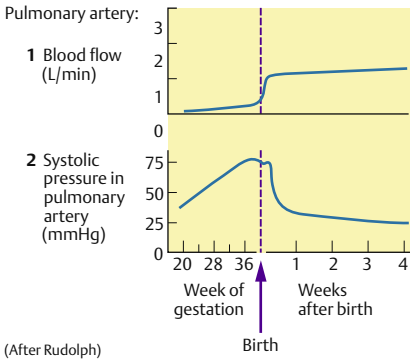
**Circulation during birth.** The exchange of  $O_2$ ,  $CO_2$ , nutrients, and waste materials through the placenta stops abruptly during birth. This leads to a rise in blood  $P_{CO_2}$ , triggering chemosensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 132) that induce a strong breathing reflex. The resultant *inspiratory movement* causes negative pressure (suction) in the thoracic cavity, which removes the blood from the placenta and umbilical vein (*placental transfusion*) and expands the lungs. The unfolding of the lungs and the rise in alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  reduce the resistance in the pulmonary circulation, and the blood flow increases while the pressure decreases ( $\rightarrow$  B1, 2). Meanwhile, the resistance in the systemic circulation increases due to occlusion or clamping of the umbilical cord. This changes the direction of blood flow in the **ductus arteriosus**, resulting in a *left-to-right shunt*. The pulmonary circulation therefore receives aortic blood for a few days after birth. The right atrial filling volume decreases due to the lack of placental blood, while that of the left atrium increases due to the increased pulmonary blood flow. Due to the resultant pressure gradient from the left to right atrium and to a decrease in vasodilatory prostaglandins, the **foramen ovale** closes after birth. The ductus arteriosus and ductus venosus also close, and the systemic and pulmonary circulation now form serial circuits. The closure of the ductus arteriosus is promoted by the rise in blood  $P_{O_2}$  (*a mitochondrial  $O_2$  sensor forms  $H_2O_2 \rightarrow K^+$  channels blocked  $\rightarrow$  depolarization  $\rightarrow$  L-type  $Ca^{2+}$  channels open  $\rightarrow$  vasoconstriction*).

**Shunts** occur when the foramen ovale or ductus arteriosus remains open, placing a strain on the heart. In **patent foramen ovale** (atrial septum defect), the blood flows from left atrium  $\rightarrow$  right atrium (left-to-right shunt)  $\rightarrow$  right ventricle (*volume overload*)  $\rightarrow$  lungs  $\rightarrow$  left atrium. In **patent ductus arteriosus**, the blood flows from aorta  $\rightarrow$  pulmonary artery (= left-to-right shunt)  $\rightarrow$  lungs (*pressure overload*)  $\rightarrow$  aorta.

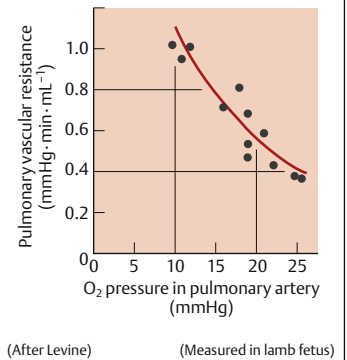
**A. Fetal circulation**



**B. Pulmonary circulation before and after birth**



**C. Hypoxic vasoconstriction in fetus**



The body temperature of humans remains relatively constant despite changes in the environmental temperature. This **homeothermy** applies only to the **core temperature** ( $\approx 37^\circ\text{C}$ ) of the body. The extremities and skin (“*shell*”) exhibit **poikilothermy**, i.e., their temperature varies to some extent with environmental temperature. In order to maintain a constant core temperature, the body must balance the *amount of heat it produces and absorbs with the amount it loses*; this is **thermoregulation** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 226).

**Heat production.** The amount of heat produced is determined by *energy metabolism* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 230). At rest, approximately 56% of total heat production occurs in the internal organs and about 18% in the muscles and skin ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, top). During *physical exercise*, heat production increases several-fold and the percentage of heat produced by muscular work can rise to as much as 90% ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, bottom). To keep warm, the body may have to generate additional voluntary (limb movement) and involuntary (shivering) muscle contractions. Newborns also have tissue known as **brown fat**, which enables them to produce additional heat without shivering ( $\rightarrow$  p. 227). Cold stimulates a reflex pathway resulting in norepinephrine release ( $\beta_3$ -adrenergic receptors) in fatty tissues, which in turn stimulates (1) lipolysis and (2) the expression of *lipoprotein lipase (LPL)* and *thermogenin (UCP1)*. LPL increases the supply of free fatty acids ( $\rightarrow$  p. 256). Thermogenin localized in the inner mitochondrial membrane is an uncoupling protein that functions as an  $\text{H}^+$  uniporter ( $\rightarrow$  p. 230). It short-circuits the  $\text{H}^+$  gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane ( $\rightarrow$  p. 17, **B2**), thereby uncoupling the (heat-producing) respiratory chain of ATP production.

Heat produced in the body is absorbed by the bloodstream and conveyed to the body surface. In order for this **internal flow of heat** to occur, the temperature of the body surface must be lower than that of the body interior. The *blood supply to the skin* is the chief determinant of heat transport to the skin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 226).

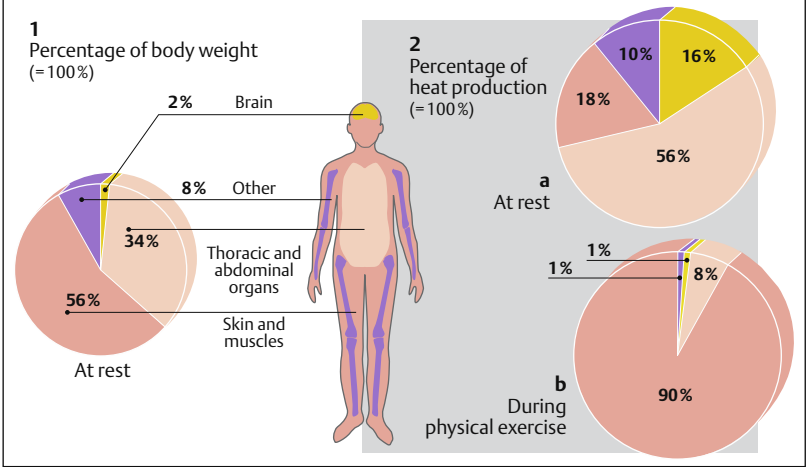
**Heat loss** occurs by the physical processes of radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation ( $\rightarrow$  **B**).

**1. Radiation** ( $\rightarrow$  **B1, C**). The amount of heat lost by radiation from the skin is chiefly determined by the temperature of the radiator (fourth power of its absolute temperature). Heat net-radiates from the body surface to objects or individuals when they are cooler than the skin, and net-radiates to the body from objects (sun) that are warmer than the skin. Heat radiates from the body into the environment when no radiating object is present (night sky). Heat radiation does not require the aid of any vehicle and is hardly affected by the air temperature (air itself is a poor radiator). Therefore, the body loses heat to a cold wall (despite warm air in between) and absorbs radiation from the sun or an infrared radiator without air (space) or cold air, respectively, in between.

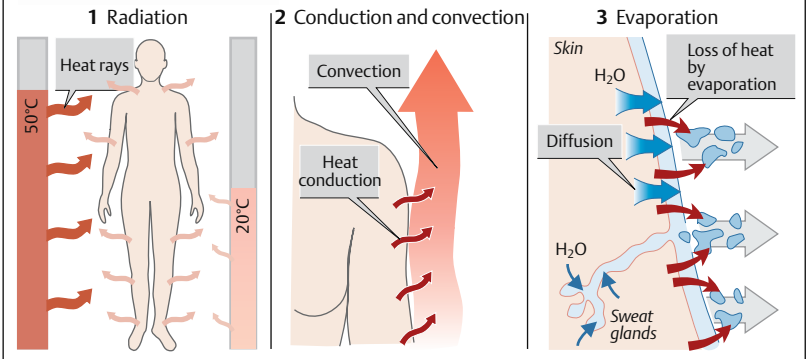
**2. Conduction and convection** ( $\rightarrow$  **B2, C**). These processes involve the transfer of heat from the skin to cooler air or a cooler object (e.g. sitting on rock) in contact with the body (*conduction*). The amount of heat lost by conduction to air increases greatly when the warmed air moves away from the body by natural *convection* (heated air rises) or forced convection (wind).

**3. Evaporation** ( $\rightarrow$  **B3, C**). The first two mechanisms alone are unable to maintain adequate temperature homeostasis at high environmental temperatures or during strenuous physical activity. Evaporation is the means by which the body copes with the additional heat. The water lost by evaporation reaches the skin surface by diffusion (*insensible perspiration*) and by neuron-activated *sweat glands* ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**, pp. 78ff. and 227 D). About 2428 kJ (580 kcal) of heat are lost for each liter of water evaporating and thereby cooling the skin. At temperatures above  $36^\circ\text{C}$  or so, heat loss occurs by evaporation only ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, right). At even higher environmental temperatures, heat is absorbed by radiation and conduction/convection. The body must lose larger amounts of heat by evaporation to make up for this. The surrounding air must be relatively dry in order for heat loss by evaporation to occur. Humid air retards evaporation. When the air is extremely humid (e.g., in a tropical rain forest), the average person cannot tolerate temperatures above  $33^\circ\text{C}$ , even under resting conditions.

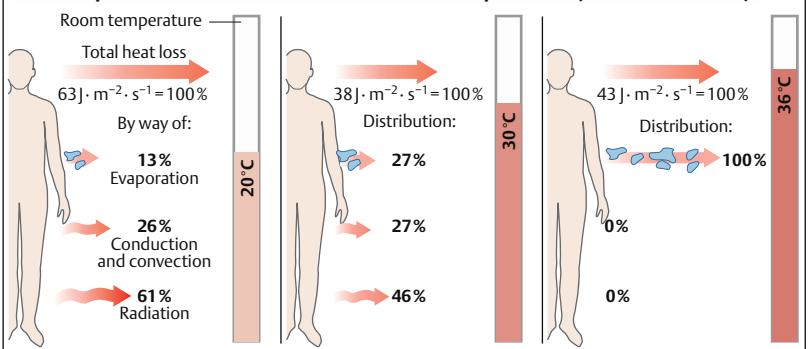
**A. Relative contribution of organs to body weight and heat production**



**B. Mechanisms of heat loss**



**C. Heat production at different environmental temperatures (unclothed, at rest)**



Thermoregulation maintains the **core temperature** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) at a constant **set point** ( $\approx 37^\circ\text{C}$ ) despite fluctuations in heat absorption, production, and loss ( $\rightarrow$  p. 224). The core temperature exhibits *circadian variation*. It fluctuates by about  $0.6^\circ\text{C}$  and is lowest around 3 a.m., and highest around 6 p.m. ( $\rightarrow$  p. 387 C). The set point changes are controlled by an intrinsic *biological clock* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 336). Extended set-point fluctuations happen during the menstrual cycle ( $\rightarrow$  p. 301, A3) and fever.

The *control center* for body temperature and *central thermosensors* are located in the **hypothalamus** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 332). Additional thermosensors are located in the spinal cord and skin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 316). The control center compares the actual core temperature with the set-point value and initiates measures to counteract any deviations ( $\rightarrow$  **D** and p. 4f.).

When the **core temperature rises** above the set point (e.g., during exercise), the body increases the internal heat flow ( $\rightarrow$  p. 224) by *dilating the blood vessels* of the skin. Moreover, arteriovenous anastomoses open in the periphery, especially in the fingers. The blood volume transported per unit time then not only conveys more heat, but also reduces the countercurrent exchange of heat between the arteries and their accompanying veins ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). In addition, venous return in the extremities is *re-routed* from the deep, accompanying veins to the superficial veins. **Sweat secretion** also increases. The evaporation of sweat cools the skin, thereby creating the core/skin temperature gradient needed for the internal heat flow. *Central warm sensors* emit the signals that activate the sweat glands. (In this case, the thermosensors of the skin do not detect warmth because their environment is cooler than the core temperature). The efferent nerve fibers to the sweat glands are cholinergic fibers of the sympathetic nervous system ( $\rightarrow$  **D**).

**Acclimatization** to high environmental temperatures (e.g., in the tropics) is a slow process that often takes years. Characteristically, the sweat secretion rate rises, the salt content of the sweat decreases, and thirst ( $\rightarrow$  p. 170ff) and thus  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  intake increase.

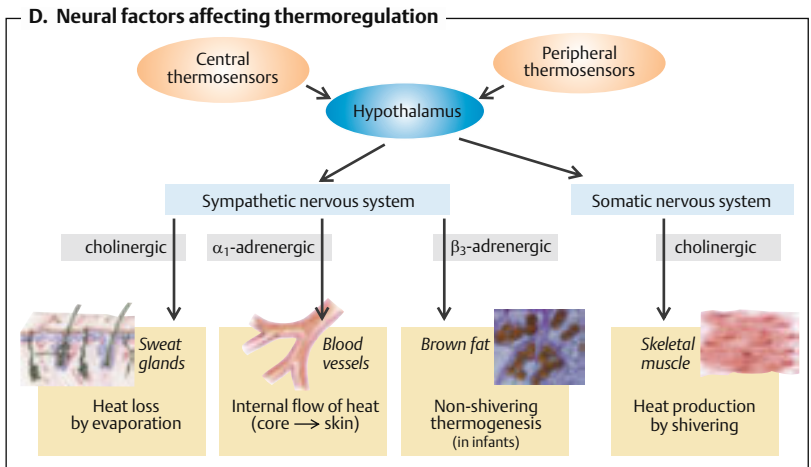
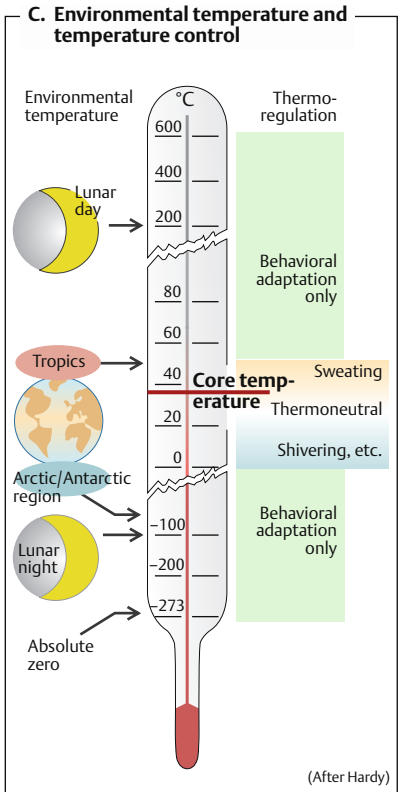
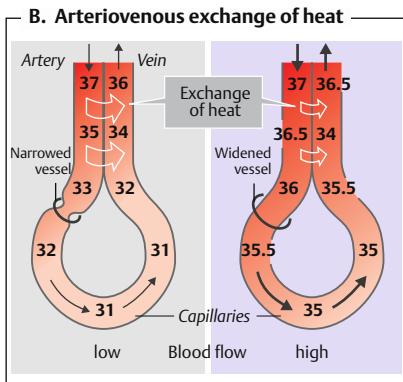
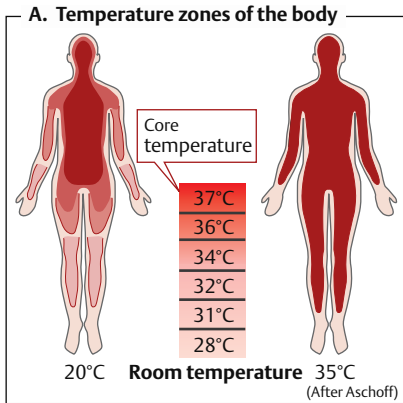
When the **core temperature falls** below set point, the body checks heat loss by constricting the blood vessels in the shell ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, left) and increases heat production by generating vol-

untary and involuntary (*shivering*) muscle activity ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). Although infants can quickly become hypothermic because of their high surface/volume ratio, their *brown fat* allows them to produce additional heat (*non-shivering thermogenesis*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 224). Upon exposure to low ambient temperatures, these three mechanisms are activated by the cold receptors of the skin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 316) *before* the core temperature falls.

The range of ambient temperatures between the sweating and shivering thresholds is known as the **thermoneutral zone**. It lies between ca.  $27^\circ\text{C}$  and  $32^\circ\text{C}$  in the nearly unclothed test subject. The only thermoregulatory measure necessary within this range is variation of blood flow to the skin. The narrow range of this zone shows the thermoregulatory importance of **behavior**. It involves choosing the appropriate clothing, seeking shade, heating or cooling our dwellings, etc. Behavioral adaptation is the chief factor in survival at extreme ambient temperatures ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).

The thermoneutral zone is subjectively perceived as the **comfort zone**. 95% of all subjects wearing normal office attire and performing normal office activities perceive an indoor climate with the following conditions to be comfortable: ambient and radiant (wall) temperature  $\approx 23^\circ\text{C}$ , wind velocity  $< 0.1$  m/s, and relative humidity  $\approx 50\%$ . A resting, unclothed subject feels comfortable at about  $28^\circ\text{C}$  and ca.  $31^\circ\text{C}$  to  $36^\circ\text{C}$  in water depending on the thickness of subcutaneous fat (heat isolator).

**Fever.** *Exogenous* (e.g., bacteria) and *endogenous pyrogens* (various interleukins and other cytokines from macrophages) can cause the set-point temperature to rise above normal. This is triggered by prostaglandin  $\text{PGE}_2$  in the hypothalamus. In the initial phase of fever, the core temperature (although at its normal level) is too low compared to the elevated set-point. This results in shivering to raise the core temperature. As the fever decreases, i.e. the set-point returns toward the normal temperature, the core temperature is now too warm compared to the normalized set-point, resulting in vasodilation and sweating to lower the core temperature again.



An **adequate diet** must meet the body's energy requirements and provide a minimum of carbohydrates, proteins (incl. all essential amino acids) and fats (incl. essential fatty acids). Minerals (incl. trace elements), vitamins, and sufficient quantities of water are also essential. To ensure a normal passage time, especially through the colon, the diet must also provide a sufficient amount of *roughage* (indigestible plant fibers—cellulose, lignin, etc.).

The **total energy expenditure (TEE)** or *total metabolic rate* consists of (1) the *basal metabolic rate (BMR)*, (2) the *activity energy costs*, and the (3) *diet-induced thermogenesis (DIT)*; → p. 230, 233 A). TEE equals BMR when measured (a) in the morning (b) 20 h after the last meal, (3) resting, reclining, (4) at normal body temp., and (5) at a comfortable ambient temp. (→ p. 226). The BMR varies according to sex, age, body size and weight. The BMR for a young adult is ca. 7300 kJ/day ( $\approx$  1740 kcal/day; see p. 380 for units) in men, and ca. 20% lower in women. During **physical activity**, TEE increases by the following factors: 1.2-fold for sitting quietly, 3.2-fold for normal walking, and 8-fold for forestry work. Top athletes can perform as much as 1600 W (=J/s) for two hours (e.g., in a marathon) but their daily TEE is much lower. TEE also increases at various degrees of **injury** (1.6-fold for sepsis, 2.1-fold for burns). 1°C of **fever** increases TEE 1.13-fold.

Protein, fats and carbohydrates are the three **basic energy substances** (→ B).

An adequate intake of **protein** is needed to maintain a proper *nitrogen balance*, i.e., balance of dietary intake and excretory output of nitrogen. The minimum requirement for protein is 0.5 g/kg BW per day (*functional minimum*). About half of dietary protein should be animal protein (meat, fish, milk and eggs) to ensure an adequate supply of *essential amino acids* such as histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, threonine, tryptophan and valine (children also require arginine). The content of essential amino acids in most vegetable proteins is only about 50% of animal protein.

**Carbohydrates** (starch, sugar, glycogen) and **fats** (animal and vegetable fats and oils) provide the largest portion of the energy requirement. They are basically interchangeable

sources of energy. The energy contribution of carbohydrates can fall to about 10% (normally 60%) before metabolic disturbances occur.

**Fat** is not essential provided the intake of *fat-soluble vitamins* (vitamins E, D, K and A) and *essential fatty acids* (linoleic acid) is sufficient. About 25–30% of dietary energy is supplied by fat (one-third of which is supplied as essential fatty acids; → A), although the proportion rises according to energy requirements (e.g., about 40% during heavy physical work).

Western diets contain generally too much energy (more fats than carbohydrates!) considering the generally low level of physical activity of the Western lifestyle. Alcohol also contains superfluous energy (ca. 30 kJ/g = 7.2 kcal/g). The excessive intake of dietary energy leads to weight gain and obesity (→ p. 232).

An adequate intake of **minerals** (inorganic compounds), especially calcium (800 mg/day; → p. 292ff.), iron (10–20 mg/day; → p. 90) and iodine (0.15 mg/day; → p. 288), is essential for proper body function. Many **trace elements** (As, F, Cu, Si, V, Sn, Ni, Se, Mn, Mo, Cr, Co) are also essential. The normal diet provides sufficient quantities of them, but excessive intake has toxic effects.

**Vitamins** (A, B<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>2</sub>, B<sub>6</sub>, B<sub>12</sub>, C, D<sub>2</sub>, D<sub>3</sub>, E, H (biotin), K<sub>1</sub>, K<sub>2</sub>, folic acid, niacinamide, pantothenic acid) are compounds that play a vital role in metabolism (usually function as coenzymes). However, the body cannot produce (or sufficient quantities of) them.

A deficiency of vitamins (hypovitaminosis) can lead to specific conditions such as night blindness (vit. A), scurvy (vit. C), rickets (vit. D = calciferol; → p. 294), anemia (vit. B<sub>12</sub> = cobalamin; folic acid; → p. 90), and coagulation disorders (vit. K; → p. 104). An excessive intake of certain vitamins like vitamin A and D, on the other hand, can be toxic (*hypervitaminosis*).



The chemical energy of foodstuffs is first converted into energy-rich substances such as **creatine phosphate** and **adenosine triphosphate (ATP)**. Energy, work and amount of heat are expressed in joules (J) or calories (cal) ( $\rightarrow$  p. 380). The energy produced by hydrolysis of ATP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 41) is then used to fuel muscle activity, to synthesize many substances, and to create concentration gradients (e.g.,  $\text{Na}^+$  or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  gradients;  $\rightarrow$  p. 26ff.). During all these energy conversion processes, part of the energy is always converted to *heat* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 38ff.).

In **oxidative (aerobic) metabolism** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 39 C), carbohydrates and fat combine with  $\text{O}_2$  to yield  $\text{CO}_2$ , water, high-energy compounds (ATP etc.) and heat. When a foodstuff is completely oxidized, its biologically useable energy content is therefore equivalent to its physical **caloric value (CV)**.

The **bomb calorimeter** ( $\rightarrow$  A), a device consisting of an insulated combustion chamber in a tank of water, is used to *measure the CV* of foodstuffs. A known quantity of a foodstuff is placed in the combustion chamber of the device and incinerated in pure  $\text{O}_2$ . The surrounding water heats up as it absorbs the heat of combustion. The degree of warming is equal to the caloric value of the foodstuff.

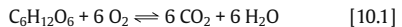
**Fats and carbohydrates** are completely oxidized to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in the body. Thus, their **physiological fuel value (PFV)** is identical to their CV. The mean PFV is 38.9 kJ/g (= 9.3 kcal/g) for fats and 17.2 kJ/g (= 4.1 kcal/g) for digestible carbohydrates ( $\rightarrow$  p. 229 A). In contrast, **proteins** are not completely broken down to  $\text{CO}_2$  and water in the human body but yield urea, which provides additional energy when it is oxidized in the bomb calorimeter. The CV of proteins (ca. 23 kJ/g) is therefore greater than their PFV, which is a mean of about 17.2 kJ/g or 4.1 kcal/g ( $\rightarrow$  p. 229 A).

At rest, most of the energy supplied by the diet is converted to **heat**, since hardly any external mechanical work is being performed. The heat produced is equivalent to the internal energy turnover (e.g., the work performed by the heart and respiratory muscles or expended for active transport or synthesis of substances).

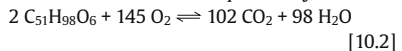
In **direct calorimetry** ( $\rightarrow$  B), the amount of heat produced is measured directly. The test subject, usually an experimental animal, is placed in a small chamber immersed in a known volume of ice. The amount of heat produced is equivalent to the amount of heat absorbed by the surrounding water or ice. This is respectively calculated as the rise in water temperature or the amount of ice that melts.

In **indirect calorimetry**, the amount of heat produced is determined indirectly by measuring the amount of  $\text{O}_2$  consumed ( $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 120). This method is used in humans. To determine the total metabolic rate (or TEE;  $\rightarrow$  p. 228) from  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ , the **caloric equivalent (CE)** of a foodstuff oxidized in the subject's metabolism during the measurement must be known. The CE is calculated from the PFV and the amount of  $\text{O}_2$  needed to oxidize the food. The PFV of *glucose* is 15.7 kJ/g and 6 mol of  $\text{O}_2$  ( $6 \times 22.4$  L) are required to oxidize 1 mol (= 180 g) of glucose ( $\rightarrow$  C). The oxidation of 180 g of glucose therefore generates 2827 kJ of heat and consumes 134.4 L of  $\text{O}_2$  resulting in a CE of 21 kJ/L. This value represents the CE for glucose under standard conditions ( $0^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  C). The mean CE of the basic nutrients at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  is 18.8 kJ/L  $\text{O}_2$  (carbohydrates), 17.6 kJ/L  $\text{O}_2$  (fats) and 16.8 kJ/L  $\text{O}_2$  (proteins).

The oxidized nutrients must be known in order to calculate the metabolic rate from the CE. The **respiratory quotient (RQ)** is a rough measure of the nutrients oxidized.  $\text{RQ} = \dot{V}_{\text{CO}_2} / \dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120). For pure carbohydrates oxidized,  $\text{RQ} = 1.0$ . This can be illustrated for *glucose* as follows:

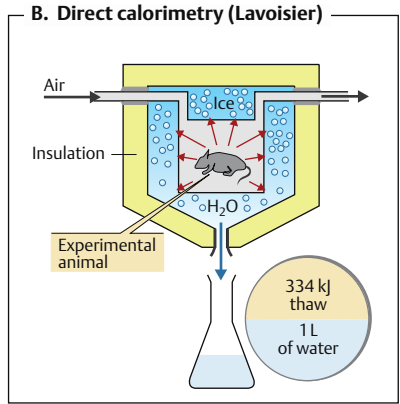
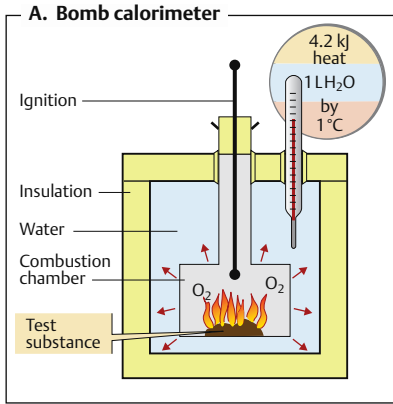


The oxidation of the fat *tripalmitin* yields:



The RQ of tripalmitin is therefore  $102/145 = 0.7$ . Since the protein fraction of the diet stays relatively constant, each RQ between 1 and 0.7 can be assigned a CE ( $\rightarrow$  D). Using the known CE, the TEE can be calculated as  $\text{CE} \cdot \dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ .

Food increases the TEE (**diet-induced thermogenesis, DIT**) because energy must be consumed to absorb and store the nutrients. The DIT of protein is higher than that of other substances, e.g., glucose.



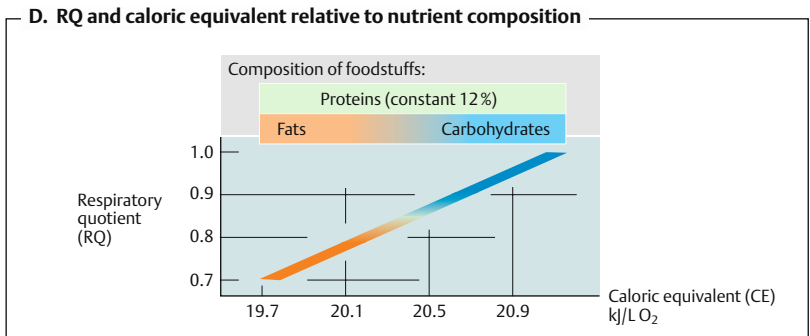
**C. Oxidation of glucose: fuel value, CE and RQ**

Chemical reaction: C6H12O6 + 6O2 -> 6CO2 + 6H2O + 2827 kJ

Labels: Glucose (1 mol = 180g),  $O_2$  (6 mol = 134.4l), Energy, Decomposition (combustion),  $CO_2$  (6 mol), Water of oxidation (6 mol), Energie (2827 kJ).

Calculations:

- Fuel value:  $\frac{2827}{180} = 15.7 \text{ kJ/g}$
- Caloric equivalent (CE):  $\frac{2827}{134.4} = 21 \text{ kJ/L } O_2$
- Respiratory quotient (RQ) for glucose:  $\frac{6}{6} = 1.0$



**Fat depots** are by far the body's largest **energy reserve**. Accurate long-term homeostasis of energy absorption and consumption is necessary to keep the size of the fat depots constant, i.e., to maintain *lipostasis*. Since a person's body weight (BW) mainly varies with the weight of the fat depots, it is obvious that energy homeostasis is synonymous with the **regulation of body weight** ( $\rightarrow$  A).

The **body mass index (BMI)** is commonly used to determine whether an individual is underweight, overweight or in the normal weight range. BMI is calculated from body weight (kg) and height (m) as follows:

$$\text{BMI} = \text{bodyweight [kg]} / (\text{height [m]})^2 \quad [10.3]$$

The normal BMI range is 19–24 in women and 20–25 in men. The “normal” BMI range is defined as the values at which the mean life expectancy is highest. An abnormally high body mass index (BMI > 24 or 25 = overweight; BMI > 30 = obesity) reduces the life expectancy since this is often associated with diabetes mellitus (type II), hypertension and cardiac disease.

The hypothalamus with its arcuate nucleus and its subordinated centers for “satiety” (paraventricular nucleus) and “hunger” (lateral hypothalamus) is the regulatory center ( $\rightarrow$  p. 4) for body weight ( $\rightarrow$  B). **Leptin**, a 16-kDa proteohormone produced by fat cells, communicates *afferent messages* concerning the size of fat depots to the hypothalamus. The plasma leptin concentration rises as fat cell mass increases. The availability of glucose is communicated to the hypothalamus via the concentration of insulin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 284).

*Efferent commands* from the hypothalamus cause (a) reduced nutrient absorption and increased energy consumption when plasma leptin are high (“fat reserve high!”), and (b) the reverse when plasma leptin levels are low (“fat reserve low!”) ( $\rightarrow$  B, bottom).

**Effects of Leptin.** Leptin binds with *type b leptin receptors* (LRb = **Ob-Rb**) of the hypothalamus (mainly in the arcuate nucleus, but also the paraventricular nucleus and other locations) which leads to weight loss.

The effects of leptin are chiefly mediated by two neurotransmitters located in the hypothalamus:  $\alpha$ -MSH and NPY ( $\rightarrow$  B).

Leptin stimulates the release of CART (cocaine- and amphetamine-regulated transcript,

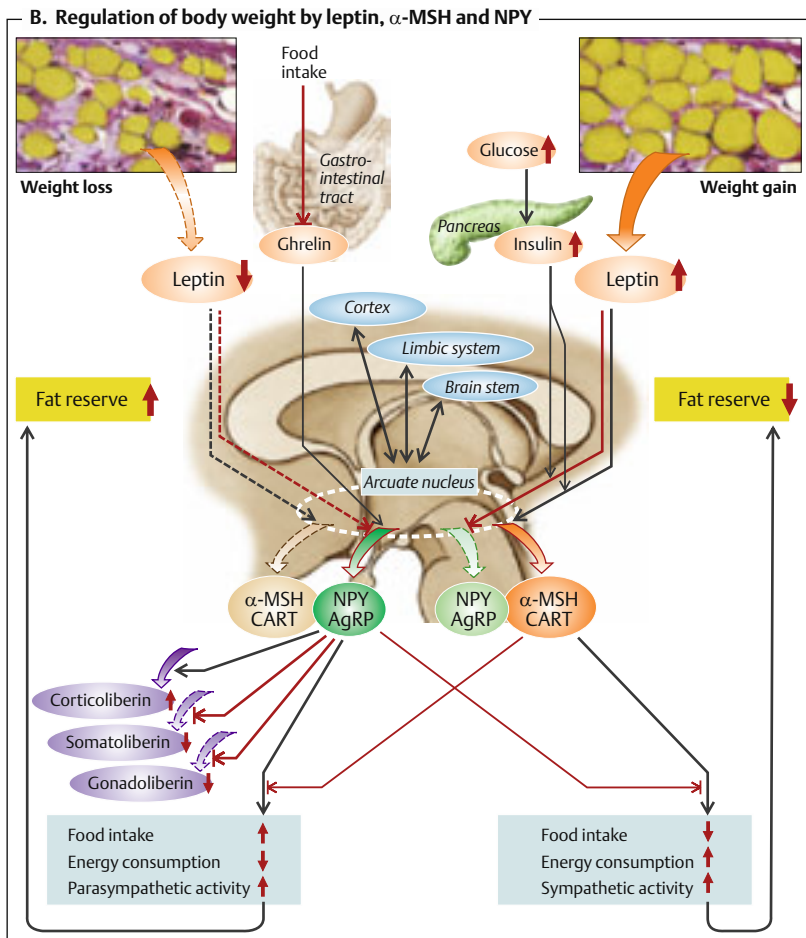
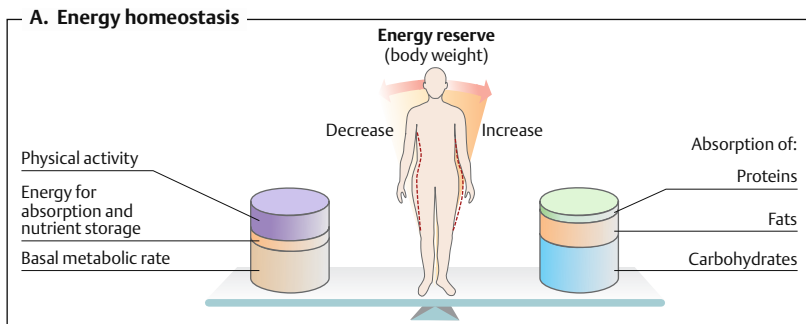
see below) as well as  $\alpha$ -MSH ( $\alpha$ -melanocyte-stimulating hormone), one of the melanocortins (MC) synthesized from POMC ( $\rightarrow$  p. 282).  $\alpha$ -MSH, via MC4 receptors in various areas of the hypothalamus and the dorsal nucleus of the vagus nerve, inhibits the absorption of nutrients and increases sympathetic nervous activity and energy consumption.

An involuntary increase in ordinary skeletal muscle activity and tone appears to contribute to the latter. In addition, there are **uncoupling proteins** (type UCP2 and UCP3) in skeletal muscle and white fat that make the membranes of the mitochondria more permeable to  $H^+$ , thereby uncoupling the respiratory chain ( $\rightarrow$  p. 39 C). As a result, chemical energy is converted into more heat and less ATP. The action of these UCPs, the expression of which is directly or indirectly stimulated by  $\alpha$ -MSH, is therefore similar to that of thermogenin (UCP1;  $\rightarrow$  p. 224).

◆ **NPY.** Leptin and  $\alpha$ -MSH (via MC3-R), as well as insulin, inhibits the release of NPY (neuropeptide Y) in the arcuate nucleus, a neuropeptide that stimulates hunger and appetite via a series of neurons, increases the parasympathetic activity and reduces energy consumption.

Besides the long-term regulation of fat deposits, there are other neurotransmitters and neuropeptides whose release is linked to leptin, some of which are released in the gastrointestinal tract. Some like ghrelin, *orexin A/B* and *norepinephrine* ( $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors) are **orexigenic**, i.e. they stimulate the appetite, while others like CCK, CRH, CART, insulin, and serotonin are **anorexigenic**. Peptides like PYY, CCK, GLP-1 (glucagon-like peptide amides), somatostatin, glucagon, and GRP (gastrin-releasing peptide) signal *satiety*, i.e., that one has had enough to eat. Together with stretch receptors of the stomach wall, these **satiety peptides** help to limit the amount of food consumed with each meal.

Since **NPY** increases the secretion of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (**GnRH**), extreme weight loss results in amenorrhea ( $\rightarrow$  B). Certain genetic defects which affect leptin production, LRb or, most commonly, MC4-R, result in **obesity** early in childhood. The body weight can exceed 100 kg by age ten. Leptin deficiency is treated with recombinant leptin. In *Prader-Willi syndrome* the obesity is a consequence of elevated ghrelin production in the gastrointestinal tract.



Food covering the body's energy and nutrient requirements ( $\rightarrow$  p. 230ff.) must be swallowed, processed and broken down (**digestion**) before it can be **absorbed** from the intestines. The three-layered GI **musculature** ensures that the GI contents are properly mixed and transported. The **passage time** through the different GI segments varies and is largely dependent on the composition of the food (see **A** for mean passage times).

Solid food is chewed and mixed with **saliva**, which lubricates it and contains immunocompetent substances (see below) and enzymes. The **esophagus** rapidly transports the food bolus to the stomach. The lower esophageal sphincter opens only briefly to allow the food to pass. The **proximal stomach** mainly serves as a food reservoir. Its tone determines the rate at which food passes to the **distal stomach**, where it is further processed (chyme formation) and its proteins are partly broken down. The distal stomach (including the pylorus) is also responsible for portioning chyme delivery to the small intestine. The stomach also secretes **intrinsic factor** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 90).

In the **small intestine**, enzymes from the **pancreas** and small intestinal mucosa break down the nutrients into absorbable components.  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in pancreatic juices neutralizes the acidic chyme. Bile salts in **bile** are essential for fat digestion. The products of digestion (monosaccharides, amino acids, dipeptides, monoacylglycerols and free fatty acids) as well as water and vitamins are absorbed in the small intestine.

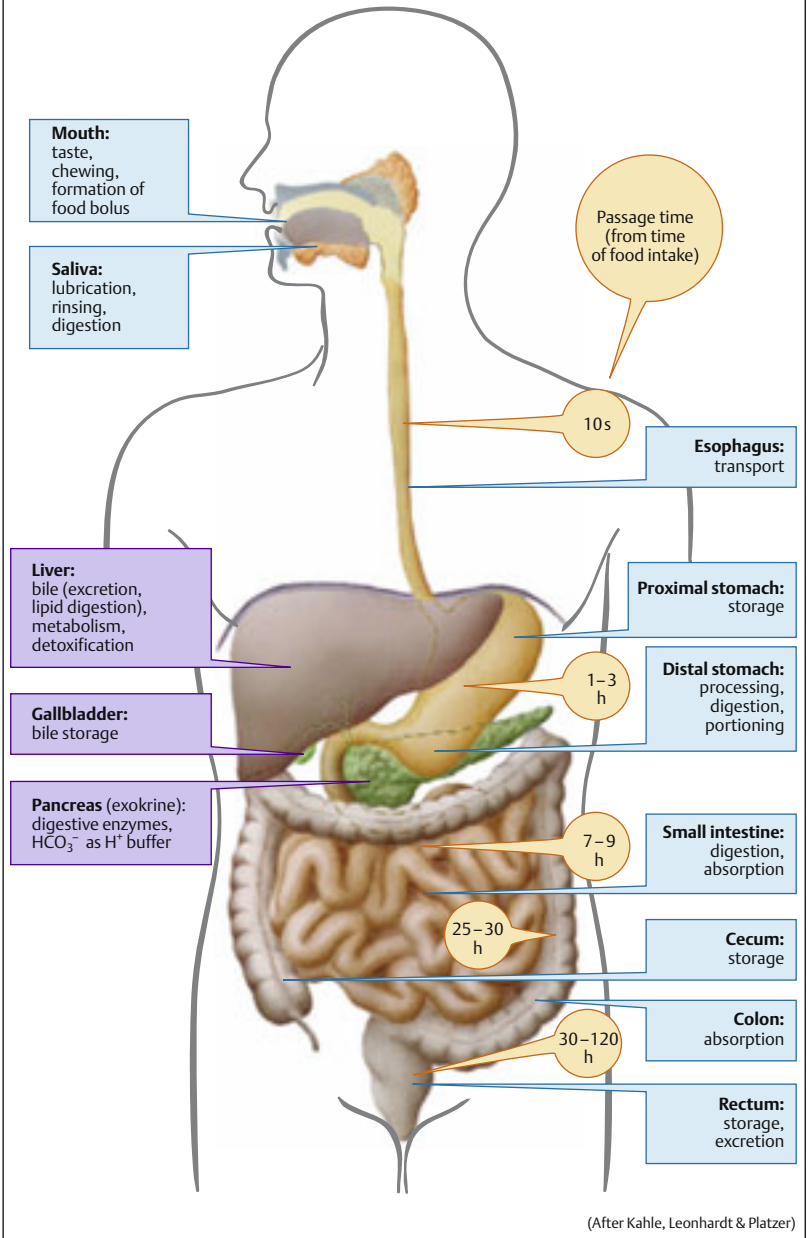
**Waste products** (e.g. bilirubin) to be excreted reach the feces via bile secreted by the **liver**. The liver has various other metabolic functions. It serves, for example, as an obligatory relay station for metabolism and distribution of substances absorbed from the intestine (via the portal vein, see below), synthesizes plasma proteins (incl. albumin, globulins, clotting factors, apolipoproteins etc.) and detoxifies foreign substances (**biotransformation**) and metabolic products (e.g., ammonia) before they are excreted.

The **large intestine** is the last stop for water and ion absorption. It is colonized by **bacteria** and contains storage areas for feces (**cecum**, **rectum**).

**Immune defense.** The large internal surface area of the GI tract (roughly  $100 \text{ m}^2$ ) requires a very effective immune defense system. Saliva contains **mucins**, **immunoglobulin A (IgA)** and **lysozyme** that prevent the penetration of pathogens. **Gastric juice** has a bactericidal effect. **Peyer's patches** supply the GI tract with immunocompetent lymph tissue. **M cells** (special membranous cells) in the mucosal epithelium allow antigens to enter Peyer's patches. Together with **macrophages**, the Peyer's patches can elicit immune responses by secreting **IgA** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 98). IgA is transported to the intestinal lumen by transcytosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 30). In the epithelium, IgA binds to a secretory component, thereby protecting it from digestive enzymes. Mucosal epithelium also contains **intraepithelial lymphocytes (IEL)** that function like T killer cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 98). Transmitter substances permit reciprocal communication between IEL and neighboring enterocytes. Macrophages of the hepatic sinusoids (**Kupfer's cells**) are additional bastions of immune defense. The physiological colonies of **intestinal flora** in the large intestine prevent the spread of pathogens. IgA from breast milk protects the GI mucosa of neonates.

**Blood flow** to the stomach, gut, liver, pancreas and spleen (roughly 30% of cardiac output) is supplied by the three main branches of the abdominal aorta. The intestinal circulation is regulated by local reflexes, the autonomic nervous system, and hormones. Moreover, it is **autoregulatory**, i.e., largely independent of systemic blood pressure fluctuations. Blood flow to the intestines rises sharply after meals (acetylcholine, vasoactive intestinal peptide VIP, etc. function as vasodilatory transmitters) and falls during physical activity (transmitters: norepinephrine, etc.). The venous blood carries substances absorbed from the intestinal tract and enters the liver via the **portal vein**. Some components of absorbed fat are absorbed by the **intestinal lymph**, which transports them to the greater circulation while bypassing the liver.

A. Function of gastrointestinal organs



Endocrine and paracrine hormones and neurotransmitters control GI *motility, secretion, perfusion and growth*. Reflexes proceed within the mesenteric and submucosal plexus (*enteric nervous system, ENS*), and external innervation modulates ENS activity.

**Local reflexes** are triggered by stretch sensors in the walls of the esophagus, stomach and gut or by chemosensors in the mucosal epithelium and trigger the contraction or relaxation of neighboring smooth muscle fibers. *Peristaltic reflexes* extend further towards the oral (ca. 2 mm) and anal regions (20–30 mm). They are mediated in part by interneurons and help to propel the contents of the lumen through the GI tract (*peristalsis*).

**External innervation** of the GI tract (cf. p. 78ff.) comes from the *parasympathetic nervous system* (from lower esophagus to ascending colon) and *sympathetic nervous system*. Innervation is also provided by *visceral afferent fibers* (in sympathetic or parasympathetic nerves) through which the afferent impulses for *supraregional reflexes* flow.

ENS function is largely independent of external innervation, but **external innervation** has some advantages (a) rapid transfer of signals between relatively distant parts of the GI tract via the abdominal ganglia (short visceral afferents) or CNS (long visceral afferents); (b) GI tract function can be ranked subordinate to overall body function (c) GI tract activity can be processed by the brain so the body can become aware of them (e.g., stomach ache).

**Neurotransmitters.** *Norepinephrine (NE)* is released by the adrenergic postganglionic neurons, and *acetylcholine (ACh)* is released by pre- and postganglionic (enteric) fibers (→ p. 78ff.). *VIP* (vasoactive intestinal peptide) mediates the relaxation of circular and vascular muscles of the GI tract. **Met- and leu-enkephalin** intensify contraction of the pyloric, ileocecal and lower esophageal sphincters by binding to opioid receptors. **GRP** (gastrin-releasing peptide) mediates the release of gastrin. **CGRP** (calcitonin gene-related peptide) stimulates the release of somatostatin (**SIH**).

All **endocrine hormones** effective in the GI tract are *peptides* produced in endocrine cells of the mucosa. (a) *Gastrin* and *cholecystokinin (CCK)* and (b) *secretin* and **GIP** are structurally

similar; so are glucagon (→ p. 284ff.) and **VIP**. High concentrations of hormones from the same family therefore have very similar effects.

**Gastrin** occurs in short (G17 with 17 amino acids, AA) and long forms (G34 with 34 AA). G17 comprises 90% of all antral gastrin. Gastrin is secreted in the antrum and duodenum. Its release (→ **A1**) via *gastrin-releasing peptide (GRP)* is subject to neuronal control; gastrin is also released in response to stomach wall stretching and protein fragments in the stomach. Its secretion is inhibited when the pH of the gastric/duodenal lumen falls below 3.5 (→ **A1**). The main effects of gastrin are acid secretion and gastric mucosal growth (→ **A2**).

**Cholecystokinin, CCK** (33 AA) is produced throughout small intestinal mucosa. Long-chain fatty acids, AA and oligopeptides in the lumen stimulate the release of CCK (→ **A1**). It causes the gallbladder to contract and inhibits emptying of the stomach. In the pancreas, it stimulates growth, production of enzymes and secretion of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (via secretin, see below) (→ **A2**).

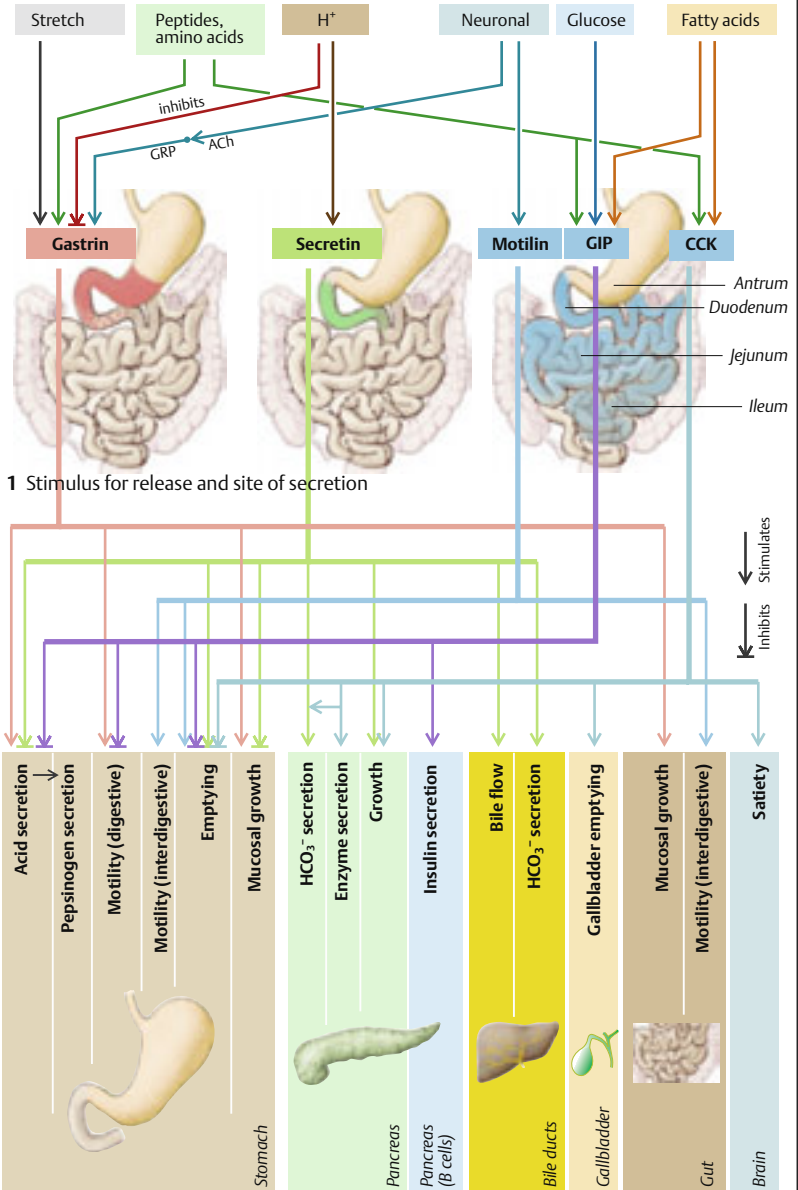
**Secretin** (27 AA) is mainly produced in the duodenum. Its release is stimulated by acidic chyme (→ **A1**). Secretin inhibits acid secretion and gastric mucosal growth and stimulates  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secretion (potentiated by CCK), pancreatic growth and hepatic bile flow (→ **A2**).

**GIP** (glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide, 42 AA; formerly called gastric inhibitory polypeptide = enterogastrone) is produced in the duodenum and jejunum and released via protein, fat and carbohydrate fragments (e.g., glucose) (→ **A1**). GIP inhibits acid secretion (→ **A2**) and stimulates insulin release (this is why oral glucose releases more insulin than intravenous glucose).

**Motilin** (22 AA) is released by neurons in the small intestine and regulates interdigestive motility (→ **A1, 2**).

**Paracrine transmitters.** Histamine, somatostatin and prostaglandin are the main paracrine transmitters in the GI tract.

**A. Gastrointestinal hormones**



2 Main effects of gastrointestinal hormones

(Partly after L.R. Johnson)

The **functions** of saliva are reflected by its **constituents**. *Mucins* serve to lubricate the food, making it easier to swallow, and to keep the mouth moist to facilitate masticatory and speech-related movement. Saliva *dissolves* compounds in food, which is a prerequisite for taste buds stimulation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 344) and for dental and oral hygiene. Saliva has a *low NaCl* concentration and is *hypotonic*, making it suitable for rinsing of the taste receptors (NaCl) while eating. Infants need saliva to seal the lips when suckling. Saliva also contains  $\alpha$ -amylase, which starts the digestion of starches in the mouth, while *immunoglobulin A* and *lysozyme* are part of the immune defense system ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.). The high  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentration in saliva results in a pH of around 7, which is optimal for  $\alpha$ -amylase-catalyzed digestion. Swallowed saliva is also important for buffering the acidic gastric juices refluxed into the esophagus ( $\rightarrow$  p. 240). The secretion of profuse amounts of saliva before vomiting also prevents gastric acid from damaging the enamel on the teeth. Saliva secretion is very dependent on the body water content. A low content results in decreased saliva secretion—the mouth and throat become dry, thereby evoking the sensation of *thirst*. This is an important mechanism for maintaining the fluid balance ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 170 and 186).

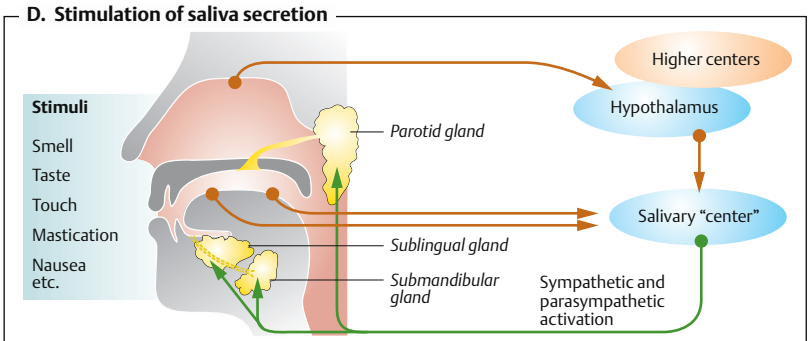
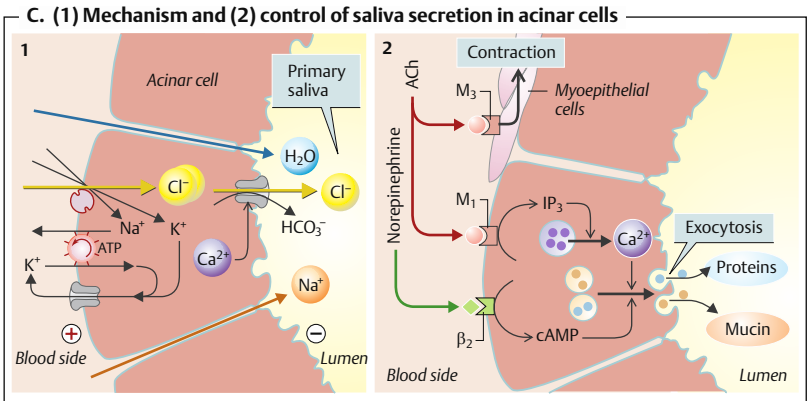
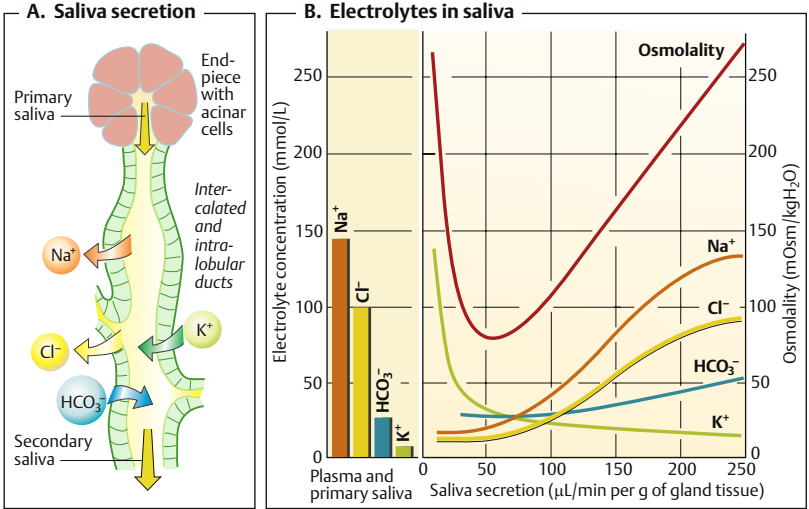
**Secretion rate.** The rate of saliva secretion varies from 0.1 to 4 mL/min (10–250  $\mu\text{L}/\text{min}$  per gram gland tissue), depending on the degree of stimulation ( $\rightarrow$  B). This adds up to about 0.5 to 1.5 L per day. At 0.5 mL/min, 95% of this rate is secreted by the *parotid gland* (serous saliva) and *submandibular gland* (mucin-rich saliva). The rest comes from the sublingual glands and glands in the buccal mucosa.

**Saliva secretion** occurs in *two steps*: The *acini (end pieces)* produce **primary saliva** ( $\rightarrow$  A, C) which has an electrolyte composition similar to that of plasma ( $\rightarrow$  B). Primary saliva secretion in the acinar cells is the result of *transcellular  $\text{Cl}^-$  transport*:  $\text{Cl}^-$  is actively taken up into the cells (secondary active transport) from the blood by means of a  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ - $2\text{Cl}^-$  cotransport carrier and is released into the lumen (as with  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ) via anion channels, resulting in a lumen-negative transepithelial potential (LNTP) that drives  $\text{Na}^+$  paracellularly

into the lumen. Water also follows passively (osmotic effect). Primary saliva is modified in **excretory ducts**, yielding **secondary saliva**. As the saliva passes through the excretory ducts,  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  are reabsorbed and  $\text{K}^+$  and (carbonic anhydrase-dependent)  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is secreted into the lumen. The saliva becomes *hypotonic* (far below 100 mOsm/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  B) because  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  reabsorption is greater than  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secretion and the ducts are relatively impermeable to water ( $\rightarrow$  B). If the secretion rate rises to values much higher than 100  $\mu\text{L}/(\text{min} \cdot \text{g})$ , these processes lag behind and the composition of secondary saliva becomes similar to that of primary saliva ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**Salivant stimuli.** *Reflex stimulation* of saliva secretion occurs in the larger salivary glands ( $\rightarrow$  D). Salivant stimuli include the smell and taste of food, tactile stimulation of the buccal mucosa, mastication and nausea. *Conditioned reflexes* also play a role. For instance, the routine clattering of dishes when preparing a meal can later elicit a salivant response. Sleep and dehydration inhibit saliva secretion. Saliva secretion is stimulated via the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems ( $\rightarrow$  C2):  
 ◆ **Norepinephrine** triggers the secretion of highly viscous saliva with a high concentration of mucin via  $\beta_2$  adrenoreceptors and cAMP. *VIP* also increases the cAMP concentration of acinar cells.

◆ **Acetylcholine**: (a) With the aid of  $M_1$  cholinceptors and  $\text{IP}_3$  ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 82 and 276), acetylcholine mediates an increase in the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration of acinar cells. This, in turn, increases the conductivity of luminal anion channels, resulting in the production of watery saliva and increased exocytosis of salivary enzymes. (b) With the aid of  $M_3$  cholinergic receptors, ACh mediates the contraction of *myoepithelial cells* around the acini, leading to emptying of the acini. (c) ACh enhances the production of kallikreins, which cleave *bradykinin* from plasma kininogen. Bradykinin and *VIP* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236) dilate the vessels of the salivary glands. This is necessary because maximum saliva secretion far exceeds resting blood flow.



The upper third of the esophageal wall consists of striated muscle, the rest contains smooth muscle. During the process of swallowing, or deglutition, the tongue pushes a bolus of food into the throat ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The nasopharynx is reflexively blocked, ( $\rightarrow$  A2), respiration is inhibited, the vocal chords close and the epiglottis seals off the trachea ( $\rightarrow$  A3) while the *upper esophageal sphincter* opens ( $\rightarrow$  A4). A peristaltic wave forces the bolus into the stomach ( $\rightarrow$  A5, B1, 2). If the bolus gets stuck, stretching of the affected area triggers a *secondary peristaltic wave*.

The **lower esophageal sphincter** opens at the start of deglutition due to a *vagovagal reflex* (*receptive relaxation*) mediated by VIP- and NO-releasing neurons ( $\rightarrow$  B3). Otherwise, the lower sphincter remains closed to prevent the reflux of aggressive gastric juices containing pepsin and HCl.

**Esophageal motility** is usually checked by measuring pressure in the lumen, e.g., during a peristaltic wave ( $\rightarrow$  B1–2). The resting pressure within the lower sphincter is normally 20–25 mmHg. During receptive relaxation, esophageal pressure drops to match the low pressure in the proximal stomach ( $\rightarrow$  B3), indicating opening of the sphincter.

In *achalasia*, receptive relaxation fails to occur and food collects in the esophagus.

**Pressure** in the lower esophageal sphincter is *decreased* by VIP, CCK, NO, GIP, secretin and progesterone ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236) and *increased* by acetylcholine, gastrin and motilin. Increased abdominal pressure (external pressure) also increases sphincter pressure because part of the lower esophageal sphincter is located in the abdominal cavity.

**Gastroesophageal reflux.** The sporadic reflux of gastric juices into the esophagus occurs fairly often. Reflux can occur while swallowing (lower esophageal sphincter opens for a couple of seconds), due to unanticipated pressure on a full stomach or to *transient opening of the sphincter* (lasts up to 30 seconds and is part of the *eructation reflex*). Gastric reflux greatly reduces the pH in the distal esophagus.

**Protective mechanisms** to prevent damage to the esophageal mucosa after gastroesophageal reflux include 1. **Volume clearance**, i.e., the rapid return of refluxed fluid to the stomach via the esophageal peristaltic reflex. A refluxed volume of 15 mL, for example, remains in the esophagus for only 5 to 10 s (only a small

amount remains). 2. **pH clearance.** The pH of the residual gastric juice left after volume clearance is still low, but is gradually increased during each act of swallowing. In other words, the saliva that is swallowed buffers the residual gastric juice.

## Vomiting

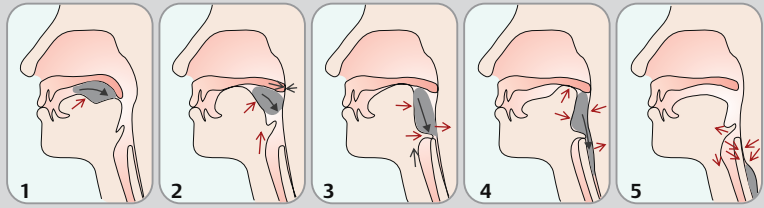
Vomiting mainly serves as a *protective reflex* but is also an important clinical symptom of conditions such as intracranial bleeding and tumors. The act of vomiting is heralded by **nausea**, increased salivation and retching ( $\rightarrow$  C). The **vomiting center** is located in the medulla oblongata within the reticular formation. It is mainly controlled by chemosensors of the *area postrema*, which is located on the floor of the fourth ventricle; this is called the *chemosensory trigger zone* (CTZ). The blood-brain barrier is less tight in the area postrema.

The **CTZ is activated** by nicotine, other toxins, and dopamine agonists like apomorphine (used as an emetic). Cells of the CTZ have receptors for neurotransmitters responsible for their neuronal control. The vomiting center can also be activated independent of the CTZ, for example, due to abnormal stimulation of the organ of balance (*kinesia, motion sickness*), overextension of the stomach or intestines, delayed gastric emptying and inflammation of the abdominal organs. Nausea and vomiting often occur during the first trimester of pregnancy (*morning sickness*) and can exacerbate to *hyperemesis gravidarum* leading to vomiting-related disorders (see below).

During the **act of vomiting**, the diaphragm remains in the inspiratory position and the abdominal muscles quickly contract exerting a high pressure on the stomach. Simultaneous contraction of the duodenum blocks the way to the gut; the lower esophageal sphincter then relaxes, resulting in ejection of the stomach contents via the esophagus.

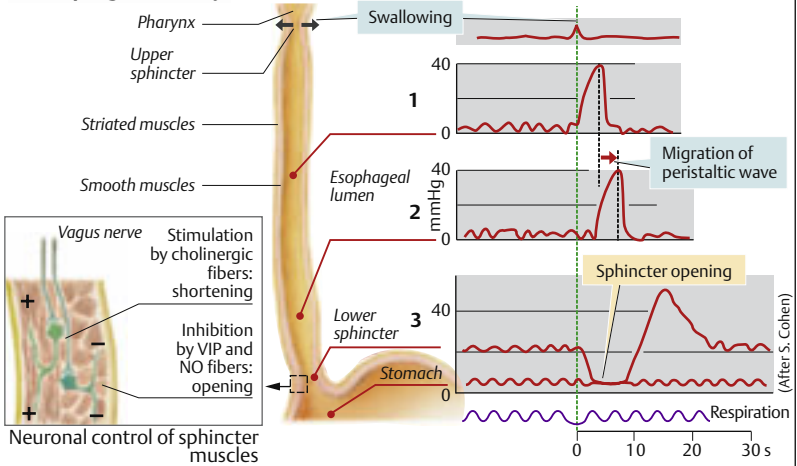
The sequelae of **chronic vomiting** are attributable to reduced food intake (*malnutrition*) and the related loss of gastric juices, swallowed saliva, fluids and intestinal secretions. In addition to *hypovolemia*, non-respiratory *alkalosis* due to the loss of gastric acid (10–100 mmol H<sup>+</sup>/L gastric juice) also develops. This is accompanied by *hypokalemia* due to the loss of K<sup>+</sup> in the vomitus (nutrients, saliva, gastric juices) and urine (hypovolemia-related *hyperaldosteronism*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 182 ff.).

**A. Deglutition**



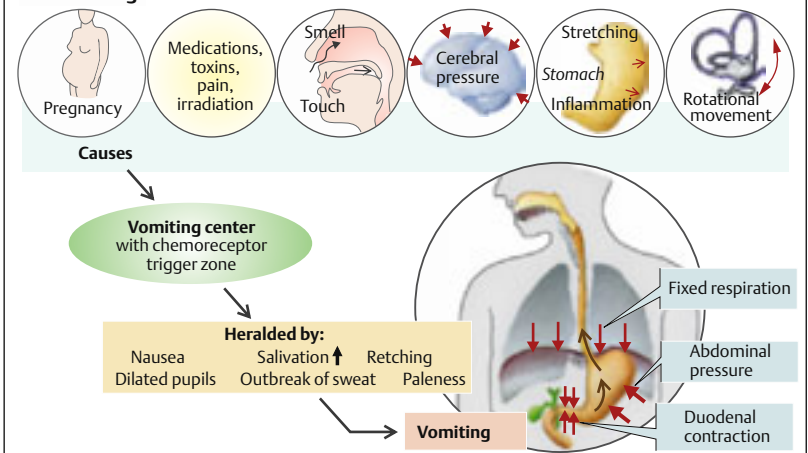
(After Rushmer & Hendron)

**B. Esophageal motility**



(After S. Cohen)

**C. Vomiting**



**Structure.** The *cardia* connects the esophagus to the upper stomach (*fundus*), which merges with the body (*corpus*) followed by the *antrum* of the stomach. The lower outlet of the stomach (*pylorus*) merges with the duodenum (→ **A**). Stomach **size** is dependent on the degree of gastric filling, but this distension is mainly limited to the proximal stomach (→ **A, B**). The stomach **wall** has an outer layer of longitudinal muscle fibers (only at curvatures; regulates stomach length), a layer of powerful circular muscle fibers, and an inner layer of oblique muscle fibers. The mucosa of the **tubular glands** of the fundus and corpus contain *chief cells* (**CC**) and *parietal cells* (**PC**) (→ **A**) that produce the constituents of gastric juice (→ p. 244). The gastric mucosa also contains *endocrine cells* (that produce gastrin in the antrum, etc.) and *mucous neck cells* (**MNC**).

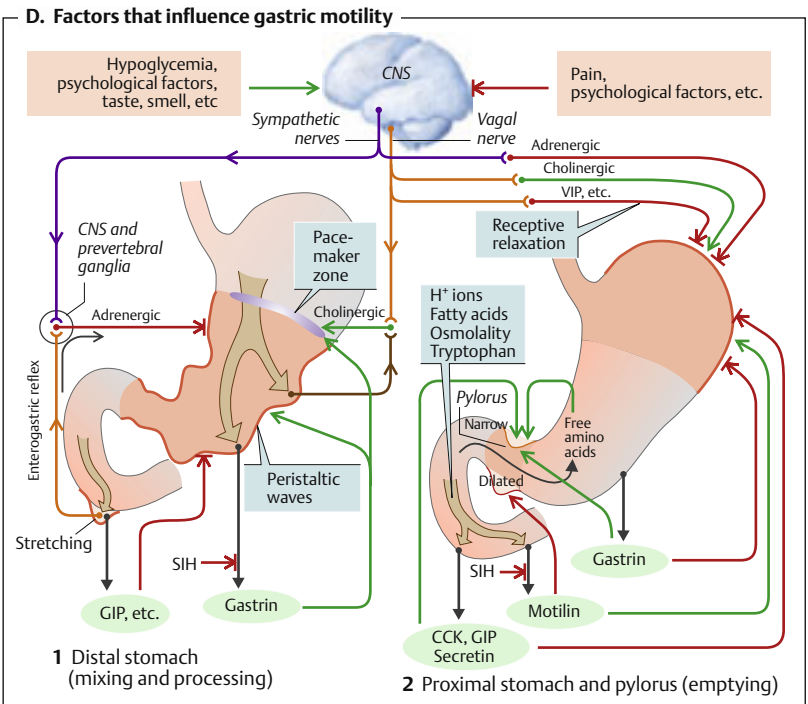
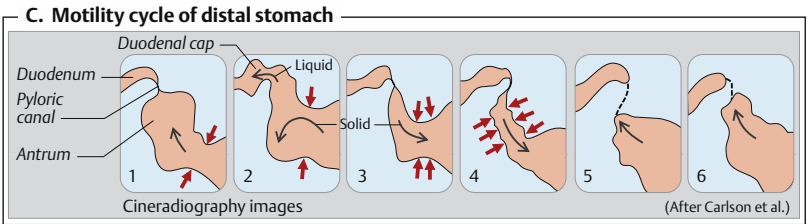
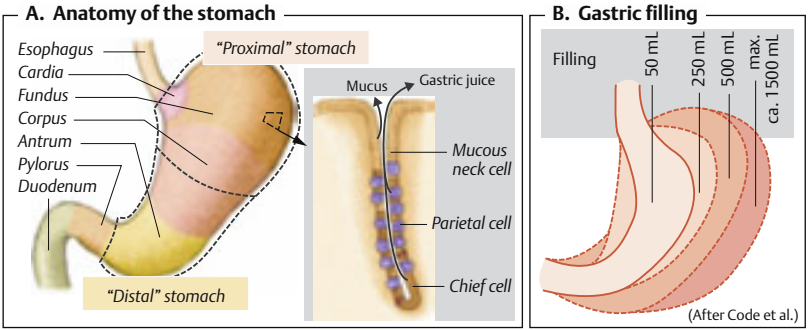
**Functional anatomy.** The stomach can be divided into a proximal and a distal segment (→ **A**). A vagovagal reflex triggered by swallowing a bolus of food causes the lower esophageal sphincter to open (→ p.240) and the **proximal stomach** to dilate for a short period (*receptive relaxation*). This continues when the food has entered the stomach (*vagovagal accommodation reflex*). As a result, the internal pressure hardly rises in spite of the increased filling. Tonic contraction of the proximal stomach, which mainly serves as a *reservoir*, slowly propel the gastric contents to the **distal stomach**. Near its upper border (middle third of the corpus) is a *pacemaker zone* (see below) from which peristaltic waves of contraction arise due mainly to local stimulation of the stomach wall (in response to reflex stimulation and gastrin; → **D1**). The peristaltic waves are strongest in the antrum and spread to the pylorus. The chyme is thereby driven towards the pylorus (→ **C5, 6, 1**), then compressed (→ **C2, 3**) and propelled back again after the pylorus closes (→ **C3, 4**). Thereby, the food is *processed*, i.e., *ground*, mixed with gastric juices and digested, and fat is *emulsified*.

The distal stomach contains **pacemaker cells** (*interstitial Cajal cells*), the membrane potential of which oscillates roughly every 20 s, producing characteristic *slow waves* (→ p. 246). The velocity (0.5–4 cm/s) and amplitude (0.5–4 mV) of the waves increases as they spread to the pylorus. Whether and how often contraction follows such an excitatory wave depends on the sum of all neuronal and hormonal influences. Gastrin increases the re-

sponse frequency and the pacemaker rate. Other hormones like GIP inhibit this motility directly, whereas somatostatin (SIH) does so indirectly by inhibiting the release of GRP (→ **D1** and p.236).

**Gastric emptying.** Solid food remains in the stomach until it has been broken down into small particles (diameter of < 1 mm) and suspended in chyme. The chyme then passes to the duodenum. The time required for 50% of the ingested volume to leave the stomach varies, e.g., 10–20 min for water and 1–4 hours for solids (carbohydrates < proteins < fats). Emptying is mainly dependent on the *tone of the proximal stomach* and *pylorus*. *Motilin stimulates* emptying of the stomach (tone of proximal stomach rises, pylorus dilates), whereas decreases in the pH or osmolality of chyme or increases in the amount of long-chain free fatty acids or (aromatic) amino acids *inhibit* gastric emptying. Chemosensitive enterocytes and brush cells of the small intestinal mucosa, enterogastric reflexes and certain hormones (CCK, GIP, secretin and gastrin; → p. 236) mediate these regulatory activities (→ **D2**). The **pylorus** is usually slightly open during the process (free flow of “finished” chyme). It contracts only 1) at the end of “antral systole” (see above) in order to retain solid food and 2) when the duodenum contracts in order to prevent the reflux of harmful bile salts. If such reflex does occur, refluxed free amino acids not normally present in the stomach elicit reflex closure of the pylorus (→ **D2**).

**Indigestible substances** (bone, fiber, foreign bodies) do not leave the stomach during the digestive phase. Special contraction waves called *migrating motor complexes* (**MMC**) pass through the stomach and small intestine roughly every 1.5 hours during the ensuing **interdigestive phase**, as determined by an intrinsic “biological clock.” These peristaltic waves transport indigestible substances from the stomach and bacteria from the small intestine to the large intestine. This “clearing phase” is controlled by *motilin*.



The *tubular glands* of the gastric fundus and corpus secrete 3–4 L of gastric juice each day. *Pepsinogens* and *lipases* are released by chief cells and *HCl* and *intrinsic factor* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 262) by parietal cells. *Mucins* and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  are released by mucous neck cells and other mucous cells on the surface of the gastric mucosa.

**Pepsins** function as endopeptidases in protein digestion. They are split from pepsinogens exocytosed from chief cells in the glandular and gastric lumen at a pH of  $< 6$ . Acetylcholine (ACh), released locally in response to  $\text{H}^+$  (and thus indirectly also to gastrin) is the chief activator of this reaction.

**Gastric acid.** The pH of the gastric juice drops to ca. 0.8 during peak HCl secretion. Swallowed food buffers it to a pH of 1.8–4, which is optimal for most pepsins and gastric lipases. The low pH contributes to the *denaturation* of dietary proteins and has a *bactericidal effect*.

**HCl secretion** ( $\rightarrow$  A). The  $\text{H}^+ - \text{K}^+ - \text{ATPase}$  in the luminal membrane of parietal cells drives  $\text{H}^+$  ions into the glandular lumen in exchange for  $\text{K}^+$  (primary active transport,  $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 26), thereby raising the  $\text{H}^+$  conc. in the lumen by a factor of ca.  $10^7$ .  $\text{K}^+$  taken up in the process circulates back to the lumen via *luminal  $\text{K}^+$  channels*. For every  $\text{H}^+$  ion secreted, one  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  ion leaves the blood side of the cell and is exchanged for a  $\text{Cl}^-$  ion via an *anion antiporter* ( $\rightarrow$  A2). (The  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  ions are obtained from  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{OH}^-$ , a reaction catalyzed by carbonic anhydrase, CA). This results in the intracellular accumulation of  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions, which diffuse out of the cell to the lumen via  *$\text{Cl}^-$  channels* ( $\rightarrow$  A3). Thus, one  $\text{Cl}^-$  ion reaches the lumen for each  $\text{H}^+$  ion secreted.

The **activation of parietal cells** (see below) leads to the opening of *canaliculi*, which extend deep into the cell from the lumen of the gland ( $\rightarrow$  B). The canaliculi are equipped with a brush border that greatly increases the luminal surface area which is densely packed with membrane-bound  $\text{H}^+ - \text{K}^+ - \text{ATPase}$  molecules. This permits to increase the secretion of  $\text{H}^+$  ions from 2 mmol/hour at rest to over 20 mmol/hour during digestion.

**Gastric acid secretion** is stimulated in phases by neural, local gastric and intestinal factors ( $\rightarrow$  B). Food intake leads to reflex secre-

tion of gastric juices, but deficient levels of glucose in the brain can also trigger the reflex. The optic, gustatory and olfactory nerves are the afferents for this partly *conditioned reflex* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 238), and efferent impulses flow via the *vagus nerve*. ACh directly activates parietal cells in the fundus ( $\text{M}_3$  cholinceptors  $\rightarrow$  B2). GRP (gastrin-releasing peptide) released by neurons stimulates *gastrin* secretion from G cells in the antrum ( $\rightarrow$  B3). Gastrin released into the systemic circulation in turn activates the parietal cells via  $\text{CCK}_B$  receptors (= gastrin receptors). The glands in the fundus contain H (histamine) cells or ECL cells (enterochromaffin-like cells), which are activated by gastrin ( $\text{CCK}_B$  receptors) as well as by ACh and  $\beta_3$  adrenergic substances ( $\rightarrow$  B2). The cells release *histamine*, which has a paracrine effect on neighboring parietal cells ( $\text{H}_2$  receptor). Local gastric and intestinal factors also influence gastric acid secretion because chyme in the antrum and duodenum stimulates the secretion of gastrin ( $\rightarrow$  B1 and p. 237 A).

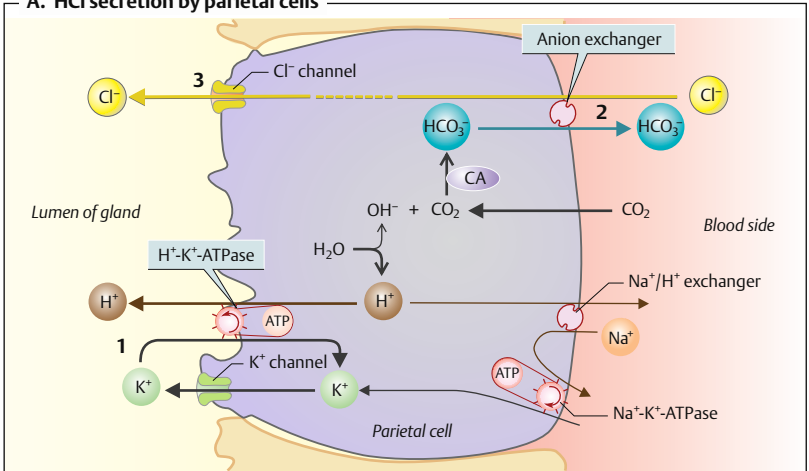
**Factors that inhibit gastric juice secretion:**

(a) A pH of  $< 3.0$  in the antral lumen inhibits **G cells** (negative feedback,  $\rightarrow$  B1, 3) and activates antral **D cells**, which secrete SIH ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236), which in turn has a paracrine effect. SIH inhibits **H cells** in the fundus as well as G cells in the antrum ( $\rightarrow$  B2, 3). CGRP released by neurons ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236) activates D cells in the antrum and fundus, ( $\rightarrow$  B2, 3). (c) Secretin and GIP released from the small intestine have a retrograde effect on gastric juice secretion ( $\rightarrow$  B1). This adjusts the composition of chyme from the stomach to the needs of the small intestine.

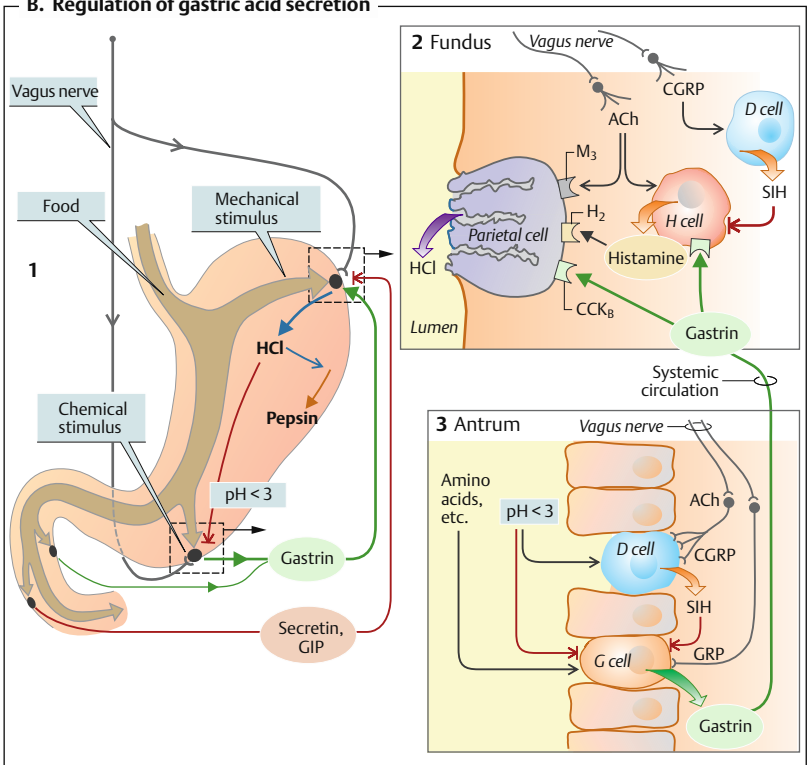
**Protection of the gastric mucosa** from destructive gastric juices is chiefly provided by (a) a *layer of mucus* and (b)  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secretion by the underlying mucous cells of the gastric mucosa.  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  diffuses through the layer of mucus and buffers the acid that diffuses into it from the lumen. *Prostaglandins*  $\text{PGE}_2$  and  $\text{PGL}_2$  promote the secretion of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ .

Anti-inflammatory drugs that inhibit cyclooxygenase 1 and thus prostaglandin production ( $\rightarrow$  p. 271) impair this mucosal protection and can result in ulcer development.

**A. HCl secretion by parietal cells**



**B. Regulation of gastric acid secretion**



The main function of the small intestine (SI) is to finish digesting the food and to absorb the accumulated breakdown products as well as water, electrolytes and vitamins.

**Structure.** The SI of live human subjects is about 2 m in length. It arises from the pylorus as the *duodenum* and continues as the *jejunum*, and ends as the *ileum*, which merges into the large intestine. From outside inward, the SI consists of an outer serous coat (*tunica serosa*, → **A1**), a layer of *longitudinal muscle fibers* (→ **A2**), the *myenteric plexus* (Auerbach's plexus, → **A3**), a layer of circular muscle fibers (→ **A4**), the *submucous plexus* (Meissner's plexus, → **A5**) and a *mucous layer* (*tunica mucosa*, → **A6**), which is covered by epithelial cells (→ **A13–15**). The SI is supplied with blood vessels (→ **A8**), lymph vessels (→ **A9**), and nerves (→ **A10**) via the *mesentery* (→ **A7**). The surface area of the epithelial-luminal interface is roughly 300–1600 times larger ( $> 100 \text{ m}^2$ ) than that of a smooth cylindrical pipe because of the *Kerkring's folds* (→ **A11**), the *intestinal villi* (→ **A12**), and the *enterocytic microvilli*, or the *brush border* (→ **A13**).

**Ultrastructure and function.** *Goblet cells* (→ **A15**) are interspersed between the resorbing *enterocytes* (→ **A14**). The mucus secreted by goblet cells acts as a protective coat and lubricant. *Intestinal glands* (crypts of Lieberkühn, → **A16**) located at the bases of the villi contain (a) undifferentiated and mitotic cells that differentiate into villous cells (see below), (b) mucous cells, (c) endocrine and paracrine cells that receive information about the composition of chyme from chemosensor cells, and (d) immune cells (→ p. 234). The chyme composition triggers the secretion of endocrine hormones and of paracrine mediators (→ p. 236). The tubuloacinar *duodenal glands* (Brunner's glands), located deep in the intestinal wall (tela submucosa) secrete a  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ -rich fluid containing urogastrone (*human epidermal growth factor*), an important stimulator of epithelial cell proliferation.

**Cell replacement.** The tips of the villi are continually shed and replaced by new cells from the crypts of Lieberkühn. Thereby, the entire SI epithelium is renewed every 3–6 days. The dead cells disintegrate in the lumen, thereby releasing enzymes, stored iron, etc.

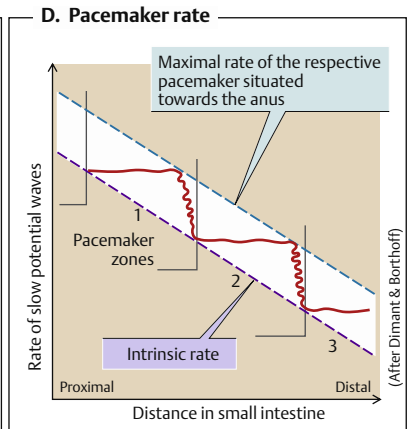
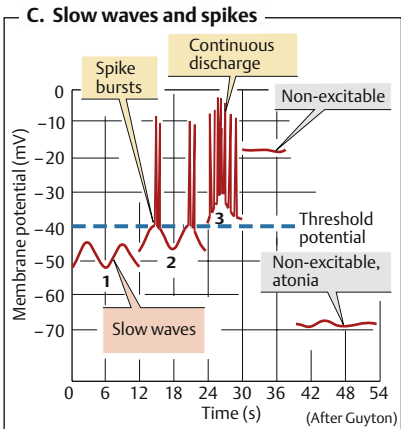
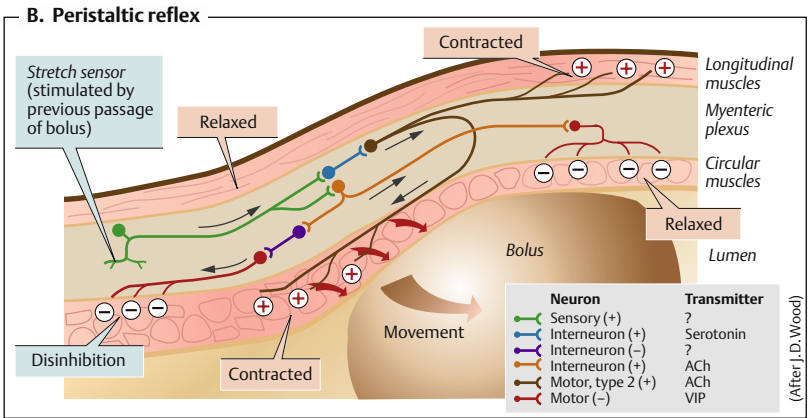
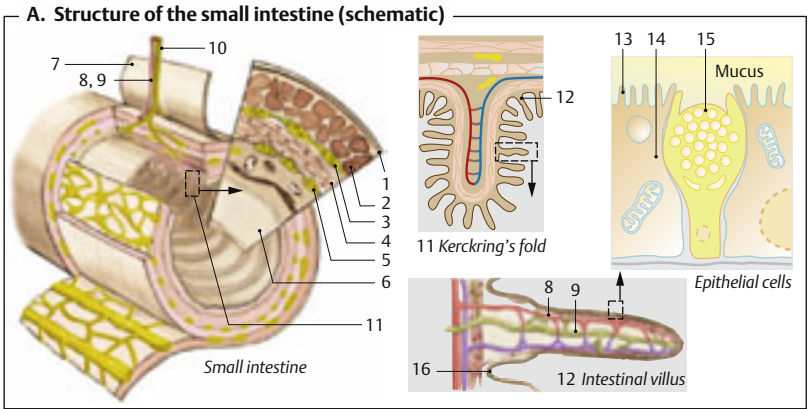
**Intestinal motility** is autonomously regulated by the enteric nervous system, but is influenced by hormones and external innervation (→ p. 236). Local *pendular movements* (by

longitudinal muscles) and *segmentation* (contraction/relaxation of circular muscle fibers) of the SI serve to mix the intestinal contents and bring them into contact with the mucosa. This is enhanced by movement of the intestinal villi (*lamina muscularis mucosae*). *Reflex peristaltic waves* (30–130 cm/min) propel the intestinal contents towards the rectum at a rate of ca. 1 cm/min. These waves are especially strong during the interdigestive phase (→ p. 242).

**Peristaltic reflex.** Stretching of the intestinal wall during the passage of a bolus (→ **B**) triggers a reflex that constricts the lumen behind the bolus and dilates that ahead of it. Controlled by interneurons, cholinergic type 2 motoneurons with prolonged excitation simultaneously activate circular muscle fibers behind the bolus and longitudinal musculature in front of it. At the same time the circular muscle fibers in front of the bolus are inhibited (accommodation) while those behind it are disinhibited (→ **B** and p. 236).

**Pacemakers.** The intestine also contains pacemaker cells (*interstitial Cajal cells*). The membrane potential of these cells oscillates between 10 and 20 mV every 3–15 min, producing *slow waves* (→ **C1**). Their amplitude can rise (less negative potential) or fall in response to neural, endocrine or paracrine stimuli. A series of action potentials (spike bursts) are fired once the membrane potential rises above a certain threshold (ca.  $-40 \text{ mV}$ ) (→ **C2**). *Muscle spasms* occur if the trough of the wave also rises above the threshold potential (→ **C3**).

**Impulse conduction.** The spike bursts are conducted to myocytes via *gap junctions* (→ p. 19, 70). The myocytes then contract rhythmically at the same frequency (or slower). Conduction in the direction of the anus dwindles after a certain distance (→ **D**, pacemaker zone), so more distal cells (with a lower intrinsic rate) must assume the pacemaker function. Hence, peristaltic waves of the small intestine only move in the anal direction.



The *exocrine part* of the pancreas secretes 1–2 L of pancreatic juice into the duodenum each day. The pancreatic juice contains  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , which neutralizes (pH 7–8) HCl-rich chyme from the stomach, and mostly inactive precursors of *digestive enzymes*.

**Pancreatic secretions** are similar to saliva in that they are produced in two stages: (1)  $\text{Cl}^-$  is secreted in the **acini** by secondary active transport, followed by passive transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 238 C1). These primary secretions have an ion composition corresponding to that of plasma ( $\rightarrow$  **A1** and **A2**) and also contain *digestive proenzymes* and other proteins (exocytosis;  $\rightarrow$  p. 30). (2)  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is added to the primary secretions (in exchange for  $\text{Cl}^-$ ) in the intercalated and intralobular **ducts**;  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  follow by passive transport ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). As a result, the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentration of pancreatic juice rises to over 100 mmol/L, while the  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration falls ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Unlike saliva ( $\rightarrow$  p. 239 B), the osmolality and  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$  concentrations of the pancreatic juice remain constant ( $\rightarrow$  **A1** and **A2**). During the digestive phase, most of the pancreatic juice is secreted from the ducts ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**).

**$\text{HCO}_3^-$  is secreted** from the luminal membrane of the ducts via an anion exchanger (AE) that simultaneously reabsorbs  $\text{Cl}^-$  from the lumen ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**).  $\text{Cl}^-$  returns to the lumen via a  $\text{Cl}^-$  channel, which is more frequently opened by **secretin** to ensure that the amount of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secreted is not limited by the availability of  $\text{Cl}^-$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**).

In **cystic fibrosis** (mucoviscidosis), this CFTR channel (cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator) is impaired.

The secreted  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is absorbed in part from the blood via a  $\text{Na}-\text{HCO}_3^-$  symporter (NBC;  $\rightarrow$  **B3**), in part is the product of the  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{OH}^-$  reaction in cytosol ( $\rightarrow$  **B4**) catalyzed by carbonic anhydrase (CA). For each  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  molecule secreted, one  $\text{H}^+$  ion leaves the cell on the blood side via an  $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$  exchanger (NHE1  $\rightarrow$  **B5**).

Pancreatic juice **secretion is controlled** in the acini by cholinergic (vagal) mechanisms and by the hormone cholecystokinin (CCK, vagal stimulation seems to be enhanced by  $\text{CCK}_A$  receptors) ( $\rightarrow$  **C** and p. 236). Both cause an elevation of cytosolic concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$ , which stimulates  $\text{Cl}^-$  and (pro-)enzyme secretion. Trypsin in the small intestinal lumen deactivates CCK release via a feedback loop

( $\rightarrow$  **D**). **Secretin** increases  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  secretion by the ducts. CCK and vagal acetylcholine (ACh) potentiate this effect by raising  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$ . The hormones also have a growth-promoting effect.

A high dietary intake of soya beans inhibits trypsin and results in CCK being secreted also during interdigestive phases, which leads to an increased incidence of pancreatic cancer.

**The pancreatic enzymes** have a pH optimum of 7–8. Insufficient  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secretion (e.g., in cystic fibrosis) results in inadequate neutralization of chyme and therefore in impaired digestion.

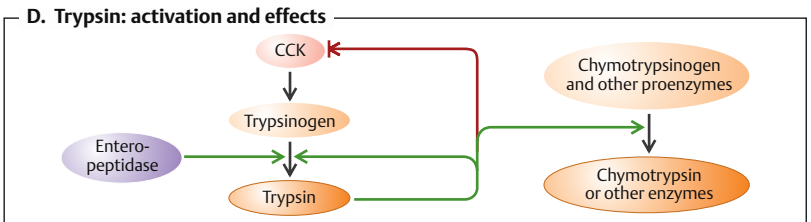
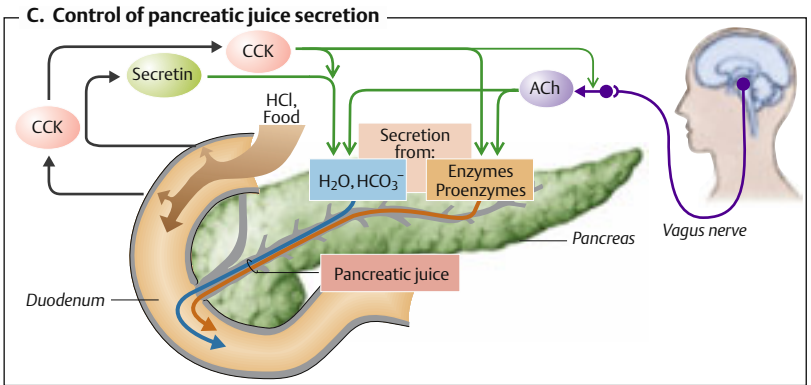
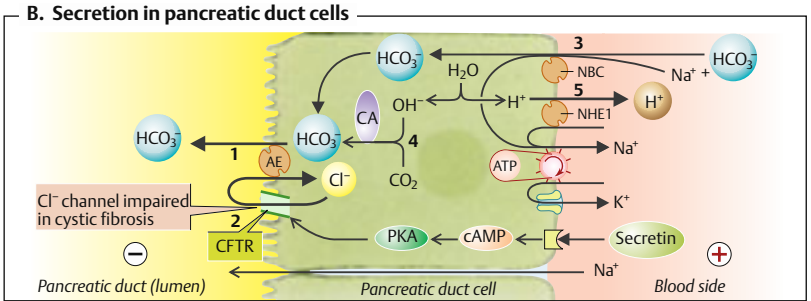
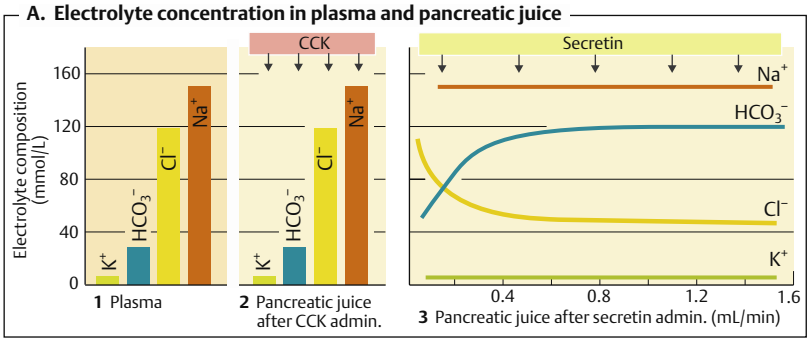
**Proteolysis** is catalyzed by proteases, which are secreted in their inactive form, i.e., as *proenzymes*: *trypsinogen 1–3*, *chymotrypsinogen A and B*, *proelastase 1 and 2* and *procarboxypeptidase A1, A2, B1 and B2*. They are activated only when they reach the intestine, where an *enteropeptidase* first converts trypsinogen to **trypsin** ( $\rightarrow$  **D**), which then converts chymotrypsinogen into active *chymotrypsin*. Trypsin also activates many other pancreatic proenzymes including proelastases and procarboxypeptidases. Trypsins, chymotrypsins and elastases are *endoproteases*, i.e., they split certain peptide bonds within protein chains. Carboxypeptidases A and B are *exopeptidases*, i.e., they split amino acids off the carboxyl end of the chain.

Pathological activation of the proenzymes within the pancreas causes the organ to digest itself (*acute pancreatic necrosis*).

**Carbohydrate catabolism.**  $\alpha$ -Amylase is secreted in active form and splits starch and glycogen into maltose, maltotriose and  $\alpha$ -limit dextrin. These products are further digested by the intestinal epithelium ( $\rightarrow$  p. 261).

**Lipolysis.** *Pancreatic lipase* (see p. 254ff.) is the most important enzyme for lipolysis. It is secreted in its active form and breaks triacylglycerol to 2-monoacylglycerol and free fatty acids. Pancreatic lipase activity depends on the presence of *colipases*, generated from pro-colipases in pancreatic secretions (with the aid of trypsin). *Bile salts* are also necessary for fat digestion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 250).

*Other important pancreatic enzymes* include (pro-)phospholipase  $\text{A}_2$ , RNases, DNases, and a carboxylesterase.



**Bile components.** Bile contains electrolytes, bile salts (bile acids), cholesterol, lecithin (phosphatidylcholine), bilirubin diglucuronide, steroid hormones, medications etc. ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). *Bile salts* are essential for fat digestion. Most of the other components of bile leave the body via the feces (excretory function of the liver  $\rightarrow$  p. 252).

**Bile formation.** Hepatocytes secrete ca. 0.7 L/day of bile into *biliary canaliculi* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**), the fine canals formed by the cell membranes of adjacent hepatocytes. The sinusoidal and canalicular membranes of the hepatocytes contain numerous carriers that absorb bile components from the blood and secrete them into the canaliculi, resp.

**Bile salts (BS).** The liver synthesizes *cholate* and *chenodeoxycholate* (primary bile salts) from *cholesterol*. The intestinal bacteria convert some of them into secondary bile salts such as *deoxycholate* and *lithocholate*. Bile salts are conjugated with taurine or glycine in the liver and are secreted into the bile in this form ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). This conjugation is essential for micelle formation in the bile and gut.

**Hepatic bile salt carriers.** *Conjugated bile salts* in sinusoidal blood are actively taken up by **NTCP** ( $\text{Na}^+$  taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide; secondary active transport), and transported against a steep concentration gradient into the canaliculi (primary active transport) by the ATP-dependent carrier **hBSEP** (human bile salt export pump), also referred to as **cBAT** (canalicular bile acid transporter).

**Enterohepatic circulation of BS.** Unconjugated bile salts are immediately reabsorbed from the bile ducts (cholehepatic circulation). Conjugated bile salts enter the duodenum and are reabsorbed from the terminal ileum by the  $\text{Na}^+$  symport carrier **ISBT** (= ileal sodium bile acid cotransporter) and circulated back to the liver (*enterohepatic circulation*;  $\rightarrow$  **B**) once they have been used for fat digestion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 254). The total bile salt pool (2–4 g) recirculates about 6–10 times a day, depending on the fat content of the diet. Ca. 20–30 g of bile salts are required for daily fat absorption.

**Choleresis.** Enterohepatic circulation raises the bile salt concentration in the portal vein to a high level during the digestive phase. This (a) inhibits the hepatic synthesis of bile salts (cholesterol-7 $\alpha$ -hydroxylase; negative feed-

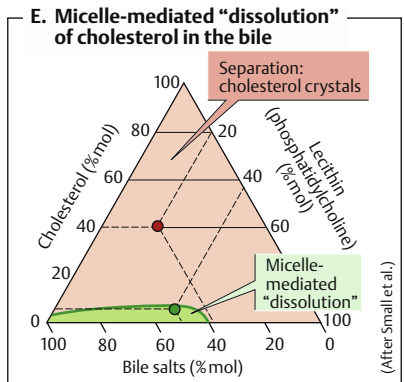
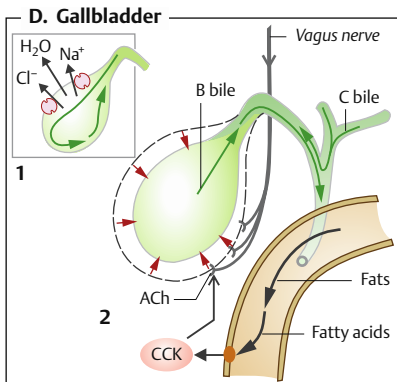
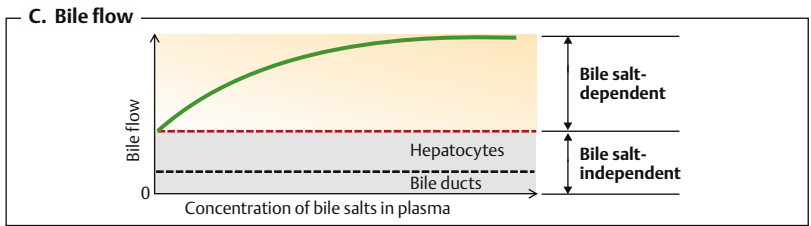
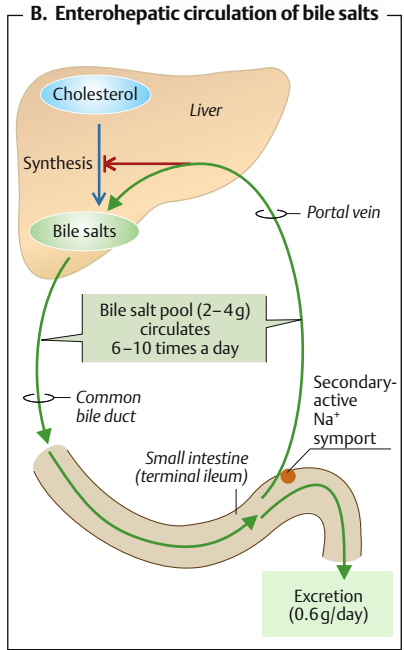
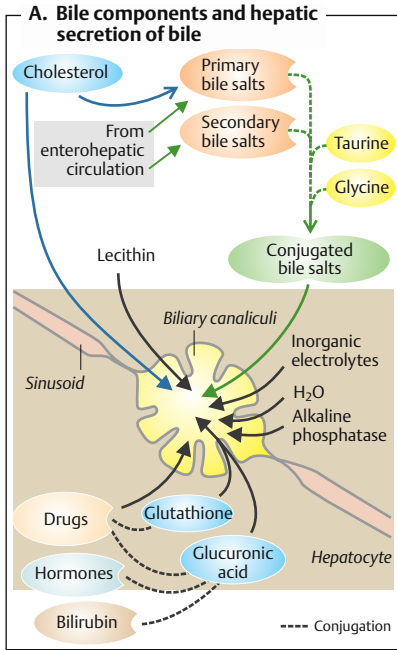
back;  $\rightarrow$  **B**) and (b) stimulates the secretion of bile salts into the biliary canaliculi. The latter effect increases the bile flow due to osmotic water movement, i.e., causes *bile salt-dependent choleresis* ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). *Bile salt-independent choleresis* is, caused by secretion of other bile components into the canaliculi as well as of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (in exchange for  $\text{Cl}^-$ ) and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  into the *bile ducts* ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). The latter form is increased by the vagus nerve and secretin.

**Gallbladder.** When the sphincter of Oddi between the common bile duct and duodenum is closed, *hepatic bile* (*C bile*) is diverted to the gallbladder, where it is concentrated (approx. 1 : 10) and stored ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). The gallbladder epithelium reabsorbs  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and water ( $\rightarrow$  **D1**) from the stored bile, thereby greatly raising the concentration of specific bile components (bile salts, bilirubin-di-glucuronide, cholesterol, phosphatidylcholine, etc.). If bile is used for fat digestion (or if a peristaltic wave occurs in the interdigestive phase,  $\rightarrow$  p. 242), the gallbladder contracts and its contents are mixed in portions with the duodenal chyme ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**).

**Cholesterol** in the bile is transported inside *micelles* formed by aggregation of cholesterol with lecithin and bile salts. A change in the ratio of these three substances in favor of cholesterol ( $\rightarrow$  **E**) leads to the precipitation of cholesterol crystals responsible for gallstone development in the highly concentrated *gallbladder bile* (*B bile*). The red and green dots in **E** show the effects of two different ratios.

**Gallbladder contraction** is *triggered* by CCK ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236), which binds to  $\text{CCK}_A$  receptors, and the neuronal plexus of the gallbladder wall, which is innervated by preganglionic parasympathetic fibers of the vagus nerve ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**).

CGRP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236) and substance P ( $\rightarrow$  p. 86) released by sensory fibers appear to stimulate the gallbladder musculature indirectly by increasing acetylcholine release. The sympathetic nervous system *inhibits* gallbladder contractions via  $\alpha_2$  adrenoreceptors located on cholinergic fiber terminals. As *cholagogues*, fatty acids and products of protein digestion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236) as well as egg yolk and  $\text{MgSO}_4$  effectively stimulate CCK secretion.



(After Small et al.)

The liver **detoxifies** and **excretes** many mostly lipophilic substances, which are either generated during metabolism (e.g., bilirubin or steroid hormones) or come from the intestinal tract (e.g., the antibiotic chloramphenicol). However, this requires prior **biotransformation** of the substances. In the *first step* of the process, reactive OH, NH<sub>2</sub> or COOH groups are enzymatically added (e.g., by monooxygenases) to the hydrophobic substances. In the *second step*, the substances are *conjugated* with glucuronic acid, acetate, glutathione, glycine, sulfates, etc. The conjugates are now water-soluble and can be either further processed in the kidneys and excreted in the urine, or secreted into bile by liver cells and excreted in the feces. Glutathione conjugates, for example, are further processed in the kidney and excreted as mercapturic acids in the urine.

**Carriers.** The canalicular membrane of hepatocytes contains various carriers, most of which are directly fueled by ATP (see also p. 250). The principal carriers are: **MDR1** (multidrug resistance protein 1) for relatively hydrophobic, mainly cationic metabolites, **MDR3** for phosphatidylcholine (→ p. 250), and **cMOAT** (canalicular multispecific organic anion transporter = multidrug resistance protein MRP2) for conjugates (formed with glutathione, glucuronic acid or sulfate) and many other organic anions.

**Bilirubin sources and conjugation.** Ca. 85% of all bilirubin originates from the *hemoglobin* in erythrocytes; the rest is produced by other hemoproteins like cytochrome (→ **A** and **B**). When degraded, the globulin and iron components (→ p. 90) are cleaved from hemoglobin. Via intermediate steps, *biliverdin* and finally *bilirubin*, the yellow bile pigment, are then formed from the porphyrin residue. Each gram of hemoglobin yields ca. 35 mg of bilirubin. Free unconjugated bilirubin (“*indirect*” *bilirubin*) is poorly soluble in water, yet lipid-soluble and toxic. It is therefore *complexed with albumin* when present in the blood (2 mol bilirubin : 1 mol albumin), but not when absorbed by hepatocytes (→ **A**). Bilirubin is conjugated (catalyzed by *glucuronyltransferase*) with 2 molecules of *UDP-glucuronate* (synthesized from glucose, ATP and UTP) in the liver cells yielding **bilirubin di(or bis)glucuronide** (“*direct*” *bilirubin*). It is a yellow water-soluble substance secreted into the biliary canaliculi

by primary active transport mechanisms (cMOAT, see above).

**Bilirubin excretion.** 200–250 mg of bilirubin is excreted in the bile each day. Ca. 90% of it is *excreted in the feces*. In the gut, bacteria break bilirubin down into the colorless compound, *stercobilinogen* (→ **B**). It is partly oxidized into *stercobilin*, the brown compound that colors the stools. About 10% of all bilirubin diglucuronide is deconjugated by intestinal bacteria and returned to the liver in this lipophilic form (partly as stercobilinogen) via enterohepatic circulation. A small portion (ca. 1%) reaches the systemic circulation and is excreted by the kidneys as *urobilinogen* = stercobilinogen (see below) (→ **B**). The renal excretion rate increases when the liver is damaged.

**Jaundice.** The *plasma bilirubin concentration* normally does not exceed 17 μmol/L (= 1 mg/dL). Concentrations higher than 30 μmol/L (1.8 mg/dL) lead to yellowish discoloration of the sclera and skin, resulting in **jaundice (icterus)**. **Types of jaundice:**

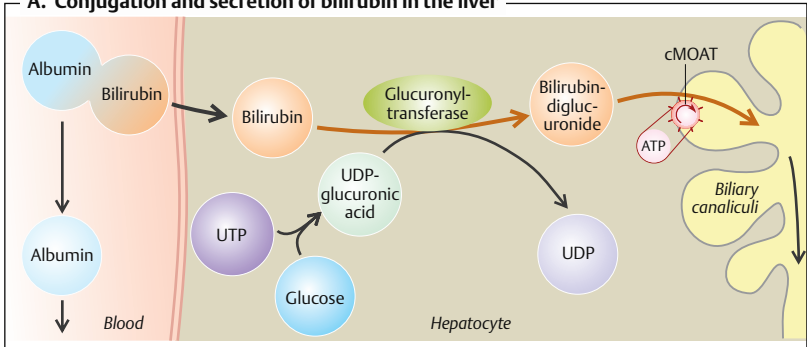
1. **Prehepatic jaundice.** When excessive amounts of bilirubin are formed, for example, due to increased hemolysis, the liver can no longer cope with the higher load unless the plasma bilirubin concentration rises. Thus, *unconjugated (indirect) bilirubin* is mainly elevated in these patients.

2. **Intrahepatic jaundice.** The main causes are (a) liver cell damage due to toxins (*Amanita*) or infections (*viral hepatitis*) resulting in the impairment of bilirubin transport and conjugation; (b) deficiency or absence of the glucuronyltransferase system in the newborn (Crigler–Najjar syndrome); (c) inhibition of glucuronyltransferase, e.g., by steroids; (d) impaired secretion of bilirubin into the biliary canaliculi due to a congenital defect (Dubin–Johnson syndrome) or other reasons (e.g., drugs, steroid hormones).

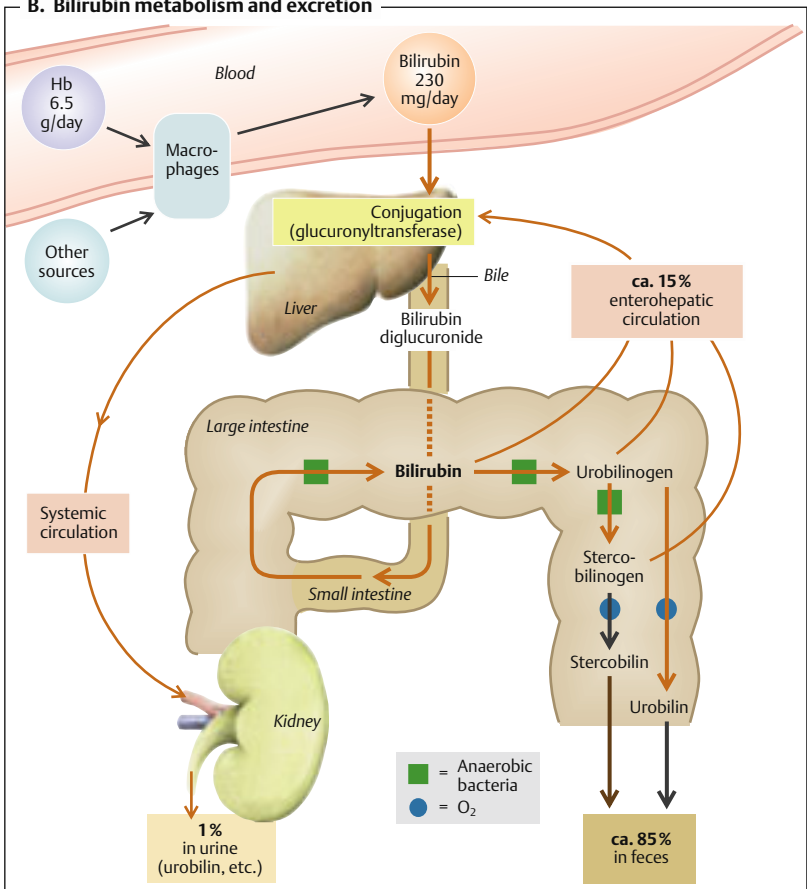
3. **Posthepatic jaundice:** Impairment of the flow of bile occurs due to an obstruction (e.g., stone or tumor) in the bile ducts, usually accompanied by elevated serum concentrations of already *conjugated (direct) bilirubin* and alkaline phosphatase—both of which are normal components of bile.

Types 2a, 2d and 3 jaundice are associated with increased urinary concentrations of conjugated bilirubin, leading to brownish discoloration of the urine. In type 3 jaundice, the stools are gray due to the lack of bilirubin in the intestine and the resulting absence of stercobilin formation.

**A. Conjugation and secretion of bilirubin in the liver**



**B. Bilirubin metabolism and excretion**



The average **intake of fats** (butter, oil, margarine, milk, meat, sausages, eggs, nuts etc.) is roughly 60–100 g/day, but there is a wide range of individual variation (10–250 g/day). Most fats in the diet (90%) are neutral fats or *triacylglycerols* (triglycerides). The rest are phospholipids, cholesterol esters, and fat-soluble vitamins (vitamins A, D, E and K). Over 95% of the lipids are normally absorbed in the small intestine.

**Lipid digestion** (→ A). Lipids are poorly soluble in water, so special mechanisms are required for their digestion in the watery environment of the gastrointestinal tract and for their subsequent absorption and transport in plasma (→ p. 256). Although small quantities of undegraded triacylglycerol can be absorbed, dietary fats must be hydrolyzed by enzymes before they can be efficiently absorbed. Optimal enzymatic activity requires the prior mechanical *emulsification* of fats (mainly in the distal stomach, → p. 242) because emulsified *lipid droplets* (1–2  $\mu\text{m}$ ; → B1) provide a much larger surface (relative to the mass of fat) for lipases.

**Lipases**, the fat digesting enzymes, originate from the lingual glands, gastric fundus (chief and mucous neck cells) and *pancreas* (→ A and p. 248). About 10–30% of dietary fat intake is hydrolyzed in the stomach, while the remaining 70–90% is broken down in the duodenum and upper jejunum. Lingual and gastric lipases have an acid pH optimum, whereas pancreatic lipase has a pH optimum of 7–8. Lipases become active at the fat/oil and water interface (→ B). **Pancreatic lipase** (triacylglycerol hydrolase) develops its lipolytic activity (max. 140 g fat/min) in the presence of **colipase** and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . *Pro-colipase* in pancreatic juice yields colipase after being activated by trypsin. In most cases, the pancreatic lipases split *triacylglycerol* (TG) at the 1st and 3rd ester bond (p. 229 B). This process requires the addition of water and yields free *fatty acids* (FFA) and 2-*monoacylglycerol*.

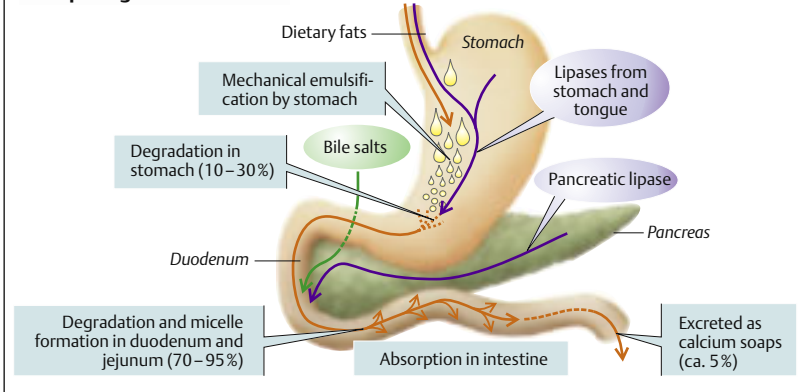
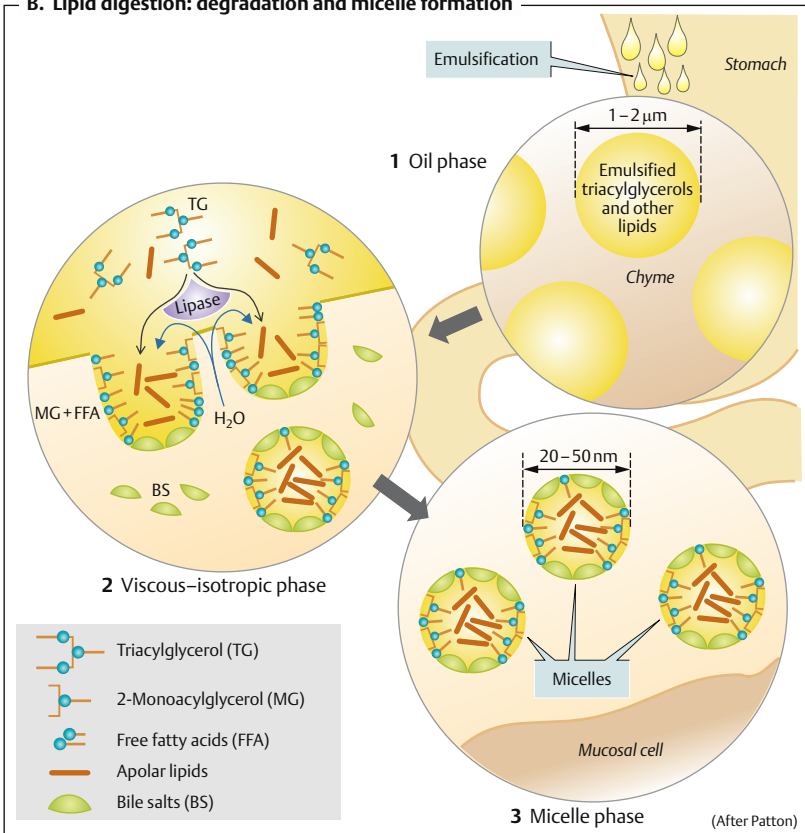
A **viscous-isotropic phase** with aqueous and hydrophobic zones then forms around the enzyme (→ B2).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  excesses or *monoacylglycerol* deficiencies result in the conversion of the fatty acids into *calcium soaps*, which are later excreted.

**Phospholipase A<sub>2</sub>** (from pro-phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> in pancreatic juice—activated by trypsin) cleaves the 2nd ester bond of the phospholipids (mainly phosphatidylcholine = lecithin) contained in micelles. The presence of *bile salts* and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is required for this reaction.

An **unspecific carboxylesterase** (= unspecific lipase = cholesterol ester hydrolase) in pancreatic secretions also acts on cholesterol esters on micelles as well as all three ester bonds of TG and esters of vitamins, A, D and E.

This lipase is also present in human breast **milk** (but not cow's milk), so breast-fed infants receive the digestive enzyme required to break down milk fat along with the milk. Since the enzyme is heat-sensitive, pasteurization of human milk significantly reduces the infant's ability to digest milk fat to a great extent.

2-*Monoacylglycerols*, *long-chain free fatty acids* and other lipids aggregate with *bile salts* (→ p. 248) to spontaneously form **micelles** in the small intestine (→ B3). (Since short-chain fatty acids are relatively polar, they can be absorbed directly and do not require bile salts or micelles). The micelles are only about 20–50 nm in diameter, and their surface-to-volume ratio is roughly 50 times larger than that of the lipid droplets in emulsions. They facilitate close contact between the products of fat digestion and the wall of the small intestine and are therefore essential for lipid absorption. The polar side of the substances involved (mainly conjugated bile salts, 2-monoacylglycerol and phospholipids) faces the watery environment, and the non-polar side faces the interior of the micelle. Totally apolar lipids (e.g., cholesterol esters, fat-soluble vitamins and lipophilic poisons) are located inside the micelles. Thus, the apolar lipids remain in the lipophilic milieu (*hydrocarbon continuum*) during all these processes until they reach the lipophilic brush border membrane of the epithelium. They are then absorbed by the mucosa cells via dissolution in the membrane or by a passive transport mechanism (e.g., carriers in the case of free fatty acids). Although fat absorption is completed by the time the chyme reaches the end of the jejunum, the *bile salts* released from micelles are only absorbed in the terminal ileum and then recycled (enterohepatic circulation; → p. 251 B).

**A. Lipid digestion: overview****B. Lipid digestion: degradation and micelle formation**

Lipids in the blood are transported in **lipoproteins**, LPs ( $\rightarrow$ A), which are molecular aggregates (microemulsions) with a core of very hydrophobic lipids such as *triacylglycerols* (TG) and *cholesterol esters* (CHO-esters) surrounded by a layer of amphipathic lipids (phospholipids, cholesterol). LPs also contain several types of proteins, called apolipoproteins. LPs are differentiated according to their size, density, lipid composition, site of synthesis, and their apolipoprotein content. **Apolipoproteins** (Apo) function as *structural elements* of LPs (e.g. ApoAII and ApoB48), *ligands* (ApoB100, ApoE, etc.) for LP receptors on the membranes of LP target cells, and as *enzyme activators* (e.g. ApoAI and ApoCII).

**Chylomicrons** transport lipids (mainly *triacylglycerol*, TG) from the gut to the periphery (via intestinal lymph and systemic circulation;  $\rightarrow$ D), where their ApoCII activates endothelial lipoprotein lipase (LPL), which *cleaves FFA* from TG. The FFA are mainly absorbed by myocytes and fat cells ( $\rightarrow$ D). With the aid of ApoE, the *chylomicron remnants* deliver the rest of their TG, cholesterol and cholesterol ester load to the hepatocytes by receptor-mediated endocytosis ( $\rightarrow$ B, D).

Cholesterol (CHO) and the TG imported from the gut and newly synthesized in the liver are exported inside **VLDL** (very low density lipoproteins) from the liver to the periphery, where they by means of their ApoCII also activate LPL, resulting in the *release of FFA* ( $\rightarrow$ D). This results in the loss of ApoCII and exposure of ApoE. VLDL remnants or **IDL** (intermediate-density lipoproteins) remain. Ca. 50% of the IDL returns to the liver (mainly bound by its ApoE on LDL receptors; see below) and is re-processed and exported from the liver as VLDL ( $\rightarrow$ B).

The other 50% of the IDL is converted to **LDL** (low density lipoprotein) after coming in contact with hepatic lipase (resulting in loss of ApoE and exposure of ApoB100). Two-thirds of the LDLs deliver their CHO and CHO-esters to the liver, the other third transfers its CHO to extrahepatic tissue ( $\rightarrow$ B). Binding of ApoB100 to **LDL receptors** is essential for both processes (see below).

**High-density lipoproteins** (HDL) exchange certain apoproteins with chylomicrons and

VLDL and absorb superfluous CHO from the extrahepatic cells and blood ( $\rightarrow$ B). With their ApoAI, they activate the plasma enzyme **LCAT** (lecithin-cholesterol acyltransferase), which is responsible for the partial esterification of CHO. HDL also deliver cholesterol and CHO-esters to the liver and steroid hormone-producing glands with *HDL receptors* (ovaries, testes, adrenal cortex).

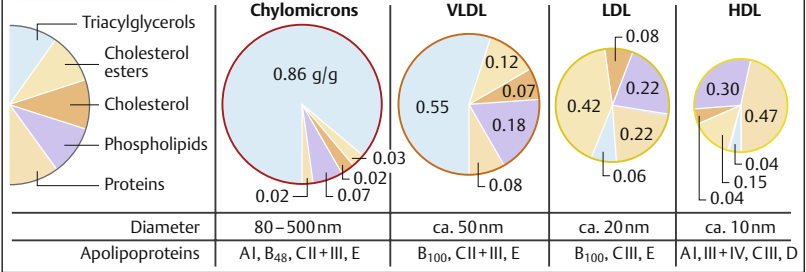
### Triacylglycerol (TG)

Dietary TGs are broken down into *free fatty acids* (FFA) and *2-monoacylglycerol* (MG) in the gastrointestinal tract ( $\rightarrow$ C and p.254). Since short-chain FFAs are water-soluble, they can be absorbed and transported to the liver via the portal vein. Long-chain FFAs and MGs are not soluble in water. They are re-synthesized to TG in the mucosa cells ( $\rightarrow$ C). (The FFAs needed for TG synthesis are carried by FFA-binding proteins from the cell membrane to their site of synthesis, i.e., the smooth endoplasmic reticulum.) Since TGs are not soluble in water, they are subsequently loaded onto **chylomicrons**, which are exocytosed into the extracellular fluid, then passed on to the intestinal lymph (thereby by-passing the liver), from which they finally reach the greater circulation ( $\rightarrow$ C, D). (Plasma becomes cloudy for about 20–30 minutes after a fatty meal due to its chylomicron content). The *liver* also synthesizes TGs, thereby taking the required FFAs from the plasma or synthesizing them from glucose. Hepatic TGs are loaded onto **VLDL** (see above) and subsequently secreted into the plasma ( $\rightarrow$ D).

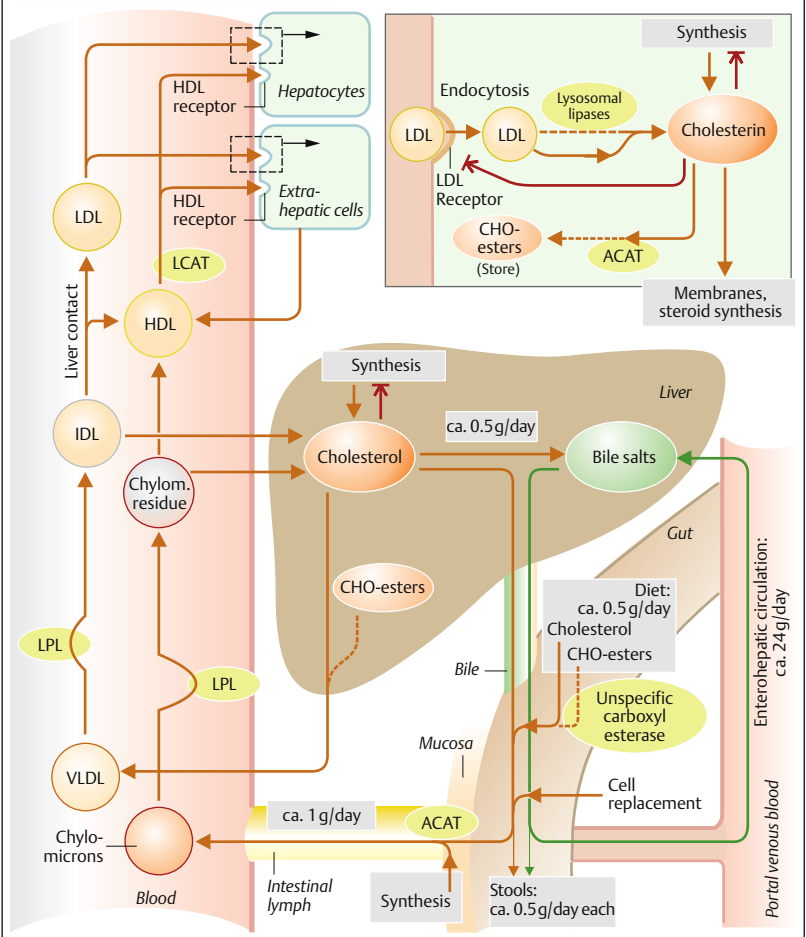
Since the export capacity of this mechanism is limited, an excess of FFA or glucose ( $\rightarrow$ D) can result in the accumulation of TGs in the liver (*fatty liver*).

**Free fatty acids** (FFAs) are high-energy substrates used for energy metabolism ( $\rightarrow$ p.230). Fatty acids circulating in the blood are mainly transported in the form of TG (in *lipoproteins*) whereas plasma FFA are *complexed with albumin*. Fatty acids are removed from TGs of chylomicrons and VLDL by lipoprotein lipase (LPL) localized on the luminal surface of the capillary endothelium of many organs (mainly in fat tissue and muscles) ( $\rightarrow$ D). ApoCII on the surface of TGs and VLDL activates LPL. The in-

**A. Lipoproteins**



**B. Sources and fate of cholesterol**



► **sulin** secreted after a meal *induces LPL* ( $\rightarrow$  **D**), which promotes the rapid degradation of reabsorbed dietary TGs. LPL is also activated by *heparin* (from endothelial tissue, mast cells, etc.), which helps to eliminate the chylomicrons in cloudy plasma; it therefore is called a *clearance factor*. Albumin-complexed FFAs in plasma are mainly transported to the following **target sites** ( $\rightarrow$  **D**):

◆ *Cardiac muscle, skeletal muscle, kidneys (cortex) and other organs*, where they are oxidized to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in the mitochondria ( $\beta$  oxidation) and used as a **source of energy**.

◆ *Fat cells* ( $\rightarrow$  **D**), which use the FFAs to synthesize TG and also store the TG. When energy requirements increase or intake decreases, the FFAs are recleaved from triacylglycerol in the fat cells (lipolysis) and transported to the area where they are needed ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). *Lipolysis is stimulated* by epinephrine, glucagon and cortisol and *inhibited* by insulin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 284ff.).

◆ The *liver*, where the FFAs are oxidized or used to synthesize TG.

### Cholesterol (CHO)

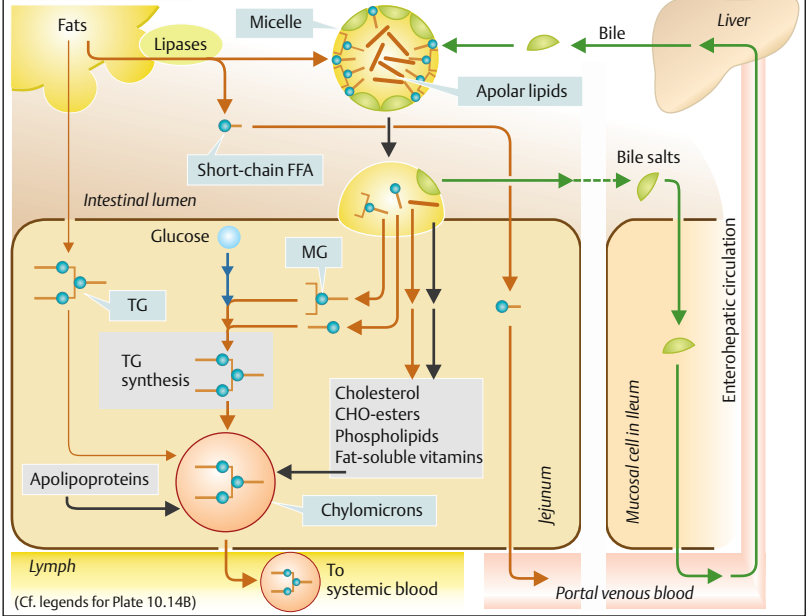
**Cholesterol esters** (CHO-esters), like TGs, are apolar lipids. In the watery milieu of the body, they can only be transported when incorporated in lipoproteins (or bound to proteins) and can be used for metabolism only after they have been converted to CHO, which is more polar ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). CHO-esters serve as *stores* and in some cases the transported form of CHO. CHO-esters are present in all lipoproteins, but are most abundant (42%) in LDL ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).

**Cholesterol** is an important constituent of cell membranes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 14). Moreover, it is a precursor for *bile salts* ( $\rightarrow$  **B** and p. 250), *vitamin D* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 294), and *steroid hormones* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 296ff.). Each day ca. 0.6 g of CHO is lost in the feces (reduced to *coprosterol*) and sloughed off skin. The bile salt loss amounts to about 0.5 g/day. These losses (minus the dietary CHO intake) must be compensated for by continuous re-synthesis of CHO in the intestinal tract and liver ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). CHO supplied by the diet is absorbed in part as such and in part in esterified form ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, lower right). Before it is reabsorbed, CHO-esters are split by *unspecific pancreatic carboxylesterase* to CHO, which is absorbed in the upper part of the small intestine ( $\rightarrow$  **B**,

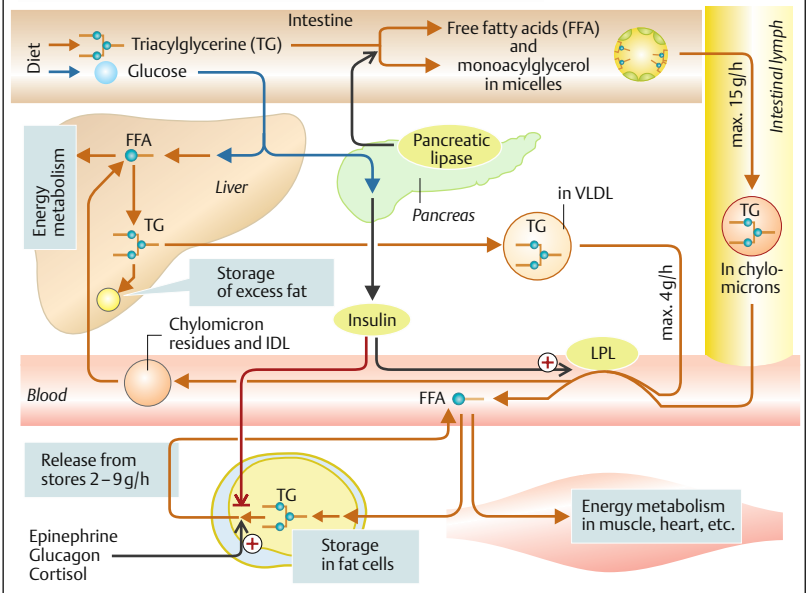
bottom). *Mucosal cells* contain an enzyme that re-esterifies part of the absorbed CHO: **ACAT** (acyl-CoA-cholesterol acyltransferase) so that both cholesterol and CHO-esters can be integrated in chylomicrons ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). CHO and CHO-esters in the *chylomicron remnants* (see above) are transported to the liver, where lysosomal acid lipases again break the CHO-esters down into CHO. This CHO and that taken up from other sources (LDL, HDL) leave the liver ( $\rightarrow$  **B**): 1. by excretion into the bile ( $\rightarrow$  p. 250), 2. by conversion into bile salts which also enter the bile ( $\rightarrow$  p. 251 B), and 3. by incorporation into VLDL, the hepatic lipoprotein for export of lipids to other tissues. Under the influence of LPL (see above), the VLDL yield IDL and later **LDL** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, left). The LDL transport CHO and CHO-esters to cells with **LDL receptors** (hepatic and extrahepatic cells;  $\rightarrow$  **B**, top). The receptor density on the cell surface is adjusted according to the prevailing CHO requirement. Like hepatic cells (see above) extrahepatic cells take up the LDL by receptor-mediated endocytosis, and lysosomal acid lipases reduce CHO-esters to CHO ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, top right). The cells can then insert the CHO in their cell membranes or use it for steroid synthesis. A *cholesterol excess* leads to (a) inhibition of CHO synthesis in the cells (3-HMG-CoA-reductase) and (b) activation of ACAT, an enzyme that esterifies and stores CHO in the form of its ester (see above).

**Hyperlipoproteinemia.** An excess of lipids in the blood can be reflected by elevation of triacylglycerol levels and/or CHO levels ( $> 200\text{--}220$  mg/dL serum; affects about one in five adults in Western countries). In the most severe form, *familial hypercholesterolemia*, a genetic defect causes elevated plasma CHO concentrations from birth on, which can result in myocardial infarction in juvenile age. The disease is caused by genetic defects of the high-affinity LDL receptors. The serum CHO level rises since the cells take up smaller quantities of cholesterol-rich LDLs. Extrahepatic tissues synthesize larger quantities of CHO because 3-HMG-CoA-reductase fails to inhibit CHO synthesis due to the decreased absorption of LDLs. As a result, more LDLs bind to the low-affinity *scavenger receptors* that mediate the storage of CHO in macrophages, cutaneous tissues, and blood vessels. Hypercholesterolemia therefore increases the risk of arteriosclerosis and coronary disease.

**C. Fat absorption**



**D. Source and fate of triacylglycerols and free fatty acids**



**Carbohydrates** provide half to two-thirds of the energy requirement ( $\rightarrow$  p.228). At least 50% of dietary carbohydrates consist of *starch* (amylose and amylopectin), a polysaccharide; other important dietary carbohydrates are cane sugar (saccharose = sucrose) and milk sugar (lactose). Carbohydrate digestion starts in the mouth ( $\rightarrow$  A1 and p.238). *Ptyalin*, an  $\alpha$ -**amylase** found in saliva, breaks starches down into oligosaccharides (*maltose*, *maltotriose*,  $\alpha$  *limit dextrins*) in a neutral pH environment. This digestive process continues in the proximal stomach, but is interrupted in the distal stomach as the food is mixed with acidic gastric juices. A pancreatic  $\alpha$ -amylase, with a pH optimum of 8 is mixed into the chyme in the duodenum. Thus, polysaccharide digestion can continue to the final oligosaccharide stage mentioned above. The carbohydrates can be only **absorbed** in the form of monosaccharides. Thus, the enzymes *maltase* and *isomaltase* integrated in the luminal brush border membrane of enterocytes break down *maltose*, *maltotriose* and  $\alpha$  *limit dextrins* into **glucose** as the final product. As in the renal tubules ( $\rightarrow$  p.160), glucose is first actively taken up by the  $\text{Na}^+$  symport carrier SGLT1 into mucosal cells ( $\rightarrow$  A2, p.29 B1) before passively diffusing into the portal circulation via *GLUT2*, the glucose uniport carrier (facilitated diffusion;  $\rightarrow$  p.22). The hydrolysis of *saccharose*, *lactose*, and *trehalose* is catalyzed by other brush border enzymes: lactase, saccharase (sucrase) and trehalase. In addition to glucose, these reactions release *galactose* (from lactose), which is absorbed by the same carriers as glucose, and *fructose*, which crosses the enterocytes by passive uniporters, *GLUT5* in the luminal and *GLUT2* in the basolateral membrane ( $\rightarrow$  A2).

**Lactase deficiency.** Lactose cannot be broken down and absorbed unless sufficient lactase is available. Lactase deficiencies lead to diarrhea 1) because water is retained in the intestinal lumen due to osmotic mechanisms, and 2) because intestinal bacteria convert the lactose into toxic substances.

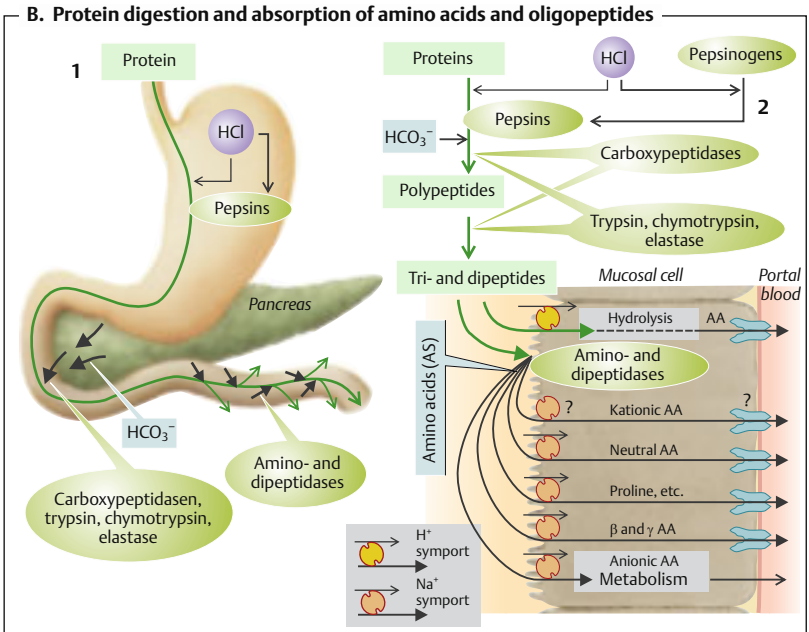
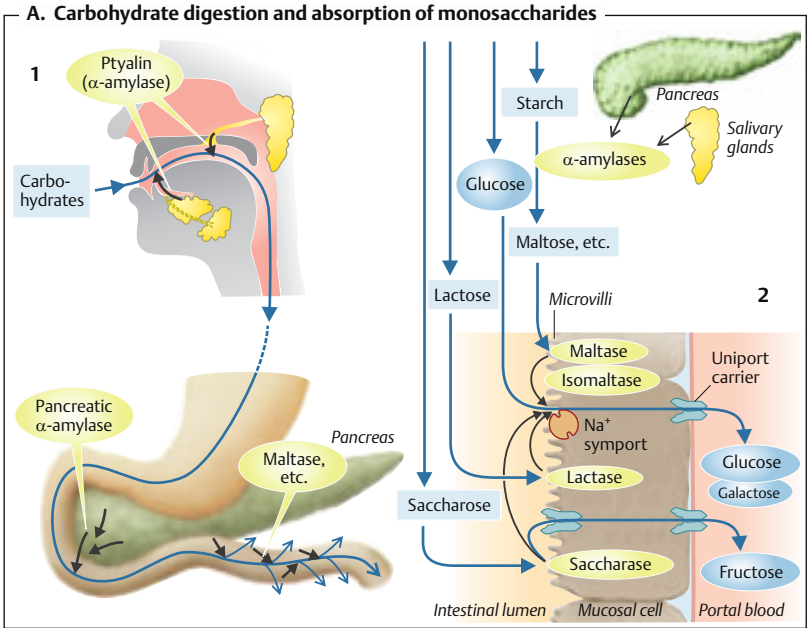
**Protein digestion** starts in the stomach ( $\rightarrow$  B1). *HCl* in the stomach denatures proteins and converts the three secreted *pepsinogens* into about eight different **pepsins**. At a pH of 2–5, these *endopeptidases* split off proteins at sites where tyrosine or phenylalanine molecules

are incorporated in the peptide chain. The pepsins become inactive in the small intestine (pH 7–8). Pancreatic juice also contains proenzymes of other peptidases that are activated in the duodenum ( $\rightarrow$  p.248). The endopeptidases *trypsin*, *chymotrypsin* and *elastase* hydrolyze the protein molecules into short-chain peptides. *Carboxypeptidase A and B* (from the pancreas) as well as *dipeptidases* and *aminopeptidase* (brush border enzymes) act on proteins at the end of the peptide chain, breaking them down into tripeptides, dipeptides, and (mostly) individual amino acids. These cleavage products are absorbed in the duodenum and jejunum.

**Amino acids (AA)** are transported by a number of specific carriers ( $\rightarrow$  B2) similar to those found in the kidneys ( $\rightarrow$  p.160). Neutral (without net charge) and anionic (“acid”) L-amino acids are transported with  $\text{Na}^+$  symporters (secondary active transport;  $\rightarrow$  p.28) from the intestinal lumen into mucosal cells, from which they passively diffuse with carriers into the blood. Cationic (“basic”) L-amino acids such as L-arginine<sup>+</sup>, L-lysine<sup>+</sup> and L-ornithine<sup>+</sup> are partly taken up into the enterocytes by  $\text{Na}^+$  independent mechanisms, as the membrane potential is a driving force for their uptake. *Anionic amino acids* like L-glutamate<sup>-</sup> and L-aspartate<sup>-</sup> which, for the most part, are broken down in the mucosal cells, also have their own ( $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  dependent) carrier systems. *Neutral amino acids* use several different transporters.

**AA absorption disorders** can be congenital and affect various amino acid groups. These disorders are often associated with defects of renal tubular reabsorption (renal aminoaciduria, e.g. cystinuria).

**Dipeptides and tripeptides** can be absorbed as intact molecules by a symport carrier (PepT1). The carrier is driven by an  $\text{H}^+$  gradient ( $\rightarrow$  B2), which in turn is generated by  $\text{H}^+$  secretion (tertiary active  $\text{H}^+$ -peptide symport,  $\rightarrow$  p.29 B5). Amino acids generally are much more rapidly absorbed as dipeptides and tripeptides than as free amino acids. Once they enter the cells, the peptides are hydrolyzed to free amino acids.



Since higher animals cannot synthesize **cobalamins (vitamin B<sub>12</sub>)**, they must obtain this *cobalt-containing coenzyme* from the diet. Animal products (liver, kidneys, fish, eggs, milk) are the main source.

**Cobalamin biochemistry.** Aqua- and OH-cobalamin are precursors of the two active forms, methyl- and adenosylcobalamin. *Methylcobalamin* is needed to form methionine from homocysteine; cobalamin transfers the methyl group required for this from N<sup>5</sup>-methyltetrahydrofolate (see below) to homocysteine. Some enzymes, e.g. methyl-malonyl-CoA mutase, need *adenosylcobalamin* to break and form carbon-carbon bonds.

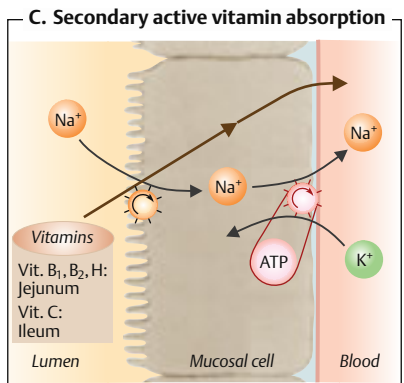
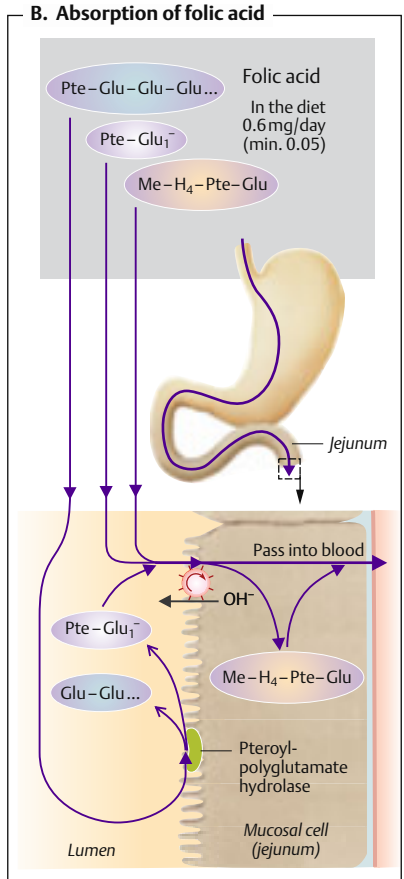
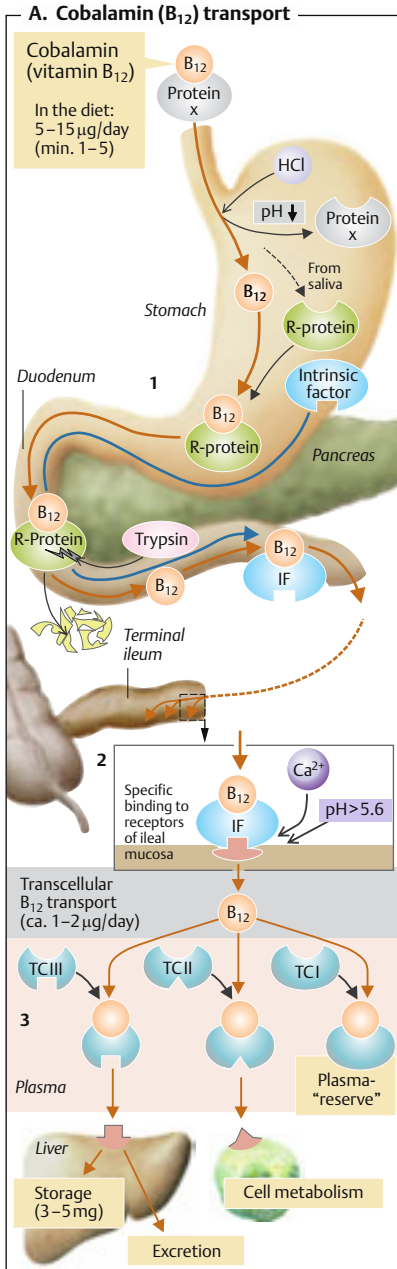
Cobalamins are relatively large and lipophobic molecules that require **transport proteins** (→ **A**). During passage through the GI tract, plasma and other compartments, cobalamins bind to (1) *intrinsic factor (IF)*, which is secreted by gastric parietal cells; (2) *transcobalamin II (TC II)* in plasma; and (3) *R proteins* in plasma (**TC I**), and granulocytes (**TC III**), saliva, bile, milk, etc. Gastric acid releases cobalamin from **dietary proteins**. In most cases, the cobalamin then binds to R protein in saliva or (if the pH is high) to IF (→ **A1**). The R protein is digested by trypsin in the duodenum, resulting in the release of cobalamin, which is then bound by (trypsin-resistant) **intrinsic factor**. The mucosa of the *terminal ileum* has highly specific receptors for the cobalamin-IF complex. It binds to these receptors and is absorbed by *receptor-mediated endocytosis*, provided a pH of >5.6 and Ca<sup>2+</sup> ions are available (→ **A2**). The receptor density and, thus, the absorption rate increases during pregnancy. Cobalamin binds to TC I, II and III in **plasma** (→ **A3**). TC II mainly distributes cobalamin to all cells undergoing division (TC II receptors, endocytosis). TC III (from granulocytes) transports excess cobalamin and unwanted cobalamin derivatives to the **liver** (TC III receptors), where it is either stored or excreted in the bile. TC I has a half-life of roughly 10 days and serves as a short-term depot for cobalamin in the plasma.

A vegan diet or disturbed cobalamin absorption can lead to severe **deficiency symptoms** like pernicious anemia and spinal cord damage (funicular myelosis). It takes years for these symptoms to manifest as the body initially has a reserve of 1000 times the daily requirement of 1 µg (→ p. 90).

**Folic acid/folate** (= pteroylglutamate). N<sup>5</sup>, N<sup>10</sup>-*methylenetetrahydrofolate*, the metabolically active form of folic acid (daily requirement: 0.1–0.2 mg) is needed for *DNA synthesis* (formation of deoxythymidylate from deoxyuridylylate). Folate in the **diet** usually occurs in forms that contain up to seven glutamyl residues (γ-linked peptide chain; *Pte-Glu*<sub>7</sub>) instead of pteroylglutamate (*Pte-Glu*<sub>1</sub>). Since only Pte-Glu<sub>1</sub> can be absorbed from the lumen of the proximal jejunum (→ **B**), its polyglutamyl chain must be shortened before absorption. This is done by *pteroylpolyglutamate hydrolases* located in the luminal membrane of enterocytes. The **absorption** of Pte-Glu<sub>1</sub> in exchange for OH<sup>-</sup> is mediated by a specific transporter. In mucosal cells, Pte-Glu<sub>1</sub> is then broken down to yield N<sup>5</sup>-methyltetrahydrofolate (5-Me-H<sub>4</sub>-folate) and other metabolites. If already present in the ingested food, these metabolites are absorbed from the intestinal lumen by the aforementioned mechanism. (The same applies to the cytostatic drug, *methotrexate*.) *Methylcobalamin* is needed to convert 5-Me-H<sub>4</sub>-folate to tetrahydrofolate (see above). The body stores about 7 mg of folic acid, enough for several months (cf. *folic acid deficiency*, → p. 90).

The **other water-soluble vitamins**—B<sub>1</sub> (thiamin), B<sub>2</sub> (riboflavin), C (ascorbic acid), and H (biotin, niacin)—are absorbed via Na<sup>+</sup> symport carriers (→ **C**). Vitamin C is absorbed from the ileum, whereas vitamins B<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>2</sub>, and H are absorbed from the jejunum. Members of the vitamin B<sub>6</sub> group (pyridoxal, pyridoxine, pyridoxamine) are probably absorbed by passive mechanisms.

**Fat-soluble vitamins**—A (retinol), D<sub>3</sub> (cholecalciferol), E (tocopherol), K<sub>1</sub> (phyloquinone), and K<sub>2</sub> (menaquinone)—must be incorporated into **micelles** for absorption (cf. lipid digestion, p. 254). The exact absorption mechanism has not yet been explained, though it is known to be partly saturation- and energy-dependent. Fat-soluble vitamins are incorporated into chylomicrons and VLDL for transport in plasma (→ p. 256ff.).



The average intake of water (in beverages and foodstuffs) is roughly 1.5 L per day. An additional 7 L of fluid are secreted into the gastrointestinal (GI) tract (saliva, gastric juices, bile, pancreatic juice and intestinal secretions), whereas only about 0.1 L/day is eliminated in the feces. The digestive tract must therefore absorb a net volume of at least 8.4 L of water per day. **GI absorption of water** occurs mainly in the jejunum and ileum, with smaller quantities being absorbed by the colon ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Water is driven through the intestinal epithelium by osmosis. When solutes ( $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , etc.) are absorbed in the intestine, water follows ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). (The stool contains only small quantities of  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and water.) Conversely, the secretion of substances into the lumen or the ingestion of non-absorbable substances leads to water fluxes into the lumen. Poorly absorbable substances therefore act as *laxatives* (e.g. sulfate, sorbitol, polyethylene glycol).

Water absorption is mainly driven by the **absorption of  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and organic compounds** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). The luminal concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  steadily decreases from the duodenum to the colon. That of  $\text{Na}^+$ , for example, is approximately 145 mmol/L in the duodenum, 125 mmol/L in the ileum and only 40 mmol/L in the colon ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).  $\text{Na}^+$  is absorbed by various **mechanisms**, and the  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase on the basolateral cell membrane is the primary driving mechanism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) for all of them ( $\rightarrow$  **B, D**).

◆ **Symport of  $\text{Na}^+$  and organic substances** ( $\rightarrow$  see pp. 26ff. and 260):  $\text{Na}^+$  passively influxes into cells of the duodenum and jejunum via symporter carriers, which actively cotransport glucose, amino acids, phosphates and other compounds (secondary active transport;  $\rightarrow$  **D1**). Since this is an electrogenic transport mechanism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 28), a *lumen-negative transepithelial potential* (LNTP;  $\rightarrow$  p. 164) forms that drives  $\text{Cl}^-$  out of the lumen ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**).

◆ **Parallel transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$** :  $\text{Na}^+$  ions in the lumen of the ileum are exchanged for  $\text{H}^+$  ions ( $\rightarrow$  **D3**) while  $\text{Cl}^-$  is exchanged for  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  at the same time ( $\rightarrow$  **D4**). The  $\text{H}^+$  ions combine with  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to yield  $\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{CO}_2$ , which diffuse out of the lumen. Most  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and, by subsequent osmosis,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is absorbed by this electroneutral transport mechanism.

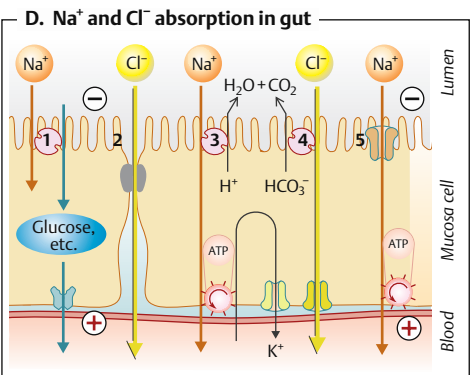
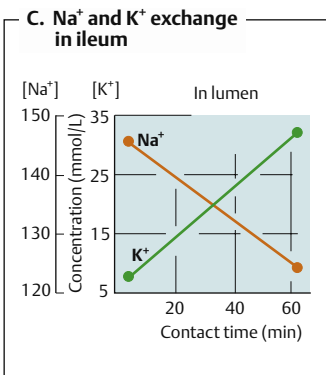
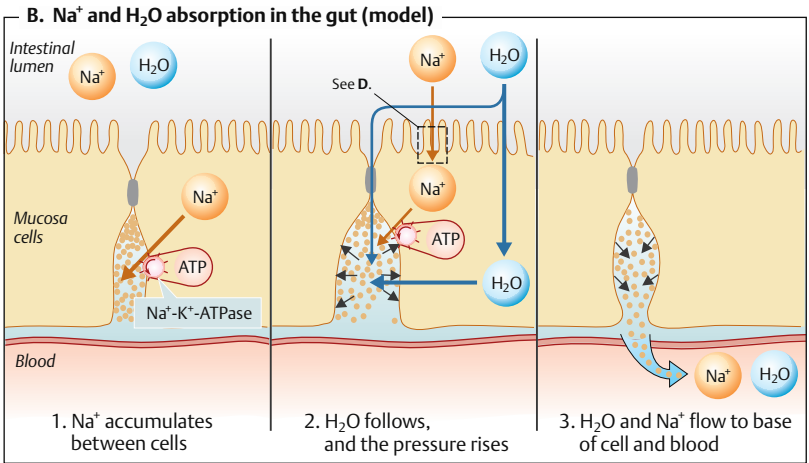
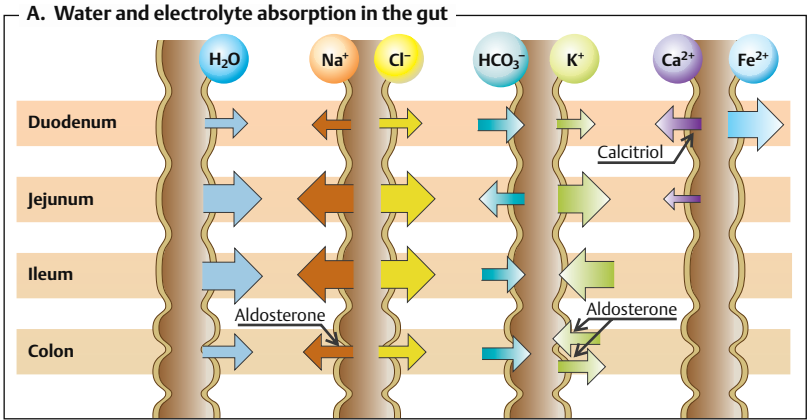
◆  **$\text{Na}^+$  diffusion**:  $\text{Na}^+$  in the colon is mainly absorbed through luminal  $\text{Na}^+$  channels ( $\rightarrow$  **D5**). This type of  $\text{Na}^+$  transport is electrogenic and aldosterone-dependent ( $\rightarrow$  p. 184). The related lumen-negative transepithelial potential (LNTP, see above) either leads to  $\text{K}^+$  secretion or drives  $\text{Cl}^-$  out of the lumen ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**).

The  **$\text{Cl}^-$  secretion** mechanism of epithelial cells (mainly *Lieberkühn's crypts*,  $\rightarrow$  p. 247, A16) is similar to that of the acini of salivary glands ( $\rightarrow$  p. 238). The efflux of  $\text{Cl}^-$  into the lumen and the associated efflux of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water are stimulated by cAMP and regulated by neurons and hormones such as VIP (vasoactive intestinal peptide) and prostaglandins. The physiological function of this form of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  secretion could be to dilute viscous chyme or to ensure the recirculation of water (from the crypts  $\rightarrow$  lumen  $\rightarrow$  villi  $\rightarrow$  crypts) to promote the absorption of poorly soluble substances.

**Cholera toxin** inhibits the GTPase of the  $G_s$  proteins ( $\rightarrow$  p. 276), thereby maintaining a maximal cAMP concentration and therefore a marked increase in  $\text{Cl}^-$  secretion. In response to it, large quantities of water and  $\text{Na}^+$  are secreted into the lumen, which can lead to severe diarrhea (up to 1 L/hour!).

In addition to  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  from pancreatic juice,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is also secreted into the intestinal lumen by the small and large intestine ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).  $\text{K}^+$  is secreted (aldosterone-dependent) by crypt cells of the colon (luminal  $\text{K}^+$  concentration  $\approx$  90 mmol/l) and reabsorbed via the  $\text{H}^+/\text{K}^+$  pump of the surface epithelium (similar to the mechanism in the stomach;  $\rightarrow$  p. 245 A). The aldosterone-dependent  $\text{K}^+$  secretion/absorption ratio determines the net amount of  $\text{K}^+$  excreted ( $\rightarrow$  **A** and p. 182). *Diarrhea* results in losses of  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (hypokalemia and metabolic acidosis;  $\rightarrow$  p. 142).

**$\text{Ca}^{2+}$** . The stool contains one-third of the dietary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  intake.  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is absorbed in the upper part of the small intestine ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) with the aid of intracellular *calcium-binding protein* (CaBP). Calcitriol increases CaBP synthesis, thereby increasing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  absorption ( $\rightarrow$  p. 294). Deficiencies of vitamin D or substances that form water-insoluble compounds with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (phytin, oxalate, fatty acids) decrease  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  absorption.  **$\text{Mg}^{2+}$**  is absorbed by similar mechanisms, but **iron (Fe)** is absorbed by a different mechanism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 90).



**Anatomy.** The terminal end of the gastrointestinal tract includes the *large intestine* (cecum and colon, ca. 1.3 m in length) and *rectum*. The large intestinal mucosa has characteristic pits (crypts), most of which are lined with mucus-forming cells (*goblet cells*). Some of the surface cells are equipped with a brush border membrane and reabsorb ions and water.

The large intestine has two **main functions**: (1) It serves as a *reservoir* for the intestinal contents (cecum, ascending colon, rectum). (2) It absorbs water and electrolytes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 264), so the ca. 500–1500 mL of chyme that reaches the large intestine can be reduced to about 100–200 mL. The large intestine is not an essential organ; therefore, large segments of the intestine can be removed—e.g., for treatment of cancer.

Water instilled into the **rectum** via an *enema* is reabsorbed. Anally delivered drugs (*suppositories*) also diffuse through the intestinal wall into the bloodstream. Substances administered by this route bypass the liver and also escape the effects of gastric acid and digestive enzymes.

**Motility.** There are different local mixing movements of the large intestine, e.g., powerful segmentation contractions associated with pouch formation (*haustriation*) and anterograde or retrograde *peristaltic waves* (pacemaker located in transverse colon). Thus, stool from the colon can also be transported to the cecum. Additionally, *mass movements* occur 2–3 times daily ( $\rightarrow$  A). They are generally stimulated by a meal and are caused by the gastrocolic reflex and gastrointestinal hormones.

The typical sequence of **mass movement** can be observed on X-ray films after administration of a barium meal, as shown in the diagrams ( $\rightarrow$  A1–8). **A1**, barium meal administered at 7:00 a.m. **A2**, 12 noon: the barium mass is already visible in the last loop of the ileum and in the cecum. Lunch accelerates the emptying of the ileum. **A3**, about 5 minutes later, the tip of the barium mass is choked off. **A4**, shortly afterwards, the barium mass fills the transverse colon. **A5**, haustriation divides the barium mass in the transverse colon, thereby mixing its contents. **A6–8**, a few minutes later (still during the meal), the transverse colon suddenly contracts around the leading end of the intestinal contents and rapidly propels them to the sigmoid colon.

**Intestinal bacteria.** The intestinal tract is initially sterile at birth, but later becomes colonized with orally introduced anaerobic bacteria during the first few weeks of life. The

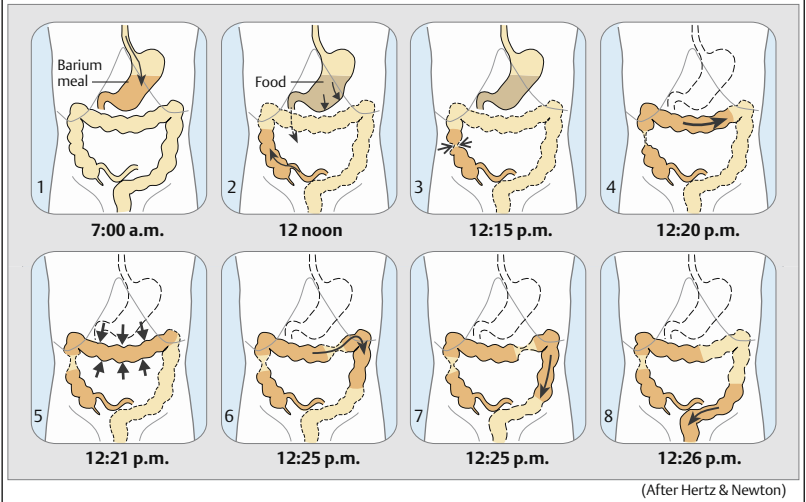
large intestine of a healthy adult contains  $10^{11}$  to  $10^{12}$  bacteria per mL of intestinal contents; the corresponding figure for the ileum is roughly  $10^6$ /mL. The low pH inside the stomach is an important barrier against pathogens. Consequently, there are virtually no bacteria in the upper part of the small intestine ( $0\text{--}10^4$ /mL). Intestinal bacteria increase the activity of intestinal immune defenses (“*physiological inflammation*”), and their metabolic activity is useful for the host. The bacteria synthesize vitamin K and convert indigestible substances (e.g. cellulose) or partially digested saccharides (e.g. lactose) into absorbable short-chain fatty acids and gases (methane,  $H_2$ ,  $CO_2$ ).

The **anus** is normally closed. Anal closure is regulated by Kohlrausch’s valve (transverse rectal fold), the puborectal muscles, the (involuntary) internal and (voluntary) external anal sphincter muscles, and a venous spongy body. Both sphincters contract tonically, the internal sphincter (smooth muscle) intrinsically or stimulated by sympathetic neurons ( $L_1, L_2$ ) via  $\alpha$ -adrenoceptors, the external sphincter muscle (striated muscle) by the pudendal nerve.

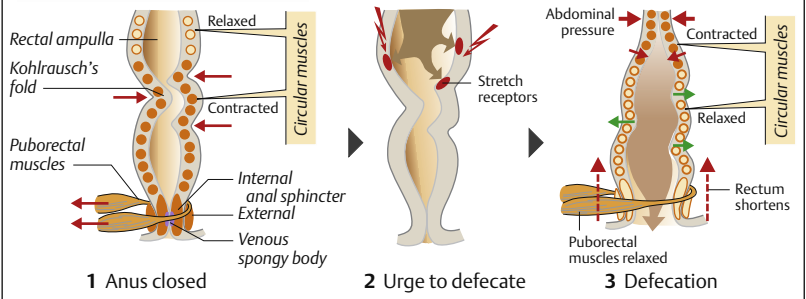
**Defecation.** Filling of the upper portion of the rectum (*rectal ampulla*) with intestinal contents stimulates the rectal stretch receptors ( $\rightarrow$  B2), causing *reflex relaxation of the internal sphincter* (accommodation via VIP neurons), *constriction of the external sphincter*, and an *urge to defecate*. If the (generally voluntary) decision to defecate is made, the rectum shortens, the puborectal and external anal sphincter muscles relax, and (by a spinal parasympathetic reflex via  $S_2\text{--}S_4$ ) annular contractions of the circular muscles of the descending colon, sigmoid colon and rectum—assisted by increased abdominal pressure—propel the feces out of the body ( $\rightarrow$  B). The normal **frequency of bowel evacuation** can range from 3 times a day to 3 times a week, depending on the dietary content of indigestible fiber (e.g. cellulose, lignin). Frequent passage of watery stools (*diarrhea*) or infrequent stool passage (*constipation*) can lead to various disorders.

**Stool (feces;  $\rightarrow$  C).** The average adult excretes 60–80 g of feces/day. Diarrhea can raise this over 200 g/d. Roughly  $1/4$  of the feces is composed of *dry matter*, in which in turn about  $1/3$  is attributable to bacteria.

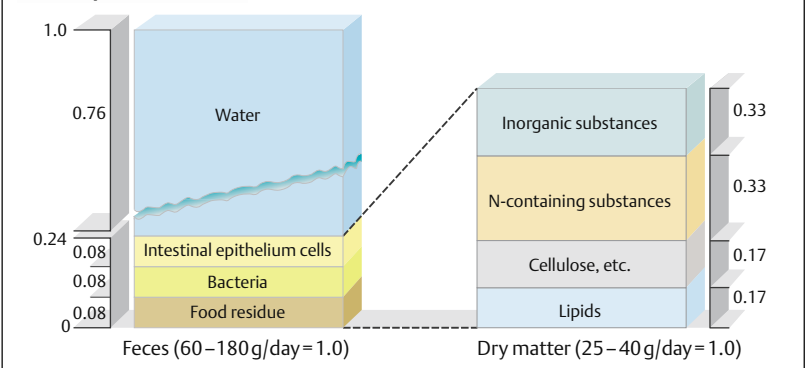
**A. Mass movement in large intestine**



**B. Anal closure and defecation**



**C. Composition of feces**



Unlike unicellular organisms, multicellular organisms have numerous specialized groups of cells and organs, the many different functions of which must be expediently *integrated* and *coordinated* (see also p.2). In mammals, the **nervous system** and **endocrine system** are chiefly responsible for control and integration, while the **immune system** serves as an information system for corporal immune defense (→ p.94ff.). These systems communicate by way of *electrical and/or chemical signals* (→ A).

Nerve impulses and hormonal signals serve to **control and regulate** (→ p.4) the metabolism and internal milieu (blood pressure, pH, water and electrolyte balance, temperature, etc.), physical growth and maturation, reproductive functions, sexual response, and responses to the social environment. The signals received by sensors (=sensory receptors) in the inner organs, musculoskeletal system, skin and the sensory organs, as well as psychological factors, skeletal muscles and other factors also play a part in regulation and control. The signals are used by many *feedback mechanisms* in the body (→ p.4).

**Nerve fibers** are specifically adapted for rapid transmission of finely graded signals. The nervous system consists of the **central nervous system** (CNS; → p.312ff.) and **peripheral nervous system**. The latter consists of:

- ◆ The **somatic nervous system**, which conducts impulses from non-visceral sensors to a center (afferent neurons) and controls the skeletal musculature (efferent neurons).
- ◆ The **peripheral autonomic nervous system** (→ p.78ff.), which consists of efferent neurons and mainly functions to control the circulatory system, inner organs and sexual functions. It is supplemented by:
  - ◆ **Visceral afferent neurons**, i.e., nerve fibers that conduct signals from inner organs to a center. They are usually located in the same nerves as autonomic fibers (e.g., in vagus nerve); and the
  - ◆ **Enteric nervous system**, which integrates the local functions of the esophagus, stomach and gut (→ p.236).

**Hormones.** Like neurotransmitters (see below) and the immune system's cytokines and chemokines (→ p.94ff.), hormones serve as *messenger substances* that are mainly utilized for *slower, long-term* transmission of sig-

nals. **Endocrine hormones** are carried by the blood to target structures great distances away. **Paracrine hormones** (and other paracrine transmitters) only act on cells in the immediate vicinity of the cells from which they are released. Hormones that act on the cells that produced the messenger substance are referred to as **autocrine hormones**.

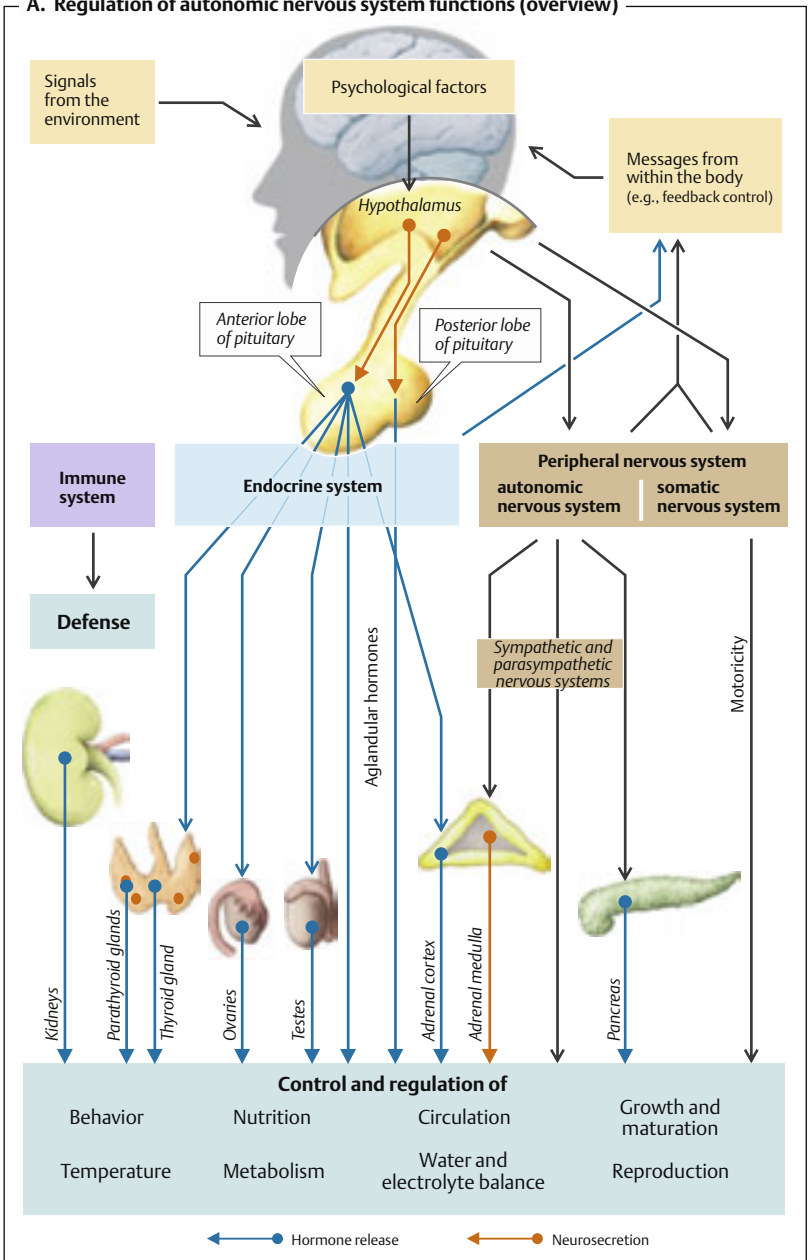
Hormones are synthesized in specialized glands, tissues and cells (e.g., *neuroendocrine cells*). Their **target organ** is either a subordinate endocrine gland (*glandotropic hormone*) or non-endocrine tissue (*aglandotropic hormone*). The **target cells** have high-affinity binding sites (**receptors**) for their specific hormone, so very low concentrations of the hormone suffice for signal transduction ( $10^{-6}$  to  $10^{-12}$  mol/L). The receptors on the target cells pick out the substances specifically intended for them from a wide variety of different messenger substances in their environment.

Hormones work closely with the nervous system to regulate *digestion, metabolism, growth, maturation, physical and mental development, maturation, reproduction, adaptation*, and the internal milieu of the body (*homeostasis*) (→ A). Most of these actions are predominately autonomous functions subject to central control by the **hypothalamus**, which is controlled by higher centers of the brain (→ p.332).

**Neurotransmitters** released at chemical **synapses** of nerve endings transmit signals to postsynaptic nerve fibers, muscles or glands (→ p.50ff.). Some neuropeptides released by presynaptic neurons also exert their effects in neighboring synapses, resulting in a kind of "paracrine" action.

Neurons can also secrete hormones, e.g., epinephrine, oxytocin and antidiuretic hormone. Some transmitter substances of the immune system, e.g. thymosin and various cytokines, also have endocrine effects.

A. Regulation of autonomic nervous system functions (overview)



Hormones are messenger substances that convey information signals relevant to cell function ( $\rightarrow$  p. 268). **Endocrine hormones**, i.e., those transported in the bloodstream, are produced in *endocrine glands* such as the hypothalamus, thyroid, parathyroid glands, adrenal medulla, pancreatic islets, ovaries and testes. They are also synthesized in diffusely scattered *endocrine cells* of the CNS, in C cells of the thyroid, and in the thymus, atria, kidneys, liver, gastrointestinal tract, etc. **Paracrine hormones**, i.e., those that affect nearby cells only (tissue hormones or *mediators*; see below) are secreted by cells widely distributed throughout the body.

#### Types of hormone.

1. **Peptide hormones** ( $\rightarrow$  A, dark blue areas) and **glycoprotein hormones** ( $\rightarrow$  A, light blue areas) are hydrophilic hormones stored in *secretory granules* and released by exocytosis as required. Multiple hormones can be produced from a single gene ( $\rightarrow$  e.g., POMC gene, p. 282) by variable splicing and posttranslational modification ( $\rightarrow$  p. 8ff.).

2. **Steroid hormones** ( $\rightarrow$  A, yellow areas) and **calcitriol** are chemically related lipophilic hormones metabolized from *cholesterol* ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 294, 296). They are not stored, but are synthesized as needed.

3. **Tyrosine derivatives** ( $\rightarrow$  A, orange areas) include (a) the *hydrophilic catecholamines* dopamine, epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\rightarrow$  p. 84) and (b) *lipophilic thyroid hormones* ( $T_3$ ,  $T_4$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 288).

The **lipophilic hormones** in (2) and (3b) are **transported** in the blood while bound to plasma proteins. Corticosteroids are carried bound to globulin and albumin, testosterone and estrogen to sex hormone-binding globulin and  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  to albumin and two other plasma proteins ( $\rightarrow$  p. 286).

**Hormone receptors.** The receptors (docking sites) for glycoprotein hormones, peptide hormones and catecholamines are transmembrane proteins ( $\rightarrow$  p. 14) that bind to their specific hormone on the outer cell surface. Many of these hormones induce the release of intracellular **second messengers** that transmit the hormone signal inside the cell. cAMP, cGMP, IP<sub>3</sub>, DAG, Ca<sup>2+</sup> and NO function as second messengers (and sometimes as third messengers ( $\rightarrow$  p. 276ff.)). Some peptide hormones

like insulin, prolactin, atriopeptin and numerous growth factors bind to cell surface receptors with cytosolic domains with *enzymatic activity* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 280). Steroid hormones, on the other hand, enter the cells themselves ( $\rightarrow$  p. 280). Once they bind to *cytosolic receptor proteins*, steroid hormones (as well as calcitriol,  $T_3$  and  $T_4$ ) are transported to the cell nucleus, where they influence transcription (genomic action). A target cell can have different receptors for different hormones (e.g., insulin and glucagon) or different receptors for a single hormone (e.g.,  $\alpha_1$  and  $\beta_2$  adrenoceptors for epinephrine).

**Hierarchy of hormones** ( $\rightarrow$  A). The secretion of hormones is often triggered by neural impulses from the CNS. The *hypothalamus* is the main neurohormonal control center ( $\rightarrow$  p. 282 and 332). Hypothalamic neurons extend to the posterior pituitary (neurohypophysis). The hormones are secreted either by the hypothalamus itself or by the posterior pituitary. Hypothalamic hormones also control hormone release from the *anterior pituitary* (adenohypophysis). Anterior pituitary *glandotropic hormones* control *peripheral endocrine glands* ( $\rightarrow$  A top, green areas), which release the end-hormone ( $\rightarrow$  A). The original signal can be *amplified* or *modulated* at these relay sites ( $\rightarrow$  p. 274).

**Pituitary hormones.** Hypothalamic hormones control *anterior pituitary* hormone secretion by either stimulating or inhibiting hormone production. They are therefore called *releasing hormones* (RH) or *release-inhibiting hormones* (IH), resp. ( $\rightarrow$  A and table). Most anterior pituitary hormones are glandotropic ( $\rightarrow$  p. 282). The *posterior pituitary* hormones are released by neuronal signals and are mainly aglandotropic ( $\rightarrow$  p. 282).

Other **endocrine hormones** are secreted largely independent of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis, e.g., *pancreatic hormones*, *parathyroid hormone* (PTH), *calcitonin* and *calcitriol*, *angiotensin II*, *aldosterone* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 184ff.), *erythropoietin* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 88) and *gastrointestinal hormones* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236). *Atriopeptin* is secreted from the heart atrium in response to stretch stimuli ( $\rightarrow$  p. 170), whereas the release of *melatonin* is subject to afferent neuron control ( $\rightarrow$  p. 336).

Some of these hormones (e.g., angiotensin II) and *tissue hormones* or **mediators** exert *paracrine effects* within endocrine and exocrine glands, the stomach wall, other organs, and on inflammatory processes. Bradykinin (→ pp. 216 and 238), histamine (→ pp. 100 and 244), serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine, → p. 102) and eicosanoids are members of this group.

**Eicosanoids.** Prostaglandins (PG), thromboxane (TX), leukotrienes and epoxyeicosatrienoates are eicosanoids (Greek εικοσι = twenty [C atoms]) derived in humans from the fatty acid **arachidonic acid (AA)**. (Prostaglandins derived from AA have the index number 2). AA occurs as an ester in the phospholipid layer of the cell membranes and is obtained from dietary sources (meat), synthesized from linoleic acid, an essential fatty acid, and released by diacylglycerol lipase (→ p. 278).

Pathways of **eicosanoid synthesis** from arachidonic acid (AA):

1. *Cyclooxygenase pathway*: Cyclooxygenase (COX)-1 and COX-2 convert AA into PGG<sub>2</sub>, which gives rise to PGH<sub>2</sub>, the primary substance of the biologically active compounds PGE<sub>2</sub>, PGD<sub>2</sub>, PGF<sub>2α</sub>, PGI<sub>2</sub> (prostacyclin) and TXA<sub>2</sub>. COX-1 and 2 are inhibited by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (e.g., Aspirin®).
2. *Lipoxygenase pathway*: Leukotriene A<sub>4</sub> is synthesized from AA (via the intermediate 5-HPETE = 5-hydroperoxyeicosatetraenoate) by way of 5-lipoxygenase (especially in neutrophilic granulocytes). Leukotriene A<sub>4</sub> is the parent substance of the leukotrienes C<sub>4</sub>, D<sub>4</sub> and E<sub>4</sub>. The significance of 12-lipoxygenase (especially in thrombocytes) is not yet clear, but 15-lipoxygenase is known to produce vasoactive lipoxins (LXA<sub>4</sub>, LXB<sub>4</sub>).
3. *Cytochrome P450-epoxygenase* produces epoxyeicosatrienoates (EpETRE = EE).

Typical **effects of eicosanoids**:

**PGE<sub>2</sub>** dilates the bronchial and vascular musculature (and keeps the lumen of the fetal ductus arteriosus and foramen ovale open; → p. 222), stimulates intestinal and uterine contractions, protects the gastric mucosa (→ p. 244), inhibits lipolysis, increases the glomerular filtration rate (GFR), plays a role in fever development (→ p. 226), sensitizes nociceptive nerve endings (pain) and increases the permeability of blood vessels (inflammation). **PGD<sub>2</sub>** induces bronchoconstriction. **PGI<sub>2</sub> (prostacyclin)** synthesized in the endothelium, is vasodilatory and inhibits platelet aggregation.

**TXA<sub>2</sub>**, on the other hand, occurs in platelets, promotes platelet aggregation and acts as a vasoconstrictor (→ p. 102). **11,12-EpETRE** has a vasodilatory effect (= EDHF, → p. 216).

### Hormones (h.) of the hypothalamus and pituitary

Name*	Abbreviation/synonyme
<b>Hypothalamus</b>	
The suffix “-liberin” denotes releasing h. (RH) or factor (RF); “-statin” is used for release-inhibiting h. (IH) or factors (IF)	
Corticoliberin	Corticotropin RH, CRH, CRF
Gonadoliberin	Gonadotropin RH, Gn-RH; ICSH
Prolactostatin	Prolactin IH, PIH, PIF, dopamine
Somatoliberin	Somatotropin RH, SRH, SRF, GHRH, GRH
Somatostatin**	Somatotropin (growth h.) IH, SIH
Thyroliberin	Thyrotropin RH, TRH, TRF

### Anterior lobe of the pituitary

Corticotropin	Adrenocorticotropic h. (ACTH)
Follitropin	Follicle-stimulating h. (FSH)
Lutropin	Luteinizing h. (LH), interstitial cell-stimulating h. (ICSH)
Melanotropin	α-Melanocyte-stimulating h. (α-MSH), α-melanocortin
Somatotropin	Somatotropic h. (STH), growth h. (GH)
Thyrotropin	Thyroid stimulating h. (TSH)
Prolactin	PRL, lactogenic (mammatropic) h.

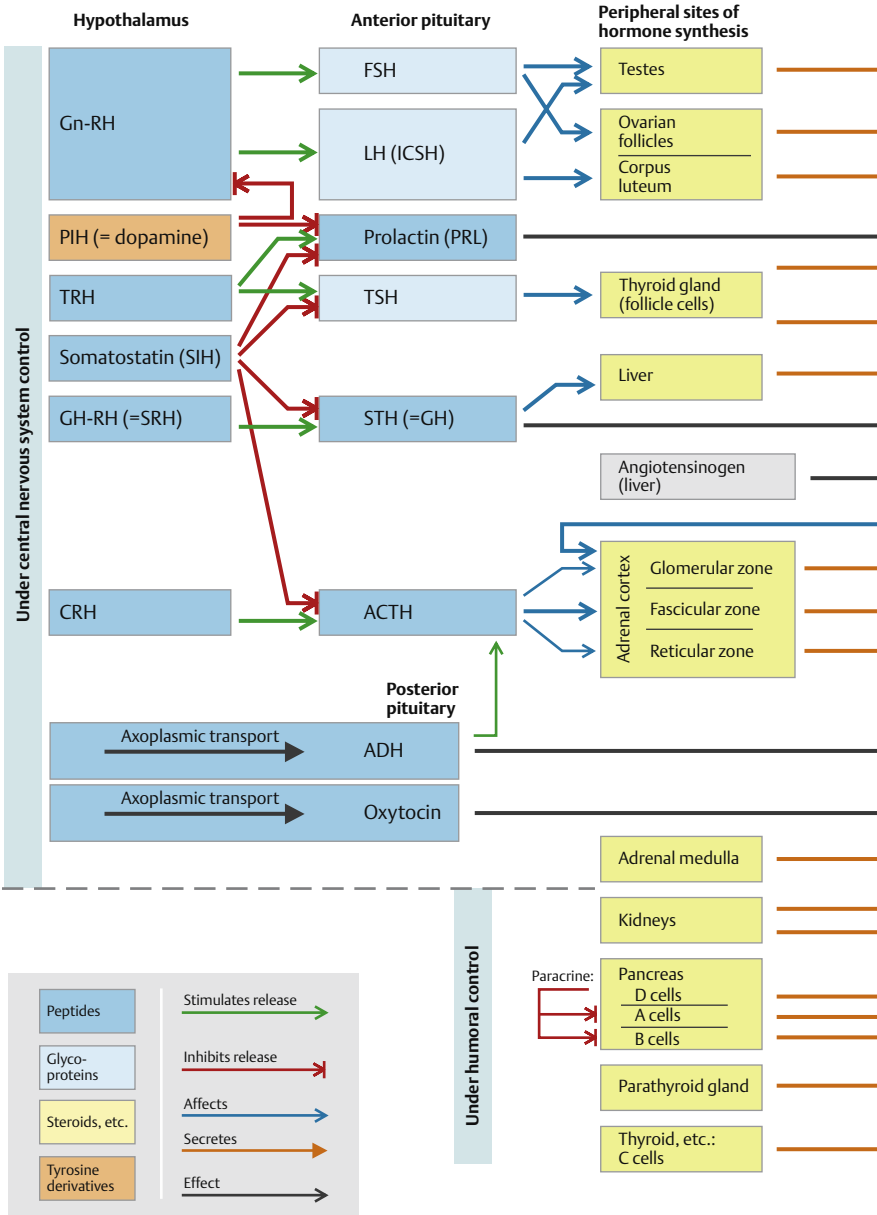
### Posterior lobe of the pituitary

Oxytocin	–
Adiuretin	Anti-diuretic h. ADH, (arginine-) vasopressin (AVP)

\* Names generally recommended by IUPAC-IUB Committee on Biochemical Nomenclature.

\*\* Also synthesized in gastrointestinal organs, etc.

**A. The hormones (simplified overview excluding tissue hormones)**





Hormones and other humoral signals function to provide **feedback control**, a mechanism in which the response to a signal feeds back on the signal generator (e.g., endocrine gland). The speed at which control measures are implemented depends on the rate at which the signal substance is broken down—the quicker the degradation process, the faster and more flexible the control.

In **negative feedback control**, the response to a feedback signal opposes the original signal. In the example shown in **A1**, a rise in plasma cortisol in response to the release of corticoliberin (corticotropin-releasing hormone, CRH) from the hypothalamus leads to down-regulation of the signal cascade “CRH  $\Rightarrow$  ACTH  $\Rightarrow$  adrenal cortex,” resulting in a decrease in cortisol secretion. In shorter feedback loops, ACTH can also negatively feed back on the hypothalamus ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**), and cortisol, the *end-hormone*, can negatively feed back on the anterior pituitary ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). In some cases, the *metabolic parameter* regulated by a hormone (e.g., plasma glucose concentration) rather than the hormone itself represents the feedback signal. In the example ( $\rightarrow$  **B**), glucagon increases blood glucose levels (while insulin decreases them), which in turn inhibits the secretion of glucagon (and stimulates that of insulin). *Neuronal signals* can also serve as feedback (*neuroendocrine feedback*) used, for example, to regulate plasma osmolality ( $\rightarrow$  p. 170).

In **positive feedback control**, the response to the feedback amplifies the original signal and heightens the overall response (e.g., in *autocrine regulation*; see below).

The higher hormone not only controls the synthesis and excretion of the end-hormone, but also controls the **growth of peripheral endocrine gland**. If, for example, the end-hormone concentration in the blood is too low despite maximum synthesis and secretion of the existing endocrine cells, the gland will enlarge to increase end-hormone production. This type of **compensatory hypertrophy** is observed for instance in goiter development ( $\rightarrow$  p. 290) and can also occur after surgical excision of part of the gland.

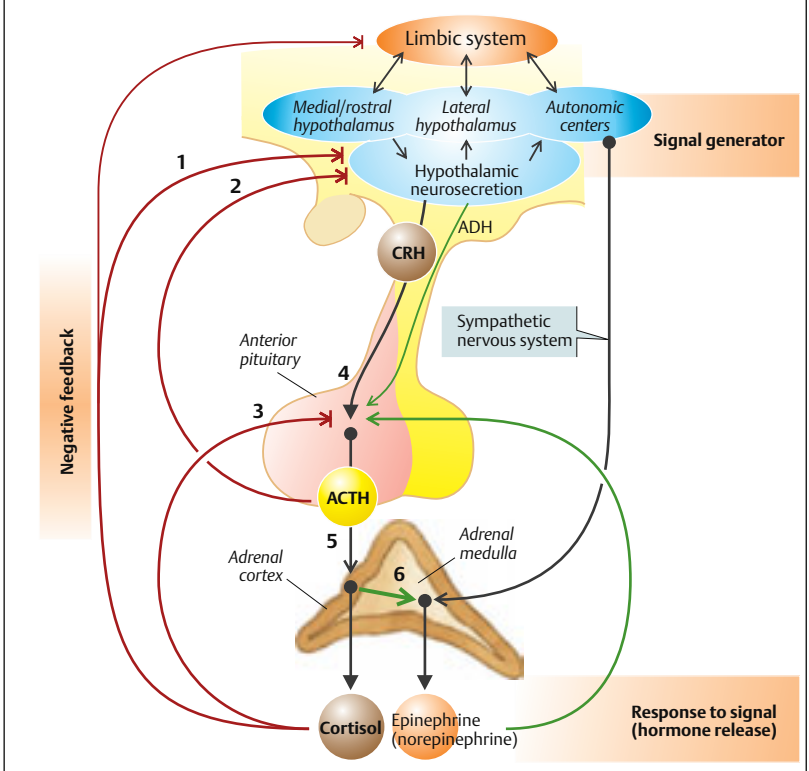
**Therapeutic administration** of a hormone (e.g., cortisone, a cortisol substitute) have a similar effect on higher hormone secretion (ACTH and CRH in the example) as that of the end-hormone (cortisol in the example) normally secreted by the peripheral gland (adrenal cortex in this case). *Long-term* administration of an end-hormone would therefore lead to inhibition and atrophy of the endocrine gland or cells that normally produce that hormone. This is known as **compensatory atrophy**.

A **rebound effect** can occur if secretion of the higher hormone (e.g., ACTH) is temporarily elevated after discontinuation of end-hormone administration.

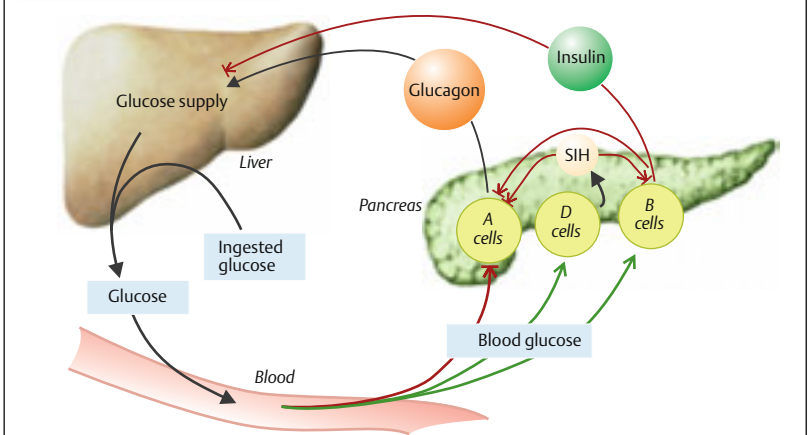
The **principal functions** of *endocrine hormones*, *paracrine hormones* and other humoral transmitter substances are to control and regulate:

- ◆ *enzyme activity* by altering the conformation (*allosterism*) or inhibiting/stimulating the synthesis of the enzyme (induction);
  - ◆ *transport processes*, e.g., by changing the rate of insertion and synthesis of ion channels/carriers or by changing their opening probability or affinity;
  - ◆ *growth* (see above), i.e., increasing the rate of mitosis (*proliferation*), “programmed cell death” (*apoptosis*) or through cell differentiation or dedifferentiation;
  - ◆ *secretion of other hormones*. Regulation can occur via endocrine pathways (e.g., ACTH-mediated cortisol secretion;  $\rightarrow$  **A5**), a short portal vein-like circuit within the organ (e.g., effect of CRH on ACTH secretion,  $\rightarrow$  **A4**), or the effect of cortisol from the adrenal cortex on the synthesis of epinephrine in the adrenal medulla, ( $\rightarrow$  **A6**), or via paracrine pathways (e.g., the effect of somatostatin, SIH, on the secretion of insulin and glucagon;  $\rightarrow$  **B**).
- Cells that have receptors for their own humoral signals transmit **autocrine signals** that function to
- ◆ exert *negative feedback control* on a target cell, e.g., to discontinue secretion of a transmitter (e.g., norepinephrine;  $\rightarrow$  p. 84);
  - ◆ *coordinate* cells of the same type (e.g., in growth);
  - ◆ exert *positive feedback control* on the secreting cell or to cells of the same type. These mechanisms serve to amplify weak signals as is observed in the eicosanoid secretion or in T cell monoclonal expansion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 96ff.).

**A. Regulation of cortisol and epinephrine concentrations in plasma**



**B. Control of blood glucose**



Hormones, neurotransmitters ( $\rightarrow$  p. 55 and p. 82), cytokines and chemokines ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.) act as *messenger substances* (**first messengers**) that are transported to their respective target cells by extracellular pathways. The target cell has a high-affinity binding site (**receptor**) for its *specific* messenger substance.

**Glycoprotein and peptide messengers** as well as **catecholamines** bind to cell surface receptors on the target cell. *Binding of the messenger to its receptor* (with certain exceptions, e.g. insulin and prolactin;  $\rightarrow$  p. 280) triggers certain protein-protein interactions (and sometimes protein-phospholipid interactions). This leads to the release of secondary messenger substances (**second messengers**) that forward the signal within the cell. Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP), inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>), 1,2-diacylglycerol (DAG) and Ca<sup>2+</sup> are such second messengers. Since the molecular structure of the receptor ensures that the effect of the first messenger will be specific, multiple first messengers can use the same second messenger. Moreover, the intracellular concentration of the second messenger can be raised by one messenger and lowered by another. In many cases, different types of receptors exist for a single first messenger.

#### cAMP as a Second Messenger

For a cAMP-mediated response to occur, the cell membrane must contain stimulatory (G<sub>s</sub>) or inhibitory (G<sub>i</sub>) **G proteins** (guanyl nucleotide-binding proteins) ( $\rightarrow$  A1). These G proteins consist of three subunits—alpha ( $\alpha_5$  or  $\alpha_i$ ), beta ( $\beta$ ) and gamma ( $\gamma$ )—and are therefore *heterotrimers*. Guanosine diphosphate (GDP) is bound to the  $\alpha$ -subunit of an inactive G protein. Once the first **messenger (M)** binds to the **receptor (Rec.)**, the M-Rec. complex conjugates with the G<sub>s</sub>-GDP (or G<sub>i</sub>-GDP) molecule ( $\rightarrow$  A2). GDP is then replaced by cytosolic GTP, and the  $\beta\gamma$ -subunit and the M-Rec. complex dissociate from the  $\alpha$ -subunit if Mg<sup>2+</sup> is present ( $\rightarrow$  A3).  $\alpha_s$ -GTP or  $\alpha_i$ -GTP remain as the final products. **Adenylate cyclase** on the inside of the cell membrane is activated by  $\alpha_s$ -GTP (cytosolic cAMP concentration rises) and inhibited by  $\alpha_i$ -GTP (cAMP concentration falls;  $\rightarrow$  A3).

**G<sub>s</sub>-activating messengers.** ACTH, adenosine (A<sub>2A</sub> and A<sub>2B</sub> rec.), antidiuretic hormone = vasopressin (V<sub>2</sub> rec.), epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\beta_1$ ,  $\beta_2$ ,  $\beta_3$  adrenoceptors), calcitonin, CGRP, CRH, dopamine (D<sub>1</sub> and D<sub>5</sub> rec.), FSH, glucagon, histamine (H<sub>2</sub> rec.), oxytocin (V<sub>2</sub> rec., see above), many prostaglandins (DP, IP, EP<sub>2</sub> and EP<sub>4</sub> rec.), serotonin = 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT<sub>4</sub> and 5-HT<sub>7</sub> rec), secretin and VIP activate G<sub>s</sub> proteins, thereby **raising cAMP levels**. TRH and TSH induce partial activation.

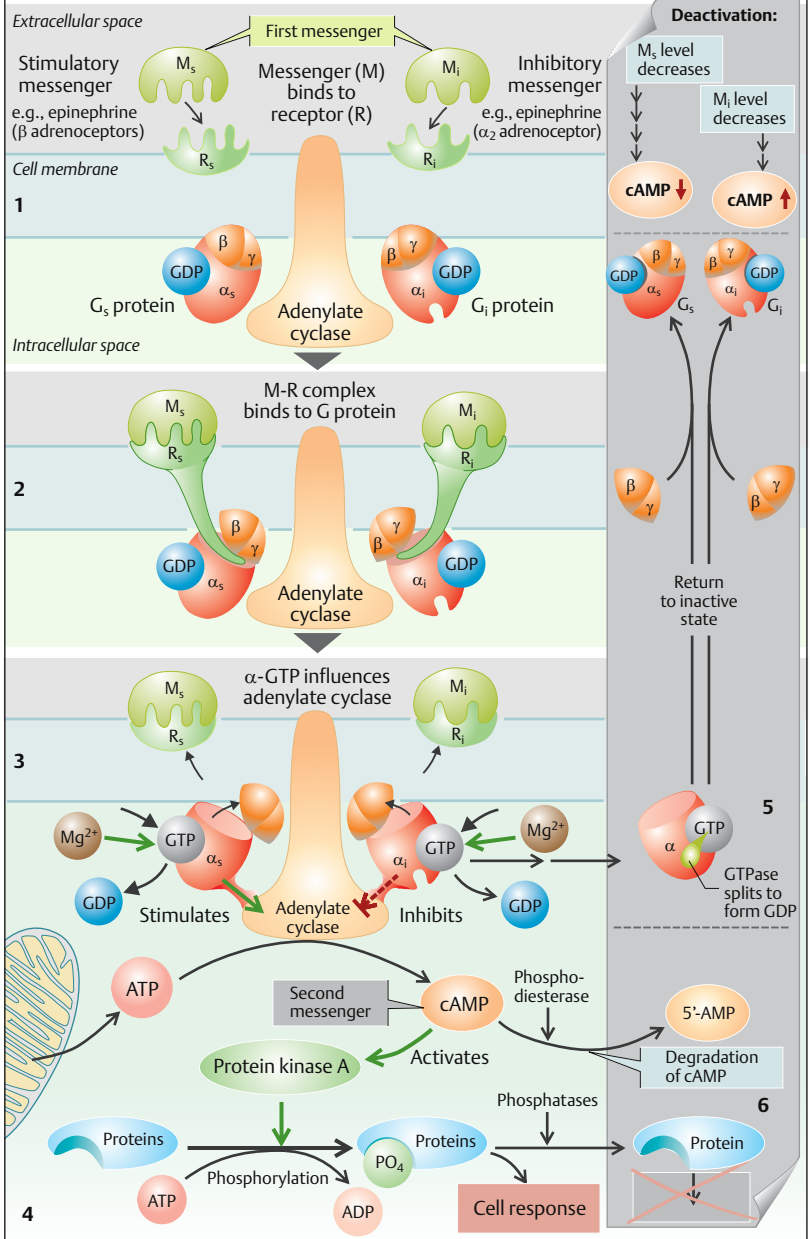
**G<sub>i</sub>-activating messengers.** Some of the above messenger substances also activate G<sub>i</sub> proteins (thereby **lowering cAMP levels**) using a different binding receptor. Acetylcholine (M<sub>2</sub> and M<sub>4</sub> rec.), adenosine (A<sub>1</sub> and A<sub>3</sub> rec.), epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\alpha_2$  adrenoceptors), angiotensin II, chemokines, dopamine (D<sub>2</sub>, D<sub>3</sub> and D<sub>4</sub> rec.), GABA (GABA<sub>B</sub> rec.), glutamate (mGLU<sub>2-4</sub> and mGLU<sub>6-8</sub> rec.), melatonin, neuropeptide Y, opioids, serotonin = 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT<sub>1</sub> rec.), somatostatin and various other substances activate G<sub>i</sub> proteins.

**Effects of cAMP.** cAMP activates type A protein kinases (**PKA = protein kinase A**) which then activate other proteins (usually enzymes and membrane proteins, but sometimes the receptor itself) by **phosphorylation** ( $\rightarrow$  A4). The specific response of the cell depends on the type of protein phosphorylated, which is determined by the type of protein kinases present in the target cell. Phosphorylation converts the proteins from an inactive to an active form or vice versa.

**Hepatic glycogenolysis**, for instance, is dually increased by cAMP and PKA. Glycogen synthase catalyzing glycogen synthesis is inactivated by phosphorylation whereas glycogen phosphorylase stimulating glycogenolysis is activated by cAMP-mediated phosphorylation.

**Signal transduction** comprises the entire signaling pathway from the time the first messenger binds to the cell to the occurrence of cellular effect, during which time the signal can be (a) *modified* by other signals and (b) *amplified* by many powers of ten. A single adenylate cyclase molecule can produce numerous cAMP and PKA molecules, which in turn can phosphorylate an enormous number of enzyme molecules. The interposition of more kinases can lead to the formation of long kinase cascades that additionally amplify the original signal while receiving further regulatory signals. ▶

**A. cAMP as second messenger**



► **Deactivation of the signaling cascade** (→ A, right panel) is induced by the  $\alpha$ -subunit in that its GTP molecule splits off GDP and  $P_i$  after reacting with its *GTPase* (→ A5), and the subunit subsequently binds to the  $\beta\gamma$  subunits to again form the trimeric G protein. *Phosphodiesterase* also converts cAMP into inactive 5'-AMP (→ A4, A6), and *phosphatases* dephosphorylate the protein previously phosphorylated by protein kinase A (→ A4). Another way to inactivate a receptor in the presence of high messenger concentrations is to make the receptor insensitive by phosphorylating it (*desensitization*).

**Cholera toxin** inhibits the GTPase, thereby blocking its deactivating effect on adenylate cyclase (→ A5). This results in extremely high levels of intracellular cAMP. When occurring in intestinal cells, this can lead to severe diarrhea (→ p. 264). **Pertussis** (whooping cough) **toxin** and **forskolin** also lead to an increase in the cytosolic cAMP concentration. Pertussis toxin does this by inhibiting  $G_i$  protein and thereby blocking its inhibitory effect on adenylate cyclase, while forskolin directly activates adenylate cyclase. **Theophylline** and **caffeine** inhibit the conversion of cAMP to 5'-AMP, which extends the life span of cAMP and prolongs the effect of the messenger.

Certain **ion channels** are regulated by  $G_s$ ,  $G_i$  and other G proteins ( $G_o$ ) with or without the aid of adenylate cyclase. Some  $Ca^{2+}$  channels are activated by  $G_s$  proteins and inactivated by  $G_o$  proteins, whereas some  $K^+$  channels are activated by  $G_o$  proteins and (the  $\beta\gamma$  subunits of)  $G_i$  proteins (→ p. 83 B).  $G_{olf}$  in olfactory receptors, **transducin** in retinal rods (→ p. 354ff.), and  **$\alpha$ -gustducin** in gustatory sensors are also members of the G protein family (→ p. 344).

### IP<sub>3</sub> and DAG as Second Messengers

As in the case of  $G_s$  proteins, once the first messenger using this transduction pathway binds to its receptor outside the cell, the  $\alpha_q$  subunit dissociates from the heterotrimeric  **$G_q$  protein** and activates phospholipase C- $\beta$  (**PLC- $\beta$** ) on the inside of the cell membrane (→ B1). PLC- $\beta$  converts phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (*PIP<sub>2</sub>*), to **inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>)** and **diacylglycerol (DAG)**. IP<sub>3</sub> and DAG function as parallel second messengers with different actions that are exerted either independently or jointly (→ B1).

IP<sub>3</sub> is a hydrophilic molecule carried via the cytosol to  $Ca^{2+}$  stores within the cell (mainly in the endoplasmic reticulum; → p. 36). IP<sub>3</sub> binds there to  $Ca^{2+}$  channels to open them (→ B2), leading to an efflux of  $Ca^{2+}$  from the intracellular stores into the cytosol. In the cytosol,  $Ca^{2+}$  acts as a *third messenger* that regulates various cell functions, e.g., by interacting with the cAMP signaling chain. Many  $Ca^{2+}$ -related activities are mediated by *calmodulin*, a calcium-binding protein (→ pp. 36 and 70).

**DAG** is a lipophilic molecule that remains in the cell membrane and has two main functions:

- ◆ DAG is broken down by diacylglycerol lipase to yield *arachidonic acid*, a precursor of eicosanoids (→ B3 and p. 271).

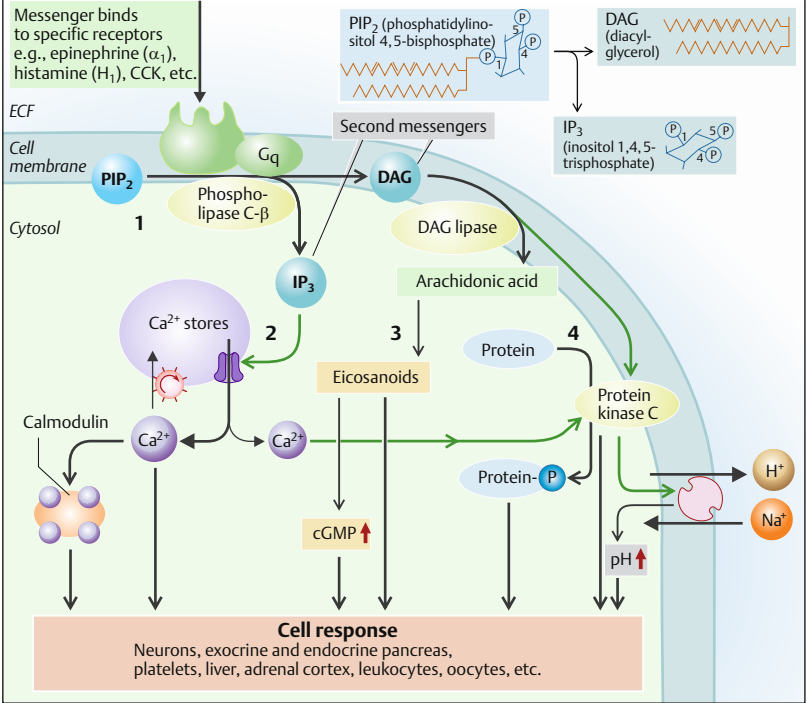
- ◆ DAG activates *protein kinase C (PKC)*. PKC is  $Ca^{2+}$ -dependent (hence the "C") because the  $Ca^{2+}$  released by IP<sub>3</sub> (see above) is needed to transfer PKC from the cytosol to the intracellular side of the cell membrane (→ B4). Thus activated PKC phosphorylates the serine or threonine residues of many proteins.

PKC triggers a series of other phosphorylation reactions (high signal amplification) that ultimately lead to the phosphorylation of **MAP kinase** (mitogen-activated protein kinase). It enters the cell nucleus and activates *Elk-1*, a gene-regulating protein. *NF- $\kappa$ B*, another gene-regulating protein, is also released in response to PKC phosphorylation. In addition, PKC activates *Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> antiporters*, thereby raising the **cellular pH**—a stimulus that triggers many other cellular reactions.

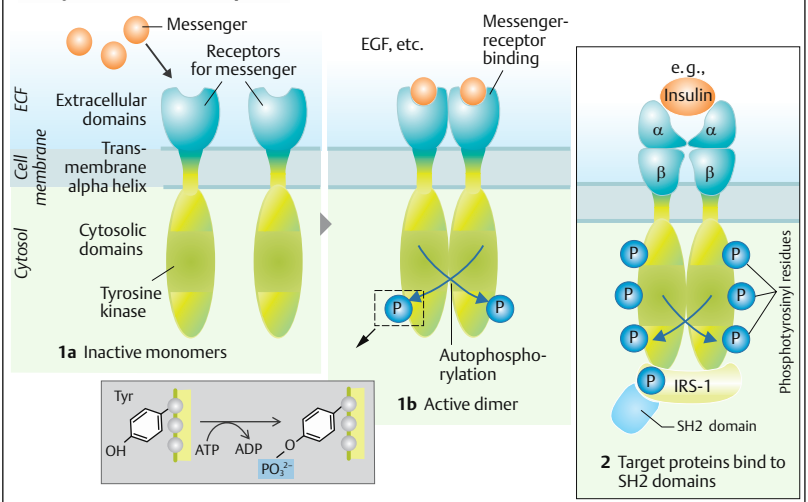
**IP<sub>3</sub> and DAG activating messengers** include acetylcholine ( $M_1$  and  $M_3$  cholinceptors), antidiuretic hormone = vasopressin ( $V_1$  rec.), epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\alpha_1$  adrenoreceptor), bradykinin, CCK, endothelin, gastrin, glutamate (mGLU<sub>1</sub> and mGLU<sub>2</sub> rec.), GRP, histamine ( $H_1$  rec.), leukotrienes, neurotensin, oxytocin and various prostaglandins (FP, TP, and  $E_{p_1}$  rec.), serotonin = 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT<sub>2</sub> rec.), tachykinin, thromboxane  $A_2$ . TRH and TSH induce partial activation.

**Deactivation of the signaling cascade** can also be achieved through *self-inactivation* of the G proteins involved (GTP cleavage) and phosphatase (see above) as well as by degradation of IP<sub>3</sub>. ►

**B. Diacylglycerol (DAG) and inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>) as second messengers**



**C. Tyrosine kinase receptors**



### ► Enzyme-Linked Cell Surface Receptors For Messenger Substances

These (G protein-independent) receptors, together with their cytosolic domains, act as enzymes that are activated when a messenger binds to the receptor's extracellular domain. There are five classes of these receptors:

1. **Receptor guanylyl cyclases** convert GTP into the second messenger cGMP, which activates protein kinase G (PKG; see below). The *atriopeptin receptor* belongs to this class.

2. **Receptor tyrosine kinases** ( $\rightarrow$  C), phosphorylate proteins (of same or different type) at the OH group of their tyrosyl residues. The receptors for *insulin* and various *growth factors* (GF) such as e.g., E[epidermal]GF, PDGF, N[nerve]GF, F[fibroblast]GF, H[hepatocyte]GF, and I[insulin-like]GF-1 belong to this class of receptors.

Signals regarding first messenger binding (e.g., EGF and PDGF) are often transferred inside the cell via binding of two receptors (**dimerization**; C1a  $\Rightarrow$  C1b) and subsequent mutual phosphorylation of their cytosolic domain (**autophosphorylation**,  $\rightarrow$  C1b). The receptor for certain hormones, like *insulin* and *IGF-1*, is from the beginning a heterotetramer ( $\alpha_2\beta_2$ ) that undergoes autophosphorylation before phosphorylating another protein (*insulin receptor substrate-1*, *IRS-1*) that in turn activates intracellular target proteins containing SH2 domains ( $\rightarrow$  C2).

3. **Receptor serine/threonine kinases**, which like the *TGF- $\beta$  receptor*, function similar to kinases in Group 2, the only difference being that they phosphorylate serine or threonine residues of the target protein instead of tyrosine residues (as with PKC; see above).

4. **Tyrosine kinase-associated receptors** are those where the receptor works in combination with non-receptor tyrosine kinases (chiefly proteins of the Src family) that phosphorylate the target protein. The receptors for *STH*, *prolactin*, *erythropoietin* and numerous *cytokines* belong to this group.

5. **Receptor tyrosine phosphatases** remove phosphate groups from tyrosine residues. The CD45 receptor involved in T cell activation belongs to this group.

### Hormones with Intracellular Receptors

Steroid hormones ( $\rightarrow$  p.272 ff., yellow areas), calcitriol and thyroid hormones are like other

hormones in that they induce a *specific cell response* with the difference being that they activate a different type of signaling cascade in the cell. They are *lipid-soluble* substances that freely penetrate the cell membrane.

**Steroid hormones** bind to their respective *cytoplasmic receptor protein* in the target cell ( $\rightarrow$  D). This binding leads to the dissociation of inhibitory proteins (e.g., heat shock protein, HSP) from the receptors. The *hormone-receptor protein complex* (H-R complex) then migrates to the cell nucleus (*translocation*), where it activates (**induces**) or inhibits the transcription of certain genes. The resulting increase or decrease in synthesis of the respective protein (e.g., AIPs;  $\rightarrow$  p. 184) is responsible for the actual cell response ( $\rightarrow$  D).

**Triiodothyronine** ( $T_3$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p.288ff.) and **calcitriol** ( $\rightarrow$  p.294) bind to their respective receptor proteins in the cell nucleus (*nuclear receptors*). These receptors are *hormone-activated transcription factors*. Those of calcitriol can induce the transcription of calcium-binding protein, which plays an important role in interstitial  $Ca^{2+}$  absorption ( $\rightarrow$  p.264).

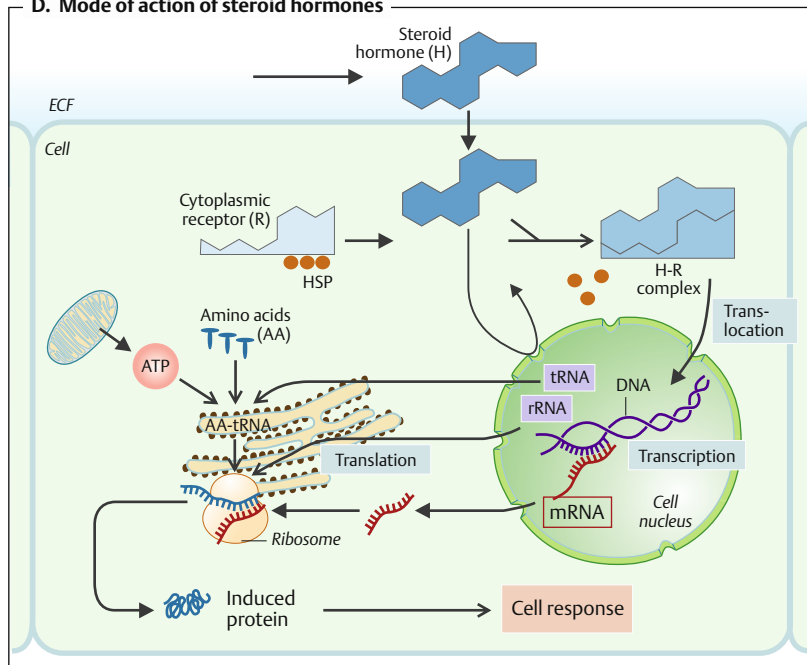
Recent research indicates that steroid hormones and calcitriol also regulate cell function by **non-genomic control mechanisms**.

### Nitric Oxide as a Transmitter Substance

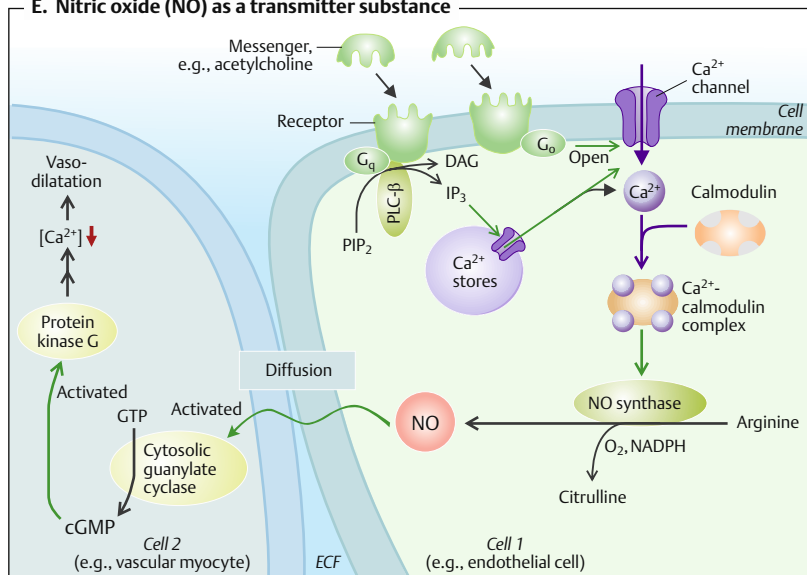
In nitrogenergic neurons and endothelial tissues, **nitric (mon)oxide (NO)** is released by  $Ca^{2+}$ /calmodulin-mediated activation of neuronal or endothelial **nitric oxide synthase (NOS)** ( $\rightarrow$  E). Although NO has a half-life of only a few seconds, it diffuses into neighboring cells (e.g., from endothelium to vascular myocytes) so quickly that it activates **cytoplasmic guanylyl cyclase**, which converts GTP into **cGMP** ( $\rightarrow$  E). Acting as a second messenger, cGMP activates *protein kinase G (PKG)*, which in turn decreases the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration [ $Ca^{2+}$ ], by blocking the nuclear  $IP_3$  receptor (via IRAG) and other means. This leads to *vasodilatation* (e.g., in coronary arteries).

**Penile erections** are produced by cGMP-mediated vasodilatation of the deep arteries of the penis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 308). The erection can be prolonged by drugs that inhibit cGMP-specific phosphodiesterase type 5, thereby delaying the degradation of cGMP (e.g., sildenafil citrate = Viagra®).

## D. Mode of action of steroid hormones



## E. Nitric oxide (NO) as a transmitter substance



In the **hypothalamus**, (1) humoral signals from the periphery (e.g., from circulating cortisol) can be converted to efferent neuronal signals, and (2) afferent neuronal signals can be converted to endocrine messengers (*neurosecretion*).

The first case is possible because the hypothalamus is situated near **circumventricular organs** like the organum vasculosum laminae terminalis (OVLT), subfornical organ, the median eminence of the hypothalamus, and the neurohypophysis. Since there is no blood-brain barrier there, hydrophilic peptide hormones can also enter.

The hypothalamus is closely connected to other parts of the CNS (→ p. 332). It controls many autonomous regulatory functions and its neuropeptides influence higher brain functions. The hypothalamus is related to the sleeping-waking rhythm (→ p. 336) and to psychogenic factors. Stress, for example, stimulates the release of cortisol (via CRH, ACTH) and can lead to the cessation of hormone-controlled menstruation (amenorrhea).

**Neurosecretion.** Hypothalamic neurons synthesize hormones, incorporate them in granules that are transported to the ends of the axons (*axoplasmic transport* → p. 42), and secrete them into the *bloodstream*. In this way, oxytocin and ADH are carried from magnocellular hypothalamic nuclei to the neurohypophysis, and RHs and IHs (and ADH) reach the *median eminence* of the hypothalamus (→ **A**). The *action potential-triggered* exocytotic release of the hormones into the bloodstream is mediated by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx into the nerve endings (→ p. 50ff.).

**Oxytocin** (Ocytocin) and **antidiuretic hormone** (ADH) are two posterior pituitary hormones that enter the systemic circulation directly. **ADH** induces water retention in the renal collecting ducts ( $V_2$ -rec.; → p. 166) and induces vasoconstriction (endothelial  $V_1$  rec.) by stimulating the secretion of endothelin-1 (→ p. 214ff.). ADH-bearing neurons also secrete ADH into the portal venous circulation (see below). The ADH and CRH molecules regulate the secretion of ACTH by the adenohypophysis. **Oxytocin** promotes uterine contractions and milk ejection (→ p. 306). In nursing mothers, suckling stimulates nerve endings in the nipples, triggering the secretion of oxy-

tocin (and prolactin, → p. 305) via neurohumoral reflexes.

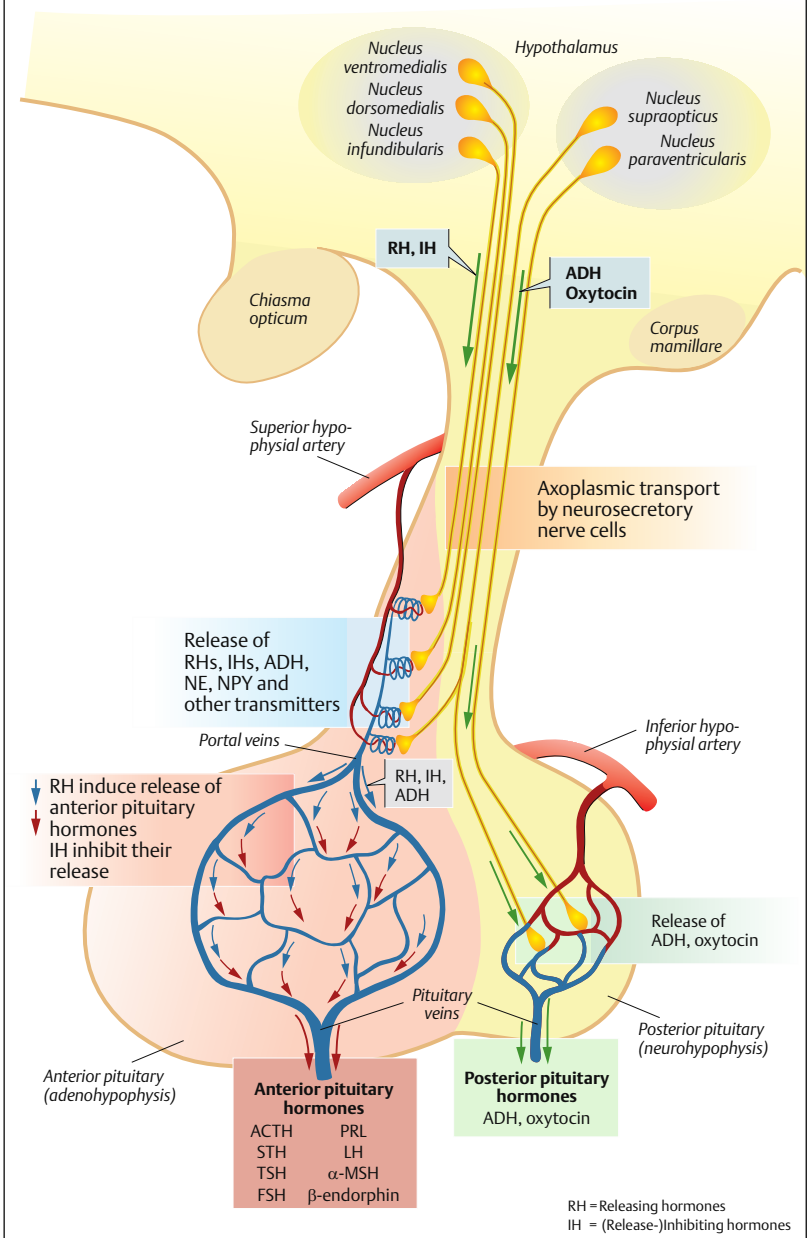
**Releasing hormones (RH)** or **liberins** that stimulate hormone release from the adenohypophysis (Gn-RH, TRH, SRH, CRH; → p. 272 ff.) are secreted by hypothalamic neurons into a kind of **portal venous system** and travel only a short distance to the anterior lobe (→ **A**). Once in its vascular network, they trigger the release of anterior pituitary hormones into the systemic circulation (→ **A**).

Some anterior pituitary hormones are regulated by release-**inhibiting hormones (IH)** or **statins**, such as SIH and PIH = dopamine (→ p. 272ff.). Peripheral hormones, ADH (see above) and various neurotransmitters such as neuropeptide Y (NPY), norepinephrine (NE), dopamine, VIP and opioids also help to regulate anterior pituitary functions (→ p. 274).

The four **glandotropic hormones** (ACTH, TSH, FSH and LH) and the **aglandotropic hormones** (prolactin and GH) are secreted from the anterior pituitary (→ **A**). The secretion of **growth hormone (GH)** = somatotrophic hormone, (STH) is subject to control by GH-RH, SIH and IGF-1. GH stimulates protein synthesis (*anabolic action*) and skeletal growth with the aid of *somatomedins* (growth factors formed in the liver), which play a role in sulfate uptake by cartilage. Somatomedin C = insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) inhibits the release of GH by the anterior pituitary via negative feedback control. GH has lipolytic and glycogenolytic actions that are independent of somatomedin activity.

**Proopiomelanocortin (POMC)** is a peptide precursor not only of ACTH, but (inside or outside the anterior pituitary) also of  $\beta$ -endorphin and  $\alpha$ -melanocyte-stimulating hormone ( $\alpha$ -MSH =  $\alpha$ -melanocortin).  $\beta$ -endorphin has analgesic effects in the CNS and immunomodulatory effects, while  $\alpha$ -MSH in the hypothalamus helps to regulate the body weight (→ p. 232) and stimulates peripheral melanocytes.

**A. Hypothalamic–pituitary hormone secretion (schematic)**



**Glucose** is the *central energy carrier* of the human metabolism. The brain and red blood cells are fully glucose-dependent. The **plasma glucose concentration** (blood sugar level) is determined by the level of glucose *production and consumption*.

The following terms are important for proper understanding of carbohydrate metabolism ( $\rightarrow$  **A, C**):

1. **Glycolysis** generally refers to the anaerobic conversion of glucose to lactate ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72). This occurs in the red blood cells, renal medulla, and skeletal muscles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72). Aerobic oxidation of glucose occurs in the CNS, heart, skeletal muscle and in most other organs.

2. **Glycogenesis**, i.e., the synthesis of glycogen from glucose (in liver and muscle), facilitates the storage of glucose and helps to maintain a constant plasma glucose concentration. Glycogen stored in a muscle can only be used by that muscle.

3. **Glycogenolysis** is the breakdown of glycogen to glucose, i.e., the opposite of glycogenesis.

4. **Gluconeogenesis** is the production of glucose (in liver and renal cortex) from non-sugar molecules such as amino acids (e.g., glutamine), lactate (produced by anaerobic glycolysis in muscles and red cells), and glycerol (from lipolysis).

5. **Lipolysis** is the breakdown of triacylglycerols into glycerol and free fatty acids.

6. **Lipogenesis** is the synthesis of triacylglycerols (for storage in fat deposits).

**Islets of Langerhans** in the *pancreas* play a primary role in carbohydrate metabolism. Three cell types (A, B, D) have been identified so far ( $\rightarrow$  p. 275 B). 25% of all islet cells are type A ( $\alpha$ ) cells that produce **glucagon**, 60% are B ( $\beta$ ) cells that synthesize **insulin**, and 10% are D ( $\delta$ ) cells that secrete somatostatin (**SIH**). These hormones mutually influence the synthesis and secretion of each other ( $\rightarrow$  p. 275 B). Islet cells in the pancreas head synthesize *pancreatic polypeptide*, the physiological function of which is not yet clear. High concentrations of these hormones reach the liver by way of the portal venous circulation.

**Function.** Pancreatic hormones (1) ensure that ingested food is stored as glycogen and fat (insulin); (2) mobilize energy reserves in response to food deprivation, physical activity or stress (glucagon and the non-pancreatic hormone epinephrine); (3) maintain the plasma glucose concentration as constant as possible ( $\rightarrow$  **A**); and (4) promote growth.

## Insulin

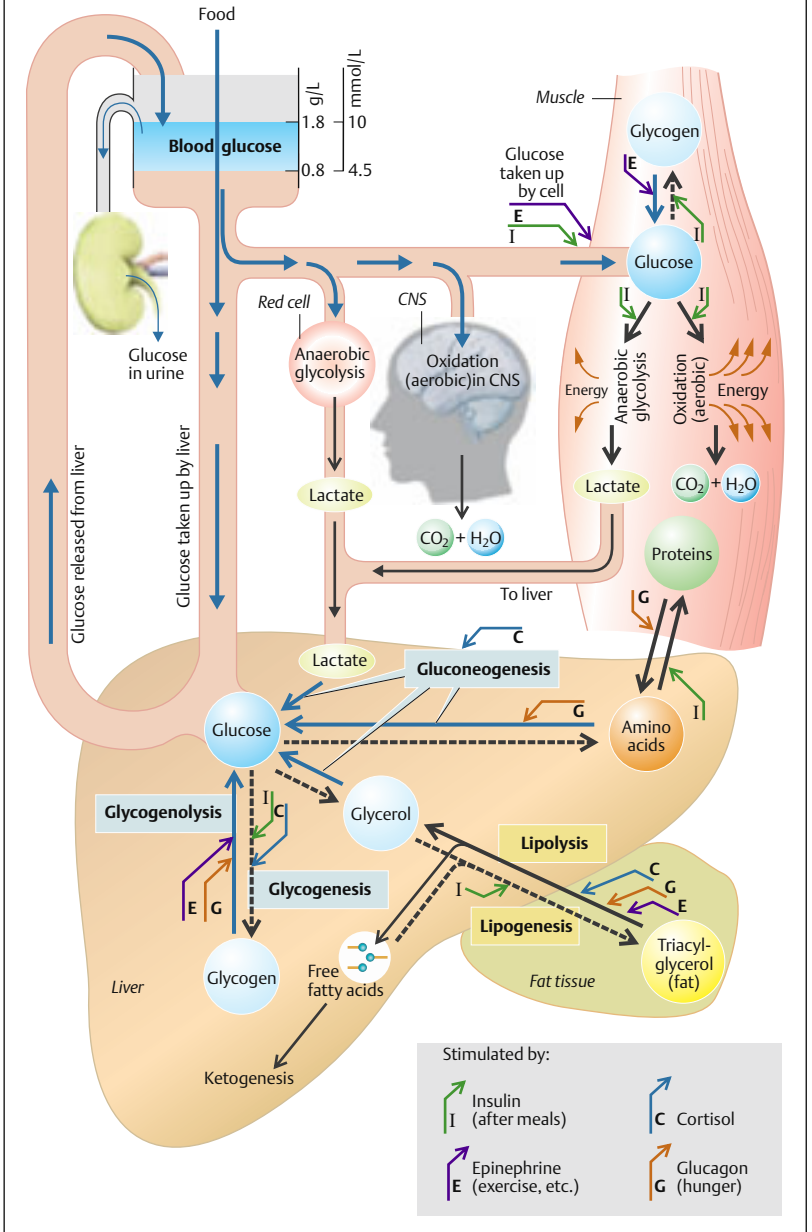
**Synthesis.** Insulin is a 6 kDa peptide (51 amino acids, AA) formed by the C chain cleaved from *proinsulin* (84 AA), the precursor of which is *preproinsulin*, a prohormone. Insulin contains two peptide chains (A and B) held together by disulfide bridges **Degradation:** Insulin has a half-life of about 5–8 min and is degraded mainly in liver and kidneys.

**Secretion.** Insulin is secreted in pulsatile bursts, mainly in response to *increases in the blood levels of glucose* ( $\rightarrow$  **B right**), as follows: plasma glucose  $\uparrow$   $\rightarrow$  glucose in B cells  $\uparrow$   $\rightarrow$  glucose oxidation  $\uparrow$   $\rightarrow$  cytosolic ATP  $\uparrow$   $\rightarrow$  closure of ATP-gated  $K^+$  channels  $\rightarrow$  depolarization  $\rightarrow$  opening of voltage-gated  $Ca^{2+}$  channels  $\rightarrow$  cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$   $\uparrow$ . The rising  $Ca^{2+}$  in B cells leads to (a) *exocytosis* of insulin and (b) re-opening of  $K^+$  channels (deactivated by feedback control). **Stimulation.** Insulin secretion is stimulated mainly during food digestion via acetylcholine (vagus nerve), gastrin, secretin, GIP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236) and GLP-1 (glucagon-like peptide = enteroglucagon), a peptide that dissociates from intestinal proglucagon. Certain amino acids (especially arginine and leucine), free fatty acids, many pituitary hormones and some steroid hormones also increase insulin secretion. **Inhibition.** Epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors;  $\rightarrow$  **A, B**), *SIH* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 275 B) and the neuropeptide *galanin* inhibit insulin secretion. When *hypoglycemia* occurs due, e.g., to fasting or prolonged physical exercise, the low blood glucose concentration is sensed by central chemosensors for glucose, leading to reflex activation of the sympathetic nervous system.

The **insulin receptor** is a heterotetramer ( $\alpha_2\beta_2$ ) consisting of two extracellular  $\alpha$  subunits and two transmembranous  $\beta$  subunits. The  $\alpha$  subunits bind the hormone. Once the  $\beta$  subunits are autophosphorylated, they act as *receptor tyrosine kinases* that phosphorylate *insulin receptor substrate-1* (IRS-1). Intracellular proteins with SH2 domains are phosphorylated by IRS-1 and pass on the signal ( $\rightarrow$  p. 279 C3).

**Action of insulin** ( $\rightarrow$  **A, B, C**). Insulin has *anabolic* and *lipogenic* effects, and promotes the *storage of glucose*, especially in the liver, where it activates enzymes that *promote glycolysis* and *glycogenesis* and *suppresses* those involved in *gluconeogenesis*. Insulin also *increases the number of GLUT-4* uniporters in skeletal myo- ▶

A. Glucose metabolism (simplified overview)



► cytes. All these actions serve to **lower the plasma glucose concentration** (which increases after food ingestion). About two-thirds of the glucose absorbed by the intestines after a meal (postprandial) is temporarily stored and kept ready for mobilization (via glucagon) during the interdigestive phase. This provides a relatively constant supply of glucose for the glucose-dependent CNS and vital organs in absence of food ingestion. Insulin increases the *storage of amino acids (AA)* in the form of proteins, especially in the skeletal muscles (*anabolism*). In addition, it promotes growth, *inhibits extrahepatic lipolysis* (→ p. 259, D) and affects *K<sup>+</sup> distribution* (→ p. 182).

**Hypoglycemia** develops when the insulin concentration is too high. Glucose levels of < 2 mmol/L (35 mg/dL) produce glucose deficiencies in the brain, which can lead to coma and *hypoglycemic shock*.

The **excessive intake of carbohydrates** can overload glycogen stores. The liver therefore starts to convert glucose into fatty acids, which are transported to and stored in fatty tissues in the form of *triaclylglycerols* (→ p. 259 D).

**Diabetes mellitus (DM)**. One type of DM is *insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM)*, or type 1 DM, which is caused by an insulin deficiency. Another type is *non-insulin-dependent DM (NIDDM)*, or type 2 DM, which is caused by the decreased efficacy of insulin and sometimes occurs even in conjunction with increased insulin concentrations. DM is characterized by an abnormally high plasma glucose concentration (*hyperglycemia*), which leads to *glucosuria* (→ p. 158). Large quantities of *fatty acids* are liberated since lipolysis is no longer inhibited (→ p. 257 D). The fatty acids can be used to produce energy via acetyl-coenzyme A (acetyl-CoA); however, this leads to the formation of acetoacetic acid, acetone (*ketosis*), and  $\beta$ -oxybutyric acid (*metabolic acidosis*, → p. 142). Because hepatic fat synthesis is insulin-independent and since so many fatty acids are available, the liver begins to store triacylglycerols, resulting in the development of *fatty liver*.

#### Glucagon, Somatostatin and Somatotropin

**Glucagon** released from A ( $\alpha$ ) cells is a peptide hormone (29 AA) derived from *proglucagon* (glicentin). The granules in which glucagon is stored are secreted by exocytosis. Secretion is **stimulated** by amino acids (AA) from digested proteins (especially alanine and arginine) as well as by hypoglycemia (e.g., due to fasting, prolonged physical exercise; → B) and sympathetic impulses (via  $\beta_2$  adrenoceptors; → A).

Glucagon secretion is **inhibited** by glucose and SIH (→ p. 275, B) as well as by high plasma concentrations of free fatty acids.

The **actions** of glucagon (→ A, B, C) (via cAMP; → p. 276) mainly antagonize those of insulin. Glucagon maintains a normal *blood glucose level between meals* and during phases of increased glucose consumption to ensure a constant energy supply. It does this (a) by increasing glycogenolysis (in liver not muscle) and (b) by stimulating gluconeogenesis from lactate, AA (protein degradation = catabolism) and glycerol (from *lipolysis*).

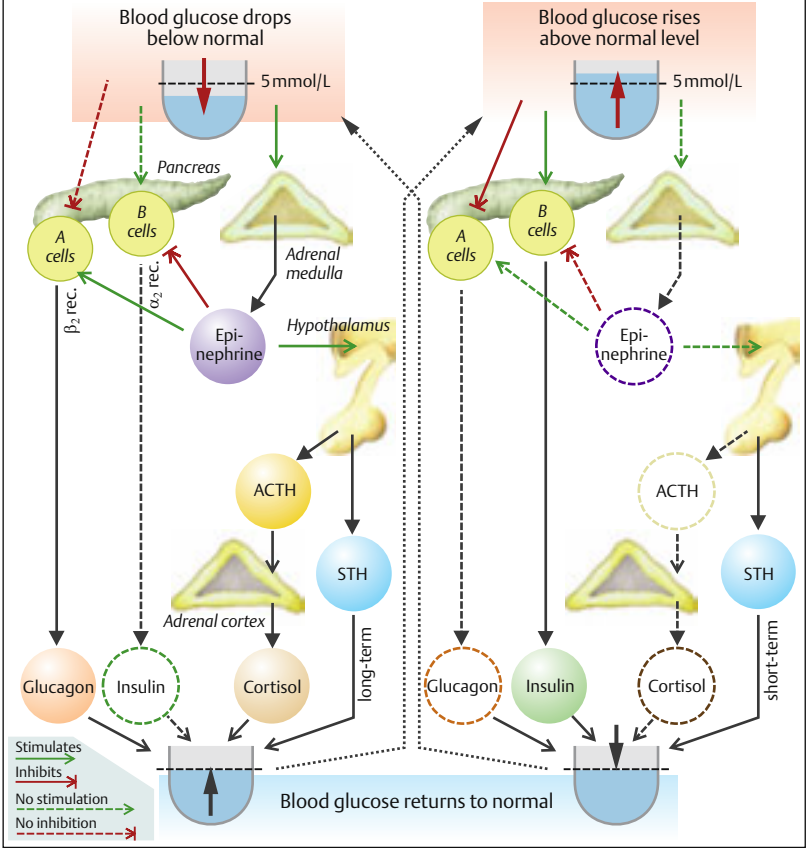
Increased plasma concentrations of **amino acids (AA)** stimulate insulin secretion which would lead to hypoglycemia without the simultaneous ingestion of glucose. Hypoglycemia normally does not occur, however, since AA also stimulate the release of glucagon, which increases the blood glucose concentration. Glucagon also stimulates gluconeogenesis from AA, so some of the AA are used for energy production. In order to increase protein levels in patients, glucose must therefore be administered simultaneously with therapeutic doses of AA to prevent their metabolic degradation.

**Somatostatin (SIH)**. Like insulin, SIH stored in D cells (**SIH 14** has 14 AA) is released in response to increased plasma concentrations of glucose and arginine (i.e., after a meal). Through *paracrine* pathways (via G<sub>i</sub>-linked receptors), SIH inhibits the release of insulin (→ p. 275, B). Therefore, SIH inhibits not only the release of gastrin, which promotes digestion (→ p. 245, B3), but also interrupts the insulin-related storage of nutrients. SIH also inhibits glucagon secretion (→ p. 275 B). This effect does not occur in the presence of a glucose deficiency because of the release of catecholamines that *decrease* SIH secretion.

**Somatotropin (STH) = growth hormone (GH)**. The short-term effects of GH are similar to those of insulin; its action is mediated by somatomedins (→ p. 282). In the long-term, GH increases the blood glucose concentration and promotes growth.

The effects of **glucocorticoids** on carbohydrate metabolism are illustrated on plate C and explained on p. 298.

**B. Hormonal control of blood glucose concentration**



**C. Hormonal effects on carbohydrate and fat metabolism**

Hormone	Insulin	Glucagon	Epinephrine	Cortisol
Function	Satiated ← Buffer → Hungry		Stress, exercise	Supply
Glucose Uptake by cell	+		+	
Glycolysis	+	-	+	-
Gluconeogenesis (liver)	-	+	+	+
Glycogen Synthesis	+	-	-	-
Glycogen Lysis	-	+	+	+
Fat Synthesis	+	-	-	-
Fat Lysis	-	+	+	+

The thyroid gland contains spherical follicles (50–500  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter). Follicle cells synthesize the two iodine-containing thyroid hormones **thyroxine** ( $\text{T}_4$ , tetraiodothyronine) and **triiodothyronine** ( $\text{T}_3$ ).  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  are bound to the glycoprotein **thyroglobulin** ( $\rightarrow \text{B2}$ ) and stored in the colloid of the follicles ( $\rightarrow \text{A1, B1}$ ). The synthesis and release of  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  is controlled by the **thyroliberin** (= **thyrotropin-releasing hormone, TRH**)-**thyrotropin (TSH) axis** ( $\rightarrow \text{A}$ , and p.272ff.).  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  influence physical growth, maturation and metabolism. The **parafollicular cells (C cells)** of the thyroid gland synthesize **calcitonin** ( $\rightarrow$  p.294).

**Thyroglobulin**, a dimeric glycoprotein (660 kDa) is synthesized in the thyroid cells. TSH stimulates the transcription of the thyroglobulin gene. Thyroglobulin is stored in vesicles and released into the colloid by exocytosis ( $\rightarrow \text{B1}$  and p.30).

**Iodine uptake.** The iodine needed for hormone synthesis is taken up from the bloodstream as iodide ( $\text{I}^-$ ). It enters thyroid cells through secondary active transport by the  $2\text{Na}^+/\text{I}^-$  symport carrier (NIS) and is concentrated in the cell ca. 25 times as compared to the plasma ( $\rightarrow \text{B2}$ ). Via cAMP, **TSH** increases the transport capacity of basolateral  $\text{I}^-$  uptake up to 250 times. Other anions competitively inhibit  $\text{I}^-$  uptake; e.g.,  $\text{ClO}_4^-$ ,  $\text{SCN}^-$  and  $\text{NO}_2^-$ .

**Hormone synthesis.**  $\text{I}^-$  ions are continuously transported from the intracellular *I* pool to the apical (colloidal) side of the cell by a  $\text{I}^-/\text{Cl}^-$  antiporter, called **pendrin**, which is stimulated by **TSH**. With the aid of **thyroid peroxidase (TPO)** and an  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  generator, they are oxidized to elementary  $\text{I}_2^0$  along the microvilli on the colloid side of the cell membrane. With the help of TPO, the  $\text{I}^0$  reacts with about 20 of the 144 tyrosyl residues of **thyroglobulin** ( $\rightarrow \text{C}$ ). The phenol ring of the tyrosyl residue is thereby iodinated at the 3 and/or 5 position, yielding a protein chain containing either **diiodotyrosine (DIT)** residues and/or **monoiodotyrosine (MIT)** residues. These steps of synthesis are stimulated by TSH (via  $\text{IP}_3$ ?) and inhibited by thiouracil, thiocyanate, glutathione, and other reducing substances. The structure of the thyroglobulin molecule allows the iodinated tyrosyl residues to react with each other in the thyrocolloid. The phenol ring of one DIT (or MIT) molecule links with another DIT

molecule (ether bridges). The resulting thyroglobulin chain now contains **tetraiodothyronine residues** and (less) **triiodothyronine residues** ( $\rightarrow \text{C}$ ). These are the **storage form** of  $\text{T}_4$  and  $\text{T}_3$ .

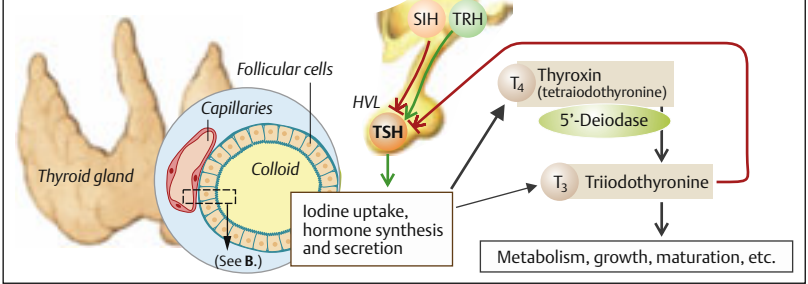
**TSH** also stimulates  **$\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  secretion**. The iodinated thyroglobulin in thyrocolloid are reabsorbed by the cells via endocytosis ( $\rightarrow \text{B3, C}$ ). The endosomes fuse with primary lysosomes to form phagolysosomes in which thyroglobulin is hydrolyzed by proteases. This leads to the release of  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  (ca. 0.2 and 1–3 mol per mol of thyroglobulin, respectively).  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  are then secreted into the bloodstream ( $\rightarrow \text{B3}$ ). With the aid of **deiodase**,  $\text{I}^-$  meanwhile is split from concomitantly released MIT and DIT and becomes reavailable for synthesis.

**Control of  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  secretion.** TSH secretion by the anterior pituitary is stimulated by **TRH**, a hypothalamic tripeptide ( $\rightarrow$  p.282) and inhibited by **somatostatin (SIH)** ( $\rightarrow \text{A}$  and p.272). The effect of TRH is modified by  $\text{T}_4$  in the plasma. As observed with other target cells, the  $\text{T}_4$  taken up by the thyrotropic cells of the anterior pituitary is converted to  $\text{T}_3$  by **5'-deiodase**.  $\text{T}_3$  reduces the density of TRH receptors in the pituitary gland and inhibits TRH secretion by the hypothalamus. The secretion of TSH and consequently of  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  therefore decreases (**negative feedback circuit**). In neonates, cold seems to stimulate the release of TRH via neuronal pathways (thermoregulation,  $\rightarrow$  p.226). **TSH** is a heterodimer (26 kDa) consisting of an  $\alpha$  subunit (identical to that of LH and FSH) and a  $\beta$  subunit. **TSH controls all thyroid gland functions**, including the uptake of  $\text{I}^-$ , the synthesis and secretion of  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  ( $\rightarrow \text{A-C}$ ), the blood flow and growth of the thyroid gland.

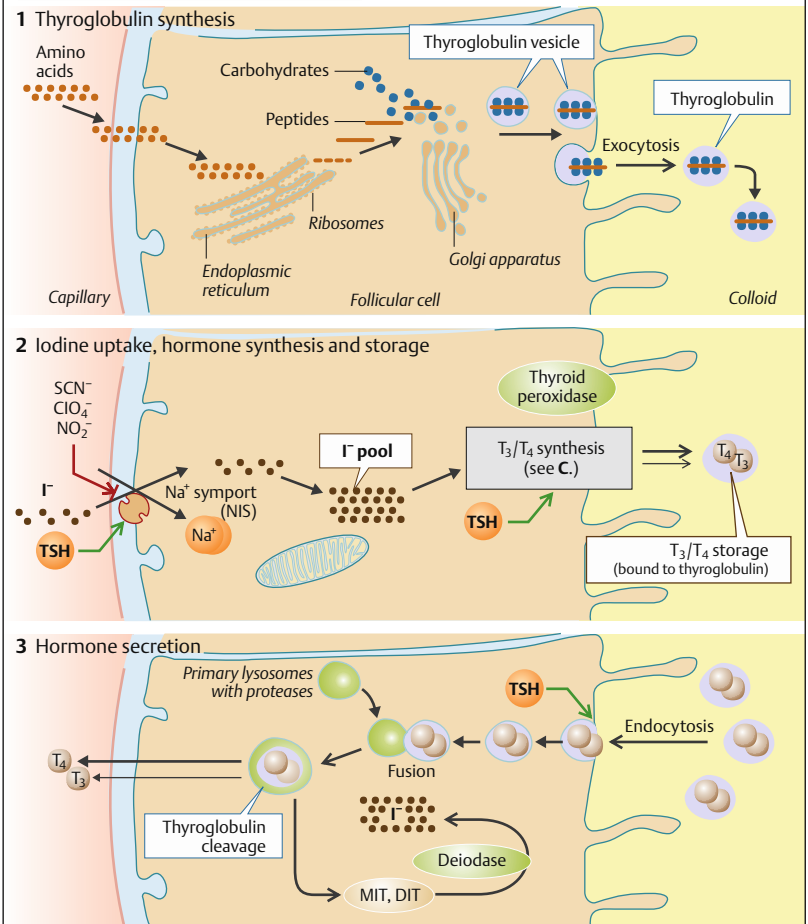
**Goiter (struma)** is characterized by diffuse or nodular enlargement of the thyroid gland. Diffuse goiter can occur due to an iodine deficiency, resulting in  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  deficits that ultimately lead to increased secretion of TSH. Chronic elevation of TSH leads to the proliferation of follicle cells, resulting in goiter development (**hyperplastic goiter**). This prompts an increase in  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  synthesis, which sometimes normalizes the plasma concentrations of  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  (**euthyroid goiter**). This type of goiter often persists even after the iodide deficiency is rectified.

**Hypothyroidism** occurs when TSH-driven thyroid enlargement is no longer able to compensate for the  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  deficiency (**hypothyroid goiter**). This type of

**A. Thyroid hormones (overview)**



**B. Hormone synthesis and secretion**



goiter can also occur due to a congenital disturbance of  $T_3/T_4$  synthesis (see below) or thyroid inflammation. **Hyperthyroidism** occurs when a thyroid tumor (*hot node*) or diffuse struma (e.g., in *Grave's disease*) results in the overproduction of  $T_3/T_4$ , independent of TSH. In the latter case, an autoantibody against the TSH receptor binds to the TSH receptor. Its effects mimic those of TSH, i.e., it stimulates  $T_3/T_4$  synthesis and secretion.

**$T_3/T_4$  transport.**  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  occur at a ratio of 1:40 in the plasma, where >99% of them (mainly  $T_4$ ) are bound to plasma proteins: *thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG)*, thyroxine-binding prealbumin (*TBPA*), and *serum albumin*. TBG transports two-thirds of the  $T_4$  in the blood, while TBPA and serum albumin transport the rest. Less than 0.3% of the total  $T_3/T_4$  in blood occurs in an unbound (free) form, although only the unbound molecules have an effect on the target cells. Certain drugs split  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  from protein bonds, resulting in increased plasma concentrations of the free hormones.

**Potency of  $T_3/T_4$ .**  $T_3$  is 3–8 times more potent than  $T_4$  and acts more rapidly (half-life of  $T_3$  is 1 day, that of  $T_4$  7 days). Only ca. 20% of all circulating  $T_3$  originate from the thyroid; the other 80% are produced by the liver, kidneys, and other target cells that cleave iodide from  $T_4$ . The conversion of  $T_4$  to  $T_3$  is catalyzed by microsomal **5'-deiodase**, which removes iodine from the 5' position on the outer ring ( $\rightarrow$ D).  $T_3$  is therefore the more potent hormone, while  $T_4$  is mainly ascribed a *storage function* in plasma.

The inactive form of  $T_3$  called **reverse  $T_3$  ( $rT_3$ )** is produced from  $T_4$  when the iodine is split from the inner ring with the aid of a 5- (not 5'-)deiodase. Approximately equal amounts of  $T_3$  and  $rT_3$  are normally produced in the periphery (ca. 25  $\mu\text{g/day}$ ). When a person fasts, the resulting *inhibition of 5'-deiodase* decreases  $T_3$  synthesis (to *save energy*, see below) while  $rT_3$  synthesis increases. *Pituitary 5'-deiodase* is not inhibited, so TSH secretion (unwanted in this case) is suppressed by the negative feedback.

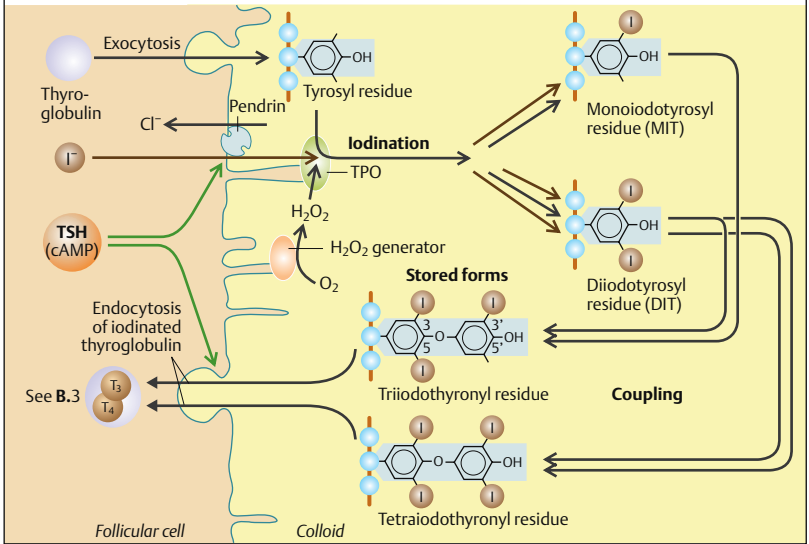
**$T_3/T_4$  receptors** are *hormone-sensitive transcription factors* located in the cell nuclei. Hormone-receptor complexes bind to regulator proteins of certain genes in the nuclei and influence their transcription.

The **actions of  $T_3/T_4$**  are numerous and mainly involve the *intermediate metabolism*. The thyroid hormones increase the number of *mitochondria* and its cristae, increase  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase activity and modulate the cholesterol metabolism. This results in an increase in *energy turnover* and a corresponding rise in  $\text{O}_2$  consumption and *heat production*.  $T_3$  also specifically stimulates heat production by increasing the expression of the uncoupling protein *thermogenin* in brown fat ( $\rightarrow$ p.224).  $T_3$  also influences the efficacy of other hormones. Insulin, glucagon, GH and epinephrine lose their energy turnover-increasing effect in *hypothyroidism*, whereas the sensitivity to epinephrine increases (heart rate increases, etc.) in *hyperthyroidism*.  $T_3$  is thought to increase the density of  $\beta$ -adrenoceptors.  $T_3$  also stimulates *growth* and *maturation*, especially of the brain and bones.

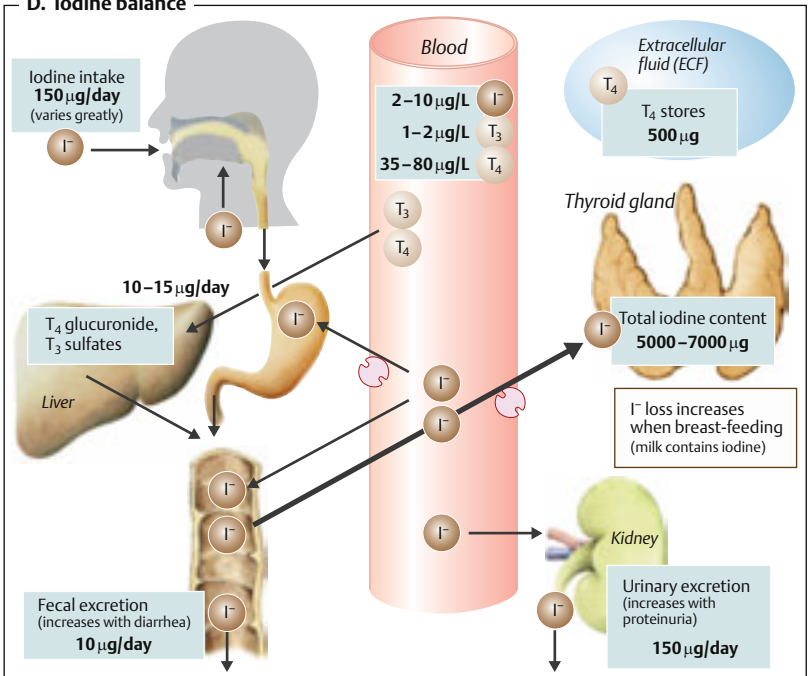
**Cretinism** occurs due to neonatal  $T_3/T_4$  deficiencies and is marked by growth and maturation disorders (dwarfism, delayed sexual development, etc.) and central nervous disorders (intelligence deficits, seizures, etc.). The administration of thyroid hormones in the first six months of life can prevent or reduce some of these abnormalities.

**Iodine metabolism ( $\rightarrow$ D).** Iodine circulates in the blood as either (1) inorganic  $\text{I}^-$  (2–10  $\mu\text{g/L}$ ), (2) organic non-hormonal iodine (traces) and (3) protein-bound iodine (PBI) within  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  (35–80  $\mu\text{g}$  iodine/L). The average daily requirement of iodine is ca. 150  $\mu\text{g}$ ; larger quantities are required in fever and hyperthyroidism (ca. 250–500  $\mu\text{g/day}$ ). Iodine excreted from the body must be replaced by the diet ( $\rightarrow$ D). Sea salt, seafood, and cereals grown in iodine-rich soil are rich in iodine. Iodized salt is often used to supplement iodine deficiencies in the diet. Since iodine passes into the breast milk, nursing mothers have a higher daily requirement of iodine (ca. 200  $\mu\text{g/day}$ ).

**C. Synthesis, storage and mobilization of the thyroid hormones**



**D. Iodine balance**



**Calcium**, particularly ionized calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ), plays a central role in the regulation of numerous cell functions ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 36, 62ff., 194, 278). Calcium accounts for 2% of the body weight. Ca. 99% of the calcium occurs in bone while 1% is dissolved in body fluids. The total calcium conc. in serum is normally 2.1–2.6 mmol/L. Ca. 50% of it is **free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (1.1–1.3 mmol/L)** while ca. 10% is bound in complexes and 40% is bound to proteins (mainly albumin;  $\rightarrow$  p. 180).

**Calcium protein binding** increases as the pH of the blood rises since the number of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding sites on protein molecules also rises with the pH. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. accordingly *decreases in alkalosis* and rises in acidosis (by about 0.21 mmol/L  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  per pH unit). Alkalosis (e.g., due to hyperventilation) and hypocalcemia (see below) can therefore lead to *tetany*.

The **calcium metabolism** is tightly regulated to ensure a balanced intake and excretion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\rightarrow$  A). The *dietary intake of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  provides around 12–35 mmol of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  each day (1 mmol = 2 mEq = 40 mg). Milk, cheese, eggs and “hard” water are particularly rich in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . When calcium homeostasis is maintained, most of the ingested  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is excreted in the feces, while the remainder is excreted in the urine ( $\rightarrow$  p. 180). When a calcium deficiency exists, up to 90% of the ingested  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is absorbed by the intestinal tract ( $\rightarrow$  A and p. 264).

**Pregnant and nursing mothers** have higher  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  requirements because they must also supply the fetus or newborn infant with calcium. The fetus receives ca. 625 mmol/day of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  via the placenta, and nursed infants receive up to 2000 mmol/day via the breast milk. In both cases, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is used for bone formation. Thus, many women develop a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  deficiency during or after pregnancy.

**Phosphate metabolism** is closely related to calcium metabolism but is less tightly controlled. The daily intake of phosphate is about 1.4 g; 0.9 g of intake is absorbed and usually excreted by the kidneys ( $\rightarrow$  p. 180). The **phosphate concentration** in serum normally ranges from 0.8–1.4 mmol/L.

**Calcium phosphate salts** are sparingly soluble. When the product of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. times phosphate conc. (*solubility product*) exceeds a certain threshold, calcium phosphate starts to precipitate in solutions, and the deposition of calcium phosphate salts occurs. The salts are

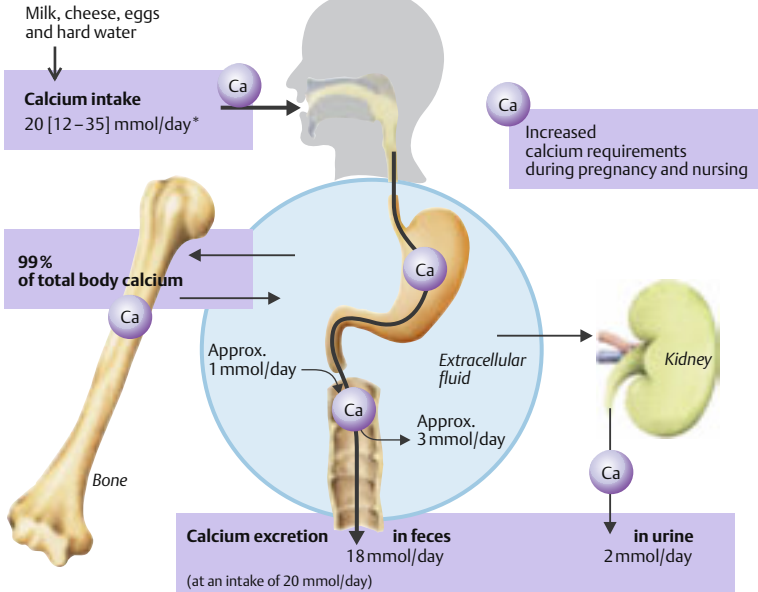
chiefly deposited in the bone, but can also precipitate in other organs. The infusion of phosphate leads to a decrease in the serum calcium concentration since calcium phosphate accumulates in bone. Conversely, hypophosphatemia leads to hypercalcemia ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released from bone).

**Hormonal control.** Calcium and phosphate homeostasis is predominantly regulated by *parathyroid hormone* and *calcitriol*, but also by calcitonin to a lesser degree. These hormones mainly affect three organs: the *intestines*, the *kidneys* and the *bone* ( $\rightarrow$  B and D).

**Parathyrin** or parathyroid hormone (PTH) is a peptide hormone (84 AA) secreted by the *parathyroid glands*.  **$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors** in cells of the *parathyroid glands* regulate PTH synthesis and secretion in response to changes in the plasma concentration of *ionized  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36). More PTH is secreted into the bloodstream whenever the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. falls below normal (*hypocalcemia*). Inversely, PTH secretion decreases when the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level rises ( $\rightarrow$  D, left panel). The primary function of PTH is to **normalize decreased  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc.** in the blood ( $\rightarrow$  D). This is accomplished as follows: (1) PTH activates osteoclasts, resulting in bone breakdown and the *release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  (and phosphate) from the **bone**; (2) PTH accelerates the final step of calcitriol synthesis in the kidney, resulting in *increased reabsorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  from the **gut**; (3) in the **kidney**, PTH increases calcitriol synthesis and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption, which is particularly important due to the increased  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  supply resulting from actions (1) and (2). PTH also *inhibits renal phosphate reabsorption* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 180), resulting in hypophosphatemia. This, in turn, stimulates the release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the bone or prevents the precipitation of calcium phosphate in tissue (solubility product; see above).

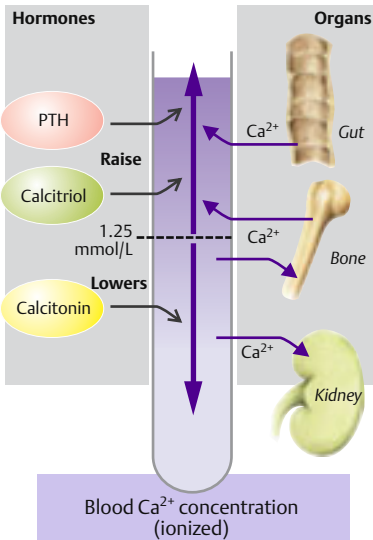
**Hypocalcemia** occurs due to a deficiency (*hypoparathyroidism*) or lack of efficiency (*pseudohypoparathyroidism*) of PTH, which can destabilize the resting potential enough to produce *muscle spasms* and *tetany*. These deficiencies can also lead to a secondary calcitriol deficiency. An excess of PTH (*hyperparathyroidism*) and malignant osteolysis overpower the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  control mechanisms, leading to **hypercalcemia**. The long-term elevation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  results in calcium deposition (e.g., in the kidneys).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. exceeding 3.5 mmol/L lead to coma, renal insufficiency and cardiac arrhythmias. ▶

**A. Calcium metabolism**

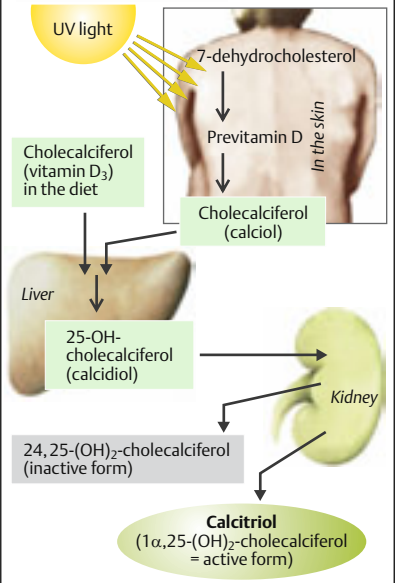


\* 1 mmol Ca<sup>2+</sup> = 2 mEq Ca<sup>2+</sup> = 40 mg Ca<sup>2+</sup>

**B. Factors affecting the blood Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration**



**C. Calcitriol synthesis**



► **Calcitonin (CT)**, or *thyrocalcitonin*, is a peptide hormone (32 AA). It is mainly synthesized in the parafollicular cells (C cells) of the thyroid gland, which also contain  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36). *Hypercalcemia* increases the plasma calcitonin conc. ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, **right** panel), whereas calcitonin can no longer be detected when the calcium conc.  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  falls below 2 mmol/L. *Calcitonin normalizes elevated serum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc.* mainly by acting on **bone**. Osteoclast activity is inhibited by calcitonin (and stimulated by PTH). Calcitonin therefore increases the uptake of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  by the bone—at least temporarily ( $\rightarrow$  **D5**). Some *gastrointestinal hormones* accelerate calcitonin secretion, thereby enhancing the postprandial absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  by bone. These effects (and perhaps the restraining effect of calcitonin on digestive activities) function to prevent postprandial hypercalcemia and the (unwanted) inhibition of PTH secretion and increased renal excretion of the just absorbed  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Calcitonin also acts on the kidneys ( $\rightarrow$  **D6**).

**Calcitriol** (1,25-(OH)<sub>2</sub>-cholecalciferol) is a lipophilic, steroid-like hormone synthesized as follows ( $\rightarrow$  **C**): **Cholecalciferol** (vitamin D<sub>3</sub>) is produced from hepatic 7-dehydrocholesterol in the **skin** via an intermediate product (*previtamin D*) in response to UV light (sun, tanning lamps). Both substances bind to *vitamin D-binding protein* (DBP) in the blood, but cholecalciferol is preferentially transported because of its higher affinity. Previtamin D therefore remains in the skin for a while after UV light exposure (short-term storage). Calcidiol (25-OH-cholecalciferol) and calcitriol bind to DBP. An estrogen-dependent rise in DBP synthesis occurs during pregnancy.

**Cholecalciferol (vitamin D<sub>3</sub>)** is administered to compensate for inadequate UV exposure. The recommended daily dosage in children is approximately 400 units = 10 µg; adults receive half this amount. Plant-derived **ergocalciferol** (vitamin D<sub>2</sub>) is equally effective as animal-derived vitamin D<sub>3</sub>. The following actions apply for both forms.

Cholecalciferol is converted to **calcidiol** (25-OH-cholecalciferol) in the liver. Vitamin D is mainly *stored as calcidiol* because the plasma conc. of calcidiol is 25 µg/L, and its half-life is 15 days. **Calcitriol** (1,25-(OH)<sub>2</sub>-cholecalciferol), the hormonally active form, is mainly synthe-

sized in the **kidneys** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**), but also in the placenta. The plasma conc. of **calcitriol is regulated** by renal 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylase (final step of synthesis) and by 24-hydroxylase, an enzyme that deactivates calcitriol.

The **calcitriol concentration rises** in response to *hypocalcemia-related PTH* secretion ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**), to *phosphate deficiency* and to *prolactin* (lactation). All three inhibit 24-hydroxylase and activate 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylase. It **decreases** due to several negative feedback loops, i.e. due to the fact that calcitriol (a) directly inhibits 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylase, (b) inhibits parathyroid hormone secretion, and (c) normalizes the (decreased) plasma conc. of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and phosphate by increasing the intestinal absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and phosphate (see below). Calcium and phosphate inhibit 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylase, while phosphate activates 24-hydroxylase.

**Target organs.** Calcitriol's primary target is the **gut**, but it also acts on the **bone, kidneys, placenta, mammary glands, hair follicles, skin** etc. It binds with its nuclear receptor and induces the expression of calcium-binding protein and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 280 and 36). Calcitriol has also genomic effects. Calcitriol *increases the intestinal absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  ( $\rightarrow$  **D4**) and *promotes mineralization of the bone*, but an **excess of calcitriol** leads to *decalcification* of the bone, an effect heightened by PTH. Calcitriol also increases the transport of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and phosphate at the kidney ( $\rightarrow$  p. 178), placenta and mammary glands.

In **transitory hypocalcemia**, the bones act as a temporary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  *buffer* ( $\rightarrow$  **D**) until the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  deficit has been balanced by a calcitriol-mediated increase in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  absorption from the gut. If too little calcitriol is available, skeletal demineralization will lead to **osteomalacia** in adults and **rickets** in children. **Vitamin D deficiencies** are caused by inadequate dietary intake, reduced absorption (fat maldigestion), insufficient UV light exposure, and/or reduced 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylation (renal insufficiency). Skeletal demineralization mostly occurs due to the prolonged increase in parathyroid hormone secretion associated with chronic hypocalcemia (*compensatory hyperparathyroidism*).



**Cholesterol** is the precursor of steroid hormones ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Cholesterol is mainly synthesized in the **liver**. It arises from acetyl-coenzyme A (acetyl-CoA) via a number of intermediates (e.g., squalene, lanosterol) and is transported to the endocrine glands by lipoproteins ( $\rightarrow$  p.258). Cholesterol can be synthesized *de novo* also in the adrenal cortex, but not in the placenta ( $\rightarrow$  p.306). Since only small quantities of steroid hormones are stored in the organs of origin, i.e., the adrenal cortex, ovaries, testes and placenta ( $\rightarrow$  p.306), they must be synthesized from the cellular cholesterol pool as needed.

Cholesterol contains 27 carbon atoms. **Pregnenolone** (21 C atoms;  $\rightarrow$  **A, a**), the precursor of steroid hormones, arises from cholesterol via numerous intermediates. Pregnenolone also yields **progesterone** ( $\rightarrow$  **A, b**), which is not only a potent hormone itself (female sex hormone;  $\rightarrow$  p.300ff.), but can act as the precursor of all other steroid hormones, i.e., (1) the adrenocortical hormones with 21 carbon atoms ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, yellow and orange fields); (2) male sex hormones (androgens, 19 carbon atoms) synthesized in the testes ( $\rightarrow$  p.308), ovaries and adrenal cortex ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, green and blue fields); and (3) female sex hormones (*estrogens*, 18 carbon atoms;  $\rightarrow$  p.300ff.) synthesized in the ovaries ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, red zones).

The precursors for steroid hormone synthesis are present in all steroid hormone glands. The type of hormone produced and the site of hormone synthesis depend on (1) the type of receptors available for the superordinate control hormones (ACTH, FSH, LH, etc.) and (2) the dominant enzyme responsible for changing the structure of the steroid molecule in the hormone-producing cells of the gland in question. The **adrenal cortex** contains 11-, 17- and 21-hydroxylases—enzymes that introduce an OH group at position C21, C17 or C11, respectively, of the steroid molecule ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, top left panel for numerical order). Hydroxylation at C21 ( $\rightarrow$  **A, c**)—as realized in the *glomerular zone* of the adrenal cortex—makes the steroid insensitive to the effects of 17-hydroxylase. As a result, only **mineralocorticoids** like corticosterone and aldosterone (**A, d**  $\Rightarrow$  **e**; see also p.184) can be synthesized. Initial hydroxylation at C17 ( $\rightarrow$  **A, f** or **g**) results in the synthesis

of **glucocorticoids**—realized mainly in the *fascicular zone* of the adrenal cortex ( $\rightarrow$  **A, h**  $\Rightarrow$  **j**  $\Rightarrow$  **k**)—and **17-ketosteroids**, steroids with a keto group at C17 ( $\rightarrow$  **A, l** and **m**). Glucocorticoids and 17-ketosteroids can therefore be synthesized from 17 $\alpha$ -hydroxypregnenolone without the aid of progesterone ( $\rightarrow$  **A, n**  $\Rightarrow$  **h**  $\Rightarrow$  **j**).

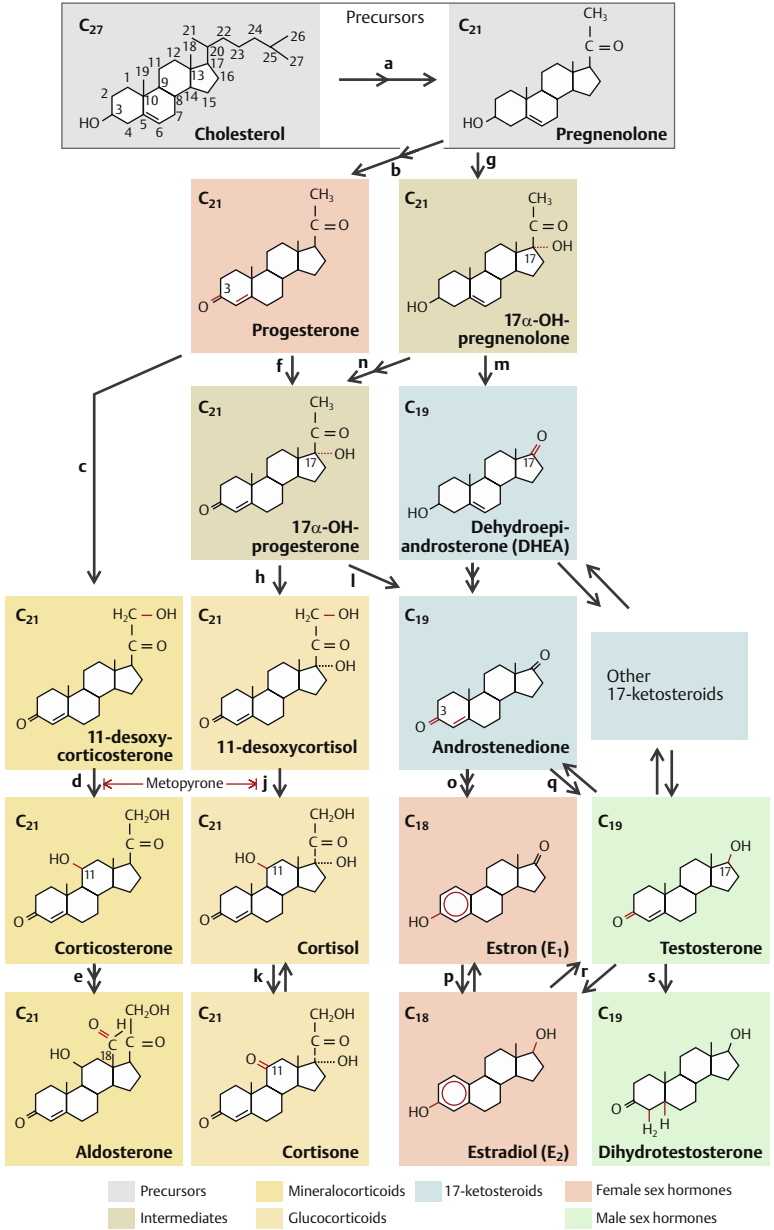
The **estrogens** ( $\rightarrow$  p.304) *estrone* and *estradiol* can be directly or indirectly synthesized from 17-ketosteroids ( $\rightarrow$  **A, o**  $\Rightarrow$  **p**); they are produced indirectly by way of testosterone ( $\rightarrow$  **A, q**  $\Rightarrow$  **r**  $\Rightarrow$  **p**). The true active substance of certain target cells for androgens (e.g., in the prostate) is either *dihydrotestosterone* or *estradiol*; both are synthesized from testosterone ( $\rightarrow$  **A, s** and **A, r**, respectively).

**17-ketosteroids** are synthesized by the gonads (testes and ovaries) and adrenal cortex. Since they are found in the urine, the *metyrapone test* of pituitary function is used to assess the *ACTH reserve* based on urinary 17-ketosteroids levels. ACTH secretion is normally subject to feedback control by glucocorticoids ( $\rightarrow$  p.298). Metyrapone inhibits 11-hydroxylase activity ( $\rightarrow$  **A, d** and **j**), which leaves ACTH un-suppressed in healthy subjects. Urinary 17-ketosteroid levels should therefore increase after metyrapone administration. An abnormality of ACTH secretion can be assumed when this does not occur in patients with a healthy adrenal cortex.

**Degradation of steroid hormones** occurs mainly in the **liver**. Their OH groups are usually linked to *sulfate* or *glucuronic acid* molecules and the coupling products are ultimately excreted in the bile or urine ( $\rightarrow$  pp.160, 183 and 250). The chief urinary metabolite of the estrogens is *estriol*, while that of the gestagens (mainly progesterone and 17 $\alpha$ -hydroxypregesterone) is *pregnanediol* ( $\rightarrow$  p.306). Pregnanediol levels in urine can be measured to confirm or exclude *pregnancy* (pregnanediol test).

Chronically increased estrogen levels due, for example, to decreased estrogen degradation secondary to liver damage, can lead to breast development (*gynecomastia*) in the male, among other things. For normal estrogen ranges, see table on p.304.

**A. Biosynthesis of steroid hormones**



The **mineralocorticosteroids** *aldosterone*, corticosterone and 11-desoxycorticosterone (→ pp. 184ff. and 296) are synthesized in the *glomerular zone* of the **adrenal cortex** (→ **A1**), whereas the **glucocorticosteroids** *cortisol* (hydrocortisone) and cortisone (→ p. 296, small quantities) are synthesized in the *fascicular zone* (→ **A2**). **Androgens** are synthesized in the *reticular zone* of the adrenal cortex (→ **A3**). One of the androgens is *dehydroepiandrosterone* (DHEA), which is used (partly in its sulfated form, DHEA-S) to synthesize various sex hormones in other tissues (→ p. 306).

**Cortisol transport.** Most of the plasma cortisol is bound to *transcortin*, or *cortisol-binding globulin* (CBG), a specific transport protein with a high-affinity binding site for cortisol. Cortisol is released in response to conformational changes of CBG due to inflammation etc.

**CRH and ACTH** regulate cortisol synthesis and secretion (→ **A4, A5**; see also p. 272). ACTH ensures also structural preservation of the adrenal cortex and supplies cortisol precursors, e.g., by forming cholesterol from its esters, by de novo synthesis of cholesterol and by converting it to progesterone and 17 $\alpha$ -hydroxyprogesterone (→ pp. 258 and 296). **ACTH secretion** is stimulated by **CRH** and epinephrine and inhibited (negative feedback control) by *cortisol* with or without the aid of CRH (→ **A**; see also p. 275 A).

A **circadian rhythm** of CRH secretion and thus of ACTH and cortisol secretion can be observed. The peak secretion is in the morning (→ **B**, mean values). Continuous hormone conc. sampling at short intervals have shown that ACTH and cortisol are secreted in 2–3-hour *episodes* (→ **B**).

**Receptor proteins** (→ p. 280) for glucocorticoids can be found in virtually every cell. Glucocorticoids are vital hormones that exert numerous **effects**, the most important of which are listed below.

**Carbohydrate and amino acid (AA) metabolism** (see also pp. 285 A and 287 C): Cortisol uses amino acids (AA) derived from protein degradation to increase the plasma glucose concentration (*gluconeogenesis*), which can lead to the so-called *steroid diabetes* in extreme cases. Thus, cortisol has a *catabolic* ef-

fect (degrades proteins) that results in the increased excretion of urea.

**Cardiovascular function:** Glucocorticoids increase myocardial contractility and vasoconstriction due to enhancement of catecholamine effects (→ pp. 196 and 216). These are described as *permissive effects* of cortisol. Cortisol increases the synthesis of epinephrine in the adrenal medulla (→ **A6**) and of angiotensinogen in the liver (→ p. 186).

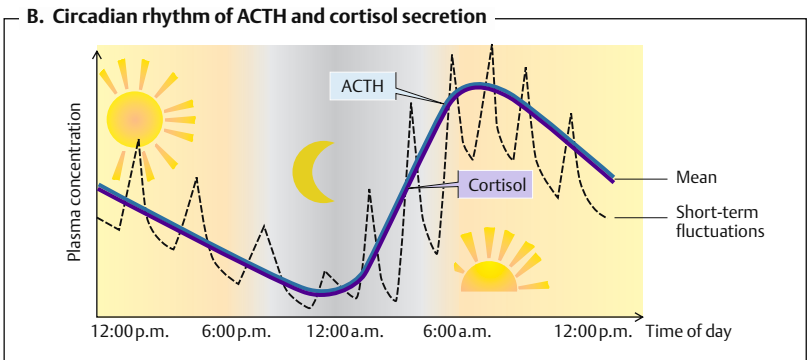
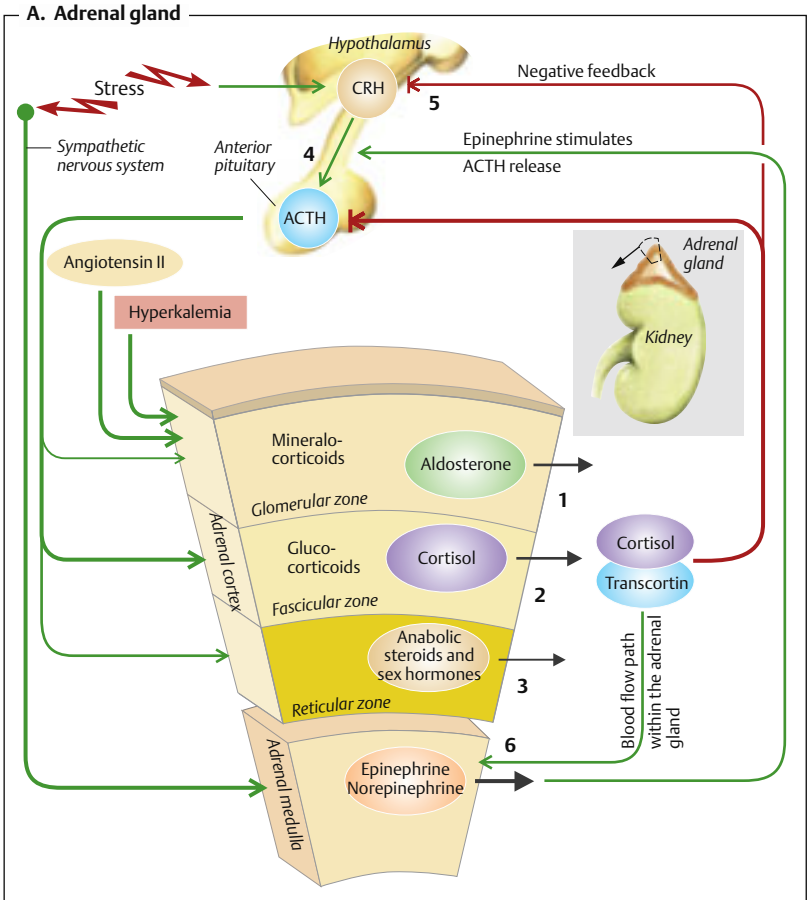
Especially when administered at high doses, glucocorticoids induce **anti-inflammatory and anti-allergic effects** because they stabilize lymphokine synthesis and histamine release (→ p. 100). On the other hand, interleukin-1, interleukin-2 and TNF- $\alpha$  (e.g., in severe infection) leads to increased secretion of CRH and high cortisol conc. (see below).

**Renal function:** Glucocorticoids delay the *excretion of water* and help to maintain a normal glomerular filtration rate. They can react also with aldosterone receptors but are converted to cortisone by *11 $\beta$ -hydroxysteroid oxidoreductase* in aldosterone target cells. Normal cortisol conc. are therefore ineffective at the aldosterone receptor. High conc., however, have the same effect as aldosterone (→ p. 184).

**Gastric function:** Glucocorticoids weaken the protective mechanisms of the gastric mucosa. Thus, high-dose glucocorticoids or stress (see below) increase the risk of gastric ulcers (→ p. 244).

**Cerebral function:** High glucocorticoid conc. change hypothalamic (→ **A**) and electrical brain activity (EEG) and lead to psychic abnormalities.

**Stress:** Physical or mental stress increases cortisol secretion as a result of increased CRH secretion and increased sympathetic tone (→ **A**). Many of the aforementioned effects of cortisol therefore play a role in the body's response to stress (activation of energy metabolism, increase in cardiac performance, etc.). In severe physical (e.g., sepsis) or mental stress (e.g., depression), the cortisol plasma conc. remains at a very high level (up to 10 times the normal value) throughout the day.



**Oogenesis.** The development of the female gametes (ova) extends from the oogonium stage to the primary oocyte stage (in the primordial follicle), starting long before birth. Oogenesis therefore occurs much sooner than the corresponding stages of spermatogenesis (→ p. 308). The fetal phase of oogenesis is completed by the first week of gestation; these oocytes remain latent until puberty. In the sexually mature female, a fertilizable ovum develops in the graafian follicles approximately every 28 days.

**Menstrual cycle.** After the start of sexual maturation, a woman starts to secrete the following hormones in a cyclic (approx.) 28-day rhythm (→ A1, A2). *Gonadoliberin* (= *gonadotropin-releasing hormone*, Gn-RH) and *dopamine* (PIH) are secreted by the hypothalamus. *Follicle-stimulating hormone* (FSH), *lutinizing hormone* (LH) and *prolactin* (PRL) are released by the anterior pituitary. *Progesterone*, *estrogens* (chiefly estradiol, E<sub>2</sub>) and *inhibin* are secreted by the ovaries. Gn-RH controls the *pulsatile secretion* of FSH and LH (→ p. 302), which in turn regulate the secretion of estradiol and progesterone. The female sex functions are controlled by the periodic release of hormones, the purpose of which is to produce a fertilizable egg in the ovaries each month (→ A4) and produce an environment suitable for sperm reception (*fertilization*) and implantation of the fertilized ovum (*nidation*) (→ A5). This cyclic activity is reflected by the monthly *menses* (*menstruation*) which, by definition, marks the start of the menstrual cycle.

Girls in Central Europe usually have their first menstrual period (**menarche**) around the age of 13. By about age 40, the cycle becomes increasingly irregular over a period of up to 10 years (**climacteric**) as the end of the reproductive period nears. The last menses (**menopause**) generally occurs around the age of 48–52.

A menstrual cycle can last 21–35 days. The second half of the cycle (**luteal phase** = secretory phase) usually lasts 14 days, while the first half (**follicular phase** = proliferative phase) lasts 7–21 days. **Ovulation** separates the two phases (→ A). If the cycle length varies by more than 2–3 days, ovulation generally does not occur. Such *anovulatory cycles* account for 20% of all cycles in healthy females.

In addition to general changes in the body and mood, the following changes occur in the

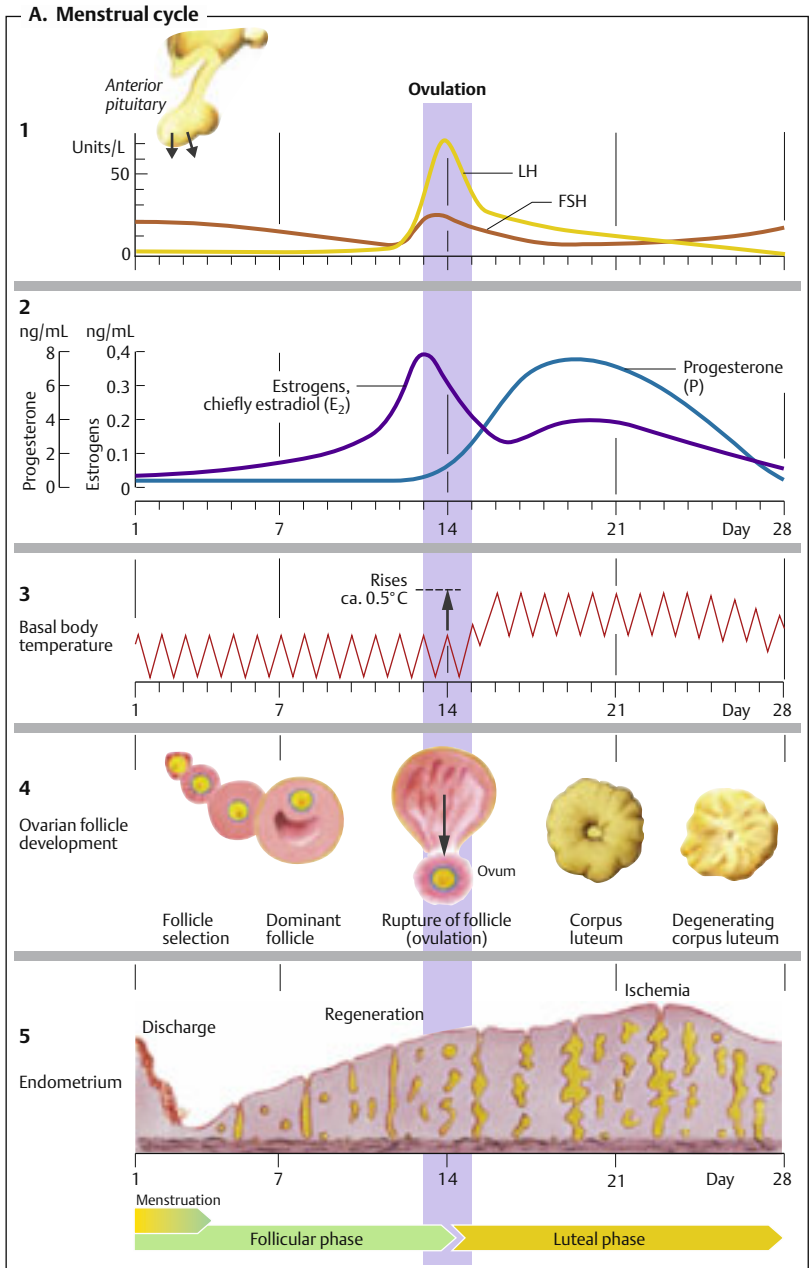
ovaries, uterus and cervix during the menstrual cycle (→ A):

**Day 1:** Start of menstruation (lasting about 2–6 days).

**Days 1–14** (variable, see above): The **follicular phase** starts on the first day of menstruation. The endometrium thickens to become prepared for the implantation of the fertilized ovum during the luteal phase (→ A5), and about 20 ovarian follicles mature under the influence of FSH. One of these becomes the *dominant follicle*, which produces increasing quantities of *estrogens* (→ A4 and p. 300). The small cervical os is blocked by a viscous mucous plug.

**Day 14** (variable, see above): **Ovulation.** The amount of *estrogens* produced by the follicle increases rapidly between day 12 and 13 (→ A2). The increased secretion of LH in response to higher levels of estrogen leads to ovulation (→ A1, A4; see also p. 302). The *basal body temperature* (measured on an empty stomach before rising in the morning) rises about 0.5°C about 1–2 days later and remains elevated until the end of the cycle (→ A3). This temperature rise generally indicates that ovulation has occurred. During ovulation, the *cervical mucus* is less viscous (it can be stretched into long threads—*spinnbarkeit*) and the cervical os opens slightly to allow the sperm to enter.

**Days 14–28:** The **luteal phase** is characterized by the development of a *corpus luteum* (→ A4), which secretes *progesterone*, (→ A2); an increase in mucoid secretion from the uterine glands also occurs (→ A5). The endometrium is most responsive to progesterone around the 22nd day of the cycle, which is when *nidation* should occur if the ovum has been fertilized. Otherwise, progesterone and estrogens now inhibit Gn-RH secretion (→ p. 302), resulting in degeneration of the corpus luteum. The subsequent rapid decrease in the plasma concentrations of estrogens and progesterone (→ A2) results in constriction of endometrial blood vessels and ischemia. This ultimately leads to the breakdown and discharge of the uterine lining and to bleeding, i.e., menstruation (→ A5).



In sexually mature women, **gonadoliberin** or **gonadotropin-releasing hormone (Gn-RH)** is secreted in one-minute pulses every 60–90 min in response to signals from various neurotransmitters. This, in turn, induces the pulsatile secretion of FSH and LH from the anterior pituitary. If the rhythm of Gn-RH secretion is much faster or continuous, less FSH and LH will be secreted, which can result in infertility. The LH:FSH secretion ratio changes during the course of the menstrual cycle. Their release must be therefore subject to additional factors besides Gn-RH.

The secretion of LH and FSH is, for example, subject to **central nervous effects** (psychogenic factors, stress) mediated by various **transmitters** circulating in the portal blood in the hypothalamic region, e.g., norepinephrine (NE) and neuropeptide Y (NPY) as well as by ovarian hormones, i.e., by *estrogens* (estrone, estradiol, estriol, etc.), *progesterone* and *inhibin*. Ovarian hormones affect Gn-RH secretion indirectly by stimulating central nerve cells that activate Gn-RH-secreting neurons by way of neurotransmitters such as norepinephrine and NPY and inhibit Gn-RH secretion by way of GABA and opioids.

FSH production again increases toward the end of the luteal phase (→ p.301, A1). In the **early follicular phase** (→ A1), FSH induces the proliferation of the *stratum granulosum* in about 20 follicles and stimulates the secretion of *aromatase* in their *granulosa cells*. Aromatase catalyzes the conversion of the androgens *testosterone* and *androstenedione* to estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>) and estrone (E<sub>1</sub>) (→ p.297 A, steps *r* and *o*). Estrogens are synthesized in *theca cells* and absorbed by granulosa cells. Although relatively small amounts of LH are secreted (→ A1 and p.301 A1), this is enough to activate theca cell-based enzymes (17β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase and C17/C20-lyase) that help to produce the androgens needed for estrogen synthesis. The follicle-based estrogens increase their own FSH receptor density. The follicle with the highest estrogen content is therefore the most sensitive to FSH. This loop has a self-amplifying effect, and the follicle in question is selected as the **dominant follicle** around the 6th day of the cycle (→ A2). In the **mid-follicular phase**, estrogens restrict FSH and LH secretion (via negative feedback control and with the aid of *inhibin*; → A2) but later stimulate LH receptor produc-

tion in granulosa cells. These cells now also start to produce progesterone (start of *luteinization*), which is absorbed by the theca cells (→ A3) and used as precursor for further increase in androgen synthesis (→ p.297 A, steps *f* and *l*).

Inhibin and estrogens secreted by the dominant follicle increasingly inhibit FSH secretion, thereby decreasing the estrogen production in other follicles. This leads to an androgen build-up in and **apoptosis of the unselected follicles**.

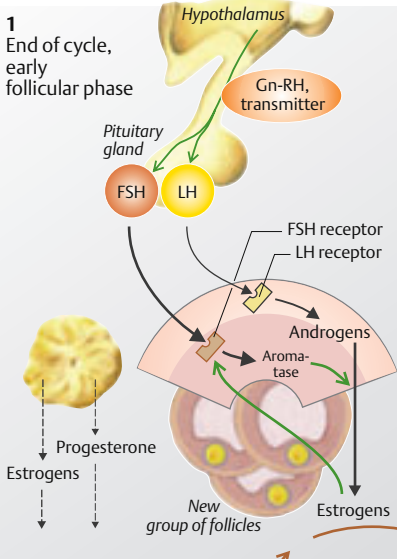
Increasing quantities of LH and FSH are released in the **late follicular phase** (→ A3), causing a sharp rise in their plasma concentrations. The **FSH peak** occurring around day 13 of the cycle induces the **first meiotic division** of the ovum. Estrogens increase the LH secretion (mainly via the hypothalamus), resulting in the increased production of androgens and estrogens (**positive feedback**) and a rapid rise in the LH conc. (**LH surge**). The **LH peak** occurs around **day 14** (→ A2). The follicle ruptures and discharges its ovum about 10 hours later (**ovulation**). Ovulation does not take place if the LH surge does not occur or is too slow. Pregnancy is not possible in the absence of ovulation.

**Luteal phase** (→ A4). LH, FSH and estrogens transform the ovarian follicle into a *corpus luteum*. It actively secretes large quantities of **progesterone** (progestational hormone), marking the beginning of the luteal phase (→ A). Estrogens and progesterone now **inhibit** the secretion of FSH and LH directly and indirectly (e.g., through inhibition of Gn-RH; see above), causing a rapid drop in their plasma conc. This **negative feedback** leads to a marked drop in the plasma conc. of estrogens and progesterone towards the end of the menstrual cycle (approx. day 26), thereby triggering the menses (→ p. 301, A2). FSH secretion starts to rise just before the start of menstruation (→ A4).

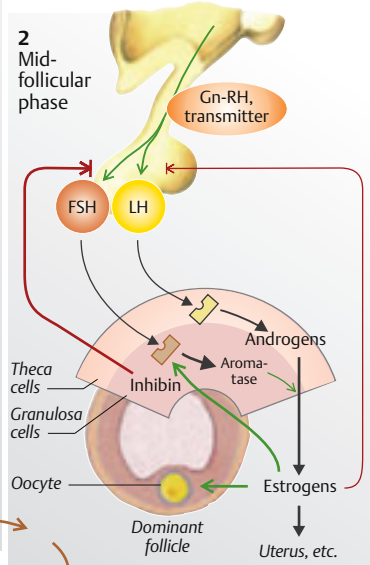
Combined administration of estrogens and gestagens during the first half of the menstrual cycle prevents ovulation. Since ovulation does not occur, pregnancy cannot take place. Most **contraceptives** work according to this principle.

**A. Hormonal control of the menstrual cycle**

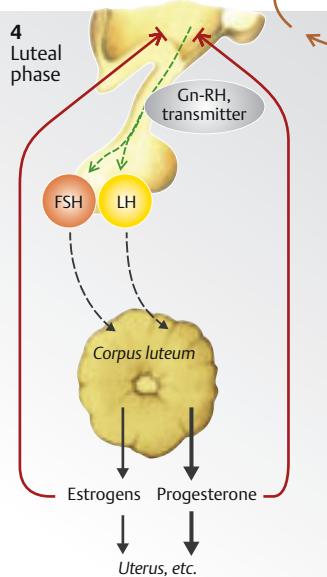
**1** End of cycle, early follicular phase



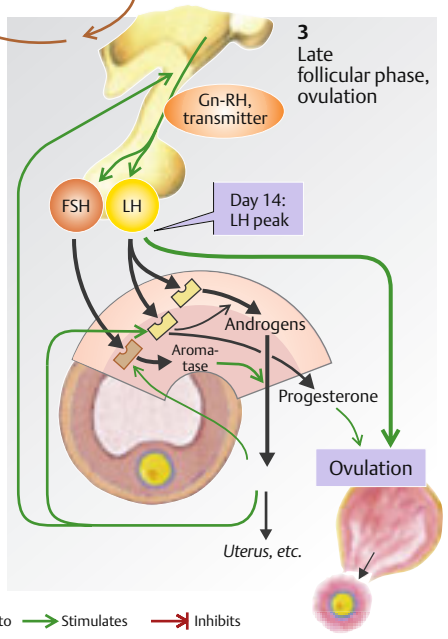
**2** Mid-follicular phase



**4** Luteal phase



**3** Late follicular phase, ovulation



(In part after H.-P. Leichtweiß)

→ Becomes/goes to    → Stimulates    → Inhibits

**Estrogens** are steroid hormones with 18 carbon atoms. Estrogens are primarily synthesized from the 17-ketosteroid *androstenedione*, but testosterone can also be a precursor ( $\rightarrow$  p. 297 A). The *ovaries*, (granulosa and theca cells), *placenta* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 304), *adrenal cortex*, and in *Leydig's cells* (interstitial cells) of the *testes* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 308) are the physiological **sites of estrogen synthesis**. In some target cells for testosterone, it must first be converted to estradiol to become active.

**Estradiol ( $E_2$ )** is the most potent estrogen (E). The potencies of **estrone ( $E_1$ )** and **estriol ( $E_3$ )** are relatively low in comparison ( $E_2 : E_1 : E_3 = 10 : 5 : 1$ ). Most estrogens (and testosterone) circulating in the blood are bound to *sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG)*. Estriol ( $E_3$ ) is the chief degradation product of estradiol ( $E_2$ ).

Oral administration of estradiol has virtually no effect because almost all of the hormone is removed from the bloodstream during its first pass through the liver. Therefore, other estrogens (with a different chemical structure) must be used for effective **oral estrogen therapy**.

**Actions of Estrogens.** Although estrogens play a role in the development of female sex characteristics, they are not nearly as important as the androgens for male sexual development ( $\rightarrow$  p. 308). The preparatory action of estrogen is often required for optimal progesterone effects (e.g., in the uterus; see below). Other important effects of estrogens in human females are as follows.

◆ **Menstrual cycle.** Estrogens accelerate maturation of the ovarian follicle during the menstrual cycle ( $\rightarrow$  p. 306 and table). In the *uterus*, estrogen promotes the proliferation (thickening) of the endometrium and increases uterine muscle contraction. In the *vagina*, estrogen thickens the mucosal lining, leading to the increased discharge of glycogen-containing epithelial cells. The liberated glycogen is used for an increased production of lactic acid by Döderlein's bacillus. This lowers the vaginal pH to 3.5–5.5, thereby reducing the risk of vaginal infection. In the *cervix*, the mucous plug sealing the cervical os functions as a barrier that prevents sperm from entering the uterus. Estrogens change the consistency of the cervical mucus, making it more conducive

to sperm penetration and survival, especially around the time of ovulation.

◆ **Fertilization.** In the female body, estrogens prepare the sperm to penetrate and fertilize the ovum (*capacitation*) and regulate the speed at which the ovum travels in the fallopian tube.

◆ **Extragenital effects of estrogen.** During *puberty*, estrogens stimulate breast development, induces changes in the vagina and in the distribution of subcutaneous fat, and (together with androgens) stimulate the growth of pubic and axillary hair.

Since estrogens increase the coagulability of the blood, the administration of estrogens (e.g., in contraceptives) increases the risk of thrombosis.

Estrogens also promote renal salt and water retention. Estrogens slow longitudinal bone growth, accelerate epiphyseal closure (in men and women) and increase osteoblast activity. Estrogen deficiencies in menopause consequently lead to the loss of bone mass (*osteoporosis*). Estrogens induce a decrease in LDL and a rise in VLDL and HDL concentrations ( $\rightarrow$  p. 256ff.), which is why arteriosclerosis is less common in premenopausal women than in men. Estrogen also makes the *skin* thinner and softer, reduces the sebaceous glands, and increases fat deposits in subcutaneous tissue. Lastly, estrogen influences a number of *central nervous functions*, e.g., sexual response, social behavior, and mood.

Plasma concentrations of estradiol and progesterone (ng/mL)

Phase	Estradiol	Progesterone
<b>Women</b>		
Early follicular phase	0.06	0.3
Mid- and late follicular phase	0.1 $\Rightarrow$ 0.4	1.0
Ovulation	0.4	2.0
Mid-luteal phase	0.2	8–16
Pregnancy	7–14	40 $\Rightarrow$ 130
Day 1 after parturition		20
<b>Men</b>		
	0.05	0.3

## Progesterone

Progesterone, the most potent progestational (pregnancy-sustaining) hormone, is a steroid

hormone (21 C atoms) synthesized from cholesterol via pregnenolone (→ p. 297). It is produced in the corpus luteum, ovarian follicles and placenta (→ p. 306) of the female, and in the adrenal cortex of males and females. Like cortisol, most circulating progesterone is bound to cortisol-binding globulin (CBG = transcortin). Like estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>), most progesterone is broken down during its first pass through the liver, so oral doses of progesterone are almost completely ineffective. *Pregnenediol* is the most important degradation product of progesterone.

**Actions of progesterone.** The *main functions* of progesterone are to prepare the female genital tract for implantation and maturation of the fertilized ovum and to **sustain pregnancy** (→ see table). Progesterone counteracts many of the effects induced by estrogens, but various effects of progesterone depend on the preparatory activity or simultaneous action of estrogens. During the follicular phase, for example, estrogens increase the density of progesterone receptors, while simultaneous estrogen activity is needed to induce mammary growth (see below).

◆ The **uterus** is the chief target organ of progesterone. Once estrogen induces endometrial thickening, progesterone stimulates growth of the uterine muscle (myometrium), restructures the endometrial glands (→ p. 300), alters the blood supply to the endometrium, and changes the glycogen content. This represents the transformation from a proliferative endometrium to a secretory endometrium, with a peak occurring around day 22 of the cycle. Progesterone later plays an important role in the potential implantation (nidation) of the fertilized ovum because it reduces myometrial activity (important during pregnancy), narrows the **cervical os**, and changes the consistency of the cervical mucous plug so that it becomes virtually impregnable to sperm.

◆ Progesterone inhibits the release of LH during the luteal phase. The administration of gestagens like progesterone during the follicular phase *inhibits ovulation*. Together with its effects on the cervix (see above) and its inhibitory effect on capacitation (→ p. 304), progesterone can therefore have a contraceptive effect ("**mini pill**").

◆ High levels of progesterone have an anesthetic effect on the **central nervous system**.

◆ Progesterone also increases the susceptibility to epileptic fits and exerts thermogenic action, i.e., it raises the basal body temperature (→ p. 300). In addition, a decrease in the progesterone concentration is also believed to be responsible for the mood changes and depression observed before menstruation (*premenstrual syndrome, PMS*) and after pregnancy (*postpartum depression*).

◆ In the **kidneys**, progesterone slightly inhibits the effects of aldosterone, thereby inducing increased NaCl excretion.

### Prolactin and Oxytocin

The secretion of **prolactin (PRL)** is inhibited by prolactin-inhibiting hormone (PIH = **dopamine**) and stimulated by thyroliberin (TRH) (→ p. 272). Prolactin increases the hypothalamic secretion of PIH in both men and women (negative feedback control). Conversely, estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>) and progesterone inhibit PIH secretion (indirectly via transmitters, as observed with Gn-RH; see above). Consequently, prolactin secretion rises significantly during the second half of the menstrual cycle and during pregnancy. Prolactin (together with estrogens, progesterone, glucocorticoids and insulin) stimulate *breast enlargement* during pregnancy and *lactogenesis* after parturition. In breast-feeding, stimulation of the nerve endings in the nipples by the suckling infant stimulates the secretion of prolactin (**lactation reflex**). This also increases release of oxytocin which triggers *milk ejection* and increases uterine contractions, thereby increasing lochia discharge after birth. When the mother stops breast-feeding, the prolactin levels drop, leading to the rapid stoppage of milk production.

**Hyperprolactinemia.** Stress and certain drugs inhibit the secretion of PIH, causing an increase in prolactin secretion. *Hypothyroidism* (→ p. 290) can also lead to hyperprolactinemia, because the associated increase in TRH stimulates the release of prolactin. Hyperprolactinemia inhibits ovulation and leads to *galactorrhea*, i.e., the secretion of milk irrespective of pregnancy. Some women utilize the anti-ovulatory effect of nursing as a natural method of birth control, which is often but not always effective.

Beside its other functions, the **placenta** produces most of the hormones needed during pregnancy ( $\rightarrow$  p. 222). *Ovarian hormones* also play a role, especially at the start of pregnancy ( $\rightarrow$  A).

**Placental hormones.** The primary hormones produced by the placenta are *human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)*, *corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH)*, *estrogens*, *progesterone*, *human placental lactogen (hPL)*, and *proopiomelanocortin (POMC)*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 282). hCG is the predominant hormone during the first trimester of pregnancy (3-month period calculated from the beginning of the last menses). Maternal conc. of hPL and CRH-controlled estrogens rise sharply during the third trimester ( $\rightarrow$  B). Placental hormones are distributed to mother and fetus. Because of the close connection between maternal, fetal and placental hormone synthesis, they are jointly referred to as the **fetoplacental unit** ( $\rightarrow$  A).

**Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)** (a) stimulates the synthesis of steroids like DHEA and DHEA-S by the fetal adrenal cortex (see below); (b) suppresses follicle maturation in the maternal ovaries, and (c) maintains the production of progesterone and estrogen in the corpus luteum ( $\rightarrow$  A1) until the 6th week of gestation, i.e., until the placenta is able to produce sufficient quantities of the hormones.

Most **pregnancy tests** are based on the fact that hCG is detectable in the urine about 6–8 days after conception. Since the levels of estrogen and progesterone greatly increase during pregnancy (see table on p. 304), larger quantities of these hormones and their metabolites *estriol* and *pregnanediol* are excreted in the urine. Therefore, their conc. can also be measured to test for pregnancy.

In contrast to other endocrine organs, the placenta has to receive the appropriate precursors (cholesterol or androgens,  $\rightarrow$  p. 296) from the maternal and fetal adrenal cortex, respectively, before it can synthesize progesterone and estrogen ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The **fetal adrenal cortex (FAC)** is sometimes larger than the kidneys and consists of a *fetal zone* and an *adult zone*. The placenta takes up cholesterol and pregnenolone and uses them to synthesize progesterone. It is transported to the fetal zone of the FAC, where it is converted to *dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)* and *dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEA-S)*. DHEA and DHEA-S

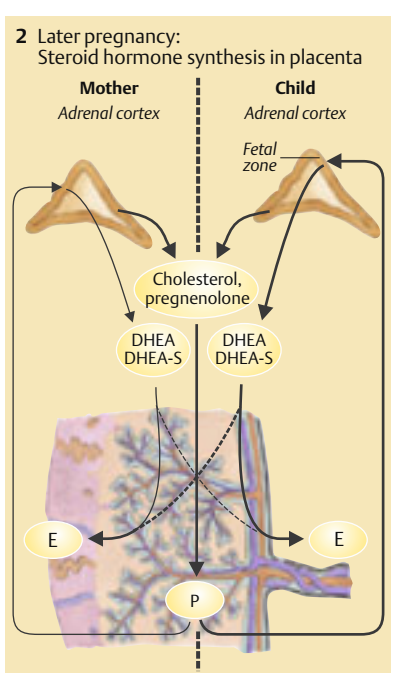
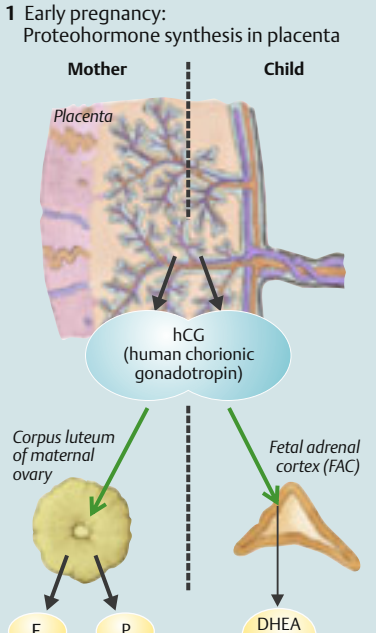
pass to the **placenta**, where they are used for *estrogen synthesis*. Progesterone is converted to *testosterone* in the *testes* of the male fetus.

**Human placental lactogen (hPL** = human chorionic somatomammotropin, HCS) levels rise steadily during pregnancy. Like prolactin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 305), hPL stimulates mammary enlargement and lactogenesis in particular and, like GH ( $\rightarrow$  p. 282), stimulates physical growth and development in general. hPL also seems to increase maternal plasma glucose conc.

**Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH)** secreted by the *placenta* seems to play a key role in the **hormonal regulation of birth**. The plasma levels of maternal CRH increase exponentially from the 12th week of gestation on. This rise is more rapid in premature births and slower in post-term births. In other words, the rate at which the CRH concentration rises seems to determine the duration of the pregnancy. Placental CRH stimulates the release of ACTH by the fetal pituitary, resulting in increased cortisol production in the adult zone of FAC; this again stimulates the release of CRH (positive feedback). CRH also stimulates lung development and the production of DHEA and DHEA-S in the fetal zone of FAC.

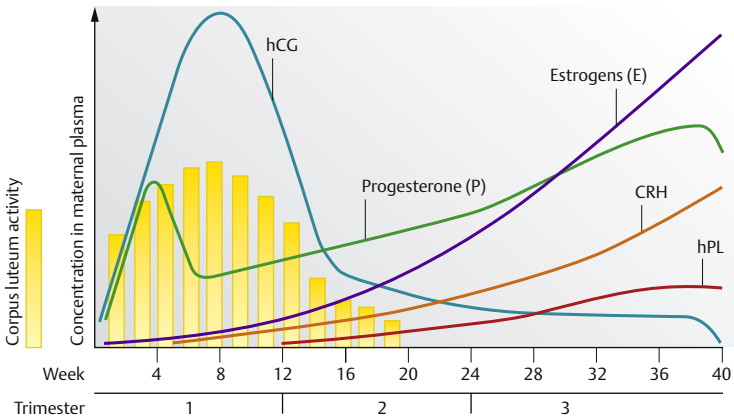
The maternal estrogen conc. rises sharply towards the **end of the pregnancy**, thereby counteracting the actions of progesterone, including its pregnancy-sustaining effect. Estrogens induce oxytocin receptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 305),  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 84ff.), and gap junctions in the uterine musculature ( $\rightarrow$  p. 16ff.), and uterine cells are depolarized. All these effects increase the responsiveness of the uterine musculature. The simultaneous increase in progesterone synthesis triggers the production of collagenases that soften the taut cervix. Stretch receptors in the uterus respond to the increase in size and movement of the fetus. Nerve fibers relay these signals to the hypothalamus, which responds by secreting larger quantities of oxytocin which, in turn, increases uterine contractions (positive feedback). The gap junctions conduct the spontaneous impulses from individual pacemaker cells in the fundus across the entire myometrium at a rate of approximately 2 cm/s ( $\rightarrow$  p. 70).

**A. Hormone synthesis in placenta, mother and fetus: fetoplacental unit**



Steroid hormones:  
P = progesterone; DHEA(-S) = dehydroepiandrosterone (sulfate); E = estrogens

**B. Hormone concentrations in plasma during pregnancy**



**Androgens** (male sex hormones) are steroid hormones with 19C atoms. This group includes potent hormones like *testosterone* (T) and *5 $\alpha$ -dihydrotestosterone* (DHT) and less potent *17-ketosteroids* (17-KS) such as DHEA ( $\rightarrow$  p. 296). In males, up to 95% of testosterone is synthesized by the *testes* ( $\rightarrow$  A2) and 5% by the *adrenal cortex* ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The *ovaries* and adrenal cortex synthesize testosterone in females. The plasma testosterone conc. in males is about 15 times higher than in females, but decreases with age. Up to 98% of testosterone circulating in blood is bound to plasma proteins (albumin and sex hormone-binding globulin, SHBG;  $\rightarrow$  A2).

The testes secrete also small quantities of DHT and **estradiol** (E<sub>2</sub>). Larger quantities of DHT (via *5 $\alpha$ -reductase*) and estradiol are synthesized from testosterone (via *aromatase*) by their respective target cells. A portion of this supply is released into the plasma. DHT and testosterone bind to the same intracellular receptor. Estradiol influences many functions in the male, e.g., epiphyseal cartilage and ejaculate formation and pituitary and hypothalamic activity.

**Testosterone secretion** is regulated by luteinizing hormone (=LH, also called ICSH,  $\rightarrow$  p. 271), the pulsatile secretion of which is controlled by Gn-RH at 1.5- to 2-hourly intervals, as in the female. LH stimulates the release of testosterone from Leydig's cells (interstitial cells) in the testes ( $\rightarrow$  A2), whereas testosterone and estradiol inhibit LH and Gn-RH secretion (negative feedback).

Gn-RH also induces the release of **FSH**, which stimulates the secretion of **inhibin** and induces the expression of *androgen-binding protein* (ABP) in Sertoli cells of the testes ( $\rightarrow$  A3). Testosterone cannot induce spermatogenesis without the help of ABP (see below). FSH also induces the formation of LH receptors in the interstitial cells of Leydig. Testosterone, DHT, estradiol and inhibin inhibit the secretion of FSH (negative feedback;  $\rightarrow$  A). **Activin**, the physiological significance of which is still unclear, inhibits FSH secretion.

Apart from the important **effects of testosterone** on male sexual differentiation, spermatogenesis and sperm growth as well as on the functions of the genitalia, prostate and seminal vesicle (see below), testosterone also

induces the *secondary sex characteristics* that occur in males around the time of puberty, i.e., body hair distribution, physique, laryngeal size (voice change), acne, etc. In addition, testosterone is necessary for normal sex drive (*libido*), procreative capacity (*fertility*) and coital capacity (*potentia coeundi*) in the male. Testosterone also stimulates *hematopoiesis* and has *anabolic properties*, leading to increased muscle mass in males. It also has central nervous effects and can influence behavior—e.g., cause aggressiveness.

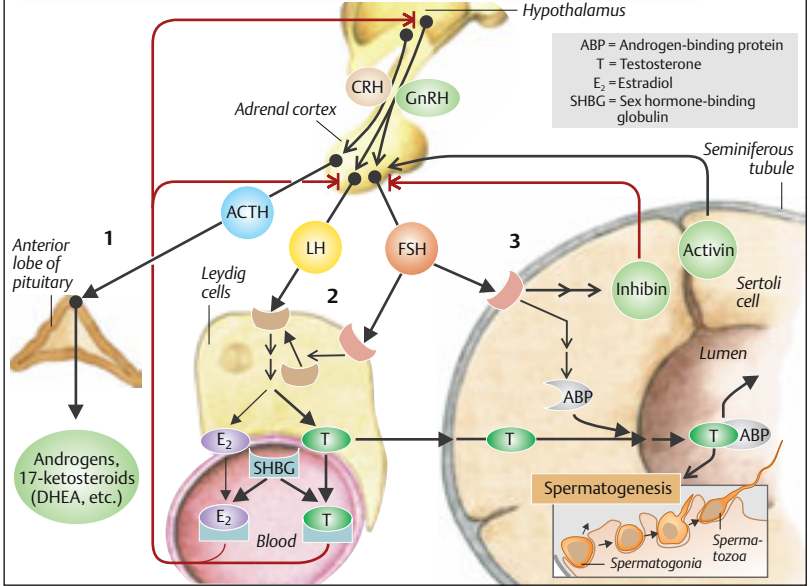
**Sexual development and differentiation.** The *genetic sex* ( $\rightarrow$  B) determines the development of the sex-specific *gonads* (gamete-producing glands). The germ cells (*spermatogonia*; see below) then migrate into the gonads. The *somatic sex* is female when the subsequent somatic sex development and sex differentiation occurs in the absence of testosterone ( $\rightarrow$  C). Male development requires the presence of testosterone in both steps ( $\rightarrow$  C) with or without the aid of additional factors (e.g., calcitonin gene-related peptide, CGRP?) in certain stages of development (e.g., descent of testes into scrotum).

High conc. of testosterone, either natural or synthetic (anabolic steroids), lead to masculinization (*virilization*) of the female ( $\rightarrow$  C).

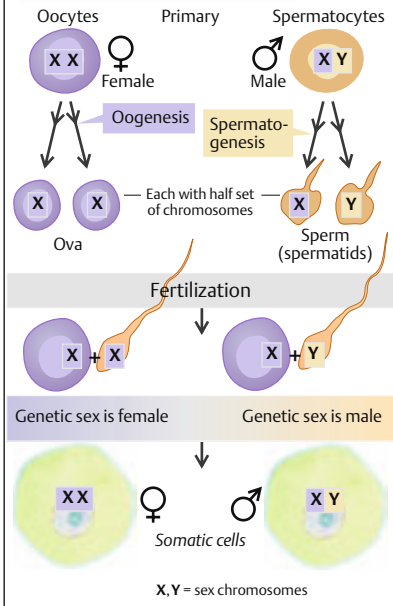
**Testicular function.** *Spermatogenesis* occurs in several stages in the testes (target organ of testosterone) and produces *sperm* (*spermatozoa*) ( $\rightarrow$  A3). Sperm are produced in the *seminiferous tubules* (total length, ca. 300 m), the epithelium of which consists of *germ cells* and *Sertoli cells* that support and nourish the spermatogenic cells. The seminiferous tubules are strictly separated from other testicular tissues by a *blood–testis barrier*. The testosterone required for sperm maturation and semen production ( $\rightarrow$  p. 310) must be bound to androgen-binding protein (ABP) to cross the barrier.

**Spermatogonia** ( $\rightarrow$  B) are primitive sex cells. At puberty, a spermatogonium divides mitotically to form two daughter cells. One of these is kept as a lifetime *stem cell* reservoir (in contrast to oogonia in the female;  $\rightarrow$  p. 300). The other undergoes several divisions to form a **primary spermatocyte**. It undergoes a *first meiotic division* (MD1) to produce two **secondary spermatocytes**, each of which undergoes a *second meiotic division* (MD2), producing a total of four **spermatids**, which ultimately differentiate into *spermatozoa*. After MD1, the spermatocytes have a single (haploid) set of chromosomes.

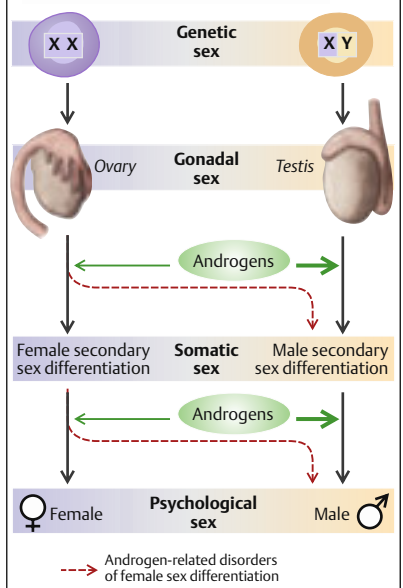
**A. Control and transport of androgenic hormones; effects of testosterone on the testes**



**B. Genetic sex determination**



**C. Effect of androgens on sexual differentiation**



**Sexual response in the male** (→ A1). Impulses from tactile receptors on the skin in the genital region (especially the glans penis) and other parts of the body (*erogenous areas*) are transmitted to the *erection center* in the sacral spinal cord (S2–S4), which conducts them to parasympathetic neurons of the pelvic splanchnic nerves, thereby triggering **sexual arousal**. Sexual arousal is decisively influenced by stimulatory or inhibitory *impulses from the brain* triggered by sensual perceptions, imagination and other factors. Via nitric oxide (→ p. 280), efferent impulses lead to dilatation of deep penile artery branches (helicine arteries) in the erectile body (*corpus cavernosum*), while the veins are compressed to restrict the drainage of blood. Moreover, voluntary and involuntary contractions of the ischiocavernosus muscle increase the pressure in the erectile body well above the systolic blood pressure. This causes the penis to stiffen and rise (**erection**). The *ejaculatory center* in the spinal cord (L2–L3) is activated when arousal reaches a certain threshold (→ A2). Immediately prior to ejaculation, efferent sympathetic impulses trigger the partial evacuation of the prostate gland and the **emission** of semen from the *vas deferens* to the posterior part of the urethra. This triggers the **ejaculation reflex** and is accompanied by **orgasm**, the apex of sexual excitement. The effects of orgasm can be felt throughout the entire body, which is reflected by perspiration and an increase in respiratory rate, heart rate, blood pressure, and skeletal muscle tone. During ejaculation, the internal sphincter muscle closes off the urinary bladder while the *vas deferens*, seminal vesicles and bulbospongiosus and ischiocavernosus muscles contract rhythmically to propel the semen out of the urethra.

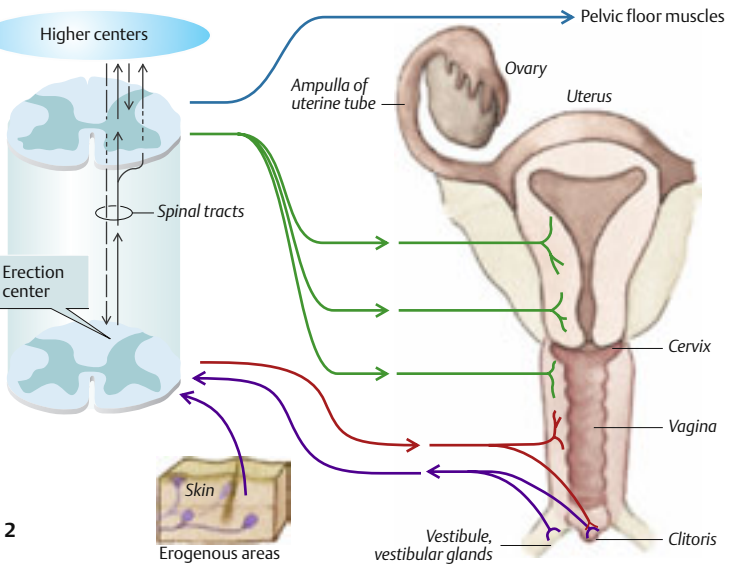
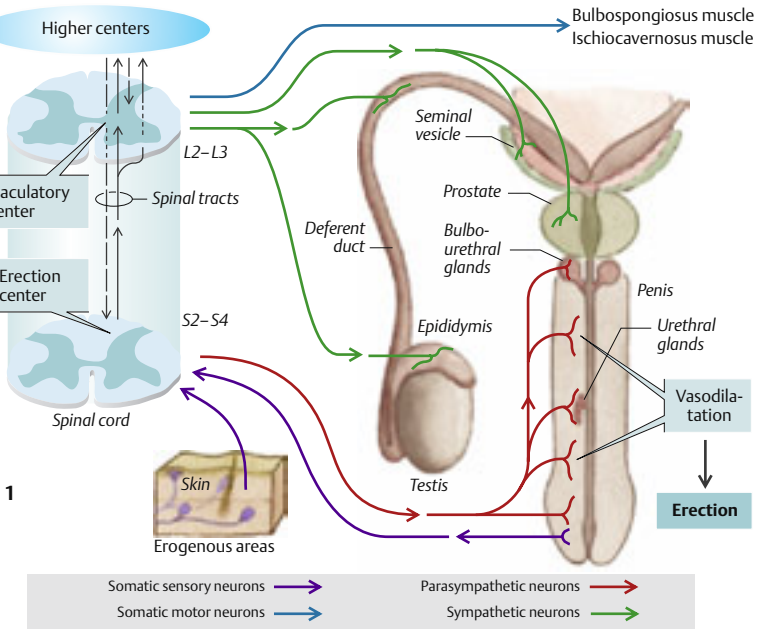
**Semen.** The fluid expelled during ejaculation (2–6 mL) contains 35–200 million sperm in a nutrient fluid (*seminal plasma*) composed of various substances, such as prostaglandins (from the prostate) that stimulate uterine contraction. Once semen enters the vagina during **intercourse**, the alkaline seminal plasma increase the vaginal pH to increase sperm motility. At least one sperm cell must reach the ovum for fertilization to occur.

**Sexual response in the female** (→ A2). Due to impulses similar to those in the male, the erectile tissues of the clitoris and vestibule of the vagina engorge with blood during the erection phase. Sexual arousal triggers the release of secretions from glands in the labia minora and transudates from the vaginal wall, both of which lubricate the vagina, and the nipples become erect. On continued stimulation, afferent impulses are transmitted to the lumbar spinal cord, where sympathetic impulses trigger **orgasm (climax)**. The vaginal walls contract rhythmically (*orgasmic cuff*), the vagina lengthens and widens, and the uterus becomes erect, thereby creating a space for the semen. The cervical os also widens and remains open for about a half an hour after orgasm. Uterine contractions begin shortly after orgasm (and are probably induced locally by oxytocin). Although the accompanying physical reactions are similar to those in the male (see above), there is a wide range of variation in the orgasmic phase of the female. Erection and orgasm are not essential for conception.

**Fertilization.** The fusion of sperm and egg usually occurs in the *ampulla* of the fallopian tube. Only a small percentage of the sperm expelled during ejaculation (1000–10 000 out of  $10^7$  to  $10^8$  sperm) reach the fallopian tubes (*sperm ascension*). To do so, the sperm must penetrate the mucous plug sealing the cervix, which also acts as a sperm reservoir for a few days. In the time required for them to reach the ampullary portion of the fallopian tube (about 5 hours), the sperm must undergo certain changes to be able to fertilize an ovum; this is referred to as **capacitation** (→ p. 304).

After ovulation (→ p. 300ff.) the ovum enters the tube to the uterus (*oviduct*) via the abdominal cavity. When a sperm makes contact with the egg (via chemotaxis), species-specific sperm-binding receptors on the ovum are exposed and the proteolytic enzyme *acrosin* is thereby activated (**acrosomal reaction**). Acrosin allows the sperm to penetrate the cells surrounding the egg (*corona radiata*). The sperm bind to receptors on the envelope surrounding the ovum (*zona pellucida*) and enters the egg. The membranes of both cells then *fuse*. The ovum now undergoes a *second meiotic division*, which concludes the act of *fertilization*. Rapid proteolytic changes in the receptors on the ovum (**zona pellucida reaction**) prevent other sperm from entering the egg. Fertilization usually takes place on the first day after intercourse and is only possible within 24 hours after ovulation.

**A. Sexual response pathways**



The *brain* and *spinal cord* make up the *central nervous system (CNS)* (→ **A**). The spinal cord is divided into similar *segments*, but is 30% shorter than the spinal column. The **spinal nerves** exit the spinal canal at the level of their respective vertebrae and contains the afferent somatic and visceral fibers of the *dorsal root*, which project to the spinal cord, and the efferent somatic (and partly autonomic) fibers of the *anterior root*, which project to the periphery. Thus, a nerve is a bundle of nerve fibers that has different functions and conducts impulses in different directions (→ p. 42).

**Spinal cord** (→ **A**). Viewed in cross-section, the spinal cord has a dark, butterfly-shaped inner area (*gray matter*) surrounded by a lighter outer area (*white matter*). The four wings of the gray matter are called *horns* (cross-section) or *columns* (longitudinal section). The *anterior horn* contains motoneurons (projecting to the muscles), the *posterior horn* contains interneurons. The cell bodies of most afferent fibers lie within the **spinal ganglion** outside the spinal cord. The white matter contains the axons of ascending and descending tracts.

**Brain** (→ **D**). The main parts of the brain are the *medulla oblongata* (→ **D7**) *pons* (→ **D6**), *mesencephalon* (→ **D5**), *cerebellum* (→ **E**), *diencephalon* and *telencephalon* (→ **E**). The medulla, pons and mesencephalon are collectively called the **brain stem**. It is structurally similar to the spinal cord but also contains cell bodies (nuclei) of *cranial nerves*, neurons controlling *respiration* and *circulation* (→ pp. 132 and 214ff.) etc. The **cerebellum** is an important control center for balance and motor function (→ p. 328ff.). Pons and cerebellum form the *metencephalon*.

**Diencephalon**. The *thalamus* (→ **C6**) of the diencephalon functions as a relay station for most afferents, e.g., from the eyes, ears and skin as well as from other parts of the brain. The *hypothalamus* (→ **C9**) is a higher autonomic center (→ p. 332), but it also plays a dominant role in endocrine function (→ p. 268ff.) as it controls the release of hormones from the adjacent *hypophysis* (→ **D4**).

The **telencephalon** consists of the cortex and nuclei important for motor function, the **basal ganglia**, i.e. *caudate nucleus* (→ **C5**), *puta-*

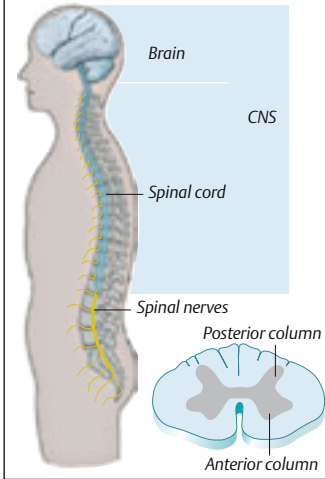
*men* (→ **C7**), *globus pallidus* (→ **C8**), and parts of the *amygdala* (→ **C10**). The amygdaloid nucleus and *cingulate gyrus* (→ **D2**) belong to the **limbic system** (→ p. 332). The **cerebral cortex** consists of four *lobes* divided by fissures (sulci), e.g., the *central sulcus* (→ **D1, E**) and *lateral sulcus* (→ **C3, E**). According to *Brodmann's map*, the cerebral cortex is divided into histologically distinct regions (→ **E**, italic letters) that generally have different functions (→ **E**). The *hemispheres* of the brain are closely connected by nerve fibers of the *corpus callosum* (→ **C1, D3**).

### Cerebrospinal Fluid

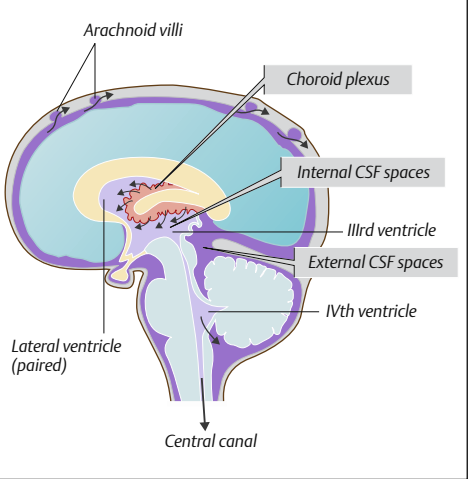
The brain is surrounded by external and internal *cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) spaces* (→ **B**). The internal CSF spaces are called *ventricles*. The two lateral ventricles, I and II, (→ **B, C2**) are connected to the IIIrd and IVth ventricle and to the central canal of the spinal cord (→ **B**). Approximately 650 mL of CSF forms in the *choroid plexus* (→ **B, C4**) and drains through the *arachnoid villi* each day (→ **B**). The *blood-brain barrier* and the *blood-CSF barrier* prevents the passage of most substances except CO<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub>, water and lipophilic substances. (As an exception, the *circumventricular organs* of the brain such as the *organum vasculosum laminae terminalis* (OVLT; → p. 282) and the *area postrema* (→ p. 282) have a less tight blood-brain barrier.) Certain substances like glucose and amino acids can cross the blood-brain barrier with the aid of carriers, whereas proteins cannot. The ability or inability of a drug to cross the blood-brain barrier is an important factor in pharmacotherapeutics.

Lesions that obstruct the drainage of CSF (e.g. brain tumors) result in cerebral compression; in children, they lead to fluid accumulation (hydrocephalus).

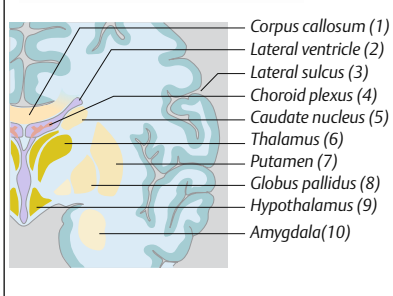
**A. Central nervous system (CNS)**



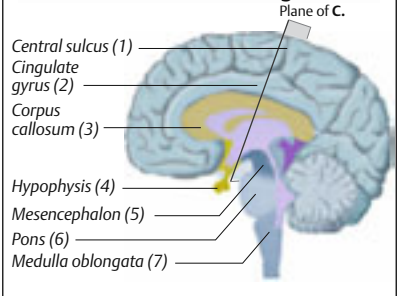
**B. Cerebrospinal fluid spaces of the brain**



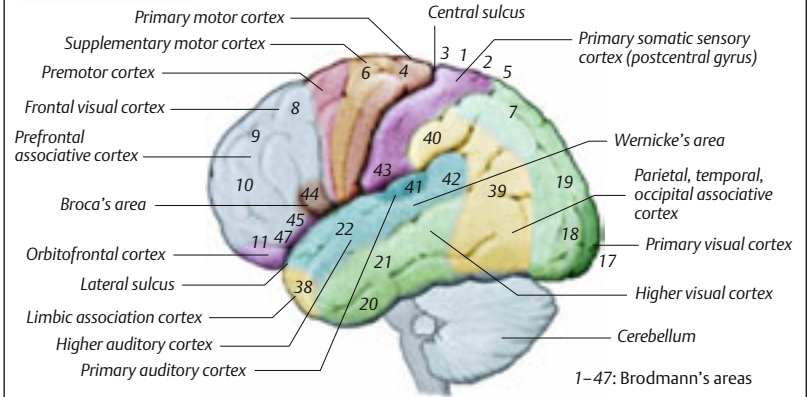
**C. Brain: Cross-sectional view**



**D. Brain: Hemisection through middle**



**E. Areas of cortex**



With our **senses**, we receive huge quantities of **information** from the surroundings ( $10^9$  bits/s). Only a small portion of it is consciously perceived ( $10^1$ – $10^2$  bits/s); the rest is either subconsciously processed or not at all. Conversely, we transmit ca.  $10^7$  bits/s of information to the environment through speech and motor activity, especially facial expression (→ A).

A **bit** (binary digit) is a single unit of information (1 byte = 8 bits). The average page of a book contains roughly 1000 bits, and TV images convey more than  $10^6$  bits/s.

**Stimuli** reach the body in *different forms of energy*, e.g., electromagnetic (visual stimuli) or mechanical energy (e.g., tactile stimuli). Various *sensory receptors* or **sensors** for these stimuli are located in the five “classic” sense organs (eye, ear, skin, tongue, nose) at the body surface as well as inside the body (e.g., proprioceptors, vestibular organ). (In this book, sensory receptors are called sensors to distinguish them from binding sites for hormones and transmitters.) The sensory system extracts four stimulatory elements: *modality, intensity, duration, and localization*. Each type of sensor is specific for a unique or *adequate stimulus* that evokes specific sensory **modalities** such as sight, sound, touch, vibration, temperature, pain, taste, smell, as well as the body’s position and movement, etc. Each modality has several *submodalities*, e.g., taste can be sweet or bitter, etc.

In **secondary sensors** (e.g., gustatory and auditory sensors), sensor and afferent fibers are separated by a synapse, whereas **primary sensors** (e.g., olfactory sensors and nociceptors) have their own afferent fibers.

A stimulus induces a change in *sensor potential (transduction)*, which results in depolarization of the sensor cell (in most types; → B1) or hyperpolarization as in retinal sensors. The stronger the stimulus, the greater the *amplitude* of the sensor potential (→ C1). Once the sensor potential exceeds a certain threshold, it is **transformed** into an **action potential, AP** (→ B1; p. 46ff.).

**Coding of signals.** The stimulus is encoded in *AP frequency* (impulses/s = Hz), i.e., the higher the sensor potential, the higher the AP frequency (→ C2). This information is decoded

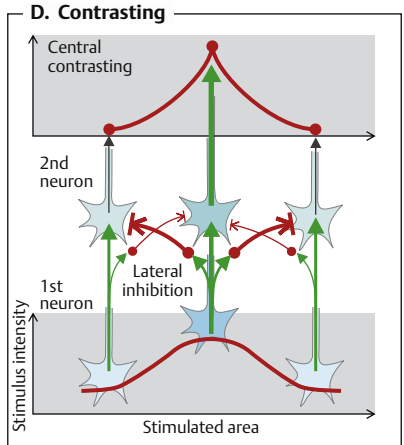
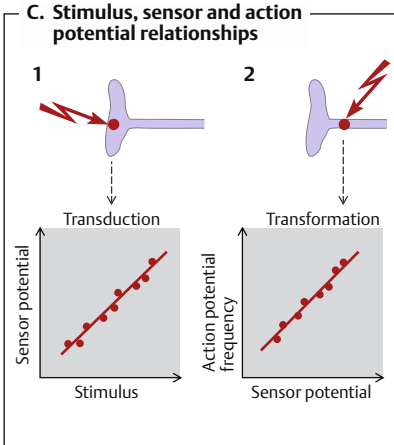
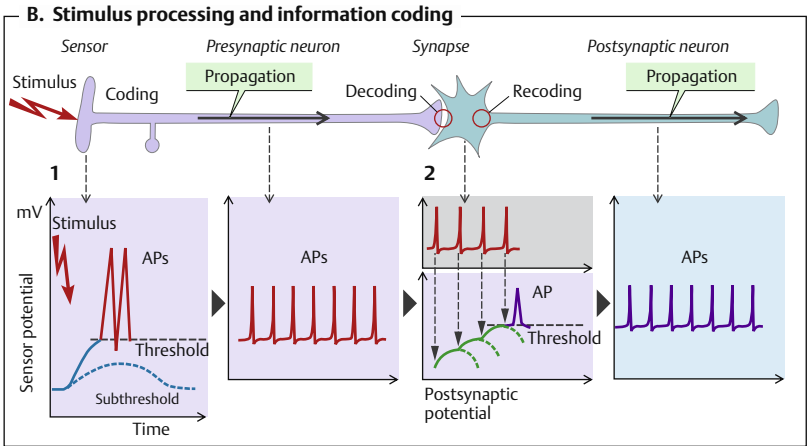
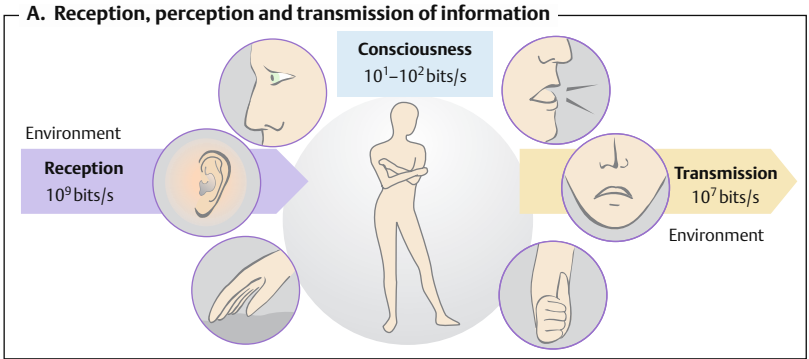
at the next synapse: The higher the frequency of arriving APs, the higher the *excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP)*; → 50ff.). New APs are fired by the postsynaptic neuron when the EPSP exceeds a certain threshold (→ B2).

**Frequency coding** of APs is a more reliable way of transmitting information over long distances than amplitude coding because the latter is much more susceptible to change (and falsification of its information content). At the synapse, however, the signal must be amplified or attenuated (by other neurons), which is better achieved by amplitude coding.

**Adaptation.** At constant stimulation, most sensors adapt, i.e., their potential decreases (→ p. 358). The potential of slowly adapting sensors becomes **proportional** to stimulus intensity (*P sensors* or *tonic sensors*). Fast-adapting sensors respond only at the onset and end of a stimulus. They sense **differential** changes in the stimulus intensity (*D sensors* or *phasic sensors*). *PD sensors* have both characteristics (→ p. 316).

**Central processing.** In a first phase, inhibitory and stimulatory impulses conducted to the CNS are integrated—e.g., to increase the *contrast* of stimuli (→ D; see also p. 360). In this case, stimulatory impulses originating from adjacent sensors are attenuated in the process (*lateral inhibition*). In a second step, a **sensory impression** of the stimuli (e.g. “green” or “sweet”) takes form in low-level areas of the sensory cortex. This is the first step of subjective sensory physiology. Consciousness is a prerequisite for this process. Sensory impressions are followed by their interpretation. The result of it is called **perception**, which is based on experience and reason, and is subject to individual interpretation. The impression “green,” for example, can evoke the perception “There is a tree” or “This is a meadow.”

Absolute threshold (→ pp. 346ff., 358, 368), difference threshold (→ pp. 346ff., 358, 374), spatial and temporal summation (→ pp. 52, 358), receptive field (→ p. 360), habituation and sensitization are other important concepts of sensory physiology. The latter two mechanisms play an important role in learning processes (→ p. 340).



**Somatosceral sensibility** is the collective term for all sensory input from receptors or *sensors* of the body (as opposed to the sensory organs of the head). It includes the areas of proprioception ( $\rightarrow$  p. 318), nociception ( $\rightarrow$  p. 320), and skin or surface sensitivity.

The **sense of touch** (taction) is essential for perception of *form*, *shape*, and *spatial nature* of objects (*stereognosis*). Tactile sensors are located predominantly in the palm, especially in the fingertips, and in the tongue and oral cavity. Stereognostic perception of an object requires that the CNS integrate signals from adjacent receptors into a spatial pattern and coordinate them with **tactile motor function**.

**Mechanosensors.** *Hairless areas* of the skin contain the following mechanosensors ( $\rightarrow$  A), which are afferently innervated by myelinated nerve fibers of class II/A $\beta$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 49 C):

- ◆ The spindle-shaped **Ruffini's corpuscle** ( $\rightarrow$  A3) partly encapsulates the afferent axon branches. This unit is a *slowly adapting* (SA) pressosensor of the SA2 type. They are P sensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 314). Thus, the greater the pressure on the skin (depth of indentation or weight of an object), the higher the AP frequency ( $\rightarrow$  B1).

- ◆ **Merkel's cells** ( $\rightarrow$  A2) are in synaptic contact to meniscus-shaped axon terminals. These complexes are pressure-sensitive SA1 sensors. They are PD sensors (combination of B1 and B2) since their AP frequency is not only dependent on the pressure intensity but also on the rate of its change (dp/dt).

- ◆ **Meissner's corpuscles** ( $\rightarrow$  A1) are composed of lamellar cell layers between which club-shaped axons terminate. This unit represents a *rapidly adapting* pressure sensor (**RA sensor**) that responds only to pressure changes, dp/dt (pure *D sensor* or *velocity sensor*). The RA sensors are specific for *touch* (skin indentation of 10–100  $\mu$ m) and low-frequency *vibration* (10–100 Hz). **Hair follicle receptors** ( $\rightarrow$  A5), which respond to bending of the hairs, assume these functions in *hairy areas* of the skin.

- ◆ **Pacinian corpuscles** ( $\rightarrow$  A4) are innervated by a centrally situated axon. They *adapt very rapidly* and therefore respond to changes in pressure change velocity, i.e. to *acceleration* ( $d^2p/dt^2$ ), and sense high-frequency vibration (100–400 Hz; indentation depths < 3  $\mu$ m). The AP frequency is proportional to the vibration

frequency ( $\rightarrow$  B3). These acceleration sensors also play a role in proprioception ( $\rightarrow$  p. 318).

**Resolution.** RA and SA1 sensors are densely distributed in the mouth, lips and fingertips, especially in the index and middle finger (about 100/cm<sup>2</sup>). They can distinguish closely adjacent stimuli as separate, i.e., each afferent axon has a *narrow receptive field*. Since the signals do not converge as they travel to the CNS, the ability of these sensors in the mouth, lips and fingertips to distinguish between two closely adjacent tactile stimuli, i.e. their *resolution*, is very high.

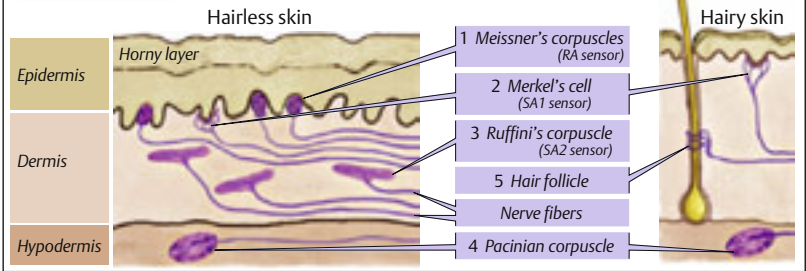
The **spatial threshold for two-point discrimination**, i.e., the distance at which two simultaneous stimuli can be perceived as separate, is used as a measure of tactile resolution. The spatial thresholds are roughly 1 mm on the fingers, lips and tip of the tongue, 4 mm on the palm of the hand, 15 mm on the arm, and over 60 mm on the back.

**SA2 receptors** and **pacinian corpuscles** have a broad receptive field (the exact function of SA2 receptors is not known). Pacinian corpuscles are therefore well adapted to detect vibrations, e.g., earth tremors.

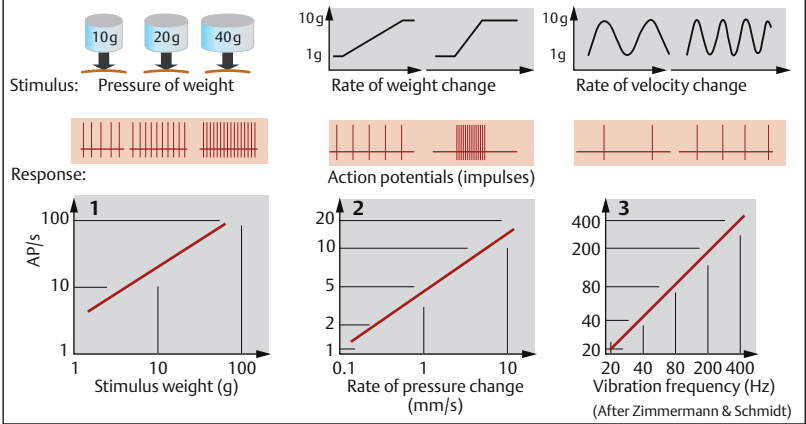
Two types of **thermosensors** are located in the skin: *cold sensors* for temperatures < 36°C and *warm sensors* for those > 36°C. The lower the temperature (in the 20–36°C range), the higher the AP frequency of the cold receptors. The reverse applies to warm receptors in the 36–43°C range ( $\rightarrow$  C). Temperatures ranging from 20° to 40°C are subject to *rapid adaptation of thermosensation* (PD characteristics). Water warmed, for example, to 25°C initially feels cold. More extreme temperatures, on the other hand, are persistently perceived as cold or hot (this helps to maintain a constant core temperature and prevent skin damage). The density of these cold and warm sensors in most skin areas is low as compared to the much higher densities in the mouth and lips. (That is why the lips or cheeks are used for temperature testing.)

Different sensors are responsible for thermoception at temperatures exceeding 45°C. These **heat sensors** are also used for the perception of pungent substances such as *capsaicin*, the active constituent of hot chili peppers. Stimulation of VR1 receptors (vanilloid receptor type 1) for capsaicin mediates the opening of cation channels in nociceptive nerve endings, which leads to their depolarization.

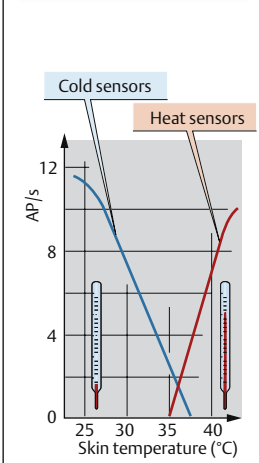
**A. Skin sensors**



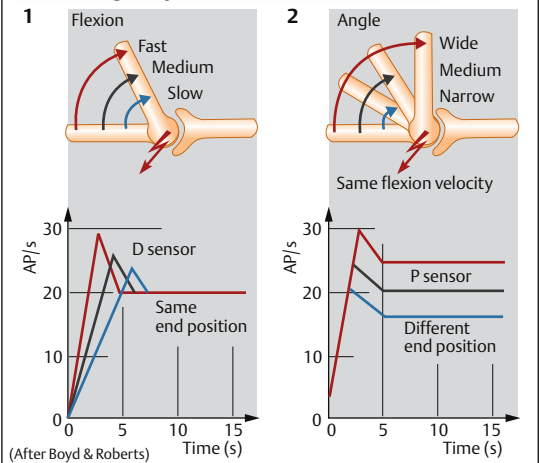
**B. Response of skin sensors for pressure (1), touch (2) and vibration (3)**



**C. Response of thermo-sensors**



**D. PD proprioception: Response to velocity and angle of joint flexion (text on next page)**



Proprioception is the mechanism by which we sense the *strength* that our muscles develop as well as the *position* and *movement* of our body and limbs. The *vestibular organ* (→ p. 348) and *cutaneous mechanosensors* (→ p. 316) assist the *propriosensors* in muscle spindles, joints and tendons. Sensors of *Golgi tendon organs* are located near muscle-tendon junctions.

**Muscle spindles** (→ A1) contain proportional (P) and differential (D) sensors for monitoring of **joint position** and **movement**. The *velocity of position change* is reflected by a transient rise in impulse frequency (D sensor; → p. 317 D1, spike), and the final joint *position* is expressed as a constant impulse frequency (P-sensor, → p. 317 D2, plateau). Muscle spindles function to **regulate muscle length**. They lie parallel to the skeletal muscle fibers (*extrafusal muscle fibers*) and contain their own muscle fibers (*intrafusal muscle fibers*). There are two types of intrafusal muscle fibers: (1) *nuclear chain fibers* (P sensors) and (2) *nuclear bag fibers* (D sensors). The endings of *type Ia* afferent neurons coil around both types, whereas *type II* neurons wind around the nuclear chain fibers only (neuron types described on p. 49 C). These *annulospiral endings* detect longitudinal stretching of intrafusal muscle fibers and report their length (*type Ia* and *II* afferents) and changes in length (*Ia* afferents) to the spinal cord. The efferent  $\gamma$  *motoneurons* (fusimotor fibers) innervate both intrafusal fiber types, allowing variation of their length and stretch sensitivity (→ A1, B1).

**Golgi tendon organs** (→ A2) are arranged in series with the muscle and respond to the contraction of only a few motor units or more. Their primary function is to **regulate muscle tension**. Impulses from Golgi tendon organs (conveyed by *type Ib* afferents), the skin and joints, and muscle spindles (some of which are *type Ia* and *II* afferent fibers), as well as descending impulses, are jointly integrated in *type Ib interneurons* of the spinal cord; this is referred to as **multimodal integration** (→ D2). *Type Ib* interneurons inhibit  $\alpha$  motoneurons of the muscle from which the *Ib* afferent input originated (*autogenous inhibition*) and activate antagonistic muscles via excitatory interneurons (→ D5).

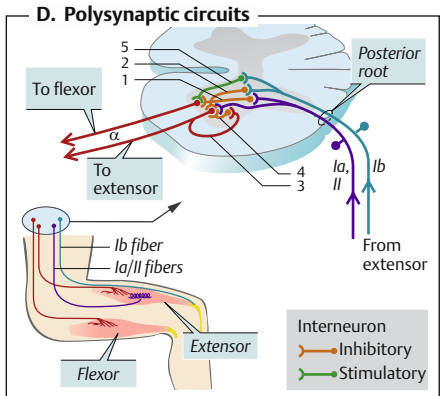
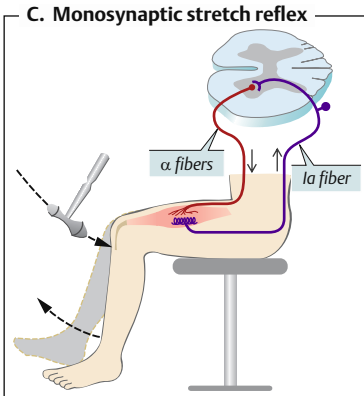
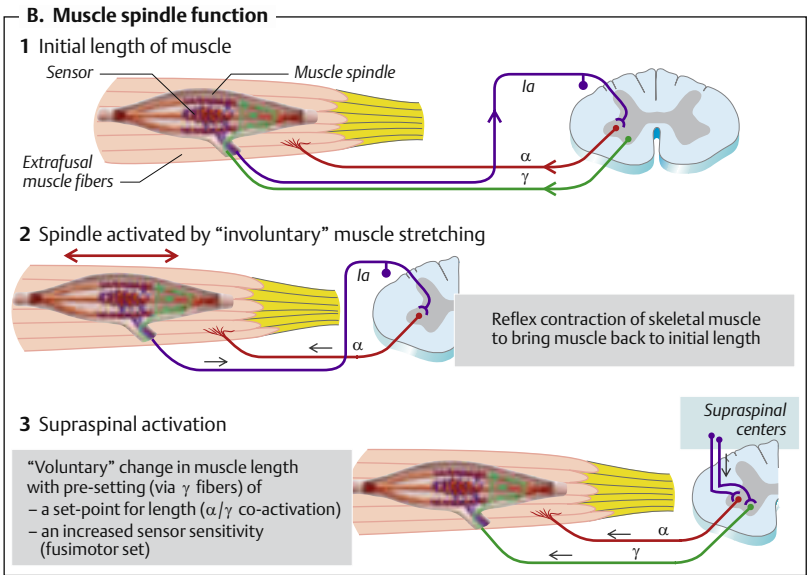
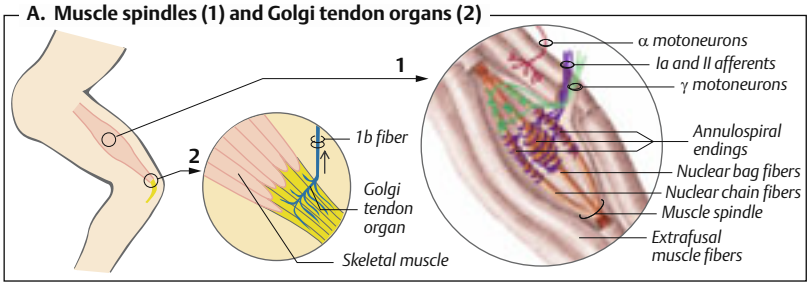
**Monosynaptic stretch reflex** (→ C). Muscles spindles are also affected by sudden stretching of a skeletal muscle, e.g. due to a tap on the tendon attaching it. Stretching of the muscle spindles triggers the activation of *type Ia* afferent impulses (→ B2, C), which enter the spinal cord via the dorsal root and terminate in the ventral horn at the  $\alpha$  motoneurons of the same muscle. This *type Ia* afferent input therefore induces contraction of the same muscle by only one synaptic connection. The reflex time for this monosynaptic stretch reflex is therefore very short (ca. 30 ms). This is classified as a *proprioceptive reflex*, since the stimulation and response arise in the same organ. The monosynaptic stretch reflex **functions** to rapidly correct “involuntary” changes in muscle length and joint position.

**Supraspinal activation** (→ B3). Voluntary muscle contractions are characterized by *co-activation* of  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  neurons. The latter adjust the muscle spindles (length sensors) to a certain set-point of length. Any deviations from this set-point due, for example, to unexpected shifting of weight, are compensated for by re-adjusting the  $\alpha$ -innervation (*load compensation reflex*). Expected changes in muscle length, especially during complex movements, can also be more precisely controlled by (centrally regulated)  $\gamma$  fiber activity by increasing the preload and stretch sensitivity of the intrafusal muscle fibers (*fusimotor set*).

**Hoffmann's reflex** can be also used to test the stretch reflex pathway. This can be done by positioning electrodes on the skin over (mixed) muscle nerves and subsequently recording the muscle contraction induced by electrical stimuli of different intensity.

**Polysynaptic circuits**, also arising from *type II* afferents complement the stretch reflex. If a stretch reflex (e.g., knee-jerk reflex, → C, D) occurs in an extensor muscle, the  $\alpha$  motoneurons of the antagonistic flexor muscle must be inhibited via *inhibitory Ia interneurons* to achieve efficient extension (→ D1).

**Deactivation of stretch reflex** is achieved by inhibiting muscle contraction as follows: 1) The muscle spindles relax, thereby allowing the deactivation of *type Ia* fibers; 2) the Golgi tendon organs inhibit the  $\alpha$  motoneurons via *type Ib* interneurons (→ D2); 3) the  $\alpha$  motoneurons are inhibited by the interneurons (*Renshaw cells*; → D4) that they themselves stimulated via axon collaterals (*recurrent inhibition*; → D3; p. 323 C1).



Pain is an unpleasant sensory experience associated with discomfort. It is protective insofar as it signals that the body is being threatened by an injury (*noxa*). *Nociception* is the perception of noxae via *nociceptors*, neural conduction and central processing. The *pain* that is ultimately felt is a subjective experience. Pain can also occur without stimulation of nociceptors, and excitation of nociceptors does not always evoke pain.

All body tissues except the brain and liver contain sensors for pain, i.e., **nociceptors** or *nociceptors* (→ **A**). Nociceptors are bead-like endings of peripheral axons, the somata of which are located in dorsal root ganglia and in nuclei of the trigeminal nerve. Most of these fibers are slowly conducting C fibers (< 1 m/s); the rest are myelinated A $\delta$  fibers (5–30 m/s; fiber types described on p. 49 C).

When an injury occurs, one first senses sharp “fast pain” (A $\delta$  fibers) before feeling the dull “slow pain” (C fibers), which is felt longer and over a broader area. Since nociceptors do not adapt, the pain can last for days. Sensitization can even lower the stimulus threshold.

Most nociceptors are **polymodal sensors** (C fibers) activated by mechanical stimuli, chemical mediators of inflammation, and high-intensity heat or cold stimuli. **Unimodal nociceptors**, the less common type, consist of *thermal nociceptors* (A $\delta$  fibers), *mechanical nociceptors* (A $\delta$  fibers), and “*dormant*” nociceptors. Thermal nociceptors are activated by extremely hot (> 45°C) or cold (< 5°C) stimuli (→ p. 316). Dormant nociceptors are chiefly located in internal organs and are “awakened” after prolonged exposure (sensitization) to a stimulus, e.g., inflammation.

Nociceptors can be inhibited by opioids (**desensitization**) and stimulated by prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> or bradykinin, which is released in response to inflammation (**sensitization**; → **A**). Endogenous opioids (e.g., dynorphin, enkephalin, endorphin) and exogenous opioids (e.g., morphine) as well as inhibitors of prostaglandin synthesis (e.g. acetylsalicylic acid [Aspirin®]; → p. 271) are therefore able to alleviate pain (*analgesic action*).

**Inflammatory sensitization** (e.g., sunburn) lowers the threshold for noxious stimuli, leading to excessive sensitivity (*hyperalgesia*) and additional pain resulting from non-noxious stimuli to the skin (*allodynia*), e.g., touch or warm water (37°C). Once the nociceptors are stimulated, they start to release neu-

ropeptides such as substance P or CGRP (calcitonin gene-related peptide) that cause inflammation of the surrounding vessels (**neurogenic inflammation**).

**Projected pain.** Damage to nociceptive fibers causes pain (neurogenic or neuropathic) that is often projected to and perceived as arising from the periphery. A prolapsed disk compressing a spinal nerve can, for example, cause leg pain. Nociceptive fibers can be blocked by cold or local anesthesia.

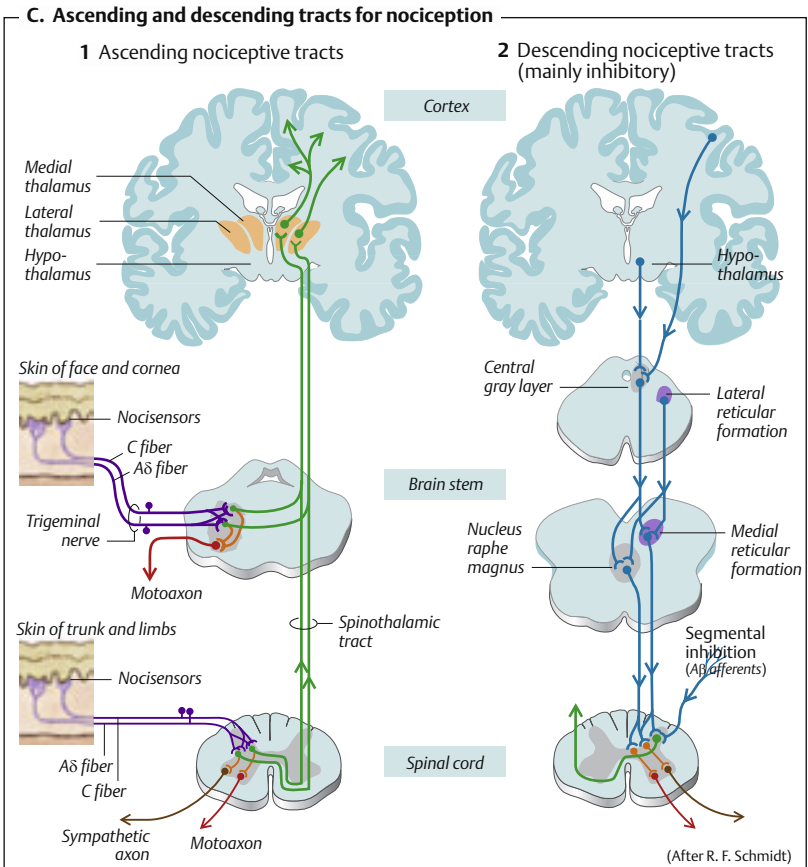
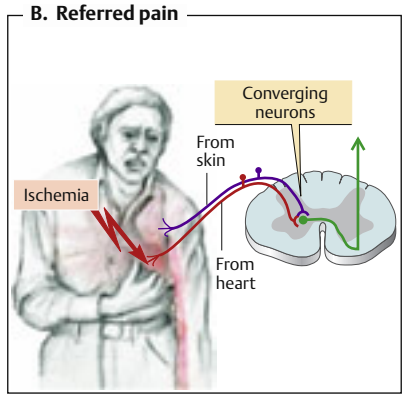
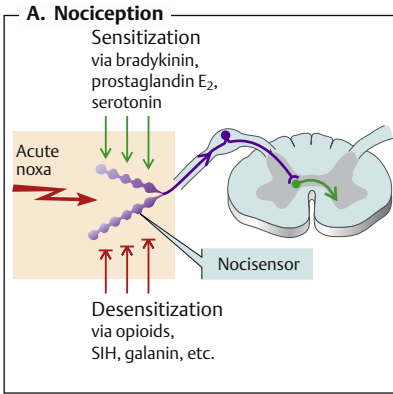
**Nociceptive tracts** (→ **C1**). The central axons of nociceptive somatic neurons and nociceptive afferents of internal organs end on neurons of the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. In many cases, they terminate on the same neurons as the skin afferents.

**Referred pain** (→ **B**). Convergence of somatic and visceral nociceptive afferents is probably the main cause of referred pain. In this type of pain, noxious visceral stimuli cause a perception of pain in certain skin areas called **Head’s zones**. That for the heart, for example, is located mainly in the chest region. Myocardial ischemia is therefore perceived as pain on the surface of the chest wall (angina pectoris) and often also in the lower arm and upper abdominal region.

In the spinal cord, the nociceptive afferents cross to the opposite side (decussation) and are conducted in the **tracts of the anterolateral funiculus**—mainly in the spinothalamic tract—and continue centrally via the brain stem where they join nociceptive afferents from the head (mainly trigeminal nerve) to the **thalamus** (→ **C1**). From the ventrolateral thalamus, sensory aspects of pain are projected to S1 and S2 areas of the **cortex**. Tracts from the medial thalamic nuclei project to the limbic system and other centers.

**Components of pain.** Pain has a *sensory component* including the conscious perception of site, duration and intensity of pain; a *motor component* (e.g., defensive posture and withdrawal reflex; → p. 322), an *autonomic component* (e.g., tachycardia), and an *affective component* (e.g., aversion). In addition, **pain assessments** based on the memory of a previous pain experience can lead to **pain-related behavior** (e.g., moaning).

In the thalamus and spinal cord, nociception can be **inhibited via descending tracts** with the aid of various transmitters (mainly opioids). The nuclei of these tracts (→ **C2**, blue) are located in the *brain stem* and are mainly activated via the nociceptive spinoreticular tract (negative feedback loop).



Unlike proprioceptive reflexes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 318), polysynaptic reflexes are activated by sensors that are spatially separate from the effector organ. This type of reflex is called *polysynaptic*, since the reflex arc involves many synapses in series. This results in a relatively *long reflex time*. The intensity of the response is dependent on the duration and intensity of stimulus, which is temporally and spatially summated in the CNS ( $\rightarrow$  p. 52). Example: itching sensation in nose  $\Rightarrow$  sneezing. The response spreads when the stimulus intensity increases (e.g., coughing  $\Rightarrow$  choking cough). *Protective reflexes* (e.g., withdrawal reflex, corneal and lacrimal reflexes, coughing and sneezing), *nutrition reflexes* (e.g., swallowing, sucking reflexes), *locomotor reflexes*, and the various *autonomic reflexes* are polysynaptic reflexes. Certain reflexes, e.g., plantar reflex, cremasteric reflex and abdominal reflex, are used as diagnostic tests.

**Withdrawal reflex ( $\rightarrow$  A).** Example: A painful stimulus in the sole of the right foot (e.g., stepping on a tack) leads to flexion of all joints of that leg (**flexion reflex**). Nociceptive afferents ( $\rightarrow$  p. 320) are conducted via stimulatory interneurons ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) in the spinal cord to motoneurons of ipsilateral *flexors* and via inhibitory interneurons ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) to motoneurons of ipsilateral *extensors* ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**), leading to their relaxation; this is called *antagonistic inhibition*. One part of the response is the **crossed extensor reflex**, which promotes the withdrawal from the injurious stimulus by increasing the distance between the nociceptive stimulus (e.g. the tack) and the nociceptor and helps to support the body. It consists of contraction of extensor muscles ( $\rightarrow$  **A5**) and relaxation of the flexor muscles in the contralateral leg ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**, **A6**). Nociceptive afferents are also conducted to other segments of the spinal cord (ascending and descending;  $\rightarrow$  **A7**, **A8**) because different extensors and flexors are innervated by different segments. A noxious stimulus can also trigger flexion of the ipsilateral arm and extension of the contralateral arm (*double crossed extensor reflex*). The noxious stimulus produces the perception of pain in the brain ( $\rightarrow$  p. 318).

Unlike monosynaptic stretch reflexes, polysynaptic reflexes occur through the *co-activation of  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  motoneurons* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 318). The *reflex excitability of  $\alpha$  motoneurons* is largely **controlled by supraspinal centers** via multiple interneurons ( $\rightarrow$  p. 326). The brain can therefore shorten the reflex time of spinal cord reflexes when a noxious stimulus is anticipated.

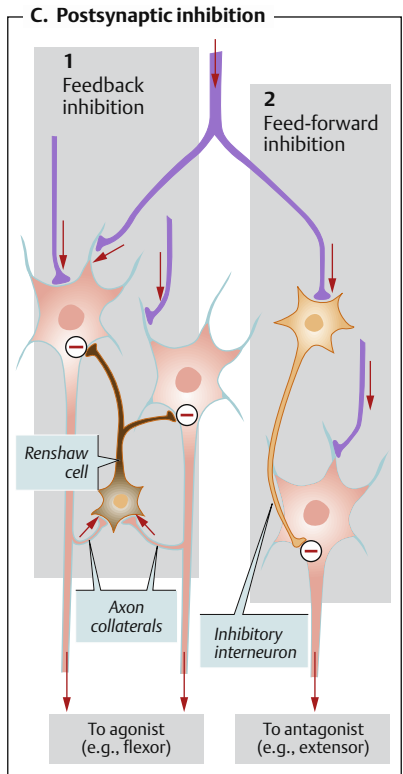
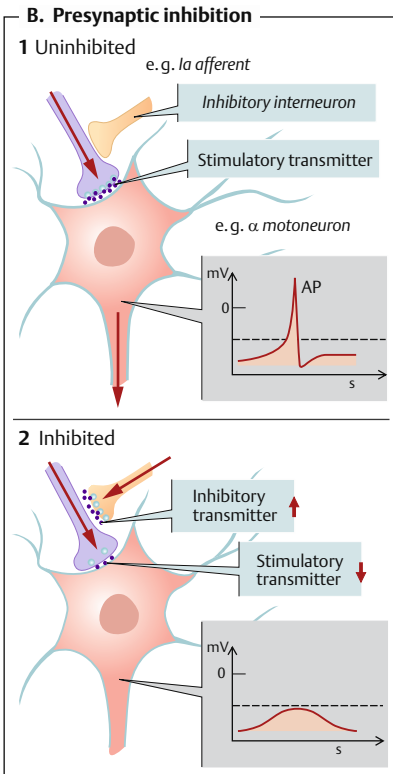
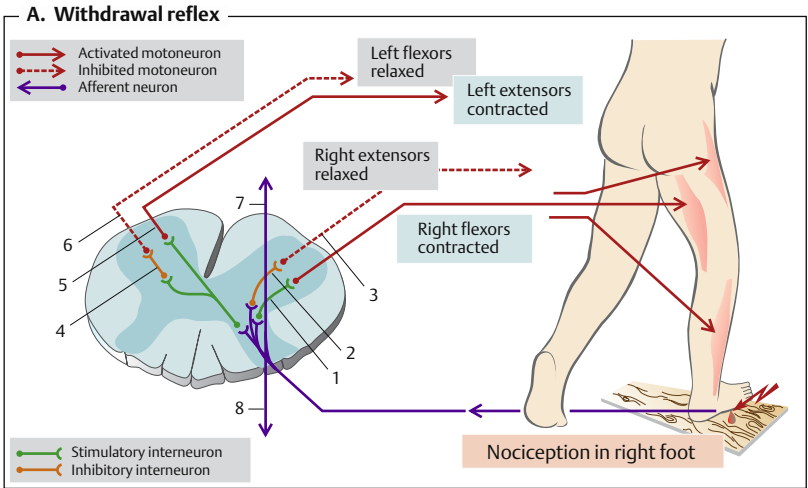
Supraspinal lesions or interruption of descending tracts (e.g., in paraplegics) can lead to exaggeration of reflexes (**hyperreflexia**) and stereotypic reflexes. The absence of reflexes (**areflexia**) corresponds to specific disorders of the spinal cord or peripheral nerve.

### Synaptic Inhibition

GABA ( $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid) and glycine ( $\rightarrow$  p. 55f.) function as inhibitory transmitters in the spinal cord. **Presynaptic inhibition ( $\rightarrow$  B)** occurs frequently in the CNS, for example, at synapses between type Ia afferents and  $\alpha$  motoneurons, and involves *axoaxonic synapses* of GABAergic interneurons at presynaptic nerve endings. GABA exerts inhibitory effects at the nerve endings by increasing the membrane conductance to  $\text{Cl}^-$  (GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors) and  $\text{K}^+$  (GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors) and by decreasing the conductance to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors). This decreases the release of transmitters from the nerve ending of the target neuron ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**), thereby lowering the amplitude of its postsynaptic EPSP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50). The *purpose* of presynaptic inhibition is to reduce certain influences on the motoneuron without reducing the overall excitability of the cell.

In **postsynaptic inhibition ( $\rightarrow$  C)**, an *inhibitory interneuron* increases the membrane conductance of the postsynaptic neuron to  $\text{Cl}^-$  or  $\text{K}^+$ , especially near the axon hillock, thereby short-circuiting the depolarizing electrical currents from excitatory EPSPs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 52ff.).

The interneuron responsible for postsynaptic inhibition is either activated by feedback from axonal collaterals of the target neurons (**recurrent inhibition** of motoneurons via glycinergic Renshaw cells;  $\rightarrow$  **C1**) or is directly activated by another neuron via feed-forward control ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**). Inhibition of the ipsilateral extensor ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, **A3**) in the flexor reflex is an example of *feed-forward inhibition*.



The **posterior funiculus–lemniscus system** (→ C, green) is the principal route by which the somatosensory cortex S1 (postcentral gyrus) receives sensory input from skin sensors and proprioceptors. Messages from the skin (*superficial sensibility*) and locomotor system (*proprioceptive sensibility*) reach the spinal cord via the *dorsal roots*. Part of these primarily afferent fibers project in *tracts of the posterior funiculus* without synapses to the *posterior funicular nuclei* of the caudal medulla oblongata (nuclei cuneatus and gracilis). The tracts of the posterior funiculi exhibit a somatotopic arrangement, i.e., the further cranial the origin of the fibers the more lateral their location. At the *medial lemniscus*, the secondary afferent somatosensory fibers cross to the contralateral side (decussate) and continue to the posterolateral ventral nucleus (PLVN) of the **thalamus**, where they are also somatotopically arranged. The secondary afferent trigeminal fibers (lemniscus trigeminalis) end in the *post-eromedial ventral nucleus* (PMVN) of the thalamus. The tertiary afferent somatosensory fibers end at the quaternary somatosensory neurons in the **somatosensory cortex S1**. The main **function** of the posterior funiculus–lemniscus pathway is to relay information about tactile stimuli (pressure, touch, vibration) and joint position and movement (proprioception) to the brain cortex via its predominantly rapidly conducting fibers with a high degree of spatial and temporal resolution.

As in the motor cortex (→ p. 327 B), each body part is assigned to a corresponding projection area in the **somatosensory cortex S1** (→ A) following a *somatotopic arrangement* (→ B). Three features of the organization of S1 are (1) that one hemisphere of the brain receives the information from the contralateral side of the body (tracts decussate in the medial lemniscus; → C); (2) that most neurons in S1 receive afferent signals from tactile sensors in the fingers and mouth (→ p. 316); and (3) that the afferent signals are processed in columns of the cortex (→ p. 335 A) that are activated by specific types of stimuli (e.g., touch).

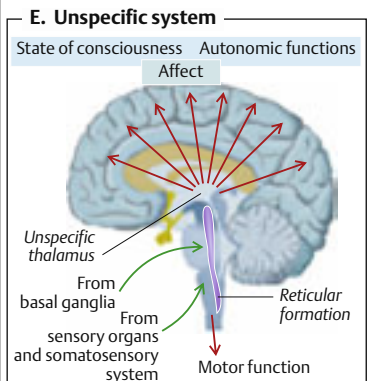
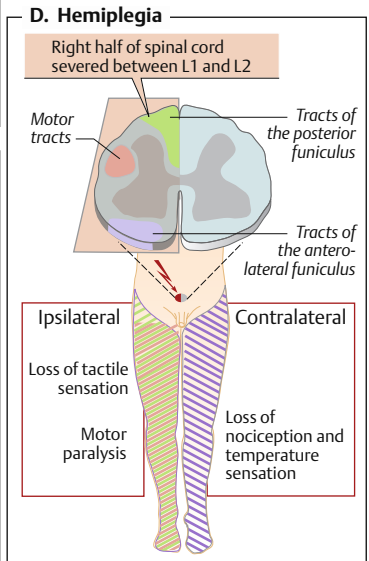
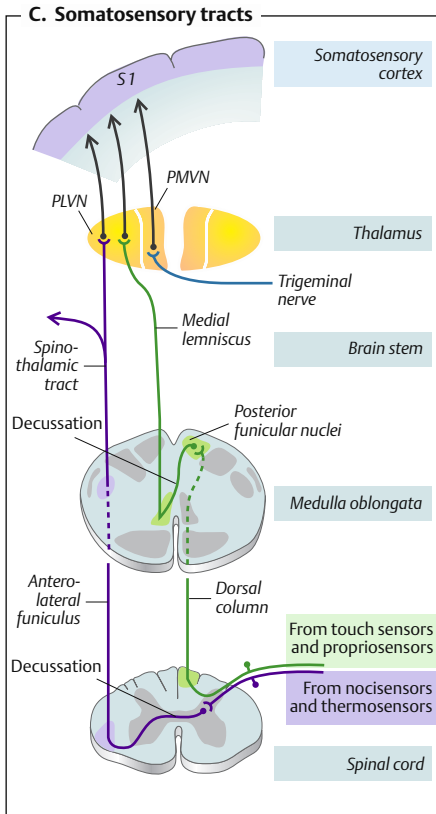
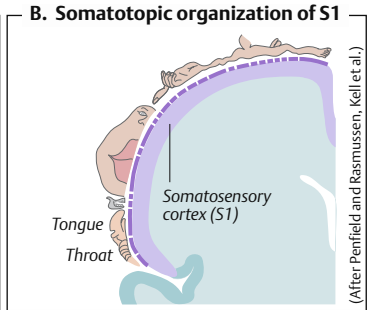
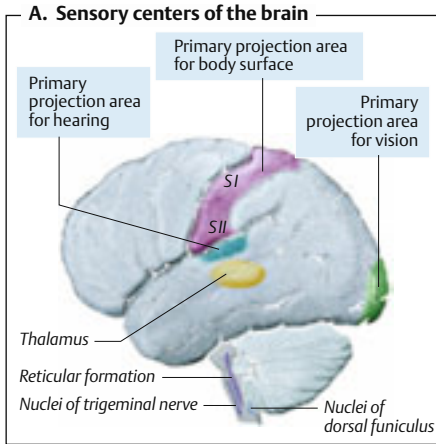
**Anterolateral spinothalamic pathway** (→ C; violet). Afferent signals from nociceptors, thermosensors and the second part of pressure and touch afferent neurons are already relayed

(partly via interneurons) at various levels of the *spinal cord*. The secondary neurons cross to the opposite side at the corresponding segment of the spinal cord, form the lateral and ventral *spinothalamic tract* in the anterolateral funiculus, and project to the thalamus (PLVN). The tertiary afferent fibers then reach the somatosensory cortex S1.

**Descending tracts** (from the cortex) can inhibit the flow of sensory input to the cortex at all relay stations (spinal cord, medulla oblongata, thalamus). The main function of these tracts is to modify the receptive field and adjust stimulus thresholds. When impulses from different sources are conducted in a common afferent, they also help to suppress unimportant sensory input and selectively process more important and interesting sensory modalities and stimuli (e.g., eavesdropping).

**Hemiplegia.** (→ D) *Brown–Séguard syndrome* occurs due to hemisection of the spinal cord, resulting in ipsilateral paralysis and loss of various functions below the lesion. The injured side exhibits *motor paralysis* (initially flaccid, later spastic) and loss of tactile sensation (e.g., impaired two-point discrimination, → p. 316). An additional loss of pain and temperature sensation occurs on the contralateral side (*dissociated paralysis*).

**Reticular activating system.** (→ E) The sensory input described above as well as the input from the sensory organs are specific, whereas the reticular activating system (RAS) is an *unspecific system*. The RAS is a complex processing and integrating system of cells of the *reticular formation* of the brainstem. These cells receive *sensory input* from all sensory organs and ascending spinal cord pathways (e.g., eyes, ears, surface sensitivity, nociception), basal ganglia, etc. Cholinergic and adrenergic output from the RAS is conducted along descending pathways to the spinal cord and along ascending “unspecific” thalamic nuclei and “unspecific” thalamocortical tracts to almost all cortical regions (→ p. 335 A), the limbic system and the hypothalamus. The ascending RAS or **ARAS** controls the state of consciousness and the degree of wakefulness (*arousal activity*; → p. 338).



Coordinated muscular movements (walking, grasping, throwing, etc.) are functionally dependent on the *postural motor system*, which is responsible for maintaining upright posture, balance, and spatial integration of body movement. Since control of postural motor function and muscle coordination requires the simultaneous and uninterrupted flow of sensory impulses from the periphery, this is also referred to as **sensorimotor function**.

$\alpha$  **motoneurons** in the anterior horn of the spinal cord and in cranial nerve nuclei are the terminal tracts for skeletal muscle activation. Only certain parts of the corticospinal tract and type Ia afferents connect to  $\alpha$  motoneurons monosynaptically. Other afferents from the periphery (proprioceptors, nociceptors, mechanosensors), other spinal cord segments, the motor cortex, cerebellum, and motor centers of the brain stem connect to  $\alpha$  motoneurons via hundreds of inhibitory and stimulatory interneurons per motoneuron.

**Voluntary motor function.** Voluntary movement requires a series of actions: decision to move  $\Rightarrow$  programming (recall of stored subprograms)  $\Rightarrow$  command to move  $\Rightarrow$  execution of movement ( $\rightarrow$  A1–4). Feedback from afferents (re-afferents) from motor subsystems and information from the periphery is constantly integrated in the process. This allows for adjustments before and while executing voluntary movement.

The neuronal activity associated with the first two phases of voluntary movement activates numerous motor areas of the cortex. This electrical brain activity is reflected as a negative **cortical expectancy potential**, which can best be measured in association areas and the vertex. The more complex the movement, the higher the expectancy potential and the earlier its onset (roughly 0.3–3 s).

The **motor cortex** consists of three main areas ( $\rightarrow$  C, top;  $\rightarrow$  see p. 313 E for area numbers): (a) *primary motor area*, M1 (area 4), (b) *premotor area*, PMA (lateral area 6); and (c) *supplementary motor area*, SMA (medial area 6). The motor areas of the cortex exhibit somatotopic organization with respect to the target muscles of their fibers (shown for M1 in B) and their mutual connections.

**Cortical afferents.** The cortex receives motor input from (a) the *body periphery* (via

thalamus  $\Rightarrow$  S1 [ $\rightarrow$  p. 325 A]  $\Rightarrow$  sensory association cortex  $\Rightarrow$  PMA); (b) the *basal ganglia* (via thalamus  $\Rightarrow$  M1, PMA, SMA [ $\rightarrow$  A2]  $\Rightarrow$  prefrontal association cortex); (c) the *cerebellum* (via thalamus  $\Rightarrow$  M1, PMA;  $\rightarrow$  A2); and (d) sensory and posterior parietal areas of the *cortex* (areas 1–3 and 5–7, respectively).

**Cortical efferents.** ( $\rightarrow$  C, D, E, F) Motor output from the cortex is mainly projected to (a) the spinal cord, (b) subcortical motor centers (see below and p. 330), and (c) the contralateral cortex via commissural pathways.

The **pyramidal tract** includes the *corticospinal tract* and part of the *corticobulbar tract*. Over 90% of the pyramidal tract consists of thin fibers, but little is known about their function. The thick, rapidly conducting **corticospinal tract** ( $\rightarrow$  C) project to the spinal cord from areas 4 and 6 and from areas 1–3 of the sensory cortex. Some of the fibers connect monosynaptically to  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  motoneurons responsible for finger movement (precision grasping). The majority synapse with interneurons of the spinal cord, where they influence input from peripheral afferents as well as motor output (via Renshaw's cells) and thereby spinal reflexes.

### Function of the Basal Ganglia

**Circuitry.** The basal ganglia are part of multiple parallel **corticocortical signal loops**. *Associative loops* arising in the frontal and limbic cortex play a role in mental activities such as assessment of sensory information, adaptation of behavior to emotional context, motivation, and long-term action planning. The function of the *skeletomotor* and *oculomotor loops* (see below) is to coordinate and control the velocity of movement sequences. Efferent projections of the basal ganglia *control thalamocortical signal conduction* by (a) attenuating the inhibition (*disinhibiting effect*, direct mode) of the *thalamic motor nuclei* and the *superior colliculus*, respectively, or (b) by intensifying their inhibition (indirect mode).

The principal **input** to the basal ganglia comes from the putamen and caudate nucleus, which are collectively referred to as the **striatum**. Neurons of the striatum are activated by tracts from the entire **cortex** and use *glutamate* as their transmitter ( $\rightarrow$  D). Once activated, ►

**A. Events from decision to move to execution of movement**

**1 Decision**

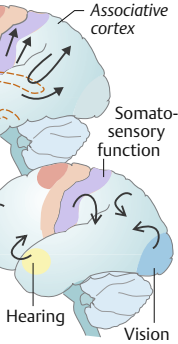
Cortical and subcortical motivation areas

"I want the ball"

**1a Impulse to move**

"Here's how to get it"

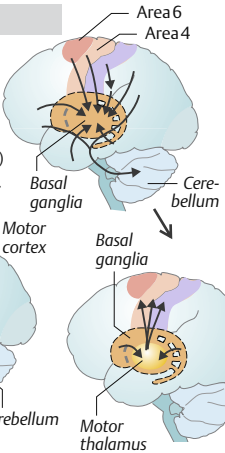
**1b Strategy**



**2 Programming**

"Here's the program"

(participating muscles, temporal sequence, strength of contraction)



**3 Command to move**

"Now do it!"

Reflex systems, motoneurons

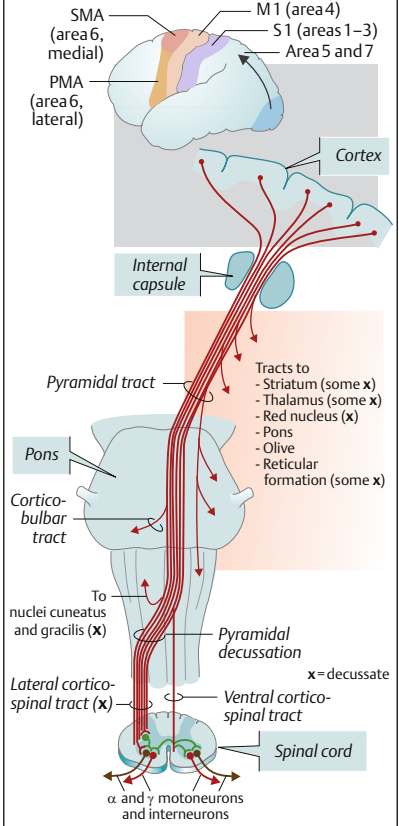
Sensory feedback

**4 Execution of movement**

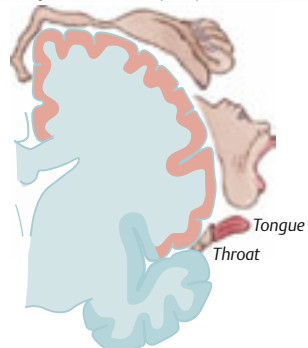


(After V. B. Brooks)

**C. Descending motor tracts**



**B. Somatotopic organization of primary motor area (M1) of the cortex**



► neurons of the striatum release an inhibitory transmitter (GABA) and a co-transmitter—either *substance P* (SP) or *enkephalin* (Enk., → D; → p. 55). The principal **output** of the basal ganglia runs through the *pars reticularis* of the *substantia nigra* (SNr) and the *pars interna* of the *globus pallidus* (GPI), both of which are inhibited by SP/GABAergic neurons of the striatum (→ D).

Both SNr and GPI inhibit (by GABA) the ventrolateral thalamus with a high level of spontaneous activity. Activation of the striatum therefore leads to **disinhibition of the thalamus** by this **direct pathway**. If, however, enkephalin/GABA-releasing neurons of the striatum are activated, then they inhibit the *pars externa* of the *globus pallidus* (GPe) which, in turn, inhibits (by GABA) the subthalamic nucleus. The subthalamic nucleus induces glutamatergic activation of SNr and GPI. The ultimate effect of this **indirect pathway** is **increased thalamic inhibition**. Since the thalamus projects to motor and prefrontal cortex, a corticothalamocortical loop that influences skeletal muscle movement (**skeletomotor loop**) via the putamen runs through the basal ganglia. An **oculomotor loop** projects through the caudate nucleus, *pars reticularis* and superior colliculus and is involved in the control of eye movement (→ pp. 348, 366). *Descending tracts* from the SNr project to the tectum and nucleus pedunculus pontinus.

The fact that the *pars compacta* of the *substantia nigra* (SNc) shows the entire striatum with **dopamine** (dopaminergic neurons) is of pathophysiological importance (→ D). On the one hand, dopamine binds to D1 receptors (rising cAMP levels), thereby activating SP/GABAergic neurons of the striatum; this is the direct route (see above). On the other hand, dopamine also reacts with D2 receptors (decreasing cAMP levels), thereby inhibiting enkephalin/GABAergic neurons; this is the indirect route. These effects of dopamine are essential for normal striatum function. Degeneration of more than 70% of the dopaminergic neurons of the *pars compacta* results in *excessive inhibition* of the motor areas of the thalamus, thereby impairing voluntary motor function. This occurs in **Parkinson's disease** and can be due genetic predisposition, trauma (e.g., boxing), cerebral infection and other causes. The characteristic **symptoms** of disease include poverty of movement (*akinesia*), slowness of movement (*bradykinesia*), a festinating gait, small handwriting (*micrography*), masklike facial expression, muscular hypertonia (*rigor*), bent posture, and a *tremor* of resting muscles ("money-counting" movement of thumb and fingers).

### Function of the Cerebellum

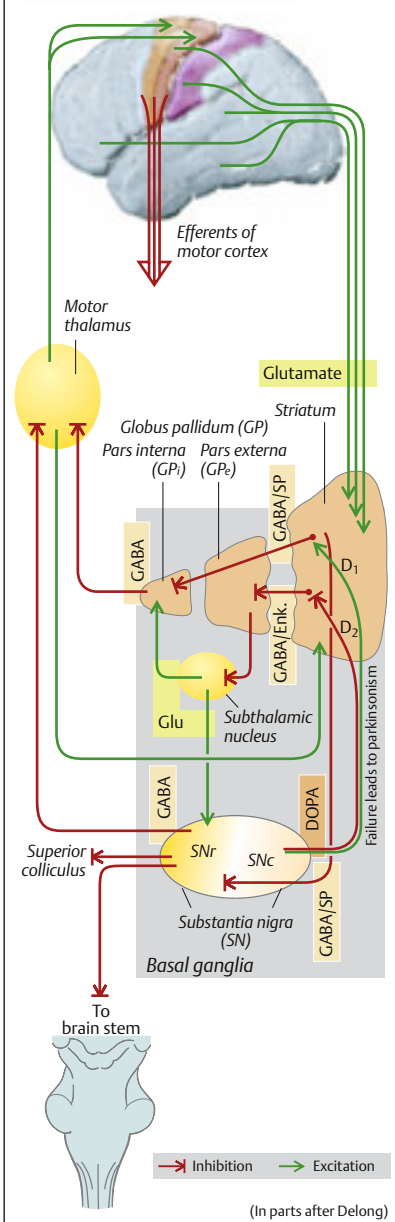
The cerebellum contains as many neurons as the rest of the brain combined. It is an important **control center for motor function** that has afferent and efferent connections to the cortex and periphery (→ F, top panel). The cerebellum is involved in the planning, execution and control of movement and is responsible for motor adaptation to new movement sequences (*motor learning*). It is also cooperates with higher centers to control attention, etc.

**Anatomy** (→ F, top). The *archeocerebellum* (flocculonodular lobe) and *paleocerebellum* (pyramids, uvula, paraflocculus and parts of the anterior lobe) are the phylogenetically older parts of the cerebellum. These structures and the *pars intermedia* form the **median cerebellum**. The *neocerebellum* (posterior lobe of the body of the cerebellum) is the phylogenetically younger part of the cerebellum and forms the **lateral cerebellum**. Based on the origin of their principal efferents, the archicerebellum and vermis are sometimes referred to as the *vestibulocerebellum*, the paleocerebellum as the *spinocerebellum*, and the neocerebellum as the *pontocerebellum*. The cerebellar cortex is the folded (fissured) superficial gray matter of the cerebellum consisting of an outer molecular layer of Purkinje cell dendrites and their afferents, a middle layer of Purkinje cells (Purkinje somata), and an inner layer of granular cells. The outer surface of the cerebellum exhibits small, parallel convolutions called *folia*.

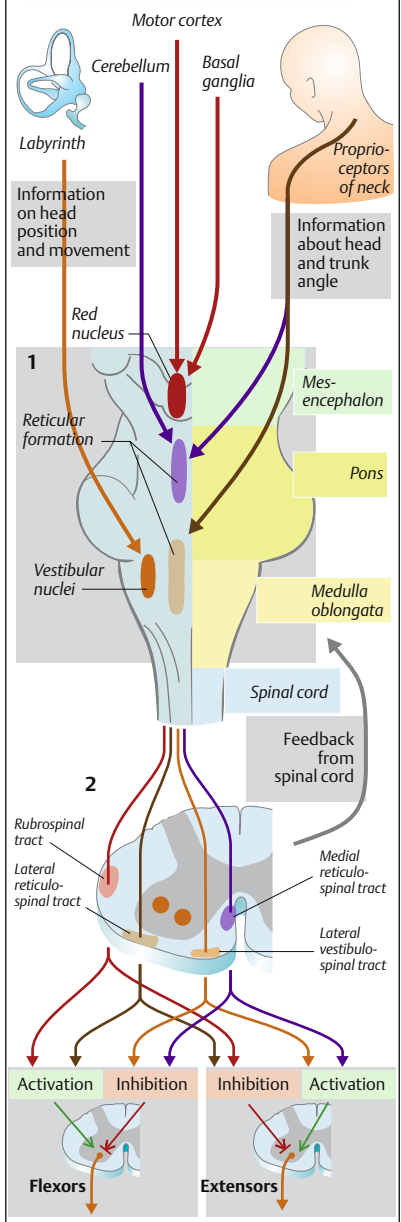
The **median cerebellum** and *pars intermedia* of the cerebellum mainly control postural and supportive motor function (→ F1,2) and oculomotor function (→ pp. 348 and 366). **Input:** The median cerebellum receives *afference copies* of spinal, vestibular and ocular origin and *efference copies* of descending motor signals to the skeletal muscles. **Output** from the median cerebellum flows through the intracerebellar fastigial, globose, and emboliform nuclei to motor centers of the spinal cord and brain stem and to extracerebellar vestibular nuclei (mainly Deiter's nucleus). These centers control oculomotor function and influence locomotor and postural/supportive motor function via the vestibulospinal tract.

The **lateral cerebellum** (hemispheres) mainly takes part in programmed movement (→ F3), but its plasticity also permits motor adaptation and the learning of motor sequences. The hemispheres have two-way ►

**D. Basal ganglia: afferent and efferent tracts**



**E. Centers, tracts and afferents for postural motor function**



► connections to the cortex. **Input: a.** Via the pontine nuclei and mossy fibers, the lateral cerebellum receives input from cortical centers for movement planning (e.g., parietal, prefrontal and premotor *association cortex*; sensorimotor and visual areas). **b.** It also receives input from cortical and subcortical motor centers via the inferior olive and climbing fibers (see below). **Output** from the lateral cerebellum projects across motor areas of the thalamus from the dentate nucleus to motor areas of the cortex.

**Lesions** of the *median cerebellum* lead to disturbances of balance and oculomotor control (vertigo, nausea, pendular nystagmus) and cause trunk and gait ataxia. Lesions of the *lateral cerebellum* lead to disturbances of initiation, coordination and termination of goal-directed movement and impair the rapid reprogramming of diametrically opposing movement (diadochokinesia). The typical patient exhibits tremor when attempting voluntary coordinated movement (*intention tremor*), difficulty in measuring the distances during muscular movement (*dysmetria*), pendular rebound motion after stopping a movement (*rebound phenomenon*), and inability to perform rapid alternating movements (*adiadochokinesia*).

The cerebellar cortex exhibits a uniform neural **ultrastructure and circuitry**. All **output** from the cerebellar cortex is conducted via neurites of approximately  $15 \times 10^6$  Purkinje cells. These GABAergic cells project to and *inhibit* neurons of the fastigial, emboliform, dentate, and lateral vestibular nuclei (Deiter's nucleus; → F, right panel).

**Input and circuitry:** Input from the spinal cord (spinocerebellar tracts) is relayed by the *inferior olive* and projected via stimulatory (1:15 diverging) **climbing fibers** that terminate on a band of Purkinje cells extending across the folia of the cerebellum, forming the *sagittal excitatory foci*. The climbing fibers use aspartate as their transmitter. Serotonergic fibers from the raphe nuclei and noradrenergic fibers from the locus caeruleus terminate also on the excitatory foci. **Mossy fibers** (pontine, reticular and spinal afferents) excite the granular cells. Their axons form T-shaped branches (*parallel fibers*). In the molecular layer, they densely converge (ca.  $10^5:1$ ) on strips of Purkinje cells that run alongside the folium; these are called *longitudinal excitatory foci*. It is assumed that the climbing fiber system (at the "crossing points" of the perpendicular excitatory foci) amplify the relatively weak signals of mossy fiber afferents to Purkinje cells. Numerous inter-

neurons (Golgi, stellate and basket cells) heighten the contrast of the excitatory pattern on the cerebellar cortex by lateral and recurrent inhibition.

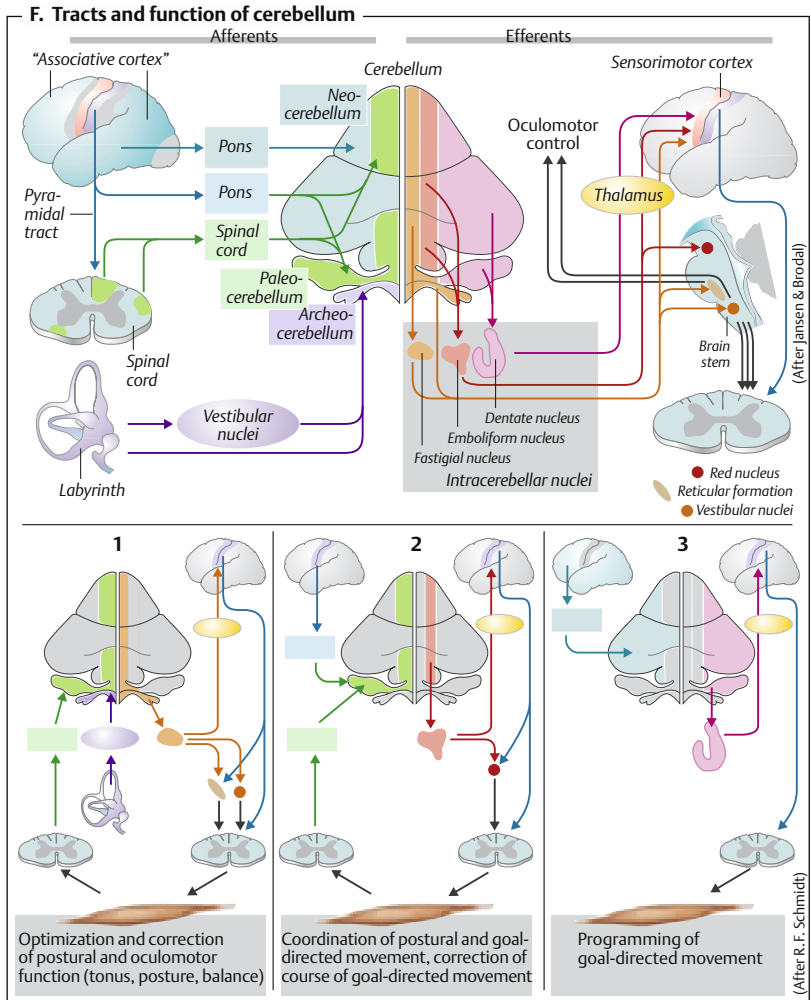
### Postural Motor Control

Simple *stretch reflexes* (→ p. 318) as well as the more complicated *flexor reflexes* and *crossed extensor reflexes* (→ p. 322) are controlled at the level of the **spinal cord**.

**Spinal cord transection (paraplegia)** leads to an initial loss of peripheral reflexes below the lesion (areflexia, spinal shock), but the reflexes can later be provoked in spite of continued transection.

The spinal reflexes are mainly subordinate to supraspinal centers (→ E). Postural motor function is chiefly controlled by **motor centers of the brain stem** (→ E1), i.e., the *red nucleus*, vestibular nuclei (mainly *lateral vestibular nucleus*), and parts of the *reticular formation*. These centers function as relay stations that pass along information pertaining to postural and labyrinthine **postural reflexes** required to maintain *posture* and *balance* (involuntary). Postural reflexes function to regulate muscle tone and eye adaptation movements (→ p. 349 B). **Input** is received from the equilibrium organ (*tonic labyrinthine reflexes*) and from proprioceptors in the neck (*tonic neck reflexes*). The same afferents are involved in postural reflexes (labyrinthine and neck reflexes) that help to maintain the body in its normal position. The trunk is first brought to its normal position in response to inflow from neck proprioceptors. Afferents projecting from the cerebellum, cerebral motor cortex (→ C), eyes, ears, and olfactory organ as well as skin receptors also influence postural reflexes. *Stato-kinetic reflexes* also play an important role in the control of body posture and position. They play a role e.g. in startle reflexes and nystagmus (→ p. 366).

**Descending tracts** to the spinal cord arising from the red nucleus and medullary reticular formation (*rubrospinal* and *lateral reticulospinal tracts*) have a generally inhibitory effect on  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  motoneurons (→ p. 318) of extensor muscles and an excitatory effect on flexor muscles (→ E2). Conversely, the tracts from Deiter's nucleus and the pontine areas of the reticular formation (*vestibulospinal* and *medial reticulospinal tracts*) inhibit the flexors and excite the  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  fibers of the extensors.



Transaction of the brain stem below the red nucleus leads to *decerebrate rigidity* because the extensor effect of Deiter’s nucleus predominates.

The **integrating and coordinating function** of the sensorimotor system can be illustrated in two tennis players. When one player serves, the body of the other player moves to meet the ball (*goal-directed movement*) while using the right leg for support and the left arm for balance (*postural motor control*). The player keeps his eye on the ball (*oculomotor control*) and the visual area of the cortex assesses the tra-

jectory and velocity of the ball. The associative cerebral cortex initiates the movement of returning the ball while taking the ball, net, other side of the court, and position of the opponent into consideration. Positional adjustments may be necessary when returning the ball. Using the movement concept programmed in the cerebellum and basal ganglia, the motor cortex subsequently executes the directed movement of returning the ball. In doing so, the player may “slice” the ball to give it an additional spinning motion (*acquired rapid directed movement*).

The **hypothalamus** coordinates all autonomic and most endocrine processes (→ p. 266ff.) and integrates signals for control of internal milieu, sleep–wake cycle, growth, mental/physical development, reproduction and other functions. The hypothalamus receives numerous sensory and humoral signals (→ **A**). Peptide hormones can circumvent the blood–brain barrier by way of the *circumventricular organs* (→ p. 282).

**Afferents.** *Thermosensors* for control of body temperature (→ p. 226), *osmosensors* for regulation of osmolality and water balance (→ p. 168), and glucose sensors for maintenance of a minimum *glucose concentration* are located within the hypothalamus. Information about the current status of the internal milieu is neuronally projected to the hypothalamus from distant sensors, e.g., thermosensors in the *skin*, osmosensors in the *liver* (→ p. 170), and stretch sensors in the cardiac *atria* (→ p. 216ff.). The hypothalamus/circumventricular organs also contain receptors for various hormones (e.g., for cortisol and angiotensin II), some of which form part of control loops for energy metabolism and metabolic homeostasis (e.g., receptors for cortisol, ACTH, CRH, leptin, and CCK). For functions related to *growth* and *reproduction*, the hypothalamus receives hormonal signals from the gonads and input from neuronal afferents that report cervical widening at the beginning of the birth process and breast stimulation (suckling reflexes), among other things.

The **limbic system** (→ **A**) and other areas of the brain influence hypothalamic function. The limbic system controls inborn and acquired *behavior* (“*program selection*”) and is the seat of instinctive behavior, emotions and motivation (“inner world”). It controls the expression of emotions conveying important *signals to the environment* (e.g., fear, anger, wrath, discomfort, joy, happiness). Inversely, signals from the environment (e.g., odors) are closely associated to behavior.

The limbic system has *cortical components* (hippocampus, parahippocampal gyrus, cingulate gyrus, parts of olfactory brain) and *subcortical components* (amygdaloid body, septal nuclei, anterior thalamic nucleus). It has reciprocal connections to the lateral hypothalamus (chiefly used for recall of “programs”, see below) and to the temporal and frontal cortex.

Its connections to the **cortex** are primarily used to perceive and assess signals from the “outer world” and from memories. Processing

of both types of input is important for behavior.

**Programmed behavior** (→ **A**). The lateral hypothalamus has various programs to control lower hormonal, autonomic and motor processes. This is reflected internally by numerous autonomic and hormonal activities, and is reflected outwardly by different types of behavior.

Different programs exist for different behavioral reactions, for example:

- ◆ **Defensive behavior** (“fight or flight”). This program has somatic (repulsive facial expression and posture, flight or fight behavior), hormonal (epinephrine, cortisol) and autonomic (sympathetic nervous system) components. Its activation results in the release of energy-rich free fatty acids, the inhibition of insulin release, and a decrease in blood flow to the gastrointestinal tract as well as to rises in cardiac output, respiratory rate, and blood flow to the skeletal muscles.

- ◆ **Physical exercise.** The components of this program are similar to those of defensive behavior.

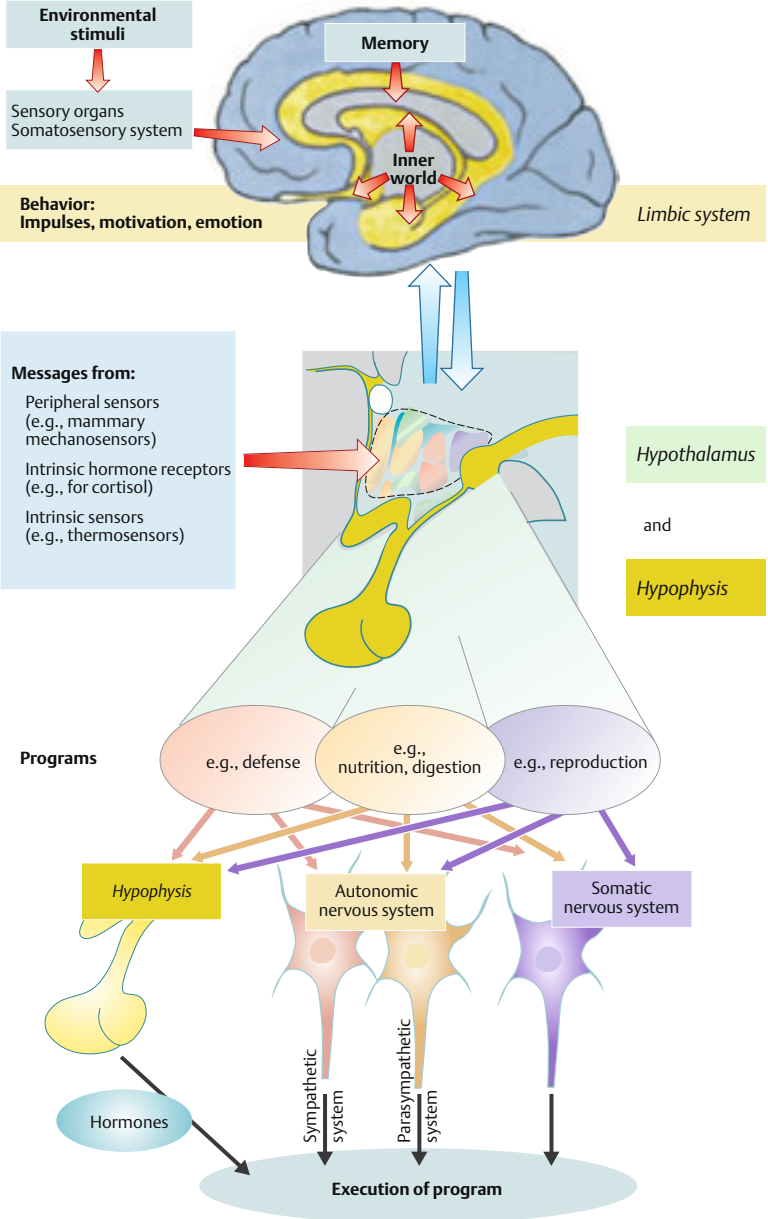
- ◆ **Nutritive behavior**, the purpose of which is to ensure an adequate supply, digestion and intake of foods and liquids. This includes searching for food, e.g. in the refrigerator, activation of the parasympathetic system with increased gastrointestinal secretion and motility in response to food intake, postprandial reduction of skeletal muscle activity and similar activities.

- ◆ **Reproductive behavior**, e.g., courting a partner, neuronal mechanisms of sexual response, hormonal regulation of pregnancy (→ p. 306), etc.

- ◆ **Thermoregulatory behavior**, which enables us to maintain a relatively constant core temperature (→ p. 226), even in extreme ambient temperatures or at the high level of heat production during strenuous physical work.

**Monoaminergic neuron systems** contain neurons that release the monoamine neurotransmitters norepinephrine, epinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin. These neuron tracts extend from the brain stem to almost all parts of the brain and play an important role in the overall regulation of behavior. Experimental activation of noradrenergic neurons, for example, led to positive reinforcement (liking, rewards), whereas the serotonergic neurons are thought to be associated with dislike. A number of psychotropic drugs target monoaminergic neuron systems.

**A. Limbic system and hypothalamus**



Proper function of the cerebral cortex is essential for *conscious perception, planning, action, and voluntary movement* (→ p. 324ff.).

**Cortical ultrastructure and neuronal circuitry** (→ A). The cerebral cortex consists of six layers, I–VI, lying parallel to the brain surface. Vertically, it is divided into columns and modules (diameter 0.05–0.3 mm, depth 1.3–4.5 mm) that extend through all six layers.

**Input** from specific and unspecific areas of the thalamus terminate mainly on layers IV and on layers I and II, respectively (→ A3); those from other areas of the cortex terminate mainly on layer II (→ A2). The large and small **pyramidal cells** (→ A1) comprise 80% of all cells in the cortex and are located in layers V and III, respectively (glutamate generally serves as the transmitter, e.g., in the striatum; → p. 327 D). The pyramidal cell axons leave the layer VI of their respective columns and are the sole source of **output** from the cortex. Most of the axons project to other areas of the ipsilateral cortex (association fibers) or to areas of the contralateral cortex (commissural fibers) (→ A2); only a few extend to the periphery (→ A4 and p. 327 C). Locally, the pyramidal cells are connected to each other by axon collaterals. The *principal dendrite* of a pyramidal cell projects to the upper layers of its column and has many thorn-like processes (**spines**) where many thalamocortical, commissural and association fibers terminate (see also p. 342ff.). The afferent fibers utilize various transmitters, e.g., glutamate norepinephrine, dopamine, serotonin, acetylcholine and histamine. Inside the cerebral cortex, information is processed by many morphologically variable **stellate cells** (→ A1), some of which have stimulatory effects (VIP, CCK and other peptide transmitters), while others have inhibitory effects (GABA). Dendrites of pyramidal and stellate cells project to neighboring columns, so the columns are connected by thousands of threads. **Plasticity** of pyramidal cell synapses – i.e., the fact that they can be modified in conformity with their activity pattern – is important for the learning process (→ p. 340).

**Cortical potentials.** Similar to electrocardiography, collective fluctuations of electrical potentials (brain waves) in the cerebral cortex can be recorded by **electroencephalography** using electrodes applied to the skin over the cranium (→ B). The EPSPs contribute the most to the electroencephalogram (EEG) whereas the share of the relatively low IPSPs (→ p. 50ff.) generated at the synapses of pyramidal cell dendrites is small. Only a portion of the rhythms recorded in the EEG are produced

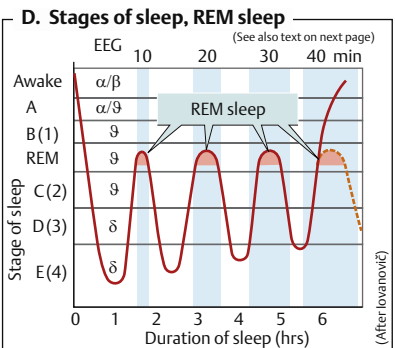
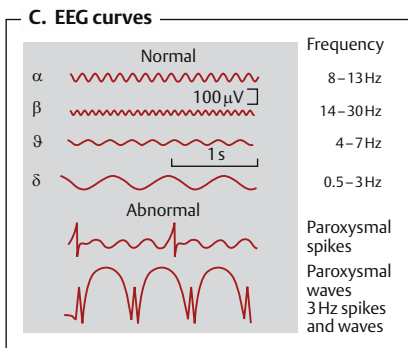
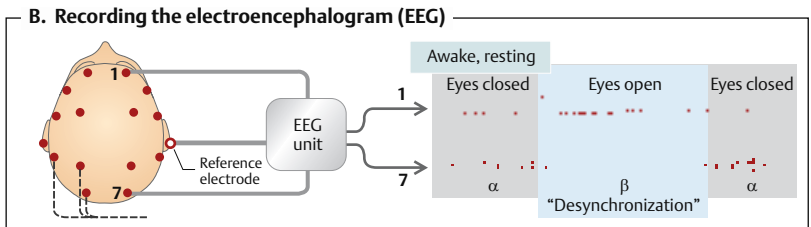
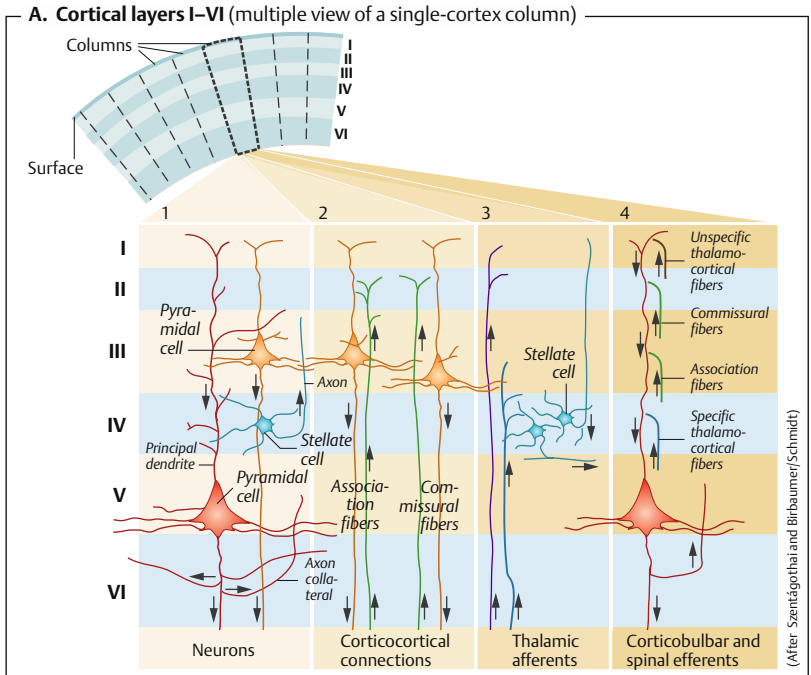
directly in the cortex ( $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  waves in conscious perception; see below). Lower frequency waves from other parts of the brain, e.g.  $\alpha$  waves from the thalamus and  $\theta$  waves from the hippocampus, are “forced on” the cortex (*brain wave entrainment*).

By convention, downward **deflections of the EEG** are positive. Generally speaking, depolarization (excitation) of deeper layers of the cortex and hyperpolarization of superficial layers cause downward deflection (+) and vice versa.

**Brain wave types.** The electrical activity level of the cortex is mainly determined by the degree of *wakefulness* and can be distinguished based on the amplitude (a) and frequency (f) of the waves (→ B, C).  **$\alpha$  Waves** (f  $\approx$  10 Hz; a  $\approx$  50  $\mu$ V), which predominate when an adult subject is awake and relaxed (with eyes closed), are generally detected in multiple electrodes (*synchronized activity*). When the eyes are opened, other sensory organs are stimulated, or the subject solves a math problem, the  $\alpha$  waves subside ( $\alpha$  blockade) and  **$\beta$  waves** appear (f  $\approx$  20 Hz). The amplitude of  $\beta$  waves is lower than that of  $\alpha$  waves, and they are chiefly found in occipital (→ B) and parietal regions when they eyes are opened. The frequency and amplitude of  $\beta$  waves varies greatly in the different leads (*desynchronization*).  $\beta$  Waves reflect the increased attention and activity (arousal activity) of the *ascending reticular activating system* (ARAS; → p. 324 and 338).  **$\gamma$  Waves** (> 30 Hz) appear during learning activity. Low-frequency  **$\theta$  waves** appear when drowsiness descends to sleep (sleep stages A/B/C; → D); they transform into even slower  **$\delta$  waves** during deep sleep (→ C, D).

The EEG is used to diagnose epilepsy (localized or generalized paroxysmal waves and spikes; → C), to assess the degree of brain maturation, monitor anesthesia, and to determine brain death (*isoelectric EEG*).

**Magnetoencephalography (MEG)**, i.e. recording magnetic signals induced by cortical ion currents, can be combined with the EEG to precisely locate the site of cortical activity (resolution a few mm).



The daily sleep–wake cycle and other **circadian rhythms** (diurnal rhythms) are controlled by *endogenous rhythm generators*. The *central biological clock* (*oscillator*) that times these processes is located in the *suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN)* of the hypothalamus (→ **A**). The endogenous circadian rhythm occurs in cycles of roughly 24–25 hours, but is unadulterated only when a person is completely isolated from the outside influences (e.g., in a windowless basement, dark cave, etc.). External *zeitgebers* (entraining signals) synchronize the biological clock to precise 24-hour cycles. The *zeitgeber* slows or accelerates the endogenous rhythm, depending on which phase it is in. It takes several days to “reset” the biological clock, e.g., after a long journey from east to west (*jet lag*).

The main **external zeitgeber** for 24-hour synchronization of the sleep–wake cycle is bright light (photic entrainment). Light stimuli are directly sensed by a small, *melanopsin*-containing fraction of retinal ganglion cells and conducted to the SCN via the retinohypothalamic tract (→ **A2, 3**).

Signals from the *zeitgeber* also reaches the **epiphysis** (pineal body, pineal gland), where it inhibits the secretion of **melatonin** which is high at night. Since it exerts its effects mainly on the SCN, administration of melatonin before retiring at night can greatly reduce the time required to “reset” the biological clock. The main reason is that it temporally “deactivates” the SCN (via MT<sub>2</sub> receptors), thereby excluding most nocturnal neuronal input (except light stimuli).

Important genetic “**cogwheels**” of the central biological clock of mammals were recently discovered (→ **A1**). Neurons of the SCN contain specific proteins (CLOCK and BMAL1), the PAS domains of which bind to form heterodimers. The resulting CLOCK/BMAL1 complexes enter the cell nuclei, where their promoter sequences (E-box) bind to period (*per*) oscillator genes *per1*, *per2*, and *per3*, thereby activating their transcription. After a latency period, expression of the genes yields the proteins PER1, PER2, and PER3, which jointly function as a trimer to block the effect of CLOCK/BMAL1, thereby completing the negative feedback loop. The mechanism by which this cycle activates subsequent neuronal actions (membrane potentials) is still unclear.

Via various effector systems of the CNS (→ **A4**), the coupled cells of the SCN (→ **A**)

bring about circadian rhythms of hormone secretion (→ p. 298), core temperature (→ p. 226 and 387 C), reception of food, and physical exercise (→ p. 232) as well as sleep–wake cycles (→ **A5, B** and p. 339).

Various **stages of sleep** can be identified in the EEG (p. 334 and 335 D). When a normal person who is awake, relaxed and has the eyes closed ( $\alpha$  waves) starts to fall asleep, the level of consciousness first descends to *sleep phase A* (dozing), where only a few isolated  $\alpha$  waves can be detected. Drowsiness further descends to *sleep stage B* (or 1), where  $\theta$  waves appear, then to *stage C* (or 2) where a burst of fast waves (sleep spindles) and isolated waves (K complexes) can be recorded, and ultimately to the stages of *deep sleep* (stages D/E or 3/4), characterized by the appearance of  $\delta$  waves. Their amplitude increases while their frequency drops to a minimum in phase E (→ p. 335 D).

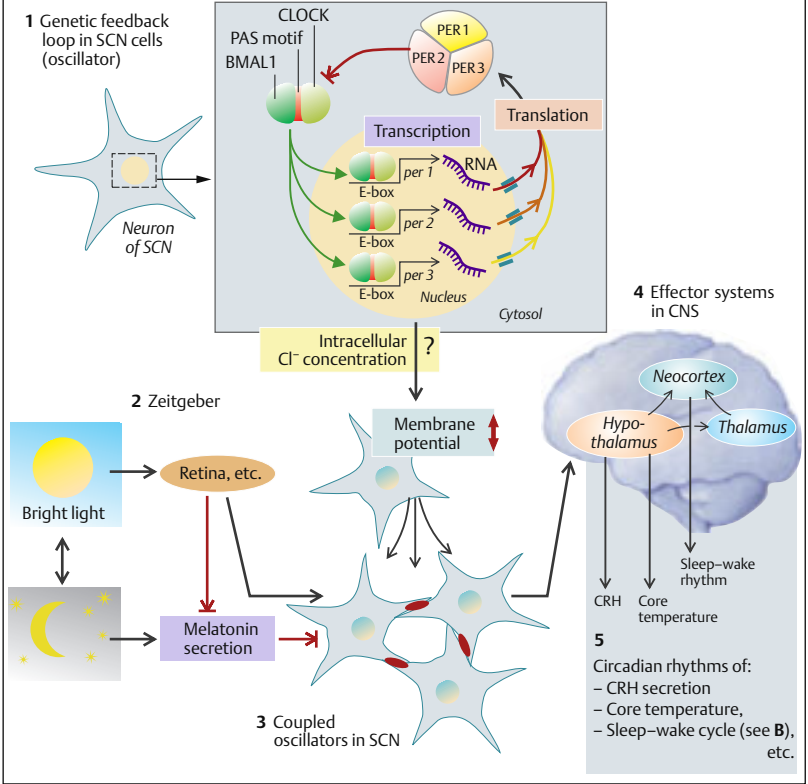
This phase is therefore referred to as *slow-wave sleep (SWS)*. The arousal threshold is highest about 1 hour after a person falls asleep. Sleep then becomes less deep and the first episode of *rapid eye movement (REM)* occurs. This completes the first *sleep cycle*. During REM sleep, most of the skeletal muscles become atonic (inhibition of motoneurons) while the breathing and heart rate increase. The face and fingers suddenly start to twitch, and penile erection and rapid eye movements occur. All other stages of sleep are collectively referred to as *non-REM sleep (NREM)*. Sleepers aroused from REM sleep are more often able to describe their dreams than when aroused from NREM sleep. The **sleep cycle** normally lasts about 90 min and is repeated 4–5 times each night (→ p. 333 D).

Towards morning, NREM sleep becomes shorter while the REM episodes increase from 10 min to > 30 min.

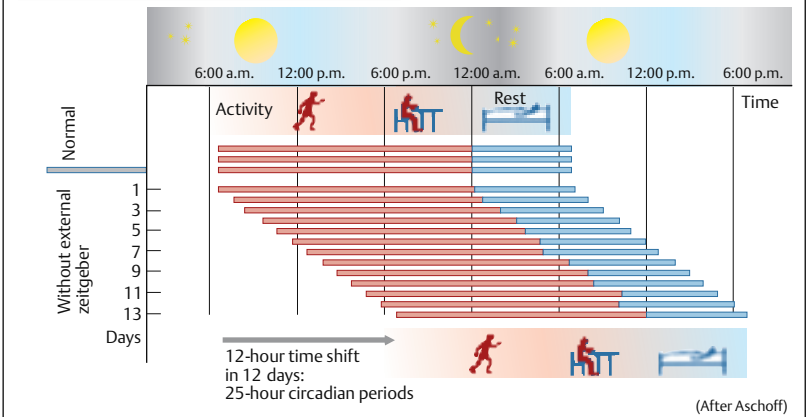
**Infants** sleep longest (about 16 hours/day, 50% REM), 10-year-olds sleep an average 10 hours (20% REM), young adults sleep 7–8 hours a day, and adults over 50 sleep an average 6 hours (both 20% REM). The proportion of SWS decreases in favor of stage C sleep.

When a person is **deprived of REM sleep**, the duration of the next REM phase increases. The first two to three sleep cycles (**core sleep**) are essential. Total **sleep deprivation** leads to death, but the reason is still unclear.

**A. Circadian rhythm generator in suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN)**



**B. Circadian rhythm of sleep–wake cycle**



**Consciousness.** Selective attention, abstract thinking, the ability to verbalize experiences, the capacity to plan activities based on experience, self-awareness and the concept of values are some of the many characteristics of *consciousness*. Consciousness enables us to deal with difficult environmental conditions (adaptation). Little is known about the brain activity associated with consciousness and controlled attention (LCCS, see below), but we do know that subcortical activation systems such as the reticular formation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 324, A1) and corticostriatal systems that inhibit the afferent signals to the cortex in the thalamus ( $\rightarrow$  p. 328) play an important role.

**Attention.** Sensory stimuli arriving in the *sensory memory* are evaluated and compared to the contents of the long-term memory within fractions of a second ( $\rightarrow$  p. 341 C). In routine situations such as driving in traffic, these stimuli are unconsciously processed (*automated attention*) and do not interfere with other reaction sequences such as conversation with a passenger. Our *conscious, selective (controlled) attention*, on the other hand, is stimulated by novel or ambiguous stimuli, the reaction to which (e.g., the setting of priorities) is controlled by vast parts of the brain called the *limited capacity control system (LCCS)*. Since our capacity for selective attention is therefore limited, it normally is utilized only in stress situations.

Consciousness and attention are linked to wakefulness, which is maintained in the reticular formation of the brain stem by multiple neuron groups that transmit nonspecific ascending activating impulses via the thalamus to wide areas of the forebrain: the ascending reticular activating (arousal) system (ARAS,  $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 324 and 325 E). The transmitter in these fibers is acetylcholine (ACh) from the medial

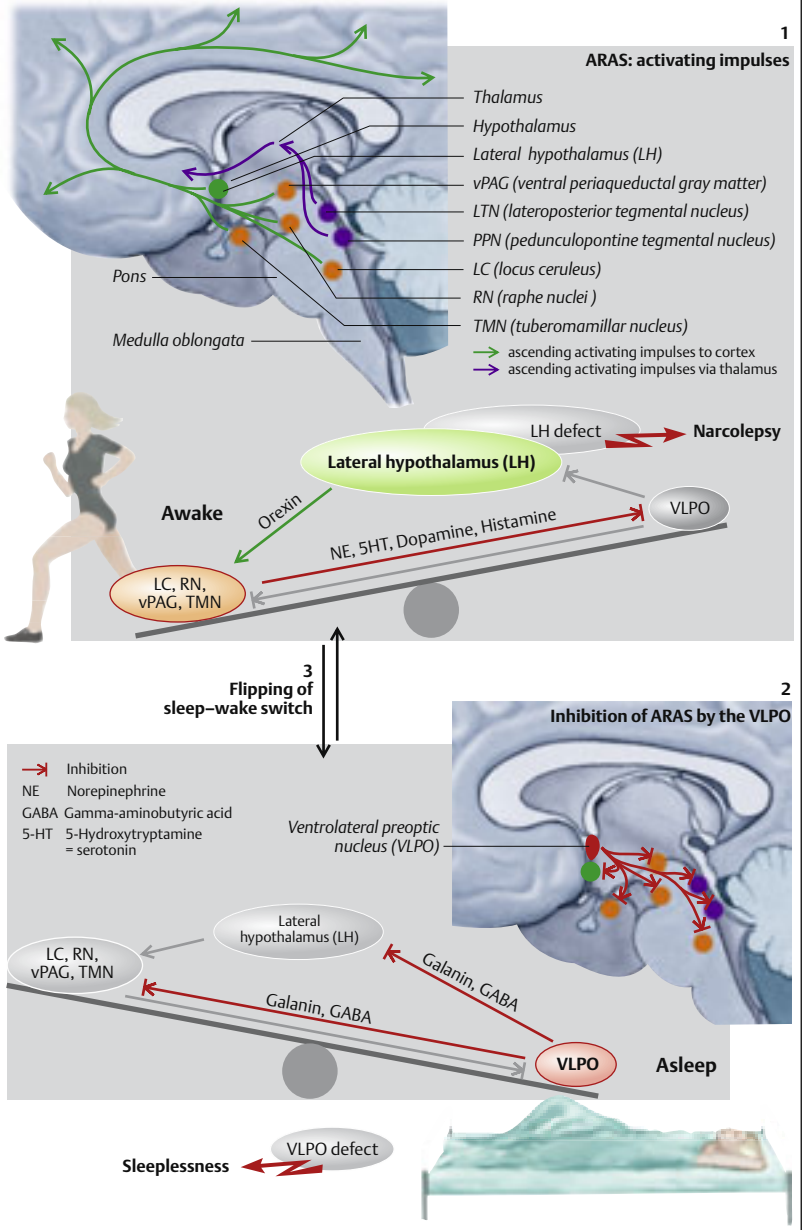
parabrachial nucleus, the lateroposterior and pedunculopontine tegmental nuclei ( $\rightarrow$  A1, LTN, PPN). Alongside this cholinergic system, a monoaminergic system also operates, which consists of the locus caeruleus ( $\rightarrow$  A1, LC) with norepinephrine (NE), the raphe nuclei with serotonin (= 5-hydroxytryptamine, 5-HT), the ventral periaqueductal gray substance ( $\rightarrow$  A, vPAG) with dopamine and the tuberomammillary nucleus ( $\rightarrow$  A, TMN) with histamine as transmitters. In the awake state both systems are highly active (see Table) and the sleep/wake switch in the hypothalamus (LH), where the transmitter orexin (= hypocretin) activates the aminergic system ( $\rightarrow$  A).

**Sleep** is a state of physiologic recovery, regularly repeated at night. The day/night rhythm is associated with an altered state of consciousness. Here REM sleep shows considerable differences from NREM sleep ( $\rightarrow$  p. 336 and Table). These two forms of sleep are mutually exclusive, i.e., the sleeping brain can either process perceptions from endogenous sources (REM sleep with hallucinatory illusions; exogenous sensibility is blocked) or it can perceive and (persistently) "think over" external information (see Table) but not both at the same time.

Sleep is a **regulated process**. The central biological clock located in the suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN) of the hypothalamus ( $\rightarrow$  p. 336 and 337 A) is responsible for timing this process. During REM sleep only the aminergic ARAS is switched off (and the cholinergic system is strongly activated), while during NREM sleep the central biological clock inhibits both systems equally ( $\rightarrow$  Table and A, bottom). At night the SCN controls, in particular, neurons in the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus (VLPO). Its activation causes the switchover to the "sleep" state by inhibiting both the stabilizing LH and ►

	<b>Awake</b>	<b>NREM sleep</b>	<b>REM sleep</b>
Sensitivity, perception	Active (exogenic stimulation)	Sluggish to absent	Active (endogenic stimulation)
Thought	Logical, progressive	Logical, persistent	Illogical, bizarre
Motor system activity	Uninterrupted, deliberate	Episodic, involuntary	Brain pathways active but $\alpha$ motoneurons inhibited
ARAS activity	Cholinergic and aminergic $\uparrow\uparrow\uparrow$	Cholinergic and aminergic $\uparrow$	Cholinergic $\uparrow\uparrow\uparrow$ , aminergic 0
EEG wave type	$\alpha, \beta$ : high frequency, low	$\theta, \delta$ : low frequency, high	$\beta$ : high frequency, low

A. Control of sleep–wake cycle



► the aminergic ARAS (LC, RN, vPAG, TMN) via the transmitters galanin and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA; → **A**, bottom).

The **functions of sleep** are homeostasis (replenishment of energy reserves with high parasympathetic involvement) and consolidation (stabilization) of acquired procedural knowledge (spoken language, motor functions; see below). **Dreaming** appears to be involved in the consolidation process. Dreams include fragmentary episodic memories, which stem partly from experiences while awake during the previous 1 to 6 days and are emotionally structured. The high rate of REM sleep in infants (p. 336) suggests that it is important for development of the brain. In adults the extent of REM sleep phases increases throughout the night (p. 335 D) and without an alarm, we usually awake from REM sleep. Alertness is notably higher when awaking from REM sleep than when woken from deep sleep, so another function of REM sleep may be to prepare us for being awake (activation of brain stem activity).

**Sleep disorders** include (in addition to sleep rhythm abnormalities) hypersomnia, i.e. severe daytime tiredness despite sleeping at night. Narcolepsy is an example of such a disorder, in which (as a consequence of encephalitis or congenital Gélineau syndrome) ARAS stabilization by the LH is absent (**A**, bottom). Without any warning, sleeping spells of minutes at a time occur during the day, as the destabilized sleep/wake switch suddenly flips to “sleep.” Insomnia (sleeplessness) can have numerous causes, including damage to the VLPO (e.g. encephalitis; **A**, top). Parasomnias are disturbed sleep behaviors such as sleepwalking (somnambulism) or bedwetting (nocturnal enuresis).

How easily one can be woken from sleep depends on the sleep phase, and generally we can quickly remember what was happening just before falling asleep. In contrast, during unconsciousness, whether brief (fainting, syncope) or prolonged (coma), such as following brain injury, O<sub>2</sub> or glucose deficiency, poisoning etc., the patient cannot be woken and will often have retrograde amnesia (see below).

### Learning, Memory, Language

The **implicit memory** (procedural memory → **B**, brown area) stores skill-related information and information necessary for associative learning (conditioning of conditional reflexes; → p. 236) and non-associative learning (habit-

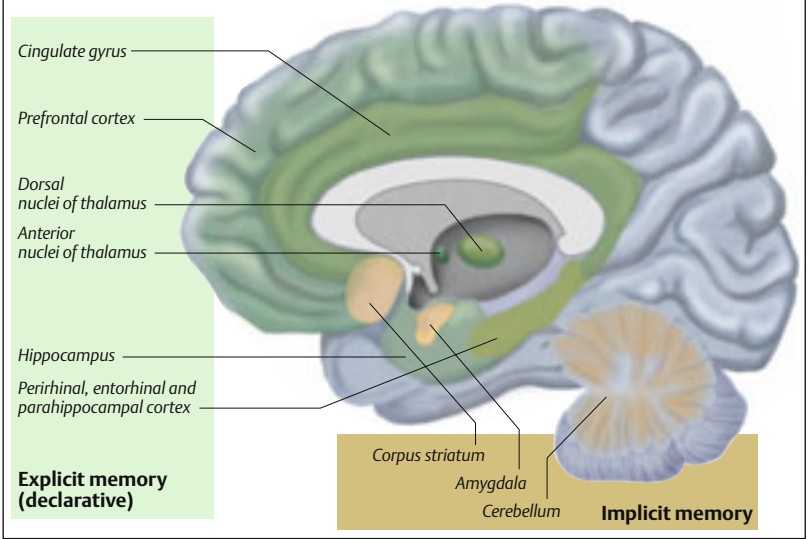
uation and sensitization of reflex pathways). This type of unconscious memory involves the basal ganglia (procedural memory, e.g. learning of skills and procedures), cerebellum (motor reflexes in associated learning), neocortex (priming, e.g. ability to complete partial texts based on previously acquired knowledge), amygdaloid body (emotional reactions) and other structures of the brain.

The neuronal circuits of the implicit memory (→ **B**) are largely independent from those of the explicit memory. The latter is affected particularly by damage to the hippocampus (e.g., retrograde amnesia), while the implicit memory continues to function normally. Conversely, atrophy of the amygdala, e.g., in Urbach–Wiethe disease, leads to deficits of emotional memory (problems with interpretation and expression of emotions).

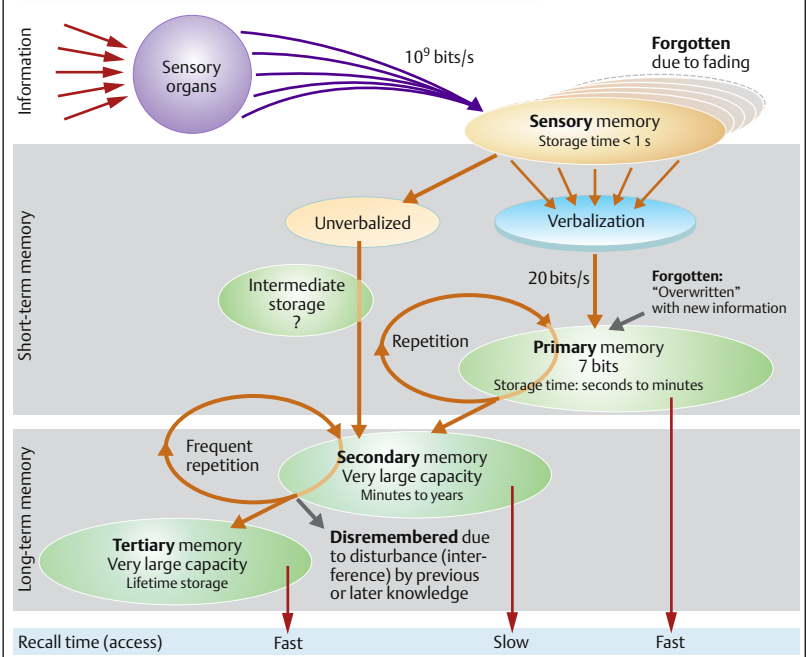
The **explicit memory** (declarative/knowledge memory) stores facts (semantic knowledge) and experiences (episodic knowledge, especially when experienced by selective attention) and *consciously* renders the data. Storage of information processed in the uni- and polymodal association fields is the responsibility of the temporal lobe system (hippocampus, perirhinal, entorhinal and parahippocampal cortex, → **B**, green area). It establishes the temporal and spatial *context* surrounding an experience and recurrently stores the information back into the *spines* of cortical dendrites in the association areas (→ **D**). The recurrence of a portion of the experience then suffices to recall the contents of the memory.

**Explicit learning** (→ **C**) starts in the *sensory memory*, which holds the sensory impression automatically for less than 1 s. A small fraction of the information reaches the *primary memory* (*short-term memory*), which can retain about 7 units of information (e.g., groups of numbers) for a few seconds. In most cases, the information is also verbalized. *Long-term storage* of information in the *secondary memory* (*long-term memory*) is achieved by repetition (*consolidation*). The *tertiary memory* is the place where frequently repeated impressions are stored (e.g., reading, writing, one's own name); these things are never forgotten, and can be quickly recalled throughout one's lifetime. ►

**B. Areas of the brain involved in memory**



**C. Storage of information in the brain (explicit memory)**



► The mechanism correlating with primary (short-term) memory is likely to be the *impulses circulating in the neuronal tracts*, while *biochemical mechanisms* are predominantly involved in long-term memory. Repeated excitation causes reinforcement lasting hours or days of synaptic connections (early LTP, *long-term potentiation*) at the spines of cortical dendrites (→ **D**, top). Long-term genomic changes eventually result from this reinforcement (late-phase LTP). Synaptic transmission at specific synapses is thus enhanced and the learned information consolidated.

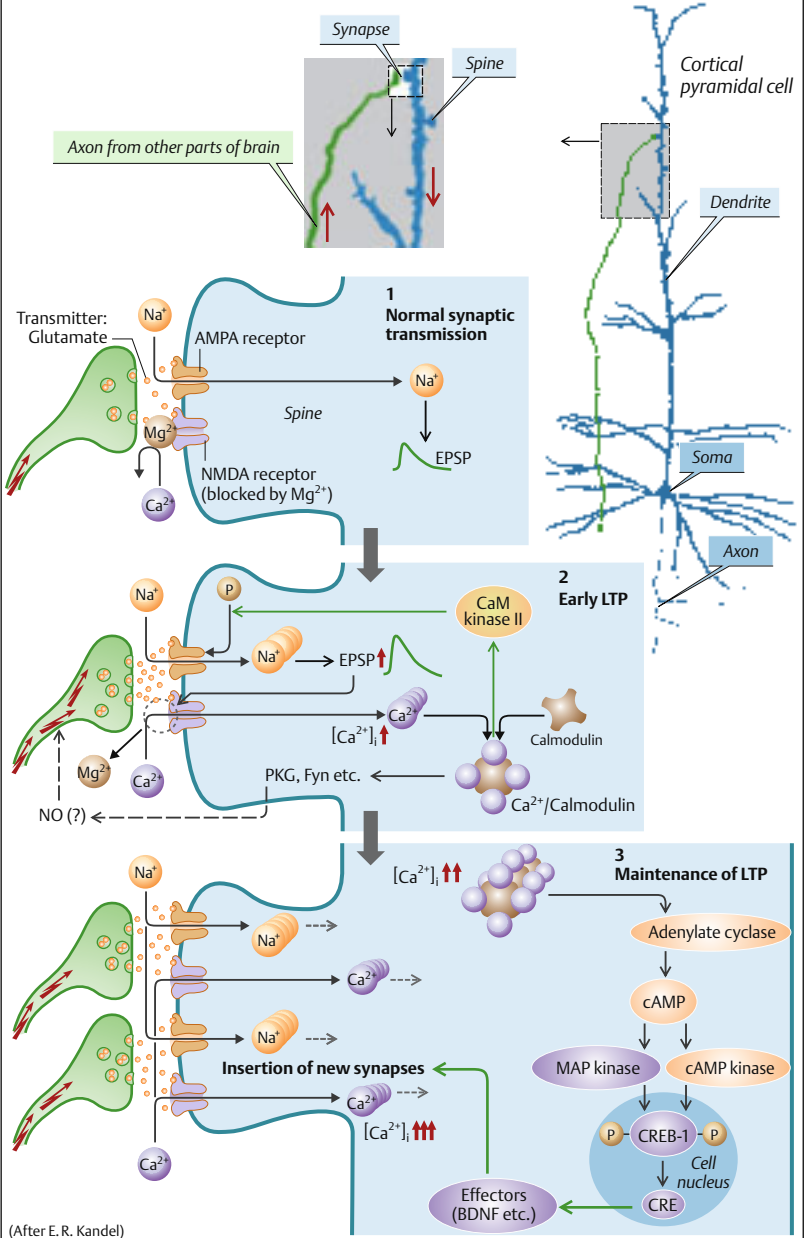
**Mechanisms for LTP.** Once ionotropic receptors for AMPA ( $\alpha$ -amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionic acid), which are permeable for  $\text{Na}^+$  but not for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , are activated by the presynaptic release of glutamate at glutamatergic axodendritic synapses of cortical pyramidal cells (→ p. 55 F), influxing  $\text{Na}^+$  depolarizes the postsynaptic membrane and a normal EPSP results (→ **D1** and p. 50ff). Glutamate also binds to the ionotropic NMDA (N-methyl-aspartic acid) receptor. The ion channels of the NMDA receptors are in principle permeable to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , but at normal EPSP are blocked by  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ . If the neuron is further depolarized by increased activity via the dendritic synapses, the  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  is relieved and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can flow into the cell. The cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  then rises. If this is repeated often enough, calmodulin mediates the autophosphorylation of CaM kinase II (→ **D2** and p. 36), which persists even after the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  falls back to normal. CaM kinase II phosphorylates AMPA receptors (increases their conductivity) and promotes their insertion into the postsynaptic membrane, thereby enhancing synaptic transmission over longer periods of time (early LTP). Frequent, marked increases in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  concentration results in long-term prolongation (late LTP), because this activates adenylate cyclase, and increased cAMP is released (→ **D3**). The cAMP and MAP (mitogen-activated protein) kinases are then activated and phosphorylate transcription factors (CREB = cAMP response element binding protein) in the cell nucleus. These in turn activate promoters (CRE), and in this manner resting synapses are mobilized and new proteins are synthesized.

**Amnesia (memory loss).** *Retrograde amnesia* (loss of memories of past events) is characterized by the loss of primary memory and (temporary) difficulty in recalling information from the secondary memory due to various causes (concussion, electroshock, etc.). *Anterograde amnesia* (inability to form new memories) is characterized by the inability to transfer new information from the primary memory to the secondary memory (*Korsakoff's syndrome*, which occurs mainly with alcoholism).

**Language** is a mode of *communication* used (1) to receive information through visual and aural channels (and through tactile channels in the blind) and (2) to transmit information in written and spoken form (see also p. 372). Language is also needed to form and verbalize *concepts and strategies* based on consciously processed sensory input. Memories can therefore be stored efficiently. The centers for formation and processing of concepts and language are unevenly distributed in the cerebral hemispheres. The left hemisphere is usually the main center of speech in right-handed individuals ("*dominant*" hemisphere, large planum temporale), whereas the right hemisphere is dominant in 30–40% of all left-handers. The *non-dominant hemisphere* is important for word recognition, sentence melody, and numerous nonverbal capacities (e.g., music, spatial thinking, face recognition).

This can be illustrated using the example of patients in whom the two hemispheres are surgically disconnected due to conditions such as otherwise untreatable, severe epilepsy. If such a **split-brain patient** touches an object with the right hand (reported to the left hemisphere), he can name the object. If, however, he touches the object with the left hand (right hemisphere), he cannot name the object but can point to a picture of it. Since complete separation of the two hemispheres also causes many other severe disturbances, this type of surgery is used only in patients with otherwise unmanageable, extremely severe seizures.

**D. Molecular mechanisms of long-term potentiation**



The central nervous system contains around  $10^{11}$  nerve cells and 10 times as many **glia cells** such as *oligodendrocytes*, *astrocytes*, *ependymal cells*, and *microglia* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). **Oligodendrocytes** (ODC) form the myelin sheath that surrounds axons of the CNS ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).

**Astrocytes** (AC) are responsible for **extracellular  $K^+$  and  $H^+$  homeostasis** in the CNS. Neurons release  $K^+$  in response to high-frequency stimulation ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Astrocytes prevent an increase in the interstitial  $K^+$  concentration and thus an undesirable depolarization of neurons (see Nernst equation, Eq. 1.18, p. 32) by taking up  $K^+$ , and intervene in a similar manner with  $H^+$  ions. Since AC are connected by *gap junctions* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 16ff.), they can transfer their  $K^+$  or  $H^+$  load to nearby AC ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). In addition to forming a *barrier* that prevents transmitters from one synapse from being absorbed by another, AC also *take transmitters up*, e.g. glutamate (Glu). Intracellular Glu is converted to glutamine ( $GluNH_2$ ), then transported out of the cell and taken up by the nerve cells, which convert it back to Glu (**transmitter recycling**;  $\rightarrow$  **B**).

Some AC have **receptors for transmitters** such as Glu, which triggers a  $Ca^{2+}$  wave from one AC to another. Astrocytes are also able to modify the  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration in the neuronal cytosol so that the two cell types can “communicate” with each other. AC also mediate the transport of materials between capillaries and neurons and play an important part in *energy homeostasis* of the neurons by mediating glyco-gen synthesis and breakdown.

During **embryonal development**, the long processes of AC serve as *guiding structures* that help undifferentiated nerve cells migrate to their target areas. Glia cells also play an important role in CNS development by helping to control gene expression in nerve cell clusters with or without the aid of **growth factors** such as NGF (nerve growth factor), BDNF (brain-derived growth factor), and GDNF (glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor). GDNF also serves as a trophic factor for all mature neurons.

Cell division of glia cells can lead to scarring (*epileptic foci*) and tumor formation (*glioma*).

Immunocompetent **microglia** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) assume many functions of macrophages outside the CNS when CNS injuries or infections occur ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.). **Ependymal cells** line internal hollow cavities of the CNS ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).

## Sense of Taste

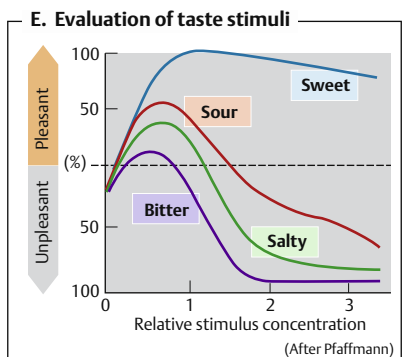
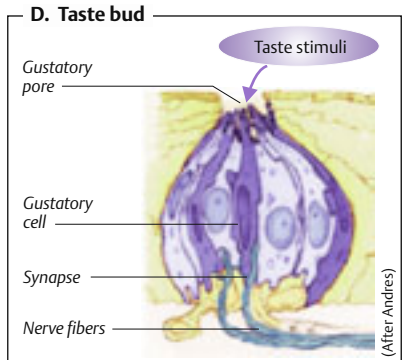
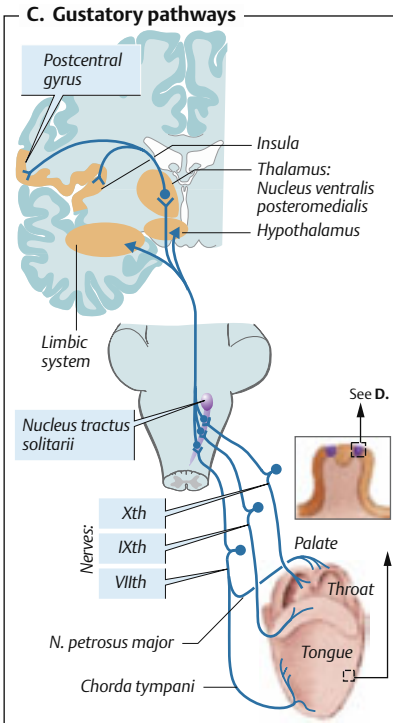
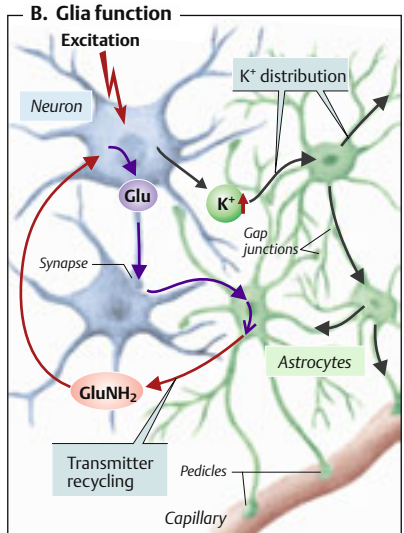
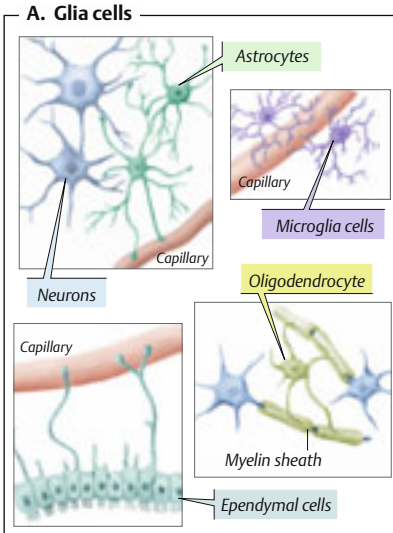
**Gustatory pathways.** The *taste buds* ( $\rightarrow$  **D**) consist of clusters of 50–100 *secondary sensory cells* on the tongue (renewed in 2-week cycles); humans have around 5000 taste buds. Sensory stimuli from the taste buds are conducted to endings of the VIIth, IXth and Xth cranial nerves, relayed by the *nucleus tractus solitarii*, and converge at a high frequency on (a) the postcentral gyrus via the thalamus ( $\rightarrow$  p. 325 B, “tongue”) and (b) the hypothalamus and limbic system via the pons ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).

The **qualities of taste** distinguishable in humans are conventionally defined as *sweet*, *sour*, *salty*, and *bitter*. The specific taste sensor cells for these qualities are distributed over the whole tongue but differ with respect to their densities. **Umami**, the sensation caused by monosodium-L-glutamate (MSG), is now classified as a fifth quality of taste. MSG is chiefly found in protein-rich foods.

**Taste sensor cells** distinguish the types of taste as follows: **Salty:** Cations ( $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ , etc.) taste salty, but the presence of anions also plays a role. E.g.,  $Na^+$  enters the taste sensor cell via  $Na^+$  channels and depolarizes the cell. **Sour:**  $H^+$  ions lead to a more frequent closure of  $K^+$  channels, which also has a depolarizing effect. **Bitter:** A family of > 50 genes codes for a battery of bitter sensors. A number of sensory proteins specific for a particular substance are expressed in a single taste sensor cell, making it sensitive to different bitter tastes. The sensory input is relayed by the G-protein  $\alpha$ -*gustducin*. No nuances but only the overall warning signal “bitter” is perceived. **Umami:** Certain taste sensor contain a metabotropic glutamate receptor, mGluR4, the stimulation of which leads to a drop in cAMP conc.

**Taste thresholds.** The threshold (mol/L) for recognition of taste stimuli applied to the tongue is roughly  $10^{-5}$  for quinine sulfate and saccharin,  $10^{-3}$  for HCl, and  $10^{-2}$  for sucrose and NaCl. The relative *intensity differential threshold*  $\Delta I/I$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 358) is about 0.20. The concentration of the gustatory stimulus determines whether its taste will be perceived as pleasant or unpleasant ( $\rightarrow$  **E**). For the *adaptation* of the sense of taste, see p. 347 C.

**Function of taste.** The sense of taste has a protective function as spoiled or bitter-tasting food (low taste threshold) is often poisonous. Tasting substances also stimulate the secretion of saliva and gastric juices ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 238, 244).



The neuroepithelium of the *olfactory region* contains ca.  $10^7$  **primary olfactory sensor cells** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) which are bipolar neurons. Their dendrites branch to form 5–20 mucus-covered cilia, whereas the axons extend centrally in bundles called *fila olfactoria* ( $\rightarrow$  **A1,2**). Olfactory neurons are replenished by basal cell division in 30–60-day cycles. *Free nerve endings* (trigeminal nerve) in the nasal mucosa also react to certain aggressive odors (e.g., acid or ammonia vapors).

**Olfactory sensors.** Odorant molecules ( $M_r$  15–300) are transported by the inhaled air to the olfactory region, where they first dissolve in the mucous lining before combining with **receptor proteins** in the *cilial membrane*. These are coded by a huge family of genes (500–750 genes distributed in most chromosomes), whereby probably one olfactory sensor cell only expresses one of these genes. Since only a part of the sequence of about 40% of these genes is expressed, humans have roughly 200–400 different **sensor cell types**. Olfactory receptors couple with  $G_s$ -proteins ( $G_{olf}$  proteins;  $\rightarrow$  **B** and p. 276ff.) that increase the conductivity of the sensor cell membrane to cations, thereby increasing the influx of  $Na^+$  and  $Ca^{2+}$  and thus depolarizing the cell.

**Sensor specificity** ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Olfactory sensor cells recognize a very specific structural feature of the odorant molecules they are sensitive to.

The cloned receptor 17 of the rat, for example, reacts with the aldehyde *n*-octanal but not to octanol, octanoic acid, or aldehydes which have two methyl groups more or less than *n*-octanal. In the case of aromatic compounds, one sensor recognizes whether the compound is *ortho*, *meta* or *para*-substituted, while another detects the length of the substituent regardless of where it is located on the ring. The different molecular moieties of an odorant molecule therefore activate different types of sensors ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**, top right). Jasmine leaves and wine contain several dozens and hundreds of odorants, respectively, so their overall scent is a more complex perception (integrated in the rhinencephalon).

**Olfactory pathway** ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Axons of (ca.  $10^3$ ) same-type sensors distributed over the olfactory epithelium synapse to dendrites of their respective *mitral cells* (MC) and *bristle cells* (BC) within the glomeruli olfactorii of the olfactory bulb. The glomeruli therefore func-

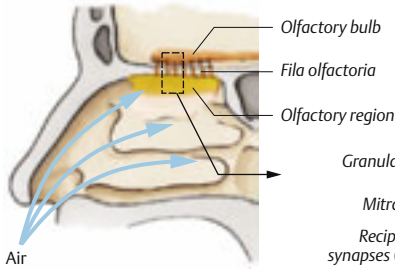
tion as convergence centers that integrate and relay signals from the same sensor type. Their respective sensor protein also determines which glomerulus newly formed sensor axons will connect to. *Periglomerular cells* and *granular cells* connect and inhibit mitral and bristle cells ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Mitral cells act on the same *reciprocal synapses* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, “+/-”) in reverse direction to activate the periglomerular cells and granular cells which, on the other hand, are inhibited by efferents from the primary olfactory cortex and contralateral anterior olfactory nucleus ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, violet tracts). These connections enable the cells to inhibit themselves or nearby cells (contrast), or they can be disinhibited by higher centers. The signals of the *axons of mitral cells* (1) reach the anterior olfactory nucleus. Its neurons cross over (in the anterior commissure) to the mitral cells of the contralateral bulb and (2) form the *olfactory tract* projecting to the *primary olfactory cortex* (piriform cortex, tuberculum olfactorium, nucleus corticalis amygdalae). The olfactory input processed there is relayed to the hypothalamus, limbic system (see also p. 332), and reticular formation; it is also relayed to the neocortex (*insula*, *orbitofrontal area*) either directly or by way of the thalamus.

**Thresholds.** It takes only  $4 \times 10^{-15}$  g of methylmercaptan (in garlic) per liter of air to trigger the vague sensation of smell (*perception* or *absolute threshold*). The odor can be properly identified when  $2 \times 10^{-13}$  g/L is present (*identification threshold*). Such thresholds are affected by air temperature and humidity; those for other substances can be  $10^{10}$  times higher. The relative intensity differential threshold  $\Delta I/I$  (0.25) is relatively high ( $\rightarrow$  p. 358). *Adaptation* to smell is sensor-dependent (desensitization) and neuronal ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).

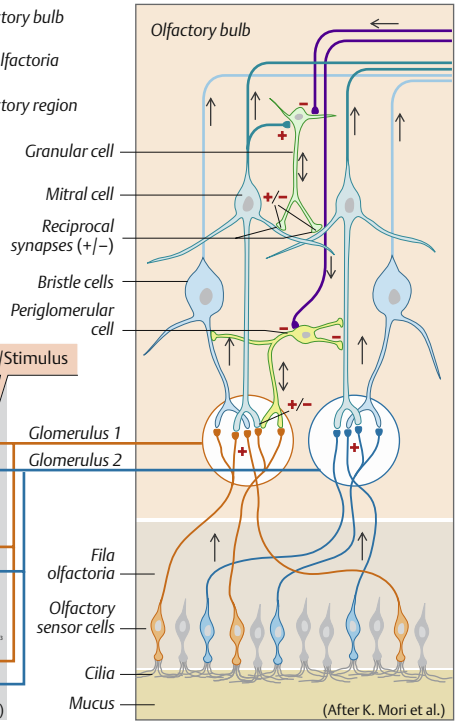
The sense of smell has various **functions**. Pleasant smells trigger the secretion of saliva and gastric juices, whereas unpleasant smells warn of potentially spoiled food. Body odor permits hygiene control (sweat, excrement), conveys social information (e.g., family, enemy;  $\rightarrow$  p. 332), and influences sexual behavior. Other aromas influence the emotional state.

**A. Olfactory pathway and olfactory sensor specificity**

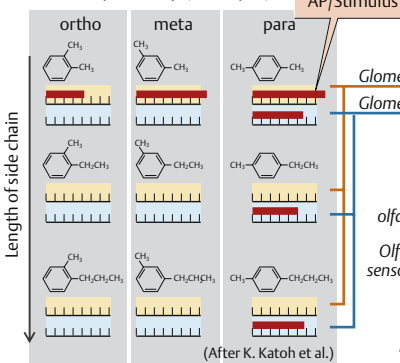
**1 Nasal cavity**



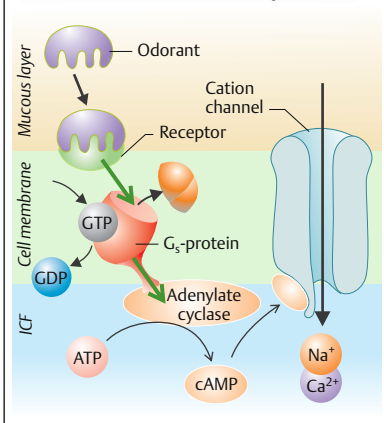
**2 Olfactory pathway**



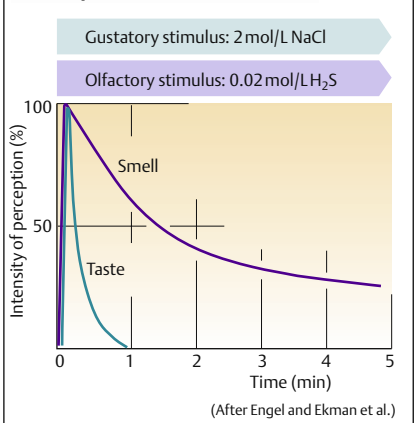
**3 Sensor specificity (example)**



**B. Transduction of olfactory stimuli**



**C. Adaptation of smell and taste**



**Anatomy.** Each of the three **semicircular canals** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) is located in a plane about at right angles to the others. The ampulla of each canal contains a ridge-like structure called the *crista ampullaris* ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). It contains *hair cells* (secondary sensory cells), the *cilia* of which ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**) project into a gelatinous membrane called the *cupula* ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Each hair cell has a long *kinocilium* and ca. 80 *stereocilia* of variable length. Their tips are connected to longer adjacent cilia via the "tip links" ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**).

**Semicircular canals.** When the cilia are in a resting state, the hair cells release a transmitter (glutamate) that triggers the firing of action potentials (AP) in the nerve fibers of the vestibular ganglion. When the head is turned, the semicircular canal automatically moves with it, but *endolymph* in the canal moves more sluggishly due to inertia. A brief *pressure difference* thus develops between the two sides of the cupula. The resultant vaulting of the cupula causes the stereocilia to bend ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) and shear against each other, thereby changing the cation conductance of the hair cell membrane. Bending of the stereocilia towards the kinocilium increases conductivity and allows the influx of  $K^+$  and  $Na^+$  along a high electrochemical gradient between the endolymph and hair cell interior (see also pp. 372). Thus, the hair cell becomes depolarized,  $Ca^{2+}$  channels open, more glutamate is released, and the AP frequency increases. The reverse occurs when the cilia bend in the other direction (away from the kinocilium). The semicircular canals **function** to detect *angular (rotational) accelerations* of the head in all planes (rotation, nodding, tilting sideways). Since normal head movements take less than 0.3 s (acceleration  $\Rightarrow$  deceleration), stimulation of the semicircular canals usually reflects the rotational *velocity*.

The pressure difference across the cupula disappears when the **body rotates for longer periods** of time. Deceleration of the rotation causes a pressure gradient in the opposite direction. When bending of the cilia increased the AP frequency at the start of rotation, it decreases during deceleration and vice versa. Abrupt cessation of the rotation leads to **vertigo** and **nystagmus** (see below).

The **sacculus** and **utricle** contain **maculae** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**, **A4**) with cilia that project into a gelatinous membrane ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**) with high density ( $\approx 3.0$ ) calcite crystals called *statoconia*, *statoliths* or

*otoliths*. They displace the membrane and thereby bend the embedded cilia ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**) due to changes of the direction of *gravity*, e.g. when the head position deviates from the perpendicular axis. The maculae respond also to other *linear (translational) accelerations or decelerations*, e.g. of a car or an elevator.

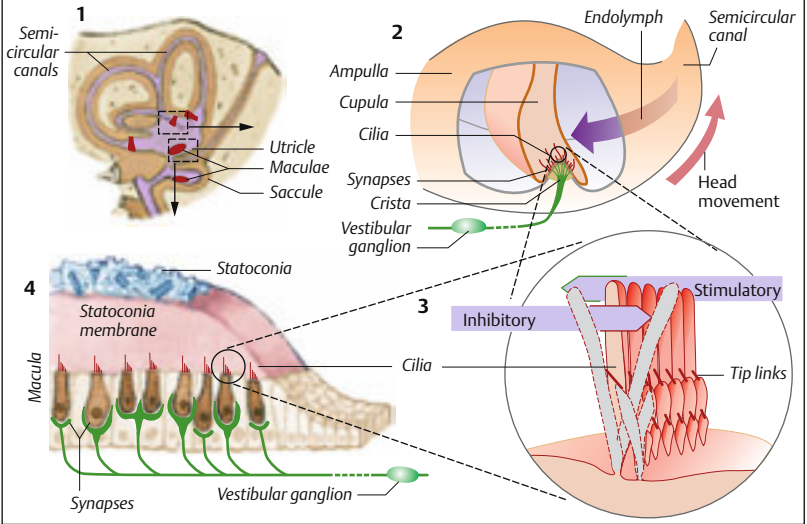
**Central connections.** The bipolar neurons of the vestibular ganglion synapse with the *vestibular nuclei* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, **B**). Important tracts extend from there to the contralateral side and to *ocular muscle nuclei*, *cerebellum* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 328), *motoneurons* of the skeletal muscles, and to the *postcentral gyrus* (conscious spatial orientation). **Vestibular reflexes** (a) maintain the balance of the body (*postural motor function*,  $\rightarrow$  p. 330) and (b) keep the visual field in focus despite changes in head and body position (*oculomotor control*,  $\rightarrow$  **B** and p. 366).

**Example ( $\rightarrow$  C):** If a support holding a test subject is tilted, the activated vestibular organ prompts the subject to extend the arm and thigh on the declining side and to bend the arm on the inclining side to maintain balance ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**). The patient with an impaired equilibrium organ fails to respond appropriately and topples over ( $\rightarrow$  **C3**).

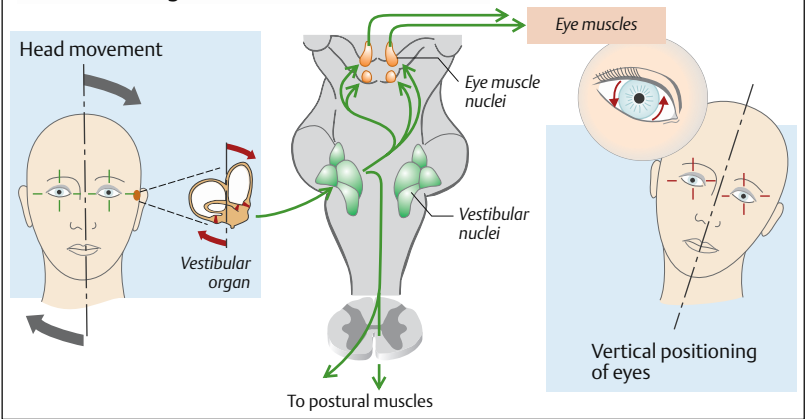
Since the vestibular organ cannot determine whether the head alone or the entire body moves (*sense of movement*) or changed position (*postural sense*), the vestibular nuclei must also receive and process visual information and that from proprioceptors in the neck muscles. Efferent fibers project bilaterally to the eye muscle nuclei, and any change in head position is immediately corrected by opposing *eye movement* ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). This **vestibulo-ocular reflex** maintains **spatial orientation**.

Vestibular organ function can be assessed by testing oculomotor control. **Secondary or postrotatory nystagmus** occurs after abrupt cessation of prolonged rotation of the head around the vertical axis (e.g., in an office chair) due to activation of the horizontal semicircular canals. It is characterized by slow horizontal movement of the eyes in the direction of rotation and rapid return movement. Rightward rotation leads to left nystagmus and vice versa ( $\rightarrow$  p. 366). Caloric stimulation of the horizontal semicircular canal by instilling cold (30 °C) or warm water (44 °C) in the auditory canal leads to *caloric nystagmus*. This method can be used for unilateral testing.

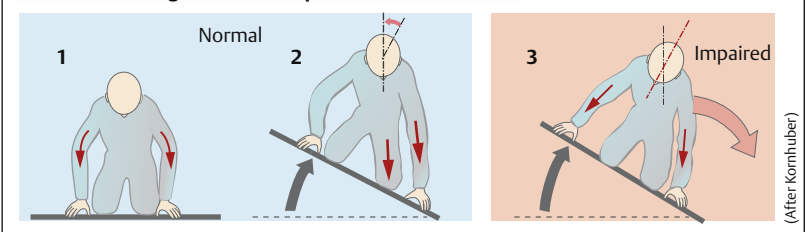
**A. Equilibrium organ (vestibular organ)**



**B. Vestibular organ: effects on oculomotor control**



**C. Vestibular organ: effects on postural motor control**



Light entering the eye must pass through the *cornea*, *aqueous humor*, *lens* and *vitreous body*, which are collectively called the **optical apparatus**, before reaching the *retina* and its light-sensitive photosensors ( $\rightarrow$  A). This produces a *reduced and inverse image* of the visual field on the retina. All parts of the apparatus must be transparent and have a stable shape and smooth surface to produce an undistorted image, which is the main purpose of **tear fluid** in case of the cornea. Tears are secreted by *lacrimal glands* located in the top outer portion of orbit and their mode of production is similar to that of saliva ( $\rightarrow$  p.238). Tears are distributed by reflex blinking and then pass through the lacrimal puncta and lacrimal canaliculi (or ducts) of the upper and lower eyelid into the lacrimal sac and finally drain into the nasal sinuses by way of the nasolacrimal duct. Tear fluid improves the optical characteristics of the cornea by smoothing uneven surfaces, washing away dust, protecting it from caustic vapors and chemicals, and protects it from drying out. Tears lubricate the eyelid movement and contain lysozyme and immunoglobulin A ( $\rightarrow$  pp.96ff. and 234), which help ward off infections. In addition, tears are a well known mode of expressing emotions.

The entry of light into the eye is regulated by the **iris** ( $\rightarrow$  A; p.359C1), which contains annular and radial smooth muscle fibers. Cholinergic activation of the sphincter muscle of pupil leads to pupil contraction (*miosis*), and adrenergic activation of the dilator muscle of pupil results in pupil dilatation (*mydriasis*).

The **bulbus** (eyeball) maintains its shape due to its tough outer coat or **sclera** ( $\rightarrow$  C) and **intraocular pressure** which is normally 10–21 mmHg above the atmospheric pressure. The drainage of **aqueous humor** must balance its production to maintain a constant ocular pressure ( $\rightarrow$  C). Aqueous humor is produced in the *ciliary process* of the posterior ocular chamber with the aid of carbonic anhydrase and active ion transport. It flows through the pupil into the anterior ocular chamber and drains into the venous system by way of the trabecular meshwork and Schlemm's canal. Aqueous humor is renewed once every hour or so.

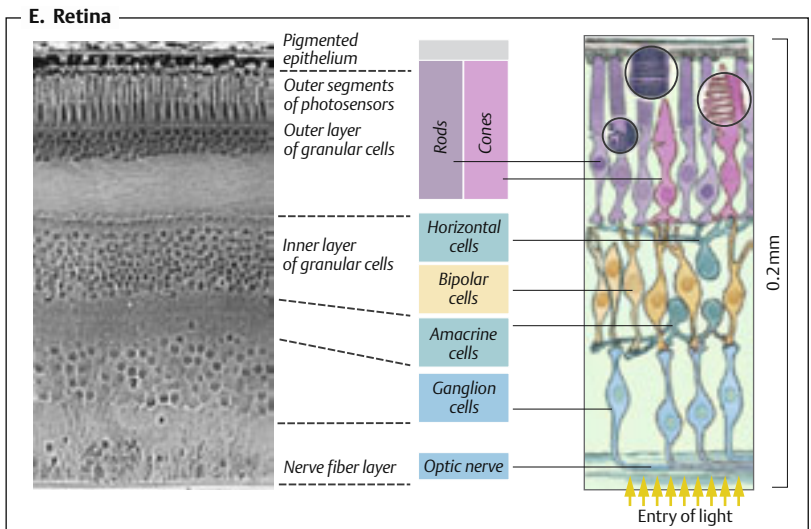
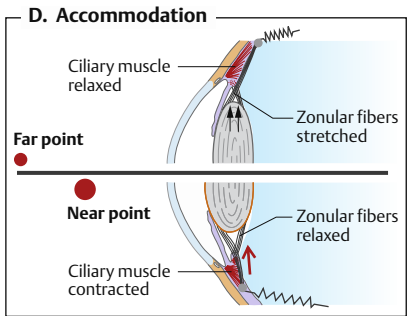
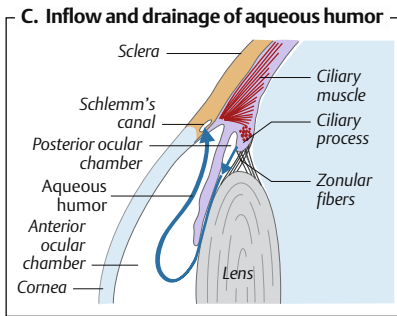
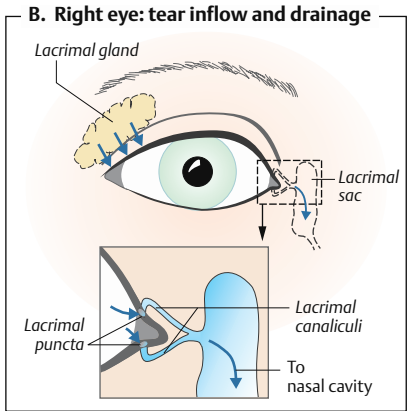
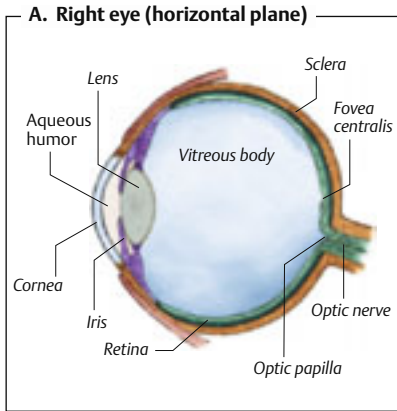
**Glaucoma.** Obstruction of humor drainage can occur due to chronic obliteration of the trabecular meshwork (open-angle glaucoma) or due to acute block of the anterior angle (angle-closure glaucoma) leading to elevated intraocular pressure, pain, retinal damage, and blindness. Drugs that decrease humor production (e.g. carbonic anhydrase inhibitors) and induce meiosis are used to treat glaucoma.

The **lens** is held in place by the *ciliary zonules* ( $\rightarrow$  C). When the eye adjusts for *far vision*, the zonules are stretched and the lens becomes flatter, especially its anterior surface ( $\rightarrow$  D, top). When looking at nearby objects (*near vision*), the zonules are relaxed due to contraction of the ciliary muscle, and the lens re-assumes its original shape due to its elasticity ( $\rightarrow$  D, bottom, and p.352).

The **retina** lines the interior surface of the bulbus except the anterior surface and the site where the *optical nerve* ( $\rightarrow$  A) exits the bulbus via the *optic papilla* ( $\rightarrow$  A). The *fovea centralis* ( $\rightarrow$  A) forms a slight depression across from the pupillary opening. The retina consists of several layers, named from inside out as follows ( $\rightarrow$  E): pigmented epithelium, photosensors (rods and cones), Cajal's horizontal cells, bipolar cells, amacrine cells, and ganglion cells. The central processes of the ganglion cells ( $n \approx 10^6$ ) exit the bulbus as the optical nerve (retinal circuitry;  $\rightarrow$  p.361ff.).

**Photosensors.** Retinal rods and cones have a light-sensitive *outer segment*, which is connected to an inner segment by a thin connecting part ( $\rightarrow$  p.355C1). The inner segment contains the normal cell organelles and establishes synaptic contact with the neighboring cells. The outer segment of the rod cells contains ca. 800 membranous disks, and the plasma membrane of the outer segment of the cones is folded. *Visual pigments* are stored in these disks and folds ( $\rightarrow$  p.354).

The **outer segment** is continuously **regenerated**; the old membranous disks at the tip of the cell are shed and replaced by new disks from the inner segment. The phagocytic cells of the pigmented epithelium engulf the disks shed by the rods in the morning, and those shed by the cones in the evening. Some ganglion cells contain a light-sensitive pigment ( $\rightarrow$  p.336).



**Physics.** The production of an **optical image** is based on the refraction of light rays crossing a spherical interface between air and another medium. Such a **simple optical system** illustrated in plate **A** has an **anterior focal point** ( $F_a$ ) in air, a **posterior focal point** ( $F_p$ ), a **principal point** ( $P$ ), and a **nodal point** ( $N$ ). Light rays from a distant point ( $\infty$ ) can be regarded as parallel. If they enter the system parallel to its **optical axis**, they will converge at  $F_p$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**, red dot). If they enter at an angle to the axis, then they will form an image beside  $F_p$  but in the same **focal plane** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**, violet dot). Light rays from a nearby point do not enter the system in parallel and form an image **behind** the focal plane ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, green and brown dots).

The **optical apparatus** of the eye consists of multiple interfaces and media, and is therefore a **complex optical system**. It can, however, be treated as a **simple optical system**. Light rays from a focused object ( $O$ ) pass through  $N$  and diverge at angle  $\alpha$  until they reach the retina and form an image ( $I$ ) there ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**).

Two points separated by a distance of 1.5 mm and located 5 m away from the eye ( $\tan \alpha = 1.5/5000$ ;  $\alpha = 0.0175$  degrees  $\approx 1'$ ) will therefore be brought into focus 5  $\mu$ m apart on the retina. In a person with normal vision ( $\rightarrow$  p. 356), these two points can be distinguished as separate because 5  $\mu$ m corresponds to the diameter of three cones in the fovea (two are stimulated, the one in between is not).

**Accommodation.** When the eyes are adjusted for **far vision**, parallel light rays from a distant point meet at  $F_p$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**, red dot). Since the retina is also located at  $F_p$ , the distant point is clearly imaged there. The eye adjusted for far vision will not form a clear image of a nearby point (the light rays meet behind the retina,  $\rightarrow$  **B1**, green dot) until the eye has adjusted for **near vision**. In other words, the curvature of the lens (and its refractive power) increases and the image of the nearby point moves to the retinal plane ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, green dot). Now, the distant point cannot not be sharply imaged since  $F_p$  does not lie in the retinal plane any more ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**).

The **refractive power** of the eye is the reciprocal of the anterior **focal length** in meters, and is measured in **diopters** (**dpt**). In **accommodation for far vision**, focal length = anterior focal point ( $F_a$ )–principal point ( $P$ ) = 0.017 m ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**). Thus, the corresponding refractive power is  $1/0.017 = 58.8$  dpt, which is mainly attributable to refraction at the air–cornea interface (43

dpt). In maximum **accommodation for near vision** in a young person with normal vision (emmetropia), the refractive power increases by around 10–14 dpt. This increase is called **range of accommodation** and is calculated as  $1/\text{near point} - 1/\text{far point}$  ( $\text{m}^{-1} = \text{dpt}$ ). The **near point** is the closest distance to which the eye can accommodate; that of a young person with normal vision is 0.07–0.1 m. The **far point** is infinity ( $\infty$ ) in subjects with normal vision. The range of accommodation to a near point of 0.1 m is therefore 10 dpt since  $1/\infty = 0$ .

The refractive power around the edge of the optical apparatus is higher than near the optical axis. This **spherical aberration** can be minimized by narrowing the pupils.

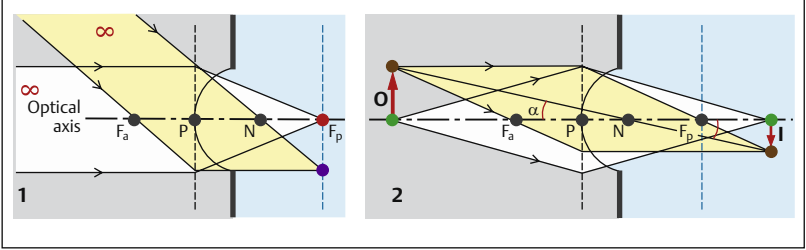
The range of accommodation decreases as we grow older (to 1–3.5 dpt in 50-year-olds) due to the loss of elasticity of the lens. This visual impairment of aging, called **presbyopia** ( $\rightarrow$  **C1–3**), normally does not affect far vision, but convex lenses are generally required for near vision, e.g., reading.

**Cataract** causes opacity of the lens of one or both eyes. When surgically treated, convex lenses (glasses or artificial intraocular lenses) of at least +15 dpt must be used to correct the vision.

In **myopia** (near-sightedness), rays of light entering the eye parallel to the optical axis are brought to focus in front of the retina because the eyeball is too long ( $\rightarrow$  **C4**). Distant objects are therefore seen as blurred because the far point is displaced towards the eyes ( $\rightarrow$  **C5**). Myopia is corrected by **concave lenses** (negative dpt) that disperse the parallel light rays to the corresponding extent ( $\rightarrow$  **C6**). *Example:* When the far point = 0.5 m, a lens of  $[-1/0.5] = [-2 \text{ dpt}]$  will be required for correction ( $\rightarrow$  **C7**). In **hyperopia** (far-sightedness), on the other hand, the eyeball is too short. Since the accommodation mechanisms for near vision must then be already used to focus distant objects ( $\rightarrow$  **C8**), the range of accommodation no longer suffices to clearly focus nearby objects ( $\rightarrow$  **C9**). Hyperopia is corrected by **convex lenses** (+ dpt) ( $\rightarrow$  **C10–11**).

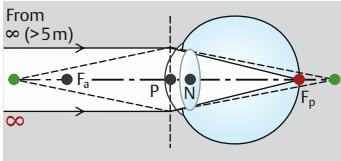
**Astigmatism.** In regular astigmatism, the corneal surface is more curved in one plane (usually the vertical: astigmatism with the rule) than the other, creating a difference in refraction between the two planes. A point source of light is therefore seen as a line or oval. Regular astigmatism is corrected by **cylindrical lenses**. Irregular astigmatism (caused by scars, etc.) can be corrected by contact lenses.

**A. Imaging of (1) far and (2) near points**

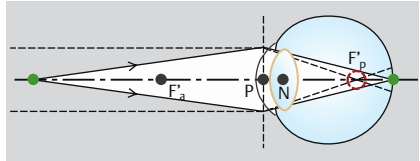


**B. Eye: Accommodation for (1) far vision and (2) near vision**

1 Lens adjusted for far vision



2 Lens adjusted for near vision



**C. Presbyopia, myopia and hyperopia**

	Distant object (at $\infty$ )	Nearby object
Presbyopia	1: Distant object at $\infty$ focuses in front of the retina. Correction: Does not require glasses.	2: Nearby object focuses in front of the retina. 3: Correction with a convex lens focuses the nearby object on the retina.
	4: Distant object at $\infty$ focuses behind the retina.	5: Nearby object focuses behind the retina. 6: Correction with a concave lens focuses the nearby object on the retina.
Myopia	8: Distant object at $\infty$ focuses in front of the retina.	9: Nearby object focuses in front of the retina.
	10: Correction with a concave lens focuses the distant object on the retina.	11: Correction with a convex lens focuses the nearby object on the retina.
Hyperopia	8: Distant object at $\infty$ focuses behind the retina.	9: Nearby object focuses behind the retina.
	10: Correction with a convex lens focuses the distant object on the retina.	11: Correction with a concave lens focuses the nearby object on the retina.

**Visual acuity** is an important measure of eye function. Under *well-lighted conditions*, the normal eye should be able to distinguish two points as separate when the light rays emitted by the point objects converge at an angle ( $\alpha$ ) of 1 min (1/60 degree) ( $\rightarrow$  **A** and p. 352). Visual acuity is calculated as  $1/\alpha$  ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ), and is 1/1 in subjects with normal vision.

**Visual acuity testing** is generally performed using charts with letters or other optotypes (e.g., Landolt rings) of various sizes used to simulate different distances to the test subject. The letters or rings are usually displayed at a distance of 5 m ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Visual acuity is normal (1/1) if the patient recognizes letters or ring openings seen at an angle of 1 min from a distance of 5 m. *Example:* It should be possible to identify the direction of the opening of the middle ring from a distance of 5 m and that of the left ring from a distance of 8.5 m ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). If only the opening of the left ring can be localized from the test distance of 5 m, the visual acuity is  $5/8.5 = 0.59$ .

**Photosensors** or **photoreceptors**. The light-sensitive sensors of the eye consist of approximately  $6 \cdot 10^6$  **rods** and 20 times as many **cones** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 351 E) distributed at variable densities throughout the retina ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**). (Certain ganglion cells also contain a light-sensitive pigment;  $\rightarrow$  p. 336). The fovea centralis is exclusively filled with cones, and their density rapidly decreases towards the periphery. Rods predominate 20–30 degrees away from the fovea centralis. Approaching the periphery of the retina, the density of the rods decreases continuously from  $1.5 \times 10^5/\text{mm}^2$  (maximum) to about one-third this value. No photosensors are present on the *optic disk*, which is therefore referred to as the **blind spot** in the visual field.

Clear visualization of an object in daylight requires that the gaze be fixed on it, i.e., that an image of the object is produced in the *fovea centralis*. Sudden motion in the periphery of the visual field triggers a **reflex saccade** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 366), which shifts the image of the object into the fovea centralis. Thereby, the retinal area with the highest visual acuity is selected ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, yellow peak), which lies 5 degrees temporal to the optical axis. Visual acuity decreases rapidly when moving outward from the fovea ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, yellow field), reflecting the decreasing density of cone distribution ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**, red curve). In a *dark-adapted eye*, on the other hand, the sensitivity of the retina ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, blue

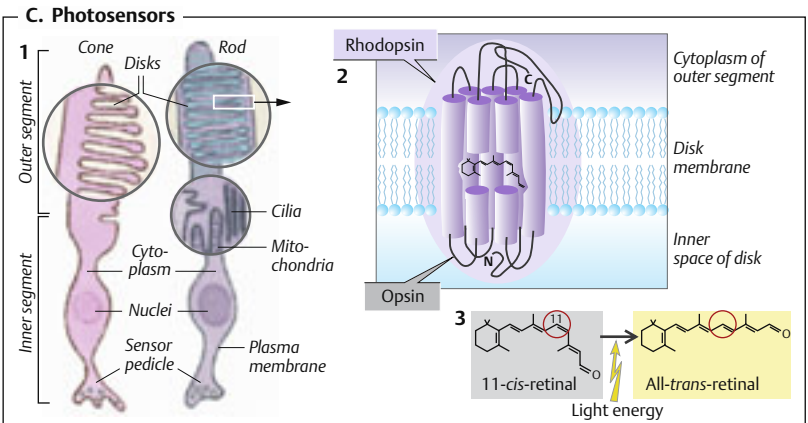
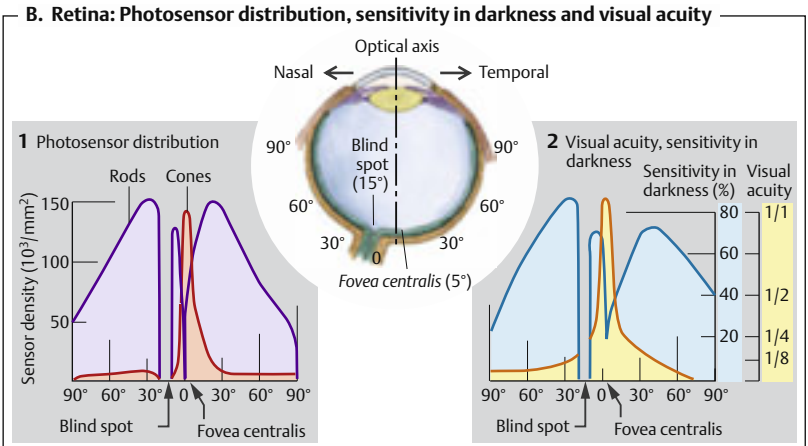
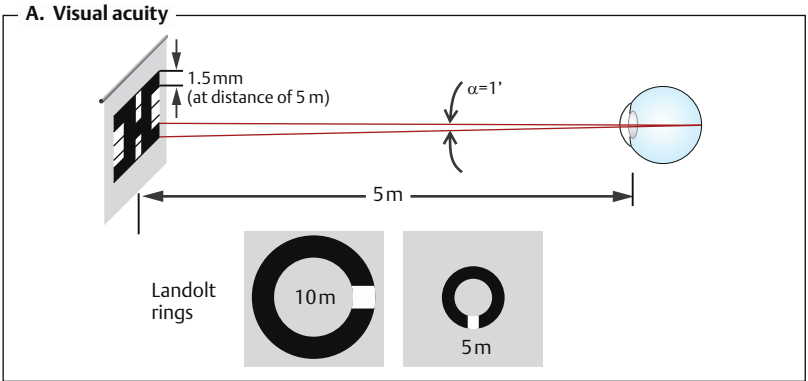
curve) is completely dependent on the rod distribution ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**, purple curve). The color-sensitive cones are therefore used for visual perception in daylight or good lighting (*day vision*, *photopic vision*), while the black and white-sensitive cones are used to visualize objects in darkness (*dim-light vision*, *night vision*, *scotopic vision*). The high light sensitivity in night vision is associated with a high loss of visual acuity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 360).

### Photosensor Function

Light-absorbing *visual pigments* and a variety of *enzymes* and *transmitters* in retinal rods and cones ( $\rightarrow$  **C1**) mediate the conversion of light stimuli into electrical stimuli; this is called **photoelectric transduction**. The membranous disks of the retinal rods contain *rhodopsin* ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**), a photosensitive purple-red chromoprotein (*visual purple*). Rhodopsin consists of the integral membrane protein *opsin* and the aldehyde *11-cis-retinal*. The latter is bound to a lysine residue of opsin which is embedded in this protein; it is stably kept in place by weak interactions with two other amino acid residues. *Photoc stimuli* trigger a primary *photochemical reaction* in rhodopsin (duration,  $2 \cdot 10^{-14}$  s) in which 11-cis-retinal is converted to all-trans-retinal ( $\rightarrow$  **C3**). Even without continued photic stimulation, the reaction yields bathorhodopsin, the intermediates lumirhodopsin and metarhodopsin I, and finally metarhodopsin II within roughly  $10^{-3}$  s ( $\rightarrow$  **D1**).

*Metarhodopsin II* (MR-II) reacts with a  $G_s$ -protein ( $\rightarrow$  p. 276) called *transducin* ( $G_T$ -protein), which breaks down into  $\alpha_s$  and  $\beta\gamma$  subunits once GDP has been replaced by GTP ( $\rightarrow$  **D1**). Activated  $\alpha_s$ -GTP now binds the inhibitory subunit of cGMP phosphodiesterase ( $I_{PDE}$ ) ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**). The consequently disinhibited phosphodiesterase (PDE) then lowers the cytosolic concentration of cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP). The activation of a single retinal rhodopsin molecule by a quantum of light can induce the hydrolysis of up to  $10^6$  cGMP molecules per second. The reaction cascade therefore has tremendous amplifying power.

In **darkness** ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, left), cGMP is bound to cation channels ( $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) in the outer segment of the photosensor, thereby keeping them open.  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can therefore enter



▶ the cell and depolarize it to about  $-40$  mV ( $\rightarrow$  D3, D4). The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entering the outer segment is immediately transported out of the cell by a  $3 \text{ Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36), so the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  remains constant at ca.  $350\text{--}500$  nmol/L in darkness ( $\rightarrow$  D6). If the cytosolic cGMP concentration decreases in response to a **light stimulus** ( $\rightarrow$  D2), cGMP dissociates from the cation channels, allowing them to close. The photosensor then hyperpolarizes to ca.  $-70$  mV (*sensor potential*:  $\rightarrow$  D, right). This *inhibits* the release of *glutamate* (transmitter) at the sensor pedicle ( $\rightarrow$  D5), which subsequently causes changes in the membrane potential in downstream retinal neurons ( $\rightarrow$  p. 362).

#### Deactivation of Photic Reactions and Regeneration Cycles

◆ **Rhodopsin** ( $\rightarrow$  E2). *Rhodopsin kinase* (RK) competes with transducin for binding sites on *metarhodopsin II* (MR-II); the concentration of transducin is 100 times higher ( $\rightarrow$  E2, right). Binding of RK to MR-II leads to phosphorylation of MR-II. As a result, its affinity to transducin decreases while its affinity to another protein, *arrestin*, rises. Arrestin blocks the binding of further transducin molecules to MR-II. All-*trans*-retinal detaches from opsin, which is subsequently dephosphorylated and re-loaded with 11-*cis*-retinal.

◆ **Vitamin A**. In the photosensor, all-*trans*-retinal ( $\rightarrow$  E1) is reduced to all-*trans*-retinol (= vitamin A), which is transported into the pigmented epithelium (PE). When light is present, it is esterified and with membrane-bound **RPE65** (mRPE65) and an isomerohydrolase (IMH) ultimately restored to 11-*cis*-retinal which binds to opsin again in the photosensor ( $\rightarrow$  E2). In darkness, Vitamin A binds to the soluble protein RPE65 (sRPE65) in the PE and stored until required when light returns. Lecithin retinol acyltransferase (LRAT) is responsible for the sRPE65 to mRPE65 conversion.

A chronic deficiency of vitamin A<sub>1</sub> leads to **night blindness** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 358). RPE65 mutations cause certain forms of retinitis pigmentosa, e.g., congenital blindness.

◆ **Transducin** ( $\rightarrow$  E3). Since the GTPase activity of  $\alpha_s$ -GTP breaks down GTP into GDP + P<sub>i</sub>, the molecule deactivates itself. The  $\alpha_s$ -GTP molecule and  $\beta\gamma$  subunit then rejoin to form transducin. GAP (GTPase-activating protein) accelerates the regeneration of transducin. *Phosducin*, another protein, is phosphorylated in the dark ( $\rightarrow$  D6) and dephosphorylated in light ( $\rightarrow$  D7). The latter form binds to the  $\beta\gamma$  subunit ( $\rightarrow$  D7, E3), thereby blocking the regeneration of transducin. This plays a role in light adaptation (see below).

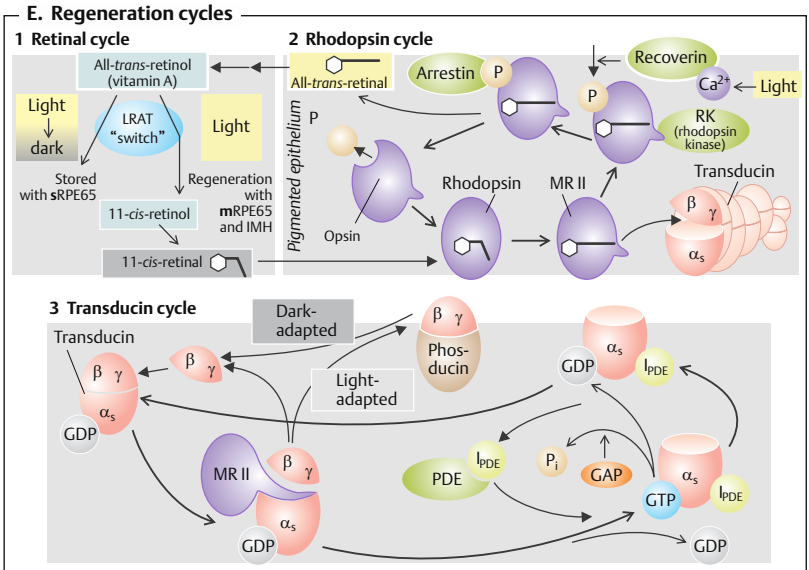
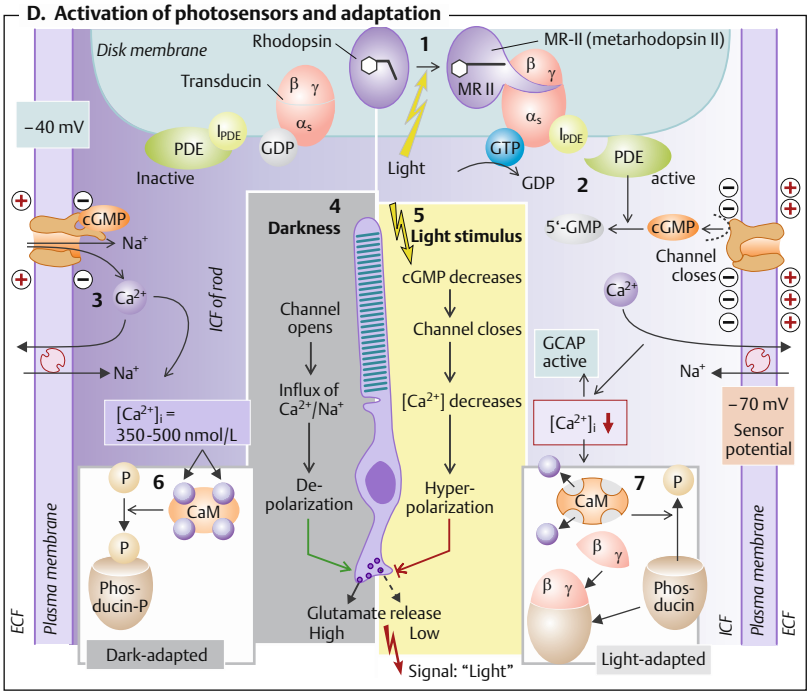
◆ **Phosphodiesterase (PDE)**. In the course of transducin regeneration, the inhibitory subunit of cGMP phosphodiesterase (I<sub>PDE</sub>) is released again and PDE is thus inactivated.

◆ **cGMP**. Since the  $3 \text{ Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger still functions even after photostimulation-induced closure of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  starts to decrease. When a threshold of ca.  $100$  nmol/L is reached, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -binding protein GCAP (guanylyl cyclase-activating protein) loses its 4  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions and stimulates guanylyl cyclase, thereby accelerating cGMP synthesis. Thus, the cGMP concentration rises, the cation channels re-open, and the sensor is ready to receive a new light stimulus. This  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  cycle therefore mediates a negative feedback loop for cGMP production.

#### $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ Ions and Adaptation (see also p. 358)

In the dark, the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  is high, and calmodulin-bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36) stimulates the phosphorylation of phosducin with the aid of cAMP and phosphokinase A ( $\rightarrow$  D6). In light, the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  is low; phosducin is dephosphorylated and rapid regeneration of transducin is not possible ( $\rightarrow$  D7, E3). Moreover,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  accelerates the phosphorylation of MR-II in light with the aid of another  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding protein, *recoverin* ( $\rightarrow$  E2).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is therefore essential for the **adaptation of photosensors** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 358).

Although they contain similar enzymes and transmitters, the photosensitivity of the **cones** is about 100 times less than that of the rods. Thus, the cones are unable to detect a single quantum of light, possibly because photic reactions in the cones are deactivated too quickly.



The eye is able to perceive a wide range of light intensities, from the extremely low intensity of a small star to the extremely strong intensity of the sun glaring on a glacier. The ability of the eye to process such a wide range of luminance ( $1 : 10^{11}$ ) by adjusting to the prevailing light intensity is called **adaptation**. When going from normal daylight into a darkened room, the room will first appear black because its luminance value (measured in  $\text{cd} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ) is lower than the current ocular threshold. As the stimulus threshold decreases over the next few minutes, the furniture in the room gradually becomes identifiable. A longer period of adaptation is required to visualize stars. The maximum level of adaptation is reached in about 30 min ( $\rightarrow$  A). The minimum light intensity that can just be detected after maximum dark adaptation is the **absolute visual threshold**, which is defined as 1 in A and B.

The **retinal adaptation curve** exhibits a (Kohlauch) break at roughly  $2000 \times$  the absolute threshold ( $\rightarrow$  A, blue curve). This corresponds to the point where the excitation threshold of the cones is reached (threshold for day vision). The remainder of the curve is governed by the somewhat slower adaptation of the rods ( $\rightarrow$  A, violet curve). The isolated rod adaptation curve can be recorded in patients with complete color blindness (*rod monochromatism*), and the isolated cone adaptation curve can be observed in night blindness (hemeralopia,  $\rightarrow$  p. 356).

**Differential threshold** (or difference limen). The ability of the eye to distinguish the difference between two similar photic stimuli is an important prerequisite for proper eyesight. At the lowest limit of discriminative sensibility for two light intensities I and I', the **absolute differential threshold** ( $\Delta I$ ) is defined as I minus I'. The **relative differential threshold** is calculated as  $\Delta I/I$ , and remains relatively constant in the median stimulus range (*Weber's rule*). Under optimal lighting conditions (approx.  $10^9$  times the absolute threshold;  $\rightarrow$  B),  $\Delta I/I$  is very small (0.01). The relative differential threshold rises greatly in dark adaptation, but also rises in response to extremely bright light. Sunglasses decrease the differential threshold in the latter case.

The **mechanisms for adaptation** of the eye are as follows ( $\rightarrow$  C):

◆ **Pupil reflex** ( $\rightarrow$  C1). Through reflexive responses to light exposure of the retina ( $\rightarrow$  p. 365), the pupils can adjust the quantity of light entering the retina by a factor of 16.

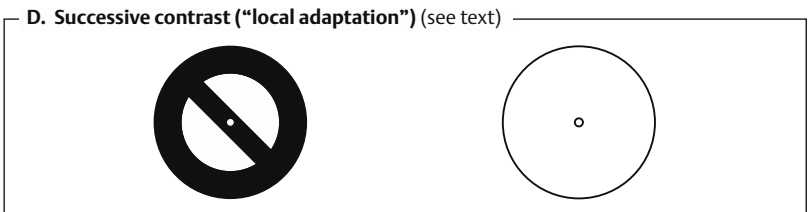
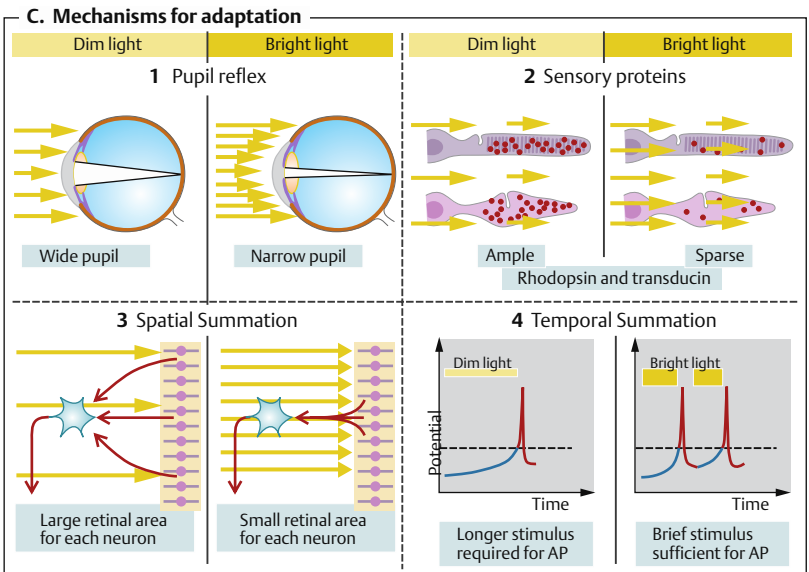
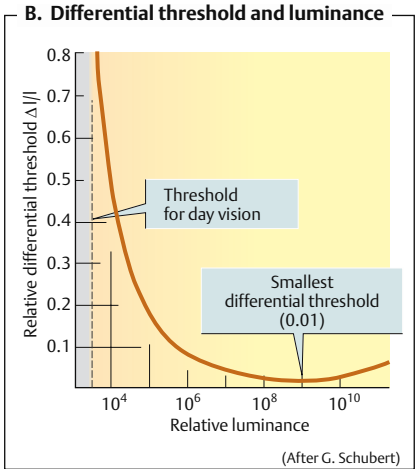
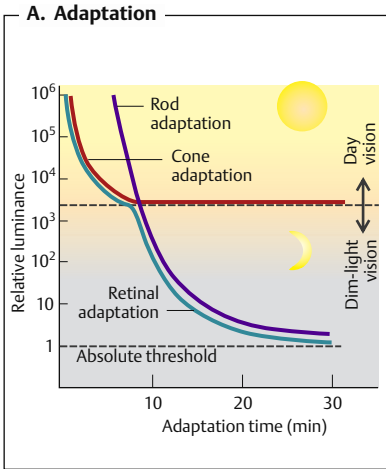
Thus, the pupils are larger in darkness than in daylight. The main function of the pupil reflex is to ensure rapid adaptation to sudden changes in light intensity.

◆ **Chemical stimuli** ( $\rightarrow$  C2) help to adjust the sensitivity of photosensors to the prevailing light conditions. Large quantities of light lead to a prolonged decrease in the receptor's *cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration*. This in conjunction with the activity of *recoverin* and *phosducin* reduces the availability of rhodopsin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354ff.). It therefore decreases the probability that a rhodopsin molecule will be struck by an incoming light ray (photon) or that a metarhodopsin II molecule will come in contact with a transducin molecule. When the light intensity is low, large concentrations of rhodopsin and transducin are available and the photosensors become very light-sensitive.

◆ **Spatial summation** ( $\rightarrow$  C3). Variation of retinal surface area (number of photosensors) exciting an optic nerve fiber causes a form of spatial summation that increases with darkness and decreases with brightness ( $\rightarrow$  p. 360).

◆ **Temporal summation** ( $\rightarrow$  C4). Brief sub-threshold stimuli can be raised above threshold by increasing the duration of stimulation (by staring at an object) long enough to trigger an action potential (AP). Thereby, the product of stimulus intensity times stimulus duration remains constant.

**Successive contrast** occurs due to "local adaptation." When a subject stares at the center of the black-and-white pattern ( $\rightarrow$  D) for about 20 s and suddenly shifts the focus to the white circle, the previously dark areas appear to be brighter than the surroundings due to sensitization of the corresponding areas of the retina.



Light stimuli *hyperpolarize* the **sensor potential** of photosensors ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, left) from ca.  $-40$  mV to ca.  $-70$  mV (maximum) due to a decrease in conductance of the membrane of the outer sensor segment to  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354ff.). The potential rises and falls much more sharply in the cones than in the rods. As in other sensory cells, the magnitude of the sensor potential is proportional to the logarithm of stimulus intensity divided by threshold-intensity (*Fechner's law*). Hyperpolarization decreases glutamate release from the receptor. When this signal is relayed within the retina, a distinction is made between "direct" **signal flow** for photopic vision and "lateral" signal flow for scotopic vision (see below). Action potentials (APs) can only be generated in ganglion cells ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, right), but stimulus-dependent amplitude changes of the potentials occur in the other retinal neurons ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, center). These are conducted electrotonically across the short spaces in the retina ( $\rightarrow$  p. 48ff.).

**Direct signal flow** from cones to bipolar cells is conducted via ON or OFF bipolar cells. Photostimulation leads to depolarization of ON bipolar cells (signal inversion) and activation of their respective ON ganglion cells ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). OFF bipolar cells, on the other hand, are hyperpolarized by photostimulation, which has an inhibitory effect on their OFF ganglion cells. "**Lateral**" signal flow can occur via the following pathway: rod  $\Rightarrow$  rod-bipolar cell  $\Rightarrow$  rod-amacrine cell  $\Rightarrow$  ON or OFF bipolar cell  $\Rightarrow$  ON or OFF ganglion cell. Both rod-bipolar cells and rod-amacrine cells are depolarized in response to light. Rod-amacrine cells inhibit OFF bipolar cells via a chemical synapse and stimulate ON bipolar cells via an electrical synapse ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50).

A light stimulus triggers the firing of an AP in ON ganglion cells ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, right). The AP frequency increases with the sensor potential amplitude. The APs of ON ganglion cells can be measured using microelectrodes. This data can be used to identify the retinal region in which the stimulatory and inhibitory effects on AP frequency originate. This region is called the **receptive field (RF)** of the ganglion cell. Retinal ganglion cells have concentric RFs comprising a central zone and a ringlike peripheral zone distinguishable during light adaptation ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Photic stimulation of the center increases the AP frequency of ON ganglion cells ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**). Stimulation of the periphery, on the other

hand, leads to a decrease in AP frequency, but excitation occurs when the light source is switched off ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**). This type of RF is referred to as an **ON field** (central field ON). The RF of OFF ganglion cells exhibits the reverse response and is referred to as an **OFF field** (central field OFF). *Horizontal cells* are responsible for the functional organization of the RFs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 350). They invert the impulses from photosensors in the periphery of the RF and transmit them to the sensors of the center. The opposing central and peripheral responses lead to a **stimulus contrast**. At a light-dark interface, for example, the dark side appears darker and the light side brighter. If the entire RF is exposed to light, the impulses from the center usually predominate.

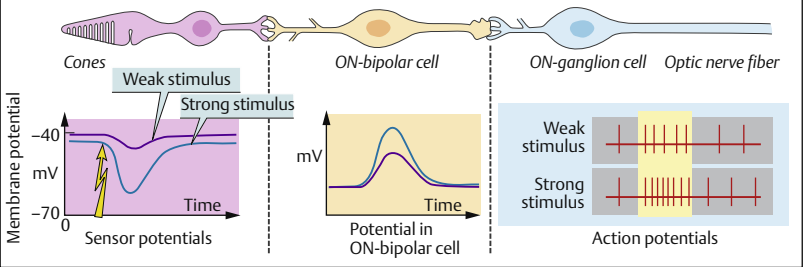
**Simultaneous contrast.** A solid gray circle appears darker in light surroundings than in dark surroundings ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, left). When a subject focuses on a black-and-white grid ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, right), the white grid lines appear to be darker at the cross-sections, black grid lines appear lighter because of reduced contrast in these areas. This effect can be attributed to a variable sum of stimuli within the RFs ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, center).

During **dark adaptation**, the center of the RFs increases in size at the expense of the periphery, which ultimately disappears. This leads to an increase in spatial summation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 359 C3), but to a simultaneous decrease in stimulus contrast and thus to a lower visual acuity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 355 B2).

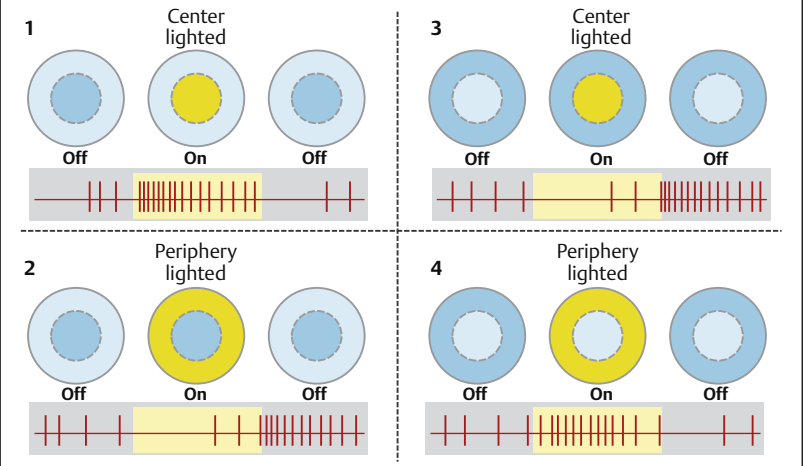
**Color opponency.** Red and green light (or blue and yellow light) have opposing effects in the RFs of  $\beta$  ganglion cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 364) and more centrally located cells of the optic tract ( $\rightarrow$  p. 363 E). These effects are explained by **Hering's opponent colors theory** and ensure contrast (increase color saturation;  $\rightarrow$  p. 362) in color vision. When a subject focuses on a color test pattern ( $\rightarrow$  p. 365 C) for about 30 min and then shifts the gaze to a neutral background, the complementary colors will be seen (*color successive contrast*).

RFs of **higher centers** of the optic tract (V1, V2;  $\rightarrow$  p. 366) can also be identified, but their characteristics change. Shape (striate or angular), length, axial direction and direction of movement of the photic stimuli play important roles.

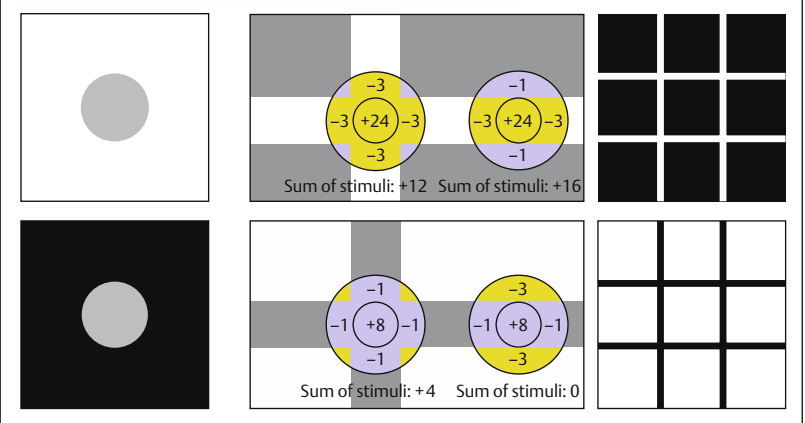
**A. Potentials of photosensor, ON-bipolar and ON-ganglion cells**



**B. Receptive fields of ON-ganglion cells (1, 2) and OFF-ganglion cells (3, 4)**



**C. Receptive field-related contrast (ON-ganglion cells)**



White light passing through a prism is split into a color spectrum ranging from red to violet (colors of the rainbow). *Red* is perceived at a wavelength ( $\lambda$ ) of 650–700 nm, and violet at around 400–420 nm ( $\rightarrow$  A). The eye is sensitive to waves in this  $\lambda$  range. Perception of white light does not require the presence of all colors of the visible spectrum. It is sufficient to have the additive effects (mixing) of only two **complementary colors**, e.g., orange (612 nm) and blue light (490 nm).

A **color triangle** ( $\rightarrow$  B) or similar test panel can be used to illustrate this effect. The two upper limbs of the triangle show the visible spectrum, and a white dot is located inside the triangle. All straight lines passing through this dot intersect the upper limbs of the triangle at two complementary wavelengths (e.g., 612 and 490 nm). **Additive color mixing** ( $\rightarrow$  C): The color yellow is obtained by mixing roughly equal parts of red and green light. Orange is produced by using a higher red fraction, and yellowish green is obtained with a higher green fraction. These colors lie between red and green on the limbs of the color triangle. Similar rules apply when mixing green and violet ( $\rightarrow$  B and C). The combination of red with violet yields a shade of purple not contained in the spectrum ( $\rightarrow$  B). This means that all colors, including white, can be produced by varying the proportions of three colors—e.g. red (700 nm), green (546 nm) and blue (435 nm) because every possible pair of complementary colors can be obtained by mixing these three colors of the spectrum.

**Subtractive color mixing** is based on the opposite principle. This technique is applied when color paints and camera filters are used. Yellow paints or filters absorb (“subtract”) the blue fraction of white light, leaving the complementary color yellow.

**Light absorption.** Photosensors must be able to absorb light to be photosensitive. **Rods** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354) contain **rhodopsin**, which is responsible for (achromatic) night vision. Rhodopsin absorbs light at wavelengths of ca. 400–600 nm; the maximum absorption value ( $\lambda_{\max}$ ) is 500 nm ( $\rightarrow$  E1). Relatively speaking, greenish blue light therefore appears brightest and red appears darkest at night. Wearing red glasses in daylight therefore leaves the rods adapted for darkness. Three types of color-sensitive **cones** are responsible for (chromatic) day vision ( $\rightarrow$  E1): (1) *S cones*, which absorb short-wave (S) blue-violet light ( $\lambda_{\max}$  = 420 nm); (2) *M cones*, which absorb medium-wave (M) blue-green to yellow light ( $\lambda_{\max}$  =

535 nm), and (3) *L cones*, which absorb long-wave (L) yellow to red light ( $\lambda_{\max}$  = 565 nm). (The physiological sensitivity curves shown in E1 make allowances for light absorbed by the lens.) **Ultraviolet rays** ( $\lambda_{\max}$  < 400 nm) and **infrared rays** ( $\lambda_{\max}$  > 700 nm) are not visible.

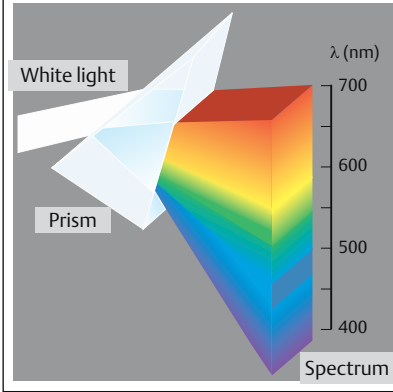
Sensory information relayed by the three types of cones (peripheral application of the *trichromatic theory of color vision*) and transduction of these visual impulses to *brightness* and *opponent color channels* ( $\rightarrow$  E2 and p. 360) in the retina and lateral geniculate body (LGB) enables the visual cortex ( $\rightarrow$  p. 364) to recognize different **types of colors**. The human eye can distinguish 200 shades of color and different degrees of color saturation. The absolute *differential threshold for color vision* is 1–2 nm ( $\rightarrow$  D, “normal”).

**Color perception** is more complex. White paper, for example, will look white in white light (sunlight), yellow light (light bulb) and red light. We also do not perceive the different shades of color in a house that is partially illuminated by sunlight and partially in the shade. This **color constancy** is the result of retinal and central processing of the retinal signal.

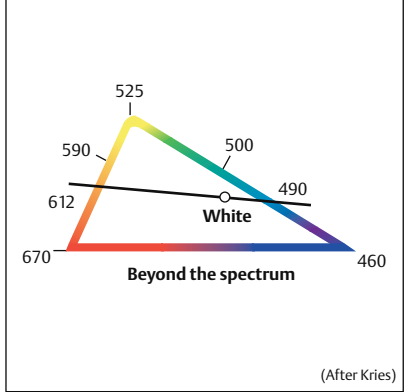
There is a similar **constancy of size and shape**: Although someone standing 200 meters away makes a much smaller image on the retina than at 2 meters’ distance, we still recognize him or her as a person of normal height, and although a square table may appear rhomboid in shape when viewed from the side, we can still tell that it is square.

**Color blindness** occurs in 9% of all men and in 0.5% of women. The ability to distinguish certain colors is impaired or absent in these individuals, i.e., they have a *high differential threshold for color* ( $\rightarrow$  D). Various types of color blindness are distinguished: *protanopia* (red blindness), *deutanopia* (green blindness), and *tritanopia* (blue-violet blindness). Protanomaly, deutanomaly and tritanomaly are characterized by decreased sensitivity of the cones to colored, green and blue, respectively. Color vision is tested using *color perception charts* or an *anomaloscope*. With the latter, the subject has to mix two color beams (e.g., red and green) with adjustable intensities until their additive mixture matches a specific shade of color (e.g. yellow,  $\rightarrow$  C) presented for comparison. A protanomalous subject needs a too high red intensity, a deuteranomalous person a too high green intensity. Protanopes perceive all colors with wavelengths over approx. 520 nm as yellow.

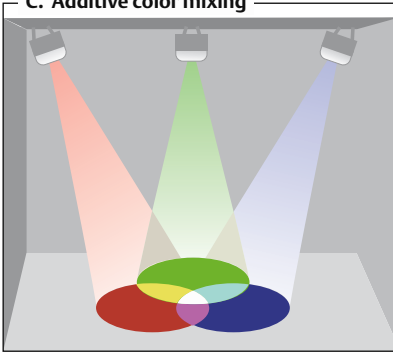
**A. Composition of sunlight**



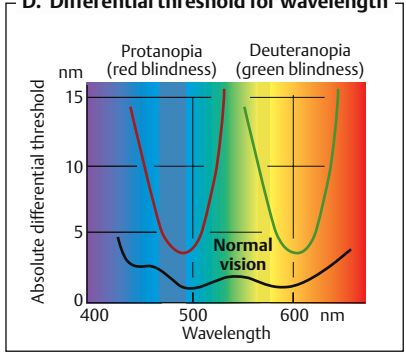
**B. Color triangle**



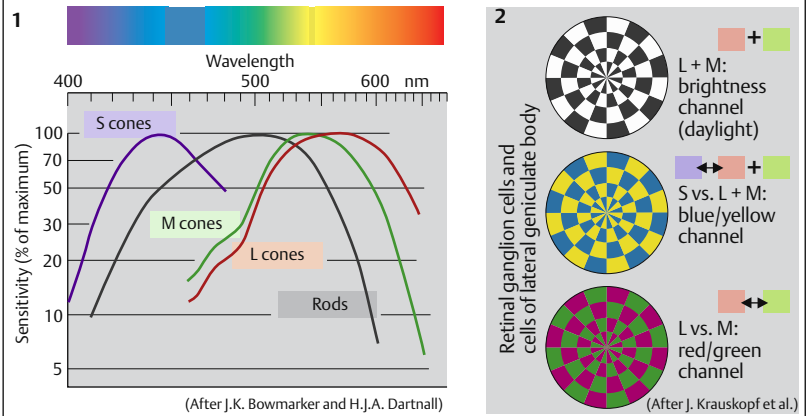
**C. Additive color mixing**



**D. Differential threshold for wavelength**



**E. Physiological sensitivity of rods and cones (1) and color opponency in neuronal processing (2)**



The **visual field** ( $\rightarrow$  A) is the area visualized by the *immobile* eye with the head fixed.

The visual field is examined by **perimetry**. The subject's eye is positioned in the center of the perimeter, which is a hollow hemispherical instrument. The subject must then report when laterally flashed points of light appear in or disappear from the visual field.

An area of lost vision within the visual field is a **scotoma**. Lesions of the retina, or of the central visual pathway can cause scotoma.

The **blind spot** ( $\rightarrow$  A) is a normal scotoma occurring at 15 degrees temporal and is caused by nasal interruption of the retina by the optic disk ( $\rightarrow$  p. 355 B). In binocular vision ( $\rightarrow$  p. 367 A), the blind spot of one eye is compensated for by the other. The visual field for color stimuli is smaller than that for light-dark stimuli. If, for example, a red object is slowly moved into the visual field, the movement will be identified more quickly than the color of the object.

The retina contains more than  $10^8$  photosensors connected by retinal neurons ( $\rightarrow$  p. 360) to ca.  $10^6$  retinal ganglion cells. Their axons form the **optic nerve**. The convergence of so many sensors on only a few neurons is particularly evident in the retinal periphery (1000 : 1). In the fovea centralis, however, only one or a few cones are connected to one neuron. Due to the low convergence of impulses from the fovea, there is a high level of visual acuity with a low level of light sensitivity, whereas the high convergence of signals from the periphery produces the reverse effect (*cf. spatial summation*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 359 C3).

**Ganglion cells.** Three types of ganglion cells can be found in the retina: (1) 10% are **M** (or  $\alpha$  or Y) **cells** of the *magnocellular system*; their fast-conducting axons emit short phasic impulses in response to light and are very sensitive to movement; (2) 80% are the **P** (or  $\beta$  or X) **cells** of the *parvocellular system*; their thin axons have small receptive fields (high spatial resolution), persistently react to constant light (tonic reaction), and therefore permit *pattern and color analysis*. Both types have equal densities of ON and OFF cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 360). (3) 10% are  $\gamma$  (or W) **cells** of the *coniocellular system*; their very thin axons project to the mesencephalon and regulate pupil diameter (see below) and reflex saccades ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 354, 366).

Objects located in the nasal half of the visual field of each eye ( $\rightarrow$  B, blue and green) are imaged in the temporal half of each retina and

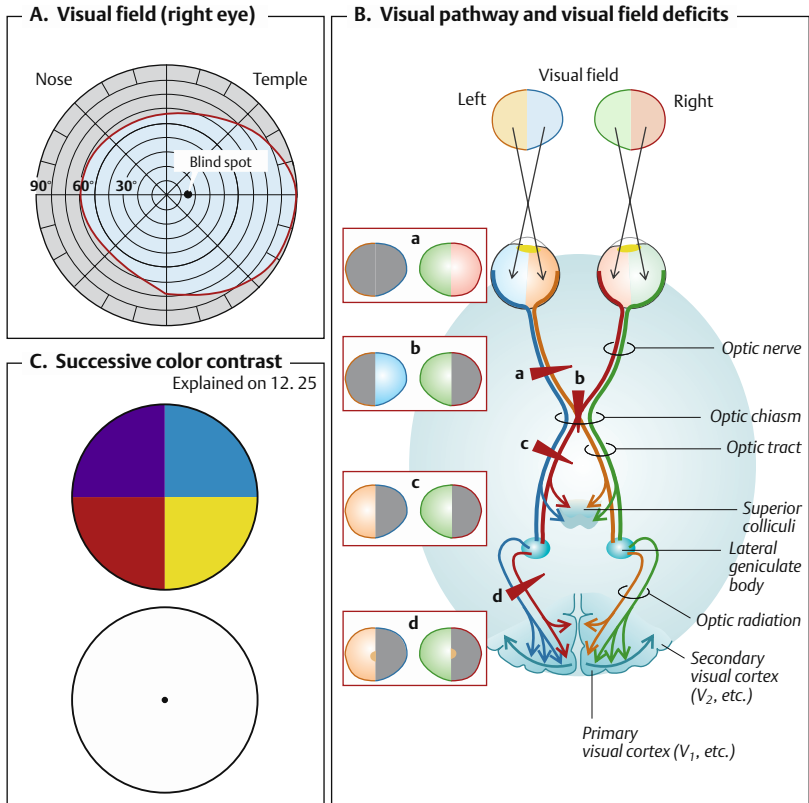
vice versa. Along the **visual pathway**, fibers of the **optic nerve** from the temporal half of each retina remain on the same side ( $\rightarrow$  B, blue and green), whereas the fibers from the nasal half of each retina decussate at the **optic chiasm** ( $\rightarrow$  B, orange and red). Fibers from the fovea centralis are present on both sides.

**Lesions** of the left optic nerve for instance cause deficits in the entire left visual field ( $\rightarrow$  B, a), whereas lesions of the left optic tract produce deficits in the right halves of both visual fields ( $\rightarrow$  B, c). Damage to the median optic chiasm results in bilateral temporal deficits, i.e., *bitemporal hemianopia* ( $\rightarrow$  B, b).

Fibers of the optic tract extend to the **lateral geniculate body** ( $\rightarrow$  B) of the thalamus, the six layers of which are organized in a retinotopic manner. Axons of the ipsilateral eye terminate on layers 2, 3 and 5, while those of the contralateral eye terminate on layers 1, 4 and 6. The M cell axons communicate with cells of *magnocellular layers* 1 and 2, which serve as a relay station for *motion-related stimuli* that are rapidly conducted to the motor cortex. The P cell axons project to the *parvocellular layers* 3–6, the main function of which is to *process colors and shapes*. The neurons of all layers then project further through the **optic radiation** (arranged also retinotopically) to the *primary visual cortex* ( $V_1$ ) and, after decussating, to further areas of the visual cortex ( $V_{2-5}$ ) including pathways to the parietal and temporal cortex. Magnocellular input reaches the parietal cortex also via the superior colliculi (see below) and the pulvinar.

The **primary visual cortex** ( $V_1$ ) is divided depth-wise (x-axis) into six retinotopic layers numbered I to VI ( $\rightarrow$  p. 335 A). Cells of the primary visual cortex are arranged as three-dimensional modular **hypercolumns** ( $3 \times 1 \times 1$  mm) representing modules for analysis of all sensory information from corresponding areas of both retinas ( $\rightarrow$  p. 360). Adjacent hypercolumns represent neighboring retinal regions. Hypercolumns contain *ocular dominance columns* (y-axis), *orientation columns* (z-axis), and *cylinders* (x-axis). The dominance columns receive alternating input from the right and left eye, orientation columns process direction of stimulus movement and cylinders receive information of colors.

**Color**, high-resolution stationary **shapes**, **movement**, and stereoscopic **depth** are processed in some subcortical visual pathways, and from



$V_1$  onward in *separate information channels*. These individual aspects must be integrated to achieve visual perception. In diurnally active primates like humans, over half of the cortex is involved in processing visual information. On a simplified scale, the parietal cortex analyzes the “where” and involves motor systems, and the temporal cortex takes care of the “what” of visual input comparing it with memory.

Axons of the optic tract (especially those of M and  $\gamma$  cells) also project to **subcortical regions** of the brain such as the *pretectal region*, which regulates the diameter of the pupils (see below); the *superior colliculi* ( $\rightarrow$  B), which are involved in oculomotor function ( $\rightarrow$  p. 366); the *hypothalamus*, which is responsible for circadian rhythms ( $\rightarrow$  p. 336).

The **pupillary reflex** is induced by sudden exposure of the retina to light ( $\rightarrow$  p. 356). The signal is relayed to the pretectal region; from here, a parasympathetic signal flows via the Edinger–Westphal nucleus, the ciliary ganglion and the oculomotor nerve, and induces narrowing of the pupils (*miosis*) within less than 1 s. Since both pupils respond simultaneously even if the light stimulus is unilateral, this is called a *consensual light response*. Meiosis also occurs when the eyes adjust for near vision (*near-vision response*  $\rightarrow$  p. 366).

The **corneal reflex** protects the eye. An object touching the cornea (afferent: trigeminal nerve) or approaching the eye (afferent: optic nerve) results in reflex closure of the eyelids.

*Conjugated movement* of the eyes occurs when the external eye muscles move the eyes in the same direction (e.g., from left to right), whereas *vergence movement* is characterized by opposing (divergent or convergent) eye movement. The axes of the eyes are parallel when gazing into the distance. Fixation of the gaze on a nearby object results in convergence of the visual axes. In addition, the pupil contracts (to increase the depth of focus) and accommodation of the lens occurs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 352). The three reactions are called **near-vision response** or convergence response.

**Strabismus.** A greater power of accommodation for near vision is required in hyperopia than in normal vision. Since accommodation is always linked with a convergence impulse, hyperopia is often associated with squinting. If the visual axes wander too far apart, vision in one eye will be suppressed to avoid double vision (diplopia). This type of visual impairment, called *strabismic amblyopia*, can be either temporary or chronic.

**Saccades.** When scanning the visual field, the eyes make jerky movements when changing the point of fixation, e.g., when scanning a line of print. These quick movements that last 10–80 ms are called *saccades*. Displacement of the image is centrally suppressed during the eye due to *saccadic suppression*. A person looking at both of his or her eyes alternately in a mirror cannot perceive the movement of his or her own eyes, but an independent observer can. The small, darting saccades function to keep an object in focus.

Objects entering the field of vision are reflexively imaged in the fovea centralis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354). Slow **pursuit movements** of the eyes function to maintain the gaze on moving objects. **Nystagmus** is characterized by a combination of these slow and rapid (saccade-like) opposing eye movements. The direction of nystagmus (right or left) is classified according to the type of rapid phase, e.g., *secondary nystagmus* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 348). *Optokinetic nystagmus* occurs when viewing an object passing across the field of vision, e.g., when looking at a tree from inside a moving train. Once the eyes have returned to the normal position (return saccade), a new object can be brought into focus.

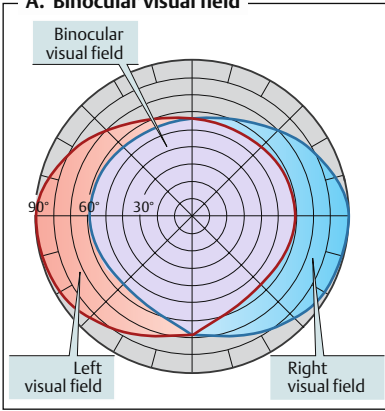
Damage to the cerebellum or organ of balance ( $\rightarrow$  p. 348) can result in *pathological nystagmus*.

The brain stem is the main center responsible for **programming** of eye movements. Rapid horizontal (conjugated) movements such as saccades and rapid nystagmus movement are programmed in the pons, whereas vertical and torsion movements are programmed in the mesencephalon. The cerebellum provides the necessary fine tuning ( $\rightarrow$  p. 328). Neurons in the region of the Evinger–Westphal nucleus are responsible for vergence movements.

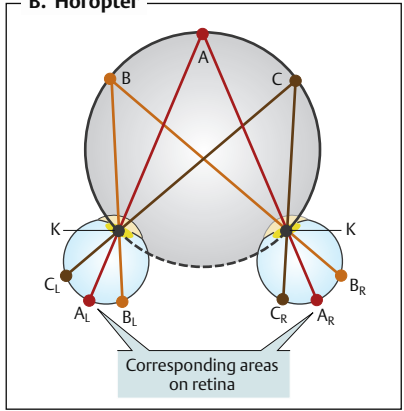
In near vision, **depth vision** and **three-dimensional vision** are primarily achieved through the coordinated efforts of both eyes and are therefore limited to the **binocular field of vision** ( $\rightarrow$  A). If both eyes focus on point A ( $\rightarrow$  B), an image of the fixation point is projected on both foveae ( $A_L, A_R$ ), i.e., on the *corresponding areas of the retina*. The same applies for points B and C ( $\rightarrow$  B) since they both lie on a circle that intersects fixation point A and nodal points N ( $\rightarrow$  p. 353 B) of the two eyes (**Vieth–Müller horopter**). If there were an imaginary middle eye in which the two retinal regions (in the cortex) precisely overlapped, the retinal sites would correspond to a central point  $A_C \triangleq A_L + A_R$  ( $\rightarrow$  C). Assuming there is a point D outside the horopter ( $\rightarrow$  C, left), the middle eye would see a double image ( $D', D''$ ) instead of point D, where  $D'$  is from the left eye ( $D_L$ ). If D and A are not too far apart, central processing of the double image creates the perception that D is located behind D, i.e., *depth perception* occurs. A similar effect occurs when a point E ( $\rightarrow$  C, right) is closer than A; in this case, the  $E'$  image will arise in the right eye ( $E'_R$ ) and E will be perceived as being closer.

**Depth perception from a distance.** When viewing objects from great distances or with only one eye, contour overlap, haze, shadows, size differences, etc. are cues for depth perception ( $\rightarrow$  D). A nearby object moves across the field of vision more quickly than a distant object, e.g., in the case of the sign compared to the wall in plate D). In addition, the moon appears to migrate with the moving car, while the mountains disappear from sight.

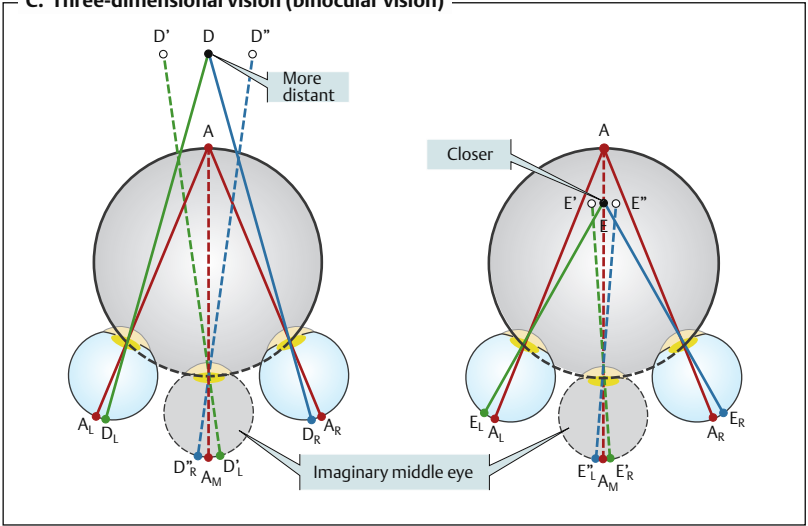
**A. Binocular visual field**



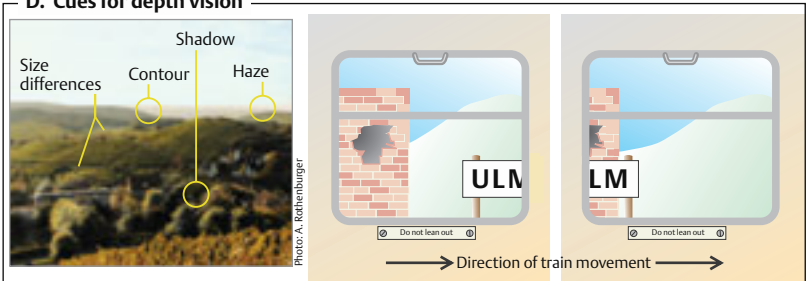
**B. Horopter**



**C. Three-dimensional vision (binocular vision)**



**D. Cues for depth vision**



**Sound waves** are the adequate stimulus for the organ of hearing. They arise from a sound source such as a gong ( $\rightarrow$  A1) and are conducted in gases, liquids, and solids. The air is the main carrier of sound.

The air pressure rises and falls rhythmically at the sound source. These pressure waves (sound waves) travel at a characteristic **sound velocity** ( $c$ ) in different materials, e.g., at 332 m/s in air of 0°C. A graphic recording of sound waves ( $\rightarrow$  A1) will produce waveform curves. The **wavelength** ( $\lambda$ ) is the distance between the top of one wave and the identical phase of the succeeding one, and the maximum deviation of pressure from baseline is the **amplitude** ( $a$ ) ( $\rightarrow$  A1). Enlargement (reduction) of wavelength will lower (raise) the tone, whereas a fall (rise) in amplitude will produce a quieter (louder) tone ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The **pitch** of a tone is defined by its **frequency** ( $f$ ), i.e., the number of sound pressure oscillations per unit time. Frequency is measured in **hertz** ( $\text{Hz} = \text{s}^{-1}$ ). Frequency, wavelength and the sound velocity are related:

$$f (\text{Hz}) \cdot \lambda (\text{m}) = c (\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}). \quad [12.1]$$

A **pure tone** has a simple sinus waveform. The tones emanating from most sound sources (e.g., musical instrument, voice) are mixtures of different frequencies and amplitudes that result in complex periodic vibrations referred to as **sound** ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The fundamental (lowest) tone in the complex determines the *pitch* of the sound, and the higher ones determine its *timbre* (overtones). An  $a^1$  (440 Hz) sung by a tenor or played on a harp therefore has a different sound than one produced on an organ or piano. The overlap of two very similar tones produces a distinct effect characterized by a *beat tone* of a much lower frequency ( $\rightarrow$  A3, blue/red).

**Audibility limits.** Healthy young persons can hear sounds ranging in frequency from 16 to 20 000 Hz. The upper limit of audibility can drop to 5000 Hz due to aging (*presbycusis*). At 1000 Hz, the **absolute auditory threshold** or lowest sound pressure perceived as sound is  $3 \cdot 10^{-5}$  Pa. The threshold of sound is frequency-dependent ( $\rightarrow$  B, green curve). The threshold of hearing for a tone rises tremendously when other tones are heard simultaneously. This phenomenon called *masking* is the reason why it is so difficult to carry on a conversation against loud background noise. The ear is overwhelmed by sound pressures over 60 Pa, which corresponds to  $2 \cdot 10^6$  times the sound pressure of the limit of audibility at 1000 Hz. Sounds above this level induce the sensation of pain ( $\rightarrow$  B, red curve).

For practical reasons, the *decibel* ( $\text{dB}$ ) is used as a logarithmic measure of the **sound pressure level** (**SPL**). Given an arbitrary reference sound pressure of  $p_0 = 2 \cdot 10^{-5}$  Pa, the sound pressure level (**SPL**) can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{SPL} (\text{dB}) = 20 \cdot \log (p_x/p_0) \quad [12.2]$$

where  $p_x$  is the actual sound pressure. A tenfold increase in the sound pressure therefore means that the SPL rises by 20 dB.

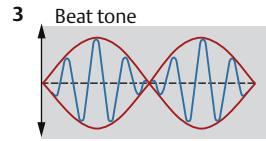
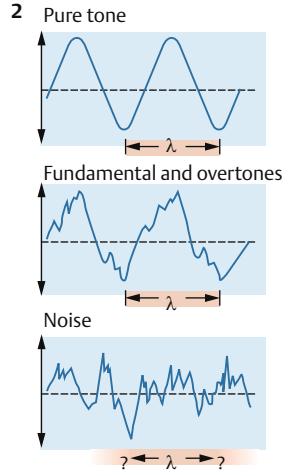
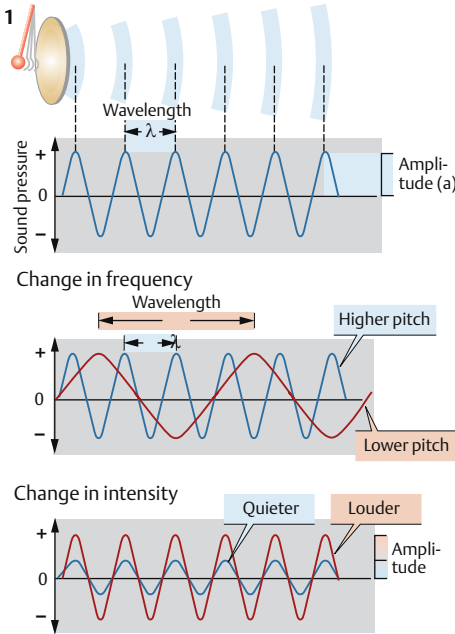
The **sound intensity** ( $I$ ) is the amount of sound energy passing through a given unit of area per unit of time ( $\text{W} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ). The sound intensity is proportional to the *square* of  $p_x$ . Therefore, dB values cannot be calculated on a simple linear basis. If, for example, two loudspeakers produce 70 dB each ( $p_x = 6.3 \cdot 10^{-2}$  Pa), they do *not* produce 140 dB together, but a mere 73 dB because  $p_x$  only increases by a factor of  $\sqrt{2}$  when the intensity level doubles. Thus,  $\sqrt{2} \cdot 6.3 \cdot 10^{-2}$  Pa has to be inserted for  $p_x$  into Eq. 12.2.

Sound waves with different frequencies but equal sound pressures are not *subjectively* perceived as *equally loud*. A 63 Hz tone is only perceived to be as loud as a 20 dB/1000 Hz reference tone if the sound pressure of the 63 Hz tone is 30-fold higher (+ 29 dB). In this case, the sound pressure level of the reference tone (20 dB/1000 Hz) gives the loudness level of the 63 Hz tone in **phon** (20 phon) as at a frequency of 1000 Hz, the phon scale is numerically equals the dB SPL scale ( $\rightarrow$  B). Equal loudness contours or **isophones** can be obtained by plotting the subjective values of equal loudness for test frequencies over the whole audible range ( $\rightarrow$  B, blue curves). The absolute auditory threshold is also an isophone (4 phons;  $\rightarrow$  B, green curve). Human hearing is most sensitive in the 2000–5000 Hz range ( $\rightarrow$  B).

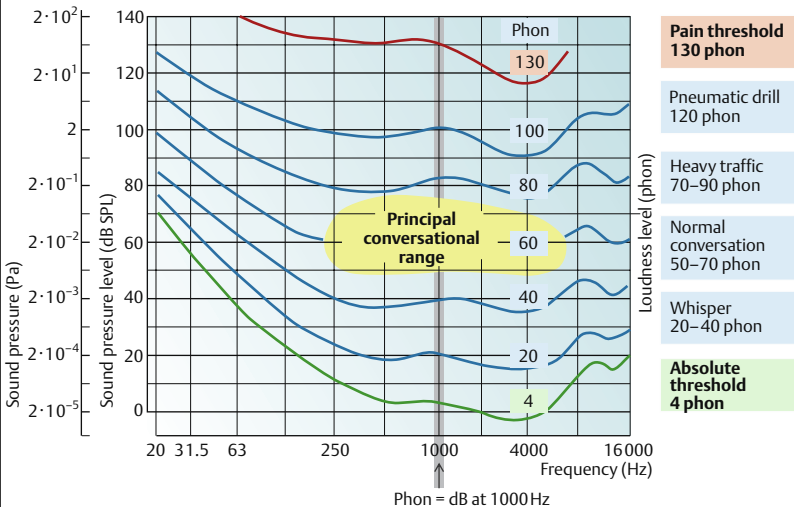
**Note:** Another unit is used to describe how a tone of constant frequency is subjectively perceived as louder or less loud. *Sone* is the unit of this type of loudness, where 1 sone = 40 phons at 1000 Hz. 2 sones equal twice the reference loudness, and 0.5 sone is  $1/2$  the reference loudness.

The **auditory area** in diagram B is limited by the highest and lowest audible frequencies on the one side, and by isophones of the thresholds of hearing and pain on the other. The green area in plate B represents the range of frequencies and intensities required for comprehension of ordinary speech ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**A. Wavelength, wave amplitude and wave types**



**B. Sound pressure, sound pressure level and loudness level**



Sound waves are transmitted to the organ of hearing via the *external ear* and the *auditory canal*, which terminates at the *tympanic membrane* or *eardrum*. The sound waves are conducted through the air (**air conduction**) and set the eardrum in vibration. These are transmitted via the *auditory ossicles* of the tympanic cavity (*middle ear*) to the membrane of the *oval window* (→ A 1,2), where the *internal* or *inner ear* (labyrinth) begins.

In the *middle ear*, the *malleus*, *incus* and *stapes* conduct the vibrations of the tympanic membrane to the oval window. This ensures that the sound is conducted from the low wave resistance/impedance in air to the high resistance in fluid with as little loss of energy as possible. This **impedance adaptation** occurs at  $f < 2400$  Hz and is based on a 22-fold pressure amplification (tympanic membrane area/oval window area is 17 : 1, and leverage arm action of the auditory ossicles amplifies force by a factor of 1.3).

Impairment of impedance transforming capacity due, e.g., to destruction of the ossicles, causes roughly 20 dB of hearing loss (*conduction deafness*).

**Muscles of the middle ear.** The middle ear contains two small muscles—the *tensor tympani* (insertion: manubrium of malleus) and the *stapedius* (insertion: stapes)—that can reflectively attenuate low-frequency sound (i.e., protect the ear from loud sounds, among other functions).

**Bone conduction.** Sound sets the skull in vibration, and these bone-borne vibrations are conducted directly to the cochlea. Bone conduction is fairly insignificant for physiological function, but is useful for testing the hearing. In **Weber's test**, a vibrating tuning fork (a') is placed in the middle of the head. A person with normal hearing can determine the location of the tuning fork because of the symmetrical conduction of sound waves. A patient with *unilateral conduction deafness* will perceive the sound as coming from the affected side (lateralization) because of the lack of masking of environmental noises in that ear (bone conduction). A person with *sensorineural deafness*, on the other hand, will perceive the sound as coming from the healthy ear because of sound attenuation in the affected internal ear. In **Rinne's test**, the handle of a tuning fork is placed on one mastoid process (bony process behind the ear) of the patient (bone conduction). If the tone is no longer heard, the tines of the tuning fork are placed in front of the ear (air conduction). Individuals with normal hearing or sensorineural deafness can hear the turning fork in

the latter position anew (positive test result), whereas those with conduction deafness cannot (test negative).

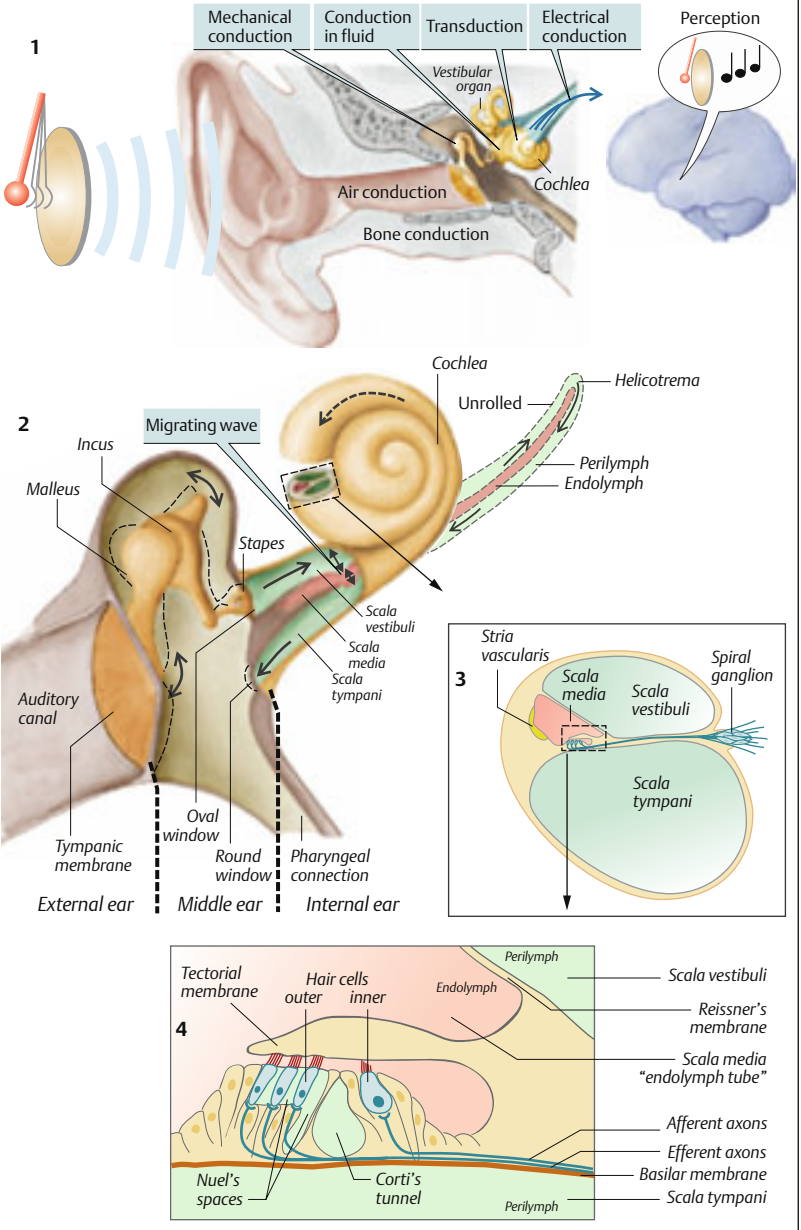
The **inner ear** consists of the *equilibrium organ* (→ p. 348) and the **cochlea**, a spiraling bony tube that is 3–4 cm in length. Inside the cochlea is an endolymph-filled duct called the *scala media* (*cochlear duct*); the ductus reuniens connects the base of the cochlear duct to the endolymph-filled part of the equilibrium organ. The *scala media* is accompanied on either side by two perilymph-filled cavities: the *scala vestibuli* and *scala tympani*. These cavities merge at the apex of the cochlea to form the *helicotrema*. The *scala vestibuli* arises from the oval window, and the *scala tympani* terminates on the membrane of the round window (→ A2). The composition of perilymph is similar to that of plasma water (→ p. 93C), and the composition of endolymph is similar to that of the cytosol (see below). Perilymph circulates in Corti's tunnel and Nuel's spaces (→ A4).

**Organ of Corti.** The 10 000–12 000 external and 3500 internal **hair cells** (HCs) that both sit upon the basilar membrane are the sensory cells of the hearing organ (→ A4). Their structure is very similar to the HCs of the vestibular organ (→ p. 348). Every HC has approx. 80 stereocilia, but the kinocilia are absent or rudimentary.

There are three rows of slender, cylindrical **outer hair cells**. The tips of their stereocilia are firmly attached to the tectorial membrane and surrounded by endolymph, whereas their cell bodies float in perilymph of Nuel's spaces (→ A4). The outer hair cells are principally innervated by efferent, mostly cholinergic neurons from the spiral ganglion ( $N_M$ -cholinoceptors; → p. 82). The pear-shaped **inner hair cells** are arranged in a single row and are almost completely surrounded by supporting cells. Only their cilia project freely into the endolymph. The inner hair cells are secondary sensory cells and synapse with over 90% of the afferent fibers of the spiral ganglion.

**Inner ear potentials** (→ p. 375 C). On the cilia side, the hair cells border with the endolymph-filled space, which has a potential difference (*endocochlear potential*) of ca. +80 to +110 mV relative to perilymph (→ p. 375 C). This potential difference is maintained by an active transport mechanism in the *stria vascularis*. Since the cell potential of outer (inner) hair cells is –70 mV (–40 mV), a potential difference of roughly 150–180 mV (120–150 mV) prevails across the cell membrane occupied by cilia (cell interior negative). Since the  $K^+$  conc. in the endolymph and hair cells is roughly equal ▶

**A. Reception and conduction of sound stimuli**



► ( $\approx 140$  mmol/L), the prevailing  $K^+$  equilibrium potential is ca. 0 mV ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32).

**Sound conduction in the inner ear.** The stapes moves against the membrane of the oval window membrane, causing it to vibrate. These are transmitted via the perilymph to the membrane of the round window ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The walls of the endolymph-filled cochlear duct, i.e. Reissner's membrane and the basilar membrane ( $\rightarrow$  D1) give against the pressure wave (**migrating wave**,  $\rightarrow$  B and C). It can therefore take a "short cut" to reach the round window without crossing the helicotrema. Since the cochlear duct is deformed in waves, Reissner's membrane and the basilar membrane vibrate alternately towards the scala vestibuli and scala tympani. The velocity and wavelength of the migrating wave that started at the oval window decrease continuously ( $\rightarrow$  B), while their *amplitude* increases to a *maximum* and then quickly subsides ( $\rightarrow$  B, envelope curve). (The wave velocity is not equal to the velocity of sound, but is much slower.) The **site** of the maximum excursion of the cochlear duct is characteristic of the wavelength of the stimulating sound. The higher the frequency of the sound, the closer the site is to the stapes ( $\rightarrow$  C).

**Outer hair cells.** Vibration of the cochlear duct causes a discrete shearing (of roughly 0.3 nm) of the tectorial membrane against the basilar membrane, causing *bending of the stereocilia* of the *outer hair cells* ( $\rightarrow$  D1). This exerts also a shearing force between the cilia of the individual external hair cell. This bending in one direction activates the "*tip links*" ( $\rightarrow$  p. 349 A3), and causes mechanosensitive cation channels (MET channels) in the stereociliary membranes to open allowing  $K^+$  ions driven by the 150–180 mV mentioned above to enter and depolarize the outer hair cells (**mechanoelectric transduction MET**). This causes the outer hair cells to *shorten* in sync with stimulation. Repolarization is achieved by the opening of tension-dependent  $K^+$  channels (KCNQ4) on the perilymph side of the HC. The outflowing  $K^+$  is taken up by  $K^+$ - $Cl^-$  cotransporters (KCC4) in supporting cells and recirculated via gap junctions to the stria vascularis. The subsequent bending of the stereocilia in the opposite direction causes hyperpolarization (closure of the MET channels) and extension of the outer HCs.

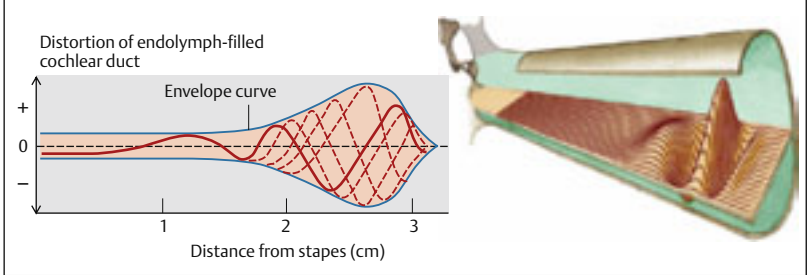
This extremely fast tension-sensitive **electromotility of the outer hair cells** (up to 20 kHz, i.e.  $2 \cdot 10^4$  times/s) is produced by the motor protein *prestin*.  $Cl^-$  and  $HCO_3^-$  ions are stored in prestin, dependent on the tension, and therefore act as tension sensors. Their presence changes the densely packed conformation of the prestin, which results in extension of the outer HCs. At the site of maximum reaction to the sound frequency the electromotility of the outer HCs causes endolymph waves in the subreticular space, which in turn also bends the stereocilia of the inner hair cell ( $\rightarrow$  D3). Their depolarization triggered by the opening of the MET channels is the sensor potential for the inner HCs, which via opening of basolateral  $Ca^{2+}$  channels increases the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration. This leads to transmitter release (*glutamate* coupling to AMPA receptors;  $\rightarrow$  p. 55 F) and the subsequent conduction of impulses to the CNS ( $\rightarrow$  D2, 3).

The outer hair cell electromotility contributes to the **cochlear amplification** (ca. 100-fold or 40 dB amplification), which occurs before sound waves reach the actual sound sensors, i.e. inner hair cells. This explains the very low threshold within the very narrow location (0.5 mm) and thus within a very small frequency range.

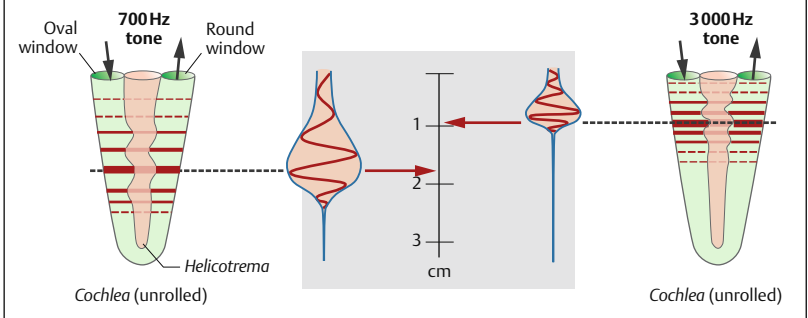
The vibrations in the internal ear set off an outward emission of sound. These **evoked otoacoustic emissions** can be objectively measured by placing a microphone in front of the tympanic membrane, e.g., to test internal ear function in infants and other individuals incapable of reporting their hearing sensations.

**Subjective hearing tests** are performed using an **audiometer**. The patient is presented sounds of various frequencies and routes of conduction (bone, air). The sound pressure is initially set at a level under the threshold of hearing and is raised in increments until the patient is able to hear the presented sound (*threshold audiogram*). If the patient is unable to hear the sounds at normal levels, he or she has an hearing loss, which is quantitated in decibels (dB). In **audiometry**, all frequencies at the normal threshold of hearing are assigned the value of 0 dB (unlike the diagram on p. 369 B, green curve). Hearing loss can be caused by presbycusis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 368), middle ear infection (impaired air conduction), and damage to the internal ear (impaired air and bone conduction) caused, for example, by prolonged exposure to excessive sound pressure, by ototoxic medication (blockage of stria vascularis by loop diuretics), or by defects of the KCNQ4 or KCC4 genes.

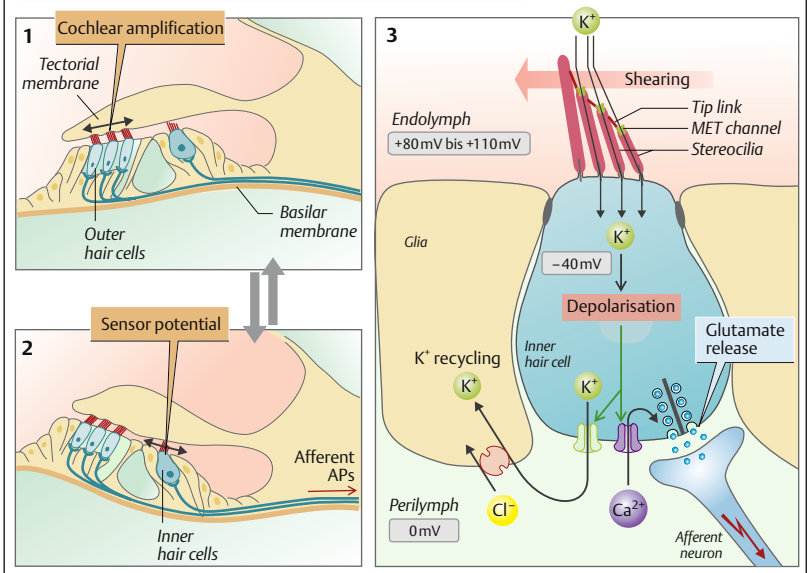
**B. Migrating wave in cochlea: maximum amplitude and 3-D topography snapshot**



**C. Frequency imaging in cochlea**



**D. Stimulation of hair cells by membrane deformation**



Various qualities of sound must be coded for signal transmission in the acoustic pathway. These include the frequency, intensity and direction of sound waves as well as the distance of the sound source from the listener.

**Frequency imaging.** Tones of various frequencies are “imaged” along the cochlea (→ p. 373 C), conducted in separate fibers of the auditory pathway and centrally identified. Assuming that a tone of 1000 Hz can just be distinguished from one of 1003 Hz (resembling true conditions), the frequency difference of 3 Hz corresponds to a relative *frequency differential threshold* of 0.003 (→ p. 358). This fine differential capacity is mainly due to frequency imaging in the cochlea, amplification by its outer hair cells (→ p. 372), and neuronal contrast along the auditory pathway (→ p. 315 D). This fine **tuning** ensures that a certain frequency has a particularly low threshold at its “imaging” site. Adjacent fibers are not recruited until higher sound pressures are encountered.

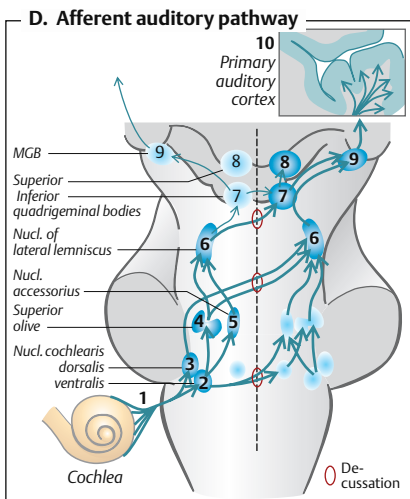
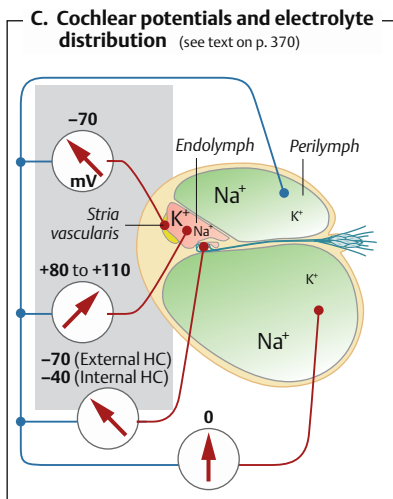
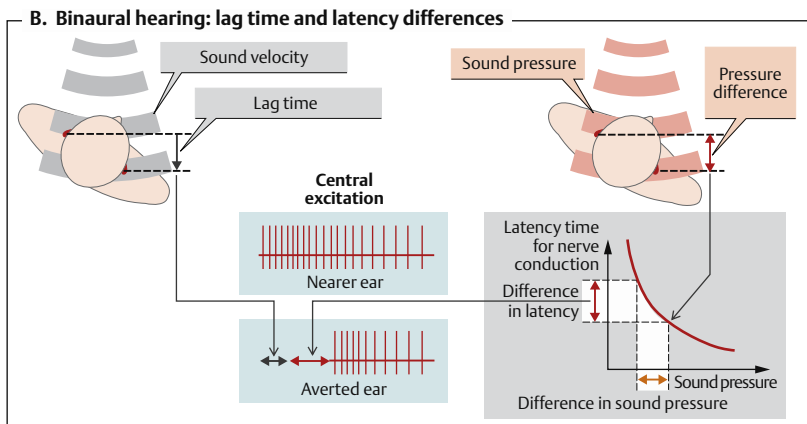
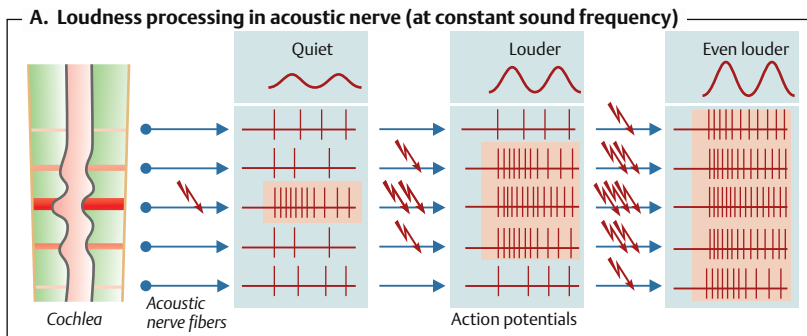
**Intensity.** Higher intensity levels result in higher action potential frequencies in afferent nerve fibers and recruitment of neighboring nerve fibers (→ A). The relative *intensity differential threshold* is 0.1 (→ p. 358), which is very crude compared to the frequency differential threshold. Hence, differences in loudness of sound are not perceived by the human ear until the intensity level changes by a factor of over 1.1, that is, until the sound pressure changes by a factor of over  $\sqrt{1.1} = 1.05$ .

**Direction.** *Binaural hearing* is needed to identify the direction of sound waves and is based on the following two effects. (1) Sound waves that strike the ear obliquely reach the averted ear later than the other, resulting in a *lag time*. The change in direction that a normal human subject can just barely detect (*direction threshold*) is roughly 3 degrees. This angle delays the arrival of the sound waves in the averted ear by about  $3 \cdot 10^{-5}$  s (→ B, left). (2) Sound reaching the averted ear is also perceived as being *quieter*; differences as small as 1 dB can be distinguished. A lower sound pressure results in delayed firing of action potentials, i.e., in increased *latency* (→ B, right). Thus, the impulses from the averted ear reach the CNS later (nucleus accessorius, → D5). Effects

(1) and (2) are additive effects (→ B). The external ear helps to decide whether the sound is coming from front or back, above or below. Binaural hearing also helps to distinguish a certain voice against high background noise, e.g., at a party. Visibility of the speaker’s mouth also facilitates comprehension.

**Distance to the sound source** can be determined because high frequencies are attenuated more strongly than low frequencies during sound wave conduction. The longer the sound wave travels, the lower the proportion of high frequencies when it reaches the listener. This helps, for instance, to determine whether a thunderstorm is nearby or far away.

**Auditory pathway (→ D).** The auditory nerve fibers with somata positioned in the *spiral ganglion* of the cochlea project from the cochlea (→ D1) to the anterolateral (→ D2), posteroventral and dorsal cochlear nuclei (→ D3). Afferents in these three nuclei exhibit *tonotopicity*, i.e., they are arranged according to tone frequency at different levels of complexity. In these areas, *lateral inhibition* (→ p. 315 D) enhances *contrast*, i.e., suppresses noise. Binaural comparison of intensity and transit time of sound waves (direction of sound) takes place at the next-higher station of the auditory pathway, i.e. in the *superior olive* (→ D4) and *accessory nucleus* (→ D5). The next stations are in the *nucleus of lateral lemniscus* (→ D6) and, after most fibers cross over to the opposite side, the *inferior quadrigeminal bodies* (→ D7). They synapse with numerous afferents and serve as a reflex station (e.g., muscles of the middle ear; → p. 372). Here, sensory information from the cochlear nuclei is compared with spatial information from the superior olive. Via connections to the superior quadrigeminal bodies (→ D8), they also ensure coordination of the auditory and visual space. By way of the thalamus (medial geniculate body, MGB; → D9), the afferents ultimately reach the *primary auditory cortex* (→ D10) and the surrounding secondary auditory areas (→ p. 313 E, areas 41 and 22). Analysis of complex sounds, short-term memory for comparison of tones, and tasks required for “eavesdropping” are some of their functions.



The human voice primarily functions as a **means of communication**, the performance of which is based on the human capacity of hearing (→ p. 369 B). As in wind instruments, the body contains a *wind space* (trachea, bronchi, etc.). Air is driven through the space between the *vocal cords* (rima glottidis) into the *air space* (passages above the glottis), which sets the vocal cords into vibration. The air space consists of the throat and oronasal cavities (→ A). The range of the human voice is so immense because of the large variety of muscles that function to modulate the intensity of the airstream (*loudness*), tension of the vocal cords, shape/width of the vocal cords (*fundamental tone*) and size/shape of the air space (*timbre, formants*) of each individual.

Joints and muscles of the **larynx** function to adjust the vocal cords and rima glottidis. A stream of air opens and closes the rima glottidis and sets off the rolling movement of the vocal cords (→ B). When a deep tone is produced, the fissure of the glottis remains closed longer than it opens (ratio of 5 : 1 at 100 Hz). This ratio drops to 1.4 : 1 in higher tones (400 Hz). The rima glottidis remains open when whispering or singing falsetto (→ C, blue).

**Motor signals** originate in the motosensory cortex (→ p. 327 C/B, tongue/throat) and are conducted via the vagus nerve to the larynx. Sensory impulses responsible for voice production and the cough reflex are also conducted by the vagus nerve. Sensory fibers from the mucosa and muscle spindles of the larynx (→ p. 318) continuously transmit information on the position and tension of the vocal cords to the CNS. These reflexes and the close connection of the auditory pathway with bulbar and cortical motor speech centers are important for **fine adjustment of the voice**.

**Vowels** (→ D). Although their fundamental frequencies are similar (100–130 Hz), spoken vowels can be distinguished by their characteristic overtones (*formants*). Different formants are produced by modifying the shape of oral tract, i.e., mouth and lips (→ D). The three primary vowels [a:], [i:], [u:] make up the *vowel triangle*; [œ:], [ɔ:], [ø:], [y:], [æ:], and [ɛ] are intermediates (→ D).

The phonetic notation used here is that of the *International Phonetic Society*. The symbols mentioned here are as follows: [a:] as in glass; [i:] as in beat; [u:] as

in food; [œ:] as in French *peur*; [ɔ:] as in bought; [ø:] as in French *peu* or in German *hören*; [y:] as in French *menu* or in German *trüb*; [æ:] as in bad; [ɛ:] as in head.

**Consonants** are described according to their site of articulation as *labial* (lips, teeth), e.g. P/B/W/F/M; *dental* (teeth, tongue), e.g. D/T/S/M; *lingual* (tongue, front of soft palate), e.g. L; *guttural* (back of tongue and soft palate), e.g. G/K. Consonants can be also defined according to their manner of articulation, e.g., *plosives* or *stop consonants* (P/B/T/D/K/G), *fricatives* (F/V/W/S/Ch) and *vibratives* (R).

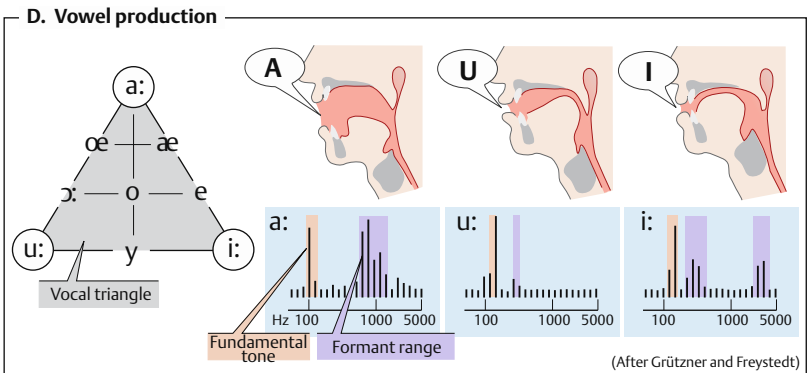
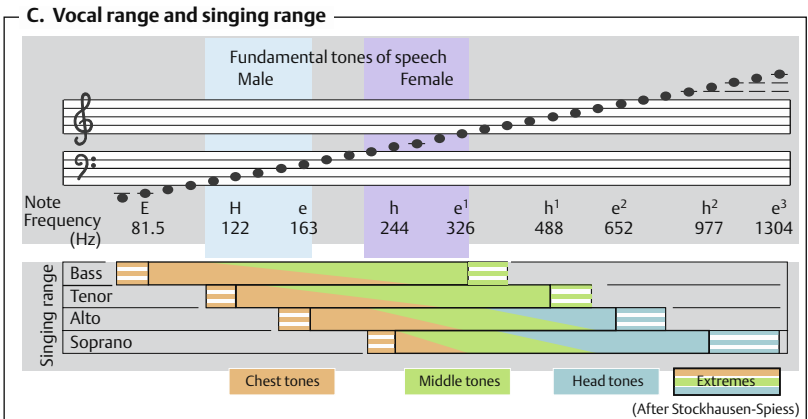
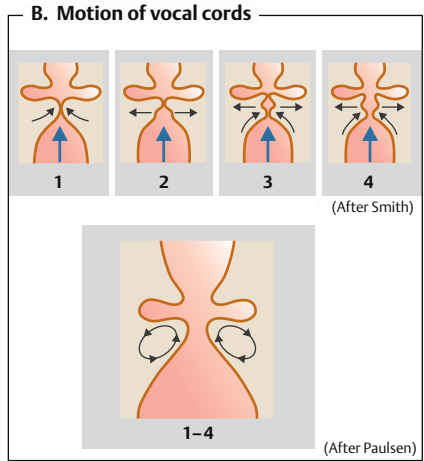
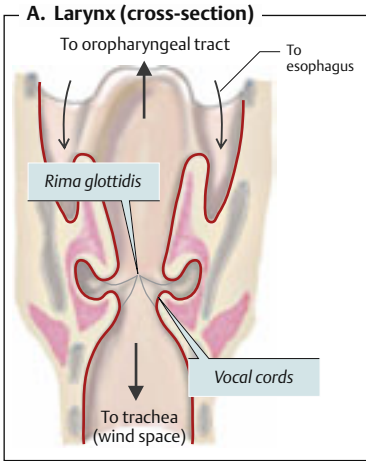
The **frequency range** of the voice, including formants, is roughly 40–2000 Hz. Sibilants like /s/ and /z/ have higher-frequency fractions. Individuals suffering from presbycusis or other forms of sensorineural hearing loss are often unable to hear sibilants, making it impossible for them to distinguish between words like “bad” and “bass.” The **tonal range** (fundamental tone, → C) of the *spoken voice* is roughly one octave; that of the *singing voice* is roughly two octaves in untrained singers, and over three octaves in trained singers.

**Language** (see also p.342). The main components of verbal communication are (a) auditory signal processing (→ p.374), (b) central speech production and (c) execution of motor speech function. The centers for *speech comprehension* are mainly located in the posterior part of area 22, i.e., **Wernicke's area** (→ p.313 E).

Lesions of it result in a loss of language comprehension capacity (sensory aphasia). The patient will speak fluently yet often incomprehensibly, but does not notice it because of his/her disturbed comprehension capacity. The patient is also unable to understand complicated sentences or written words.

The centers for *speech production* are mainly located in areas 44 and 45, i.e., **Broca's area** (→ p.313 E). It controls the primary speech centers of the sensorimotor cortex.

**Lesions** of this and other cortical centers (e.g., gyrus angularis) result in disorders of speech production (*motor aphasia*). The typical patient is either completely unable to speak or can only express himself in telegraphic style. Another form of aphasia is characterized by the forgetfulness of words (*anomic* or *amnestic aphasia*). Lesions of executive motor centers (corticobulbar tracts, cerebellum) cause various *speech disorders*. Auditory feed back is extremely important for speech. When a person goes deaf, speech deteriorates to an appreciable extent. Children born deaf do not learn to speak.



Physiology is the science of life processes and bodily functions. Since they are largely based on physical and chemical laws, the investigation, understanding, assessment, and manipulation of these functions is inseparably linked to the measurement of physical, chemical, and other **parameters**, such as blood pressure, hearing capacity, blood pH, and cardiac output. The **units** for measurement of these parameters are listed in this section. We have given preference to the *international system of SI units* (Système International d'Unités) for uniformity and ease of calculation. Non-SI units will be marked with an asterisk. *Conversion factors* for older units are also listed. Complicated or less common physiological units (e.g., wall tension, flow resistance, compliance) are generally explained in the book as they appear. However, some especially important terms that are often (not always correctly) used in physiology will be explained in the Appendix, e.g., concentration, activity, osmolality, osmotic pressure, oncotic pressure, and pH.

#### The seven base units of the SI system.

Unit	Symbol	Dimension
Meter	m	length
Kilogram	kg	mass
Second	s	time
Mole	mol	amount of substance
Ampere	A	electric current
Kelvin	K	temperature (absolute)
Candela	cd	luminous intensity

The base units are precisely defined autonomous units. All other units are derived by multiplying or dividing base units and are therefore referred to as **derived units**, e.g.:

- Area (length · length):  $m \cdot m = m^2$
- Velocity (length/time):  $m/s = m \cdot s^{-1}$ .

If the new unit becomes too complicated, it is given a new name and a corresponding symbol, e.g., force =  $m \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2} = N$  (→ **Table 1**).

#### Fractions and Multiples of Units

**Prefixes** are used to denote decimal multiples and fractions of a unit since it is both tedious and confusing to write large numbers. We generally write 10 kg (kilograms) and  $10 \mu\text{g}$  (micrograms) instead of 10 000 g and 0.00001 g, for example. The prefixes, which are usually varied in 1000-unit increments, and the corresponding symbols and conversion factors are listed in **Table 2**. Prefixes are used with base units and the units derived from them (→ **Table 1**), e.g.,  $10^3 \text{ Pa} = 1 \text{ kPa}$ . Decimal increments are used in some cases (e.g., da, h, d, and c; → **Table 2**). **Time** is given in conventional nondecimal units, i.e., *seconds* (s), *minutes* (min), *hours* (h), and *days* (d).

#### Length, Area, Volume

The *meter* (m) is the SI unit of **length**. Other units of length have also been used.

##### Examples:

$$1 \text{ \AA} \text{ngstr\AA}m (\text{\AA}) = 10^{-10} \text{ m} = 0.1 \text{ nm}$$

$$1 \text{ micron } (\mu) = 10^{-6} \text{ m} = 1 \mu\text{m}$$

$$1 \text{ millimicron } (m\mu) = 10^{-9} \text{ m} = 1 \text{ nm}$$

American and British units of length:

$$1 \text{ inch} = 0.0254 \text{ m} = 25.4 \text{ mm}$$

$$1 \text{ foot} = 0.3048 \text{ m}$$

$$1 \text{ yard} = 3 \text{ feet} = 0.9144 \text{ m}$$

$$1 \text{ (statute) mile} = 1609.344 \text{ m} \approx 1.61 \text{ km}$$

$$1 \text{ nautical mile} = 1.853 \text{ km}$$

The *square meter* ( $m^2$ ) is the derived SI unit of **area**, and the *cubic meter* ( $m^3$ ) is the corresponding unit of **volume**. When denoting the fractions or multiples of these units with prefixes (**Table 2**), please note that there are some peculiarities.

##### Examples:

$$1 \text{ m} = 10^3 \text{ mm, but}$$

$$1 \text{ mm}^2 = 10^6 \text{ mm}^2, \text{ and}$$

$$1 \text{ m}^3 = 10^9 \text{ mm}^3$$

The *liter* (L or l)\* is often used as a unit of **volume** for liquids and gases:

$$1 \text{ L} = 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3 = 1 \text{ dm}^3$$

$$1 \text{ mL} = 10^{-6} \text{ m}^3 = 1 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$1 \mu\text{L} = 10^{-9} \text{ m}^3 = 1 \text{ mm}^3.$$

**Table 1** Derived units based on SI base units m, kg, s, cd, and A

Coulomb	C	electrical charge	$s \cdot A$
Farad	F	electrical capacitance	$C \cdot V^{-1} = m^{-2} \cdot kg^{-1} \cdot s^4 \cdot A^2$
Hertz	Hz	frequency	$s^{-1}$
Joule	J	heat, energy, work	$N \cdot m = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Lumen	lm	light flux	$cd \cdot sr$
Lux	lx	light intensity	$lm \cdot m^{-2} = cd \cdot sr \cdot m^{-2}$
Newton	N	force	$m \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Ohm	$\Omega$	electrical resistance	$V \cdot A^{-1} = m^2 \cdot kg^{-1} \cdot s^3 \cdot A^{-2}$
Pascal	P	pressure	$N \cdot m^{-2} = m^{-1} \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Siemens	S	conductivity	$\Omega^{-1} = m^{-2} \cdot kg^{-1} \cdot s^3 \cdot A^2$
Steradian	sr	measure of solid angle <sup>1</sup>	$1 (m^2 \cdot m^{-2})$
Tesla	T	magnetic flux density	$Wb \cdot m^{-2} = kg \cdot s^{-2} \cdot A^{-1}$
Volt	V	electric potential	$W \cdot A^{-1} = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-3} \cdot A^{-1}$
Watt	W	electric power	$J \cdot s^{-1} = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-3}$
Weber	Wb	magnetic flux	$V \cdot s = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2} \cdot A^{-1}$

<sup>1</sup> The solid angle of a sphere is defined as the angle subtended at the center of a sphere by an area (A) on its surface times the square of its radius ( $r^2$ ). A steradian (sr) is the solid angle for which  $r = 1$  m and  $A = 1$  m<sup>2</sup>, that is,  $1 \text{ sr} = 1 \text{ m}^2/\text{m}^2$ .

**Table 2** Prefixes for fractions and multiples of units of measure

Prefix	Symbol	Factor	Prefix	Symbol	Factor
deca-	da	$10^1$	deci-	d	$10^{-1}$
hecto-	h	$10^2$	centi-	c	$10^{-2}$
kilo-	k	$10^3$	milli-	m	$10^{-3}$
mega-	M	$10^6$	micro-	$\mu$	$10^{-6}$
giga-	G	$10^9$	nano-	n	$10^{-9}$
tera-	T	$10^{12}$	pico-	p	$10^{-12}$
peta-	P	$10^{15}$	femto-	f	$10^{-15}$
exa-	E	$10^{18}$	atto-	a	$10^{-18}$

Conversion of American and British volume units into SI units:

- 1 fluid ounce (USA) = 29.57 mL
- 1 fluid ounce (UK) = 28.47 mL
- 1 liquid gallon (USA) = 3.785 L
- 1 liquid gallon (UK) = 4.546 L
- 1 pint (USA) = 473.12 mL
- 1 pint (UK) = 569.4 mL

### Velocity, Frequency, Acceleration

**Velocity** is the *distance traveled per unit time* ( $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ). This is an expression of **linear velocity**, whereas “**volume velocity**” is used to express the *volume flow per unit time*. The latter is expressed as  $\text{L} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$  or  $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ .

**Frequency** is used to describe how often a periodic event (pulse, breathing, etc.) occurs per unit time. The SI unit of frequency is  $\text{s}^{-1}$  or *hertz* (Hz).  $\text{min}^{-1}$  is also commonly used:  
 $\text{min}^{-1} = 1/60 \text{ Hz} \approx 0.0167 \text{ Hz}$ .

**Acceleration**, or *velocity change per unit time*, is expressed in  $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} = \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ . Since *deceleration* is equivalent to negative acceleration, acceleration and deceleration can both be expressed in  $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ .

### Force and Pressure

**Force** equals *mass times acceleration*. **Weight** is a special case of force as weight equals *mass times acceleration of gravity*. Since the unit of mass is kg and that of acceleration  $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ , force is expressed in  $\text{m} \cdot \text{kg} \cdot \text{s}^{-2} = \text{newton}$  (N). The older units of force are converted into N as follows:

- 1 dyn =  $10^{-5} \text{ N} = 10 \mu\text{N}$
- 1 pond =  $9.8 \cdot 10^{-3} \text{ N} = 9.8 \text{ mN}$ .

**Pressure** equals *force per unit area*, so the SI unit of pressure is  $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} = \text{pascal}$  (Pa). However, the pressure of bodily fluids is usually measured in *mm Hg*. This unit and other units are converted into SI units as follows:

- 1 mm H<sub>2</sub>O  $\approx 9.8 \text{ Pa}$
- 1 cm H<sub>2</sub>O  $\approx 98 \text{ Pa}$
- 1 mm Hg = 133.3 Pa = 0.1333 kPa
- 1 torr = 133.3 Pa = 0.1333 kPa
- 1 technical atmosphere (at)  $\approx 98.067 \text{ kPa}$
- 1 physical atmosphere (atm) = 101.324 kPa
- 1 dyne  $\cdot \text{cm}^{-2} = 0.1 \text{ Pa}$
- 1 bar = 100 kPa.

### Work, Energy, Heat, Power

**Work** equals *force times distance*,  $\text{N} \cdot \text{m} = \text{J}$  (*joule*), or *pressure times volume*,  $(\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}) \cdot \text{m}^3 = \text{J}$ . **Energy** and **heat** are also expressed in J.

Other units of work, heat, and energy are converted into J as follows:

- 1 erg =  $10^{-7} \text{ J} = 0.1 \mu\text{J}$
- 1 cal  $\approx 4.185 \text{ J}$
- 1 kcal  $\approx 4185 \text{ J} = 4.185 \text{ kJ}$
- 1 Ws = 1 J
- 1 kWh =  $3.6 \cdot 10^6 \text{ J} = 3.6 \text{ MJ}$ .

**Power** equals *work per unit time* and is expressed in *watts* (W), where  $W = \text{J} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ . Heat flow is also expressed in W. Other units of power are converted into W as follows:

- 1 erg  $\cdot \text{s}^{-1} = 10^{-7} \text{ W} = 0.1 \mu\text{W}$
- 1 cal  $\cdot \text{h}^{-1} = 1.163 \cdot 10^{-3} \text{ W} = 1.163 \text{ mW}$
- 1 metric horse power (hp) = 735.5 W = 0.7355 kW.

### Mass, Amount of Substance

The base unit of **mass** is the kilogram (kg), which is unusual insofar as the base unit bears the prefix “kilo”. Moreover, 1000 kg is defined as a *metric ton\** instead of as a megagram. **Weight** is the product of mass and gravity (see above), but weight scales are usually calibrated in units of mass (g, kg).

British and American units of mass are converted into SI units as follows.

- Avoirdupois weight:*
- 1 ounce (oz.) = 28.35 g
- 1 pound (lb.) = 453.6 g
- Apothecary's and troy weight:*
- 1 ounce = 31.1 g
- 1 pound = 373.2 g.

The mass of a molecule or an atom (**molecular** or **atomic mass**) is often expressed in *daltons* (Da)\*. 1 Da = 1/12 the mass of a <sup>12</sup>C atom, equivalent to 1 g/Avogadro's constant = 1 g/(6.022  $\cdot 10^{23}$ ):

- 1 Da =  $1.66 \cdot 10^{-24} \text{ g}$
- 1000 Da = 1 kDa.

The **relative molecular mass ( $M_r$ )**, or *molecular weight*, is the molecular mass of a substance divided by 1/12 the mass of a  $^{12}\text{C}$  atom. Since  $M_r$  is a ratio, it is a dimensionless unit.

The **amount of substance**, or *mole* (mol), is related to mass. One mole of substance contains as many elementary particles (atoms, molecules, ions) as 12 g of the nuclide of a  $^{12}\text{C}$  atom =  $6.022 \cdot 10^{23}$  particles. The *conversion factor between moles and mass* is therefore: 1 mol equals the mass of substance (in grams) corresponding to the relative molecular, ionic, or atomic mass of the substance. In other words, it expresses how much higher the mass of the atom, molecule, or ion is than 1/12 that of a  $^{12}\text{C}$  atom.

*Examples:*

- Relative molecular mass of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : 18  
→ 1 mol  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  = 18 g  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
- Relative atomic mass of Na: 23  
→ 1 mol  $\text{Na}^+$  = 23 g  $\text{Na}^+$ .
- Relative molecular mass of  $\text{CaCl}_2$ :  
=  $40 + (2 \cdot 35.5) = 111$   
→ 1 mol  $\text{CaCl}_2$  = 111 g  $\text{CaCl}_2$ .  
( $\text{CaCl}_2$  contains 2 mol  $\text{Cl}^-$  and 1 mol  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .)

The **equivalent mass** is calculated as moles divided by the valency of the ion in question and expressed in *equivalents* (Eq)<sup>\*</sup>. The mole and equivalent values of *monovalent ions* are identical:

$$1 \text{ Eq Na}^+ = 1/1 \text{ mol Na}^+.$$

For bivalent ions, equivalent = 1/2 mole:

$$1 \text{ Eq Ca}^{2+} = 1/2 \text{ mole Ca}^{2+} \text{ or } 1 \text{ mole Ca}^{2+} = 2 \text{ Eq Ca}^{2+}.$$

The **osmole (Osm)** is also derived from the mole (see below).

### Electrical Units

Electrical **current** is the flow of charged particles, e.g., of electrons through a wire or of ions through a cell membrane. The number of particles moving per unit time is measured in *amperes* (A). Electrical current cannot occur unless there is an **electrical potential difference**, in short also called potential, voltage, or tension. Batteries and generators are used to create such potentials. Most electrical potentials in the body are generated by ionic flow (→ p. 32). The *volt* (V) is the SI unit of electrical potential (→ **Table 1**).

How much electrical current flows at a given potential depends on the amount of **electrical resistance**, as is described in *Ohm's law*

(voltage = current · resistance). The unit of electrical resistance is *ohm* ( $\Omega$ ) (→ **Table 1**). *Conductivity* is the reciprocal of resistance ( $1/\Omega$ ) and is expressed in *siemens* (S), where  $S = \Omega^{-1}$ . In membrane physiology, resistance is related to the membrane surface area ( $\Omega \cdot \text{m}^2$ ). The reciprocal of this defines the **membrane conductance** to a given ion:  $\Omega^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} = \text{S} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$  (→ p. 32).

Electrical **work** or **energy** is expressed in *joules* (J) or *watt seconds* (Ws), whereas electrical **power** is expressed in *watts* (W).

The electrical **capacitance** of a capacitor, e.g., a cell membrane, is the ratio of *charge* (C) to *potential* (V); it is expressed in *farads* (F) (→ **Table 1**, p. 379).

**Direct current** (DC) always flows in one direction, whereas the direction of flow of **alternating current** (AC) constantly changes. The **frequency** of one cycle of change per unit time is expressed in *hertz* (Hz). Mains current is generally 60 Hz in the USA and 50 Hz in Europe.

### Temperature

**Kelvin** (K) is the SI unit of temperature. The lowest possible temperature is 0 K, or *absolute zero*. The **Celsius** or **centigrade** scale is derived from the Kelvin scale. The temperature in degrees Celsius ( $^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) can easily be converted into K:

$$^{\circ}\text{C} = \text{K} - 273.15.$$

In the USA, temperatures are normally given in degrees Fahrenheit ( $^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). Conversions between Fahrenheit and Celsius are made as follows:

$$^{\circ}\text{F} = (9/5 \cdot ^{\circ}\text{C}) + 32$$

$$^{\circ}\text{C} = (^{\circ}\text{F} - 32) \cdot 5/9.$$

Some important Kelvin, Celsius, and Fahrenheit temperature equivalents:

	K	$^{\circ}\text{C}$	$^{\circ}\text{F}$
Freezing point of water	+273	0 $^{\circ}$	+32 $^{\circ}$
Room temperature	293–298	20 $^{\circ}$ –25 $^{\circ}$	68 $^{\circ}$ –77 $^{\circ}$
Body core temperature	310	37 $^{\circ}$	98.6 $^{\circ}$
Fever	311–315	38 $^{\circ}$ –42 $^{\circ}$	100 $^{\circ}$ –108 $^{\circ}$
Boiling point of water (at sea level)	373	100 $^{\circ}$	212 $^{\circ}$

**Concentrations, Fractions, Activity**

The word **concentration** is used to describe many different relationships in physiology and medicine. Concentration of a substance X is often abbreviated as [X]. Some concentrations are listed below:

- Mass concentration*, or the mass of a substance per unit volume (e.g., g/L = kg/m<sup>3</sup>)
- Molar concentration*, or the amount of a substance per unit volume (e.g., mol/L)
- Molal concentration*, or the amount of substance per unit mass of solvent (e.g., mol/kg H<sub>2</sub>O).

The SI unit of **mass concentration** is g/L (kg/m<sup>3</sup>, mg/L, etc.). The conversion factors for older units are listed below:

- 1 g/100 mL = 10 g/L
- 1 g% = 10 g/L
- 1 % (w/v) = 10 g/L
- 1 g‰ = 1 g/L
- 1 mg% = 10 mg/L
- 1 mg/100 mL = 10 mg/L
- 1 μg% = 10 μg/L
- 1 γ% = 10 μg/L.

**Molarity** is the **molar concentration**, which is expressed in mol/L (or mol/m<sup>3</sup>, mmol/L, etc.). Conversion factors are listed below:

- 1 M (molar) = 1 mol/L
- 1 N (normal) = (1/valency) · mol/L
- 1 mM (mmolar) = 1 mmol/L
- 1 Eq/L = (1/valency) · mol/L

In highly diluted solutions, the only difference between the molar and molal concentrations is that the equation “1 L H<sub>2</sub>O = 1 kg H<sub>2</sub>O” holds at only one particular temperature (4°C). Biological fluids are not highly diluted solutions. The volume of solute particles often makes up a significant fraction of the overall volume of the solution. One liter of plasma, for example, contains 70 mL of proteins and salts and only 0.93 L of water. In this case, there is a 7% difference between molarity and molality. Differences higher than 30% can occur in intracellular fluid. Although molarity is more commonly measured (volumetric measurement), molality plays a more important role in biophysical and biological processes and chemical reactions.

The **activity** (a) of a solution is a thermodynamic measure of its physicochemical efficacy. In physiology, the activity of ions is measured by ion-sensi-

tive electrodes (e.g., for H<sup>+</sup>, Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, Cl<sup>-</sup>, or Ca<sup>2+</sup>). The activity and molality of a solution are identical when the total **ionic strength** (μ) of the solution is very small, e.g., when the solution is an ideal solution. The ionic strength is dependent on the charge and concentration of all ions in the solution:

$$\mu = 0.5 (z_1^2 \cdot c_1 + z_2^2 \cdot c_2 + \dots + z_i^2 \cdot c_i) \quad [13.1]$$

where z<sub>i</sub> is the valency and c<sub>i</sub> the molal concentration of a given ion “i”, and 1, 2, etc. represent the different types of ions in the solution. Owing to the high ionic strength of biological fluids, the solute particles influence each other. Consequently, the activity (a) of a solution is always significantly lower than its molar concentration (c). Activity is calculated as a = f · c, where f is the **activity coefficient**.

*Example:* At an ionic strength of 0.1 (as it is the case for a solution containing 100 mmol NaCl/kg H<sub>2</sub>O), f = 0.76 for Na<sup>+</sup>. The activity important in biophysical processes is therefore roughly 25% lower than the molality of the solution.

In solutions that contain weak electrolytes which do not completely dissociate, the molality and activity of free ions also depend on the **degree of electrolytic dissociation**.

**Fractions** (“fractional concentrations”) are relative units:

- *Mass ratio*, i.e., mass fraction relative to total mass
- *Molar ratio*
- *Volume ratio*, i.e. volume fraction relative to total volume. The volume fraction (F) is commonly used in respiratory physiology.

Fractions are expressed in units of g/g, mol/mol, and L/L respectively, i.e. in “units” of 1, 10<sup>-3</sup>, 10<sup>-6</sup>, etc. The unabbreviated unit (e.g., g/g) should be used whenever possible because it identifies the type of fraction in question. The fractions %, ‰, ppm (parts per million), and ppb (parts per billion) are used for all types of fractions.

Conversion:

- 1% = 0.01
- 1‰ = 1 · 10<sup>-3</sup>
- 1 vol% = 0.01 L/L
- 1 ppm = 1 · 10<sup>-6</sup>
- 1 ppb = 1 · 10<sup>-9</sup>

**Osmolality, Osmotic / Oncotic Pressure**

**Osmolality** (Osm/L), a unit derived from molarity, is the **concentration of all osmotically active particles** in a solution, regardless of which compounds or mixtures are involved.

However, measurements with osmometers as well as the biophysical application of osmotic concentration refer to the number of osmoles per unit volume of *solvent* as opposed to the total volume of the solution. This and the fact that volume is temperature-dependent are the reasons why **osmolality** (Osm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O) is generally more suitable.

**Ideal osmolality** is derived from the molality of the substances in question. If, for example, 1 mmol (180 mg) of glucose is dissolved in 1 kg of water (1 L at 4°C), the molality equals 1 mmol/kg H<sub>2</sub>O and the ideal osmolality equals 1 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O. This relationship changes when electrolytes that dissociate are used, e.g., NaCl ⇌ Na<sup>+</sup> + Cl<sup>-</sup>. Both of these ions are osmotically active. When a substance that dissociates is dissolved in 1 kg of water, the ideal osmolality equals the molality times the number of dissociation products, e.g., 1 mmol NaCl/kg H<sub>2</sub>O = 2 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O.

Electrolytes weaker than NaCl do not dissociate completely. Therefore, their *degree of electrolytic dissociation* must be considered.

These rules apply only to ideal solutions, i.e., those that are extremely dilute. As mentioned above, bodily fluids are **nonideal (or real) solutions** because their real osmolality is lower than the ideal osmolality. The real osmolality is calculated by multiplying the ideal osmolality by the *osmotic coefficient* (g). The osmotic coefficient is concentration-dependent and amounts to, for example, approximately 0.926 for NaCl with an (ideal) osmolality of 300 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O. The real osmolality of this NaCl solution thus amounts to 0.926 · 300 = 278 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O.

Solutions with a real osmolality equal to that of plasma (≈ 290 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O) are said to be isosmolal. Those whose osmolality is higher or lower than that of plasma are hyperosmolal or hyposmolal.

### Osmolality and Tonicity

Each osmotically active particle in solution (cf. real osmolality) exerts an **osmotic pressure** (π) as described by *van't Hoff's equation*:

$$\pi = R \cdot T \cdot c_{\text{osm}} \quad [13.2]$$

where R is the universal gas constant (8.314 J · K<sup>-1</sup> · Osm<sup>-1</sup>), T is the absolute temperature in K, and c<sub>osm</sub> is the real osmolality in Osm · (m<sup>3</sup>

H<sub>2</sub>O)<sup>-1</sup> = mOsm · (L H<sub>2</sub>O)<sup>-1</sup>. If two solutions of different osmolality (Δc<sub>osm</sub>) are separated by a water-permeable **selective membrane**, Δc<sub>osm</sub> will exert an **osmotic pressure difference** (Δπ) across the membrane in steady state if the membrane is less permeable to the solutes than to water. In this case, the *selectivity* of the membrane, or its relative impermeability to the solutes, is described by the **reflection coefficient** (σ), which is assigned a value between 1 (impermeable) and 0 (as permeable as water). The reflection coefficient of a *semi-permeable membrane* is σ = 1. By combining **van't Hoff's** and **Staverman's equations**, the osmotic pressure difference (Δπ) can be calculated as follows:

$$\Delta\pi = \sigma \cdot R \cdot T \cdot \Delta c_{\text{osm}}. \quad [13.3]$$

Equation 13.3 shows that a solution with the same osmolality as plasma will exert the same osmotic pressure on a membrane in steady state (i.e., that the solution and plasma will be *isotonic*) only if σ = 1. In other words, the membrane must be strictly semipermeable.

*Isotonicity*, or equality of osmotic pressure, exists between plasma and the cytosol of red blood cells (and other cells of the body) in steady state. When the red cells are mixed in a urea solution with an osmolality of 290 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O, isotonicity does not prevail after urea (σ < 1) starts to diffuse into the red cells. The interior of the red blood cells therefore becomes hypertonic, and water is drawn inside the cell due to osmosis (→ p. 24). As a result, the erythrocytes continuously swell until they burst.

An **osmotic gradient** resulting in the subsequent flow of water therefore occurs in all parts of the body in which dissolved particles pass through water-permeable cell membranes or cell layers. This occurs, for example, when Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup> pass through the epithelium of the small intestine or proximal renal tubule. The extent of this water flow or *volume flow* J<sub>v</sub> (m<sup>3</sup> · s<sup>-1</sup>) is dependent on the *hydraulic conductivity* k (m · s<sup>-1</sup> · Pa<sup>-1</sup>) of the membrane (i.e., its permeability to water), the *area* A of passage (m<sup>2</sup>), and the pressure difference, which, in this case, is equivalent to the osmotic pressure difference Δπ (Pa):

$$J_v = k \cdot A \cdot \Delta\pi \text{ [m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}\text{]}. \quad [13.4]$$

Since it is normally not possible to separately determine  $k$  and  $A$  of a biological membrane or cell layer, the product of the two ( $k \cdot A$ ) is often calculated as the *ultrafiltration coefficient*  $K_f$  ( $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1} \text{Pa}^{-1}$ ) (cf. p. 152).

The transport of osmotically active particles causes water flow. Inversely, flowing water drags dissolved particles along with it. This type of *solvent drag* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24) is a form of convective transport.

Solvent drag does not occur if the cell wall is impermeable to the substance in question ( $\sigma = 1$ ). Instead, the water will be retained on the side where the substance is located. In the case of the aforementioned epithelia, this means that the substances that cannot be reabsorbed from the tubule or intestinal lumen lead to osmotic diuresis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 174) and diarrhea respectively. The latter is the mechanism of action of saline laxatives ( $\rightarrow$  p. 264).

### Oncotic Pressure / Colloid Osmotic Pressure

As all other particles dissolved in plasma, macromolecular proteins also exert an osmotic pressure referred to as *oncotic pressure* or *colloid osmotic pressure*. Considering its contribution of only 3.5 kPa (25 mm Hg) relative to the total osmotic pressure of the small molecular components of plasma, the oncotic pressure on a strictly semipermeable membrane could be defined as negligible. However, within the body, oncotic pressure is so important because the **endothelium** that lines the blood vessels allows small molecules to pass relatively easily ( $\sigma \approx 0$ ). According to equation 13.3, their osmotic pressure difference  $\Delta\pi$  at the endothelium is virtually zero. Consequently, only the oncotic pressure difference of proteins is effective, as the endothelium is either partly or completely impermeable to them, depending on the capillary segment in question. Because the protein reflection coefficient  $\sigma \gg 0$  and the protein content of the plasma (ca. 75 g/L) are higher than that of the interstitium, these two factors *counteract filtration*, i.e., the blood pressure-driven outflow of plasma water from the endothelial lumen, making the endothelium an effective volume barrier between the plasma space and the interstitium.

If the blood pressure drives water out of the blood into the interstitium (filtration), the

plasma protein concentration and thus the oncotic pressure difference  $\pi$  will rise ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 152, 210). This rise is much higher than equation 13.3 leads one to expect ( $\rightarrow$  A). The difference is attributable to specific biophysical properties of plasma proteins. If there is a pressure-dependent efflux or influx of water out of or into the bloodstream, these relatively high changes in oncotic pressure difference automatically exert a counterpressure that limits the flow of water.

### pH, pK, Buffers

The **pH** indicates the hydrogen ion  $[\text{H}^+]$  concentration of a solution. According to *Sørensen*, the pH is the negative common logarithm of the molal  $\text{H}^+$  concentration in mol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

*Examples:*

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} &= 10^0 \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} = \text{pH } 0, \\ 0.1 \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} &= 10^{-1} \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} = \text{pH } 1, \\ \text{and so on up to } &10^{-14} \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} = \text{pH } 14. \end{aligned}$$

Since glass electrodes are normally used to measure the pH, the  **$\text{H}^+$  activity** of the solution is actually being determined. Thus, the following rule applies:

$$\text{pH} = -\log (f_{\text{H}^+} \cdot [\text{H}^+]),$$

where  $f_{\text{H}^+}$  is the activity coefficient of  $\text{H}^+$ . Considering its ionic concentration (see above), the  $f_{\text{H}^+}$  of plasma is  $\approx 0.8$ .

The logarithmic nature of pH must be considered when observing pH changes. For example, a rise in pH from 7.4 (40 nmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) to pH 7.7 decreases the  $\text{H}^+$  activity by 20 nmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , whereas an equivalent decrease (e.g., from pH 7.4 to pH 7.1) increases the  $\text{H}^+$  activity by 40 nmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

The **pK** is fundamentally similar to the pH. It is the negative common logarithm of the *dissociation constant* of an acid ( $K_a$ ) or of a base ( $K_b$ ):

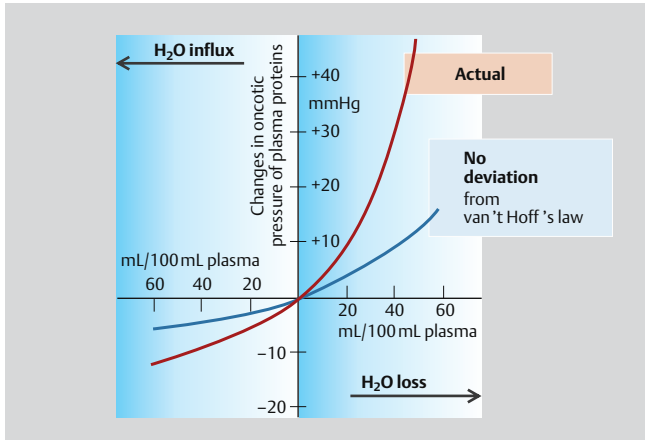
$$\begin{aligned} \text{pK}_a &= -\log K_a \\ \text{pK}_b &= -\log K_b. \end{aligned}$$

For an acid and its corresponding base,  $\text{pK}_a + \text{pK}_b = 14$ , so that the value of  $\text{pK}_a$  can be derived from that of  $\text{pK}_b$  and vice versa.

The *law of mass actions* applies when a weak acid (AH) dissociates:



It states that the product of the molal concentration (indicated by square brackets) of the dissociation products divided by the concentration of the nondissociated substance remains constant:



**A. Physiological significance of deviations on oncotic pressure of plasma from van't Hoff's equation.** A loss of water from plasma leads to a disproportionate rise in oncotic pressure, which counteracts the water loss. Conversely, the dilution of plasma due to the influx of water leads to a disproportionate drop in oncotic pressure, though less pronounced. Both of these are important mechanisms for maintaining a constant blood volume and preventing edema. (Adapted from Landis EM u. Pappenheimer JR. *Handbook of Physiology*. Section 2: Circulation, Vol. II. American Physiological Society: Washington D.C. 1963, S. 975.)

$$K_a = \frac{[A^-] \cdot [H^+]}{[AH]} \quad [13.6]$$

Converted into logarithmic form (and inserting  $H^+$  activity for  $[H^+]$ ), the equation is transformed into:

$$\log K_a = \log \frac{[A^-]}{[AH]} + \log ([H^+] \cdot f_H) \quad [13.7]$$

or

$$-\log ([H^+] \cdot f_H) = -\log K_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[AH]} \quad [13.8]$$

Based on the above definitions for pH and  $pK_a$ , it can also be converted into

$$pH = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[AH]} \quad [13.9]$$

Because the concentration and not the activity of  $A^-$  and  $AH$  is used in equation 13.9,  $pK_a$  is concentration-dependent in nonideal solutions.

Equation 13.9 is the general form of the **Henderson-Hasselbalch equation** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 138ff.), which describes the relationship between the pH of a solution and the concentration ratio of a dissociated to an undissociated form of a solute. If  $[A^-] = [AH]$ , then the concentration ratio is  $1/1 = 1$ , which corresponds to  $pH = pK_a$  since the  $\log$  of  $1 = 0$ .

A weak acid ( $AH$ ) and its dissociated salt ( $A^-$ ) form a **buffer system** for  $H^+$  and  $OH^-$  ions:

Addition of  $H^+$  yields  $A^- + H^+ \rightarrow AH$

Addition of  $OH^-$  yields  $AH + OH^- \rightarrow A^- + H_2O$ .

The **buffering power** of a buffer system is greatest when  $[AH] = [A^-]$ , i.e., when the pH of the solution equals the  $pK_a$  of the buffer.

**Example:** Both  $[A^-]$  and  $[AH] = 10$  mmol/L and  $pK_a = 7.0$ . After addition of 2 mmol/L of  $H^+$  ions, the  $[A^-]/[AH]$  ratio changes from  $10/10$  to  $8/12$  since 2 mmol/L of  $A^-$  are consequently converted into 2 mmol/L of  $AH$ . Since the  $\log$  of  $8/12 \approx -0.18$ , the pH decreases

by 0.18 units to pH 6.82. If the initial  $[A^-]/[AH]$  ratio had been 3/17, the pH would have dropped from an initial pH 6.25 (7 plus the log of 3/17 = 6.25) to pH 5.7 (7 + log of 1/19 = 5.7), i.e., by 0.55 pH units after addition of the same quantity of  $H^+$  ions.

The titration of a buffer solution with  $H^+$  (or  $OH^-$ ) can be plotted to generate a **buffering curve** ( $\rightarrow$  B). The steep part of the curve represents the range of the best buffering power. The  $pK_a$  value lies at the *turning point* in the middle of the steep portion of the curve. Substances that gain (or lose) more than one  $H^+$  per molecule have more than one  $pK$  value and can therefore exert an optimal buffering action in several regions. Phosphoric acid ( $H_3PO_4$ ) donates three  $H^+$  ions, thereby successively forming  $H_2PO_4^-$ ,  $HPO_4^{2-}$ , and  $PO_4^{3-}$ . The buffer pair  $HPO_4^{2-}/H_2PO_4^-$  with a  $pK_a$  of 6.8 is important in human physiology ( $\rightarrow$  p. 177ff.).

The absolute slope,  $d[A^-]/d(pH)$ , of a buffering curve (plot of pH vs.  $[A^-]$ ) is a measure of **buffering capacity** ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot [\Delta pH]^{-1}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 138).

## Powers and Logarithms

**Powers of ten** are used to more easily and conveniently write numbers that are much larger or smaller than 1.

*Examples:*

$$100 = 10 \cdot 10 = 10^2$$

$$1000 = 10 \cdot 10 \cdot 10 = 10^3$$

$$10000 = 10 \cdot 10 \cdot 10 \cdot 10 = 10^4, \text{ etc.}$$

In this case, the exponent denotes the amount of times ten is multiplied by itself. If the number is not an exact power of ten (e.g., 34500), divide it by the next lowest decimal power (10000) and use the quotient (3.45) as a multiplier to express the result as  $3.45 \cdot 10^4$ .

The number 10 can also be expressed exponentially ( $10^1$ ). Numbers much smaller than 1 are annotated using negative exponents.

*Examples:*

$$1 = 10 \div 10 = 10^0$$

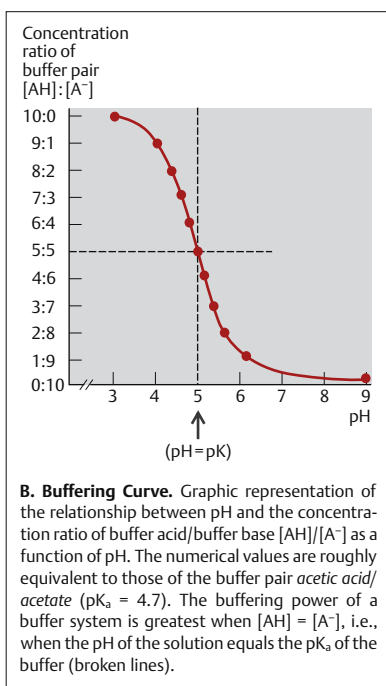
$$0.1 = 10 \div 10 \div 10 = 10^{-1}$$

$$0.01 = 10 \div 10 \div 10 = 10^{-2}, \text{ etc.}$$

Similar to the large numbers above, numbers that are not exact powers of ten are expressed using multipliers, e.g.,

$$0.04 = 4 \cdot 0.01 = 4 \cdot 10^{-2}.$$

*Note:* When writing numbers smaller than 1, the (negative) exponent corresponds to the



**B. Buffering Curve.** Graphic representation of the relationship between pH and the concentration ratio of buffer acid/buffer base  $[AH]/[A^-]$  as a function of pH. The numerical values are roughly equivalent to those of the buffer pair *acetic acid/acetate* ( $pK_a = 4.7$ ). The buffering power of a buffer system is greatest when  $[AH] = [A^-]$ , i.e., when the pH of the solution equals the  $pK_a$  of the buffer (broken lines).

position of the 1 after the decimal point; therefore,  $0.001 = 10^{-3}$ . When writing numbers greater than 10, the exponent corresponds to the number of decimal positions to the left of the decimal point minus 1; therefore,  $1124.5 = 1.245 \cdot 10^3$ .

Exponents can also be used to represent **units of measure**, e.g.,  $m^3$ . As in the case of  $10^3$ , the base element (meters) is multiplied by itself three times ( $m \cdot m \cdot m$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 378). Negative exponents are also used to express units of measure. As with  $1/10 = 10^{-1}$ ,  $1/s$  can be written as  $s^{-1}$ ,  $\text{mol/L}$  as  $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ , etc.

There are specific rules for **performing calculations with powers of ten**. Addition and subtraction are possible only if the exponents are identical, e.g.,

$$(2.5 \cdot 10^2) + (1.5 \cdot 10^2) = 4 \cdot 10^2.$$

Unequal exponents, e.g.,  $(2 \cdot 10^3) + (3 \cdot 10^2)$ , must first be equalized:

$$(2 \cdot 10^3) + (0.3 \cdot 10^3) = 2.3 \cdot 10^3.$$

The exponents of the multiplicands are added together when multiplying powers of 10, and the denominator is subtracted from the numerator when dividing powers of ten.

**Examples:**

$$10^2 \cdot 10^3 = 10^{2+3} = 10^5$$

$$10^4 \div 10^2 = 10^{4-2} = 10^2$$

$$10^2 \div 10^4 = 10^{2-4} = 10^{-2}$$

The usual mathematical rules apply to the multipliers of powers of ten, e.g.,

$$(3 \cdot 10^2) \cdot (2 \cdot 10^3) = (2 \cdot 3) \cdot (10^{2+3}) = 6 \cdot 10^5.$$

**Logarithms.** There are two kinds of logarithms: common and natural. Logarithmic calculations are performed using exponents alone. The **common (decimal) logarithm** ( $\log$  or  $\lg$ ) is the power or exponent to which 10 must be raised to equal the number in question. The common logarithm of 100 ( $\log 100$ ) is 2, for example, because  $10^2 = 100$ . Decimal logarithms are commonly used in physiology, e.g., to define pH values (see above) and to plot the pressure of sound on a decibel scale ( $\rightarrow$  p. 369).

**Natural logarithms** ( $\ln$ ) have a natural base of 2.71828..., also called *base e*. The common logarithm ( $\log x$ ) equals the natural logarithm of  $x$  ( $\ln x$ ) divided by the natural logarithm of 10 ( $\ln 10$ ), where  $\ln 10 = 2.302585$ . The following rules apply when converting between natural and common logarithms:

$$\log x = (\ln x)/2.3$$

$$\ln x = 2.3 \cdot \log x.$$

When performing mathematical operations with logarithms, the type of operation is reduced by one rank—multiplication becomes addition, potentiation becomes multiplication, and so on.

**Examples:**

$$\log(a \cdot b) = \log a + \log b$$

$$\log(a/b) = \log a - \log b$$

$$\log a^n = n \cdot \log a$$

$$\log \sqrt[n]{a} = (\log a)/n$$

**Special cases:**

$$\log 10 = \ln e = 1$$

$$\log 1 = \ln 1 = 0$$

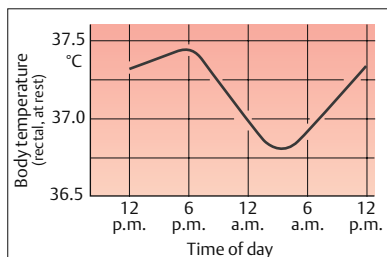
$$\log 0 = \ln 0 = \pm \infty$$

## Graphic Representation of Data

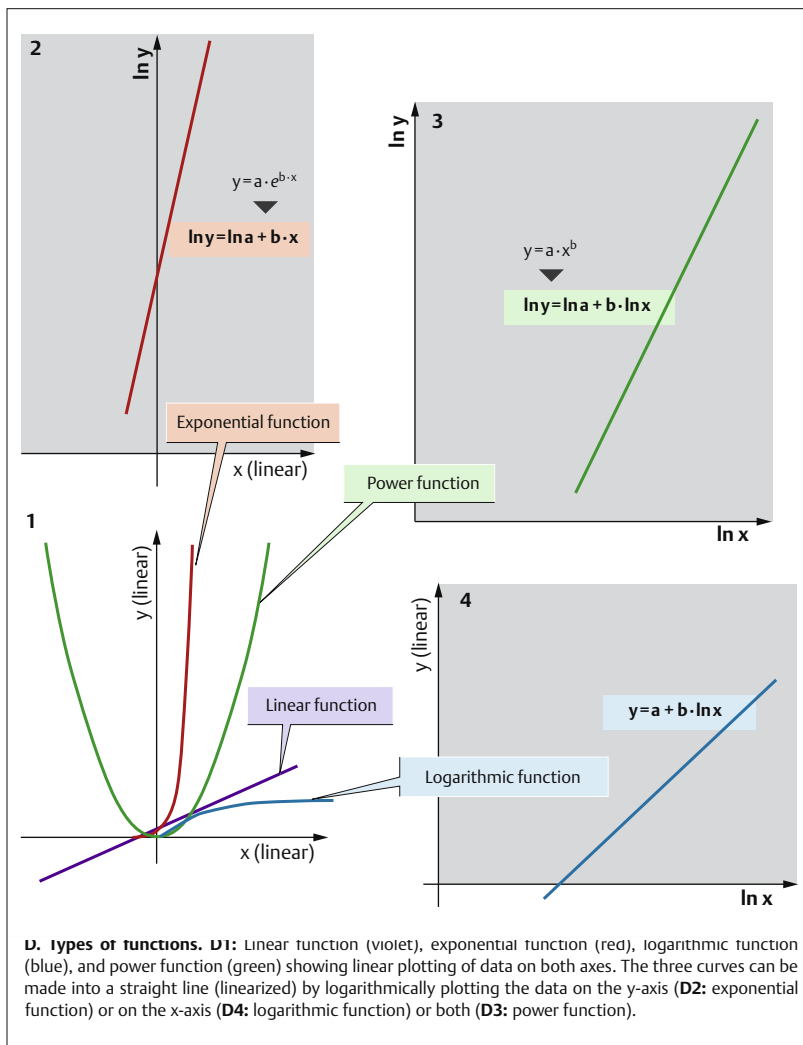
Graphic plots of data are used to provide a clear and concise representation of measurements, e.g., body temperature over the time of day ( $\rightarrow$  C). The axes on which the measurements (e.g., temperature and time) are plotted are called **coordinates**. The vertical axis is referred to as the *ordinate* (temperature) and the horizontal axis is the *abscissa* (time). It is customary to plot the first variable  $x$  (time) on the abscissa and the other dependent variable  $y$  (temperature) on the ordinate. The abscissa is therefore called the *x-axis* and the ordinate the *y-axis*. This method of graphically plotting data can be used to illustrate the connection between any two related dimensions imaginable, e.g., to describe the relationship between height and age, lung capacity and intrapulmonary pressure, etc. ( $\rightarrow$  p. 117).

Plotting of data makes it easier to determine whether two variables correlate with each other. For example, the plot of height (ordinate) over age (abscissa) shows that the height increases during the growth years and reaches a plateau at the age of about 17 years. This means that height is related to age in the first phase of life, but is largely independent of age in the second phase. A correlation does not necessarily indicate a causal relationship. A decrease in the birth rate in Alsace-Lorraine, for example, correlated with a decrease in the number or nesting storks for a while.

When plotting variables of wide-ranging dimensions (e.g., 1 to 100 000) on a coordinate



**C. Illustration of how to plot data on a coordinate system.** The plot in this example shows the relationship between body temperature (rectal, at rest) and time of day.



system, it can be impossible to plot small values individually without having the axes become extremely long. This problem can be solved by plotting the data as powers of 10 or logarithms. For example, 1, 10, 100, and 1000 are written as  $10^0$ ,  $10^1$ ,  $10^2$ , and  $10^3$  or as logarithms 0, 1, 2, and 3. This makes it possible to

obtain a relatively accurate graphic representation of very small numbers, and all the numbers fit on an axis of reasonable length (cf. sound curves on p. 369 B).

Correlations can be either linear or non-linear. *Linear correlations* ( $\rightarrow$  D1, violet line) obey the linear relationship

$$y = ax + b,$$

where  $a$  is the slope of the line and  $b$  is the point, or *intercept* (at  $x = 0$ ), where it intersects the  $y$ -axis.

Many correlations are nonlinear. For simpler functions, graphic linearization can be achieved via a nonlinear (logarithmic) plot of the  $x$  and/or  $y$  values. This allows for the extrapolation of values beyond the range of measurement (see below) or for the generation of calibration curves from only two points. In addition, this method also permits the calculation of the “mean” correlation of scattered  $x$ - $y$  pairs using *regression lines*.

An **exponential function** ( $\rightarrow$  D1, red curve), such as

$$y = a \cdot e^{b \cdot x},$$

can be linearized by plotting  $\ln y$  on the  $y$ -axis ( $\rightarrow$  D2):

$$\ln y = \ln a + b \cdot x,$$

where  $b$  is the slope and  $\ln a$  is the intercept.

A **logarithmic function** ( $\rightarrow$  D1, blue curve), such as

$$y = a + b \cdot \ln x,$$

can be linearized by plotting  $\ln x$  on the  $x$ -axis ( $\rightarrow$  D4), where  $b$  is the slope and  $a$  is the intercept.

A **power function** ( $\rightarrow$  D1, green curve), such as

$$y = a \cdot x^b,$$

can be graphically linearized by plotting  $\ln y$  and  $\ln x$  on the coordinate axes ( $\rightarrow$  D3) because

$$\ln y = \ln a + b \cdot \ln x,$$

where  $b$  is the slope and  $\ln a$  is the intercept.

Note: The condition  $x$  or  $y = 0$  does not exist on logarithmic coordinates because  $\ln 0 = \infty$ . Nevertheless,  $\ln a$  is still called the intercept in the equation when the logarithmic abscissa ( $\rightarrow$  D3,4) is intercepted by the ordinate at  $\ln x = 0$ , i.e.,  $x = 1$ .

Instead of plotting  $\ln x$  and/or  $\ln y$  on the  $x$ - and/or  $y$ -axis, they can be plotted on **logarithmic paper** on which the ordinate or abscissa (semi-log paper) or both coordinates (log-log paper) are plotted in logarithmic units. In such cases,  $a$  is no longer treated as the intercept because the position of  $a$  depends on site of intersection of the  $x$ -axis by the  $y$ -axis. All values  $> 0$  are possible.

Other nonlinear functions can also be graphically linearized using an appropriate plotting method. Take, for example, the **Michaelis–Menten equation** ( $\rightarrow$  E1), which applies to

many enzyme reactions and carrier-mediated transport processes:

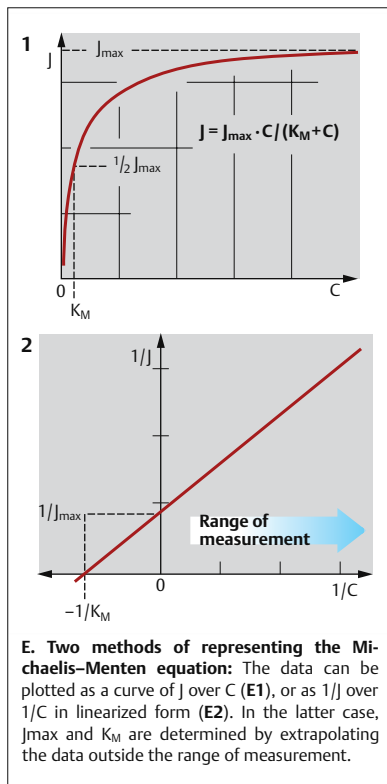
$$J = J_{\max} \cdot \frac{C}{K_M + C} \quad [13.10]$$

where  $J$  is the actual rate of transport (e.g., in  $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ),  $J_{\max}$  is the maximal transport rate,  $C$  ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ) is the actual concentration of the substance to be transported, and  $K_M$  is the concentration (half-saturation concentration) at  $1/2 J_{\max}$ .

One of the three commonly used linear rearrangements of the Michaelis–Menten equation, the *Lineweaver–Burk plot*, states:

$$1/J = (K_M/J_{\max}) \cdot (1/C) + 1/J_{\max}, \quad [13.11]$$

Consequently, a plot of  $1/J$  on the  $y$ -axis and  $1/C$  on the  $x$ -axis results in a straight line ( $\rightarrow$  E2). While a plot of  $J$  over  $C$  ( $\rightarrow$  E1) does not



permit accurate extrapolation of  $J_{\max}$  (because an infinitely high concentration of  $C$  would be required), the linear rearrangement ( $\rightarrow$  E2) makes it possible to generate a regression line that can be *extrapolated* to  $C = \infty$  from the measured data. Since  $1/C$  is equal to  $1/\infty (= 0)$ ,  $1/J_{\max}$  lies on the  $y$ -axis at  $x = 0$  ( $\rightarrow$  E2). The reciprocal of this value is  $J_{\max}$ . Insertion of  $1/J = 0$  into equation 13.11 yields

$$0 = (K_M/J_{\max}) \cdot (1/C) + 1/J_{\max} \quad [13.12]$$

or  $1/K_M = -1/C$ , so that  $K_M$  can be derived from the negative reciprocal of the  $x$ -axis intersect, which corresponds to  $1/J = 0$  ( $\rightarrow$  E2).

### The Greek Alphabet

$\alpha$	A	alpha
$\beta$	B	beta
$\gamma$	$\Gamma$	gamma
$\delta$	$\Delta$	delta
$\varepsilon$	E	epsilon
$\zeta$	Z	zeta
$\eta$	H	eta
$\theta, \vartheta$	$\Theta$	theta
$\iota$	I	iota
$\kappa$	K	kappa
$\lambda$	$\Lambda$	lamda
$\mu$	M	mu
$\nu$	N	nu
$\xi$	$\Xi$	xi
$\omicron$	O	omicron
$\pi$	$\Pi$	pi
$\rho$	P	rho
$\sigma, \varsigma$	$\Sigma$	sigma
$\tau$	T	tau
$\upsilon$	Y	upsilon
$\phi$	$\Phi$	phi
$\chi$	X	chi
$\psi$	$\Psi$	psi
$\omega$	$\Omega$	omega

## Reference Values in Physiology

### Total body and cells

Chemical composition of 1 kg fat-free body mass of an adult

720 g water, 210 g protein, 22.4 g Ca, 12 g P, 2.7 g K, 1.8 g Na, 1.8 g Cl, 0.47 g Mg

Distribution of water in adult (child) as percentage of body weight (cf. p. 168)

Intracellular: 40% (40%); interstitium: 15% (25%); plasma: 5% (5%)

Ion concentrations in ICF and ECF

See p. 93 C

### Cardiovascular system

Weight of heart

250–350 g

Cardiac output at rest (maximal)

5–6 L/min (25 L/min); cf. p. 188

Resting pulse = sinus rhythm

60–75  $\text{min}^{-1}$  or bpm

AV rhythm

40–55  $\text{min}^{-1}$

Ventricular rhythm

25–40  $\text{min}^{-1}$

Arterial blood pressure (Riva–Rocci)

120/80 mm Hg (16/10.7 kPa) systolic/diastolic

Pulmonary artery pressure

20/7 mm Hg (2.7/0.9 kPa) systolic/diastolic

Central venous pressure

3–6 mm Hg (0.4–0.8 kPa)

Portal venous pressure

3–6 mm Hg (0.4–0.8 kPa)

Ventricular volume at end of diastole/systole

120 mL/40 mL

Ejection fraction

0.67

Pressure pulse wave velocity

Aorta: 3–5 m/s; arteries: 5–10 m/s; veins: 1–2 m/s

Mean velocity of blood flow

Aorta: 0.18 m/s; capillaries: 0.0002–0.001 m/s; venae cavae: 0.06 m/s

**Blood flow in organs at rest**

(See also pp. 189A, 215A)

	% of cardiac output	per gram of tissue
Heart	4%	0.8 mL/min
Brain	13%	0.5 mL/min
Kidneys	20%	4 mL/min
GI tract (drained by portal venous system)	16%	0.7 mL/min
Liver (blood supplied by hepatic artery)	8%	0.3 mL/min
Skeletal muscle	21%	0.04 mL/min
Skin and miscellaneous organs	18%	—

**Lungs and gas transport**

	Men	Women
Total lung capacity (TLC)	7 L	6.2 L
Vital capacity (VC); cf. p. 112	5.6 L	5 L
Tidal volume ( $V_T$ ) at rest	0.6 L	0.5 L
Inspiratory reserve volume	3.2 L	2.9 L
Expiratory reserve volume	1.8 L	1.6 L
Residual volume	1.4 L	1.2 L
Max. breathing capacity in 30 breaths/min	110 L	100 L
Partial pressure of $O_2$	Air: 21.17 kPa	(159 mm Hg)
	Alveolar: 13.33 kPa	(100 mm Hg)
	Arterial: 12.66 kPa	(95 mm Hg)
	Venous 5.33 kPa	(40 mm Hg)
Partial pressure of $CO_2$	Air: 0.03 kPa	(0.23 mm Hg)
	Alveolar: 5.2 kPa	(39 mm Hg)
	Arterial: 5.3 kPa	(40 mm Hg)
	Venous: 6.1 kPa	(46 mm Hg)
Respiratory rate (at rest)	16 breaths/min	
Dead space volume	150 mL	
Oxygen capacity of blood	180–200 mL $O_2$ /L blood = 8–9 mmol $O_2$ /L blood	
Respiratory quotient	0.84 (0.7–1.0)	

**Kidney and excretion**

Renal plasma flow (RPF)	480–800 mL/min per 1.73 m <sup>2</sup> body surface area
Glomerular filtration rate (GFR)	80–140 mL/min per 1.73 m <sup>2</sup> body surface area
Filtration fraction (GFR/RPF)	0.19
Urinary output	0.7–1.8 L/day
Osmolality of urine	250–1000 mOsm/kg H <sub>2</sub> O
Na <sup>+</sup> excretion	50–250 mmol/day
K <sup>+</sup> excretion	25–115 mmol/day
Glucose excretion	< 300 mg/day = 1.67 mmol/day
Nitrogen excretion	150–250 mg/kg/day
Protein excretion	10–200 mg/day
Urine pH	4.5–8.2
Titratable acidity	10–30 mmol/day
Urea excretion	10–20 g/day = 166–333 mmol/day
Uric acid excretion	300–800 mg/day = 1.78–6.53 mmol/day
Creatinine excretion	0.56–2.1 g/day = 4.95–18.6 mmol/day

<b>Nutrition and metabolism</b>	<b>Men</b>	<b>Women</b>
Energy expenditure during various activities		
• Bed rest	6500 kJ/d (1550 kcal/d)	5400 kJ/d (1300 kcal/d)
• Light office work	10800 kJ/d (2600 kcal/d)	9600 kJ/d (2300 kcal/d)
• Walking (4.9 km/h)	3.3 kW	2.7 kW
• Sports (dancing, horseback riding, swimming)	4.5–6.8 kW	3.6–5.4 kW
Functional protein minimum	1 g/kg body weight	
Vitamins, optimal daily intake (IU = international units)	A: 10 000–50 000 IU; D: 400–600 IU E: 200–800 IU; K: 65–80 µg; B <sub>1</sub> , B <sub>2</sub> , B <sub>5</sub> , B <sub>6</sub> : 25–300 mg of each; B <sub>12</sub> : 25–300 µg; folate: 0.4–1.2 mg; H: 25–300 µg; C: 500–5000 mg Ca: 1–1.5 g; Cr: 200–600 µg; Cu: 0.5–2 mg; Fe: 15–30 mg; I: 50–300 µg; K <sup>+</sup> : 0.8–1.5 g; Mg: 500–750 mg; Mn: 15–30 mg; Mo: 45–500 µg; Na <sup>+</sup> : 2 g; P: 200–400 mg; Se: 50–400 µg; Zn: 22–50 mg	
Electrolytes and trace elements, optimal daily intake		
<b>Nervous Systems, muscles</b>		
Duration of an action potential	Nerve: 1–2 ms; skeletal muscle: 10 ms; myocardium: 200 ms	
Nerve conduction rate	See p. 49 C	
<b>Blood and other bodily fluids</b> (see also Table p. 88)		
<b>Blood</b> (in adults)	<b>Men:</b>	<b>Women:</b>
Blood volume (also refer to table on p. 88)	4500 mL	3600 mL
Hematocrit	0.40–0.54	0.37–0.47
Red cell count (RBC)	4.5–5.9 · 10 <sup>12</sup> /L	4.2–5.4 · 10 <sup>12</sup> /L
Hemoglobin (Hb) in whole blood	140–180 g/L (2.2–2.8 mmol/L)	120–160 g/L (1.9–2.5 mmol/L)
Mean corpuscular volume (MCV)	80–100 fL	
Mean corpuscular Hb concentration (MCHC)	320–360 g/L	
Mean Hb concentration in single RBC (MCH)	27–32 pg	
Mean RBC diameter	7.2–7.8 µm	
Reticulocytes	0.4–2% (20–75 · 10 <sup>9</sup> /L)	
Leukocytes (also refer to table on p. 88)	3–11 · 10 <sup>9</sup> /L	
Platelets	170–360 · 10 <sup>9</sup> /L	180–400 · 10 <sup>9</sup> /L
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)	< 10 mm in first hour < 20 mm in first hour	
<b>Proteins</b>		
Total	66–85 g/L serum	
Albumin	35–50 g/L serum	55–64% of total
α <sub>1</sub> -globulins	1.3–4 g/L serum	2.5–4% of total
α <sub>2</sub> -globulins	4–9 g/L serum	7–10% of total
β-globulins	6–11 g/L serum	8–12% of total
γ-globulins	13–17 g/L serum	12–20% of total
<b>Coagulation</b> (See p. 102 for coagulation factors)		
Thromboplastin time (Quick)	0.9–1.15 INR (international normalized ratio)	
Partial thromboplastin time	26–42 s	
Bleeding time	< 6 min	

**Parameters of glucose metabolism**

Glucose concentration in venous blood	3.9–5.5 mmol/L	(70–100 mg/dL)
Glucose concentration in capillary blood	4.4–6.1 mmol/L	(80–110 mg/dL)
Glucose concentration in plasma	4.2–6.4 mmol/L	(75–115 mg/dL)
Limit for diabetes mellitus in plasma	> 7.8 mmol/L	(> 140 mg/dL)
HBA <sub>1c</sub> (glycosylated hemoglobin A)	3.2–5.2%	

**Parameters of lipid metabolism**

Triglycerides in serum	< 1.71 mmol/L	(< 150 mg/dL)
Total cholesterol in serum	< 5.2 mmol/L	(< 200 mg/dL)
HDL cholesterol in serum	> 1.04 mmol/L	(> 40 mg/dL)

**Substances excreted in urine**

Urea concentration in serum	3.3–8.3 mmol/L	(20–50 mg/dL)
Uric acid concentration in serum	150–390 μmol/L	(2.6–6.5 mg/dL)
Creatinine concentration in serum	36–106 μmol/L	(0.4–1.2 mg/dL)

**Bilirubin**

Total bilirubin in serum	3.4–17 μmol/L	(0.2–1 mg/dL)
Direct bilirubin in serum	0.8–5.1 μmol/L	(0.05–0.3 mg/dL)

**Electrolytes and blood gases**

Osmolality	280–300 mmol/kg H <sub>2</sub> O	
Cations in serum:	Na <sup>+</sup>	135–145 mmol/L
	K <sup>+</sup>	3.5–5.5 mmol/L
	Ionized Ca <sup>2+</sup>	1.0–1.3 mmol/L
	Ionized Mg <sup>2+</sup>	0.5–0.7 mmol/L
Anions in serum:	Cl <sup>-</sup>	95–108 mmol/L
	H <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> <sup>-</sup> + HPO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	0.8–1.5 mmol/L
pH	7.35–7.45	
Standard bicarbonate	22–26 mmol/L	
Total buffer bases	48 mmol/L	
Oxygen saturation	96% arterial; 65–75% mixed venous	
Partial pressure of O <sub>2</sub> at half saturation (P <sub>0.5</sub> )	3.6 kPa (27 mmHg)	

**Cerebrospinal fluid**

Pressure in relaxed horizontal position	1.4 kPa (10.5 mmHg)
Specific weight	1.006–1.008 g/L
Osmolality	290 mOsm/kg H <sub>2</sub> O
Glucose concentration	45–70 mg/dL (2.5–3.9 mmol/L)
Protein concentration	0.15–0.45 g/L
IgG concentration	< 84 mg/dL
White cell count	< 5 WBC/μL

1. **Fick's law of diffusion** for membrane transport (see also p. 20ff.)

$$J_{\text{diff}} = F \cdot D \cdot \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} \quad [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]$$

$J_{\text{diff}}$  = net diffusion rate [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$A$  = area [ $\text{m}^2$ ];

$D$  = diffusion coefficient [ $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$\Delta C$  = concentration difference [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ];

$\Delta x$  = membrane thickness [ $\text{m}$ ]

*Alternative 1:*

$$\frac{J_{\text{diff}}}{F} = P \cdot \Delta C \quad [\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]$$

$P$  = permeability coefficient [ $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$J_{\text{diff}}$ ,  $A$  and  $\Delta C$ ; see above

*Alternative 2 (for gas diffusion)*

$$\frac{V_{\text{diff}}}{F} = K \cdot \frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} \quad [\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]$$

$V_{\text{diff}}$  = net diffusion rate [ $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$K$  = Krogh's diffusion coefficient [ $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{Pa}^{-1}$ ]

$\Delta P$  = partial pressure difference [ $\text{Pa}$ ]

2. **Van't Hoff–Stavermann equation**

(see also p. 388)

$$\Delta \pi = \sigma \cdot R \cdot T \cdot \Delta c_{\text{osm}} \quad [\text{Pa}]$$

$\Delta \pi$  = osmotic pressure difference [ $\text{Pa}$ ]

$\sigma$  = reflection coefficient [dimensionless]

$R$  = universal gas constant [ $8.3144 \cdot \text{J} \cdot \text{K}^{-1} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ];

$T$  = absolute temperature [ $\text{K}$ ];

$\Delta c_{\text{osm}}$  = concentration difference of

osmotically active particles [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ].

3. **Michaelis-Menten equation**

(see also pp. 28, 389ff.)

$$J_{\text{sat}} = J_{\text{max}} \cdot \frac{C}{K_M + C} \quad [\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}],$$

$J_{\text{sat}}$  = substrate transport (turnover)

[ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$J_{\text{max}}$  = maximum substrate transport

(turnover) [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$C$  = substrate concentration [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ];

$K_M$  = Michaelis constant = substrate concentration at  $1/2 J_{\text{max}}$  [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ].

4. **Nernst equation** (see also p. 32)

$$E_x = -61 \cdot z_x^{-1} \cdot \log \frac{[X]_i}{[X]_a} \quad [\text{mV}]$$

$E_x$  = equilibrium potential of ion X [ $\text{mV}$ ];

$z_x$  = valency of ion X;

$[X]_i$  = intracellular concentration of ion X [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ]

$[X]_a$  = extracellular concentration of ion X [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ].

5. **Ohm's Law** (see also pp. 32, 188)

a. *For ion transport at membrane*

$$I_x = g_x \cdot (E_m - E_x) \quad [A \cdot \text{m}^{-2}]$$

$I_x$  = ionic current of ion X per unit area of membrane [ $A \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ];

$g_x$  = conductance of membrane to ion X [ $S \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ];

$E_m$  = membrane potential [ $V$ ];

$E_x$  = equilibrium potential of ion X [ $V$ ]

b. *For blood flow:*

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{\Delta P}{R} \quad [L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$\dot{Q}$  = flow rate (total circulation:

cardiac output, CO) [ $L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ]

$\Delta P$  = mean blood pressure difference

(systemic circulation:  $\bar{P}_{\text{aorta}} - \bar{P}_{\text{vena cava}}$ ;

lesser circulation:  $\bar{P}_{\text{pulmonary artery}} - \bar{P}_{\text{pulmonary vein}}$ ) [ $\text{mmHg}$ ]

$R$  = flow resistance (systemic circulation:

flow

total peripheral resistance = TPR)

[ $\text{mmHg} \cdot \text{min} \cdot L^{-1}$ ].

6. **Respiration-related equations**

(see also pp. 106, 120)

a. *Tidal volume ( $V_T$ ):*

$$V_T = V_D + V_A \quad [L]$$

b. *Respiratory volume per time*

( $\dot{V}_E$  oder  $\dot{V}_T$ ):

$$\dot{V}_E = f \cdot V_T = (f \cdot V_D) + (f \cdot V_A) =$$

$$\dot{V}_D + \dot{V}_A \quad [L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

c. *O<sub>2</sub> consumption, CO<sub>2</sub> emission, and RQ (total body):*

$$\dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{V}_T (F_{IO_2} - F_{EO_2}) = CO \cdot avDO_2 \quad [L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$$\dot{V}_{CO_2} = \dot{V}_T \cdot F_{ECO_2} \quad [L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$$RQ = \frac{\dot{V}_{CO_2}}{\dot{V}_{O_2}}$$

- $V_D$  = dead space [L];  
 $V_A$  = alveolar fraction of  $V_T$  [L];  
 $f$  = respiration rate [ $\text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $\dot{V}_D$  = dead space ventilation [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $\dot{V}_A$  = alveolar ventilation [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  =  $O_2$  consumption [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$  =  $CO_2$  emission [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $FI_{O_2}$  = inspiratory  $O_2$  fraction [L/L];  
 $FE_{O_2}$  = expiratory  $O_2$  fraction [L/L];  
 $FE_{CO_2}$  = expiratory  $CO_2$  fraction [L/L];  
 $RQ$  = respiratory quotient (dimensionless)

d.  *$O_2$  consumption and  $CO_2$  emission (organ):*

$$\dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{Q} \cdot avD_{O_2} \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$$\dot{V}_{CO_2} = \dot{Q} \cdot avD_{CO_2} \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$$\dot{Q} = \text{blood flow in organ} \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$avD_{O_2}$ ,  $avD_{CO_2}$  = arteriovenous

$O_2$  and  $CO_2$  difference in total circulation and organ circulation [L/L blood]

e. *Fick's principle:*

$$CO = \frac{\dot{V}_{O_2}}{avD_{O_2}} \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$CO$  = cardiac output [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ]

f. *Gas partial pressure  $\leftrightarrow$  gas concentration in liquids:*

$$[X] = \alpha \cdot P_X \quad [\text{mmol/L plasma}]$$

$[X]$  = concentration of gas X [ $\text{mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

$\alpha$  = (Bunsen's) solubility coefficient

[ $\text{mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1}$ ]

$P_X$  = partial pressure of gas X [kPa]

g. *Bohr's formula* (see also p. 115)

$$V_D = V_T \frac{(F_{ACO_2} - FE_{CO_2})}{F_{ACO_2}}$$

$V_D$  = dead space [L];

$V_T$  = tidal volume [L];

$F_{ACO_2}$  = alveolar  $CO_2$  fraction

$FE_{CO_2}$  = expiratory  $CO_2$  fraction [L/L]

h. *Alveolar gas equation* (see also p. 136)

$$P_{AO_2} = P_{iO_2} - \frac{P_{AO_2}}{RQ} \quad [\text{kPa}]$$

$P_{AO_2}$  and  $P_{iO_2}$  = alveolar and inspiratory partial pressure of  $O_2$  [kPa]

$P_{ACO_2}$  = alveolar partial pressure of  $CO_2$  [kPa]

$RQ$  = respiratory quotient [dimensionless].

7. *Henderson–Hasselbalch equation*

(see also pp. 138ff., 385)

a. *General equation:*

$$pH = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[AH]}$$

b. *for bicarbonate/ $CO_2$  buffer (37 °C):*

$$pH = 6.1 + \frac{[HCO_3^-]}{\alpha \cdot P_{CO_2}}$$

$pH$  = negative common logarithm of  $H^+$  activity

$pK_a$  = negative common logarithm of dissociation constant of buffer acid in denominator ( $AH$  or  $CO_2$ )

$[A^-]$  and  $[HCO_3^-]$  = buffer base concentration;  $\alpha \cdot P_{CO_2}$  =  $[CO_2]$ ; see Equation 6f.

8. *Equations for renal function*

(see also p. 150ff.)

a. *Clearance of a freely filtrable substance X ( $C_X$ ):*

$$C_X = \dot{V}_U \cdot \frac{U_X}{P_X} \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

b. *Renal plasma flow*

$$RPF = \dot{V}_U \cdot \frac{U_{PAH}}{0.9 \cdot P_{PAH}} \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

c. *Renal blood flow (RBF):*

$$RBF = \frac{RPF}{1 - HCT} \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

d. *Glomerular filtration rate (GFR):*

$$GFR = \dot{V}_U \cdot \frac{U_{in}}{P_{in}} \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

e. *Free water clearance ( $C_{H_2O}$ )*

$$C_{H_2O} = \dot{V}_U \cdot \left(1 - \frac{U_{osm}}{P_{osm}}\right) \quad [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

f. *Filtration fraction*

$$FF = \frac{GFR}{RPF} \quad [\text{dimensionless}]$$

g. *Fractional excretion of substance X ( $FE_X$ ):*

$$FE_X = \frac{C_X}{GFR} \quad [\text{dimensionless}];$$

h. *Fractional reabsorption of substance X ( $FR_X$ ):*

$$FR_X = 1 - FE_X \quad [\text{dimensionless}];$$

$\dot{V}_U$  = urinary excretion rate [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ]

$U_X$ ,  $U_{PAH}$ ,  $U_{in}$  = urinary concentration of substance X, para-aminohippuric acid, and indicator (e.g., inulin, endogenous creatinine) [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ] or [ $\text{g} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

$P_{\text{osm}}$  = osmolality of urine [ $\text{Osm} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

$P_X$ ,  $P_{\text{PAH}}$ ,  $P_{\text{In}}$  = plasma concentration of substance X, para-aminohippuric acid, and indicator (e.g., inulin, endogenous creatinine) [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ] or [ $\text{g} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

$P_{\text{osm}}$  = osmolality of plasma [ $\text{Osm} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

HCT = hematocrit [L of blood cells/L of blood]

## 9. Equations for filtration

(see also pp. 152, 208)

a. *Effective filtration pressure at capillaries*  
( $P_{\text{eff}}$ )

$$P_{\text{eff}} = P_{\text{cap}} - P_{\text{int}} - \pi_{\text{cap}} + \pi_{\text{int}} \text{ [mmHg]}$$

b. *Effective filtration pressure at capillaries of renal glomerulus:*

$$P_{\text{eff}} = P_{\text{cap}} - P_{\text{Bow}} - \pi_{\text{cap}} \text{ [mmHg]}$$

c. *Filtration rate ( $\dot{Q}$  at glomerulus = GFR)*

$$\dot{Q} = P_{\text{eff}} \cdot F \cdot k \text{ [m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}\text{]}$$

$P_{\text{cap}}$  ( $P_{\text{int}}$ ) = hydrostatic pressure in capillaries (interstitium) [mm Hg]

$\pi_{\text{cap}}$  ( $\pi_{\text{int}}$ ) = oncotic pressure in capillaries (interstitium) [mm Hg]

$P_{\text{eff}}$  = mean effective filtration pressure [mm Hg]

$A$  = area of filtration ( $\text{m}^2$ )

$k$  = permeability to water (hydraulic conductance) [ $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{mm Hg}^{-1}$ ]

## 10. Law of Laplace

(see also pp. 118, 188, and 210)

a. *Elliptical hollow body (with radii  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ )*

$$P_{\text{tm}} = T \left( \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right) \text{ [Pa]};$$

b. *Elliptical hollow body, considering wall thickness:*

$$P_{\text{tm}} = S \cdot w \left( \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right) \text{ [Pa]};$$

c. *Spherical hollow body ( $r_1 = r_2 = r$ ):*

$$P_{\text{tm}} = 2 \frac{T}{r} \text{ [Pa]} \text{ or } P_{\text{tm}} = 2 \frac{S \cdot w}{r} \text{ [Pa]};$$

d. *Cylindrical hollow body*

( $r_2 \rightarrow \infty$ , therefore  $1/r_2 = 0$ ):

$$P_{\text{tm}} = \frac{T}{r} \text{ [Pa]} \text{ or } P_{\text{tm}} = \frac{S \cdot w}{r} \text{ [Pa]}$$

$P_{\text{tm}}$  = transmural pressure [Pa]

$T$  = wall tension [ $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1}$ ]

$S$  = wall tension [ $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ]

$w$  = wall thickness [m]

## 11. Equations for cardiovascular function

(see also items 2, 5b, 6c, and 9 as well as p. 188ff.)

a. *Cardiac output (CO):*

$$\text{CO} = f \cdot \text{SV} \text{ [l} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}\text{]}$$

b. *Hagen-Poiseuille equation*

$$R = \frac{8 \cdot l \cdot \eta}{\pi \cdot r^4};$$

$f$  = heart rate [ $\text{min}^{-1}$ ]

$\text{SV}$  = stroke volume [L]

$R$  = flow resistance in a tube [ $\text{Pa} \cdot \text{s} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ] of known length  $l$  [m] and inner radius  $r$  [m]

$\eta$  = viscosity [ $\text{Pa} \cdot \text{s}$ ]

## Further Reading

### Physiology

- Boron WF, Boulpaep EL. *Medical Physiology: A Cellular and Molecular Approach*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2004
- Guyton AC, Hall JE. *Textbook of Medical Physiology*. Philadelphia: Saunders 2005
- Hall JE. *Guyton & Hall Physiology Review*. St. Louis: C.V. Mosby; 2005
- Koeppen BM, Stanton BA. *Berne and Levy Physiology*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2008
- Levy MN, Stanton BA, Koeppen BM. *Berne and Levy Principles of Physiology*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2005
- Widmaier EP, Raff H, Strang KD. *Vander, Sherman, Luciano's Human Physiology: The Mechanisms of Body Function*. New York: McGraw Hill; 2003

### Cell Physiology

- Alberts B, Bray D, Lewis J. *Molecular Biology of the Cell*. 4th ed. Taylor & Francis; 2002
- Lodish H, Berk A, Kaiser CA, Krieger M. *Molecular Cell Biology*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan; 2007

### Neurophysiology, Muscle

- Bear M, Paradiso M, Connors BW. *Neuroscience: Exploring the Brain*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006
- Kandel ER, Schwartz JH, Jessell T. *Principles of Neural Science*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000

### Respiration

- West JB. *Respiratory Physiology: The Essentials*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008

### Exercise and Work Physiology

- McArdle WD, Katch FI, Katch VL. *Exercise Physiology: Energy, Nutrition, and Human Performance*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006
- West JB, Schoene RB, Milledge JS. *High Altitude Medicine and Physiology*. London: Hodder Arnold; 2007
- Wilmore JH, Costill DL. *Physiology of Sport and Exercise*. London: Human Kinetics; 2005

### Heart and Circulation

- Hurst JW, Alexander RW, Schlant RC. *Hurst's The Heart, Companion Handbook*. New York: McGraw-Hill 2003
- Katz AM. *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins 2005

### Renal, Electrolyte and Acid-Base Physiology

- Alpern RJ, Hebert SC. *Seldin and Giebisch's The Kidney. Vols. 1 & 2: Physiology and Pathophysiology*. Amsterdam: Elsevier Books 2007
- Halperin ML, Goldstein MB. *Fluid, Electrolyte and Acid-Base Physiology: A Problem-Based Approach*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006
- Navar LG, Eaton DC, Pooler JP. *Vander's Renal Physiology*. New York: McGraw Hill; 2008

### Gastrointestinal Physiology

- Barret KE. *Gastrointestinal Physiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2006
- Johnson R, Barrett KE, Ghishan FK. *Physiology of the Gastrointestinal Tract: Vols 1 & 2*. Leonard Academic Press 2006
- Johnson LR. *Gastrointestinal Physiology*. Leonard Mosby; 2006

### Endocrinology

- Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, Kenneth S. Polonsky KS, Larsen PR. *Williams Textbook of Endocrinology*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007
- Strauss JF and Barbieri RL. *Yen & Jaffe's Reproductive Endocrinology. Physiology, Pathophysiology and Clinical Management*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2004

### Reproduction an Sexual Physiology

- Leung PCK, Armstrong DT, Ruf KB, Moger WH. *Endocrinology and Physiology of Reproduction*. Heidelberg: Springer 2007
- Neill JD. *Knobil and Neill's Physiology of Reproduction*. Amsterdam: Academic Press; 2005

### Animal Physiology

- Hill RW, Wyse GA, Anderson M. *Animal Physiology*. Palgrave Macmillan; 2004
- Randall DJ, Burggren W, French K. *Eckert Animal Physiology*. Palgrave Macmillan; 2002

**Pathophysiology, Pathology**

- Kumar V, Abbas AK, Fausto N, Mitchell R. *Robbins' Basic Pathology*. Philadelphia: Saunders 2007
- McPhee SJ, Ganong WF. *Pathophysiology of Disease: An Introduction to Clinical Medicine*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2005
- Price SA, McCarty Wilson L. *Pathophysiology. Clinical Concepts of Disease Processes*. Elsevier, Oxford 2003
- Silbernagl S, Lang F. *Color Atlas of Pathophysiology (Flexibook)*. Thieme Medical Publishers 2000

**Pharmacology**

- Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker K. *Goodman and Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. B& T 2005
- Champe PC, Finkel R, Cubeddu L. *Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Raven; 2008
- Rang P, Dale MM, Ritter JM, Flower RJ. *Pharmacology*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 2007

**Dictionaries**

- Dorland NW. *Dorland's Illustrated Medical Dictionary*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007
- Dumith K, Breskin M, Seeman R. *McGraw-Hill Medical Dictionary for Allied Health*. New York: McGraw Hill; 2007
- Martin E. *Concise Medical Dictionary*. Oxford University Press; 2007

# Index, Abbreviations

## A

- a (atto-, submultiple of a unit) 379
- A (ampere), unit 381  
band, muscle 60
- AA (amino acids) 184, 298
- Abdominal muscles 108  
pressure 108, 266  
reflex 322
- Aberration, spherical 352
- ABO system 100
- Absolute threshold, eye 358  
smell 346  
ear 368
- Absorption, intestinal, of amino acids 260  
carbohydrates 260  
electrolytes 264  
fat 254  
iron 90  
lipids 254  
peptides 260  
vitamins 262
- Abstract thinking 340
- ABP (androgen-binding protein) 308
- ACAT (acyl-CoA-cholesterol acyl transferase) 258
- Acceleration (unit) 380  
angular (rotational) 348  
detection 348  
linear (translational) 348  
sensor 316, 348
- Accessory nucleus 374
- Accident, electrical 202
- Acclimatization 226
- Accommodation, eye 348, 352  
range 348, 352  
reflex, intestine 246  
rectum 266  
stomach 242
- ACE (angiotensin-converting enzyme) 186  
inhibitor 186
- A cells, islets of Langerhans 284, 286
- Acenocumarol 104
- Acetate, conjugates 160
- Acetazolamide 174
- Acetone 286
- Acetylcholine 34, 52, **78ff.**, 238, 244  
antagonists 82  
cerebral cortex 334  
control of circulation 214 ff.  
coronary vasodilatation 212  
esophagus 240  
esterase 56, 82
- Acetylcholine (cont.)*  
gastrointestinal tract 236  
heart action 196  
motor end plate 56  
NO-synthase activation 82  
pankreas 248  
parietal cells 244  
release 82  
receptors → cholinceptors  
second messenger 55 F, 276, 278  
synthesis 82
- Acetylcholinesterase 56, 82  
synaptic cleft 82
- Acetyl coenzyme A 286
- A chain, insulin 284
- Achalasia 240
- Acetylsalicylic acid 104  
cyclooxygenase inhibition 271
- Achromat 362
- Acid, fixed 176  
production 176  
titratable 176, 180
- Acid-base balance 138, 142  
compensatory mechanisms 142  
disturbances 142, 146, 178  
kidney 176  
liver 178  
metabolic disturbances 142  
normal parameters 142  
regulation 142  
respiratory disturbances 144  
status, assessment 146
- Acidosis **142**  
hyperkalemic 182  
influence on protein-bound  $Ca^{2+}$  292  
 $K^+$  concentration, plasma 182  
lact- 76  
metabolic 142, 264, 286  
nonrespiratory (metabolic) 142, 264, 286  
in diarrhea 264  
phosphaturia 180  
renal tubular 142, 178  
respiratory 126, 142, 144
- Acini, salivary gland 238
- Acne 308
- Aconitase, iron absorption 90
- Acoustic information, central processing 374  
pathways 374  
thresholds 368, 374
- Acrosomal reaction 310
- ACTH → corticotropin  
ACTH reserve 296
- Actin 14, 30, 56, 58, 62, 70, 82
- Actin (cont.)*  
filament 14, 60  
molecular structure 60  
myosin interaction 68  
smooth muscle 70  
skeletal muscle 60
- Action potential 42, 62  
all-or-none depolarization 46  
depolarization phase 46  
heart 59 A, 194, 196  
overshoot 46  
pacemaker, heart 194  
postsynaptic neurons 82  
propagation 48  
purkinje fibers 202  
repolarization phase 46  
retina 360  
skeletal muscle 56, 59 A  
smooth muscle 59 A
- Activating energy 40
- Activation system, subcortical 340
- Active immunization 94  
transport 26, 44
- Activin, FSH secretion 308
- Activity coefficient 382
- Acuity, visual 354
- Acyl-CoA-cholesterol acyl transferase (ACAT) 258
- Adam-Stokes attack 202
- Adaptation, eye 360,  
sensors 314  
smell 346  
taste 344  
thermosensation 316
- ADCC (antigen-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity) 96
- Addison's disease 184
- Adenin 8
- Adenohypophysis 270, 282
- Adenosine, coronary vasodilatation 212  
second messenger of 276
- Adenosine diphosphate → ADP  
monophosphate → AMP  
triphosphate → ATP
- Adenylate cyclase 37 C1, 276, 278  
inhibition with acetylcholine 82
- ADH → adiuretin
- Adhesion molecule (VLA-) 98
- Adhesion, platelets 102
- Adiadochokinesis 330
- Adiuretin 24, 162, 271, 282  
activated  $Cl^-$ -channels 162  
deficiency 166  
effects 214, 282

- Adiuretin (cont.)**  
 receptor types 24, 55 F, 166, 282  
 salt/water homeostasis 173 E  
 second messenger 24, 55 F  
 secretion 220
- ADP 72**  
 role in autoregulation 214
- ADP-ribosylation factor (ARF) 30**
- Adrenal cortex 256, 274, 296, 305, 308**  
 androgens 308  
 fetal 306  
 glucocorticoids 298  
 HDL receptors 256  
 hormone synthesis 296 ff., 306  
 progesterone 305  
 zones 296, 298  
 medulla 78, **86**, 270, 274, 298  
 hormones 86
- Adrenaline → epinephrine**
- Adrenergic transmission 84**
- Adrenoceptors 84, 214, 216**  
 $\alpha$ - 84, 214 f.  
 $\alpha_1$ - 80 ff., 216, 278, 306  
 renin secretion 186  
 $\alpha_2$ - 52, 80 ff., 86, 146, 232, 250  
 insulin secretion 284  
 second messenger 55, 276  
 agonists 87 B  
 antagonists 87 B  
 $\beta$ - 86, 214 f.  
 $\beta_1$ -, renin secretion 186  
 second messenger 85 ff., 276  
 $\beta_2$ -, 85 ff., 286  
 coronary vasodilatation 212  
 second messenger 55, 85 ff., 276  
 salivary glands 238  
 $\beta_3$ -, fatty tissue 84, 224  
 second messenger 55, 276  
 stomach 244  
 distribution 81, 87 B  
 G- proteins 55, 87 B  
 kidney 216  
 localisation 81 ff.  
 receptor types 84 ff.  
 skin 216  
 types 84, 87 B  
 uterus 306
- Adrenocortical hormones 296**  
 insufficiency 184  
 tumor 218
- Adrenocorticotrophic hormone → corticotropin**
- AE1 (= Anion exchanger 1) 176**
- Aerobic glucose metabolism 72**
- Affinity, transport system 28**
- Afterload, heart 206**  
 maxima, curve 205
- Afterloaded contraction 66**  
 heart 204
- Agglutination, red blood cells 100**
- Aggregation, platelets 102**
- AIP (aldosterone-induced proteins) 184**
- Air, composition 107 A, 391**  
 sound conduction 370
- Air space, voice 376**
- Airway resistance 134**
- A-kinase (proteinkinase A, PKA) 84, 276**
- Akinesia 328**
- Alanine, glucagon secretion 286**
- Alarm reaction 86, 332**
- Albumin 92, 154, 158, 270, 308**  
 bilirubin binding 252  
 calcium binding 292  
 pressure, oncotic 210  
 renal filtration 154  
 reabsorption 158  
 testosterone binding 308  
 $T_3/T_4$  transport 290
- Alcohol, energy source 228**
- Aldosterone 162, 170, **184 ff.**, 186, 218**  
 antagonists 174  
 deficiency 184  
 deficit 172  
 degradation 185 D  
 effects 184  
 induced protein (AIP) 184  
 $K^+$  metabolism 182  
 $Na^+$ -transport, intestinal 264  
 tubular 182 ff.  
 receptor 174  
 glucocorticoids 298  
 secretion 184, 185 D  
 synthesis 296
- Alkaline phosphatase 252**
- Alkalosis 142**  
 $Ca^{2+}$  concentration, serum 292  
 hypokalemic 174, 182  
 $K^+$  plasma concentration 182  
 metabolic 142  
 non-respiratory 142  
 phosphate reabsorption, renal 180  
 respiratory 142, 144  
 high altitude 136  
 vomiting 240
- Allergens 98, 100**
- Allergy 100**  
 anaphylactic shock 220  
 delayed type hypersensitivity 100  
 immediate reaction 100
- Allodynia 320**
- All-or-none-response 46, 66, 194**
- all-trans-retinal 354, 356**
- Alternating current 50, 381**
- Altitude gain 136**
- Alveolar gas 114**
- Alveolar gas (cont.)**  
 partial pressures 120  
 equation 120, 136, 395  
 exchange 120, 124  
 pressure ( $P_A$ ) 108, 116
- Alveolar ventilation 106, 114, 120 ff.**
- Alveoli 106, 118 ff.**  
 cell types 118  
 contact time 120  
 diffusion distance 120  
 surface 118  
 tension 118
- Amacrine cells, retina 350, 360**
- Ambient temperature pressure**  
 $H_2O$ -saturated (ATPS) 112
- Amenorrhea 232**
- Amiloride 174**
- L-Amino acid decarboxylase 84**
- Aminoaciduria 260**
- Amino acids (AA) 242, 260, 184, 186, 298**  
 co-transport with  $Na^+$  158, 260  
 essential 228  
 glucagon secretion 286  
 gluconeogenesis from 284  
 influence on insulin release 284 ff.  
 intestinal absorption 260, 264  
 metabolism, cortisol effect 298  
 pylorus, effect on 242  
 renal transport 156, 158  
 storage 286  
 transmitter 55 F
- $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA) 52, 322
- p-aminohippurate 150, 160**
- Aminopeptidases, small intestine 260**
- Ammonia →  $NH_3$**
- Ammonia →  $NH_4^+$**
- Amnesia 340**
- Amount of substance, unit 381**
- 5'-AMP 278**
- AMP, cyclic 84, 288**  
 adrenergic transmission 84  
 TSH 288
- AMPA receptors → glutamate**
- Ampere (A), unit 381**
- Amplification, cochlear 372**
- Ampulla, labyrinth 348**
- Amygdala 346**
- $\alpha$ -amylase 260
- Amylopectin 260**
- Amylose 260**
- Anabolic action 282**  
 insulin 286  
 STH 282  
 testosterone 308

- Anaerobic glycolysis 72  
 threshold 72
- Analgesic action 320
- Anal sphincters 266
- Anaphylaxis 100
- Anastomoses, arteriovenous 226
- Androgen-binding protein 308
- Androgens 302, 308  
 adrenal cortex 296  
 synthesis 296, 308  
 follicle 302
- Androstenedione 302
- Anemia 228, 262  
 hyperchromic 90  
 hypochromic, iron deficiency 90  
 pernicious 262  
 sickle cell 92
- Angery 98
- ANF → Atriopeptin
- Angina pectoris 320  
 ECG 200
- Angiotensin I 186  
 lung 106
- Angiotensin II (AT II) 158, 170, 184, **186**, 214  
 aldosterone secretion 184  
 effects 186, 214, 218  
 CSF 168  
 degradation, renal 158  
 receptors 186  
 second messenger 276  
 thirst 172
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) 186
- Angiotensinogen 186  
 synthesis, cortisol effect 298
- Ångström (unit) 378
- Anion exchange, red blood cells 124
- Anion exchanger 1 (= AE1) 176
- Anode 50
- Anomaloscope 362
- Anovulatory cycle 300
- Anoxia (→ also hypoxia) 130, 134
- ANP → Atriopeptin
- ANS (Autonomic nervous system) 78 ff., 196, 214 ff., 236, 268, 332
- Anterior pituitary 270, 282
- Anterolateral funiculus, tracts 320, 324
- Antibodies (→ also immunoglobulins) 94, 98, 100
- Anticoagulants 104
- Anticodon 8, 10
- Antidiuresis 164, 166
- Antidiuretic hormone → adiuretin
- Antigen-antibody complex 98  
 allergy 100  
 presentation 96, 98
- Antigen-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) 96
- Antigens 94, 98  
 incomplete 100  
 presentation 96, 98  
 thymus-dependent (TD) 98  
 thymus-independent (TI) 98
- Antihemophilic factors 102
- Antiovolatory effect 305
- $\alpha_2$ -Antiplasmin 104
- Antiport, definition 26
- Antipyrine 168
- Antithrombin 104
- Antrum, stomach 242
- $\alpha_1$ -Antitrypsin 104
- Anulospiral endings 318
- Anuria 164
- Anus 266
- Aorta 190  
 blood flow velocity 192  
 flow rate 193 A  
 pressure 192, 206  
 influence on heart functions 206  
 sensors 216  
 valves 192
- APC (antigen-presenting cells) 96, 97 B, 98
- Aphasia 376
- Apnea 108, 132
- Apolipoproteins 92, 256
- Apomorphine 240
- Apoptosis 98, 274, 302
- Apotransferrin 90, 92
- Apparatus, juxtaglomerular 174, 186
- Aprotinin 105 C
- AQP → Aquaporins
- Aquaporins 24, 166, 176
- Aqueous humor 350
- Arachidonic acid 270, 278
- Arachnoid villi 312
- ARAS (ascending reticular activating system) 324, 334, 338 ff.
- Archeocerebellum 328
- Area prostroma, chemosensors 240
- Areflexia 322, 330
- ARF (ADP-ribosylation factor) 30
- Arginine 176, 228, 260, 284, 286  
 glucagon secretion 286  
 intestinal absorption 260  
 insulin release 284
- Aromatase 302, 308
- Arousal activity 334
- Arrhenius 40
- Arrhythmia 220 ff  
 absolute 202
- Arrestin 356
- Arsenic (As) 228
- Arteries (→ also artery) 188 ff., 190  
 arcuate 150  
 bronchial 188  
 compliance 190
- Arteries (cont.)*  
 coronary, myocardial perfusion 188  
 interlobular 150  
 pressure 208  
 umbilical 222
- Arteriole 188 ff.  
 afferent 186  
 efferent 186
- Arteriosclerosis 210, 212, 304  
 coronary artery 212  
 hypertension 218
- Artery (→ also arteries), carotid, pressure sensors 216  
 interlobular 150  
 pulmonary 122  
 pressure 122  
 fetus 221 B
- Ascending reticular activating system (ARAS) 324, 334
- Ascites 210
- Ascorbate → vitamin C
- Aspartate 176, 260  
 intestinal absorption 260  
 receptor types 55 F  
 second messenger 55 F
- Aspirin® 104, 270, 320
- Associative cortex 326, 331, 340
- Asthma 100, 118
- Astigmatism 352
- Astrocytes 344
- Astrup method 146
- at, conversion into SI unit 380
- AT I receptor 186
- AT II (Angiotensin II) 158, 170, 184, **186**, 214  
 receptor 186
- Ataxia 330
- Atelectasis 118
- Atenolol 87 B
- Atherosclerosis → Arteriosclerosis  
 at, conversion into SI unit 380
- Atmosphere, physical, 380  
 technical, 380
- Atomic mass 380
- ATP 41, 64, 72, 86, 230  
 control of K<sup>+</sup> channels 284  
 coronary vasodilatation 212  
 cotransmitter 84  
 creatine phosphate 230  
 free enthalpy 41  
 gain, glucose 73 B  
 neurotransmitter 86  
 production 12  
 aerobic 41, 72  
 anaerobic 72  
 supply of energy, muscle 72  
 synthesis 12  
 transport, active 26  
 tubular epithelium 154
- ATPase (→ also Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase, Ca<sup>2+</sup>-ATPase) 26, 58, 72, 84

- ATPS (Ambient temperature pressure H<sub>2</sub>O-saturated) 112  
 ATP-synthetase 17  
 Atrial fibrillation 202  
 flutter 202  
 septal defect 222  
 tachycardia 202  
 Atriopeptin (ANF, ANP) 152, 162, 172 184, 220  
 aldosterone secretion 184  
 receptor 280  
 Atrioventricular (AV) block 162, 202  
 node 194, 196  
 valves 192  
 Atrophy, compensatory 274  
 Atropine 82  
 transport, tubular 160  
 Attention 328, 340  
 automated 340  
 EEG 334  
 selective 340  
 Atto- (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 Audiometer 372  
 Auditory canal 370  
 pathway 374  
 threshold 345  
 Auerbach plexus (myenteric plexus) 246  
 Autoantibody 100  
 TSH receptor 290  
 Autogenous inhibition 318  
 Autoimmune disease 94  
 Automaticity, heart 194  
 Autonomic nervous system (ANS) 78 ff., 196, 214 ff., 236, 268, 332  
 Autophagia 12  
 Autophagic vacuole 12  
 Autophagosomes 12  
 Autophosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinase 280  
 Autoreceptor 86  
 presynaptic 52, 82, 146  
 Autoregulation 4, 214  
 coronary 212  
 gastrointestinal 234  
 renal 150  
 Auxotonic contraction 66  
 AV → atrioventricular  
 avD<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (arterial venous O<sub>2</sub> difference) 106, 107 A  
 aVF (ECG leads) 198  
 aVL (ECG leads) 198  
 Avogadro's constant (N<sub>A</sub>) 20, 380  
 aVR (ECG leads) 198  
 Axolemma 42  
 Axon 42  
 capacitive flow of charge 48  
 conduction velocity 48, 49 C  
 diameter 48  
 hillock 42  
 membrane capacity 48
- Axon (cont.)*  
 myelin sheath 42  
 nodes of Ranvier 42  
 reflexes 216  
 saltatory conduction 48  
 Axonal transport 42, 282
- B**
- B7 protein 98  
 B cells, islets of Langerhans 284  
 lymphocytes 94, 98  
 B chain, insulin 284  
 B lymphocytes 94, 98  
 Bacteria, defense 94 ff., 244  
 intestinal 234, 242, 252, 266  
 lysis 94  
 Bainbridge reflex 218  
 Balance, body 330, 348  
 glomerulo-tubular 166  
 Bar (unit) 380  
 Barbiturates, tubular secretion 160  
 Barium contrast medium 266  
 Barotrauma 134, 110  
 Barrier, blood-brain 18, 232, 240, 312, 332  
 blood-CSF 18, 312  
 Basal body temperature 300  
 Basal ganglia 312, 326  
 labyrinth of tubule cells 154  
 metabolic rate 228  
 Base, DNA 8  
 excess 142  
 measurement 146  
 triplet, mRNA 8  
 units, SI system  
 Basilar membrane 370, 372  
 Basket cells 330  
 Basolateral membrane, tubule cell 162  
 Basophilic granulocytes 100  
 Bathorhodopsin 354  
 Bayliss effect 214  
 BDGF (brain-derived growth factor) 344  
 Beat tone 368  
 Behavior, defensive 332  
 nutritive 332  
 programmed, hypothalamus 332  
 reproductive 332  
 thermoregulation 226, 332  
 BEI → iodine  
 Bel 345  
 Beriberi 228  
 Bicarbonate → HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>  
 Bicycle ergometry 76  
 Bilayer of membranes 14  
 Bile 234, **250 ff.**, 258, 262  
 acid → bile salts
- Bile (cont.)*  
 bilirubin excretion 252  
 canaliculi 250  
 components 250  
 ductules 250  
 excretory function 250  
 formation 250  
 hepatic 250  
 salts 160, 248, **250, 254**, 258  
 absorption, terminal ileum 254  
 body pool 250  
 carrier 250  
 conjugated 250, 254  
 enterohepatic circulation 254  
 function 254  
 primary 250  
 secondary 250  
 synthesis 250  
 steroid hormone excretion 296  
 Bilirubin 250, 252  
 direct 252  
 diglucuronide 252  
 excretion 252  
 indirect 252  
 Biliverdin 252  
 Binary digit 314  
 Biologic clock 226, 336  
 Biotin, intestinal absorption 262  
 Biotransformation 234, 252  
 Bipolar cells, retina 350  
 Birth 94, 306, 222  
 circulation during 222  
 2,3-Bisphosphoglycerate (2,3 BPG) 128, 138  
 Bit 314  
 Bitemporal hemianopia 364  
 Bitter sensors 344  
 Bladder, urinary 70, 79 ff., 148  
 control 79 ff., 310  
 Bleeding 220  
 time 102  
 Blind spot, eye 354, 364  
 Blindness 350  
 Blinking 350  
 Blood 88 ff.  
 brain barrier 18, 232, 240, 282, 312, 332  
 cells 88  
 clotting 102  
 activation 102, 104  
 endogenous 102  
 exogenous 104  
 coagulation disorders 228  
 estrogen effects 304  
 factors 102  
 composition 88  
 CSF barrier 18, 126, 312  
 fibrinolysis 102  
 Blood flow 122, 214, 234  
 brain, control 214

**Blood flow (cont.)**

- central regulation 216
- coronaries 212, 214
- gastrointestinal 234
- lungs 122, 188
- muscle 216
- properties 92
- rate 190
- regulation, neuronal 216
- renal 150
- skin 214, 216, 226
- velocity 92, 190, 192
  - vessel segments 191 A
- function 88 ff.
- glucose 284, 286
- groups 100
- HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> concentration 142, 146
- hormone transport 270
- lipids 258
- loss 90, 175, 220
- pH 138
  - puffer 138, 144
  - normal range 142
  - measurement 146
- pressure 74, 86, 186, 190, 204, 208, 214, 216
  - arterial 208
    - amplitude 208
    - angiotensin II effect 186
    - fetal 222
    - mean 190, 191 A, 208
    - measurement 208
    - normal range 208
    - physical work 74
    - regulation 218
      - renin-angiotensin system 186
    - salt deficit 172
    - sensors 216
    - shock 220
  - control 216, 218
  - diastolic 208
  - pulmonary 122, 208
  - sensors 216
  - systolic 192, 208
  - venous 206
- sugar 284 ff.
- testis barrier 308
- transfusion 100
- vessels 190, 214 ff.
  - autoregulation 214
  - chemosensors 214
  - cross-sectional area 191 A
  - diameter 191 A
  - function 190 ff.
  - holding capacity 191 A
  - nervous control 216
  - precapillary sphincter 190
  - skin 226
  - wall tension 190
- viscosity 92, 190
  - high altitudes 136

**Blood flow (cont.)**

- volume 88, 184, 188, 190, 208
  - central 206
  - determination 168
  - distribution 189 A
  - endurance athletes 77 C
  - measurement 168
  - sensors 216
  - total 188
- B-lymphocytes 94, 98
- BMAL1 336
- BMI (body mass index) 232
- BMR (basal metabolic rate) 228
- Body fluids 92, **168**
  - compartments 168
  - measurement 168
  - homeostasis 168
  - osmolality 170
  - mass index (BMI) 232
  - plethysmography 114
  - temperature 132, 224, 226, 300, 332, 381, 387 C
  - circadian variation 226, 387 C
  - measurement 226
  - menstrual cycle 300
  - pressure saturated (BTPS) 112
  - respiration 132
  - set point 226
  - water → body fluids
  - weight 232
    - regulatory mechanism 232, 282
- Bohr effect 128
  - equation, dead space 114, 115 A
- Boiling point, water 381
- Bomb calorimeter 230
- Bone 292, 294
  - break down 292
  - calcitonin effect 294
  - calcitriol effect 294
  - conduction, sound 370
  - estrogen effects 304
  - growth 304
  - marrow 88, 90, 94
    - Fe homeostasis 90
    - megakaryocytes 102
    - preprocessed precursor cells 94
  - metabolism 292
  - mineralization 294
  - PTH effect 292
- Botulinum toxin 56
- Bowman's capsule 148
- Bradycardia, sinus 202
- Bradykinesia 328
- Bradykinin 186, 210, 216, 271, 320
  - coronary vasodilatation 212
  - salivary glands 238
  - second messenger 278

**Bradypnea 108**

- Brain 312 ff.
  - anatomy 312
  - blood flow 188
    - regulation 214
  - cortex
    - afferents 326
      - area 1 311 E, 326, 327 C
      - area 2 311 E, 326, 327 C
      - area 3 311 E, 326, 327 C
      - area 4 311 E, 326, 327 C
      - area 5 311 E, 326, 327 C
      - area 6 331 E, 326, 327 C
      - area 7 311 E, 326, 327 C
      - area 22 311 E, 376
      - area 44 311 E, 376
      - area 45 311 E, 376
      - area MI 326, 327 C
      - area PM 326, 327 C
      - area S1 320, 324, 325 A
      - area S2 320, 325 A
      - area SMA 326, 327 C
    - association areas 330, 340
    - auditory 374
    - Brodman's areas 313 E
    - columns 334
    - corticocortical signal loops 326
    - cortical afferents 326
      - efferents 326
      - ultrastructure 334
    - motor 326, 330
    - mosensory 376
    - neuronal circuitry 334
    - orbitofrontal area 346
    - organisation 334
    - potentials 334
    - prefrontal association 326
    - premotor area (PMA) 326
    - prepiriform 346
    - primary motor area (MI) 326
    - pyramidal cells 334
    - scarring 344
    - sensory association 326
      - input 324
    - supplementary motor area (SMA) 326
  - death, diagnosis 334
  - derived growth factor (BDGF) 344
    - glucose deficit 244
    - glutamate, transmitter 340
    - hemisphere, dominant 342
    - metabolism 284
    - nerve cells 344, 346, 365
    - stem (→ also medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain) 312, 320
      - motor centers 326, 330
    - survival time, anoxia 130
    - visual areas 330, 360, 362, 364

- Breathing capacity, maximum (MBC) 118  
flat 120  
gas (→ also O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub>) 106  
mechanics 108
- Breast 304, 305  
development 306  
estrogen effect 304  
progesterone effect 305  
prolactin effect 305  
enlargement 306  
feeding 305  
iodine 290
- Brightness channel, visual pathways 362
- Bristle cell, olfactory bulb 346
- Broca's area 376
- Brodman's map 312
- Bronchi 376  
epithelium 110  
innervation 79 ff.
- Bronchial mucus 110  
tree 188
- Bronchitis 118
- Brown fat 226, 290
- Brown-Sequard syndrome 324
- Brunner's glands 246
- Brush border 9 f., 154, 158  
intestinal mucosa 246  
renal tubule 154  
stomach, parietal cells 244
- BSC (bumetanide-sensitive co-transporter) 162  
NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> reabsorption 178
- BSEP (bile salt export pump) 250, 252
- BTPS (body temperature pressure saturated) 112
- α-BTX (α-bungarotoxin) 56
- Buffer 124, 138, 140, 142, 144, 384 f.  
base 140  
blood 138  
concentration 138, 142  
total 146  
capacity 138, 140  
closed system 140  
curve 386 B  
hemoglobin 124, 128  
non-bicarbonate 126, 140, 144  
open system 140  
titration curve 386
- Bulb, ocular 350
- Bumetanide 174
- Bundle of His 194
- Bundle-branch 202  
block 202
- α-bungarotoxin (α-BTX) 56
- Bunsen solubility coefficient 126
- Bunte glass burette 114
- Burning 220
- Butanol-extractable iodine (BEI) 290
- Byte 314
- C**
- c (submultiple of a unit) 373
- C17/C20-lyase 302
- C cells, thyroid gland 294
- °C, conversion to °F 381
- Ca<sup>2+</sup> (→ also Calcium) 36, 228, 264  
absorption, intestine 264, 280, 292, 294  
antagonists 196  
ATPase 17 A, 17 B2, 26, 36, 180, 294  
heart 196  
muscle 64  
renal 180  
balance 292  
calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II 36, 50  
cell regulation 36  
channels 36, 62, 180, 354  
activation 278  
β-adrenoceptors 84  
hair cells 348  
heart muscle 63 B3, 65 D, 196  
inhibition 84, 278  
muscle 62  
photosensors 354  
regulation 36  
renal 180  
ryanodine-sensitive 196  
voltage-gated 196  
clotting process 102  
complexed 292  
concentration 50  
cytosolic 36, 66, 238  
adrenergic transmission 84  
electromechanical coupling 62, 196  
epinephrine 87 B  
exocytosis 30  
extracellular 36, 46  
heart 196  
intracellular 36, 278  
muscle 63B  
smooth 70, 71B  
norepinephrine 87 B  
oscillations 36  
photosensors 356, 358  
muscle fibers 62, 64, 196  
neurons 340, 344  
serum 292  
conductance, GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors 322  
daily requirement 228, 292
- Ca<sup>2+</sup> (*cont.*)  
darkness-induced 356  
deficiency 292  
equilibrium potential 44  
excretion 180, 292  
exocytosis 30  
fat absorption 254  
fetal 292  
free 180, 292  
hormone release 282  
intake 292  
intestinal absorption 264, 292, 294  
intracellular stores 36  
ionized 180, 292  
light sensors 358  
metabolism 180, 292  
milk 292  
muscle contraction 60 ff  
/3 Na<sup>+</sup> antiport 36  
plasma 180, 292  
pregnancy 292  
protein bound 180, 290, 292, 294  
reabsorption, renal 156, 180  
paracellular 174  
renal excretion 180  
saliva 238  
sensors 36, 294  
kidney 180  
serum 292  
smooth muscle 70  
solubility 292  
store, intracellular 10, 36  
IP<sub>3</sub> 278  
myocard 196  
skeletal muscle 60  
third messenger 278  
trigger effect 62  
urine 292, 180
- CaBP (calcium-binding protein) 264, 280, 294
- Cabrera circle (ECG) 200
- Caffeine 278
- Caisson disease 134
- Cajal cells 242, 246
- Cajal's horizontal cells, retina 350, 360
- cal (calorie), unit 380
- Calcidiol (25-OH-cholecalciferol) 158, 294
- Calcitriol (= cholecalciferol = Vitamin D) 262, 294
- Calcitonin 36, 37 C2, 276, 288, 292, 294  
gene-related peptide (CGRP) 216, 236, 308, 320
- Calcitriol (1,25-(OH)<sub>2</sub>-cholecalciferol, D-hormone) 158, 264, 270, 280, 292 f., 294  
deficiency 292  
nuclear receptor 280

- Calcitriol (cont.)**  
 PTH effect on formation 292
- Calcium** → also  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$
- Calcium-binding protein (CaBP)**  
 264, 280, 294
- Calcium oxalate, urinary stones**  
 180
- Calcium phosphate, solubility**  
 product 292  
 urinary stones 180
- Caldesmon** 70
- Calmodulin** 36, 278, 280, 340  
 smooth muscle 70  
 photo sensors 356
- Calmodulin-dependent protein**  
 kinase II 36, 50  
 neurons 340
- Caloric equivalent** 230  
 value, physical 230
- Calorie** 230  
 conversion into SI unit 380
- Calorimetry** 230
- cAMP** → AMP, cyclic
- Canaliculi** 250  
 bile 250  
 lachrymal 350  
 parietal cells 244
- Canals, semicircular** 348
- Can sugar** → saccharose 260
- Capacitation of sperm** 304, 310
- Capacitive current, membrane**  
 48
- Capacity, buffering** 140  
 electric, nerve 48
- Capillaries** 190  
 blood pressure in 150, 211 B  
 lung 210  
 characteristics 190  
 diffusion processes 210  
 exchange processes 210, 383  
 filtration 210  
 fluid exchanges 210  
 glomerular 150  
 peritubular 150, 151 A, 166  
 permeability 210, 383  
 pulmonary 106, 122  
 reabsorption 210
- Capsaicin sensors** 316, 320
- Carbamate,  $\text{CO}_2$  transport in**  
 blood 124
- Carbohydrate** 228, 230, 248, 260,  
 284, 298  
 absorption, intestinal 260  
 caloric equivalent 230  
 digestion 260  
 pancreatic enzymes 248  
 energy substrate 230  
 metabolism 284  
 cortisol effect 298  
 nutrition 228
- Carbon dioxide** →  $\text{CO}_2$   
 monoxide (CO) 128
- Carbonic anhydrase** 124, 176, 238  
 gastric 244  
 inhibitors 142, 174, 350  
 pancreas 248  
 red blood cells 124  
 renal 176  
 salivary glands 238
- $\gamma$ -carboxylation** 102
- Carboxylesterase** 248, 254, 258
- Carboxypeptidase** 260
- Cardia** 242
- Cardiac** (→ also heart)  
 arrest 202  
 arrhythmias 182, 202  
 cycle 192  
 failure 206  
 index 188  
 muscle 68  
 output (CO) 70, 74, 122, 136,  
 188, 190, 206, 208, 220, 222  
 fetus 222  
 paralysis 200  
 valves 192  
 work 204
- Carnosine** 158
- Carrier** 22  
 affinity to 28  
 free fatty acids 254  
 liver cells 252  
 passive 28  
 transport 158
- CART (cocaine and**  
 amphetamine-regulated tran-  
 script) 232
- Cartilage** 282
- Catabolism, cortisol** 298
- Catalase** 14, 96
- Cataract** 352, 364
- Catecholamines** 84, 270, 276  
 receptor types 55 F
- Catechol-O-methyltransferase**  
 (COMT) 86
- Cathode** 50
- cBAT (canalicular bile acid trans-  
 porter)** 250
- CBG (cortisol binding-globulin =**  
 transcortin) 298, 305
- C cells, parafollicular** 36, 288
- CCK** → Cholecystokinin
- CD4 protein** 98
- CD8 protein** 98
- CD28 protein** 98
- CD40 ligand** 98
- CD40 protein** 98
- CD45 receptor** 280
- CD95 protein (= Fas)** 98
- Cecum** 234, 266
- Cell(s)** 8 ff.  
 antigen-presenting (APC) 98  
 body 42  
 chief 242  
 dendritic 96  
 dedifferentiation 274
- Cell(s) (cont.)**  
 differentiation 274  
 division 8  
 excitable 42  
 expansion 170  
 fat 256  
 ganglion, retina 350, 364  
 granular 328  
 granulosa 302  
 killer 96, 98  
 Leydig, interstitial 308  
 mast 100, 258  
 membrane 2, 8, 14  
 function 2, 14  
 ion conductance 32  
 proteins 14  
 structure 14  
 permeability 2  
 migration 30, 58  
 neuroendocrine 268  
 nuclear pores 10  
 nucleus 8, 290  
 structure and function 8 ff.  
 organelles 8 f.  
 pacemaker 246  
 parietal 242, 244  
 principal (chief) 162, 182  
 replacement 246  
 retina 364  
 Sertoli 308  
 shrinkage 170  
 structure and function 8 ff.  
 T-helper 98
- Cellulose** 228, 266
- Celsius, conversion to °F** 381
- Centi-** (submultiple of a unit)  
 379
- Central blood volume** 206
- canal** 312  
 chemosensors 126  
 nervous system (CNS) 305,  
 312 ff.  
 anatomy 312  
 autonomic centers 78  
 venous pressure 188, 192, 206  
 shock 220
- Centralization, circulation** 220
- Centrosome** 14
- Cerebellum** 312, 324, 326, **328 ff.**,  
 330, 348, 366, 376  
 eye movement 366  
 lesions 330  
 nystagmus 366  
 speech 376
- Cerebrosides** 14
- Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)** 126,  
 144, 168, 312  
 $\text{CO}_2$  126, 144  
 pH 126, 144
- Cerebral cortex** 312  
 function, glucocorticoid effect  
 298

- Ceruloplasmin, iron oxidation 90  
 Cervix uteri 300, 304  
   menstrual cycle 300  
   os 300, 305  
   progesterone effects 305  
 cGMP → GMP, cyclic  
 cGMP phosphodiesterase, retina 354  
 CGRP (calcitonin gene-related peptide) 216, 236, 308, 320  
   gallbladder 250  
   second messenger 276  
   stomach 244  
 Chamber, eye 350  
 Channels, ion 34  
 Chaperone protein 10  
 Chemokines 94, 268, 276  
   receptors 94  
 Chemosensors 142  
   area postrema 240  
   central 126, 132, 144  
   for glucose 284  
   respiratory control 132  
   small intestine 242  
 Chemotaxis 94, 310  
 Chenodeoxycholic acid 250  
 Chest 108  
 Chest leads (ECG) 198  
 Chiasma, optic 364  
 Chief (principal) cells, kidney 162  
   stomach 242, 244  
 Chinin, taste 344  
 Chloramphenicol 252  
 Chloride → Cl<sup>-</sup>  
 CHO (cholesterol) 14, 114, 256, 270, 296, 305  
 Cholagogue 250  
 Cholates (→ also bile salts) 250  
 Cholecalciferol (calciol = Vitamin D) 262, 294  
   formation in skin 294  
 25-OH-cholecalciferol (calcidiol) 158  
 1,25 (OH)<sub>2</sub>-cholecalciferol (calcitriol, D-hormone) 294  
 Cholecystokinin (CCK) 232, 236, 242, 250  
   cerebral cortex 334  
   esophagus 240  
   gallbladder 250  
   pancreas secretion 248  
   receptors  
     gallbladder 250  
     hypothalamus 332  
     pancreas 248  
     stomach 244  
     types 55 F  
   second messenger 55 F, 278  
   stomach 244  
 Cholera toxin 264, 278  
 Choleresis 250  
 Cholesterol (CHO) 14, 114, 256, 270, 296, 305  
   *Cholesterol (CHO) (cont.)*  
     bile 250  
     crystals 250  
     esters 254, 258  
       hydrolase 254  
       LDL 256  
       lipoproteins 256  
     feces 258  
     LDL 256  
     lipoproteins 258  
     membranes 14  
     micelles 250  
     steroid hormone synthesis 296  
     storage 257 B  
     synthesis 258  
   Cholesterol-7 $\alpha$ -hydroxylase 250  
   Cholic acids (cholates) 250  
   Choline 82, 160  
     acetyl transferase 82  
     nerve terminals 82  
     tubular transport 160  
   Cholinesterase 56  
   inhibitors 56  
   Cholinoceptors 82  
     antagonist 82  
     heart 196  
     ionotropic 56  
     M-types, second messenger 276, 278  
     nicotinic 56  
     salivary glands 238  
     stomach 244  
     types 55 F, 56  
   Chorda tympani 345 C  
   Chorionic gonadotropin, human (HCG) 306  
   Choroid plexus 312  
   Christmas factor 102  
   Chromium (Cr) 228, 230  
   Chromatin 8  
   Chromosomes 8  
     single set (haploid) 308  
   Chronotropism, heart 196  
   Chylomicron 256, 262  
     remnants 256, 258  
   Chyme 234, 260  
     pH 242  
   Chymotrypsin 248, 260  
   Chymotrypsinogen 248  
   Cilia, bronchial 58, 110  
     hair cells 348, 370  
   Ciliary body 70  
     muscle 350  
     process 350  
     zonules 350  
   Circulation, blood 188ff., 214ff.  
     autoregulation 214  
     Bayliss-effect 214  
     hormonal 214  
     myogenic effect 214  
     neuronal 216  
     *Circulation, blood (cont.)*  
       local metabolic effect 214  
       sympathetic nervous system 216  
       birth 222  
       centralisation, flow 216, 220  
       control 214  
       coronary 212  
       fetal 222  
       portal 234  
       pulmonary 188, 190  
       pulse wave velocity 192  
       regulation 214, 216ff.  
       resistances 187 A, 190, 208  
       total peripheral resistance 208  
       venous return 206  
       cholehepatic 250  
       enterohepatic 250, 254  
       bile salts 254  
       bilirubin 252  
     Circulatory "center" 216  
       failure 218  
       reflexes, homeostatic 218  
       sensors 216  
       shock 220  
     Circumventricular organs 282, 312, 332  
     11-cis retinal 354  
     Cisterns, endoplasmic reticulum 10  
     Citrate 12, 102  
       complex former 180  
       cycle 12, 73 B3  
       inhibition of blood clotting 102  
       renal excretion 176  
     Citric acid → citrate  
     Cl<sup>-</sup> 384  
       absorption in intestine 264  
       balance, body 172  
       channels, lysosomes 14  
       tubular 162  
       concentration, intracellular 44  
       conductance, membrane 34, 44  
       distribution, active/passive 34  
       equilibrium potential 44  
       excretion 162  
       renal handling 156, 162  
       secretion in intestine 264  
       in pancreas 248  
       salivary glands 238  
       stomach, parietal cells 244  
     Clarifying factor → Heparin  
     Clathrin 14, 28  
     Claudins 18  
     Clearance factor (heparin) 258  
       esophagus 240  
       renal 152  
     Cleft, synaptic 42, 56, 82  
     Climacteric 300  
     Climax 310

- Climbing fibres, cerebellum 330  
 Clitoris 310  
 CLOCK 336  
 Clock, biologic 226, 242, 336, 360  
 Clonal selection 98  
 Clonidine 84, 87 B  
 Closed system, thermodynamics 41  
   buffer 140  
 Clothing 226  
 Clotting, blood (→ also coagulation) 102 ff.  
   disorders 228  
 cmH<sub>2</sub>O, conversion into SI unit 380  
 cMOAT (canalicular multispecific organic anion transporter) 252  
 CNS → central nervous system  
 CO (carbon monoxide) 128  
   binding to hemoglobin 129 C  
 CO → also cardiac output  
 CO<sub>2</sub> (carbon dioxide) 106, 120, 266  
   binding, blood 124 ff.  
   buffer system 138  
   concentration  
     blood 124 ff.  
     influence of O<sub>2</sub> saturation 126  
   cerebrospinal fluid 126, 144  
   influence O<sub>2</sub> saturation 126  
 chemosensors 134, 144  
 chronic retention 132  
 diffusion, tissue 130  
 dissociation curve 126  
 dissolved in plasma 124 ff.  
 distribution in blood 124  
 elimination 106  
 /HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> buffer 138, 140  
 Krogh's diffusion coefficient 120  
 large intestine 266  
 partial pressure 124  
   alveolar 120  
   diving 134  
   blood 126  
     increased 144  
   chemical respiratory stimulant 132  
   chronical increase 132  
   hyperventilation 120  
   normal range 142  
   regulation by respiration 140  
   venous blood 120  
   plasma 124 ff., 138, 144  
   production 142, 230  
   response curve 132  
   solubility coefficient 126  
   total 126  
   transport, blood 124  
 α-γ-Coactivation 318, 322
- Coagulation, disseminated intravascular 104  
 Coated pits 28  
 Coatomer 30  
 Coatomer-coated vesicles 30  
 Cobalamines (vitamin B 12) 90, 92, 228, 262  
   absorption 262  
   deficiencies 90, 262  
   receptor 28  
   storage 262  
   transport proteins 262  
 Cobalt (Co) 228  
 Cocaine and amphetamine-regulated transcript (CART) 232  
 Cochlea 370, 374  
 Cochlear duct → scala media  
   amplifier 372  
   nucleus 374  
 Code, genetic 8  
 Coding, neuronal signals 314  
 Codogen 8  
 Codon 10  
 Coital capacity, testosterone 308  
 Cold sensors 226, 316  
 Colipase 248, 254  
 Collaps, orthostatic 206  
 Collagen 102, 103 A  
 Collaterals, axon 42  
 Collecting duct 148, 162, 166, 176  
 Colliculus superior 328  
 Colloid, thyroid 288  
 Colloidal osmotic pressure 92, 384  
 Colon 264, 266  
   H<sub>2</sub>O absorption 264  
   K<sup>+</sup> secretion 264  
 Color blindness 358, 362  
   constancy 362  
   opponency 360  
   perception 362  
   triangle 362  
   vision 362  
     contrast 360  
 Colors, additive mixture 362  
   complementary 362  
   subtractive mixture 362  
 Comfort zone (ambient temperature) 226, 228  
 Compensation, renal 144  
   respiratory 142  
 Compensatory atrophy 274  
   hypertrophy 274  
   pause 202  
 Competitive inhibition 56  
 Complement cascade 96  
   factors 94, 96  
 Complementary colors 362  
 Compliance  
   blood vessels 190, 208  
   lung and thorax 116, 118  
   measurement 112  
 COMT (catechol-O-methyltransferase) 86
- Concentration, units 378 f.  
 Conception 310  
 Conditioned reflexes 238, 244  
 Conductance 46, 381  
   electrical 22  
   for Cl<sup>-</sup> 44  
   for K<sup>+</sup> 44  
   hydraulic 24  
   ionic 32  
   unit 381  
 Conduction, atrioventricular (ECG) 200  
 deafness 370  
 defects, heart 202  
   heart 194, 196, 202  
   heat 224  
   nerve fibres 42, 50  
   saltatory, nerve 48  
   velocity, measurement 50  
 Conductivity → conductance  
 Cones 350, 354, 356, 362  
   adaptation 358  
   classes 362  
   density 354  
   light absorption maximum 362  
 Conjugate eye movement 366  
 Conjugation processes 160  
   with glucuronic acid in liver 150, 252  
   with glutathione in liver 160, 252  
 Connectin (= titin) 60, 66  
 Connexin 16, 19 C  
 Connexons 16  
 Conn's syndrome 184  
 Consciousness 324, 338  
 Consensual light response 365  
 Consolidation, memory 340  
 Consonants 376  
 Constancy, of color 362  
   of shape 362  
   of size 362  
 Constipation 266  
 Contact phase, blood clotting 103 B2  
 Contraceptives 302, 305  
 Contractility, heart muscle 196  
 Contraction, afterloaded 66  
   auxotonic 66  
   isometric 64, 66  
   isotonic 64, 66  
   velocity, skeletal muscle 68  
   myocard 206  
 Contracture 66  
 Contrast, auditory pathway 374  
   enhancement 374  
   of stimuli 314, 330  
   retina 360  
   simultaneous 360  
   successive 358, 360  
 Control circuit 4  
   humoral 274

- Control circuit (cont.)**  
 system 4  
 Controller 4  
 Convection 24, 224  
 Converting enzyme, angiotensin-  
 (ACE) 186  
 Convergence of signals 364  
 response, eyes 366  
 Cooperativity, positive, hemoglo-  
 bin 128  
 Copper (Cu) 228  
 Coprosterol 258  
 Core sleep 336  
 temperature 224, 226  
 Cornea 350, 352  
 Corneal reflex 322, 364  
 Corona radiata 310  
 Coronary blood flow 212  
 insufficiency 212  
 reserve 212  
 Corpus amygdaloideum 312, 332,  
 340  
 callosum 312  
 geniculatum laterale 362, 364  
 mediale 374  
 luteum 300, 302  
 pregnancy 306  
 progesterone production 305  
 stomach 242  
 Correlations 389  
 Corresponding areas, retina 366  
 Cortex, auditory 374  
 associative 328  
 cerebellum 328  
 cerebral 334, 312, 328  
 frontal 332  
 Corticoids, albumin binding 270  
 globulin binding 270, 305  
 Corticoliberin (= CRH) 232, 271,  
 274, 276, 282, 298, 306  
 birth 306  
 cortisol secretion 298  
 placenta 306  
 receptors, hypothalamus 332  
 second messenger 276  
 secretion, interleukin effect  
 298  
 Corticosterone 184  
 synthesis 296  
 Corticotropin (ACTH) 271, 274,  
 282, 296, 298  
 aldosterone synthesis 184  
 cortisol synthesis 298  
 receptors, hypothalamus 332  
 second messenger 276  
 releasing factor → corti-  
 coliberin  
 hormone → corticoliberin  
 Corti's tunnel 370  
 Cortisol 92, 184, 258, 274, 282,  
 298  
 binding-globulin (CBG) 298,  
 305  
**Cortisol (cont.)**  
 effect, permissive 298  
 fight or flight 332  
 hypothalamus 332  
 precursors 298  
 stress 298  
 synthesis 298  
 transport 298  
 Cortisone 298  
 Cotransmitter 52, 84, 86, 328  
 Cotransport, definition 26  
 Costimulatory signal 98  
 Coughing 132, 322, 376  
 Coumarin 104  
 Countercurrent exchange, heat  
 226  
 kidney 164  
 system 164  
 Countertransport 26  
 Coupling, electromechanical 62  
 COX (cyclooxygenase) 104, 264,  
 271  
 CPPV (continuous positive pres-  
 sure ventilation) 110  
 Creatine 72  
 Creatine phosphate 72, 76, 230  
 muscle reserve 73 B  
 standard free enthalpy 41  
 clearance, endogenous 152  
 Cretinism 290  
 CRF → corticoliberin  
 CRH → corticoliberin  
 Crigler-Najjar syndrome 252  
 Cristae, mitochondria 12  
 Crista, ampulla 348  
 Cross test, blood types 100  
 Crypts, large intestine 266  
 small intestine 246, 264  
 Crypts of Lieberkühn 246, 264  
 CSF → cerebrospinal fluid  
 Cupula 348  
 Curare 56, 110  
 Current, alternating 50, 381  
 direct 50, 381  
 endplate 56  
 miniature endplate 56  
 unit 381  
 Current-voltage curve 33 B3, 34  
 CVP (central venous pressure)  
 192, 206  
 Cyanide 130  
 Cyanosis 110, 130  
 Cyclic AMP → AMP, cyclic  
 GMP → GMP, cyclic  
 Cyclooxygenase (COX) 244, 271  
 inhibitors 104  
 Cyclosporin A 98  
 Cystic fibrosis 110, 248  
 Cystine 158, 176  
 Cystinuria 158, 260  
 Cytochrome oxidase 130  
 Cytochrome P450-epoxygenase  
 271  
 Cytokines 268, 270, 276  
 cortisol 298  
 receptors 280  
 Cytokinesis 58  
 Cytolysis 96  
 Cytoplasm 8  
 Cytosin 8  
 Cytosis 28, 58  
 Cytoskeleton, migration 30  
 Cytosol 8  
 ions 45 B, 93 C  
**D**  
 d (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 da (multiple of a unit) 379  
 DAG (Diacylglycerol) 36, 82, 84,  
 276, 278  
 Dalton (Da), unit 380  
 Dalton's law 106  
 Dark adaptation, eye 354, 358,  
 360  
 receptive field 360  
 Darkness-induced  $Ca^{2+}$  356  
 Dead space, artificial respiration  
 110  
 functional, respiration 114,  
 122, 134  
 increase 120  
 functions 114  
 snorkel breathing 134  
 ventilation 106  
 volume ( $V_D$ ) 114  
 Deafness 370f., 376  
 Debré-Toni-Fanconi syndrome  
 158  
 Deca- (multiple of a unit) 379  
 D cells, islets of Langerhans 284,  
 286  
 stomach 244  
 DCT (distal convoluted tubule)  
 148  
 DCT1 (= Divalent cation trans-  
 porter 1) 90  
 Deceleration, unit 380  
 Deci- (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 Decibel (dB), unit 368  
 Decompression sickness 134  
 Decurarization 56  
 Dedifferentiation, cells 274  
 Defecation 266  
 Defense mechanism 96ff., 234,  
 332  
 intestine 234  
 Defensins 96  
 Defibrillation 202  
 Deflation reflex 132  
 Deglutition 240  
 Degrees Celcius 381  
 Fahrenheit 381  
 7-dehydrocholesterol 294

- Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)  
297, 306, 308  
adrenal cortex 298  
sulfate (DHEA-S) 306
- Deiodinase 288, 290
- Deiter's nucleus 328, 330
- Delayed immune reaction 100
- Deletion, clonal 94
- Dendrites 42
- Deoxycholate 250
- Depth perception, visual 364
- Depolarization 46, 66  
action potential 46  
permanent, muscle 56, 60  
smooth muscle 70
- Derepression 8
- Dermatitis, allergy 100
- Dermographism 216
- Desensitization 52, 278, 320  
smell sensors 346
- Desmin filaments 14
- Desoxycorticosterone 297
- Desoxyribonucleic acid → DNA
- Desoxyribose 8
- Detoxication processes 160
- Deuteranomaly 362
- Deuteranopia 362
- Dextrin,  $\alpha$ -limit 260
- DHEA → dehydroepiandrosterone
- DHPR (dihydropyridine receptor)  
62, 63 B, 65 D
- DHT (5 $\alpha$ -dihydrotestosterone)  
308
- Diabetes insipidus 166, 220  
mellitus 142, 158, 220, 232,  
286  
coma 220  
osmotic diuresis 174  
type II, obesity 232
- Diacylglycerol (DAG) 36, 82, 84,  
276, 278
- Diacylglycerol lipase 271, 278
- Diadochokinesia 330
- Diapedesis 94
- Diaphragm 108
- Diarrhea 138, 142, 173, 260, 264,  
266  
acid–base balance 138  
lactase deficiency 260  
salt and water homeostasis  
175 B
- Diastole, heart 192
- Diastolic depolarization 194
- Diathermy 50
- Dicarboxylates, tubular transport  
158, 160
- Diencephalon 312
- Diet 228  
induced thermogenesis (DIT)  
230  
vegetarian 142
- Differential threshold, sound,  
frequency 374  
intensity 374  
optical 358  
smell 346  
taste 344
- Differentiation, cells 274
- Diffusion 20, 210  
capacity 22  
capillaries 210  
coefficient (D) 20  
Krogh's (K) 22  
conductance 22  
distance 20  
driving force 20, 22  
equilibrium 20  
facilitated 23, 158, 260  
Fick's first law 20, 22, 120  
gas 22  
ions 22  
net 20  
non-ionic 22, 156, 178  
potential 22, 32, 44  
rate 20  
"simple" 20  
unidirectional 20
- Digestion 234, 238, 254, 260  
carbohydrates 238, 260  
impaired 248  
lipids 254  
organs 234  
proteins 260
- Digitalis 196
- Dihydropyridine receptor (DHPR)  
62, 63 B, 65 D  
heart 196
- 5 $\alpha$ -Dihydrotestosterone (DHT)  
308  
synthesis 296  
testes 308
- 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol →  
calcitriol
- Diiodotyrosin residues (DIT) 288
- Dilator muscle, pupil 350
- Dim-light vision 354
- Diopeters (dpt) 352
- Dipeptidases 260
- Dipeptides 158, 260
- Diplopia 366
- Direct bilirubin 252
- Disaccharide, digestion 260
- Disinhibition 346  
thalamus 328
- Dissociation constant 384f.
- Distal stomach 242  
tubule 148, 162, 166, 180
- Distant hearing 374  
vision 366
- DIT (diet-induced thermogenesis)  
230
- DIT (diiodotyrosine residues) 288
- Diuresis 164, 174
- Diuresis (cont.)*  
osmotic 174, 178  
influence on K<sup>+</sup> excretion  
184  
salt and water homeostasis  
175 B
- Diuretics 174, 184, 220  
influence on Ca<sup>2+</sup> reabsorption  
180  
K<sup>+</sup> excretion 174, 184  
osmotic 174  
tubular secretion of 156, 160,  
174
- Diurnal rhythm 336
- Divalent cation transporter  
(= DCT1) 90
- Divalent metal transporter  
(= DMT1) 90
- Diving 134  
oxygen toxicity 136
- DMT1 (= Divalent metal transporter)  
90
- DNA (desoxyribonucleic acid) 8  
double helix 8
- DNAses, pancreas 248
- Döderlein bacilli 304
- Dominance columns, ocular 364
- L-Dopa 84
- Dopamine 84, 270, 271, 276, 282,  
305, 328  
cerebral cortex 334  
menstrual cycle 300  
neurons 332  
receptor, striatum 328  
second messenger 276  
synthesis 84  
transmitter 328
- Dopamine- $\beta$ -hydroxylase 84
- Dorsal root, spinal cord 324
- Double helix, DNA 8  
vision 366
- Down regulation, hormon receptors  
30  
Na<sup>+</sup>-phosphate symport carrier  
180
- Drinking 170
- Driving "force" 20, 38  
pressure difference 108
- Dromotropism, heart 196
- D (differential)-Sensor 314, 316,  
318
- Dubin–Johnson syndrome 252
- Duchenne muscular dystrophy  
60
- Duct, collecting 176
- Ductus arteriosus 222  
patent 222  
venosus 222
- Duodenum (→ also intestine)  
236, 246, 260  
gastrin production 236  
GIP production 236  
secretin production 236

- Dwarfism, T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> deficiency 290  
 Dynamic work, negative 74  
   positive 74  
 Dyne, conversion into SI unit 380  
 Dynein 58  
 Dynorphin 86, 320  
 Dysmetria 330  
 Dyspnea 108  
 Dystrophin 60
- E**
- E (multiple of a unit) 379  
 E1 → estrone  
 E2 → estradiol  
 E3 → estriol  
 Ear 368, 370, 372, 374  
   drum 370  
     in diving 134  
 Eavesdropping 374  
 ECF → extracellular fluid  
 ECL (enterochromaffin-like cells) 244  
 ECG (electrocardiogram) 192, 198 ff.  
   atrial depolarization 198  
   cardiac cycle 192  
   electrical axis 200  
   electrolyte disturbances 200  
   integral vector 198  
   leads 198  
   myocardial infarction 200  
   ventricular depolarization 198  
   repolarisation 198  
 Ectopic pacemaker, heart 202  
 Edema 174, 210  
   causes 210  
   extracellular 174, 210  
   intracellular 174  
   local 304  
   pulmonary 118, 120, 122, 132, 144, 174, 210  
 Edinger-Westphal nucleus 366  
 EDHF (endothelium-derived hyperpolarizing factor) 216  
 EDTA (ethylenedinitrilotetraacetat), blood clotting 102  
 EDV (end diastolic volume) 192, 204  
 EEG (electroencephalogram) 334  
 11,12-EET (Epoxyeicosatrienoate) 216, 271  
 EGF (epidermal growth factor) 280  
 Eicosanoids 216, **271**, 274, 278  
 Einthoven leads (ECG) 198, 200  
 Ejaculate 310  
 Ejaculation 310  
 Ejaculatory center 310  
 Ejection fraction 192  
   phase, heart 192, 204
- Elastase 260  
 Electrocardiogram → ECG  
 Electrochemical gradient 26  
   potential 32  
 Electrodiffusion 22, 34  
 Electroencephalogram → EEG  
 Electrolyte homeostasis 168 ff.  
 Electromotility, outer hair cells 372  
 Electrophoresis 93 B  
 Electrotonic transmission 48, 54 D  
 Embolisms 104  
   diving 134  
 Eminence, median 282  
 Emission, sperms 310  
 Emissions, evoked otoacoustic 372  
 Emotions 340  
   expression 332  
   limbic system 332  
 Emphysema 114, 118  
 Emptying rates, gastrointestinal tract 235, 242  
 Emulsification of fats 254  
 Encoding, information 314  
 End diastolic pressure 204  
   volume (EDV) 192, 204  
   systolic volume (ESV) 192, 204, 222  
 Endergonic reaction 38  
 Endings, annulospiral 318  
 Endocrine cells 270  
   gland 270  
     growth 274  
     system 268 ff.  
 Endocytosis 12, 28, 90, 288  
   receptor-mediated 12  
     kidney 158  
   thyroid gland 288  
   transferrin 90  
 Endolymph 348, 370  
 Endometrium 305  
 Endopeptidases 244, 248, 260  
   gastric juice 244  
   renal tubule 158  
 Endoplasmic reticulum 10, 12, 26  
 Endorphin 282, 320  
 Endosomes 12  
   receptors 28  
   transcytosis 28  
 Endothel(ium) 102, 168  
   exchange processes 210  
   function 18  
   heparin source 256  
   lipoprotein lipase (LPL) 256, 258  
   NO synthase 82  
 Endothelium-derived hyperpolarizing factor (EDHF) 216  
 Endothelin 214, 282  
   second messenger 278  
 Endothermic reaction 38
- Endplate current 56  
 motor 56  
   blocking substances 56  
   reversal potential 56  
   potential (EPP) 56  
 Endurance limit 72  
 Enema 266  
 Energy, activating 39  
   basic daily 228  
   chemical 230  
   expenditure, total (TEE) 228  
   homeostasis 232  
   metabolism 38, 224, 230, 284  
     cortisol effect 298  
     need 228  
     production 38, 230  
     reserves 284  
     sources 228  
     storage 232  
     substrates 72, 228 ff., 256, 284  
     turnover 38, 228, 230  
   units 380  
 Enkephalin 52, 86, 236, 260, 328  
 ENS (enteric nervous system) 236  
 Enteroglucagon (= GLP-1) 284, 286  
 Enterohepatic circulation 250, 252  
 Enteropeptidase 248  
 Enthalpy 38  
 Entrainment, brainwaves 334  
 Entropy 38  
 Enuresis, nocturnal 338  
 Environment, internal 2, 78, 268  
 Enzyme, function 40  
 Ependymal cells 344  
 EpETRE (= Epoxyeicosatrienoates EE) 271  
 Epidermal growth factor (EGF) 280  
 Epilepsy, EEG 334  
 Epinephrine (= adrenalin) **84 ff.**, 160, 196, 214, 258, 270, 276, 284, 290  
   adrenal medulla 86  
   circulatory shock 220  
   coronary vasodilatation 212  
   defensive behavior 332  
   heart 196  
   influence on insulin release 284  
     on K<sup>+</sup> uptake 182  
   lipolysis 220  
   metabolic effect 285 A, 287 C  
   pheochromocytoma 218  
   production, cortisol influence 298  
   receptor types → adrenoceptors  
   second messengers → adrenoceptors

- Epinephrine (= adrenalin) (cont.)**  
 synthesis 84  
 tubular transport 160  
 vasoactivity 214
- Epiphysis (= pineal gland) 336**
- Epiphysis (of bones), estrogens 304**  
 testosterone 308
- Epithel, function 18**
- Epithelium 168**
- Epoxyeicosatrienoates (EpETrE = EE) 271**
- 11,12-Epoxyeicosatrienoic acid (11,12 EET) 216**
- EPP (endplate potential) 56**
- EPSP (excitatory postsynaptic potential) 52, 56, 82, 322**  
 cerebral cortex 334  
 early 82  
 late 82  
 peptidergic 82
- Eq (equivalent), unit 381**
- Equilibrium organ 330, 348**  
 nystagmus 366  
 concentration 32  
 constant (K) 40  
 potential 32, 44  
 ions 45 B
- Equivalent, caloric 230**  
 mass 381
- ER → endoplasmic reticulum**
- Erection, genital organs 216, >310**
- Erg, conversion into SI unit 380**
- Ergocalciferol 294**
- Ergometry 76**
- Erogenous areas 310**
- Erythroblasts 90**
- Erythrocytes 88, 90**  
 crenation 92  
 effect of hypertonicity 88, 100, 124, 128  
 fluidity 92  
 life span 88  
 maturation 88  
 mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH) 88  
 concentration (MCHC) 88  
 volume (MCV) 88  
 metabolism 284  
 pH 126  
 proliferation 88  
 viscosity 92
- Erythropoiesis 90**  
 cobalamin 90  
 folic acid 90  
 high altitude 136  
 inefficient 90
- Erythropoietin 88, 148, 220**
- Escalator, cilial 110**
- Esophagus 234, 240, 242**  
 ECG leads 198
- Esophagus (cont.)**  
 pleural pressure, measurement 108  
 sphincter 240
- Essential amino acids 228**  
 fatty acids 228
- Estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>) 296, 300, 302, 304, 308**  
 synthesis 296  
 testis 308
- Estriol (E<sub>3</sub>) 296, 302, 304, 306**
- Estrogens 270, 296, 300, 302, 304, 306**  
 actions 304  
 comparison 304  
 degradation 304  
 menstrual cycle 300  
 oral therapy 304  
 placenta 306  
 synthesis 296, 304
- Estrone (E<sub>1</sub>) 302, 304**  
 synthesis 296
- ESV (end systolic volume) 192, 204**
- Euler–Liljestrand mechanism → Hypoxic vasoconstriction**
- Euphoria, diving 134**
- Evans blue, indicator 168**
- Evaporation of water, heat loss 224**
- Exa- (multiple of a unit) 379**
- Exchange carrier, Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> 26f., 162, 176f., 278**
- Excitable cells 42, 44, 46**
- Excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP) 52, 56, 82, 322**
- Excretion (→ also kidney) 160, 176**  
 fractional 152
- Exercise 72, 76, 107, 120, 284**  
 cardiac output 76, 74  
 O<sub>2</sub> uptake 74  
 respiration 74
- Exergonic reaction 38**
- Exocrine glands 248**
- Exocytosis 28f., 30, 50, 86, 288**  
 epinephrine 86  
 constitutive 30  
 glucagon 286  
 salivary enzymes 238  
 thyroid glands 288
- Exopeptidases 248**
- Exothermic Reaction 38**
- Expansion, clonal 94, 98**
- Expectancy potential, cortical 326**
- Expiration 108**  
 maximum flow rate 118  
 muscle 108, 132  
 pressure difference, driving force 108  
 work 116
- Expiratory curves, maximal 117**
- Expiratory curves, maximal (cont.)**  
 flow, maximum 118  
 volume, forced 118  
 first second (FEV<sub>1</sub>) 118  
 relative 118
- Expired air 107 A**
- Exponent, calculation with 386f.**
- Export protein, synthesis 12**
- External auditory canal 370**  
 intercostal muscle 108
- Extracellular fluid (ECF) (→ also H<sub>2</sub>O) 34, 93 C, 148, 152, 168**  
 indicators 168  
 ions 93 C
- Extrafusal fibers, muscle 318**
- Extrasystole 202**
- Eye (→ also visual, retina and opt...), accommodation 350, 352**  
 adaptation to light 358  
 blind spot 354  
 color vision 362  
 dark adaptation 362  
 far point 350  
 focal length 352  
 point 352  
 intraocular pressure 352  
 light rays, physics 352  
 movements 366  
 muscles, external 366  
 near point 350  
 nodal point 350  
 optical axis 352  
 photochemistry 354  
 postural motor control 330  
 reflex movements 348  
 refraction 352  
 structure 350
- Eyelids 365**
- F**
- F (Faraday constant) 22, 32 F (fluorine) 228**
- f (submultiple of a unit) 379**
- °F, conversion to °C 381**
- Facilitated diffusion 158**
- Fähræus–Lindqvist effect 92**
- Fahrenheit, conversion 381**
- Fallopian tube 310**
- Falsetto 352**
- Fanconi–Debré–Toni syndrome 158**
- Faraday constant (F) 22, 32**
- Far point, vision 350, 352**
- Farsightedness 352**
- Fas (= CD95) 98**  
 ligand 98
- Fascicular zone, adrenal cortex 296**
- Fasting 284**  
 T3 synthesis 290

- Fat 230, 254, 258, 284  
 absorption, intestine 254  
 brown 226, 290  
 caloric equivalent 230  
 cells 258  
 chemical structure 229 B  
 daily intake 254  
 depots 232, 284  
 digestion 238, **254**  
   phases 255 B  
 emulsification 242, 254  
 energy substrate 230  
 metabolism, insulin 286
- Fatigue 72, 76
- Fat-soluble vitamins 254, 262
- Fattened animals 286
- Fatty acids 212, 254, 256, 264, 284, 286  
   cyclooxygenase 271  
   essential 228  
   free (FFA) 284  
     carrier 254  
     glucagon action 286  
     lipoprotein lipase 256  
     myocard metabolism 212  
   sources 259 D  
   storage 259 D  
   target sites 258  
   transport in blood 256  
   uptake in cells 256  
   supply of energy 72  
   liver 256, 286
- Fe (iron) 88, 90, 92, 128, 228, 264  
 absorption in intestine 90  
 carrier, intestinal mucosa 90  
 deficiency 90  
 functional 90  
 hemoglobin 128  
   degradation 252  
 intake 90, 228  
 metabolism 90  
 overload 90  
 poisoning 90  
 pool 90  
 recycling 90  
 storage 90  
 transferrin 90  
 transport, plasma 90
- FE (fractional excretion) 152
- Feces 252, 264, 266
- Fechner's law 360
- Feedback, control, hormones 274  
   negative 4, 274, 288, 302, 308, 320  
     TSH secretion 290  
   neuroendocrine 274  
   positive 274, 302, 306  
   tubuloglomerular (TGF) 174, 186
- Feet, conversion into SI unit 378
- Femto- (submultiple of a unit) 379
- Ferreductase 90
- Ferritin 90
- Ferroportin 1 (= IREG1) 90
- Fertility 308
- Fertilization 310
- Fetal circulation 222  
   zone, adrenal cortex 306
- Fetoplacental unit 306
- Fetus 222  
   O<sub>2</sub> supply 222
- FEV<sub>1</sub> (forced expiratory volume, first second) 118
- Fever 100, 226, 290
- FF (filtration fraction) 24, 152, 395
- FGF (fibroblast growth factor) 280
- Fiber → nerve, neuron, motor neuron and muscle
- Fibers, diet 266
- Fibrillation, atrial 202  
   ventricular 202
- Fibrin 102, 104
- Fibrinogen 102, 104
- Fibrinolysis 102, 104
- Fibrinopeptides 104
- Fibrin-stabilizing factor 102, 104
- Fibroblast 94  
   interferons, release 96  
   migration 30
- Fibroblast growth factor (FGF) 280
- Fibronectin 102
- Fick's first law of diffusion 20, 120, 394
- Fick's principle 106, 130, 395  
   kidney 150
- Field, receptive 316, 360  
   visual 364
- Fila olfactoria 346
- Filament sliding, smooth muscle 71 B  
   striated muscle 62
- Filling phase, heart 192  
   pressure, receptors for, heart 216
- Filtration 24  
   capillaries 210  
   coefficient 210  
   equilibrium 150  
   fraction, glomerular (FF) 24, 152, 395  
   glomerular 148  
   pressure, effective 210  
     kidney 152  
     shock 220
- First messenger → hormones
- Fitzgerald factor 102
- Fixed acids 176
- Fletcher factor 102
- Flexion reflex 322
- Flexor muscles 330  
   withdrawal reflex 322
- Floccinodular lobe 328
- Flow rate, blood 190  
   unit 380  
   resistance, blood circulation 190  
   velocity 190  
   unit 380
- Fluid compartments 168  
   measurement 168
- Fluid exchange, capillaries 210  
   extracellular 168  
   intracellular 92, 168  
   ounce, conversion into SI unit 380
- Fluidity of erythrocytes 92
- Fluorine (F) 228
- Flutter, atrial 202
- Folic acid 90, 228, 262  
   absorption, intestine 262  
   daily requirement 262  
   deficiencies 90  
   storage 262
- Follicle, dominant 300, 302, 305  
   graafian 300  
   primordial 300  
   progesterone synthesis 305  
   stimulating hormone →  
     follicotropin  
     thyroid gland 288
- Follicle-stimulating hormone-releasing hormone → gonadoliberin
- Follicular phase 300, 302
- Follitropin (FSH) 271, **300**, 302, 308  
   man 308  
   menstrual cycle 300  
   peak 302  
   receptor density 302  
   second messenger 276  
   secretion, activin 308  
     DHT 308  
     estrogens 302, 308  
     inhibin 302, 308  
     neuropeptide Y 302  
     norepinephrine 302  
     progesterone 302  
     pulsatile 300  
     testosterone 308
- Food deprivation, energy reserve 284
- Foot, conversion into SI unit 378
- Foramen ovale 222  
   patent 222
- Force, unit 380
- Forced expiratory volume (FEV) 118  
   vital capacity 118
- Force-velocity curve, muscle 68
- Forgetfulness of words 376
- Formant 376
- Formatia reticularis 240, 324, 330, 346

- Formatia reticularis* (cont.)  
vomiting center 240
- Formic acid, non-ionic diffusion 22
- Forskolin 278
- Fovea centralis, retina 350, 354, 364
- Fraction, respiration gas 106  
units 382
- Fractional concentration → fraction  
excretion (FE) 152, 154
- Frank-Starling mechanism, heart 68, 204, **206**, 218, 220
- FRC (functional residual capacity) 112, 114, 116
- Free enthalpy 38  
fatty acids 212, 254, 256  
water, urine 174
- Freezing point, H<sub>2</sub>O 381
- Frequency, fundamental 368, 376  
inotropism 196, 206  
unit 380
- Fructose, intestinal absorption 260  
renal reabsorption 158
- FSF (fibrin-stabilizing factor) 102
- FSH → follitropin  
/LH-RH → gonadoliberin
- Fuel value, physiological 230
- Functional minimum, protein intake 228  
residual capacity (FRC) 112, 114, 116
- Fundamental frequency, vowels 376
- Fundus, stomach 242
- Fungi, defense against 94
- Funicular myelosis 262
- Furosemide 174
- Fusimotor set 318
- G**
- $\Delta G$  (free enthalpy) 38
- G (multiple of a unit) 379
- g (membrane conductance) 32
- GABA ( $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid) 34, 52, 286, 322, 328f.  
cerebral cortex 334  
Gn-RH secretion 302  
receptors 52, 55 F, 322  
second messenger 55 F, 276
- Galactorrhea 305
- Galactose, intestinal absorption 260  
renal reabsorption 158
- Galanin 52, 86  
insulin secretion 284
- Gall bladder 250  
stones 250  
posthepatic jaundice 252
- Gallon, conversion into SI unit 380
- Ganglia, vegetative 78, 83 A  
neurotransmission 83 A
- Ganglion cells, retina 350, 360, 364  
vestibular 348
- GAP (GTPase-activating protein) 356
- Gap junction 18, 58  
astrocytes 344  
heart muscle 194  
regulation 37 A  
smooth muscle 70  
uterus 306
- Gas constant 20, 24, 32  
equation, alveolar 120, 136, 395  
ideal 112  
exchange 106, 120  
impairment 120
- Gases 106, 266
- Gastric (→ also stomach) acid 244  
function, glucocorticoid effect 298  
inhibitory peptide (obsolete name for GIP) 242  
juice 240, 244, 260  
pH 244  
reflux 240  
mucosa, protection 244  
secretion 244  
ulcers 244
- Gastrin 236, 242, 244  
esophagus 240  
insulin secretion 284  
second messenger 278  
stomach 236, 242
- Gastrin-releasing peptide → GRP
- Gastrocolic reflex 266
- Gastrointestinal (GI) tract 78, **234 ff.**  
bacteria 242, 266  
blood flow 188, 234  
hormones 236  
interdigestive phase 242  
neuronal and hormonal integration 236  
neurotransmitters 236  
passage time 234, 235 A
- Gauer-Henry reflex 172
- GCAP (guanylyl cyclase-activating protein) 356
- G cells, antrum 244
- GDNF (glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor) 344
- GDP (guanosine diphosphate) 276, 278  
transducin 354
- Gene expression 8  
regulation 12
- Genetic code 8
- Genital tract 216, 300, 308  
female 300  
male 308  
innervation 79 ff.
- Germ cell 308
- Gestagens 305
- GFR → glomerular filtration
- GH (growth hormone) → somatotropin
- GH-IH → somatostatin
- GH-RH → somatoliberin
- GI → gastrointestinal
- Gibbs-Donnan distribution 44
- Gibbs-Helmholtz equation 38
- Giga- (multiple of a unit) 379
- GIP (glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide) 236, 242  
esophagus 240  
insulin secretion 284  
stomach 244
- Glands, Brunner 246  
bulbo-urethral 311  
endocrine 270  
exocrine 248  
gastrointestinal 234 ff., 246, 264  
parathyroid 238  
pineal 336  
salivary 216  
sublingual 206, 238  
submandibular 238  
sweat 224
- Gastrin 236, 242, 244
- Glaucoma 350
- Glia 344
- Glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) 344
- Glioma 344
- Globulin 92  
cortisol-binding 298  
testosterone-binding 309  
thyroxin-binding 290
- Globus pallidus 312
- Glomera aortica 132  
carotica 132
- Glomerular filter 148  
zone, adrenal cortex 296, 298
- Glomeruli olfactorii 346
- Glomerulotubular balance 166
- Glomerulus, renal 148  
filtration 154, 156  
pressure 150  
rate (GFR) 152
- GLP-1 (glucagon-like peptide = enteroglucagon) 284, 286
- Glucagon 232, 258, 274, 276, 284, **286**, 290  
actions 283 A, 286, 287 C  
gluconeogenesis 286  
influence on insulin release 284

- Glucagon (cont.)*  
 lipolysis 258  
 second messenger 276  
 secretion 286
- Glucagon-like peptide (GLP-1)  
 232, 284, 286
- Glucocorticoids (→ also cortisol)  
 298  
 receptors 10, 298  
 synthesis 296, 298
- Gluconeogenesis 72, 284, 286  
 renal 148
- Glucose 72, 154 ff., 174, 212, 230, 260, 286  
 aerobic oxidation 72, 284  
 anaerobic degradation 142, 284  
 blood 284  
 caloric equivalent 230  
 value 230  
 carriers 22, 26, 156, 158, 260, 264, 286  
 chemosensors 284  
 co-transport with Na<sup>+</sup> 264  
 deficiency 244  
 energy substrate 72, 212  
 glucagon secretion 286  
 intestinal absorption 260, 264  
 metabolism 72, 284, 298  
 influence of cyclic AMP 276  
 muscle 72  
 myocard 212  
 osmotic diuresis 174  
 plasma concentration 284  
 pregnancy 306  
 regulation 274  
 production 72, 148, 284, 286  
 renal reabsorption 156, 158  
 storage 284  
 uptake 86
- Glucose-dependent  
 insulinotropic peptide (GIP)  
 236
- Glucose-6-phosphate 41, 72
- Glucosuria 158, 174, 286
- Glucuronic acid 160, 252, 296  
 conjugates, carrier 252  
 steroid hormones 296
- Glucuronides 156, 160
- Glucuronyl transferase 252
- GLUT (Glucose transporter) 23, 158, 260, 286
- GLUT2 158, 260
- GLUT4 286
- GLUT5 158, 260
- Glutamate 34, 52, 176, 260, 276  
 AMPA-receptors 55 F, 340  
 cochlear transmitter 372  
 astrocytes 344  
 dehydrogenase, renal 178  
 genetic code 8  
 intestinal absorption 260  
 long-term potentiation 340
- Glutamate (cont.)*  
 NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> excretion 180  
 NMDA receptor 52, 55 F, 340  
 receptor types 55 F  
 second messenger 55 F, 276, 278  
 taste quality 344  
 transmitter function 328, 340  
 hair cells 348  
 photosensors 356, 360
- Glutaminase, kidney 178
- Glutamine 178  
 astrocytes 344  
 formation, hepatic 180  
 gluconeogenesis 284  
 renal metabolism 178
- Glutathione 158, 160, 288  
 conjugates 252  
 secretion 160  
 conjugation 160, 252  
 S-transferase 252
- Glycerol 284, 286
- Glycine 34, 52, 250, 257  
 conjugation 252  
 receptor 52, 55 F  
 second messenger 55 F  
 transmitter function 322
- Glycocalyx 12, 14
- Glycogen 58, 72, 248, 284  
 metabolism 284  
 phosphorylase 276  
 skeletal muscle 58, 73 B  
 synthase 276  
 synthesis 276
- Glycogenesis 284, 286
- Glycogenolysis 72, 85, 276, 284, 286  
 STH 282
- Glycolipids 14
- Glycolysis 142, 284  
 anaerobic 72  
 muscle 72
- Glycoprotein 276, 288  
 hormones 276
- Glycosylation 12
- GMP, cyclic 270, 276, 280, 354, 356  
 photosensors 356
- GnRH → gonadoliberein
- GNRP (guanine nucleotide-releasing protein) 30
- Goal-directed movement 330
- Goblet cells 246, 266
- Goiter 274, 288, 290
- Goldberger leads, ECG 198, 200
- Golgi apparatus 12, 288  
 cells, cerebellum 330  
 tendon organs 318
- Gonadoliberein (GnRH) 232, 271, 282, 300, 302, 308  
 menstrual cycle 300, 302
- Gonadotropic hormone-releasing hormone → gonadoliberein
- Gonatropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) → gonadoliberein
- Gonads 296, 308
- G proteins 37 C1, 55 F, 84, 276, 278, 344  
 adrenoceptors 84, 87 B  
 subunits 276  
 types, G<sub>i</sub> 36, 82, 84, 276  
 G<sub>o</sub> 36, 278  
 G<sub>olf</sub> 346  
 G<sub>q</sub> 82, 278  
 G<sub>s</sub> 84, 276, 346, 354  
 G<sub>t</sub> (transducin) 354
- Graafian follicle 300
- Gradient, electrochemical 26, 32, 44
- Granular cells, cerebellum 330, 346  
 olfactory bulb 346
- Granular mesangial cells 186
- Granules, secretory 270
- Granulocytes 88, 104  
 basophilic 100, 256  
 eosinophilic 94  
 neutrophilic 30, 94  
 allergy 100  
 immune defense 94  
 migration 30  
 production 94
- Granulosa cells 302
- Granzyme B 98
- Graves' diseases 290
- Grey matter, spinal cord 312
- GRH → somatoliberein
- Growth 284, 286, 290, 308, 332  
 factors 88, 234, 270, 280, 282, 344  
 nerval 344  
 receptor types 270, 280  
 hormone → somatotropin  
 release-inhibiting hormone (or factor) → somatostatin  
 releasing factor (or hormone) → somatoliberein  
 influence of thyroid hormones 290  
 insulin 286  
 T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> 290
- GRP (gastrin-releasing peptide) 86, 232, 236, 242, 244  
 second messenger 278  
 stomach 244
- GSC (glomerular sieving coefficient) 154
- GTP (guanosine triphosphate) 276, 278, 280  
 transducin 354
- GTPase 278  
 transducin 356
- GTPase-activating protein (GAP) 356
- Guanine 8

- Guanine nucleotide-releasing protein (GNRP) 30
- Guanosine diphosphate → GDP  
monophosphate, cyclic → GMP, cyclic  
triphosphate → GTP
- Guanosylmonophosphate → GMP
- Guanylyl cyclase-activating protein (GCAP) 356
- Guanylyl cyclase, coronary arteries 212  
cytoplasmatic 280  
retina 356
- $\alpha$ -gustducin 344
- Gut 236 ff.  
absorption, amino acids 264  
Ca<sup>2+</sup> 264  
Cl<sup>-</sup> 264  
mechanisms 265 D  
glucose 264  
Mg<sup>2+</sup> 264  
Na<sup>+</sup> 264  
mechanisms 265 D  
phosphate 264  
H<sub>2</sub>O 264  
mechanism 265 B  
bacteria 234, 252, 266  
Brunner's glands 246  
calcitriol effect 294  
CCK production 236  
defecation 266  
gases 266  
motility 246  
structure 246
- Gynecomastia 296
- Gyrus, angularis 376  
cingulate 312, 332  
parahippocampal 332  
postcentral 324, 344
- H**
- h (multiple of a unit) 379
- H zone, muscle 62
- H<sup>+</sup> 138, 140, 142, 144, 244  
buffering 138, 140, 142, 144  
chemosensors 132  
concentration, blood 138  
normal range 142  
excretion 176  
renal 142  
gradient 158  
Na<sup>+</sup> antiport 26 ff., 161 C, 162, 176 ff.  
secretion, renal 176  
symport 158, 260  
uniporter (UCP) 224, 232
- H<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 26 ff., 28, 176, 184, 244  
collecting duct 176, 184
- H<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase (cont.)  
colon 264  
production 176  
renal excretion 176  
secretion, gastric 244  
renal tubular 176
- H<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 14, 26, 176  
lysosomes 14
- H<sup>+</sup>-iron cotransport 90
- H<sup>+</sup>-peptide cotransport 26 ff., 158, 260
- H<sup>+</sup>-phosphate cotransport 17 B2
- H<sup>+</sup>-pyruvate cotransport 17 B2
- H<sub>2</sub> (hydrogen), large intestine 266
- Habituation 340
- Hageman factor 102
- Hagen-Poiseuille's equation 190, 396
- Hair cells 58, 348  
inner 370  
outer 370, 374  
electromotility 372  
vestibular ganglion 348  
follicle sensors 316
- Haldane effect 124, 126
- Hamburg shift 124
- Haptenes 100
- Haptoglobin 90
- Haustration 266
- Hay fever 100
- hBSEP (human bile salt export pump) 250
- H (histamine) cells, stomach 244
- hCG (human chorionic gonadotropin) 306
- hCL (human placental lactogen) 306
- HCl (hydrochloric acid) 142, 240  
gastric 240, 244, 260  
production in metabolism 176
- HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (bicarbonate) 124, 126, 140, 146, 238, 264  
blood 142  
concentration, actual 142, 146  
measurement 146  
normal range 142, 146  
standard 142  
measurement 146  
buffer system 138  
/Cl<sup>-</sup> antiport 124  
/CO<sub>2</sub> buffer 140, 144  
CO<sub>2</sub> transport, blood 124  
erythrocytes 124  
excretion 138, 142, 144, 174, 178  
high altitude 136  
gastric mucosa 244  
intestinal absorption 264  
loss, diarrhea 264  
plasma 142, 146  
production, amino acid metabolism 178
- HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (bicarbonate) (cont.)  
renal 145 B2  
renal reabsorption 156, 176  
saliva 238  
secretion 244, 248  
bile ducts 250  
pancreas 248  
salivary glands 238  
stomach 244  
titration curve 147
- HCP1 (= Heme carrier protein 1) 90
- hCS (human chorionic somatotropin) 306
- HDL (high density lipoproteins) 256, 258  
estrogen effect 304
- Head's reflex 132
- Head's zones 320
- Hearing (→ also sound) 368 ff.  
audibility limit 368  
auditory cortex 374  
pathway 374, 376  
binaural 374  
cochlear amplification 372, 374  
direction 374  
threshold 374  
loss 370, 372  
sensors 370 ff.  
thresholds 368, 372, 374
- Heart (→ also cardiac and myocard) 86, 188, 212  
action potential 194, 195 A  
afterload 204, 206  
all-or-none contraction 68, 194  
arrhythmias 182  
atrial contraction 192  
flutter 202  
fibrillation 202  
septum defect 222  
tachycardia 202  
atrioventricular block 202  
node 194  
valves 192  
automaticity 194  
autonomic nervous system 196  
beats → heart rate  
bundle of His 194  
cholinergic transmission 83 B  
conduction 194, 196, 202  
disturbances 202  
system 194  
velocity 197 C  
contractility 196, 206  
influences 196, 298  
coronary blood flow 188, 192, 214, 212  
vessels 212, 214  
cycle 192  
diastolic time 192  
ejection fraction 192  
phase 204

*Heart (cont.)*

- electric activity, action potential 58, 194
  - arrhythmias 182, 202
  - AV block 202
  - AV rhythm 194
  - bundle branch block 202
  - cholinoceptors 82
  - chronotropism 196
  - dromotropism 196
  - ECG 198
  - ectopic 202
  - electrolyte disturbances 200
  - extrasystoles 202
- impulse generation 194
  - disturbances 202
  - inotropism 196, 206
  - pacemaker 194
    - diastolic depolarization 194
    - ectopic 194
    - potential 194
    - reentry 196, 202
    - spreading time 197 C
    - vulnerable phase 195 A, 202
- electrical axis 200
- end diastolic volume (EDV) 192, 204
  - systolic volume (ESV) 192, 204
    - influence of aortic pressure 206
- energy sources 212
- exercise 74
- failure 210, 218, 220
  - cause of edema 210
  - salt and water homeostasis 175 E
- filling phase 204
- Frank-Starling mechanism 68
- frequency → heart rate
- glycosides 196
- influence of  $Ca^{2+}$  196
- inotropism 196, 206
- isovolumetric contraction 192, 204
- muscle 46, 58, 68, 194ff.
  - action potential 46, 59 A
  - adrenoceptors 216
  - blood flow 188
  - $Ca^{2+}$ -ATPase 196
  - $Ca^{2+}$  channels 196
  - $Ca^{2+}$  concentration, cytosolic 196
  - contraction 59 A
    - isovolumetric 192
    - velocity 206
  - dihydro-pyridine receptors 196
  - ECG 198

*Heart (cont.)*

- electromechanical coupling 196
- frequency inotropism 206
- impulse generation 194
- infarction 220
  - ECG 200
- influence of  $Ca^{2+}$  196
  - contractility 196
  - inotropism 196, 206
  - ischemia, ECG 200
  - isotonic peaks 205
  - isovolumetric peaks 205
  - metabolism 212
  - $Na^+/Ca^{2+}$  exchange carrier 196
  - $Na^+-K^+$ -ATPase 196
  - $O_2$  supply 212
  - tension-time index 212
- mechanics 204
- metabolic activity 212
- $O_2$  supply 212
- output, cardiac (CO) 74, 106, 122, 188, 190, 220
- fetus 222
- high altitude 136
- maximum 77 C
  - endurance, athletes 77 C
  - physical work 74
  - shock 220
- power 204
- preload 204, 206
- pressure-volume diagram 68
  - relation 204
  - work 204
- Purkinje fibers 194
- rate 74, 136, 188, 196, 290
  - AV block 202
  - blood pressure regulation 4, 220
  - fetus 222
  - high altitude 136
  - influence of  $Ca^{2+}$  influx 196
  - maximum 77 C
    - endurance, athlete 77 C
    - normal 188
    - physical work 74
    - shock 220
  - $T_3/T_4$  effect 290
- reentry 196
- reflexes 218
- resting pressure-volume curve 204
- semilunar valves 192
- sinoatrial node 194
  - rhythmicity 194
  - threshold potential 194
- sounds 192, 193 A
- stroke volume 188, 192, 204, 206
  - maximum 77 C

*Heart (cont.)*

- endurance, athlete 77 C
  - measurement 106
  - regulation 206
  - training 76
- ventricles, stretch sensors 216
- ventricular diastolic volume 192
  - pressure 192
    - curve 193 A
    - work diagram 204
  - volume load 206
  - weight, endurance athlete 77 C
  - work 204
- Heat 224, 230, 290
  - countercurrent exchange 164
  - flow, external 224
  - internal 224
  - loss by evaporation of water 224
    - of maintenance 74
    - production 224, 230, 290
    - energy metabolism 230
    - influence of thyroid hormones 290
  - sensors (→ also warm sensors) 316
    - unit 381
- Heat shock proteins (HSP) 280
- Hecto- (multiple of a unit) 379
- Helicine arteries 310
- Helicotrema 370, 372
- Helium 114
- Helium dilution, measurement of residual volume 114
- Helper cells, T- 98
- Hematocrit 88, 150, 168
  - blood viscosity 92
  - high altitude 136
- Hematopoiesis 88
  - testosterone 308
- Heme 88, 128
  - Fe(II) 90
  - oxygenase 90
- Heme carrier protein 1 (= HCP1) 90
- Hemeralopia → night blindness
- Hemochromatosis 90
- Hemoglobin 88, 90, 92, 124, 126, 128, 138, 140, 146, 252
  - blood puffer 124, 128, 138, 140, 146
  - carbamate 124
  - concentration, blood 128
  - degradation 252
  - fetal 128
  - synthesis 10, 90
  - types 128
- Hemolysis 88, 100, 252
  - fetus 100
  - prehepatic jaundice 252
- Hemopexin 90

- Hemophilia 104  
 Hemoproteins 252  
 Hemorrhage 220  
 Hemorrhagic diatheses 104  
 Hemosiderin 90  
 Hemostasis 102 ff.  
 Henderson-Hasselbalch equation 138, 139 A, 140, 146, 385, 395  
 Henry-Gauer reflex 172, 220  
 Heparin 104, 256  
 Hepatic → liver  
 Hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) 280  
 Hepcidin 90  
 Hephaestin 90  
 Hering-Breuer reflex 132  
 Hering's opponent color theory 360  
 Hertz, unit 368, 380  
 HGF (hepatocyte growth factor) 280  
 hGH → chorionic growth hormone  
 HLA protein (human leukocyte antigen) 96, 98  
 High altitude 130, 132  
 respiration 136  
 erythropoietin secretion 88  
 hypoxic hypoxia 130  
 density lipoproteins (HDL) 258  
 pressure system 188  
 Hippocampus 332, 340  
 Hippurate, transcellular secretion, renal 156  
 Histamine 70, 100, 160, 210, 214, 216, 220, 236, 244, 271, 276, 278  
 allergy 100  
 cerebral cortex 334  
 coronary vasodilatation 212  
 gastrointestinal tract 236  
 gastric juice secretion 244  
 influence on vessel permeability 216  
 receptors, types 55 F  
 H<sub>1</sub> - 214, 278  
 H<sub>2</sub> - 244, 276  
 second messenger 276  
 shock 220  
 tubular transport 160  
 vasodilation 216  
 Histidine 176, 228  
 3-HMG-CoA-reductase 258  
 HMK (high-molecular-weight kininogen) 102  
 hNaDC-1 (human Na<sup>+</sup>-dicarboxylate transporter) 160  
 hNBC (human Na<sup>+</sup>-bicarbonate cotransporter) 162, 176  
 H<sub>2</sub>O (→ also extracellular fluid and body fluid), balance 148, 166, 168
- H<sub>2</sub>O (cont.)  
 disturbances 174, 175 E  
 clearance 164  
 concentration 24  
 daily intake 168, 264  
 deficit 170, 182  
 diffusion 24  
 diuresis 164, 166, 174  
 maximum 166  
 urea excretion 166  
 excess 172  
 excretion, feces 264  
 renal → kidney, excretion  
 flow, osmotic 24  
 free, urine 164, 174  
 homeostasis 168  
 intake 168  
 intestinal absorption 264  
 intoxication 172  
 losses 170  
 partial pressure 106  
 permeability 210  
 reabsorption 154, 164  
 renal handling 166, 170  
 regulation 170  
 transport 24  
 turnover 168  
 Hoffmann's reflex 318  
 Homeostasis 2, 4, 214, 268  
 Homeothermy 224  
 Horizontal cells, retina 350, 360  
 Hormone(s) 236, 268, 270  
 abbreviations 270, 271  
 adrenocorticotrophic (= ACTH) 271  
 aglandotropic 268, 282  
 anabolic 308  
 autocrine 268  
 binding proteins 270  
 catecholamines 276  
 chemical structure 270  
 down regulation 30  
 endocrine 268, 270  
 feedback mechanism 274  
 femal sex 296, 300, 304  
 follicle-stimulating (= FSH) 271  
 gastrointestinal 236  
 gland, atrophy 274  
 hypertrophy 274  
 influence of hormonal medication 274  
 glandotropic 268, 271, 282  
 glycoprotein 276, 270  
 hierarchy 270  
 hypothalamic 270, 282  
 lactogenic 271  
 lipophilic 270  
 male sex 308  
 mammatropic 271  
 medication 274  
 α-melanocyte-stimulating hormone (α-MSH) 271
- Hormone(s) (cont.)  
 menstrual cycle 302  
 natriuretic 172  
 nomenclature 271  
 pancreatic 284  
 paracrine 268, 270  
 peptide 270, 276  
 placenta 306  
 pregnancy 306  
 principle functions 274  
 receptors 268, 270, 276 ff.  
 second messengers 276 ff.  
 steroid 250, 270  
 placenta 306  
 therapeutic administration 274  
 thyroid 288  
 stimulating (TSH) 271  
 tissue 270  
 transport, blood 270  
 types 270  
 Horopter 366  
 Horse power (hp), metric, unit 380  
 5-HPETE (= 5-hydroperoxyeicosatetraenoate) 271  
 hPL (human placental lactogen) 306  
 H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (sulfuric acid) production 142, 176  
 HSP (heat shock protein) 280  
 H<sub>1</sub>(istamine)-receptor, second messenger 55 F, 214, 278  
 H<sub>2</sub>-receptor, second messenger 55 F, 276  
 Hüfner number 128  
 Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG, HCG) 306  
 somatotropin (hCS) 306  
 leukocyte-associated antigen (HLA) 96  
 Na<sup>+</sup>-bicarbonate cotransporter (hNBC) 162, 176  
 placental lactogen (hPL, HPL) 306  
 Humidity, air 224, 226  
 Humor, aqueous 350  
 Hunger 142  
 edema 210  
 energy reserves 284  
 metabolic effect 285 A  
 Hydraulic filter, arteries 190  
 Hydrocarbon continuum 254  
 Hydrocephalus 312  
 Hydrochloric acid → HCl  
 Hydrocortisone → cortisol  
 Hydrogen ion → H<sup>+</sup> and pH  
 peroxide 94  
 β-Hydroxybutyrate 142  
 1α-Hydroxylase, calcitriol synthesis 294  
 11-Hydroxylase  
 adrenal cortex 296

- 17-Hydroxylase  
adrenal cortex 296
- 21-Hydroxylase  
adrenal cortex 296
- 24-Hydroxylase, calcidiol 294
- 17 $\beta$ -Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase 302
- 11 $\beta$ -Hydroxysteroid oxidoreductase 184, 298
- Hyperalgesia 320
- Hyperaldosteronism 184, 240
- Hyperaminoaciduria 158
- Hyperbicarbonaturia, osmotic diuresis 174
- Hypercalcemia 180, 200, 292, 294  
ECG 200  
renal phosphate reabsorption 180
- Hypercapnia 144
- Hypercholesterolemia 258
- Hypercolumns, cerebral cortex 364
- Hyperemesis gravidarum 240
- Hyperemia, reactive 214
- Hyperglycemia 286  
osmotic diuresis 174
- Hyperkalemia 62, 142, 182 ff., 200  
ECG 200
- Hyperlipoproteinemia 258
- Hypermagnesemia 180
- Hyperopia 352
- Hyperosmolality, extracellular fluid 174
- Hyperoxia 136
- Hyperparathyroidism 294
- Hyperpnea 108
- Hyperpolarization, action potential 46  
afterpotential 46  
photo sensors 360
- Hyperprolactinemia 305
- Hyperreflexia 322
- Hypersensitivity, delayed type 100  
immediate type 100
- Hypertension 186, 208, 218  
renal 186, 218  
resistance 218
- Hyperthermia, malignant 62
- Hyperthyroidism 290
- Hypertrophy, compensatory 274
- Hyperventilation 108, 120, 136, 144, 292  
diving 134  
high altitude 136  
H<sub>2</sub>O losses 168  
non-respiratory acidosis 142  
salt and water homeostasis 175 E
- Hypervitaminosis 228
- Hypovolemia 180
- Hypocalcemia 180, 200, 292, 294  
ECG 200  
renal phosphate reabsorption 180
- Hypocapnia 144
- Hypoglycemia 86, 286  
glucagon secretion 286
- Hypokalemia 174, 200, 264  
diarrhea 264  
ECG 200  
vomiting 240
- Hyponatremia 172
- Hypoparathyroidism 292, 294
- Hypophosphatemia 292, 294
- Hypopnea 108
- Hypotension 208  
orthostatic 184
- Hypothalamus 78, 134, 170, 226, 232, 268, 270, 282, 302, 312, 332, 364, 365  
afferents 332  
angiotensin II 186  
body weight 232  
function 268  
hormones, regulation 270, 282  
limbic system 346  
nuclei, arcuate 232  
dorsomedial 232  
lateral 232  
paraventricular 226  
magnocellular 282  
ventromedial 226
- osmosensors 170  
smell 346  
somatostatin secretion 288  
testosterone effect 308  
thermoregulation 224, 226  
TRH secretion 288
- Hypothyreosis 290, 305
- Hypoventilation 108, 144
- Hypovitaminosis 228
- Hypovolemia 220  
chronic vomiting 240  
shock 220
- Hypoxia 130, 136, 142  
autoregulation 212  
brain 188  
fetus 222  
vasoconstriction 122, 214, 222
- Hypoxic vasoconstriction, lung 122
- Hz, unit 380
- I**
- I band, muscle 62
- ICAM (intercellular adhesion molecule) 96
- ICF  $\rightarrow$  intracellular fluid
- ICSH (= LH)  $\rightarrow$  lutropin
- Icterus 252
- IDDM (insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus) 286
- IDL (intermediate-density lipoproteins) 256, 258
- IEL (intraepithelial lymphocytes) 234
- IgA (immunoglobulin A) 98, 234, 238, 350
- IgE (immunoglobulin E) 93, 98, 100
- IGF-1 (insulinlike growth factor) 280, 282
- IgG (immunoglobulin G) 93, 98
- IgM (immunoglobulin M) 93, 98, 100
- IL  $\rightarrow$  Interleukin
- Ileum ( $\rightarrow$  also intestine) 234, 246  
bile salt reabsorption 250  
cobalamin absorption 262
- Immune defense 94 ff., 234, 246  
antigen presentation 96  
cellular 94, 234  
gastrointestinal 234, 246  
specific 98  
cellular 96  
humoral 98  
unspecific 94  
response, delayed 96  
secondary antigen contact 100
- Immunity 94  
nonspecific 94  
specific 98
- Immunization 100  
active 94  
passive 94
- Immunoglobulins (Ig) 93 ff., 94, 98, 234  
class switching 98  
concentration, serum 93 D  
IgA 98, 234, 350  
saliva 238  
IgE 93, 98, 100  
IgG 93, 98  
IgM 93, 98  
ABO system 100  
function 94  
placental barrier 92  
receptors 96  
infections 94
- Immunologic tolerance, central 94  
peripheral 98
- Immunological memory 94
- Immunosuppression 98
- Impedance matching, middle-ear 370
- Implantation of fertilized ovum 300
- Impotence 305
- Inch, conversion into SI unit 378
- Incus 370

- Indicator dilution technique 168  
 Indifference point, hydrostatic 206  
 Indirect bilirubin 252  
 Indoor climate 226  
 Induction, hormon-dependent 280  
 Infarction, myocardial 200  
 Inflammation 96, 100, 271, 320  
   neurogenic 320  
 Information 314  
   encoding 314  
   storage 314  
   unit 314  
 Inhibin 302, 308  
   FSH secretion 308  
   menstrual cycle 300  
 Inhibition, antagonistic 322  
   autogenic 318  
   competitive 28, 56  
   descending 320  
   feed-forward 322  
   lateral 314, 374  
     acoustic pathway 374  
   postsynaptic 322  
   presynaptic 322  
   recurrent 318, 322  
 Inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP) 52  
 Inner ear 370 ff.  
 Inositol-1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>) 82, 84, 270, 276, 278  
 Inotropism, heart muscle 196, 206  
 Inspiration 108, 110, 206  
   pressure differences, driving force 108  
   work 116  
 Inspiratory pressure, maximum 116  
 Inspired air, composition 107 A  
 Instinctive behavior, limbic system 332  
 Insulin 182, 232, 256 ff., 258, 270, 274 ff., 276, **284ff.**, 286, 290  
   anabolic effects 286  
   deficiency, diabetes 286  
   degradation 284  
   effects 182, 285 A, 286, 287 C  
   half-life 284  
   K<sup>+</sup> homeostasis 182  
   lipoproteinlipase 256  
   lipolysis 258  
   overdose 220  
   receptor 270, 280  
   regulation of secretion 284  
   secretion 284  
     amino acids 284  
     β<sub>2</sub>-adrenoceptors 84  
     GIP 236  
     inhibition 332  
   synthesis 284  
 Insulin-like growth factors (IGFs) 280, 282  
 Insulin receptor substrate-1 (IRS-1) 280, 286  
 Integration of body functions 268, 312  
 Intention tremor 330  
 Intercalated cells, tubule 176, 184  
 Intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM) 96  
 Intercostal muscles 108  
 Intercourse 310  
 Interdigestive phase 242  
   motility 236  
 Interferon (IFN) 95 f.  
   IFNγ 95, 98  
 Interleukin (IL) 94, 226, 234  
   IL1 298  
   IL2 98, 298  
   IL4 98  
   IL5 98  
   IL6 90, 98  
   IL8 94  
 Intermediate filaments 14  
   type, heart axis 200  
 Internal clock 242, 336  
   heat flow 224, 226  
   intercostal muscles 108  
   milieu 268  
   tissue respiration 130  
 Interneuron 318, 322, 326  
   inhibitory 322  
   stimulatory 322  
 Interstice 45 B, 92, 93 C, 168  
 Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone (ICSH) → lutropin fluid 92, 93 C, 168  
 Internode region 48  
 Intestinal absorption (→ also absorption) 246 ff.  
   amino acids 260  
   Ca<sup>2+</sup> 264, 294  
   electrolytes 264  
   glucose 260  
   vitamins 262  
   water 264  
   bacteria 266  
   blood flow 234  
   glands 246, 264  
   lymph 234, 256  
   movements 246  
   neurons 246  
   phase in gastric secretion 244  
 Intestine 234  
   Cl<sup>-</sup> secretion 265  
   defense mechanism 234  
   lymphatics 234  
   mucosal surface 246  
   small 242  
     structure 246  
   passage time 234  
 Intracellular fluid 168  
   composition 92  
*Intracellular fluid (cont.)*  
   ions 93 C  
 Intraesophageal leads (ECG) 198  
 Intrafusal fibers, muscle 318  
 Intrapleural pressure 108  
 Intrapulmonic pressure 108  
 Intrathoracic pressure 108  
 Intrinsic factor 262  
   cobalamin deficiency 90  
   gastric juice 244  
 Intron 8  
 Inulin, indicator for extracellular space 168  
   kidney, clearance 152, 154  
 5-iodine 288  
 Iodine/Iodide, butanol-extractable (BEI) 288 ff.  
   daily requirement 228, 290  
 Ion channels 32, 34  
   control 34, 278  
   with ligands 34, 55 F  
   diffusion 22  
   open-probability 34, 46, 50  
   pump (ATPases) 26  
 Ionic conductance 32, 381  
   current 32, 381  
 Ions (→ also individual ions) 381  
   body fluid 93 C  
   concentrations 45 B  
 IP<sub>3</sub> (inositol-1,4,5-trisphosphate) 82, 276, 278  
   IP<sub>3</sub> receptor-associated cGMP kinase substrate (IRAG) 280  
 IPPV (intermittant positive pressure ventilation) 110  
 IPSP (inhibitory postsynaptic potential) 52  
   cerebral cortex 334  
   peptidergic 82  
 IRAG (= IP<sub>3</sub> receptor-associated cGMP kinase substrate) 280  
 IREG1 (= Ferroportin 1) 90  
 Iris 350  
 Iron (→ also Fe)  
   Iron lung 110  
 IRS-1 (insulin receptor substrate-1) 280  
 Ischemia 130, 200  
 Islets of Langerhans 284  
 Isoleucine 228  
 Isomaltase 260  
 Isophones 368  
 Isoprenaline 84, 87 B  
 Isotonic peak curve 204  
 Isovolumetric contraction, heart 192  
   relaxation, heart 192  
     work diagram 205  
   peak curve 204  
 IP<sub>3</sub> (inositol-1,4,5-trisphosphate) 276, 278  
   receptor-associated cGMP kinase substrate 280

## J

- J (Joule), unit 300, 380  
 JAM (junction adhesion molecule) 18  
 Jaundice 252  
 Jejunum ( $\rightarrow$  also intestine) 236, 246  
 Jet lag 336  
 JGA (juxtaglomerular apparatus) 174, 186  
 Joint position, information on 318  
 Joule (J), unit 300, 380  
 J sensors 132  
 Junctions, tight 154  
 Juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA) 174, 186

## K

- k (multiple of a unit) 379  
 K (dissociation constant) 384 f.  
 K (Kelvin), unit 381  
 $K^+$ , absorption 182  
   balance 182  
   in intestine 264  
   adaptation 184  
   balance 184  
     effect of aldosterone 184  
   cellular uptake, influences on 182  
   channels, activation 32 ff.  
     adrenoceptors 84  
       G-proteins 278  
     ATP-controlled 284  
     collecting duct 182  
   conductance, action potential 44, 46  
     GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors 322  
     hair cells 348  
     pacemaker cells, heart 194  
     resting potential 44  
   voltage-gated 46  
   renal 162, 182  
 concentration, intracellular 26, 44  
 contracture, skeletal muscle 36  
 deficiency 174, 182  
 diffusion 32  
 distribution 286  
 equilibrium potential 44  
 excretion 174, 182, 184  
   diuretics 174  
   influence 184  
 intake, high 182  
 loss 264  
 outflow, motor end plate 56  
 renal handling 156, 182 ff.  
 role in autoregulation 214  
 secretion, intestine 264

 $K^+$ , absorption (cont.)

- saliva 238  
   tubule 174  
   stomach, parietal cells 244  
 $K_M$  (Michaelis–Menten constant) 28  
 Kallidin 216  
 Kallikrein 104, 216  
   salivary gland 238  
 Karyocytes 88  
 Karyolymph 8  
 kcal, conversion into SI unit 380  
 Kelvin (K), unit 381  
 Keratin filaments 14  
 Kerckring's fold 246  
 $\alpha$ -Ketoglutarate, renal production 178  
   renal transport 160  
 Ketosis 286  
 17-ketosteroids 296, 304, 308  
   synthesis 296  
 Kidney ( $\rightarrow$  also tubule and renal) 148 ff., 294  
   acid base balance 138, 176  
    $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors 216  
   ADH receptors 166  
   aldosterone effect 184  
   anatomy 148, 149 A, B  
   aquaporin (AQP) 166  
   ATP 154  
   atriopeptin effect 152  
   autoregulation 150, 214  
     range of 151 C  
   balance glomerulotubular 166  
   blood flow 150, 188  
     measurement 150  
     medullary 174  
   Ca<sup>2+</sup> excretion 180, 294  
     sensors 180  
   calcitriol synthesis 294  
   capillaries 148 f., 151 A, 164, 186  
     pressure 151 B  
     hypertension 218  
   circulation 150  
   clearance 152, 395  
     ratio of 152  
     water 164  
   concentration and dilution 164, 395  
     mechanism 164, 166  
   conjugation process 160  
   connecting tubule 166  
   cortex 164, 166  
   countercurrent exchange 164  
   diuresis 174, 178  
   endopeptidase 158  
   energy metabolism 150  
   excretion  
     ammonia/ammonium 76, 176  
     Ca<sup>2+</sup> 180

## Kidney (cont.)

- electrolytes 157 D  
   fractional (FE) 152 f.  
   H<sup>+</sup> 142, 176  
     titratable acid 180  
     HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> 138, 144  
   Mg<sup>2+</sup> 180  
   organic substances 157 D, 158, 160  
   phosphate 178 f.  
   steroid hormones 296  
   urobilinogen 252  
   water 154, 157 D, 164  
     glucocorticoid effect 298  
   extraction fraction 152  
 filtration 148, 152  
   amount of a substances 158  
   dissolved substances 154  
   equilibrium 152  
   fraction (FF) 152  
   pressure, effective 152, 396  
   function 148 ff.  
 glomerular filtration rate (GFR) 150  
   glucocorticoid effect 298  
 glomerulotubular balance  
 glomerulus 148 ff.  
 glucocorticoid effect 298  
 glutaminase 178  
 glutamine 178  
 H<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 176, 183 B4  
 H<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 176  
 H<sup>+</sup>-excretion 142, 176  
 H<sup>+</sup>-secretion 176  
 handling of amino acids 158  
   angiotensin 158  
   Ca<sup>2+</sup> 180, 294  
   diuretics 156  
   drugs 156  
   glucose 158  
   glucuronides 156  
   glutathione 158  
   H<sup>+</sup> 144, 176  
   HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> 142, 176  
   K<sup>+</sup> 156, 182 ff.  
   lactate 158  
   Na<sup>+</sup> 156, 162, 172  
   oxalate 158  
   peptides 158  
   phosphate 178, 180, 292, 294  
   proteins 158  
   urea 166  
   uric acid 156, 158  
 inulin clearance 152, 154  
 juxtaglomerular apparatus 186  
 juxtamedullary nephrons 150  
 K<sup>+</sup> channels 162  
   homeostasis 182  
 loop of Henle 164  
 loss 174  
   Ca<sup>2+</sup>-reabsorption 180

*Kidney (cont.)*

$Mg^{2+}$  reabsorption 180  
 $Na^+$  transport 162  
 water permeability 166  
 medulla 150  
 medullary blood flow 166, 174  
 metabolism 150, 284  
 $Mg^{2+}$  sensors 180  
 $Na^+$  channels 174  
 $Na^+$ - $K^+$ -ATPase 154, 156, 162  
 function 154  
 nephron types 148, 166  
 $O_2$  consumption 150  
 PAH clearance 150  
 pH homeostasis 142, 176  
 plasma flow 150  
 potential, transepithelial 156, 162  
 PTH effect 180  
 reabsorption  
    $Ca^{2+}$  174, 292  
    $Cl^-$  162  
   electrolytes 157 D  
   fractional 154  
   D-glucose 158  
    $HCO_3^-$  176  
    $K^+$  182  
    $Mg^{2+}$  174  
    $Na^+$  162  
     collecting duct 184  
     driving force 156  
   organic substances 157 D, 158  
   phosphate 180  
     PTH effect 294  
   water 154, 164  
 renal failure 142, 178  
 vitamin D 294  
 renin 186  
 secretion 156  
    $K^+$  174, 182  
   organic substances 160  
 solvent drag 162  
 structure 148  
 tight junctions 154  
 transport processes 154 ff., 155 B,C  
 tubuloglomerular feedback (TGF) 174  
 ultrafiltrate 154  
 urea 166  
 Killer cells, natural 94, 96  
   T-killer cells 98  
 Kilo- (multiple of a unit) 379  
 Kilowatt hour (kWh), conversion into SI unit 380  
 Kinase cascades 276  
 Kinesia 240  
 Kinesin 42, 58, 62  
 Kininogen 102, 216, 238  
   high-molecular-weight (HMK) 102  
   salivary gland 238

Kinocilium 348  
 Knee jerk reflex 318  
 Kohlrausch's fold 266  
 Kohlrausch break 358  
 Korotkow sounds 208  
 Korsakoff syndrome 342  
 Krebs cycle → citrate cycle  
 Krogh's diffusion coefficient 22, 120, 394  
 Krogh's cylinder model 130  
 Kupffer cells 96, 234  
 kWh (kilowatt hour), unit 380

**L**

Labia minora, glands 310  
 Labyrinth 370  
   basal, tubulus epithelium 154  
 Labyrinth reflexes, tonic 330  
 Lacrimal canaliculi 350  
   glands 350  
   sac 350  
 Lactacidosis 72, 76  
 Lactase 260  
 Lactate 72, 73 B2, 74, 142, 176, 284  
   concentration in plasma 76  
   glugoneogenesis from 284  
   muscle metabolism 72  
   myocard metabolism 212  
   physical work 76  
   renal reabsorption 156, 158  
   vagina 304  
 Lactation 294  
   reflex 305  
 Lactic acid → lactate  
 Lactogenesis 305, 306  
 Lactose 260  
 Lamellipodia 30  
 L-amino acids → amino acids  
 Landolt rings 355 A  
 Langerhans cells 96  
 Language 340, 342, 376  
 Lanosterol 296  
 Laplace's law 118, 190, 204, 212, 396  
 Large intestine 234, 266  
 Larynx 376  
   testosterone 308  
 Lateral geniculate body 362, 364  
   lemniscus 374  
   signal flow, retina 360  
 Lateralization, sound 370  
 Latency, hearing 374  
 Law of mass actions 385  
 Laxatives 264  
 LCCS (limited capacity control system) 340  
 LCAT (lecithin cholesterol acyl transferase) 256  
 LDL (low density lipoproteins) 256, 258, 304  
 LDL (low density lipoproteins) (cont.)  
   estrogen effect 304  
   receptors 256, 258  
 L-dopa 84  
 Learning 340  
 Lecithin 14, 250, 254  
   bile 250  
   cholesterol acyl transferase (LCAT) 256  
 Left axis deviation (heart) 200  
 Lemniscus, medial 324  
   trigeminalis 324  
 Length, units 378  
 Lens 350, 352  
 Leptin 232  
   receptors 232, 332  
 Leucine 228  
   insulin release 84  
 Leu-enkephalin 236  
 Leukocytes 88  
   interferon secretion 96  
 Leukotriene 270, 271  
   allergy 100  
   second messenger 278  
 Lewis's response 216  
 Leydig cells 304, 308  
 LFA 1 (lymphocyte function-associated antigen 1) 98  
 LH → lutropin  
 LHRH → gonadoliberin  
 Libido 308  
 Lids 350  
 Light, adaptation 356, 360  
   sensors 350  
   stimuli 360  
   wavelength 362  
 Light chain protein, myosin II 60  
 Lignin 228, 266  
 Limb leads (ECG) 198  
 Limbic system 312, 332  
 $\alpha$ -limit dextrin 248, 260  
 Limited capacity control system (LCCS) 340  
 Linear velocity, unit 380  
 Linoleic acid 228  
 Lipase 248, 254, 258  
   acid 258  
   gastric fundus 254  
   hepatic 256  
   in human milk 254  
   lingual 254  
   non-specific 254  
   pancreatic 254  
   saliva 238  
 Lipid membrane 14  
 Lipids 254, 258  
   absorption 254  
   digestion 254  
   distribution 256  
   storage 256  
   synthesis 12, 13 F, 284

- Lipogenesis 284  
 Lipolysis 86, 224, 248, 258, 284, 286  
   influence 258  
   insulin effect 286  
   STH effect 282  
   stimulation, thermoregulation 224  
 Lipoproteinlipase (LPL) 256, 258  
   insulin effect 286  
   thermoregulation 224  
 Lipoproteins 256 ff.  
   receptors 28, 256  
 Lipostasis 232  
 Lipoxygenase 271  
 Liter, definition 378 f.  
 Lithocholate 250  
 Liver 90, 160, 178, 234, 250, 252, 284  
   acid–base homeostasis 144, 178  
   bypass 234  
   calciol synthesis 294  
   coagulation factors, synthesis 102  
   conjugation process 160  
   damage, blood clotting 104  
   excretory function 160, 250 ff.  
   fatty 256  
   Fe homeostasis 90  
   fetal blood cell formation 88  
   formation of 7-dehydro-cholesterol 294  
   gluconeogenesis 284  
   glutamine formation 178  
   glycogenesis 284  
   icterus 252  
   jaundice 252  
   metabolism 284  
   steroid hormones, degradation 296  
   urea production 178  
 Load, filtered 158  
 Locus coeruleus 330  
 Logarithms, calculations 386 f.  
 Longitudinal tubules, muscle 60  
 Long-term potentiation (LTP) 340  
 Loop, cortico-thalamo-cortical 328  
   diuretics 174, 180  
   oculomotor 326, 328  
   skeletal motor 328  
 Loop of Henle 148, 164, 166, 180  
 Loudness 368, 376  
   level 368  
   voice 376  
 Low density lipoproteins (LDL) 258  
 Low pressure system 188  
 LRH → gonadoliberin  
 LTH → prolactin  
 LTP (long-term potentiation) 340  
 Luminous intensity, unit 378  
 Lumirhodopsin 354  
 Lung (→ also pulmonary) 106, 108, 110, 112  
   acid base balance 138 ff.  
   alveolar contact time 141 B  
   blood flow 106, 122, 188  
     fetus 222, 221 B  
   bronchial, obstruction 120  
   capacity, total (TCL) 112, 113 A  
   capillaries 106  
     blood pressure 122  
   disease, obstructive 118  
     restrictive 118  
   edema 118, 120, 122, 132, 144, 174, 210  
   fetal 222  
   function tests, dynamic 112, 118  
   gas exchange 120 ff.  
   hypoxic vasoconstriction 122  
   inflation 118  
   iron 110, 111 A2  
   O<sub>2</sub> diffusion capacity 22  
   opening pressure 118  
   perfusion → lung, blood flow 122  
   stretch receptors 132  
   surface tension 118  
   total capacity (TCL) 112  
   ventilation/perfusion ratio 122  
   volumes 112 ff.  
     measurement 112 ff.  
 Lung and thorax  
   compliance 116, 118  
   pressure–volume relationship 116  
 Luteal phase 300, 302  
 Luteinization 302  
 Luteinizing hormone (LH) →  
   lutropin  
     releasing hormone (LTH) →  
     gonadoliberin  
 Luteotropic hormone (LTH) →  
   prolactin  
 Luteotropin (LTH) → prolactin  
 Lutropin 271, 282, 296, 308  
   menstrual cycle 300  
   peak 302  
   receptor, cells of Leydig 308  
   secretion, pulsatile 300  
 Lymph flow 210, 211 B  
   intestinal 234, 256  
   nodes 88, 96  
   vessels 246  
 Lymphocyte function-associated antigen 1 (LFA 1) 98  
 Lymphocytes 88, 94  
   B- 94, 98  
     activation 98  
     clonal selection 98  
     differentiation 98  
     clonal deletion 94  
 Lymphocytes (cont.)  
   expansion 94  
   selection 94  
 intraepithelial (IEL) 234  
 naive 94  
 T- 94  
   “armed” 94, 96  
   CD4 98  
   CD8 98  
   cytotoxic cells 98  
   clonal expansion 98  
     selection 98  
   differentiation 98  
   naive 96  
   T helper cells 98  
   T<sub>H1</sub> cells 98  
   T<sub>H2</sub> cells 98  
   T killer cells 94, 98, 234  
   receptor 98  
 Lymphocytopoiesis 88  
 Lymphokins, cortisol 298  
 Lysine 176, 228, 260  
   intestinal absorption 260  
 Lysis, bacterial 94  
 Lysosomes 12, 14, 26 f., 28, 288  
 Lysozyme 94, 96, 234  
   renal absorption 158  
   saliva 238  
   tears 350  
**M**  
 μ (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 M (multiple of a unit) 379  
 m (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 M line, muscle 60  
 α<sub>2</sub>-Macroglobulins 104  
 Macrophages 30, 94, 96, 98, 226, 252  
   activation 96  
   break down of red blood cells 88  
   hemoglobin degradation 252  
   immune defense 94, 96  
   iron metabolism 90  
   migration 30  
   respiratory tract 110  
 Macula densa 148, 174, 186  
 Maculae 348  
 Magnesium → Mg<sup>2+</sup>  
 Magnetoencephalography (MEG) 334  
 Maintenance heat 74  
 Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) 96, 98  
 Malabsorption, folic acid 90  
 Maldigestion, enzyme deficit 248  
 Malpighian bodies 148  
 Malleus 370  
 Maltase 260  
 Maltose 248, 260

- Maltotriose 248, 260  
 Mammary glands 294  
 Mammatropic hormone → prolactin  
 Manganese (Mn) 228  
 Mannitol, osmotic diuresis 174  
 Mannose-6-phosphate 12, 14  
 Mannose-binding protein (MBP) 96  
 MAO (monoamine oxidase) 86  
 MAP kinase (mitogen-activated protein kinase) 278  
 Margination 94  
 Masking, sound 368  
 Masklike facial expression 328  
 Mass, units 380  
 Mass actions, law 385  
 Mass concentration 382  
 Mass movement, large intestine 266  
 Mast cells 104, 258  
   allergy 100  
 Maturation, influence of thyroid hormones 290  
   sexual 300, 308  
 Matrix, extracellular 14  
 Maximal breathing capacity (MBC) 118  
 Maximum diastolic potential (MDP) 194  
 MBC (maximal breathing capacity) 118  
 MBP (mannose-binding protein) 96  
 M cells, mucosal epithelium 234  
 MCH (mean corpuscular hemoglobin) 88 f., 89 C  
 MCHC (mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration) 88, 89 C  
 MCV (mean corpuscular volume) 88, 89 C  
 MDR1 (multidrug resistance protein 1) 252  
 MDR3 252  
 Measles 94  
 Mechano-electric transduction (= MET) 372  
 Mechanosensors, skin 316, 318  
 Medial geniculate body 374  
 Mediators 270  
 Medications, bile excretion 250  
 Medulla, adrenal 274  
   oblongata 132, 312, 324  
   circulatory "center" 216  
   rhythm generator, respiration 132  
   vomiting center 240  
 MEG (magnetoencephalography) 334  
 Mega- (multiple of a unit) 379  
 Megakaryocytes 88, 102  
 Meiosis 308  
 Meiotic division, spermatocyte 308  
   first, ovum 302  
   second, ovum 310  
 Meissner's corpuscles 316  
 Meissner's plexus (plexus submucous) 246  
 $\alpha$ -Melanocortin (=  $\alpha$ -MSH =  $\alpha$ -melanotropin) 232, 271, 282  
 Melanocortin receptor (MC4 receptor) 232  
 Melanocytes 282  
 Melanocyte-stimulating hormone → melanotropin  
 $\alpha$ -Melanocyte-stimulating hormone ( $\alpha$ -MSH) 232, 271, 282  
 Melanopsin 336  
 Melanotropin ( $\alpha$ -MSH) 232, 271, 282  
   release-inhibiting factor → melanostatin  
   releasing hormone → melanoliberin  
 Melatonin 336  
   second messenger 276, 278  
 Membrane  
   basolateral 162, 182  
   capacity, nerve 48  
   conductance 32  
   fractional 32  
   electric properties 42, 52  
   function 2  
   permeability for  $K^+$  46, 182  
   influence of cyclic AMP 276  
   for  $Na^+$  46, 56, 162  
   postsynaptic 42, 50  
   potential 32, 44, 48  
   photosensors 360  
   renal tubule 156  
   smooth muscle 70  
   presynaptic 42, 50  
   proteins, glycosylation 12  
   synthesis 12  
   structure 14  
   transport 16 f.  
   active 26 f.  
   carrier-mediated 22 f.  
   intracellular 16  
   non-ionic 22  
   paracellular 18  
   passive 20  
   potential, driving force 22, 32  
 Memory 340  
   immunological 94  
   knowledge 340  
   loss 340  
   motoric 328  
   short-term 340, 374  
 Menaquinone (Vitamin  $K_2$ ) 262  
 Menarche 300  
 Menopause 300, 304  
 Menses 282, 300 f.  
 Menstrual cycle 226, 300, 302, 305  
   body temperature 226, 300  
   hormonal control 302  
   interactions 302  
 Menstruation 282, 300 f.  
 Mercapturic acids 252  
 Merkel's cells 316  
 Merosin 60  
 Mesencephalon 312  
 Mesentery 246  
 Messenger, first (→ also hormones) 270, 276  
   ribonucleic acid → mRNA  
   second 270, 276  
   substances 268  
   third 270  
 MET (= Mechano-electric transduction) 372  
 MET channels 372  
 Metabolic alkalosis, 142  
   rate 228, 230  
   basal (BMR) 228  
   total 228  
 Metabolism, amino acids 158  
   bone 176, 294  
   carbohydrate 284, 298  
   energy 72, 286  
   glucose 284, 298  
   heart 212  
   iron 90  
   lipids 256, 284  
   muscle 256  
 Metarhodopsin I 354  
 Metarhodopsin II 354, 358  
   phosphorylation 356  
 Metastasis 30  
 Met-enkephalin 236  
 Methan, intestine 266  
 Methemoglobin (MetHb) 128  
   reductase 128  
 Methionine 176, 228  
 Methotrexate 262  
 5-Methyltetrahydrofolic acid 262  
 Methopropone 296  
 Metopyrone 296  
 $Mg^{2+}$  180, 264, 276  
   absorption, intestine 264  
   inhibition of  $Ca^{2+}$  channels, 50  
   CNS 340  
   excretion, renal 180  
   plasma concentration 180  
   renal reabsorption 156, 174, 180  
   sensors, kidney 180  
 mGLU-receptors, second messenger 276, 278  
 $MgSO_4$  250  
 MHC (major histocompatibility complexes) 96

- MHC proteins 96, 98  
 MI (cortex area) 326  
 Micelle, bile 250  
   intestine 254, 262  
 Michaelis constant 28  
 Michaelis-Menten constant ( $K_M$ )  
   28, 158, 389 f., 394  
   kinetics 28, 158, 389 f., 394  
   renal glucose transport 158  
 Micro- (submultiple of a unit)  
   379  
 Microfilaments 14, 16  
 Microglia 96, 344  
 Micrography 328  
 $\alpha_1$ -Microglobulin, renal reabsorption 158  
 $\beta_2$ -Microglobulin, renal reabsorption 158  
 Micron, conversion into SI unit 378  
 Microtubules 14  
 Micturition 79 ff., 148  
 Middle ear 370  
 MIF  $\rightarrow$  melanostatin  
 Migrating motor complex (MMC)  
   242  
 Migrating wave 372  
 Migration 30  
   phagocytes 94  
 MIH  $\rightarrow$  melanostatin  
 Mile, conversion into SI unit 378  
 Milk 254, 262, 292  
    $Ca^{2+}$  292  
   ejection 282, 305  
   fat 254  
   human, lipase 254  
   lactation reflex 305  
   oxytocin 305  
   production 305  
   prolactin 305  
   sugar (lactose) 260  
 Milli (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 Mineralcorticoids ( $\rightarrow$  also aldosterone) 184, 298  
   production 296  
 Minerals, intake 228  
   intestinal absorption 264  
   nutrition 228  
 Miniature endplate current 56, 57 B2  
 Mini-pill 305  
 Miosis 350, 364 f.  
 MIT (monoiodotyrosine residue) 288  
 Mitochondria 12, 290  
   critical  $O_2$  pressure 130  
   skeletal muscle 58, 63 A  
   structure and function 12  
    $T_3/T_4$  effect 290  
   thermal balance 224  
 Mitral cells, olfactory bulb 346  
   valves 192  
 MLCK (myosin light chain kinase) 36  
 MMC (migrating motor complex) 242  
 mm Hg, conversion into SI unit 380  
 Mobilferrin 90  
 Modification, posttranscriptional 10  
   posttranslational 12, 270  
 Mol, unit 380 f.  
 Molality 380 ff.  
 Molarity 380 ff.  
 Molecular layer 328, 330  
   "weight", unit 380 f.  
 Molybdenum (Mo) 228  
 2-Monoacylglycerol 248, 254  
 Monoamine oxidase (MAO) 86  
 Monoaminergic pathways system 332  
 Monocytes 88, 94, 96  
 Monoiodotyrosine residue (MIT) 288  
 Mononuclear phagocytotic system (MPS) 96  
 Monosaccharides ( $\rightarrow$  also glucose) 260  
 Monoxygenases 252  
 Monosynaptic stretch reflex 318  
 Morning sickness 240  
 Morphine 320  
   tubular transport 160  
 Moss fibre, cerebellum 330  
 Motilin 242  
   esophagus 240  
   interdigestive motility 236  
   secretion 236  
 Motility, molecular basis 58  
 Motion sickness 240  
 Motivation, limbic system 332  
 Motor activity 56 ff., 318 ff., 326  
   basal ganglia 326  
   cerebellum 328 f.  
   influence on circulation 74  
   pyramidal tract 326  
   voluntary motor function 326  
   postural motor control 330  
   aphasia 376  
   cortex 326 ff.  
   end-plate 56  
   function, control center 328  
   supportive 328  
   neuron 42, 58  
    $\alpha$ - 322, 326  
    $\gamma$ - 318, 322  
   paralysis 324  
   proteins 58, 62  
   system 326  
   unit 58, 66  
   recruitment 58  
   types 58  
 Mouth-to-mouth resuscitation 110  
 MPS (mononuclear phagocytotic system) 96  
 MRF  $\rightarrow$  melanoliberin  
 MRH  $\rightarrow$  melanoliberin  
 mRNA (messenger ribonucleic acid) 8  
 MRP2 (multi-drug-resistance protein type 2) 160, 252  
 MSH  $\rightarrow$  also melanotropin  
 $\alpha$ -MSH ( $\alpha$ -melanocyte-stimulating hormone) 232, 271, 282  
 Mucoviscidosis 248  
 Mucus 110, 238, 246  
   bronchial 110  
   cervical os 300  
   intestine 244, 246, 266  
   neck cells (MNC), stomach 242  
   saliva 238  
   stomach 244  
 Müller's maneuver 116  
 Multidrug resistance protein 1 (MDR1) 160, 252  
   3 (MDR3) 252  
 Multi organ failure 220  
 Muramidase  $\rightarrow$  lysozyme  
 Muscarine 82  
 Muscle(s) 42, 44, 46, 56 ff., 58, 59 A, 256  
   abdominal 108  
   activity, heat production 226  
   ATP 72  
   afterloaded contraction 66  
   bulbocavernosus 310  
   cardiac 46, 194 ff.  
   ciliary 350  
   contractile machinery 60 ff.  
   contraction 66  
   afterloaded 66, 204  
   auxotonic 66 ff.  
   isometric 66  
   isotonic 66  
   role of  $Ca^{2+}$  64  
   dilator 350  
   energy supply 72, 256, 285  
   extensibility 66  
   titin 68  
   fatigue 76  
   fiber 60 ff.  
   force-velocity diagram 68  
   hypertrophy 76  
   inspiratory 108  
   intercostal 108  
   ischiocavernosus 310  
   length-force curve 68  
   length, regulation 318  
   mechanical features 66  
   metabolism 284  
   middle ear 370  
   multi-unit type 70  
   myofibrils 60

**Muscle(s) (cont.)**

O<sub>2</sub> extraction 72  
 pump 206  
 puborectal 266  
 reflexes 318  
 relaxants 56  
 respiratory 108, 132  
 resting length 68  
   force 68  
   tension curve 66  
 single-unit type 70  
 short-term high performance 72  
 skeletal 56 ff.  
 smooth 70  
   action potential 59 A  
   caldesmon 70  
   contraction 70  
   M<sub>3</sub>-receptors 82  
 softening effect of ATP 64  
 soreness 76  
 spindle 318  
 sphincter 350  
 stapedius 370  
 stiffness 76  
 striated (→ also skeletal muscle, heart muscle) 59 ff.  
   contraction, molecular mechanism 62  
   cycle 64  
   summation of excitation 66  
   tension, regulation 318  
   tensor tympani 370  
   tone 66  
   types of contractions 66  
   weakness 56  
 Muscular dystrophies 60  
 Myasthenia gravis 118  
 Mycobacteria, immune defense 96  
 Mydriasis 350  
 Myelin 42, 48  
   sheath, nerve fibers 42, 48  
 Myelopoiesis 88  
 Myelosis, funicular 262  
 Myenteric plexus 246  
 Myocard → heart  
 Myocardial function 192 ff.  
   infarction 200, 220  
   metabolism 212  
   O<sub>2</sub> consumption 212  
   oxygen supply 212  
 Myofibrils 60  
 Myogenic tonus 70  
 Myoglobin 58, 72, 90, 128  
 Myometrium → uterus  
 Myopia 352  
 Myosin 58, 60  
   light chain kinase (MLCK) 36  
   smooth muscle 70  
 Myosin I 30  
 Myosin II 58, 60

**Myosin II (cont.)**

striated muscle 60 ff.  
 smooth muscle 70  
 Myotonia 62

**N**

n (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 N (newton), unit 380  
 N (nitrogen), balance 228  
 N<sub>2</sub> dissolved in plasma 134  
   role in diving 134  
   toxicity 134  
 Na<sup>+</sup> 56, 158, 162, 172, 184, 186, 260, 384  
   absorption in intestine 264  
   antiport carrier 26 f.  
   balance, effect of aldosterone 184  
   bicarbonate cotransporter 3 (= NBC3) 176  
   body content, total 172  
   channels 46, 56, 174, 264, 354  
   activation 46  
   collecting duct 162, 182  
   conductance 46  
   action potential 46  
   inactivation 46  
   intestine 264  
   kidney 162, 174  
   photosensors 354  
   resting potential 46  
   voltage-gated, heart 194  
 Cl<sup>-</sup> symport carrier 26  
 concentration, cytosolic 26, 44  
 co-transport 260  
 distribution 93  
 excretion, renal 162  
 feces 264  
 /H<sup>+</sup> antiport carrier (= Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger, NHE) 26, 28, 162, 176, 178, 248  
   kidney 176  
   PKC (protein kinase C) 278  
   stomach, parietal cells 244  
 influx, motor end plate 56  
 intake, hypertension 218  
 renal reabsorption 156  
   handling 162  
   retention 218  
   saliva 238  
 symport carrier 26 f.  
   amino acids 260  
   bile salts 250  
   Cl<sup>-</sup> 28, 162, 174, 238  
   glucose 156 f., 260  
   HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (hNBC) 162, 176  
   intestine 264  
   iodide (NIS) 288

**Na<sup>+</sup> (cont.)**

phosphate (NaPi) 180  
 vitamins 262  
 transport 44, 162, 172, 268  
 paracellular 238  
 tubular resorption 162  
 Na<sup>+</sup>-Ca<sup>2+</sup> antiport carrier 36, 196  
   kidney 180, 184  
   myocard 196  
   photosensors 356  
 Na<sup>+</sup>-2 Cl<sup>-</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-cotransport 238  
   inhibition 174  
   kidney 162  
   saliva 238  
 Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase (→ also ATPase) 26, 28, 46, 182, 244, 290  
   cardiac glycosides 26, 196  
   electrogenicity 46  
   hyperpolarizing afterpotential 46  
   heart muscle 196  
   ouabain 26  
   phosphorylation 26  
   renal collecting duct 182  
   tubule 154, 156, 162  
   resting potential 44  
   salt reabsorption, intestine 264  
   stomach, parietal cells 244  
   T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> effect 290  
   transport cycle 26  
 Na<sup>+</sup>-taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide (NTCP) 250  
 NaCl, homeostasis 172  
   disturbances 174  
   regulation 172  
   deficiency 172  
   excess, counter regulation 172  
   hypertension 218  
   reabsorption, salivary glands 238  
   sense of taste 344  
   uptake 172  
 NADH 39 C  
 NaP<sub>i</sub> (Na<sup>+</sup>-phosphate symport carrier) 180  
 nano- (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 Narcolepsy 340  
 Natriuretic hormone 172  
 Natural killer cells 94, 96  
 Nausea 240, 330  
 NBC (= Na<sup>+</sup>-bicarbonate cotransporter) 176, 248  
 Near point, eye 324, 352  
   sightedness 352  
   vision 350  
   response 365, 366  
 Necrosis 98  
 Neck reflex, tonic 330  
 Neocerebellum 328  
 Neostigmine 56  
 Nephrite 148  
 Nephrocalcine 180

- Nephron 148, 150  
 cortical 150  
 juxtamedullary 150  
 sections 148  
 structure 148  
 transport processes 154
- Nernst equation 32, 44, 394
- Nerve (→ also neuron and nerve) 78, 84, 312  
 antidromic conduction 48  
 cell 42  
 cholinergic 78, 82  
 conduction velocity 48  
 endings, free, smell 346  
 fiber 42, 48  
   diameter 42, 49 C  
   myelinated 42, 48  
   unmyelinated 42, 48  
 fibers Ia 318  
   Ib 318  
   Ia 318  
 glossopharyngeal 132  
 neurosecretory 282  
 optical 350  
 pelvic splanchnic 310  
 stimulation 50  
 structure 42  
 trigeminal 320, 324, 346, 365
- Nerve growth factor (NGF) 42, 280, 344
- Nervous system 42  
 autonomic 78 ff., 80/81 A, 82, 268  
   centers 78  
   cotransmitter 86  
   innervation, organs 78  
   peripheral 268  
 central 268, 312  
 enteric 236, 268  
 somatic 268
- Nervus opticus 350, 365  
 vagus 132, 244, 250, 376
- Net diffusion 20
- Neuroendocrine system 268 ff., 282 ff.
- Neurofibrils 42
- Neurofilaments 14
- Neurogenic tonus 70
- Neurohypophysis 270, 282
- Neuron (→ also nerve) 42, 50  
 Aδ 320  
 adrenergic 78 ff., 332  
 axolemma 42  
 axon 42  
 axon hillock 42  
 axonal transport 42  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> conductance 44  
 cholinergic 78 ff.  
 Cl<sup>-</sup> conductance 44  
 collaterals 42  
 conduction velocity 48, 49 C  
 cortex area 334
- Neuron (cont.)  
 dendrites 42  
 diameter 49 C  
 dopaminergic 328, 332  
 GABAergic 328  
 glutamatergic 328  
 Ia- 318, 322, 326  
 Ib- 318  
 II- 318  
 instestinal 246  
 internal longitudinal resistance 48  
 membrane capacity 48  
 α-motor 322  
 γ-motor 322  
 motoric 326, 330  
 neurosecretory 282  
 nitrogenergic 280  
 parasympathetic 78, 82  
 postganglionic 78, 82  
 preganglionic 78, 82  
 sensoric 314 ff.  
 serotoninergetic 332  
 soma 42  
 summation, spatial 52  
   temporal 52  
 structure 42, 43 A1  
 sympathetic 78, 82, 84  
 terminal buttons 42  
   action potential 48  
 transmission, electrotonic 48  
 visceral afferent 78, 236, 268
- Neuropeptid Y (NPY) 84, 86, 232, 282, 302  
 cotransmitter 84  
 receptor types 55 F  
 second messenger 55 F, 276
- Neurosecretion 282
- Neurotensin 55 F  
 second messenger 278
- Neurotransmitter 42, 50, 52, 55 F, 236, 268  
 autonomic nervous system 78 ff.  
 excitatory 52  
 exozytosis 50  
 function 42  
 inhibitory 52  
 ionotropic 34, 55 F  
 metabotropic 34, 55 F  
 release 50  
 re-uptake 52  
 termination of action 54 E
- Neurotubuli 42
- Newborn 93 D, 94, 118, 128, 136, 222, 226, 252, 290, 307  
 distress syndrome 118
- Newton (N), unit 380
- NF-κB (necrosis factor) 278
- NGF (nerve growth factor) 42, 280, 344
- NH<sub>3</sub> 22, 156, 176, 180
- NH<sub>3</sub> (cont.)  
 diffusion 22  
 production 178  
 renal cellular secretion 156, 176 f.  
 renal excretion 176  
 secretion, renal tubular 178  
 transporter 178
- NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> 145 B2, 176 ff.  
 excretion 178 ff.  
 nonionic transport 176  
 production 178
- NHE3 → Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> Antiportcarrier 248
- Niacin, intestinal absorption 262
- Niacinamide 228
- Nickel (Ni) 228
- Nicotine 82
- Nidation 300, 305
- NIDDM (non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus) 286
- Night blindness 228, 356, 358
- Nipples, erection 310
- NIS (2 Na<sup>+</sup>-I<sup>-</sup>-symport carrier) 288
- Nitric oxide → NO synthase (NOS) 82, 280
- Nitrogen → N and N<sub>2</sub>
- N<sub>M</sub>-receptors 82
- N<sub>N</sub>-receptors 82
- NO 74, 86, 94, 212, 214, 216, 240, 280  
 coronary vasodilatation 212  
 erection 310  
 immune defense 94  
 synthase 82, 280
- Noception 320, 322, 324  
 tract 320
- Nocisensors 320, 324
- Nodal point, eye 352
- Nodes of Ranvier 42, 48
- Noise suppression, auditory pathway 374
- Non-bicarbonate buffers 126, 138, 140, 144 f.
- Non-ionic diffusion 22, 156, 178
- Norepinephrine (→ also catecholamines) 52, 78, 84, 196, 232, 238, 270, 282, 302  
 adrenal medulla 86  
 cerebral cortex 334  
 coronary vasodilatation 212  
 extraneuronal uptake 86  
 heart 196  
 inactivation 86  
 insulin secretion 284  
 intestinal tract 236  
 neurons 332  
 pheochromocytoma 218  
 receptor types 55 F  
 release 84

- Norepinephrine (cont.)**  
 re-uptake 86  
 saliva secretion 238  
 second messenger 55 F, 276, 278  
 synthesis 84  
 thermoregulation 224
- NOS (nitric oxide synthase) 82, 280**
- NPY (Neuropeptide Y) 84, 86, 232, 282, 302**  
 cotransmitter 84  
 receptor types 55 F  
 second messenger 55 F, 276
- NREM (non-REM) sleep 336**
- NTCP (Na<sup>+</sup> taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide) 250**
- Nuclear bag fibers 318**  
 chain fibers 318  
 envelope 10  
 pores 10  
 function 16  
 signal sequences 10  
 receptors, calcitriol 294
- Nucleolus 8, 10**
- Nucleotides 8**
- Nucleus/nuclei, accessory 374**  
 amygdaloid 332  
 anterior olfactory 346  
 arcuate 232  
 caudate 312, 328  
 cuneatus 324  
 Deiter 328, 330  
 dentate 330  
 emboliformis 330  
 fastigial 330  
 gracilis 324  
 lateral, lemniscus 374  
 localisation signal 10  
 olivaris superior lateralis 370  
 paraventricular 232  
 pedunculus pontinus 328  
 RNA synthesis 8  
 red 330  
 septal 332  
 subthalamic 328  
 suprachiasmatic (SCN) 336  
 thalamic, anterior 332  
 tractus solitarius 170, 344  
 vestibular 348
- Nuel's spaces 370**
- Nursing mother, Ca<sup>2+</sup> requirement 292**
- Nutrition 228**  
 integration 236, 332  
 passage time, stomach 235, 242  
 reflex 322  
 vegetarian 142
- Nystagmus 366**  
 caloric 348
- Nystagmus (cont.)**  
 optokinetic 366  
 pathological 366  
 postrotatory 348
- O**
- Ω (ohm), unit 381**
- O<sub>2</sub> (Oxygen) 72, 106**  
 arterio-venous difference 132, 212  
 in myocard 212  
 artificial respiration 132  
 binding curve  
 in blood 126, 128  
 fetal hemoglobin 222, 129 C  
 myoglobin 129 C  
 breathing 136  
 capacity of blood 126, 128  
 chemosensors 132, 136  
 concentration, blood, maximum 128  
 difference, heart muscle 212  
 consumption 106, 120, 150, 230, 290  
 heart muscle 212  
 maximum 74, 76  
 measurement 112, 120  
 organs 130, 189 A  
 renal 150  
 T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> effect 290
- debt 72**
- deficiency 72, 130, 136, 212, 214**  
 ventilation 136
- demands 72, 74, 130**  
 heart muscle 212  
 increased 130  
 organ difference 130
- difference, alveolar-arterial 122**  
 arteriovenous 74, 106, 130
- diffusion 21 A, 130**  
 lung 22  
 tissue 130
- dissociation curve 128**  
 fetal hemoglobin 222  
 dissolved in plasma 128
- extraction 72 f., 130, 212**  
 coefficient 212  
 heart muscle 212  
 exercise 74  
 organs, difference 130  
 skeletal muscle 72
- half saturation pressure 128**
- high altitude 136**
- Krogh's diffusion coefficient 22, 120**
- partial pressure 20**  
 alveolar 120, 128  
 diving 134  
 arterial blood 128
- O<sub>2</sub> (Oxygen) (cont.)**  
 chemical respiratory stimulant 132  
 critical, mitochondria 130  
 high altitude 136  
 hyperventilation 120  
 mixed venous blood 120, 128  
 plasma 132  
 radicals, immune defense 94  
 role in autoregulation 214  
 saturation (S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) 126, 128  
 fetus 222, 221 A  
 influence on CO<sub>2</sub> binding curve 126  
 solubility coefficient 128  
 in plasma 126  
 supply, fetus 222  
 myocard 212  
 therapy 136  
 toxicity 134, 136  
 diving 136  
 transport in blood 128  
 uptake, exercise 74  
 maximum 72, 76, 77 C  
 endurance athlete 77 C
- OAT1 (organic anion transporter type 1) 160, 270**
- Obesity 232**
- Occludins 18**
- OCT (organic cation transporter) 160**
- Ocular chamber 350**  
 muscle, nuclei 348  
 pressure, internal 322
- Oculomotor control 328, 331, 348**
- Odorant molecules 346**
- OFF-bipolar cells 360**  
 field (central) 360  
 ganglion cells 360, 364
- OH<sup>-</sup>-ions 138 ff.**
- Ohm (Ω), unit 381**
- Ohm's law 32, 116, 190**  
 ion transport 32, 394  
 circulation 190, 394  
 ventilation 116
- Oil-and-water partition coefficient 20**
- Olfactory epithelium 346**  
 pathway 346  
 sensor cells, primary 346  
 tract 346
- Oligodendrocytes 42, 344**
- Oligopeptides, digestion 260**  
 renal handling 158
- Oligosaccharides 260**
- Oliguria 164**  
 shock 220
- Olive inferior 330**  
 superior 374
- Oncotic pressure 24, 94, 152, 166, 210, 384**

- Oncotic pressure (cont.)*  
 influence on capillary fluid exchange 210, 385  
 plasma 152
- One-half maximum velocity constant ( $K_M$ ) 28
- ON-bipolar cells 360  
 field (central) 360  
 ganglion cells 360, 364
- Oocyte stage, primary 300
- Oogenesis 300
- Oogonia 300, 308
- Open-probability, ion channels 34
- Open system, thermodynamics 40
- Opioids 276, 282  
 endogenous 320  
 exogenous 320  
 Gn-RH secretion 302  
 receptor types 55 F  
 gastrointestinal tract 236  
 second messenger 55 F, 276
- Opponent color channel 362
- Opsin 354, 356
- Oposonization 94, 96
- Optic chiasm 364  
 nerve 364  
 lesion 364  
 tract 360, 364
- Optical apparatus 350  
 nerve 350  
 system, simple 352
- Optokinetic nystagmus 366
- Orexin 232
- Organ of balance 366  
 Corti 370
- Organelles 8
- Organs, blood flow 187 A, 214, 216  
 fetus 221 A  
 transplanted 98
- Organ vasculosum laminae terminalis (OVL) 282, 312, 332
- Orgasm 310
- Orgasmic cuff 310
- Ornithine 260
- Orthopnea 108
- Orthostasis 5 C, 6f., 206, 218
- Orthostatic hypotension 184  
 reflex 7 E, 206, 218
- Oscillation, unstable 6
- Osmol 383
- Osmolality, plasma 92  
 unit 383  
 urine 164, 174
- Osmolarity 383  
 saliva 238  
 unit 383
- Osmolytes, organic 170
- Osmometer 383
- Osmoregulation 170
- Osmosensors 170, 274, 332
- Osmosis 24
- Osmotic coefficient 383 ff.  
 diuresis 174, 178  
 effect on  $K^+$  excretion 184  
 pressure 24, 383  
 colloidal 92, 383
- Ossicles, auditory 370
- Osteoclasts 292, 294
- Osteolysis, malignant 294
- Osteomalacia 294
- Osteoporosis 304
- Otoliths 348
- Ouabain 26, 172
- Ounce, conversion into SI unit 380
- Outer ear 370
- Oval window 370, 372
- Ovaries 256, 270, 296, 300, 308  
 HDL receptor 256  
 menstrual cycle 300  
 pregnancy 306  
 production, fertilizable egg 300  
 testosterone production 308
- Overshoot, action potential 46
- Overtone 368
- Overweight 228, 232
- OVL (organ vasculosum laminae terminalis) 170, 282, 312, 332
- Ovulation 300, 302, 304  
 antioviulatory effect 305  
 inhibitors 302
- Ovum 300, 304  
 first meiotic division 302  
 second meiotic division 310  
 implantation 300, 305
- Oxalate 102, 158, 160, 264  
 inhibition, blood clotting 102  
 renal secretion 158, 160
- Oxidation, biological molecules 41  
 of glucose, aerobic 72
- $\beta$ -oxidation 258
- 2-oxoglutarate 178
- $\beta$ -oxybutyric acid (286)
- Oxygen  $\rightarrow O_2$
- Oxygenation 128
- Oxyntic cells  $\rightarrow$  parietal cells
- Oxytocin 172, 271, 276, 282, **305**, 306  
 receptors 55 F  
 second messenger 55 F, 276, 278  
 uterus 306, 310
- P**
- P  $\rightarrow$  progesterone
- $P_{0.5}$  (half saturation pressure) 128
- $P_A$  (alveolar pressure) 108
- P (proportional)-Sensors 316
- P (multiple of a unit) 379
- p (submultiple of a unit) 379
- P wave, ECG 198
- Pa (Pascal), unit 380
- Pacemaker 70, 242  
 heart 194, 196, 202  
 artificial 202  
 tertiary 194  
 ventricular 194, 202
- intestine, motility 246
- potential, heart 194
- stomach 242
- Pacinian corpuscles 316
- PAF (platelet-activating factor) 100, 102
- PAH  $\rightarrow$  p-aminohippurate
- Pain 320, 322, 324  
 assessments 320  
 components 320  
 post-exercise muscle ache 77 D  
 related behavior 320
- Palaeocerebellum 328
- Pallidum 312, 328
- Pancreas 234, 248  
 cell types 284, 286  
 enzymes 248  
 exocrine 248  
 gastrin release 254  
 hormones 284, 286  
 islets 270  
 juice 248, 254  
 somatostatin 286
- Pancreatic lipase 254  
 necrosis, acute 248  
 polypeptide 284  
 secretions 248
- Pantothenic acid 228
- Papilla nervi optici 350, 364
- Para-aminohippurate (PAH) 150, 160
- Paracellular transport 154
- Paracrine action of hormones 284
- Paraflocculus 328
- Parallel fibres, cerebellum 330
- Paralysis 62  
 dissociated 324
- Paraplegia 322, 330
- Parasites, defense against 94
- Parasympathetic fibers, genital tract 216  
 heart 196  
 innervated organs 82  
 ganglia 78 ff.  
 nervous system, gastrointestinal tract 236

- Parasympathetic fibers, genital tract (cont.)*  
 saliva secretion 238  
 stimuli, salivary glands, blood flow 216  
 Parathormone → parathyrin  
 Parathyrin (PTH) 36, 37 C3, 180, 292  
 calcitriol 294  
 chemistry 292  
 deficiency 292  
 effects 292  
 influence on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and phosphate excretion 180  
 regulation 292  
 renal  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption 180  
 Parathyroid glands, 270 292  
 hormone → parathyrin  
 Paravertebral ganglionic chain 78  
 Parkinson's disease 328  
 Parietal cells, gastric 242, 244  
 Parotid glands 238  
 Pars recta, renal tubule 148  
 Partial pressure 106, 120  
 Dalton law 106  
 Parvalbumin, muscle fibers 64  
 Pascal (Pa), unit 380  
 PAS domains 336  
 Passive immunization 94  
 Patch-clamp technique 34  
 Pause, compensatory 202  
 post-extrasystolic 202  
 PBI → iodine  
 PCT (proximal convoluted tubule) 164  
 PDGF (platelet-derived growth factor) 102, 280  
 PD-Sensors 314, 316  
 Peak expiratory pressure 116  
 inspiratory pressure 116  
 Pendrin 176  
 Pendular movements, intestine motility 246  
 nystagmus 330  
 Penicillin, tubular secretion 156  
 Penis 310  
 erection 280  
 REM sleep 336  
 Pepsins 240, 244, 260  
 Pepsinogens 244, 260  
 PepT1 (peptide transporter 1), intestine 260  
 PepT2, kidney 158  
 Peptidase 158, 244, 248, 260  
 Peptide(s), catabolism, renal 148  
 carrier PepT1 260  
 PepT2 158  
 digestion 260  
 hormones 270, 276, 306  
 placenta 306  
 messenger 276  
 renal reabsorption 156, 158
- Peptide(s), catabolism, renal (cont.)*  
 handling 128  
 transmitter 55 F  
 Peptide- $\text{H}^+$ -symport carrier 28, 158, 260  
 PER 336  
 Perception, visual 314  
 color 362  
 form 316  
 shape 316  
 spatial nature 316  
 Perfusion, cerebral 188  
 pulmonary 120  
 imbalance 120, 122, 130  
 Performance limit 76  
 Periglomerular cells 346  
 Perilymph 370, 372  
 Perimeter 364  
 Peripheral resistance 190, 208  
 influence on heart function 208  
 Peristalsis 236  
 esophagus 240  
 intestine 246  
 large 266  
 stomach 242  
 ureter 148  
 Permeability,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  82  
 $\text{Cl}^-$  44  
 coefficient (P) 22  
 $\text{K}^+$  44, 56, 82  
 $\text{Na}^+$  44, 56, 82  
 Peroxidase, thyroid (TPO) 288  
 Peroxisomes 14  
 Perspiratio insensibilis 224  
 Perspiration 224  
 water losses 168  
 Pertussis toxin 278  
 Peta- (multiple of a unit) 379  
 Peyer's patches 234  
 pH 138, 146, 384  
 blood 132, 138  
 buffer 138  
 normal range 142  
 cerebrospinal fluid 126, 132  
 clearance, esophagus 240  
 erythrocytes 126  
 esophagus 240  
 homeostasis, kidney 176  
 role of liver 178  
 influence on diffusion 22  
 on protein bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  292  
 measurement 146  
 plasma 126, 136, 138, 142  
 $\text{K}^+$  metabolism 182  
 saliva 238  
 tubule lumen 176  
 urine 156  
 Phagocytes 94  
 Phagocytosis 12, 28, 96  
 Phase, vulnerable, heart 202
- Phenol red, tubular secretion 160  
 Phenprocoumon 104  
 Phenolamine 84  
 Phenylalanine 228  
 Phenylephrine 87 B  
 Phenylethanolamine-N-methyltransferase 84  
 Pheochromocytoma 218  
 Phon 368  
 Phosducin 356, 358  
 Phosphatase 278  
 alkaline 252  
 Phosphate 138, 158, 177, 180, 292, 294  
 absorption, intestine 264  
 blood buffer 138  
 calcium complex former 180  
 concentration, serum 292  
 deficiency 180, 294  
 DNA 8  
 excess 180  
 excretion 178, 180, 294  
 $\text{H}^+$  secretion 178  
 homeostasis 292  
 intake 292  
 intestinal absorption 294  
 metabolism 292  
 plasma 292  
 renal reabsorption 158  
 solubility 292  
 Phosphadidylcholine (lecithin)  $\text{K}^+$  14, 250, 254  
 bile 250  
 Phosphatidylethanolamine 14  
 Phosphadidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate (PIP<sub>2</sub>) 278  
 Phosphatidylserine 14  
 Phosphaturia 180  
 Phosphodiesterase 278, 354, 356  
 cGMP-specific 280  
 Phospholipase A2 248, 254  
 Phospholipase C $\beta$  (PLC $\beta$ ) 37 C1, 82, 84, 278  
 Phospholipids 254, 256  
 blood clotting 102  
 lipoproteins 256  
 cell membrane 14  
 Phosphoric acid (→ also phosphate) 142, 176  
 Phosphorylation 276  
 Photochemistry, eye 354  
 Photosensors 350, 352, 354  
 retinal distribution 354  
 sensor potential 360  
 Photopic vision 354  
 Phyllochinone 262  
 Physical activity 72 ff.  
 energy reserve 284  
 exercise capacity 76  
 core temperature 226  
 energy supply 228  
 heat production 224

- Physical activity (cont.)*  
 measure 74  
 measurement 76  
 work **72 ff.**, 142, 284  
 activation of the sympathetic nervous system 74  
 heat production 224  
 O<sub>2</sub> consumption 74  
 threshold, aerobic 76  
 anaerobic 76  
 ventilation 74  
 respiratory control 74, 133  
 A5  
 unit 380  
 Physiologic integration 268  
 Phytin 264  
 Pico- (submultiple of a unit) 379  
 PIF → prolactostatin  
 Pigmented epithelium 350  
 PIH (prolactin-release inhibiting hormone) → dopamine  
 Pineal body (= pineal gland = epiphysis) 336  
 Pinocytosis 28  
 PIP<sub>2</sub> (phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate) 278  
 Pirenzepine 82  
 Pituitary gland **282, 288**  
 anterior 270, 282  
 influence of neurotransmitters 282  
 TSH secretion 288  
 TRH receptors 288  
 hormones 270  
 posterior 182, 270, 282  
 ADH secretion 172  
 hormone secretion 282  
 testosterone effect 308  
 pK<sub>a</sub> value 138, 140, 384 f.  
 PKA (protein kinase A = A kinase) 84, 276  
 PKC (protein kinase C) 36, 37 C1, 70, 84, 278  
 PKG (protein kinase G) 280  
 PKK (prekallikrein) 102  
 Placenta 100, 222, 294, 304, 306  
 Placental barrier, function 306  
 hormones 306  
 immunoglobulins 92  
 transfusion 222  
 Plasma 88, 92  
 albumin 92  
 cells 94, 98  
 CO<sub>2</sub> 124  
 components 88, 92  
 factors 100  
 globulins 92  
 osmolality 92, 171  
 proteins 88, 92, 154, 158, 383 f.  
 binding 24, 25 C, 88, 154  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> 180, 292  
 blood puffer 138  
*Plasma (cont.)*  
 function 88, 92, 383 f.  
 types 92  
 pH 126  
 thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) 102  
 volume 172  
 measurement 168  
 salt deficiency 172  
 Plasmin 104  
 Plasminogen 104  
 Plasticity of smooth muscle 70  
 pyramidal cells 334  
 Platelet(s) (→ also Thrombocytes) 88, 102  
 activating factor (PAF) 100, 102  
 activation 102  
 aggregation 102  
 inhibitors 104  
 derived growth factor (PDGF) 102, 280  
 PLC (Phospholipase C) 37 C1, 82, 84, 278  
 Plethysmography 114  
 Pleura 108  
 pressure (P<sub>pl</sub>) 108  
 Plexus myentericus (Auerbach) 236, 246  
 submucous (Meissner) 236, 246  
 PMA (premotor area) 326  
 Pneumothorax 110  
 diving 134  
 types 110  
 Podocytes, glomerulus 148  
 Poikilothermy 224  
 Point, low 72  
 Polkissen 186  
 Polyethylene glycol, intestine 264  
 Polypeptide, pancreatic 284  
 Polyribosomes 10  
 Polysaccharides, chemical structure 227 B  
 digestion 260  
 Polysomes 10  
 Polysynaptic reflexes 322  
 Polyuria 164  
 POMC (pro-opiomelanocortin) 232, 282  
 placenta 306  
 Pond, conversion into SI unit 380  
 Pons 132, 312  
 eye movement 366  
 Pontocerebellum 328  
 Porphyrin 128  
 Portal circulation 234, 250  
 hypothalamus 282  
 vein 210, 234  
 Positive pressure ventilation continuous (CPPV) 110  
 intermittent (IPPV) 110  
 Postcentral gyrus 324  
 Posterior funiculus, nuclei 324  
 Postextrasystolic pause 202  
 Postsynaptic inhibition 322  
 membrane 42, 50  
 Posttranslational modification 10, 12  
 Posttranscriptional modification 12  
 Postural control 330  
 motor function 326, 328, **330**, 348  
 system 326  
 reflex 330  
 labyrinthine 330  
 Posture 326, 330  
 maintaining 326  
 Potassium → K<sup>+</sup>  
 Potentia coeundi 308  
 Potential, action 46 ff., 48  
 unit 381  
 diffusion 44  
 electrochemical 32  
 end-plate 56  
 equilibrium 44  
 excitatory postsynaptic (EPSP) 52, 56, 322  
 inhibitory postsynaptic (IPSP) 52, 82, 334  
 maximum diastolic, heart pacemaker 194  
 resting membrane 44  
 reversal 47 B, 56  
 threshold 46, 48  
 transepithelial 156, 182  
 lumen-negative (LNTP) 162, 238, 264  
 lumen-positive (LPTP) 162, 174, 180, 182  
 Pound, conversion into SI unit 380  
 Power, unit 380  
 Powers of ten, calculation with 386 f.  
 PP (pulse pressure) 196, 208  
 ppb (parts per billion), unit 382  
 ppm (parts per million), unit 382  
 P<sub>pl</sub> (pleural pressure) 108  
 PQ interval, ECG 198  
 PQ segment, ECG 198  
 Prader-Willi syndrome 232  
 Prazosin 87 B  
 Prealbumin, thyroxin-binding (TBPA) 290  
 Precapillary sphincter 190  
 Pregnancy 90, 262, 292, 294, 302, 304  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> 292  
 central venous pressure 206  
 hormone concentrations 304  
 hormonal control 306, 332  
 nausea 240  
 Rh system 100

- Pregnancy (cont.)**  
 tests 296, 306  
 vitamin D-binding protein 294  
 vomiting 240
- Pregnanediol** 296, 305, 306
- Pregnenolone** 296, 305  
 17-OH 296
- Prekallikrein (PKK)** 102
- Preload, heart** 204, 206
- Prepotential, heart** 194
- Preproinsulin** 284
- Presbycusis** 368, 372, 376
- Presbyopia** 352
- Presentation of antigens** 96
- Pressure (unit)** 380
- Pressure, arterial sensors** 216  
 capillary 210  
 central venous (CVP) 192, 206  
 colloidal osmotic 384  
 diuresis 172, 174  
 hydrostatic 210  
 feet 210  
 internal ocular 350  
 intrapleural 108  
 intrapulmonic 108  
 intrathoracic 108  
 oncotic 24, 210, 166, 384  
 peritubular capillaries 166  
 plasma 152  
 osmotic 24, 384  
 transmural 190  
 transpulmonary 108  
 transthoracic 108  
 ventricular 192, 204  
 volume curve, heart 68  
 lung and thorax 116  
 wave, pulse wave 192
- Pressosensors, arterial** 316  
 skin
- Prestin** 372
- Presynaptic inhibition** 322  
 membrane 42, 50
- Pretectal region** 365
- Previtamin D** 294
- Primary, response, antigen contact** 94  
 saliva 238  
 urine 164
- Principal cells, kidney** 162, 182  
 point, optical apparatus 352
- PRL** → prolactin
- Proaccelerin** 102
- Probenecid** 160
- Procarboxypeptidase** 248
- Process, ciliary** 350
- Procolipase** 248, 254
- Proconvertin** 102
- Procreative capacity** 308
- Proelastase** 248
- Progesterone** 132, 296, 300, 302, 305, 306  
 actions 294, 305, 306
- Progesterone (cont.)**  
 chemistry 305  
 degradation 305  
 esophagus sphincter 240  
 menstrual cycle 300  
 17-OH- 296  
 placenta 306  
 plasma concentration 304  
 transport 305  
 production 296, 305  
 respiration 132  
 secretion rate 305
- Proglucagon** 286  
 intestinal 284
- Proinsulin** 282, 284
- Prolactin** 270, 271, 276, 282, 305, 308  
 lactation reflex 305  
 menstrual cycle 300  
 receptor 280  
 release inhibiting hormone → prolactostatin 270 ff., 282, 300, 305  
 secretion, pulsatile 300  
 TRH effect 305
- Prolactostatin (PIH = dopamine)** 270 ff., 282, 300, 305
- Proliferation** 274  
 lymphocytes 94
- Proliferative phase, menstrual cycle** 300
- Prolipase** 248
- Pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC)** 232, 282, 306
- Prophospholipase A2** 254
- Proportional sensors** 314, 316, 318
- Proprioception** 316, 318, 324
- Propriosensors** 318, 326  
 neck 330
- Prostacyclin (PGI<sub>2</sub>)** 104, 216, 270, 271
- Prostaglandin(s) (PG)** 162, 234, 236, 244, 270, 276, 278  
 autoregulation 214  
 E<sub>2</sub> 216, 320  
 fever 226  
 effects 271  
 F<sub>2</sub>α 216  
 fetal circulation 222  
 HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> secretion, stomach 244  
 I<sub>2</sub> (Prostacyclin) 104, 216, 270, 271  
 coronary vasodilatation 212  
 intestine 264  
 prostate 310  
 second messenger 276, 278  
 synthesis 271  
 inhibition 271, 320  
 uterus 306, 310
- Prostate** 308, 310
- Protonoma** 362
- Protonopia** 362
- Proteases, pancreatic juice** 248, 260
- Protective reflexes** 240, 322
- Protein C** 104  
 S 104
- Protein** 154, 148, 228, 230  
 absorption, intestine 260  
 binding 24, 154  
 bound iodine 288, 290  
 caloric equivalent 230  
 capillary permeability 210  
 catabolism, renal 148  
 chemical structure 229 B  
 concentration in cerebrospinal fluid 144  
 digestion 248, 260  
 enzymes 244, 248  
 energy supply 230  
 filtrability, glomerulus 154  
 functional minimum 228  
 hormones 270  
 kinase A (PKA) 84, 276  
 kinase C (PKC) 36, 37 C1, 70, 84, 278  
 kinase G (PKG) 280  
 kinase II (calmodulin-dependent protein) 36, 50  
 kinase, tyrosine specific 284  
 minimum intake 228  
 nuclear, nuclear pores 10  
 nutrition 228  
 phosphorylated 276  
 plant 228  
 plasma 92, 158  
 renal reabsorption 156  
 synthesis 10, 13 F  
 influence of cyclic AMP 276
- Proteinuria** 158, 210
- Proteolysis** 248
- Prothrombin** 102, 104
- Protons** → H<sup>+</sup>
- Proximal stomach** 242
- P (proportional)-Sensors** 314, 316, 318
- Pseudohypoparathyroidism** 292
- Psychotropic drugs** 332
- PTA (plasma thromboplastin antecedent)** 102
- Pteroylglutamate acid** 262
- Pteroylpolyglutamate hydrolase** 262
- PTH** → parathyrin
- Ptyalin** 238, 260
- Puberty** 304  
 spermatogonia 308
- Puborectal muscles** 266
- Pudendal nerve** 266
- Pulmonary (→ also lung) artery** 122, 188, 192  
 partial pressures 122  
 pressure 120, 192, 208

**Pulmonary artery (cont.)**

- blood flow 122
- capillaries 106, 122, 124
- circulation 188, 190
  - resistance 208
- edema 118, 120, 122, 132, 144, 174, 210
- infarction 120
- stretch receptors 132
- valves 192
- ventilation, exercise 74
- ventilation/perfusion ratio 122
- Pulse pressure (PP) 192, 208
  - receptors 216
  - wave, velocity (PWV) 192
- Puncts, lacrimal 350
- Pupilla 350, 352
  - contraction 350
  - dilatation 350, 358, 364
  - role in adaptation to light 358
- Pupillary reflex 358, 364
- Purine, receptor types 55 F
  - second messenger 55 F
- Purkinje cells, cerebellum 328, 330
  - fibers 194
    - action potential 202
- Pursuit eye movement 366
- Putamen 316, 326, 328
- P wave (ECG) 192, 198
- PWV (pulse wave velocity) 192
- Pylorus 242
- Pyramidal cells, motosensory cortex 334
  - tract 326
- Pyridoxal 262
- Pyridoxamine 262
- Pyridoxine 262
- Pyrogens 226
- Pyruvate 73 B2
- Pyruvic acid 73 B2

**Q**

- Q10 value 40
- QRS axis, ECG 200
- QRS complex, ECG 198
- QRS vector, mean 198, 200
- QT interval, ECG 198, 200
- Quinidine, tubular transport 160
- Quinine 344
- Quotient, respiratory 120, 136, 230
- Q wave, ECG 198, 200
  - abnormalities 200

**R**

- R (gas constant) 20, 32, 34, 112
- R wave, ECG 198
- Radiation 224, 226
- Rahn valve 114
- Raphe nuclei 330
- RAS (renin-angiotensin system) 170, 186, 220
- RA sensor (rapidly adapting pressure sensor) 316
- Rate constant 40
- RBC (red blood cell) → erythrocyte
- RBF (renal blood flow) → kidney
- RCC (red cell count) 90
- Reabsorption, capillaries 210
  - renal tubule 148, 152 ff., 162, 176 ff., 182 ff.
- Reaction, acrosomal 310
  - coupled 41
  - endergonic 38
  - endothemic 38
  - equilibrium constant 40
  - exergonic 38
  - exothermic 38
  - hypersensitivity (allergy) 100
  - rate of 40
    - constant 40
- Reactive hyperemia 214
- Reading 340
  - presbyopia 352
- Rebound effect 274
  - phenomenon 330
- Receptive field 316, 360
  - retina 360
  - relaxation 240, 242
- Receptor (sensory receptors → sensors) 6, 55 F, 270, 314
  - acetylcholin → cholinceptor
    - second messenger 276 f.
  - ADH 55 F, 214
  - adrenalin → adrenoceptors
  - adrenergic → adrenoceptors
  - angiotensin II 214
  - CCK 55 F
    - gallbladder 250
    - stomach 244
  - cobalamine 28
  - cholinergic 82
  - dopamin 250
  - epinephrine → adrenoceptors
  - endothelin 214
  - G protein-dependent 52
  - guanylyl cyclase 280
  - histamin 55 F, 214, 244, 276, 278
  - hormone 268, 270, 276
  - immunoglobulins 96
  - insulin 270, 284
  - internalization 52
  - ionotropic 52, 55 F, 82

**Receptor (cont.)**

- LDL 28
  - mediated endocytosis 12 f.
  - metabotropic 52, 55 F, 82
- noradrenaline → adrenoceptors
- norepinephrin → adrenoceptors
- proteins 270, 280, 298
- recycling 12, 13 F, 29 C
- serine/threonine kinase 280
  - synapse 50, 55 F
  - transferrin 90
  - tyrosin kinase 280, 284
  - tyrosine phosphatases 280
- Recoverin 356, 358
- Recruitment, motoric unit 58
  - acoustic neurons 374
- Rectum 234, 266
- Recurrent inhibition 318, 322
- Red blood cells → erythrocytes
- 5 $\alpha$ -Reductase, testosterone 308
- Reentry, excitation, heart 196, 202
- Reference values 396 ff.
- Reflection coefficient ( $\sigma$ ) 24, 210, 383
- Reflex 78, 318 ff.
  - abdominal 322
  - absence of 322
  - accommodation 242
  - arc 78
  - autonomic 322
  - conditioned 238, 244
    - saliva secretion 238
  - consensual 365
  - corneal 322
    - crossed 322
  - diagnostic 322
  - endogenous 236
  - extensor 322
  - flexion 322
  - gastrocolic 266
  - gastrointestinal tract 236
  - Henry-Gauer 220
  - Hoffmann's 318
  - knee jerk 318
  - labyrinthine postural 330
  - load compensation 318
  - locomotor 322
  - monosynaptic 318
  - neck, tonic 330
  - nutrition 322
  - orthostatic 206
  - peristaltic 236, 246
  - plantar 322
  - polysynaptic 322
  - postural 330
  - proprioceptive 318
  - protective 240, 322
  - pupillary 365

- Reflex (cont.)*  
 spreading 322  
 statokinetic 330  
 time 318, 322  
 tone 66  
   labyrinth 330  
   vagovagal, esophagus 240  
   vestibulo-ocular 348  
   withdrawal 322  
 Refraction, eye 352  
 Refractive power 352  
 Refractory period (action potential) 46  
   absolute 46  
   relative 46  
   heart 202  
 Regulation 4, 268  
 Reissner's membrane 372  
 Relaxation, receptive 240, 242  
 Relaxin 170  
 Release-inhibiting hormones 270, 271, 282  
 Releasing hormones 270, 271, 282  
 REM sleep (rapid eye movement) 336  
 Remnants of chylomicrons 258  
   of VLDL 256  
 Renal ( $\rightarrow$  also kidney) artery, stenosis 186  
   blood flow 150  
   failure 142, 178  
   function, glucocorticoid effect 298  
 Renin 148, 186  
   hypertension 218  
 Renin-angiotensin system (RAS) 170, 186, 220  
   control 186  
 Renshaw cells 318, 322, 326  
 Replication, cell 8  
 Repolarisation (action potential) 46  
 Repressor protein 8  
 Reproduction 300 ff., 332  
 RES (Reticuloendothelial system) ( $\rightarrow$  also macrophage and mononuclear phagocytotic system) 96  
 Reserve volume, expiratory 112  
   inspiratory 112  
 Residual capacity, functional (FRC) 112, 114, 116  
   volume (RV) 112, 114  
 Resistance peripheral 188, 208  
   hypertension 218  
   unit 381  
   vessels 188, 190  
 Respiration ( $\rightarrow$  also respiratory) 106  
   artificial 110  
   control 132
- Respiration (cont.)*  
 dead space 110, 114  
 effects of diving 134  
 functions 106  
 high altitude 132, 136  
 influence on venous return 110  
 internal 106  
 mechanical 110  
 mechanics 108, 110, 112, 144, 116  
 mouth-to-mouth 110  
 muscles 108  
 pressure-volume relationships 116  
 work of breathing 116  
 Respiratory acidosis 144  
   alkalosis 142, 144  
   air, purification 110  
   chain 12, 73 B3  
   compensation 142  
   control 132, 216  
   drive, high altitude 136  
   insufficient 144  
   equivalent 74, 106  
   exchange rate 120  
   muscles 132  
   quotient (RQ) 120, 136, 230  
   rate 106, 118  
   sensors 132  
   stimulants 132  
   volumes 112  
     conversion 112  
     standardization 112  
   ways, flow resistance 116  
 Response, local 46  
 Resting expiratory level 112  
   membrane potential 44  
   metabolic rate 228  
   position, respiration 112  
   pressure-volume curve, heart 204  
     lung and thorax 116  
     skeletal muscle 66  
   tidal volume 112, 114, 118  
   tremor 228  
 Resuscitation 110  
 Reticular zone, adrenal cortex 298  
 Reticuloendothelial system (RES) ( $\rightarrow$  also macrophage) 96  
 Reticulocytes 88  
 Reticulum, endoplasmic 10, 12, sarcoplasmic 60, 196  
 Retina ( $\rightarrow$  also visual and eye) 350, 352, 362, 364  
   contrast of a stimulus 360  
   corresponding points 366  
   ganglion cells 360, 364  
   processing of visual stimuli 360  
   receptive field 360
- Retina (cont.)*  
 sensors 350, 354  
   potential 360  
 11-*cis*-Retinal 354  
 Retinol 262, 356  
 Return, venous 206  
 Reversal potential 47 B, 56  
 Reverse- $T_3$  ( $rTr_3$ ) 290  
 Rhesus system 100  
 Rhinencephalon 346  
 Rhodopsin 354, 356, 358, 362  
   kinase 356  
 Rhythm, circadian 298, 336  
   diurnal 336  
   generator 336  
 Rhythmicity, heart 194  
 Riboflavin, intestinal absorption 262  
 Ribonucleic acid  $\rightarrow$  RNA  
 Ribose 8  
 Ribosomal ribonucleic acid  $\rightarrow$  rRNA  
 Ribosomes 10  
 Rickets 228, 294  
 Rigidity, decerebrate 330  
 Right axis deviation (heart) 200  
 Rigor complex 64  
   mortis 64, 328  
 Rinne's test 370  
 Riva-Rocci (blood pressure measurement) 208  
 RNA (ribonucleic acid) 8 ff.  
 RNA polymerases 8  
 RNAses, pancreas 248  
 Rods 350, 354, 356, 362  
   adaptation 358  
   monochromatism 358  
   light absorption maximum 362  
 Roots, spinal cord 312  
 Rotation, sensors 348  
 Round window, ear 370, 372  
 RPF (renal plasma flow)  $\rightarrow$  kidney  
 RQ  $\rightarrow$  respiratory quotient  
 rRNA (ribosomal ribonucleic acid) 8, 10  
 $rTr_3$  (reverse- $T_3$ ) 290  
 Ruffini's corpuscle 316  
 RV (residual volume) 112, 114  
 R wave (ECG) 198  
 Ryanodine receptors (RyR) 62, 64  
 RYR 65 D  
 RYR1 63 B  
 RYR2 63 B

## S

- $\sigma$  (reflection coefficient) 24, 383  
 S hormones  $\rightarrow$  glucocorticoids and cortisol  
 S wave, ECG 198

- S (siemens), unit 381  
 SA → sinoatrial  
 SA1 (slow adapting pressosensor) 316  
 SA2 316  
 Saccadic eye movement 366  
 Saccharin, taste 344  
 Saccharase 260  
 Saccharose 260  
 Saccule 348  
 Salbutamol 87 B  
 Saliva 234, 238, 260, 262  
   primary 238  
   secondary 238  
 Salivary glands 238  
   blood flow 216  
 Salt (→ also Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>), balance 148, 162, 170  
   disturbances 170, 174, 175 E  
   regulation 170  
   excretion 162, 172  
   role in hypertension 218  
   retention 172, 184  
 Saltatory conduction 48  
 Saluretics 174  
 Sarcoglycans 60  
 Sarcolemma 56, 60  
 Sarcomere 60 f.  
   resting length 68  
 Sarcoplasm 60  
 Sarcoplasmic reticulum 60  
 Sarcosomes 60  
 Satiety peptides 232  
 Scala media 370  
   tympani 370, 372  
   vestibuli 370, 372  
 Scalene muscles 108  
 Scavenger receptors, LDL 258  
 Schlemm's canal 350  
 Schwann cells 42  
 Sclera 350  
 Sclerosis 218  
 SCN (suprachiasmatic nucleus) 336  
 Scotoma 364  
 Scotopic vision 354  
 Scurvy 228  
 Second messenger 270, 276, 278  
   adrenoceptors 84 f.  
   M-cholinoceptors 82  
   neurotransmitter receptors 52, 55 C  
 Secondary active cotransport  
   with Na<sup>+</sup> 26, 260  
   of Cl<sup>-</sup> 264  
   response, immune defense 94  
   saliva 238  
 Secretin 236, 242, 248, 276  
   esophagus 240  
   insulin secretion 284  
   pancreas secretion 248  
   second messenger 276  
   stomach 244  
 Secretion, renal → kidney  
   constitutive 13 F  
 Secretory granules 12, 270  
   phase, menstrual 300  
 Segmentation (intestine) 246  
 Seizures 136  
 Selectins 14, 98  
 Selection, clonal 98  
 Selenium (Se) 228  
 Self-awareness 340  
 Semen emission 310  
   production 308  
 Semilunar valves, heart 192  
 Seminal vesicles, testosterone effect 308, 310  
 Seminiferous tubules 308  
 Senses 314, 316, 324, 344, 346, 348  
   balance 348  
   chemical 344  
   hearing 368 ff.  
   movement 318, 348  
   position 318, 348  
   smell 346  
   somatovisceral 316  
   strength 318  
   taste 344  
   touch 316  
   vision 350 ff.  
 Sensibility, somatovisceral 316  
 Sensitization 94, 320  
   reflex pathways 340  
   Rh blood groups 100  
 Sensor(s) 314, 342  
   blood pressure 216  
   volume 216  
   cold 226  
   D- 316, 318  
   filling pressure 216  
   heat 316  
   light sensitive 350  
   olfactory 346  
   potential 314  
   photosensors 356, 360  
   primary 314, 346  
   P- 316  
   pressure 316  
   proprioceptive 318  
   pulse rate 216  
   retina 350, 354  
   secondary 314, 344, 348  
   organ of corti 370  
   skin 316  
   smell 346  
   touch 316  
   vibration 316  
   warm 316  
 Sensory aphasia 376  
   impression 314  
   input, central processing 324  
   modality 314  
   physiology 314 ff.  
   receptors → sensors  
 SERCA (sarcoplasmic endoplasmic reticulum Ca<sup>2+</sup>-transporting ATPase) 16, 64  
 Serotonin 102, 160, 232, 276, 278, 332, 334  
   cerebral cortex 334  
   neurons 332  
   platelets 102, 103 A  
   receptor types 55 F, 276, 278  
   second messenger 55 F, 276, 278  
   tubular transport 160  
 Sertoli cells 308  
 Serum 88  
   disease 100  
   electrolytes, ECG 200  
   sickness 100  
 Servocontrol 6  
 Servomechanism 6  
 Set point, variation 6  
   value 4  
 Sex characteristics, female 304  
   male 308  
   chromosomes 308  
   genetic 308  
   hormones, binding globulin 270, 304, 308  
   female 296, 300, 302  
   male 296, 306, 308  
   synthesis 296  
 Sexual arousal 310  
   behavior 332  
   development 308  
   delayed 290  
   differentiation 308  
   maturation 300  
   reflexes 310  
   response 310  
 SFO (= Subfornical organ) 170  
 SGLT1 (sodium glucose transporter, type 1) 158  
 SGLT2 26, 158  
 SH2 (src[sarcoma]-homology) domains 280, 284, 286  
 SHBG (sex hormone-binding globulin) 270, 304, 308  
 Shear force 92  
 Shivering, thermoregulation 224 f.  
 Shock 100, 188, 208, 220  
   anaphylactic 100, 220  
   causes 220  
   compensation mechanisms 220  
   hypoglycemic 220, 286  
   index 220  
   irreversible 220  
   lung 122  
   manifest (progressive) 220  
 Shunt 120  
   alveolar 120  
   arteriovenous 122

- Shunt (cont.)*  
 blood flow 122, 222  
 extra-alveolar 120  
 left-to-right 222  
 right-to-left 222  
 SI units 378 f.
- Sickle cell anemia 92
- Siemens (S), unit 381
- Sieving coefficient 24  
 glomerular (GSC) 154
- Siggaard-Andersen nomogram  
 146, 147 C
- Signal recognition particle (SRP)  
 12
- Signal sequence 12  
 transduction 276
- Sildenafilcitrate (Viagra®) 280
- Silibants, voice 376
- SIH → somatostatin
- Silicon (Si) 228
- Simultaneous contrast 360
- Singing 376
- Single-unit, muscle typ 70
- Sinoatrial (SA) node 192, 194,  
 202
- Sinus arrhythmia 202  
 bradycardia 202  
 rhythm 194  
 tachycardia 202
- Skeletal growth, STH 282
- Skeletal muscle 56 ff., 326 ff.  
 actin-myosin interaction 68  
 action potential 56, 59 A  
 all-or-none response 66  
 blood flow 74  
 regulation 216  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration, cytosolic  
 66  
 contracture 66  
 difference cardiac/smooth  
 muscle 68  
 fibers  
 extrafusal 318  
 intrafusal 318  
 stimulation 62  
 types 58  
 glycogen concentration 58  
 glycogenesis 284  
 gradation of contraction  
 force 66  
 lactate production 76  
 length-force curve 68  
 mechanical features 66  
 mitochondria 63 A  
 motor units 58, 66  
 myoglobin function 72, 128  
 persistent local depolariza-  
 tion 66  
 reflex tone 66  
 rigor 66  
 complex 64  
 summation 66
- Skeletal muscle (cont.)*  
 superposition 66  
 tetanus 58, 66
- Skin 74, 224, 226  
 α<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptors 216  
 blood flow 188, 224  
 physical work 74  
 regulation 216  
 formation of cholecalciferol  
 294  
 mechanosensors 316  
 nocisensors 320  
 sensibility 316  
 sensory functions 224 ff., 316,  
 324  
 temperature 224, 226  
 thermosensors 224 ff.
- Sleep 334, 336  
 deprivation 336  
 disorders 340  
 functions 340  
 phases 336  
 regulation 338  
 stages 336
- Sleep-wake cycle 336
- Sliding filament hypothesis 62,  
 64
- Slit membrane, glomerular 148
- SMA (supplementary motor area)  
 326
- Small intestine 234, 242  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> absorption 292  
 cell replacement 246  
 function 246  
 motility 246  
 structure 246
- Smell 346
- Smooth muscle 70  
 intestine 246  
 M<sub>3</sub>-receptors 82
- SNAP-25 (synaptosome-  
 associated protein 25) 50
- SNARE (synaptosome-associated  
 protein receptor) 30
- Sneezing 132, 322
- Snorkel diving 134
- So<sub>2</sub> (O<sub>2</sub> saturation) 126
- Sodium → Na<sup>+</sup>
- Softening effect, ATP 64
- Solubility coefficient, CO<sub>2</sub> 126  
 O<sub>2</sub> 128
- Solubility product, calcium  
 phosphate 292
- Solutes, activity 24, 382
- Solutions 382
- Solvent drag 24, 156, 162
- Soma, nerve cell 42
- Somatic sensory functions 316
- Somatoliberin 232, 236, 270, 271,  
 282
- Somatomedins 282, 286
- Somatosensory centers 316, 324
- Somatostatin (SIH) 84 ff., 232,  
 236, 242, 270 ff., 282 ff., 286 f.  
 actions 286  
 cotransmitter 84  
 effects 286  
 influence on glucagon secre-  
 tion 274, 286  
 on insulin release 274, 284,  
 286  
 pancreas 284  
 receptors 55 F  
 second messenger 55 F, 276  
 secretion 286  
 stomach 236, 244
- Somatotopic representation 324,  
 326
- Somatotropin (= STH = growth  
 hormone = GH) 271, 280, 282,  
 286, 290, 305  
 influence on insulin release  
 286  
 receptor 280  
 release-inhibiting hormone →  
 somatostatin  
 releasing hormone → soma-  
 toliberin
- Somatovisceral senses 316
- Sone 368
- Sorbitol 264
- Sorting 12, 13 F
- Sound 368  
 analysis 374  
 central processing 374  
 conduction 370, 372  
 air 370  
 deafness 370  
 direction 374  
 distance 374  
 frequencies 368, 374  
 intensity 368, 374  
 loudness 368  
 perception 368  
 physics of 368  
 pressure 368, 372, 374  
 level 368  
 sensors 370, 372  
 speech 376  
 stimulus 368
- Space travel 136
- Spatial orientation 348, 374
- Spatial summation 52, 322, 358,  
 360, 364
- Specific dynamic action → diet-  
 induced thermogenesis
- Spectrum, visible 362
- Speech 238, 368, 376  
 fundamental frequencies 376
- Sperm 30, 304, 308  
 capacitation 304, 310  
 emission 310  
 estrogens 304  
 fertilization 310

- Sperm (cont.)*  
 maturation 308  
 motility 30, 58  
 testosterone 308  
 uterus 304f.
- Spermatids 308  
 Spermatocytes 308  
 Spermatogonia 308  
 Spermatogenesis 308  
 Spermatozoa 308
- Spherical aberration 352
- Sphincter, esophagus 240  
 precapillar 190  
 pupil 350
- Spines, cerebral cortex 334
- Spinal cord 78, 312, 322, 324, 326, 328  
 anterior roots 312  
 dorsal roots 312  
 grey matter 312  
 hemisection 324  
 ipsilateral paralysis 324  
 reflexes 322  
 segments 312  
 transection 330  
 white matter 312  
 ganglion 312, 320  
 nerves 312  
 shock 330
- Spinocerebellum 328
- Sphingomyelin 14
- Spinnbarkeit of cervix mucus 300
- Spiral ganglion 374
- Spirometer 112, 116
- Spirolactone 174
- SPL (sound pressure level) 368
- Spleen 234  
 blood cell formation 88
- Spliceosome 10
- Splicing 8  
 variable 270
- Split-brain patient 342
- Spot, blind 354, 364
- Squalene 296
- Src (sarcoma) protein 280
- SRF → somatoliberin
- SRH → somatoliberin
- SRP (signal recognition particle) 12
- Standard bicarbonate concentration 142  
 measurement 146
- Standard temperature pressure dry (STPD) 112
- Stapedius muscle 370
- Stapes 370
- Starch, digestion 248, 260
- Starling relationship 210
- Start codon 10
- Starvation 142
- Static (postural) work 74
- Statoliths 348
- Steady state 41
- Stellate cells 330
- Stem cells 88, 308
- Step test, Margaria 76
- Stercobilin 252
- Stercobilinogen 252
- Stereocilia 348
- Stereognosis 316
- Steroid diabetes 298
- Steroid hormones → steroids
- Steroids 250, 252, 270, 306  
 biosynthesis 296  
 degradation 296  
 metabolism 296  
 placenta 306  
 producing glands 296  
 receptors 280  
 secretion 250, 252, 296  
 sex, male 308
- STH → somatotropin
- Stimulus 42  
 adequate 314  
 contrast 360  
 transduction 314  
 transformation 314
- Stokes–Einstein equation 20
- Stomach (→ also gastric) 242, 244, 254, 260, 266  
 anatomy 242  
 chief cells 242  
 digestive activity 260  
 distal 234, 242  
 emptying time 234  
 rate 242  
 function 242  
 gastric acid 244  
 gastrin production 236  
 glands 244  
 juice 244  
 motility 242  
 mucus neck cells 242  
 parietal cells 242, 244  
 protein digestion 260  
 proximal 234, 242  
 secretion 244  
 size 242  
 ulcer 244
- Stool 264, 266  
 color 252
- Stop codon 10
- Storage in memory 340  
 of energy 284
- STPD (standard temperature pressure dry) 112
- Strabismus 366  
 amblyopia 366
- Strength, ionic 382  
 training 76
- Streptokinase 104
- Stress, CRH secretion 298  
 cortisol secretion 298  
 hyperprolactinemia 305
- Stretch sensors 216  
 rectum 266  
 reflex 318, 330
- Stria vascularis 372
- Striatum 328
- Stroke volume (SV), heart 76, 106, 188, 192, 204, 206  
 increased afterload 206  
 preload 206  
 physical work 74
- Strophantin 196
- Struma 288
- STS → somatostatin
- ST segment (ECG) 198  
 elevation 200
- Stuart–Prower factor 102
- Subfornical organ 282
- Sublingual gland 238
- Submandibular gland 238
- Substance P 52, 86, 250, 320, 326, 328  
 gallbladder 250  
 Substantia nigra 326, 328
- Subsynaptic Potential 50
- Successive contrast 358  
 color 360
- Succinate, tubular transport 160
- Suckling 238, 282, 305  
 reflex 322, 332
- Sucrose, digestion 260
- Sugar hormones → glucocorticoids and cortisol
- Sulci, brain 312
- Sulfate 156, 158, 160, 252, 264, 296  
 conjugates 160, 252  
 carrier 252  
 tubular secretion 156, 160  
 steroids 296  
 transcellular secretion 156, 160  
 intestinal absorption 264
- Sulfuric acid (→ also sulfate) 142, 176
- Summation 322  
 skeletal muscle 66  
 spatial 322, 360, 364  
 neuron 52  
 vision 358  
 temporal 322  
 neuron 52  
 vision 358
- Superoxide dismutase 96
- Superposition, skeletal muscle 66
- Suppository 266
- Suppression, saccadic 366  
 T helper cells 98
- Supraventricular arrhythmias 202
- Surface sensitivity 316  
 tension 118

- Surfactant (surface-active agent)  
118, 122  
hyperoxia 136
- Suxamethonium 46, 56
- SV (stroke volume), heart 76, 106,  
188, 192, 204, 206
- Swallowing 132, 238, 240, 242,  
322
- S wave (ECG) 198
- Sweat 224, 226  
glands 216, 224  
innervation 78, 79ff., 226  
secretion 226
- SWS (slow-wave sleep) 336
- Symbiosis hypothesis, mitochondria 12
- Sympathetic → also adrenergic and autonomic
- Sympathetic nervous system, activation 74  
constriction, veins 220  
flight or fight behavior 332  
gallbladder 250  
gastrointestinal tract 236  
heart 196  
physical work 74  
regulation of circulation 216  
saliva secretion 238
- Symport, definition 26
- Synapse 42, 50ff., 268  
axoaxonic 322  
electrical 18, 50  
latency 52  
postsynaptic receptors 50,  
55 F  
functions 42  
reciprocal 346  
valve-like function 48
- Synaptic cleft 42, 50  
delay 52  
facilitation 50  
inhibition 322  
knobs 42  
potentiation 50  
transmission 42  
termination 52, 56
- Synapsin 50
- Synaptobrevin 50
- Synaptosome-associated protein 25 (SNAP-25) 50
- Synaptosome-associated protein receptor (SNARE) 30
- Synaptotagmin 50
- Synchronization to day-night cycle 336
- Syncytium 16, 18
- Synovial A-cells 96
- System, closed 40  
conicellular 364  
endocrine 268ff.  
limbic 312, 332  
magnocellular 364
- System, closed (*cont.*)  
opened 40  
parvicellular 364
- Systole 192
- T**
- t (ton), unit 380
- T (multiple of a unit) 379
- T wave, ECG 198
- T<sub>3</sub> → triiodothyronine and thyroid hormones
- T<sub>4</sub> → thyroxine and thyroid hormones
- Tachycardia 202, 220  
atrial 202  
in shock 220  
sinus 202  
ventricular 202
- Tachykinin 55 F  
second messenger 278
- Tachypnea 108
- Tactile motor function 316
- TAL (thick ascending limb) 162
- Tanning lamps, calcitriol synthesis 294
- Target value (control circuit) 4
- Taste 344
- Taurine 250
- Tawara's bundle branches 194
- TBG (thyroxine-binding globulin) 290
- TBPA (thyroxine-binding prealbumin) 290
- TCT (thyrocalcitonin) → calcitonin
- Tears 350
- Tectorial membrane 370
- Tectum 328
- TEE (total energy expenditure) 228
- Telencephalon 312
- Temperature 381  
body 132, 224, 226  
circadian variation 226,  
387 C  
regulation 224ff.  
skin 224  
unit 381
- Temporal lobe system 340
- Temporal summation, visual receptors 358
- Tendon, Golgi organs 318
- Tension time index, heart muscle 212
- Tensor tympani muscle 370
- Terminal button 42
- Testis 256, 270, 296, 308  
FSH effect 308  
HDL receptors 256
- Testosterone, 5- $\alpha$ -dihydro 308
- Testosterone 270, 302, **308**  
receptor 308  
synthesis 296
- Tetanus 56  
skeletal muscle 66  
smooth muscle 70
- Tetany 46, 292, 294
- Tetrahydrofolate 262
- Tetraiodothyronine (T<sub>4</sub>) 288
- Tetrodotoxin (TTX) 47 B
- TF (= Tissue factor) 104
- TFPI (= Tissue factor pathway inhibitor) 104
- TGF(tubuloglomerular feedback) 174, 186
- TGF(transforming growth factor)- $\beta$  receptor 280
- Thalamus 312, 320, 324, 344,  
346, 374  
auditory pathway 374  
disinhibition 328  
visual pathway 364
- Theca cells 302
- Theophylline 278
- Thermal balance 224  
neural factors in 227 D
- Thermodynamics, laws 38ff.
- Thermogenin 224, 232, 290
- Thermogenesis, non-shivering 226
- Thermoneutral zone 226
- Thermoregulation 224, 226  
TRH release 288
- Thermosensors 226, 316  
hypothalamus 332  
central 226
- Thiamine, intestinal absorption 262
- Thiazide 162, 174
- Thick ascending limb (TAL) 162
- Thiocyanate 288
- Thiouracil 288
- Thirst 170, 226, 238  
shock 220
- Thorax 108ff.
- Three-dimensional vision 366
- Threonin 228
- Threshold(s) 314, 346  
aerobic 76  
anaerobic 72, 76  
audiogram 372  
auditory 368ff.  
potential 46, 48, 194  
recognition, smell 346  
taste 344  
visual 358
- Thrombin 102, 104
- Thrombocyte (→ also platelet) 88, 102f.  
aggregation 102  
inhibition 85, 104

- Thrombocytopenia 100, 104  
 Thrombopoietin 88, 148  
 Thromboprotection 104  
 Thrombosis 104  
 Thromboxane A<sub>2</sub> 102, 216, 271, 278  
   second messenger 278  
 Thrombus 102, 104  
 Thymine 8  
 Thymosin 268  
 Thymus 88, 94  
 Thyrotropic hormone-releasing hormone (TRH) → thyroliberin  
 Thyrocalcitonin → calcitonin  
 Thyroglobulin 288  
 Thyroid gland 36, 288  
   hormones 288  
     nuclear receptors 280, 290  
     actions 290  
     control of release 290  
     parafollicular C cells 36, 288, 294  
     peroxidase (TPO) 288  
 Thyroid-stimulating hormone → thyrotropin  
 Thyroliberin 270, 271, 282, 288, 305  
   second messenger 276, 278  
 Thyrotropic hormone (TSH) → thyrotropin  
 Thyrotropin (TSH) 271, 282, 288  
   receptor, autoantibody 290  
   releasing hormone → thyroliberin  
   second messenger 276, 278  
 Thyroxine (T<sub>4</sub>) 270, 288  
 Thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG) 290  
   prealbumin (TBPA) 290  
 Tidal volume 106, 112, 114, 118, 120  
   alveolar part (V<sub>A</sub>) 114, 120  
   exercise 74  
   maximum 77 C  
   physical work 74  
   training 76  
 Tiffeneau test 118  
 Tight junction, function 18  
   renal tubule 154  
 Timbre 368  
 Tin (Sn) 228  
 Tip links 348, 372  
 Tissue factor (TF) 104  
 Tissue factor pathway inhibitor (= TFPI) 104  
 Tissue, hormones 270  
   injury, blood clotting 103 B1  
   plasminogen activator (tPA) 104  
   respiration 106, 130  
   thrombokinase 104  
 Tissue, hormones (cont.)  
   thromboplastin 102  
     inhibitor 104  
 Titin 60, 66  
 Titratable acid 176  
 Titration curve 386  
 T-killer cells 94, 98, 234  
 TLC (total lung capacity) 112, 113 A  
 TNF(tumor necrosis factor) $\alpha$ , effect on CRH secretion 298  
 Tocopherol 262  
 Tolerance, immunologic, peripheral 98  
   central 94  
 Ton, unit 380  
 Tone (sound) 368  
 Tongue 344  
 Tonicity 383 f.  
 Tonotopicity, auditory pathway 374  
 Tonus, skeletal muscle 330  
   smooth muscle 70  
   myogenic 70  
   neurogenic 70  
 Tonus fibers 66  
   neurogenic 70  
 Torr, conversion into SI unit 380  
 Touch sensor 316  
 tPA (tissue plasminogen activator) 104  
 TPO (thyroid peroxidase) 288  
 TPR (total peripheral resistance) 188 f.  
 Trace elements 228  
 Trachea 376  
 Tractus, corticospinalis lateralis 326  
   olfactorius 346  
   opticus 364  
   reticulospinalis lateralis 330  
     medialis 330  
   retinohypothalamic 336  
   rubrospinalis 330  
   spinocerebellaris anterior 330  
   spinoreticular 320  
   spinothalamicus ventralis 320, 324  
   vestibulospinalis 330  
 Training 76  
 Tranexamic acid 104, 105 C  
 Transcellular transport 18, 154  
 Transcobalamine 92, 262  
 Transcortin 92, 298  
 Transcription factor, hormone-activated 280, 290  
 Transcytosis 18, 28  
 Transducin 278, 354, 356, 358  
 Transduction 314, 354  
   channels, hair cells 372  
   photoelectric 354  
   signal 276  
   stimulus 314  
 Transfer ribonucleic acid → tRNA  
 Transferrin 90  
 Transformation 314  
 Transforming growth factor (TGF)- $\beta$  280  
 Transfusion, placental 222  
 Translocation 10  
 Translocation, hormone-receptor protein complex 280  
 Translocator protein 12  
 Transmembrane proteins 12  
 Transmission, hereditary 8 f.  
 Transmitter → neurotransmitter  
 Transplant rejection, primary 100  
   immunosuppression 98  
 Transport, active 26  
   axoplasmic 42, 58, 282  
   convective 24  
   electrogenic 26, 28  
   electroneutral 28  
   energy-dependent 26  
   non-ionic 176  
   paracellular 18, 154  
   passive 20  
   primary active 26  
   rate, maximal (J<sub>max</sub>) 389 f.  
   rheogenic 26, 28  
   saturable 28  
   secondary active 26  
   specific 28  
   tertiary active 29 B  
   transcellular 18, 154  
   transmembrane 16  
 all-trans-retinal 354  
 Treadmill ergometry 76  
 Trehalase 260  
 Trehalose 260  
 Tremor, intention 330  
   of resting 328  
 TRF → thyroliberin  
 TRH → thyroliberin  
 Triacylglycerol 254, 256  
   absorption 254, 256  
   chemical structure 229 B  
   digestion 248, 256  
   hydrolase 254  
   lipoproteins 256  
   source 259 D  
   fate 259 D  
   synthesis, from free fatty acids 258  
 Triads 60, 62  
 Trigger effect, Ca<sup>2+</sup>, heart 62, 196  
 Trigger zone, chemosensory 240  
 Triglycerides → Triacylglycerol  
 Triiodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>) 270, 280, 288  
 Trimetaphan 82  
 Tripalmitin 230  
 Tripeptides, intestinal absorption 260  
 Tricuspid valve 192  
 Tritanomaly 362

- Tritanopia 362  
 tRNA (transfer ribonucleic acid) 8  
 Tropomyosin 60  
 Troponin 60, 62  
 Troponin-tropomyosin complex 64  
 Trypsin 248, 254, 260, 262  
   activation 249 D  
   CCK secretion 248  
   colipase activation 254  
   phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> activation 254  
   effects 249 D  
 Trypsinogen 248  
 Tryptophan 228  
 TSC (thiazide sensitive co-transporter) 162  
 TSH → thyrotropin  
 T(ransversal tubules) system, skeletal muscle 60  
 TTX (Tetrodotoxin) 47 B  
 Tube, uterine 310, 311 A  
 Tuberculum olfactorium 346  
 Tubocurarine 56, 82  
 Tubular excretion 154  
   reabsorption 154, 158  
   secretion 154  
 Tubule (→ also Kidney), distal 148  
   convoluted (DCT) 148  
   driving forces for resorption 162  
   epithelium, structure 154  
   proximal 148, 162, 166, 176  
   convoluted (PCT) 164  
 Tubules, longitudinal, skeletal muscle 60  
   semiferous 308  
   transverse, skeletal muscle 60  
 Tubulin 30, 58  
 Tubuloglomerular feedback (TGF) 174, 186  
 Tumor cells, immune defense 96  
 Tumor necrosis factor (TNF) $\alpha$  298  
 Tuning, hearing 374  
 T wave, ECG 198, 200  
 Two-point discrimination 316, 324  
 TXA<sub>2</sub> (thromboxane A<sub>2</sub>) 102, 271  
 Tympanic cavity 370  
 Tyrosine 84  
   derivates, hormonal 270  
 Tyrosine kinase-associated receptors 280
- U**
- UCP (uncoupling protein) 232  
 UDP(uridindinucleotid)-glucuronic acid 252  
 Ulcer, gastric 244  
 Ultrafiltrate 154  
 Ultrafiltration coefficient 152  
 Umami 344  
 Umbilical artery 222  
   vein 222  
 Unconsciousness, anoxia 130  
 Uncoupling protein (UCP) 232  
 Uniporter 28  
 Units, basic 378  
   derived from SI units 378  
   information 314  
   multiples 379  
   SI 378  
   submultiples 379  
 Unmyelinated nerve fibers 48  
 Uracil 8  
 Urate → uric acid  
 Urea 158, 166, 178  
   carrier 166  
   excretion 166  
   production 178  
   reabsorption, renal 156, 158  
   recirculation 166  
   urine concentration 166  
 Ureter 148  
   innervation 79 ff.  
 Urethra 310  
 Uric acid 158, 178  
   excretion, renal 176  
   reabsorption 156, 158  
   secretion 156,  
 Urinary bladder 70, 148, 310  
   innervation 79 ff.  
   calculi 158, 180  
 Urine 148 ff., 186  
   Ca<sup>2+</sup> 292  
   concentration mechanism 164, 166  
   disorders 166  
   flow rate 152  
   17-ketosteroids 296  
   NH<sup>+</sup><sub>4</sub> 178  
   osmolality 166  
   pH 156, 176, 178  
   primary 164  
   titratable acid 176  
   volume 152  
 Urobilinogen 252  
 Urokinase 104  
 UT1 (urea transporter Typ 1) 166  
 UT2 166  
 Uterine tube 310, 311 A  
 Uterus 70, 305, 306  
    $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptor 306  
   contractions 282  
   erection 310  
   estrogens 304  
   gap junctions 306  
   menstrual cycle 300  
   muscle 305  
   oxytocin 305  
   progesteron 305  
   prostaglandins 306, 310
- UTP (uridine triphosphate) 252  
 Utricle 348  
 UV light, exposure 294  
   formation of vitamin D 294  
   deficiency 294  
 Uvula, cerebellum 328
- V**
- $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  → O<sub>2</sub> utilization  
 V<sub>A</sub> (alveolar part of tidal volume) 114  
 V<sub>D</sub> (dead space volume) 114  
 V<sub>E</sub> (expiratory volume) 114  
 V<sub>T</sub> (tidal Volume) 114  
 Vaccination 94  
 Vagina 304, 310  
   estrogens 304  
   pH 304  
 Vagus nerve (→ also cholinergic) 244, 250, 376  
 val, unit 381  
 Valence, ion 381  
 Valine 228  
 Valsalva's maneuver 116  
 Vanadium (V) 228  
 Vanilloid receptor Typ 1 (VR1) 316  
 Van't Hoff's law 24, 389, 394  
   Staverman 24  
 Vas afferens, glomerulus 148, 186  
   deferens 310  
   efferens, glomerulus 148, 186  
 Vasa recta, renal medulla 150, 164  
 Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP) 52, 86, 234, 236, 238, 264, 276, 282  
   cerebral cortex 334  
   neurons 242  
   rectum 266  
   second messenger 276  
   substances 214  
 Vasoconstriction 122, 214, 215 B, 216, 222  
   cortisol 298  
   hypoxic 122, 214, 222  
   fetus 223 C  
   shock 220  
   thermoregulation 226  
   veins 220  
 Vasodilatation 214, 215 B, 216, 280  
   NO 280  
   thermoregulation 226  
 Vasomotion 210  
 Vasopressin (→ also adiuretin) 166, 276, 278  
 Vegetarian diet 142  
 Vectorcardiogram 198  
 Vein(s) 190, 206

- Vein(s)* (cont.)  
 pulmonary 188  
 umbilical 222  
 valves 206
- Velocity, blood flow 190  
 of conduction, in nerve fibres 48  
 detectors 316, 318  
 linear, unit volume 380
- Venae cavae 190
- Venoles 189 A  
 postcapillary 190
- Venous central pressure 188, **192**, 206, 220  
 circulation 206  
 flow 206  
 pressure 206  
 curve 193 A  
 indifference point 206  
 influence on capillary fluid exchange 210  
 shock 220  
 return 110, 206  
 artificial respiration 110  
 Bainbridge reflex 218  
 driving forces 206  
 respiration 206  
 artificial 110
- Ventilation (→ also lung) 74, 106, 108, 120, 130  
 alveolar 106, 120  
 high altitude 136  
 peak expiratory pressure 116  
 inspiratory pressure 116  
 pressure differences 108  
 dead space 106, 114  
 diving 134  
 driving force for 108  
 exercise 74  
 high altitude 136  
 mechanical 110  
 muscle 108, 132  
 /perfusion ratio 122  
 regulation 126  
 chemosensors 126  
 rhythm generator 132  
 total 106  
 acidosis 142  
 hypoxia 136  
 maximum 77 C  
 endurance athletes 77  
 physical work 74  
 hypoxia 136  
 venous return 206
- Ventilation-perfusion ratio 122
- Ventricles, cerebrospinal fluid 312
- Ventricular (→ also heart)  
 arrhythmias 202  
 fibrillation 202  
 pressure 192, 204
- Ventricular arrhythmias* (cont.)  
 tachycardia 202  
 volume 204  
 work diagram 204
- Veratridine 47 B
- Verbalization 340
- Vergence, eye movement 366
- Vermis 328
- Vertical type (heart) 200
- Vertigo 330, 348
- Very low density lipoproteins (VLDL) 256, 258, 262
- Vesicles 28  
 chromaffin 84  
 secretory 12, 30
- Vessels, capacitance 190  
 wall tension 190
- Vestibular ganglia 348  
 nuclei 330, 348  
 organ 348  
 reflex 348
- Vestibulocerebellum 328
- Viagra® (sildenafilcitrate) 280
- Vibration, sensors 316
- Vieth-Müller horopter 366
- Villi, intestinal 246
- Vimentin 14
- VIP → vasoactive intestinal peptide
- Virilization 308
- Virus, immune defense 94, 96, 98
- Visceral afferents 78, 236
- Viscosity, blood 92, 190
- Viscous-isotropic phase, lipid digestion 254
- Visible spectrum 362
- Vision (→ also eye and retina) 352  
 binocular 364, 366  
 color 362  
 day 354  
 threshold 358  
 depth 366  
 dim-light 354  
 movement 364  
 night 354  
 photopic 354  
 scotopic 354  
 three dimensional 366
- Visual (→ also eye and retina)  
 acuity **354**, 360, 364  
 cortex 364  
 field 364  
 binocular 366  
 pathways 364  
 pigment 350, 354, 356  
 role in adaptation 356  
 sensors, spatial summation 358  
 temporal summation 358
- Visual acuity* (cont.)  
 thresholds 358  
 absolute 358
- Vital capacity (VC) 112  
 forced (FVC) 118
- Vitamin A 228, 254, 262, 356  
 deficiency 356  
 intestinal absorption 262  
 B<sub>1</sub> (thiamin) 228, 262  
 B<sub>2</sub> (riboflavin) 228, 262  
 B<sub>6</sub> (pyridoxin) 228, 262  
 B<sub>12</sub> (cobalamines) 90, 228  
 absorption 262  
 C 90, 228, 262  
 intestinal absorption 262  
 renal reabsorption 156  
 D 228, 254, 294  
 daily intake 294  
 deficiency 264, 294  
 optimal 392  
 binding protein (DBP) 158, 294  
 D<sub>2</sub> (= ergocalciferol) 228, 294  
 D<sub>3</sub> (= cholecalciferol = calcitol) 228, 262, 294  
 E (D- $\alpha$ -tocopherol) 228, 254, 262  
 H (biotin) 228, 262  
 K (Phytonadion) 102, 104, 228, 254, 266  
 antagonists 104  
 deficiency 104  
 K<sub>1</sub> 228, 262  
 K<sub>2</sub> 228, 262
- Vitamins 228  
 absorption 262  
 deficiencies 228  
 fat-soluble 228, 254, 262, 304  
 toxicity 228  
 water-soluble 262
- Vitrous body 350  
 opacification 136
- VLA-4 (adhesion molecule) 98
- VLDL (very low density lipoproteins) 256, 258, 262  
 estrogen effect 304  
 remnants 256
- Vocal cord 376  
 paralysis 118
- Voice 376  
 change 308
- Volume clearance, esophagus 240  
 deficit 170, 175 E  
 compensation 220  
 shock 220  
 excess 170, 175 E  
 extracellular → ECF 168  
 hypertension 218  
 interstitial 168  
 intracellular → ICF 168

*Volume clearance, esophagus*  
 (cont.)  
 ratio 382  
 regulation 170  
 unit 378  
 velocity 380  
 Voluntary motor function 326  
 inhibition 328  
 Voltage clamp 34  
 Vomiting 78, 142, 240  
 center 240  
 salt and water homeostasis  
 175 E  
 von Willebrand factor 102, 103 A  
 Vowels 376  
 V<sub>1</sub> receptor (ADH), second mes-  
 senger 278  
 V<sub>2</sub> receptor (ADH) 24  
 second messenger 278  
 VR1 receptor (vanilloid receptor  
 type 1) 316  
 Vulnerable phase (myocard) 202

## W

W (watt), unit 380f.  
 Wakefulness 324, 334  
 Warfarin 104  
 Warm sensors 224ff., 316  
 Water → H<sub>2</sub>O  
 Watt second, unit 380f.

Waves, EEG 334  
 paroxysmal 334  
 slow, intestine 246  
 stomach motility 242  
 W cells, retina 364  
 Weber's rule 358  
 Weber's test 370  
 Weight, unit 380  
 Wernicke's area 376  
 Whispering 376  
 White matter, spinal cord 312  
 Wilson leads (ECG) 198  
 Window, oval/round 370, 372  
 Wind space 376  
 Windkessel 190, 204  
 Withdrawal reflex 322  
 Work, muscle 74  
 negative dynamic 74  
 physical 74, 142  
 positive dynamic 74  
 pressure/volume, heart 204  
 static postural 74  
 unit 380  
 Writing 332, 340  
 Ws, unit 380

## X

X cells, retina 364  
 X-chromosome 8, 309 B,C  
 Xenobiotics 160

## Y

Yard, conversion into SI unit 378  
 Yawning 132  
 Y cells, retina 364  
 Y-chromosome 8, 309 B,C  
 Yohimbin 87 B

## Z

Zeitgeber, external 336  
 Zero-current potential 34  
 Z-plates, muscle 60  
 Zona fasciculata → adrenal cor-  
 tex  
 glomerulosa → adrenal cortex  
 pellucida 310  
 reaction 310  
 reticularis → adrenal cortex  
 Zone, comfort 226, 228  
 thermoneutral 226  
 Zonulae occludentes → Tight  
 junctions 18  
 Zonular fibers 350